RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance

# D014/D015/D078/D079
# SERVICE MANUAL

**(Book 1 of 2) 003379MIU**

**MAINFRAME**

LANIER RICOH savin

RICOH
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance
UNIVERSITY

# D014/D015/D078/D079
# SERVICE MANUAL
(B00K 1 OF 2) MAINFRAME

LANIER
RICOH
SAVIN

RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance

# D014/D015/D078/D079
# SERVICE MANUAL
## B00K 1 OF 2
## MAINFRAME

003379MIU

LANIER RICOH SAVIN

It is the reader's responsibility when discussing the information contained within this document to maintain a level of confidentiality that is in the best interest of Ricoh Americas Corporation and its member companies.

***NO PART OF THIS DOCUMENT MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY FASHION AND DISTRIBUTED WITHOUT THE PRIOR PERMISSION OF RICOH AMERICAS CORPORATION.***

All product names, domain names or product illustrations, including desktop images, used in this document are trademarks, registered trademarks or the property of their respective companies.
They are used throughout this book in an informational or editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies. No such use, or the use of any trade name, or web site is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with Ricoh products.

**© 2008 RICOH Americas Corporation. All rights reserved.**

## *WARNING*

***The Service Manual contains information regarding service techniques, procedures, processes and spare parts of office equipment distributed by Ricoh Americas Corporation. Users of this manual should be either service trained or certified by successfully completing a Ricoh Technical Training Program.***

***Untrained and uncertified users utilizing information contained in this service manual to repair or modify Ricoh equipment risk personal injury, damage to property or loss of warranty protection.***

***Ricoh Americas Corporation***

# LEGEND

| PRODUCT CODE | COMPANY | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | LANIER | RICOH | SAVIN |
| D014 | LD260c | MP C6000 | C6055 |
| D015 | LD275c | MP C7500 | C7570 |
| D078 | Pro C550EX | Pro C550EX | Pro C550EX |
| D079 | Pro C700EX | Pro C700EX | Pro C700EX |
| | | | |
| | | | |

# DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

| REV. NO. | DATE | COMMENTS |
|---|---|---|
| * | 01/2008 | Original Printing |
| 1 | 04/2009 | D078/D079 Added |
| | | |
| | | |

# D014/D015/D078/D079

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

## NEW FEATURES OF D014/D015


**NEW FEATURES OF D014/D015 ..... D-1**

RESPONSES TO REQUESTS FOR IMPROVEMENT ..... D-1

IMPROVED PRODUCTIVITY ..... D-1

Copy Speed ..... D-1

Shorter Warm-up Time ..... D-1

Overall System ..... D-2

IMPROVED RELIABILITY ..... D-2

Longer Service Life of Developer ..... D-2

Better Stability of Image Density ..... D-2

Paper Feed ..... D-6

Paper Output ..... D-7

Elimination of Pawl Marks on Prints ..... D-8

Fusing Lamp Rearrangement in the Heating Roller ..... D-9

Reduction of Pressure on the Hot Roller ..... D-10

Handling Thicker Paper ..... D-10

OPERABILITY ..... D-11

Handling Paper Jams ..... D-11

Easier Use of Paper Tray End Fence ..... D-11

New Arrow Indicator on Side Fence Lever ..... D-11

Image Quality Improvement ..... D-11

ADOPTION OF SINGLE-DIRECTION DEVELOPER/ TONER SUPPLY ..... D-11

ADOPTION OF NEW PXP TONER ..... D-12

Sharpening Text ..... D-13

ELIMINATION OF SHINY PAWL MARKS ON PRINTS ..... D-14

COMPARISON OF CHANGES IN BASIC OPERATION ..... D-15

Comments ..... D-16

SYSTEM CONFIGURATION AND NEW OPTIONS ..... D-17

Configuration 1 (with D373/D374 Finisher) ..... D-17
Configuration 2 (with B830 Finisher) ..... D-19
NEW OPTIONS FOR B132/B200 ..... D-21
New Peripheral ..... D-21
Other Peripherals ..... D-21
MFP OPTIONS (LISTED ALPHABETICALLY) ..... D-22
APPEARANCE OF ACTUAL CONFIGURATIONS ..... D-23
Configuration Sample for General Office Customers ..... D-23
CONFIGURATION SAMPLE FOR LIGHT PRODUCTION CUSTOMERS ..... D-24
More Details About Design Changes ..... D-24
PCU (PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT) ..... D-25
Developer Filling, Replacement ..... D-25
PCU Design ..... D-25
Different Designs of YCM PCU and K PCU ..... D-26
POTENTIAL SENSORS ..... D-28
Potential Sensor Postion ..... D-28
DEVELOPMENT UNIT ..... D-29
Cross-Section of Development Unit ..... D-29
External View of Development Unit ..... D-30
Toner/Developer Flow Inside the Development Unit ..... D-31
TONER SUPPLY ..... D-32
Toner Supply Components ..... D-32
New STC (Soft Toner Cartridge) ..... D-33
TRANSFER UNIT (IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER TRANSFER UNITS) ..... D-34
ITB UNIT ..... D-34
New PTR Lift Mechanism ..... D-34
PTR Lift Mechanism ..... D-35
Increased Durability of Paper Transfer Roller ..... D-36
FUSING UNIT ..... D-38
GENERAL LAYOUT OF FUSING UNIT ..... D-38
New Pressure Roller Lift Mechanism ..... D-39
MOTORS ..... D-40
FRONT, REAR VIEW OF DRUM CLEANING, DEVELOPMENT, DRUM MOTORS ..... D-40

CHANGES TO IMPROVE TORQUE TRANSMISSION EFFICIENCY ..... D-41
Drum Motor Shaft ..... D-41
FB Control ..... D-42
ITB Drive, PTR, Fusing/Exit Motors ..... D-43
K/YMC Lift, Used Toner Motors ..... D-44
CONTROLLER BOARD ..... D-45
SMALL CHANGES ..... D-45
NOTES ABOUT SERVICING ..... D-46
DETAILED SUMMARY OF CHANGES ..... D-49
External Appearance, Operation Panel ..... D-49
Controller Box ..... D-49
Main Frame Configuration, Ventilation ..... D-49
Engine Drive Mechanisms ..... D-49
Exposure ..... D-49
Laser Writing ..... D-50
Paper Feed ..... D-50
Development, Toner Supply ..... D-50
Drum Charge, Cleaning ..... D-50
Image Transfer ..... D-51
Paper Transfer ..... D-51
Fusing ..... D-51
Process Control ..... D-51
OPC Drums ..... D-51
Toner ..... D-51

# INSTALLATION

**1. INSTALLATION ..... 1-1**
1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS ..... 1-1
1.1.1 OPERATING ENVIRONMENT ..... 1-1
1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL ..... 1-2
1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS ..... 1-2
1.1.4 DIMENSIONS ..... 1-3
1.1.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS ..... 1-3
1.2 COPIER AND PERIPHERALS ..... 1-5

1.2.1 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION 1 ....1-5
1.2.2 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION 2 ....1-7
1.2.3 MFP OPTIONS (LISTED ALPHABETICALLY) ....1-8
1.3 COPIER D014/D015 ....1-10
1.3.1 ACCESSORIES ....1-10
1.3.2 INSTALLATION ....1-11
External Tapes and Packing Material ....1-11
Internal Tapes and Packing Material ....1-12
Shipping Retainer Removal ....1-14
Reattach the Faceplate ....1-16
Remove Remaining Retainers and Packing Material ....1-16
Filling the PCU Units with Developer ....1-18
Reinstall the Toner Hopper ....1-23
STC (Soft Toner Cartridge) Installation ....1-24
Initializing Developer and Toner ....1-26
Load the Paper Trays ....1-27
Make a Test Color Print ....1-28
ACC (Automatic Color Calibration) Adjustment ....1-28
Do the Color Registration Procedure for MUSIC ....1-29
Counter Display Setting ....1-30
Make the Machine Level ....1-30
Attach the PCU Stand Rack and Store the PCU Stand ....1-31
Attach Decals ....1-32
Enable USB ....1-33
Print an SMC Report ....1-33
Connect the Upper and Lower Tray Heaters ....1-34
1.4 COPY TRAY (B756) ....1-35
1.4.1 ACCESSORIES ....1-35
1.4.2 INSTALLATION ....1-36
1.5 A3/11" X 17" PAPER SIZE TRAY (B331) ....1-38
1.5.1 ACCESSORIES ....1-38
1.5.2 INSTALLATION ....1-39
1.6 COUNTERS ....1-42
1.6.1 ACCESSORIES ....1-42
Key Card Bracket B498 ....1-42
Key Counter Bracket B452 Accessories ....1-43

Optional Counter Interface Unit Type A B879 Accessories .....1-44
1.6.2 INSTALLATION .....1-45
Assemble the Key Counter Bracket.....1-45
Install the Key Card Bracket and Assembled Key Counter .....1-45
1.7 LCT (B473), LCT ADAPTER (B699) .....1-49
1.7.1 ACCESSORIES .....1-49
LCT (B473).....1-49
LCT Adapter (B699) .....1-50
1.7.2 INSTALLATION .....1-51
Removing Tape and Accessories.....1-51
LCT Adapter (B699) Installation .....1-52
LCT Installation .....1-53
Adjusting Side Fences for Paper Size .....1-55
1.8 LG UNIT FOR A4/LT LCT (B474) .....1-58
1.8.1 ACCESSORIES .....1-58
1.8.2 INSTALLATION .....1-59
LCT Connected to the Machine.....1-59
1.9 LCIT RT4000 (D350).....1-62
1.9.1 ACCESSORIES .....1-62
1.9.2 LCT INSTALLATION.....1-64
Grounding and Preparing the LCT for Docking .....1-64
After Installation.....1-68
1.9.3 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER TYPE B: 120V .....1-68
Accessory Check.....1-68
Installation Procedure for 120V .....1-69
1.9.4 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER TYPE B: 240V .....1-71
Accessory Check.....1-71
Installation Procedure for 240V .....1-72
1.10 2000/3000 SHEET FINISHERS (D373/D374).....1-74
1.10.1 ACCESSORIES .....1-74
1.10.2 INSTALLATION.....1-75
Removing Tapes and Packing Materials .....1-76
Docking the Finisher to the Copier .....1-78
Attaching the Trays .....1-81
Leveling the Finisher .....1-82
Support Trays.....1-82

Selecting the Staple Supply Name ..... 1-84
Enabling Booklet Binding (D373 Only) ..... 1-84
1.11 PUNCH UNIT (B702) ..... 1-85
1.11.1 ACCESSORIES ..... 1-85
1.11.2 INSTALLATION ..... 1-86
1.12 OUTPUT JOGGER UNIT (B703) ..... 1-90
1.12.1 ACCESSORIES ..... 1-90
1.12.2 INSTALLATION ..... 1-91
1.13 MAIL BOX (B762) ..... 1-93
1.13.1 ACCESSORIES ..... 1-93
1.13.2 INSTALLATION ..... 1-94
1.13.3 ACCESSORIES ..... 1-96
3000-Sheet Finisher B830 Accessories ..... 1-96
Finisher Adapter Kit D375 Accessories ..... 1-98
1.13.4 FINISHER ADAPTER KIT D375 INSTALLATION ..... 1-99
1.13.5 FINISHER INSTALLATION ..... 1-103
Docking the Finisher B830 ..... 1-105
Connecting the Finisher B830 ..... 1-107
1.13.6 UPDATING THE FIRMWARE ..... 1-109
1.13.7 SP SETTING ..... 1-110
1.14 PUNCH UNIT B831 ..... 1-111
1.14.1 ACCESSORIES ..... 1-111
1.14.2 INSTALLATION ..... 1-112
1.15 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY (B704) ..... 1-116
1.15.1 ACCESSORIES ..... 1-116
1.15.2 INSTALLATION ..... 1-118
Removing Tapes and Packing Materials ..... 1-118
Preparing the Finisher ..... 1-119
Attaching the Extensions ..... 1-120
Attaching the Interposer Tray ..... 1-121
Docking the Finisher/Interposer with the Machine ..... 1-122
1.16 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY CI5000 (B835) ..... 1-125
1.16.1 ACCESSORIES ..... 1-125
1.16.2 INSTALLATION ..... 1-127
Setting up the Unit and Docking to the Copier ..... 1-127
Docking the Next Peripheral Device ..... 1-131

Mounting the Tray Unit ..... 1-132
1.16.3 DOCKING THE COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B835 ..... 1-135
Z-Fold Unit B660 to Cover Interposer Tray B835 ..... 1-135
Finisher B830 to Cover Interposer Tray B835 ..... 1-136
Firmware Update ..... 1-136
1.17 Z-FOLDING UNIT ZF4000 (B660) ..... 1-137
1.17.1 ACCESSORY CHECK ..... 1-137
1.17.2 INSTALLATION ..... 1-139
Unpacking ..... 1-139
Attaching the Brackets ..... 1-140
Preparing for Docking ..... 1-141
Testing the Breaker ..... 1-142
Docking the Z-Folding Unit to the Cover Interposer Tray or Copier 1-143
Connecting the Z-Folding Unit B660 ..... 1-144
1.18 MFP CONTROLLER OPTIONS ..... 1-146
1.18.1 OVERVIEW ..... 1-146
1.18.2 ENABLING USB ..... 1-148
1.18.3 ACCESSORY CARDS ..... 1-149
1.18.4 SD CARD APPLICATIONS ..... 1-151
1.18.5 HANDLING DIMMS AND SD CARDS ..... 1-152
DIMMs ..... 1-152
SD cards ..... 1-153
1.18.6 MOVING APPLICATIONS TO ONE SD CARD ..... 1-153
Overview ..... 1-153
Moving Applications ..... 1-154
Undo Exec ..... 1-155
Storing SD Application Cards on Site ..... 1-156
1.18.7 PRINTER/SCANNER D376 AND INTERFACE UNIT ..... 1-157
Accessories ..... 1-157
Installation ..... 1-157
1.18.8 IEEE 1284 INTERFACE BOARD B679 (CENTRONICS) ..... 1-159
Accessories ..... 1-159
Installation ..... 1-159
1.18.9 BLUETOOTH INTERFACE UNIT B826 ..... 1-160
Accessories ..... 1-160
Installation Procedure ..... 1-160

1.18.10 IEEE 802.11A/G INTERFACE UNIT D377 .....1-161
Accessories .....1-161
Installation .....1-161
SP Mode Settings for 802.11a/g Wireless LAN .....1-163
1.18.11 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER D377 .....1-164
Accessory Check .....1-164
Installation .....1-164
1.18.12 HDD ENCRYPTION UNIT .....1-165
Before You Begin the Procedure .....1-165
Seal Check and Removal .....1-166
Installation Procedure .....1-167
Recovery from a Device Problem .....1-168
Restoring the encryption key .....1-168
Clearing the NVRAM .....1-169
1.18.13 POSTSCRIPT3 D378 .....1-170
1.18.14 DOS UNIT TYPE H D377 .....1-171
Accessory Check .....1-171
Before You Begin… .....1-171
Seal Check and Removal .....1-172
Installation Procedure .....1-173
Check Operation of the DOS Application .....1-175
1.18.15 COPIER CONNECTION KIT B328 .....1-176
1.18.16 GIGABIT ETHERNET D377 .....1-178
Accessories .....1-178
Installation .....1-178
1.18.17 BROWSER UNIT TYPE D (D377) .....1-180
Accessories .....1-180
Installation .....1-180
1.18.18 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT TYPE F (B829) .....1-182
Accessories .....1-182
User Tool Setting .....1-183
1.18.19 VM CARD TYPE E (D377) .....1-184
Accessories .....1-184
Installation .....1-184

# PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE


**2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE .....2-1**

2.1 OVERVIEW.....2-1

2.1.1 REQUIRED MATERIALS.....2-1

2.2 PM COUNTER.....2-3

2.2.1 DISPLAYING THE PM COUNTER .....2-3

2.2.2 PM PARTS SCREEN DETAILS.....2-4

All PM Parts list: Main Menu.....2-4

Number button submenu.....2-5

Parts list for PM yield indicator .....2-6

2.3 PM TABLES.....2-7

2.3.1 MAIN MACHINE .....2-7

Main Machine PM Parts .....2-7

ARDF PM Parts.....2-14

2.3.2 LCT B473.....2-15

2.3.3 LCT D350.....2-16

2.3.4 2000/3000-SHEET FINISHERS D373/D374.....2-17

2.3.5 PUNCH B702.....2-18

2.3.6 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B704 .....2-18

2.3.7 Z-FOLDING UNIT B660.....2-19

2.3.8 3000-SHEET FINISHER B830.....2-19

2.3.9 PUNCH B831.....2-20

2.3.10 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B835 .....2-20

2.4 LUBRICATION POINTS.....2-21

2.4.1 COPIER .....2-21

OPC, ITB Replacement.....2-21

Fusing Unit.....2-22

# REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT


**3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT .....3-1**

3.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS .....3-1

3.1.1 DRUM .....3-1

3.1.2 PCU .....3-2

3.1.3 TRANSFER BELT UNIT .....3-3

3.1.4 SCANNER UNIT .....3-3

3.1.5 LASER UNIT .....3-3

3.1.6 DEVELOPMENT .....3-4

3.1.7 CLEANING .....3-5

3.1.8 FUSING UNIT .....3-5

3.1.9 PAPER FEED .....3-5

3.1.10 USED TONER .....3-5

3.2 COMMON PROCEDURES .....3-6

3.2.1 ARDF .....3-6

3.2.2 OPERATION PANEL, TOP COVERS .....3-7

3.2.3 LEFT COVERS .....3-8

3.2.4 FRONT DOOR .....3-9

3.2.5 RIGHT COVERS .....3-10

3.2.6 REAR COVERS .....3-11

3.2.7 TONER HOPPER, FACEPLATE, PCU .....3-12

Removing Hopper, Faceplate, PCU .....3-12

Reinstalling PCU, Faceplate, Toner Hopper .....3-15

3.2.8 IMAGE TRANSFER UNIT .....3-17

3.2.9 DRAWER UNIT .....3-19

To pull out the drawer unit: .....3-19

To remove the drawer unit: .....3-19

3.2.10 DUPLEX UNIT .....3-21

3.2.11 OPENING, LOCKING THE CONTROLLER BOX COVER .....3-22

3.2.12 SD CARD STORAGE .....3-23

3.3 LASER UNIT .....3-24

3.3.1 CAUTION DECALS .....3-24

3.3.2 POLYGON MOTOR .....3-25

3.3.3 LASER UNIT .....3-27

3.3.4 SP ADJUSTMENTS AFTER LASER UNIT REPLACEMENT ....3-30
Color Registration Errors ....3-31
Skew ....3-31
3.3.5 LASER SYNCHRONIZATION DETECTOR ....3-32
3.4 PCU ....3-33
3.4.1 CHARGE UNITS ....3-33
Preparation ....3-33
Charge Roller Unit: YMC PCUs ....3-34
Charge Wire Unit: K PCU ....3-35
3.4.2 SEPARATING DRUM/CLEANING UNIT, REMOVING THE OPC DRUM ....3-36
Reinstallation of the Drum ....3-37
3.4.3 PCU BLADES AND ROLLERS ....3-39
Lubricant Bar and Lubricant Blade ....3-40
Lubricant Brush Roller ....3-42
Drum Cleaning Blade ....3-43
After Replacement ....3-44
3.4.4 DEVELOPER REPLACEMENT ....3-46
Preparation ....3-46
Removing the old developer ....3-47
Adding New Developer ....3-53
Handling Problems with Developer Filling ....3-57
3.4.5 NEW PCU ....3-59
3.4.6 SP CODES AFTER REPLACEMENTS ....3-62
3.5 PTR UNIT ....3-64
3.5.1 RELAY SENSOR ....3-64
3.5.2 DOUBLE-FEED DETECTION PHOTOSENSOR, REGISTRATION SENSOR ....3-65
3.5.3 PTR UNIT ....3-66
3.5.4 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER, DISCHARGE PLATE ....3-68
3.5.5 LUBRICANT BAR ....3-69
3.5.6 CLEANING BLADE ....3-70
3.5.7 CLEANING BRUSH ROLLER ....3-71
Replacement ....3-71
3.5.8 PAPER TRANSPORT BELT, PAPER SEPARATION POWER PACK ....3-72

3.5.9 REGISTRATION MOTOR.....3-73
3.5.10 DOUBLE-FEED DETECTION LED .....3-74
3.6 IMAGE TRANSFER UNIT.....3-75
3.6.1 EMPTYING THE DUST COLLECTION UNIT .....3-75
3.6.2 SEPARATING THE BELT UNIT AND BELT CLEANING UNIT .3-76
Disassembly and ITB Replacement .....3-76
3.6.3 REASSEMBLING THE BELT UNIT AND BELT CLEANING UNIT3-78
Before You Begin... .....3-78
Reassembling the Belt Unit and Cleaning Unit.....3-80
Dusting the ITB with Lubricant Powder .....3-82
3.6.4 ITB CLEANING UNIT.....3-83
Lubricant Blade .....3-84
Lubricant Brush Roller, Lubricant Bar.....3-84
ITB Cleaning Blade .....3-85
ITB Brush Cleaning Roller.....3-86
3.6.5 MUSIC AND ID SENSORS.....3-87
3.6.6 IMAGE TRANSFER POWER PACK.....3-88
3.6.7 BELT POSITION SENSOR.....3-90
3.7 FUSING UNIT .....3-91
3.7.1 REMOVING THE FUSING UNIT .....3-91
3.7.2 FUSING CLEANING UNIT.....3-93
Fusing Belt Strippers.....3-93
Oil Supply Roller Cleaning Roller, Oil Supply Roller.....3-95
3.7.3 FUSING LAMPS, DIVIDING THE FUSING UNIT .....3-96
3.7.4 FUSING UNIT ROLLERS, FUSING BELT.....3-99
Removing the Fusing Belt, Hot Roller, Heating Roller, Pressure Roller.....3-99
Lubrication after Replacement.....3-102
Adjusting the Gap Between Fusing Belt Strippers and Fusing Belt3-102
3.7.5 IMPORTANT WARNING ABOUT THERMOSTATS .....3-104
3.8 BOARDS.....3-105
3.8.1 PCB LAYOUT .....3-105
3.8.2 CONTROLLER .....3-108
When installing the new controller board.....3-108
After installing the controller board.....3-109
3.8.3 IPU/VBCU.....3-110

IPU/VBCU Removal ....3-110
VBCU Replacement ....3-112
3.8.4 HDD ....3-113
Before replacing the HDD unit ....3-113
Replacement Procedure ....3-113
After installing the new HDD unit ....3-114
3.8.5 PFB ....3-116
3.8.6 HVPS ....3-117
3.8.7 CHARGE ROLLER POWER PACK ....3-118
3.8.8 POTENTIAL SENSOR POWER PACK ....3-118
3.8.9 DRB ....3-119
3.8.10 DTMB ....3-120
3.8.11 PSU ....3-121
3.8.12 AC DRIVE BOARD ....3-122
3.8.13 MEMORY ....3-123
3.8.14 NVRAM ....3-124
Before You Begin… ....3-124
Upload NVRAM Data to SD Card ....3-124
Replace NVRAM ....3-124
Download NVRAM Data from SD Card ....3-125
3.9 MOTORS ....3-126
3.9.1 DRUM CLEANING MOTORS ....3-127
3.9.2 DEVELOPMENT MOTORS ....3-127
3.9.3 DRUM MOTOR ....3-128
Drum Motor Removal ....3-128
Drum Motor Reinstallation ....3-129
3.9.4 FUSING/EXIT MOTOR ....3-130
3.9.5 PTR MOTOR ....3-131
3.9.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR ....3-132
3.10 AIR FILTERS AND OZONE FILTERS ....3-134
3.10.1 UPPER FILTER BOX ....3-135
3.10.2 MIDDLE FILTER BOX ....3-136
3.10.3 LOWER FILTER BOX ....3-137
3.11 FIRMWARE UPDATE ....3-138
3.11.1 BEFORE YOU BEGIN… ....3-138
3.11.2 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE ....3-139

# TROUBLESHOOTING

**4. TROUBLESHOOTING .....4-1**
4.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS .....4-1
4.1.1 SERVICE CALL TABLE .....4-1
4.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS .....4-3
4.2 SERVICE CALL TABLES .....4-4
4.2.1 SC CODES GROUP 1: SCANNING .....4-4
4.2.2 SC CODES GROUP 2: EXPOSURE .....4-8
4.2.3 SC CODES GROUP 3: IMAGE DEVELOPMENT – 1 .....4-17
4.2.4 SC CODES GROUP 4: IMAGE DEVELOPMENT - 2 .....4-25
4.2.5 SC CODES GROUP 5: PAPER FEED .....4-35
4.2.6 SC CODES GROUP 6: DEVICE COMMUNICATION .....4-49
4.2.7 SC CODES GROUP 7: PERIPHERALS .....4-52
4.2.8 SC800:OVERALL SYSTEM .....4-71
4.2.10 SC900: MISCELLANEOUS .....4-84
4.2.11 ADDITIONAL SC CODES PRINTED IN SMC REPORTS .....4-89

# SERVICE TABLES

**5. SERVICE TABLES.....5-1**
5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE .....5-1
5.2 GROUP 1000 .....5-2
5.3 GROUP 2000 .....5-23
5.4 GROUP 3000 .....5-93
5.5 GROUP 4000 .....5-133
5.6 GROUP 5000 .....5-155
5.7 GROUP 6000 .....5-239
5.8 GROUP 7000 .....5-271
5.9 GROUP 8000 .....5-304

# DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS


**6. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS.....6-1**

6.1 GENERAL OVERVIEW.....6-1

6.1.1 MAIN MACHINE.....6-1

6.2 LASER UNIT.....6-3

6.2.1 DUAL BEAM WRITING.....6-3

6.2.2 LD SAFETY SWITCHES.....6-3

6.3 BOARDS.....6-5

6.3.1 OVERVIEW OF IMPORTANT COMPONENTS.....6-5

6.3.2 IPU.....6-6

SBU (Sensor Board Unit).....6-6

IPU (Image Processing Unit).....6-8

6.4 COPY PROCESS OVERVIEW.....6-9

6.4.1 RAISING AND LOWERING OF THE ITB UNIT.....6-9

6.4.2 THE COPY PROCESS.....6-10

6.5 SCANNER UNIT.....6-13

6.5.1 OVERVIEW.....6-13

6.5.2 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION.....6-14

6.5.3 SCANNER UNIT FAN AND ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER.....6-17

6.6 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNITS (PCU).....6-18

6.6.1 OVERVIEW.....6-18

6.6.2 AROUND THE DRUM.....6-20

6.6.3 DRUM DRIVE.....6-22

6.6.4 DRUM CHARGE.....6-23

YCM PCUs.....6-23

K PCU.....6-24

6.6.5 DRUM CLEANING AND LUBRICATION.....6-25

6.6.6 PCU VENTILATION.....6-26

Ozone Ventilation.....6-26

6.6.7 DEVELOPMENT UNIT.....6-27

Overview.....6-27

Development Unit Operation.....6-28

Development, PCU Unit Drive.....6-29

6.7 USED TONER COLLECTION.....6-30

6.7.1 USED TONER PATH ..... 6-30
6.7.2 EXCESS TONER COLLECTION COILS ..... 6-32
6.8 PROCESS CONTROL ..... 6-33
6.8.1 OVERVIEW OF PROCESS CONTROL ..... 6-33
6.8.2 COMPONENTS USED DURING PROCESS CONTROL ..... 6-34
Potential Sensor ..... 6-34
ID Sensor ..... 6-35
TD Sensor ..... 6-36
Temperature/Humidity Sensors ..... 6-37
6.8.3 LIST OF PROCESS CONTROL ACRONYMS ..... 6-38
6.8.4 IMPORTANT SP CODES RELATED TO PROCESS CONTROL 6-40
6.8.5 POTENTIAL CONTROL ..... 6-41
When is Potential Control Done? ..... 6-41
What is Done During Potential Control? ..... 6-44
6.8.6 MUSIC (MIRROR UNIT FOR SKEW AND INTERVAL CORRECTION) ..... 6-50
The Optical Path ..... 6-50
What does MUSIC do? ..... 6-52
When is MUSIC done? ..... 6-53
Location of the MUSIC Sensors ..... 6-54
How is MUSIC Done? ..... 6-55
3rd Mirror Position Adjustment ..... 6-58
Exposure Unit Temperature Sensors ..... 6-59
6.8.7 TONER SUPPLY CONTROL ..... 6-60
Overview ..... 6-60
Toner Supply Operation Flow ..... 6-62
6.9 IMAGE TRANSFER ..... 6-63
6.9.1 IMAGE TRANSFER OVERVIEW ..... 6-63
6.9.2 ITB DRIVE ..... 6-67
6.9.3 ITB LIFT ..... 6-68
6.9.4 TRANSFER POWER PACK ..... 6-70
6.9.5 ITB CLEANING ..... 6-72
6.9.6 ITB SPEED CONTROL ..... 6-74
6.9.7 ITB VENTILATION ..... 6-76
6.9.8 PAPER TRANSFER ..... 6-77
Paper Transfer Unit Overview ..... 6-77

Image Transfer and Separation....6-78
PTR Cleaning....6-79
PTR Lift....6-81
6.10 FUSING UNIT....6-83
6.10.1 OVERVIEW....6-83
Fusing Unit Components....6-83
Fusing Unit Specifications....6-85
Fusing Lamp Ratings....6-87
6.10.2 THERMISTORS, THERMOSTATS....6-90
6.10.3 FUSING UNIT DRIVE....6-91
6.10.4 STRIPPERS....6-92
6.10.5 FUSING BELT LUBRICATION AND CLEANING....6-93
6.10.6 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL....6-94
Basic Temperature Control....6-94
Temperature Adjustments....6-94
6.10.7 FUSING UNIT VENTILATION....6-95
6.10.8 PRESSURE ROLLER LIFT MECHANISM....6-96

# SPECIFICATIONS

**7. SPECIFICATIONS....7-1**
7.1 SPECIFICATIONS....7-1
7.1.1 MAIN FRAME D014/D015....7-1
Copying....7-1
Printing....7-5
Scanning....7-6
Original Feed: ARDF B652....7-8
7.1.2 OPTIONAL PERIPHERALS....7-9
LCT B473....7-9
LCT 4000 D350....7-10
8½ x 14" Paper Size Tray B474....7-11
9-Bin Mailbox B762....7-11
Cover Interposer Tray B704....7-12
Cover Interposer Tray B835....7-13
3000-Sheet Finisher B830....7-14
Punch Unit B831....7-16

2000-Sheet Finisher D373 .....7-17
3000-Sheet Finisher D374 .....7-22
Punch Unit B702 .....7-24
Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 B660 .....7-25
A3/11" x 17" Tray B331 .....7-25
Copy Tray B476 .....7-26
7.1.3 MACHINE CONFIGURATION .....7-27
Configuration 1 (with D373/D374 Finisher) .....7-27
Configuration 2 (with B830 Finisher) .....7-29
7.1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS .....7-31
Copier.....7-31
ARDF .....7-55

## B331 TRAY TYPE 850

SEE SECTION B331 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

## B660 Z FOLDING UNIT ZF4000

SEE SECTION B660 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

## B704 COVER INTERPOSER TYPE 3260

SEE SECTION B704 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

## B473/B474/B475 RT43 LCT

SEE SECTION B743/B474/B475 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

## B762 MAILBOX CS391

SEE SECTION B762 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

## B804/B805/D373/D374 SR3020/SR3030/SR4010/SR4020 FINISHER

SEE SECTION B804/B805/D373/D374 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

## B830 SR5000 FINISHER

SEE SECTION B830 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

## B835 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY CI5000

SEE SECTION B835 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

## D350 RT4000 A3/12 x 18 LCT

SEE SECTION D350 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

## D356 FAX OPTION TYPE C7500

SEE SECTION D356 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

INSTALLATION
D356 G3 Interface & Fax Option Type C7500

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT
D350 RT4000 A3/12X18 LCT

TROUBLESHOOTING
D373/D373 SR4010/SR4020 Saddle Stitch Finisher
B830 SR5000 100 Sheet Finisher
B704 Cover Interposer Type 3260
B835 Cover Interposer Tray CI5000
B762 Mailbox CS391
B660 Z Folding Unit ZF4000

TAB POSITION 1

TAB POSITION 2

TAB POSITION 3

TAB POSITION 4

Tab index continued on next page…

Tab index continued…


**SERVICE TABLES** — TAB POSITION 5

**DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS** — TAB POSITION 6

**SPECIFICATIONS** — TAB POSITION 7

**B743/B474/B475 RT43 LCT**

**B331 A3/11X17 Tray Type 850**

**S** — TAB POSITION 8

# Differences Between the D014/D015
# &
# B132/B200 Service Manuals.

**Detailed information, such as some replacement and adjustment procedures, and detailed descriptions have been omitted from this service manual. This is because the information is identical to the previous model B132/B200.**

**Please refer to the B132/B200 Service Manual for those procedures and descriptions omitted from this manual.**

# NEW FEATURES OF D014/D015

## RESPONSES TO REQUESTS FOR IMPROVEMENT

This section describes changes that were implemented in response to requests for improvement in the performance of the B132/B200.

### IMPROVED PRODUCTIVITY

#### *Copy Speed*

| Mode | B132/B200 | D014/D015 |
|---|---|---|
| K | B132/B200: 60 cpm | D014: 60 cpm<br>D015: 75 cpm |
| FC | B132/B181: 45 cpm | D014: 55 cpm |
| | B200: 55 cpm | D015: 70 cpm |

Copying speed has been improved due to:

1. PxP toner with a lower melting point.
2. Better fusing control. This was achieved with a more efficient ac power supply to the fusing unit.

#### *Shorter Warm-up Time*

| B132/B200 | D014/D015 |
|---|---|
| 300 sec. | D014 NA: 90 sec.<br>D014/D015 EU: 75 sec.<br>D015 NA: 75 sec. |

The shorter warm-up time was achieved by:

- Adopting a sponge hot roller for fusing; the nip is wider, so the fusing temperature is lower
- Adopting an extremely thin heating roller used at lower temperature

Differences Between the D014/D015 & B132/B200

### *Overall System*

- The system timing has been overhauled based on the B132/B200 base control modules.

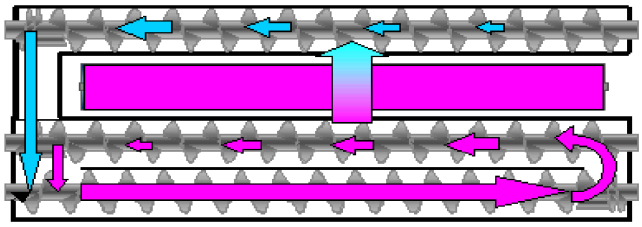
## IMPROVED RELIABILITY

### *Longer Service Life of Developer*

Servicing has been improved by extending the service life of the developer. This was achieved by adopting a pre-mixing developer system. Toner and carrier are pre-mixed in the STC (Soft Toner Cartridge with 90 wt% toner, 10 wt% carrier). The toner and carrier are supplied together to refresh the developer already in the development units. High image quality can be maintained for a greater length of time with this system.

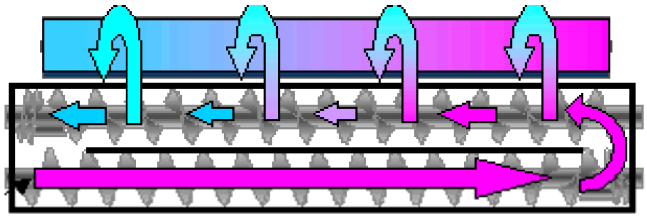
### *Better Stability of Image Density*

Compared to the B132/B200, the consistency of the image coverage has been dramatically increased. This was accomplished by the adoption of the single-direction development system.



D014/D015

ho-196c



**B132/B200**

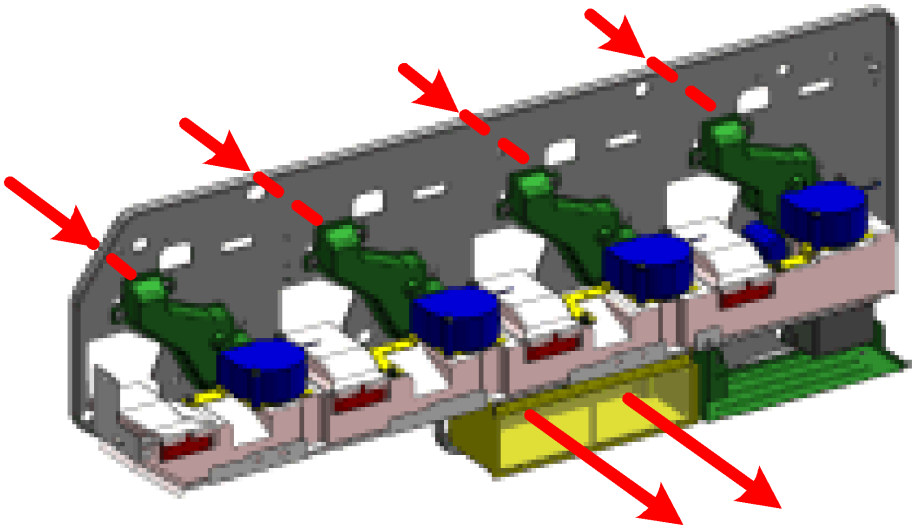
ho-196f
2ho-dev4

- The developer in the D014/D015 development unit is circulated in one direction. This achieves better uniformity in the application of the toner to the developer sleeve.
- Compared to the B132/B200, this means less variation in image density from left to right and from top to bottom on the output pages.

Ventilation: More Effective Cooling

The adoption of the PxP toner with its lower melting point means that the machine must be adequately ventilated to keep the interior of the machine cooler.

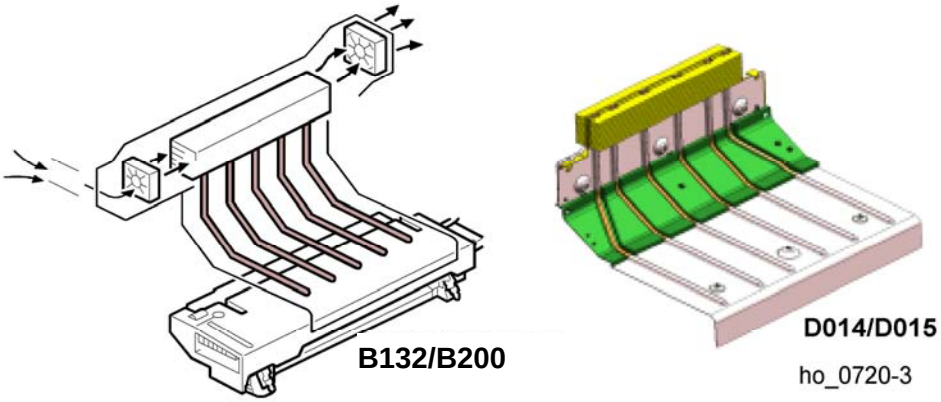
1. Development Unit Cooling



ho_0720-2

- A single fan (near the front door) draws in fresh air from outside the machine and blows it across the heat sink.
- An exhaust fan has been added to each development unit to draw hot air away from the heat sink.

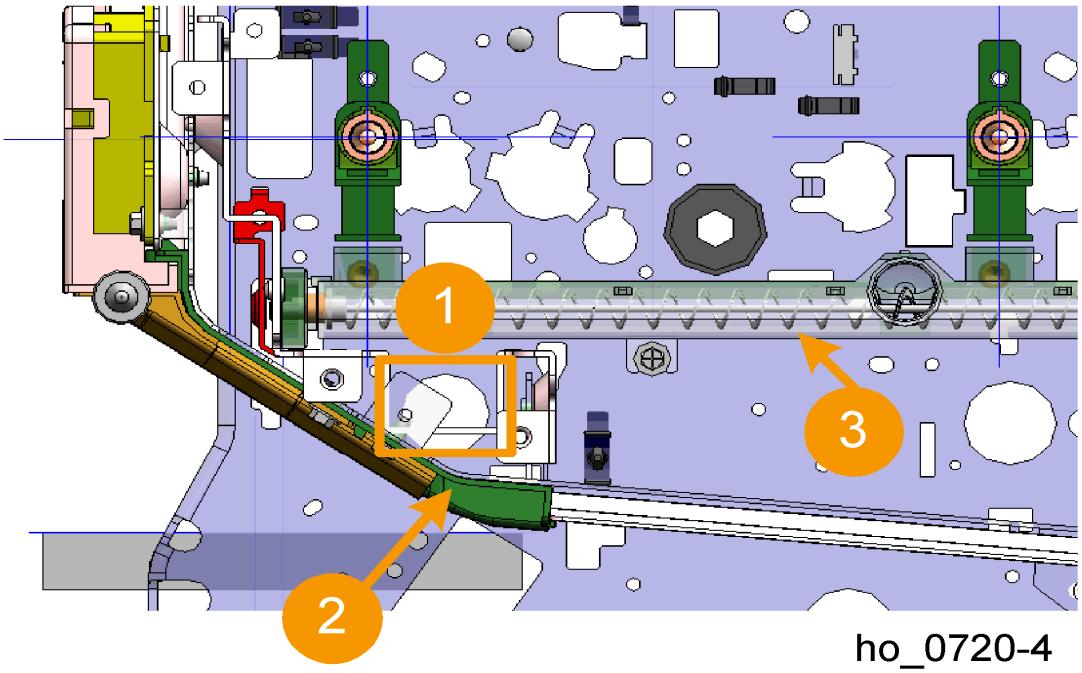
2. The heat pipe panels over the fusing unit have been overhauled.




ho_0720-3

- The number of heat pipes has been increased and they have been rearranged.
- The heat sink cooling fan has been replaced with a fan with a more powerful motor that can move more air.

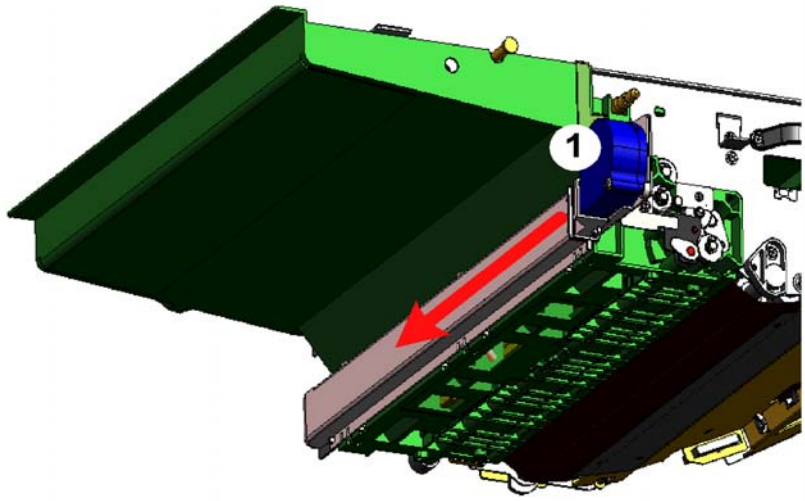
3. The used toner pipe path has been extended.




ho_0720-4

- The air vent ① below the Y PCU has been enlarged so that it can handle a greater volume of air. ② is the heat pipe, ③ is the used toner conduit.
- Air is drawn into the vent from the fan at the front door.

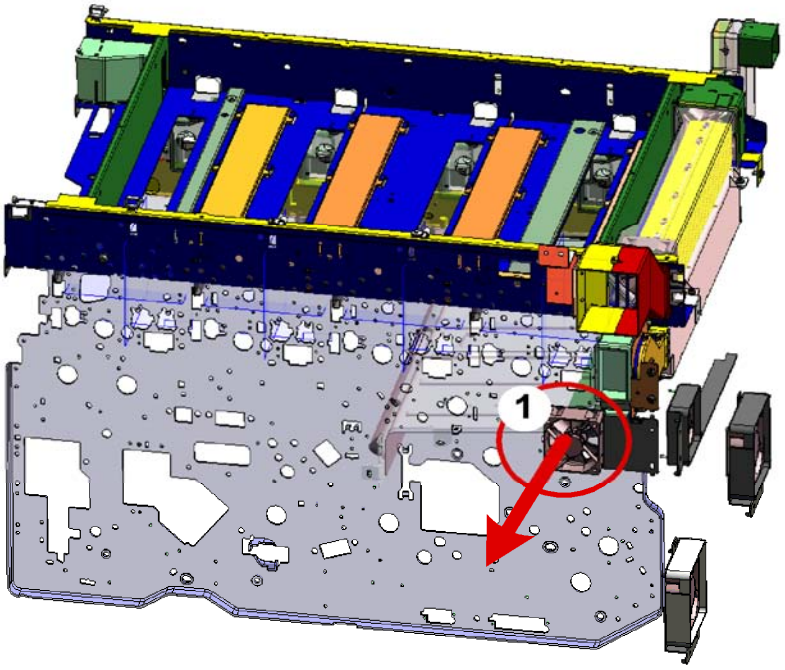
4. New cooling airflow duct




ho_0819-1

An air flow duct ① has been added to the ITB cleaning unit to improve ventilation.

5. New cooling fan for the paper drive unit

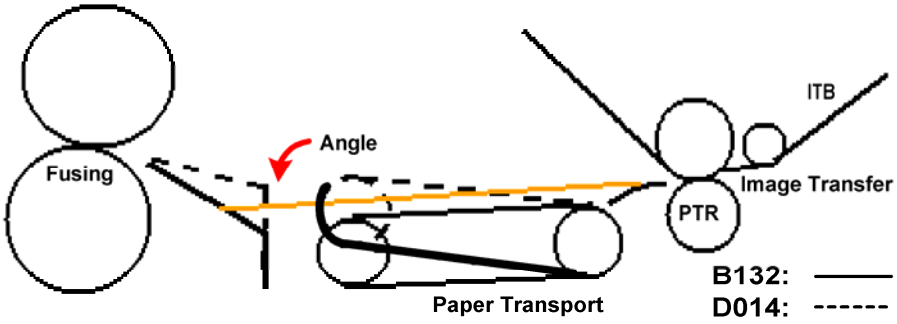



ho_0819-2

A cooling fan ① has been added to the paper drive unit to improve ventilation.

## *Paper Feed*

1. Handling Thick Paper

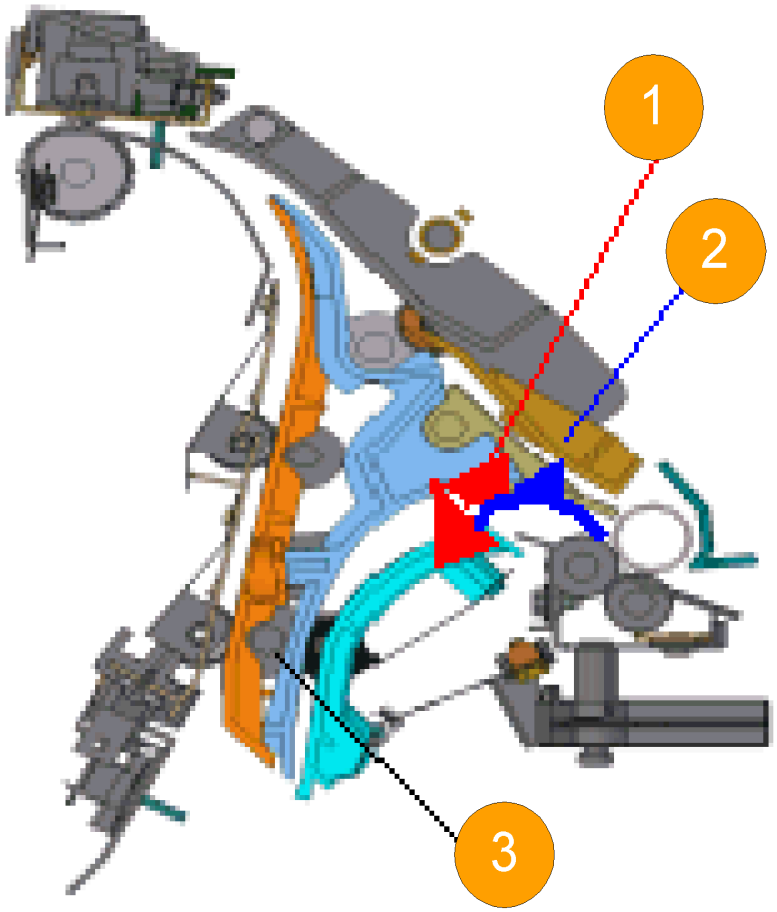



As shown in the diagram above, the paper feed path has been changed. The dotted lines show the shape of the paper feed path of the D014/D015, the solid lines the path in the B132/B200.

- The paper transport unit and the fusing unit entrance guide were both raised, so the angle is much shallower. The change in the angle allows thick paper to feed much easier. Even 300 g A4 LEF paper can now feed more efficiently.
- The area where the paper contacts the transport belt has also been enlarged.

### *Paper Output*

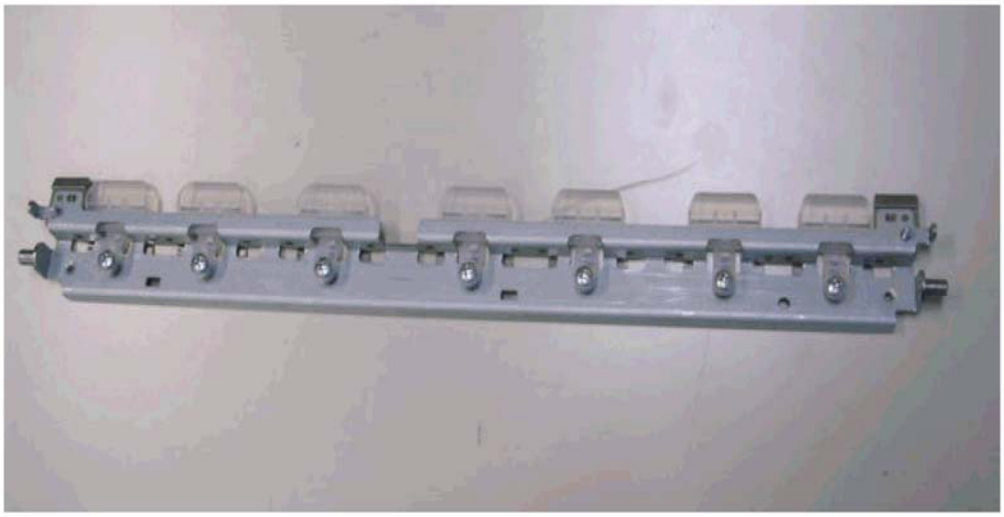
The amount of paper curl (compared with the B132/B200) has been reduced.




ho_0720-6

- To reduce the amount of buckling of the paper in the paper path, the inverter relay roller ③ feeds all paper at the same speed after it passes the de-curler. The gap between the guide plates ① was enlarged.
- The curvature ② of the turn in the paper path between the de-curler and the junction gate has been enlarged.
- Inverter relay roller ③ has been added.

## *Elimination of Pawl Marks on Prints*



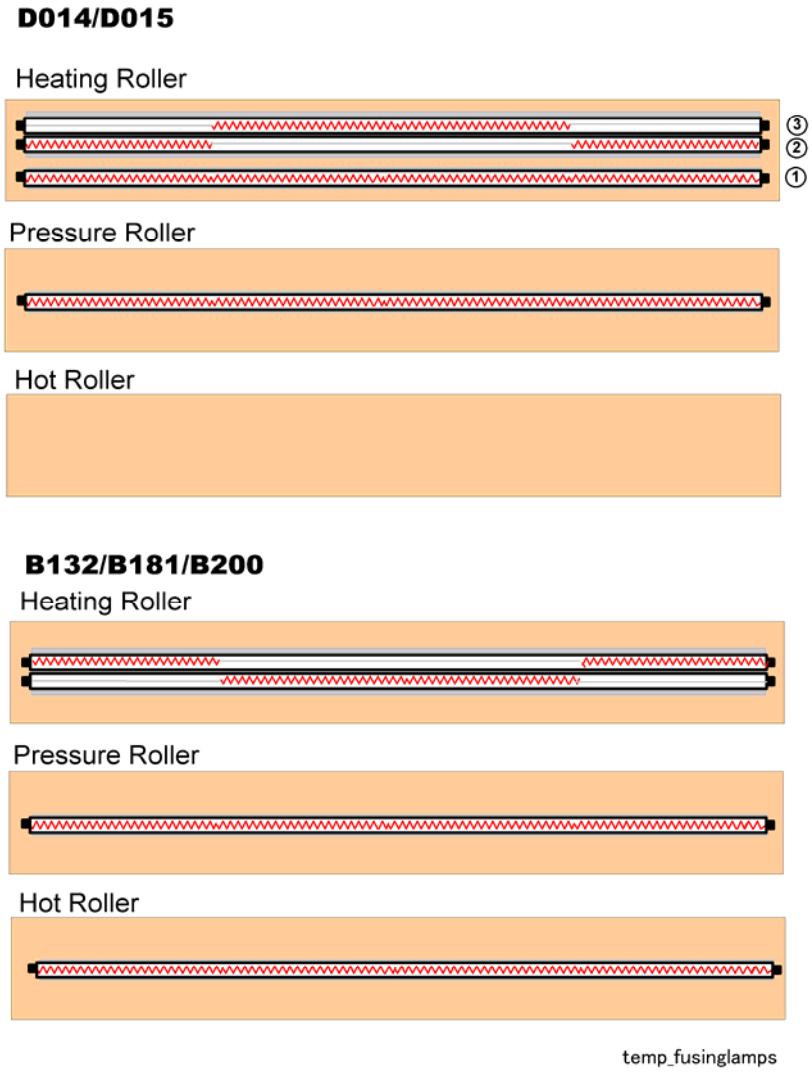
d014n001

A new fusing belt stripper eliminates shiny stripper marks on prints.

- A new stripper plate has been designed to strip copies that occasionally stick to the fusing belt. The points of the stripper plate are flat PFA resin plates, not sharp points.
- The new PxP toner, which contains a new type of wax, separates more easily from the belt so the sheet is less likely to stick to the fusing belt.
- The new soft-sponge material of the hot roller also means that paper is less likely to stick to the fusing belt.

## *Fusing Lamp Rearrangement in the Heating Roller*

The layout of the fusing lamps has been rearranged to ensure a more efficient distribution of heat.




In the Heating Roller:

- Lamp ① heats the entire length of the fusing belt.
- Lamp ② heats only the ends of the fusing belt. (Used only for large paper sizes.)
- Lamp ③ heats only the center of the fusing belt. (Used for smaller, thick paper sizes; lamp ② is not used.)

This allows better control of the heat applied to the fusing belt, based on the requirements of the paper size and paper type selected for the job.

## *Reduction of Pressure on the Hot Roller*

A new pressure roller lift mechanism has been adopted to raise the pressure roller and keep it against the hot roller only while the machine is printing.

At the end of the job, the pressure roller is lowered and separated from the hot roller.

If the pressure roller remains pressed up against the soft sponge material of the hot roller while the machine is idle, this could permanently warp the shape of the soft hot roller and cause problems during image transfer from belt to paper.

## *Handling Thicker Paper*

The D014/D015 can handle paper weights up to 300 g/m$^2$ (110 lb Cover). This is a significant improvement.

The time in the nip for thick paper (Thickness 2) with the B132/B200 was 80 ms. The time in the nip for Thick 1 with the D014/D015 is 100 ms.

For thick paper:

- The nip of the D014/D015 is wider than the nip of the B132/B200.
- The line speed of the D014/D015 adjusts to slower speeds to match the thickness of the paper.

Other modifications were done to allow handling thicker paper:

- A guide mylar was added at the "turn" where the paper feeds from the paper trays, to reduce the amount of bending on the leading edge of paper as it leaves the tray.
- The paper path from the bypass tray was changed to straighten the paper path from feeding> registration> image transfer. This makes feeding thick A4 LEF much easier.
- The paper path of the duplex unit was modified slightly to reduce bending in paper at the "turn", and the junction gate solenoid has more strength to handle thicker paper.

The table below shows significant improvement in handling thicker paper.

| Feed Station | B132/B200 | D014/D015 | UP |
|---|---|---|---|
| Paper Tray | 52.3 to 127 g/m$^2$<br>14 to 47 lb. Cover | 52.3 to 216 g/m$^2$<br>14 to 80 lb. Cover | 70% |
| Bypass | 52.3 to 256 g/m$^2$<br>14 to 94 lb. Cover | 52.3 to 300 g/m$^2$<br>14 to 110 lb. Cover | 17% |
| Duplexer | 64 to 127.9 g/m$^2$<br>17 to 47 lb. Cover | 64 to 163 g/m$^2$<br>17 to 90 lb. Cover | 27% |

# OPERABILITY

Some improvements have been done for the operator.

### *Handling Paper Jams*

The B132/B200 displayed only a message to alert the operator about a jam or double-feed. The D014/D015 has a fully animated system to guide the operator step-by-step through jam removal.

### *Easier Use of Paper Tray End Fence*

With the B132/B200, the operator must push and hold down a side lever while moving the end fence. With the D014/D015, the operator need only press the end fence slightly to move it to the position for a standard paper size.

### *New Arrow Indicator on Side Fence Lever*

An arrow indicator embossed on the side fence reminds the operator where to push to release and move the side fence.

### *Image Quality Improvement*

This section describes the changes that have been implemented to improve image quality for the D014/D015.

# ADOPTION OF SINGLE-DIRECTION DEVELOPER/TONER SUPPLY

The adoption of the single-direction developer/toner supply method has resulted in the following improvements.

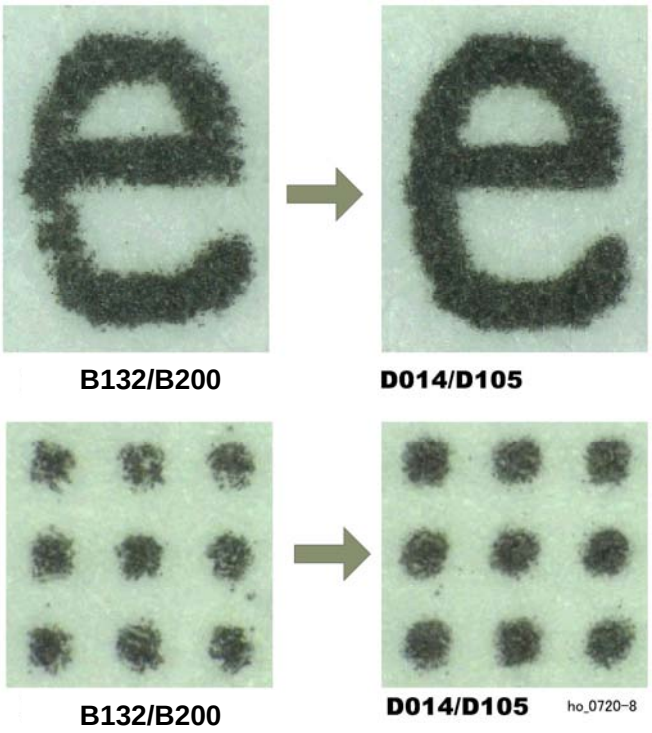
- **Uniformity of Image Density**
  With the B132/B200, there are minor problems with images becoming faint (front to back) because the agitator moves the toner front to back. There were variations of less than 25% with the B132/B200, but this has been reduced to less than 15% with the D014/D015. This reduction was made possible with the adoption of a one-direction development system in the development units.
- **Stabilization of Image Quality**
  B132/B200 image quality shows some repeat density fluctuation (0.15), but this has been reduced with the D014/D015. The improvement was achieved by using a stable-density development system.

- **Stabilization of High Quality Images**
  With the B132/B200, it was found that there was some image deterioration in high quality images created with high duty coverage during continuous paper feed. (image quality deteriorated after about 20K copies). The improvement was achieved by adoption of the developer/toner pre-mixing system.

## ADOPTION OF NEW PXP TONER

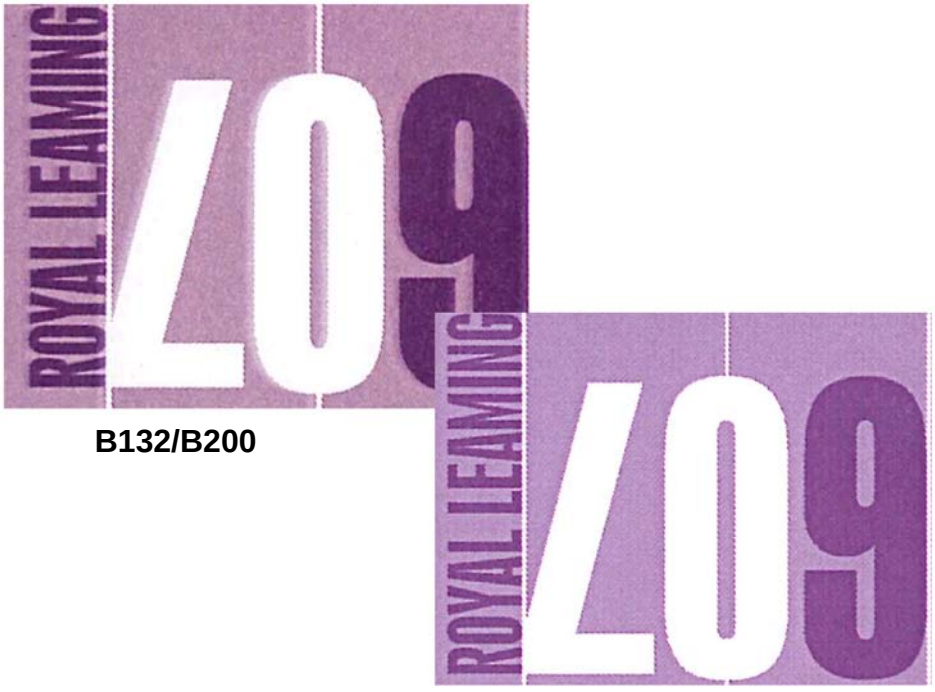
The adoption of the new PxP toner has achieved the following dramatic improvements in image quality.

**Granularity, Reproduction of Dots**




The difference in the granularity of B132/B200 pulverized toner (6.8 μm) and D014/D015 PxP toner (5 μm) toner has a significant effect on image quality. The D014/D015 toner with toner granules of smaller diameter reproduces a much better image with dots of 0.4, compared with 0.5 of the B132/B200.

### *Sharpening Text*




**B132/B200**

ho_0720-8a

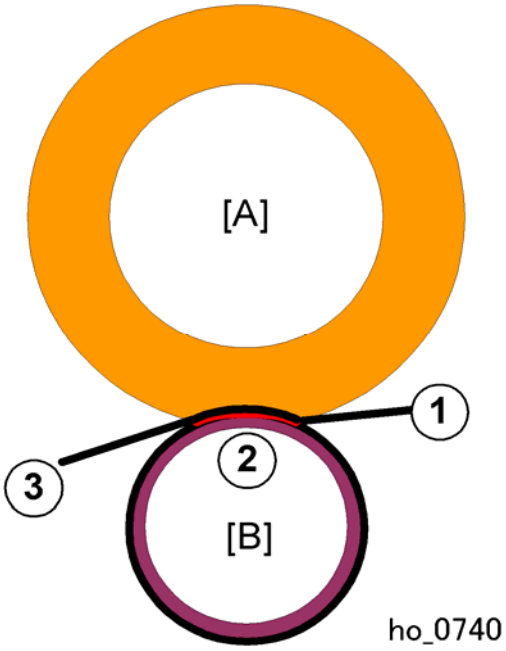
**D014/D105**

There were requests from customers for sharper reproduction of text characters (reducing the "halo" effect around text characters). Better text reproduction was achieved with better control over the rotation of the development roller and drum and changing the ratio of their rotation. The drum and development roller are driven by separate motors in the D014/D015.

- **Blurring at the Trailing Edges of Images**
  Many customers requested elimination of the blurring at the trailing edges of images. This problem was solved with the development rollers and OPC drums rotating slightly slower relative to line speed.

## ELIMINATION OF SHINY PAWL MARKS ON PRINTS

Many customers requested elimination of the shiny streaks at the trailing edges of sheets that were caused by the strippers that removed paper from the fusing belt.
The problem of paper separation from the fusing belt was solved in two ways:



ho_0740

- The design of the fusing unit was changed. The hot roller [A] is composed of soft sponge. When the pressure roller [B] presses into the hot roller from below this creates a much wider nip. The paper ① enters the wider nip ② and when it exits the nip at ③ the curvature of the nip points the paper downward. This improves separation of the paper from the fusing belt.

d014n001

- The fusing belt strippers were replaced by a new stripper plate equipped with flat soft plates (not points) that will not leave marks on the paper.

# COMPARISON OF CHANGES IN BASIC OPERATION

| | D014/D015 | | | B132/B200 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Copy Speed | D014 | FC: 55 cpm, B&W: 60 cpm | | B132/B200 | FC: 45 cpm, B&W 60 cpm |
| | D015 | FC: 70 cpm B&W: 75 cpm | | B132/B200 | FC: 55 cpm B&W: 60 cpm |
| Warm-up Time | EU/AP | Less than 75 sec. | | < 300 sec. | |
| | NA | D014/D015 | < 90 sec. | | |
| | D014/D015 | < 75 sec. | | | |
| First Copy | FC | D014/D015 | 7.5 sec. | 7.5 sec. | |
| | D014/D015 | 6.4 sec. | | | |
| | B&W | D014/D015 | 5.7 sec. | 6.5 sec. | |
| | D014/D015 | 4.9 sec. | | | |
| Power Specifications | NA | D014: 120V 16A 60 Hz D015: 208-240V 12A 60 Hz | | 120V 16A 60 Hz | |
| | EU/AP | 220-240V 12A 50-60 Hz | | 220 to 240V 8.7A 50/60 Hz | |
| Max Power Consumption | NA | D014: Less than 1920W D015: Less than 2400W | | < 1920 W | |
| | EU/AP | D014/D015: Less than 2400W | | < 1920 W | |
| Line Speed | | | | | |

Differences Between the D014/D015 & B132/B200

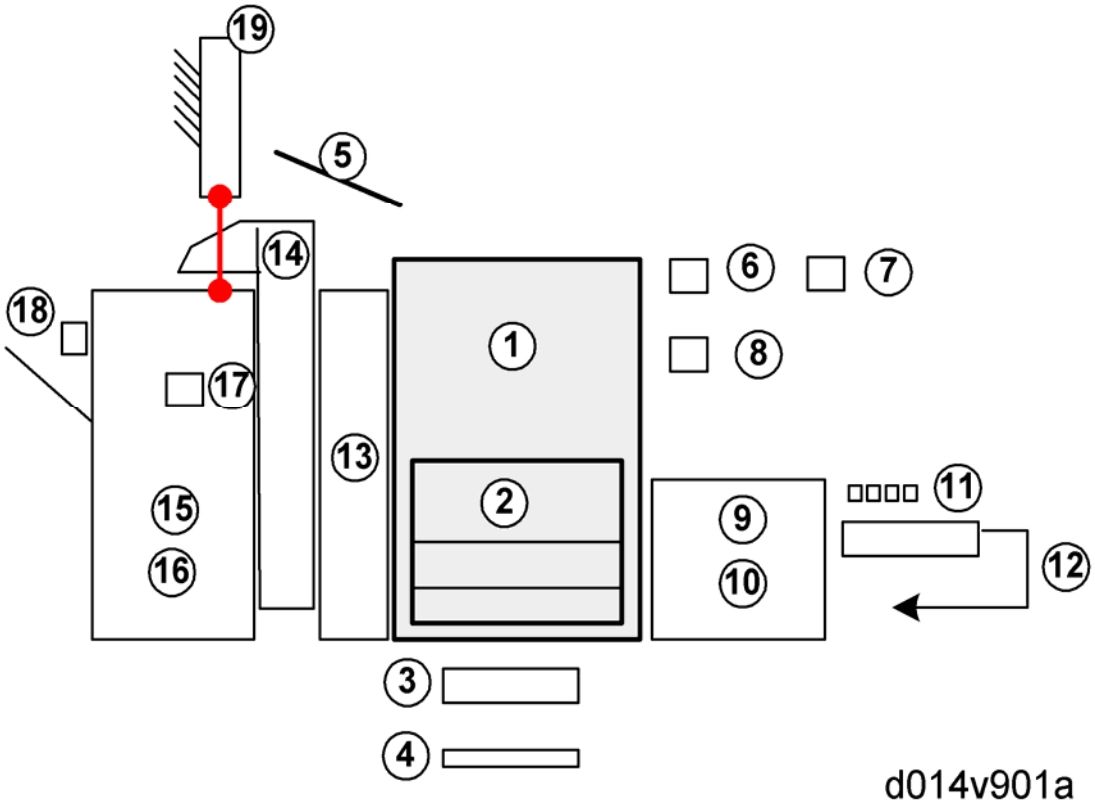
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Normal Paper | D014: 282 mm/s<br>D015: 352.8 mm/s | B132/B200 282 mm/s |
| Thick Paper | D014/D015: Thk 1: 176.4 mm/s,<br>Thk 2, Thk 3: 141 mm/s | B132/B200: 141 mm/s |
| OHP | D014/D015 141 mm/s | B132/B200 100 mm/s |

### *Comments*

- **Warm-up Time**. The warm-up time is much faster. This is achieved with the newly designed fusing unit and low melting-point toner.
- **First Copy**. The first copy time is much faster due to the adoption of the new fusing unit and low melting-point toner.

# SYSTEM CONFIGURATION AND NEW OPTIONS

## *Configuration 1 (with D373/D374 Finisher)*



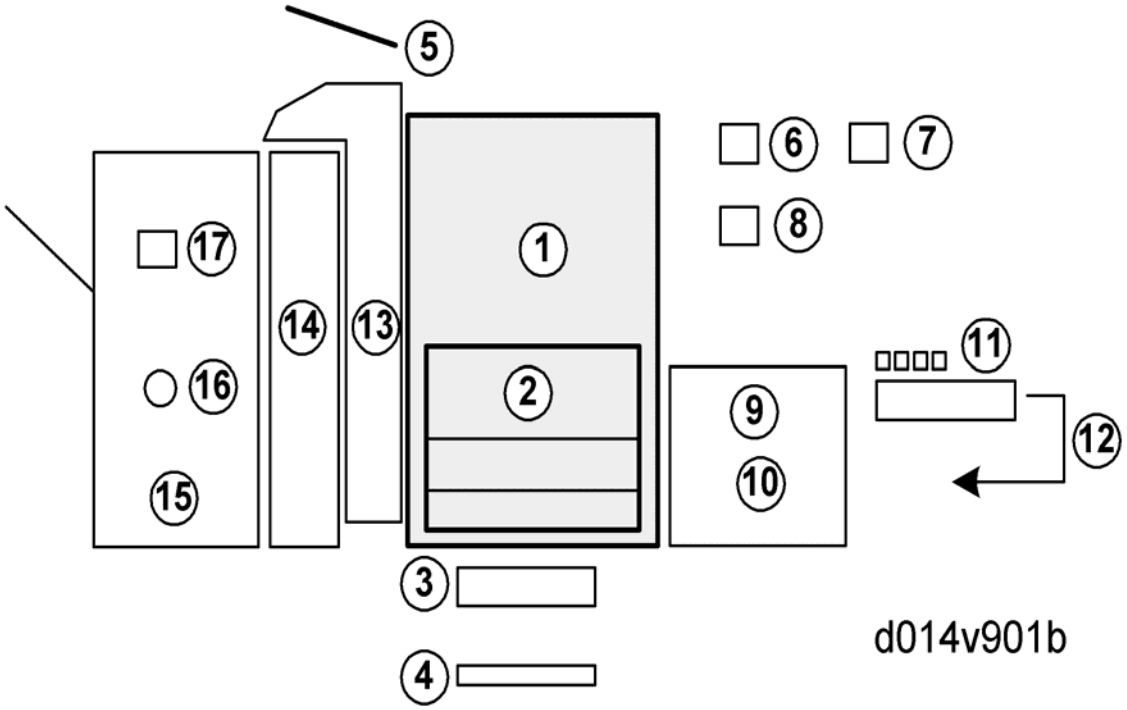

| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ① | D014/D015 | Main unit |
| ② | Tandem Tray | Built into main unit |
| ③ | A3/11"x17" Tray Type (B331) | Option for tandem tray |
| ④ | Tab Sheet Holder Type (B499) | Option for universal tray |
| ⑤ | Copy Tray (B756) | For no finishers |
| ⑥ | Key Counter Bracket (B452) | Counter option |
| ⑦ | Key Counter Interface Unit Type (A) (B870) | Board required for key counter |

Differences Between the D014/D015 & B132/B200

| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ⑧ | Card Reader Bracket (B498) | Counter option |
| ⑨ | LCT 4000 (D350) *1 | Only one of these options can be installed. |
| ⑩ | A4/LT LCT (B473) | |
| ⑪ | LCT Adapter (B699) | Required for LCT B473 |
| ⑫ | LG Unit for A4/LT LCT (B474) | Option for LCT B473 |
| ⑬ | Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 (B660) *1 | |
| ⑭ | Cover Interposer Tray (B704) | For D373 (2000-sheet), D374 (3000-sheet) finishers only. Only 1 tray. Cannot be installed with Mail Box (B762). |
| ⑮ | Finisher SR4020 (D373) *1 | 2000-sheet finisher, 50 staple, Booklet folding and stapling |
| ⑯ | Finisher SR4010 (D374) *1 | 3000-sheet finisher, 50 staple, corner stapling only |
| ⑰ | Punch Unit (B702) | For either finisher D373 or D374 |
| ⑱ | Output Jogger Unit (B703) | For either finisher D373 or D374 |
| ⑲ | Mail Box CS391 (B762) | For D373 (2000-sheet), D374 (3000-sheet finishers only). Cannot be installed with Cover Interposer Tray (B704) |

*1 New options for this machine.

### *Configuration 2 (with B830 Finisher)*




| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ① | D014/D015 | Main unit |
| ② | Tandem Tray | Built into main unit |
| ③ | A3/11"x17" Tray Type (B331) | Option for tandem tray |
| ④ | Tab Sheet Holder Type (B499) | Option for universal tray |
| ⑤ | Copy Tray (B756) | For no finishers |
| ⑥ | Key Counter Bracket (B452) | Counter option |
| ⑦ | Key Counter Interface Unit Type A (B870) | Board |
| ⑧ | Card Reader Bracket (B498) | Counter option |
| ⑨ | LCT 4000 (D350 | Only one can be installed. |
| ⑩ | A4/LT LCT (B473) | |

Differences Between the D014/D015 & B132/B200

| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ⑪ | LCT Adapter (B699) | Required for LCT B473 to adjust height. |
| ⑫ | LG Unit for A4/LT LCT (B474) | Option for LCT B473 |
| ⑬ | Cover Interposer Tray CI 5000 (B835) | Two source trays. Can be installed with 3000-sheet finisher B830 only. |
| ⑭ | Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 (B660) | Can be installed with D373, D374, B830 finishers. |
| ⑮ | Finisher SR5000 (B830) | 3000-Sheet finisher, 100 staples, jogger standard. |
| ⑯ | Finisher Adapter (D375) | For Finisher B830 |
| ⑰ | Punch Unit PU 5000 (B831) | For 3000-sheet finisher B830 only. |

# NEW OPTIONS FOR B132/B200

These are the options available for D014/D015. Only the LCIT 4000 (D350) is a new model. The other options are used with other Ricoh machines.

## *New Peripheral*

- **LCT 4000 (D350)**. New but based on the design of the B834 introduced with the B286. The D350 has only one 2,000 sheet tray.

## *Other Peripherals*

- **Finisher SR4020 (D373)**. 2000-sheet booklet finisher (50 staple). Capable of both corner and booklet stapling.
- **Finisher SR4010 (D374)**. 3000-sheet booklet finisher (50 staple). Basically the same as the SR4020 but features corner stapling only.
- **Finisher SR5000 (B830).** Requires an adapter kit to accommodate the faster speed of the D014/D015. A jogger unit is built-in (no installation required).
- **Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 (B660)**. Can be installed with the 2000-Sheet Finisher (D373), 3000-Sheet Finisher (D374), or 3000-Sheet Finisher (B830).
- **Cover Interposer Tray CI 5000 (B835)**. Equipped with two trays for feeding slip sheets. Installed on the 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 only.
- **Cover Interposer Tray (B704)**. Equipped with one tray for feeding slip sheets. Installed on the 2000-Sheet Finisher (D373) or 3000-Sheet Finisher (D374). Cannot be installed with Mail Box B762.
- **Mail Box (B762)**. Installed on the 2000-Sheet Finisher (D373) or 3000-Sheet Finisher (D374). Cannot be installed with Cover Interposer Tray (B704).
- **Fax Option Type C7500**. The base fax unit can accommodate both G3 and G4 boards, but only G3 will be available overseas. (The G4 option will be available only in Japan.)

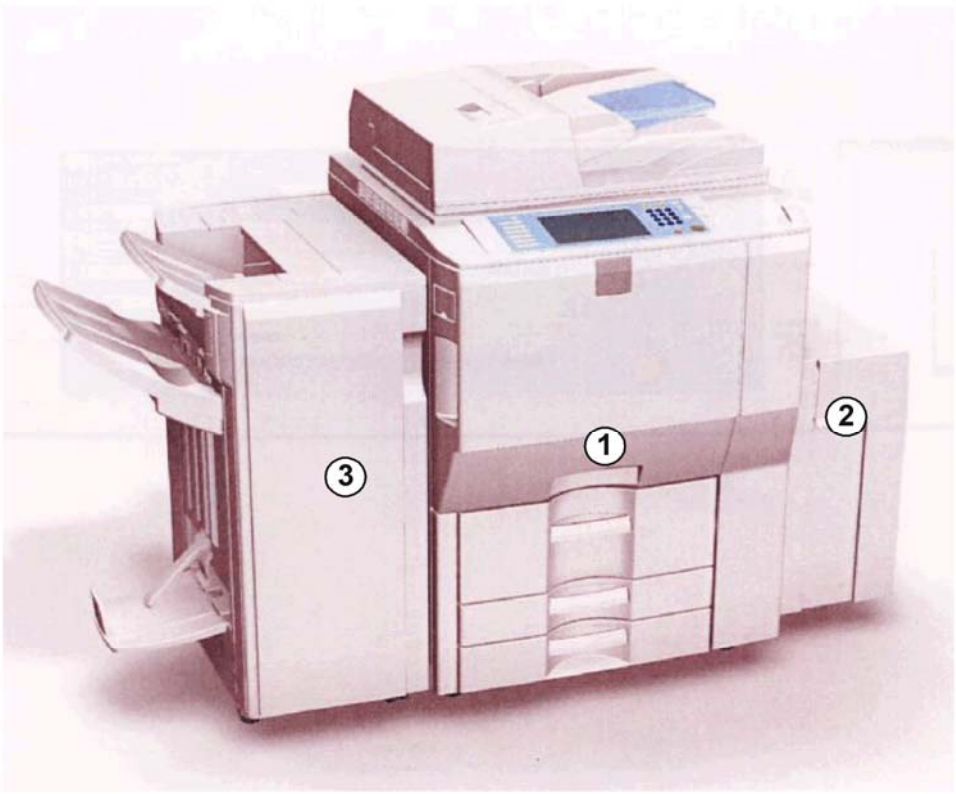
## MFP OPTIONS (LISTED ALPHABETICALLY)

| Option | Prod. No. | Config. |
|---|---|---|
| Bluetooth Interface Unit Type 3245 | B826 | Board |
| Browser Unit Type D | D377 | SD Card |
| Copy Connector Type 2105 | B328 | Board |
| Copy Data Security Unit Type F | B829 | Board |
| Data Overwrite Security Unit Type H | D377 | SD Card |
| Fax Option Type C7500 | D336 | Board |
| File Format Converter Type E | D377 | Board |
| G3 Interface Unit Type 7500 | D357 | Board |
| Gigabit Ethernet D377*[1] | D377 | Board |
| HDD Encryption Unit Type A | D377 | SD Card |
| IEEE 1284 Interface Board Type A | B679 | Board |
| IEEE802.11a/g Interface Unit Type J | D377 | Board |
| IEEE802.11g Interface Unit Type K | D377 | Board |
| Java VM Card Type E | D377 | SD Card |
| PostScript 3 Unit Type C7500 | D378 | SD Card |
| Printer/Scanner Unit Type 7500 | D376 | SD Card |

*[1]: The EFI (Fiery) Controller currently under development will be connected via the Gigabit Ethernet Board.

# APPEARANCE OF ACTUAL CONFIGURATIONS

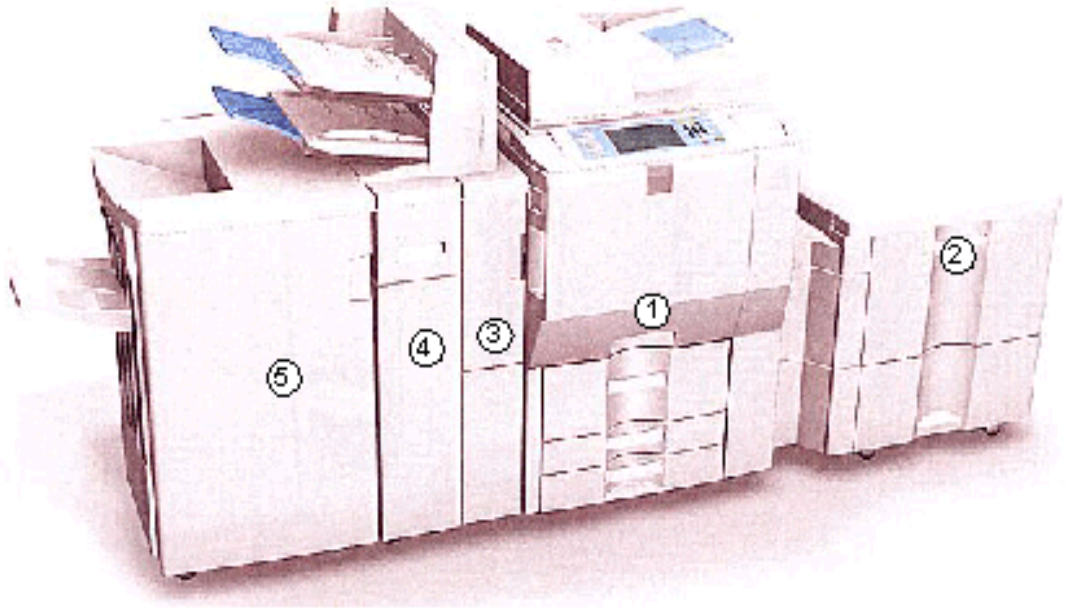
## *Configuration Sample for General Office Customers*




d014v901d

| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ① | D014/D015 | Main unit |
| ② | LCT 473 | Option |
| ③ | Finisher SR4020 (D373) | 2000-sheet finisher, 50 staple, Booklet folding and stapling |

# CONFIGURATION SAMPLE FOR LIGHT PRODUCTION CUSTOMERS




d014v901c

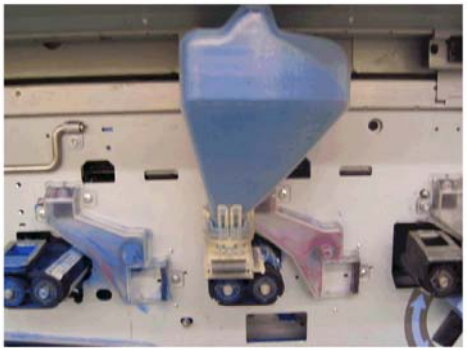
| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ① | D014/D015 | Main unit |
| ② | LCT 4000 (D350) | New option. |
| ③ | Cover Interposer Tray CI 5000 (B835) | Two source trays. |
| ④ | Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 (B660) | |
| ⑤ | Finisher SR5000 (B830) | |

## *More Details About Design Changes*

This is a summary of the most important design changes in the D014/D015. For more details, please refer to Section 6 of the D014/D015 manual.

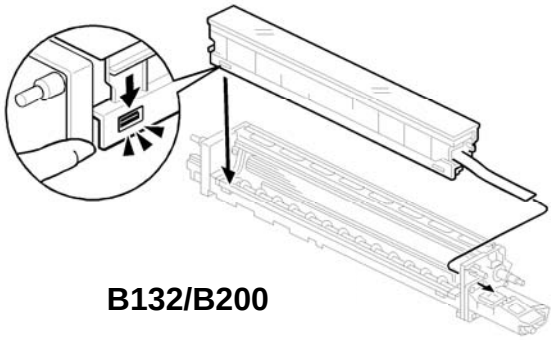
# PCU (PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT)

## *Developer Filling, Replacement*



ho_0730

**D014/D015**



b132i106

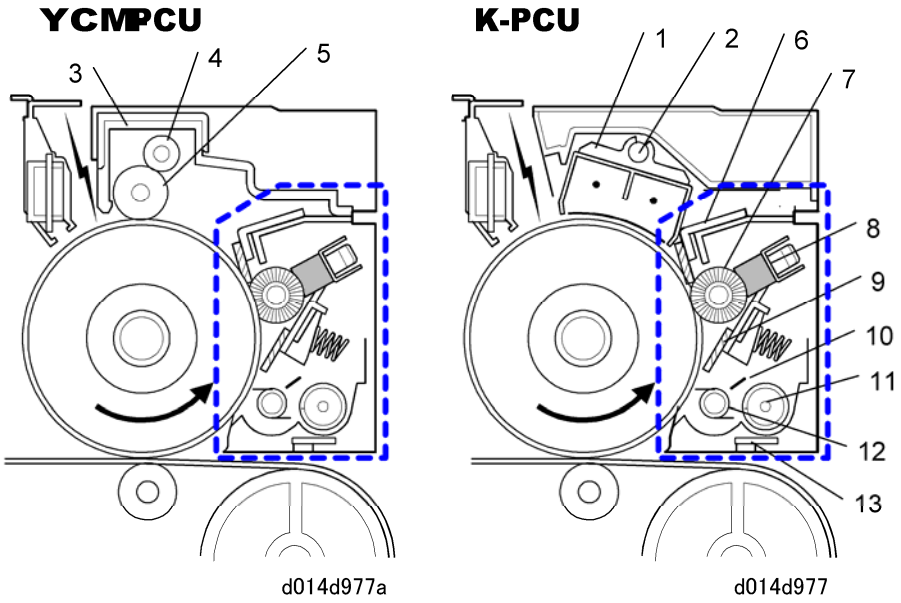
**B132/B200**

The B132/B200 uses a plastic developer container installed inside the PCU. With the D014/D015, the developer is poured from a newly designed developer bottle attached to the front end of a PCU. After filling, the bottle is detached and discarded. With the D014/D015, it is not necessary to remove the PCUs from the machine in order to fill them with developer.

## *PCU Design*

The PCU units have been redesigned. In the previous model, all the PCUs had the same structure. In this machine, the K PCU employs the charge corona wire system that is commonly used in other machines. The other PCUs (Y, C, M) use charge rollers just like the B132/B200.

## *Different Designs of YCM PCU and K PCU*



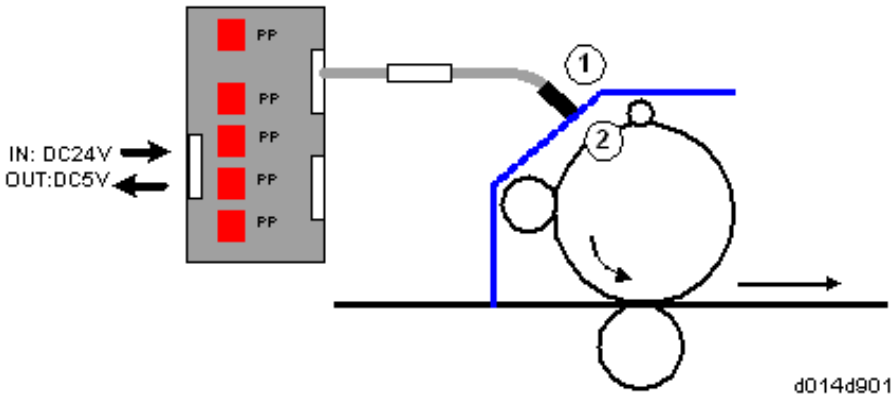

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Charge Corona Unit (Scorotron type) | Only the K PCU uses a charge corona unit. |
| 2 | Charge Corona Wire Cleaner | |
| 3 | Charge Roller Unit | The Y, M, C PCUs use charge rollers. |
| 4 | Charge Roller Cleaning Roller | |
| 5 | Charge Roller | |
| 6 | Lubricant Blade | These items comprise the PCU cleaning system. The same parts and system are used in all of the four PCU units. |
| 7 | Lubricant Brush Roller | |
| 8 | Lubricant Bar | |
| 9 | Cleaning Blade | |
| 10 | Cleaning Brush Roller Flicker | |
| 11 | Toner Collection Coil | |
| 12 | Collection Coil | |
| 13 | Quenching LED | |

Note

- The OPC drums of the B132/B200 and D014/D015 are not interchangeable.

# POTENTIAL SENSORS

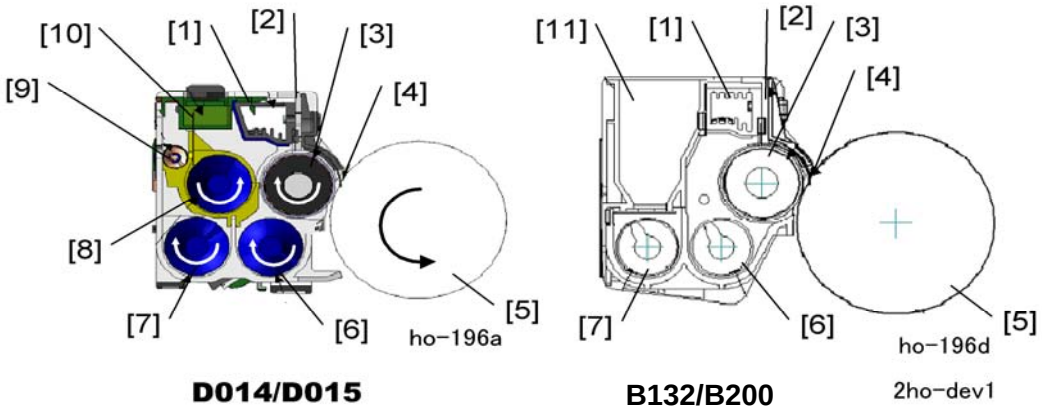
## *Potential Sensor Postion*




The drum potential sensors (x4) no longer reside inside the PCUs. They are attached to the main machine ① just above each PCU ②. This new arrangement keeps the potential sensors free of toner and dust during servicing.

# DEVELOPMENT UNIT

## *Cross-Section of Development Unit*




**D014/D015** **B132/B200**

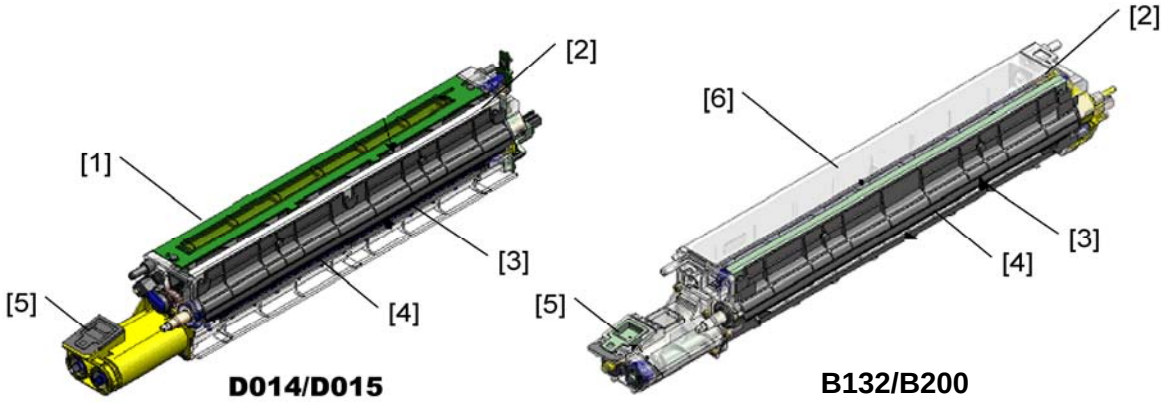
| | D014/D015 | B132/B200 |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Heat Sink | Heat Sink |
| 2 | Doctor Blade (t=2.0) | Doctor Blade (t=2.0) |
| 3 | Development Roller | Development Roller |
| 4 | Entrance Seal | Entrance Seal |
| 5 | Drum (diameter 60) | Drum (diameter 60) |
| 6 | Toner Collection Auger (dia. 22) | Developer Auger 1 (dia. 18) |
| 7 | Mixing Auger (diameter 22) | Developer Auger 2 (dia. 18) |
| 8 | Supply Auger (dia. 22) | --- |
| 9 | Used Toner Auger | --- |
| 10 | Filter | --- |
| 11 | --- | Developer Cartridge |

**Note**: The D014/D015 does not contain a developer cartridge. The PCU is filled with developer from a newly designed bottle. The PCU does not need to be removed from the

Differences Between the D014/D015 & B132/B200

machine in order to fill it with developer.

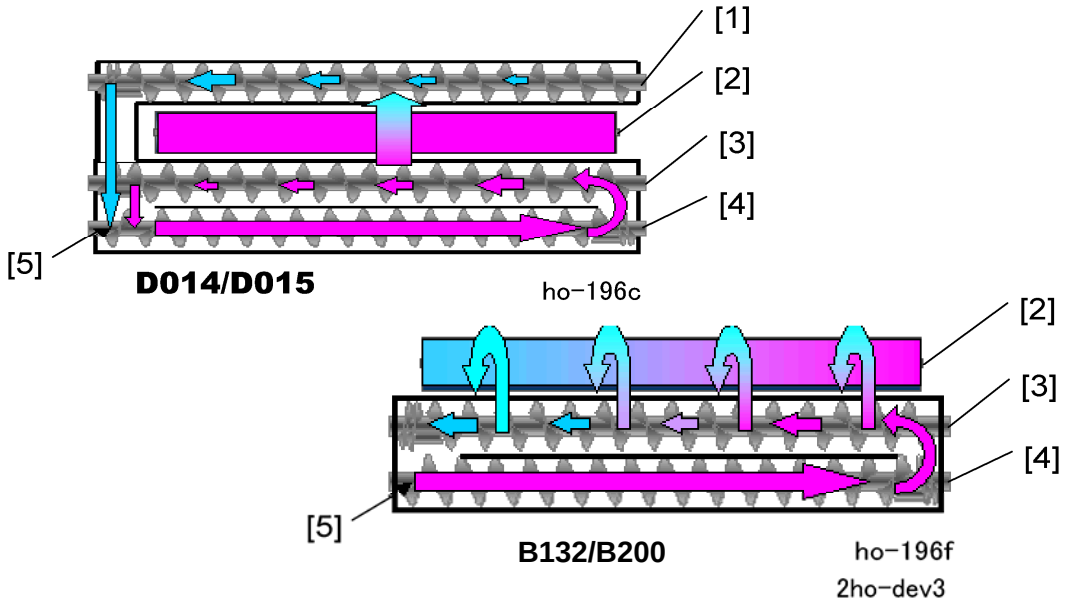
### *External View of Development Unit*




| | D014/D015 | B132/B200 |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Filter | --- |
| 2 | Heat Sink | Heat Sink |
| 3 | Entrance Seal | Entrance Seal |
| 4 | Development Roller (diameter 25) | Development Roller (diameter 25) |
| 5 | Toner Supply Port | Toner Supply Port |
| 6 | --- | Development Cartridge |

**Note**: The D014/D015 does not contain a developer cartridge. The PCU is filled with developer from a newly designed bottle. The PCU does not need to be removed from the machine in order to fill it with developer.

### *Toner/Developer Flow Inside the Development Unit*




| | D014/D015 | B132/B200 |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Collection Auger (dia. 22) | |
| 2 | Development Roller (diameter 25) | Development Roller (diameter 25) |
| 3 | Supply Auger (dia. 22) | Developer Auger 1 (diameter 18) |
| 4 | Mixing Auger (dia. 22) | Developer Auger 2 (diameter 18) |
| 5 | Toner Supply Port | Toner Supply Port |

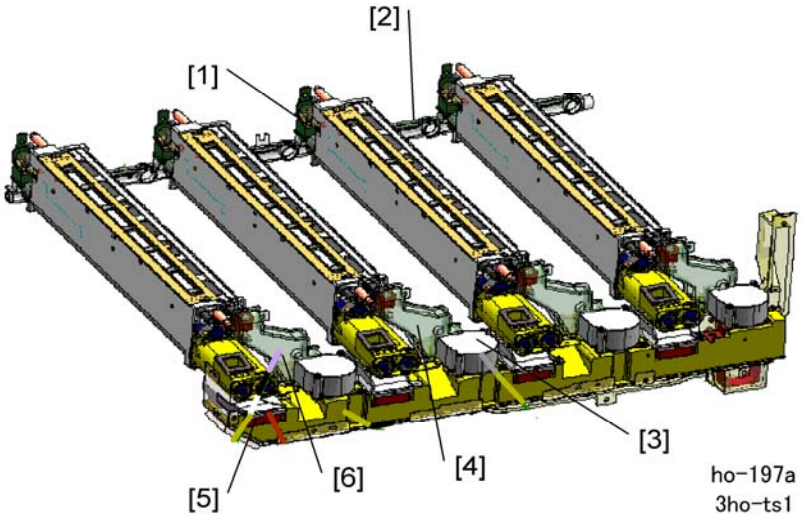
The one-direction flow of developer in the D014/D015 development unit improves image quality.

In the D014/D015, the path for fresh developer is separate from the path that collects excess toner from the doctor blade that smoothes the toner that will be applied to the drum. Compare with the B132/B200 above where this excess toner mixes with fresh toner. The D014/D015 achieves a more even coating of toner on the drum and uses only fresh toner/developer. This means the density of the image is more uniform.

## TONER SUPPLY

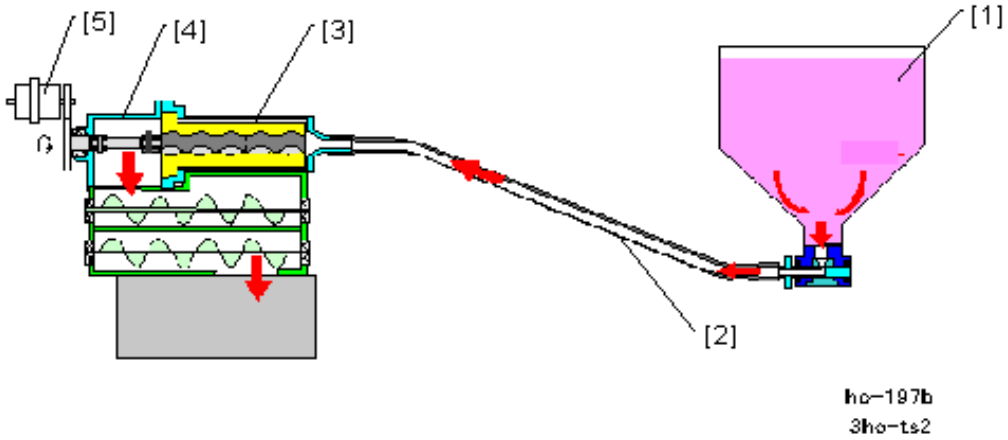
With the exception of a few minor differences, D014/D015 uses the same toner supply system as the previous model.

### *Toner Supply Components*




| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Waste Developer Coil*1 |
| 2 | Horizontal Used Toner Transport Coil |
| 3 | Cooling Fan 2 (Doctor Blade)*1 |
| 4 | Cooling Duct 2 (Development Doctor Blade)*1 |
| 5 | Cooling Fan 1 (Below Development Unit) |
| 6 | Cooling Duct 1 (Below Development Unit) |
| | *1 These are new items. |

### *New STC (Soft Toner Cartridge)*




| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Toner Cartridge (STC) |
| 2 | Flexible Tubing |
| 3 | Toner Pump |
| 4 | Toner Pump Clutch |
| 5 | Sub Hopper |

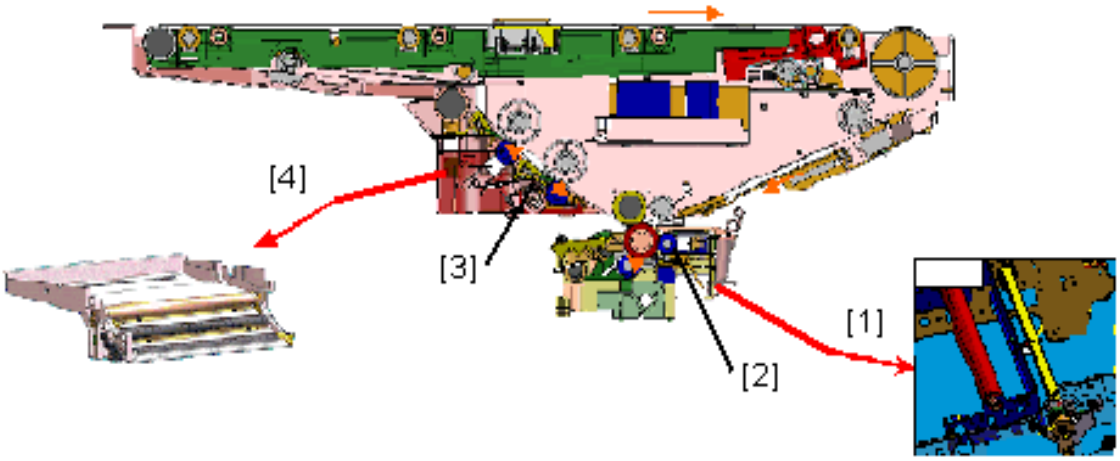
- Four STCs are set in the toner hopper. They are inserted left to right in this order: Y, C, M, K.
- The new PxP toner (high-resolution oil-less Polyester Polymerization toner) used in the D014/D015 has a much lower melting point. For this reason, fans and ducts have been added to the faceplate of the toner supply unit to keep the toner supply cool.
- The toner for the B132/B200 and D014/D015 is not the same, so this means that the STCs of the D014/D015 and the B132/B200 are not interchangeable. Also, the D014/D015 STC contains 90 wt% toner and 10 wt% carrier. The B132/B200 STC contains no developer.

Important

- Neither type of STC can be inserted accidentally in the wrong machine.
- The STC for the D014/D015 does not fit into the B132/B200; a B132/B200 STC does not fit in the D014/D015. However, it is possible to set the wrong type of STC and close the toner hopper even if the wrong type of STC is installed.

# TRANSFER UNIT (IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER TRANSFER UNITS)

## ITB UNIT




There are some changes in the transfer unit:

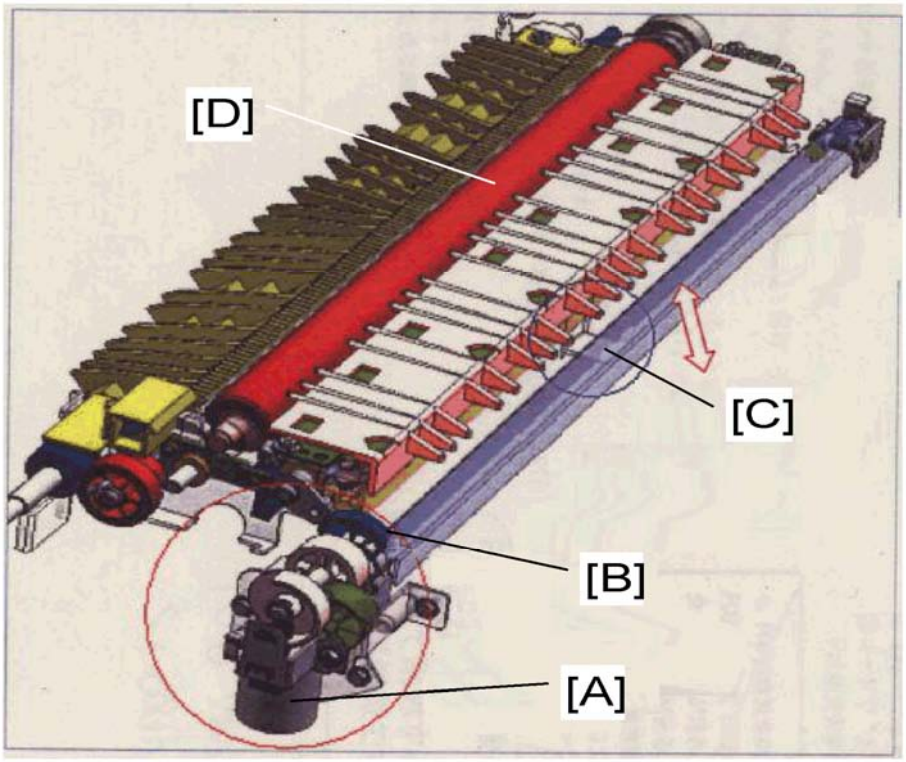
- The PTR lift mechanism [1] has been redesigned. This is the mechanism that keeps the PTR unit against the ITB during belt-to-paper image transfer and lowers the unit when the transfer unit is not operating.
- A lubricant brush [2] has been added to the lubricant bar assembly..
- The toner transport agitator [3] in the ITB cleaning unit [4] is new.
- The cleaning unit of the ITB (shown at the lower left in the diagram above) has also been changed. Two cleaning blades, one cleaning brush roller, and a lubricant bar (ZnSt) comprise the cleaning mechanism. These cleaning blades and roller are PM parts. For a more detailed description, see Section 3 and Section 6.

### *New PTR Lift Mechanism*

The PTR lift mechanism raises and lowers the PTR unit.

- The lift mechanism raises the PTR against the ITB for belt-to-paper image transfer.
- The lift mechanism lowers the PTR and pulls it away from the ITB when the machine is not printing.

### *PTR Lift Mechanism*

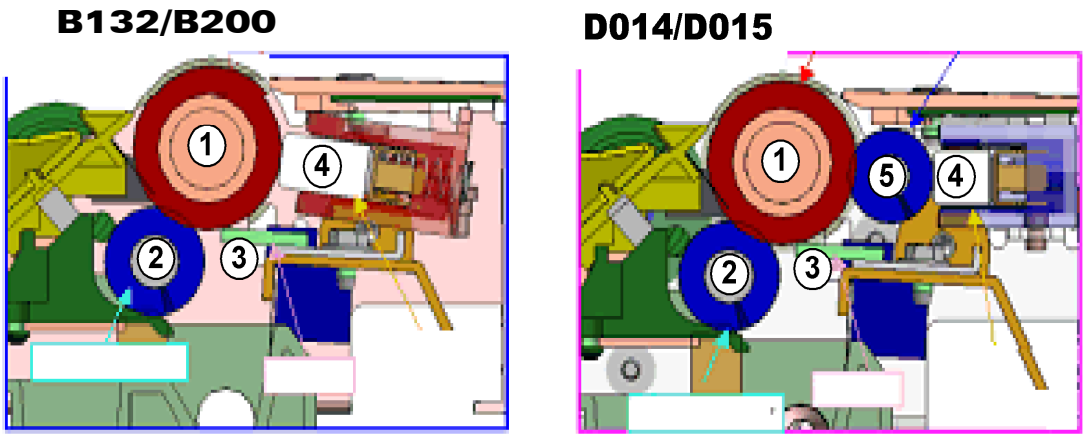



temp_ptu2

The PTR lift motor [A] rotates cam [B]. The rotation of the cam raises and lowers the lift plate [C], which in turn raises and lowers the PTR [D].

This mechanism is necessary because the roller in the ITB unit that opposes the PTR is made of a softer material than in the B132/B200. The PTR will deform this roller if it always contacts it.

## *Increased Durability of Paper Transfer Roller*




ho-0819-4

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | PTR |
| ② | Cleaning Brush Roller |
| ③ | Cleaning Blade |
| ④ | Lubricant Bar |
| ⑤ | Lubricant Brush Roller (D014/D015 only) |

1. Reduction of Scratches on PTR

   Scratches on the surface of the PTR caused by foreign particles are a problem with the B132/B200. Also, there is some scratching on the belt caused by the lubricant bar being in direct contact with the roller

   In the D014/D015, the lubricant bar does not touch the roller. The lubricant brush roller ⑤ picks up the lubricant (ZnSt) from the lubricant bar and applies the lubricant to the surface of the roller. This dramatically reduces the amount of scratching on the surface of the PTR and extends the life of the roller and the cleaning unit parts.

2. PTR layer cracking

   The service life of the PTR has been extended to 600K.

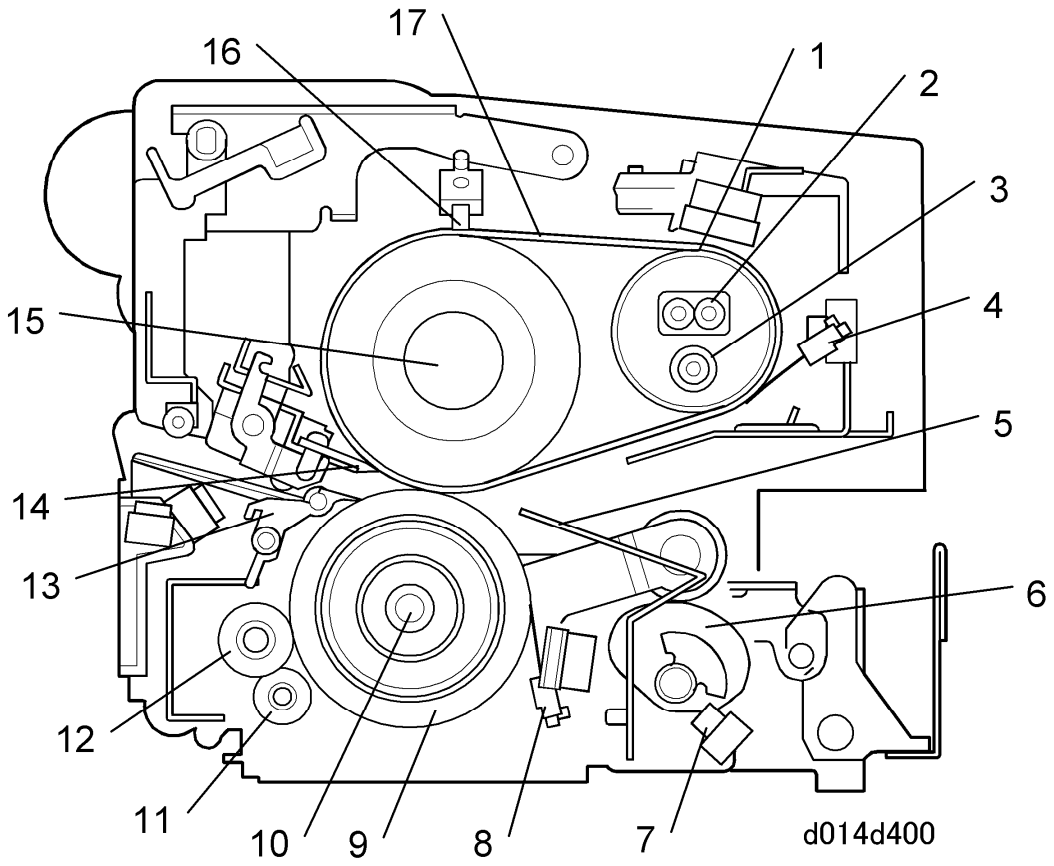
   Cracking between the layers of the PTR occurs in the B132/B200, resulting in its short service life: 150K. This cracking is caused by uneven pressure at the nip of the PTR and paper transfer bias roller above.

   To equalize this pressure at the nip between the ITB bias roller (opposite the PTR in the ITB) and the PTR in the D014/D015, the ITB bias roller of the D014/D015 is composed of softer material. This extends the service life of the D014/D015 PTR to 300K.

# FUSING UNIT

A fusing belt and three fusing rollers comprise the new fusing unit. The rollers are the heating roller (fusing lamps x3), pressure roller (fusing lamp x1), and hot roller (no fusing lamps). The hot roller is composed of a new, soft sponge material that creates a wider nip band where a more even pressure is applied for fusing.

## GENERAL LAYOUT OF FUSING UNIT



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Heating Roller | 10. | Pressure Roller Fusing Lamp |
| 2. | Heating Roller Fusing Lamps x2 | 11. | Cleaning Roller |
| 3. | Heating Roller Fusing Lamp x1 | 12. | Oil Supply Roller |
| 4. | Heating Roller Thermistor | 13. | Pressure Roller Strippers |
| 5. | Entrance Guide | 14. | Fusing Belt Strippers |
| 6. | Pressure Roller Lift Mechanism | 15. | Hot Roller |
| 7. | Pressure Roller Lift Sensor | 16. | Fusing Belt Thermistor |
| 8. | Pressure Roller Thermistor | 17. | Fusing Belt |
| 9. | Pressure Roller | | |

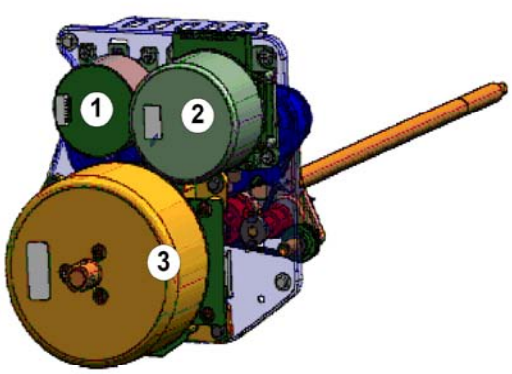
### *New Pressure Roller Lift Mechanism*

A new pressure roller lift mechanism raises and lowers the pressure roller. When fusing starts, the pressure roller lift motor switches on and raises the pressure roller against the hot roller above. At the end of the job, the motor reverses and lowers the pressure roller away from the hot roller. The hot roller and pressure roller remain separated while they are idle. This prevents the pressure roller and hot roller from warping, and prolongs their service lives.

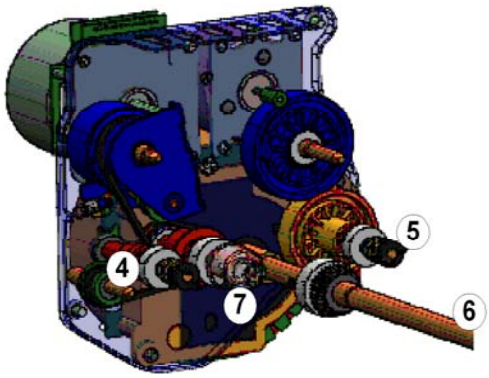
# MOTORS

The following illustrations show the positions of motors around the drum, as viewed from the rear.

## FRONT, REAR VIEW OF DRUM CLEANING, DEVELOPMENT, DRUM MOTORS




Front ho-200a




Rear ho-200b

6ho-mtr1

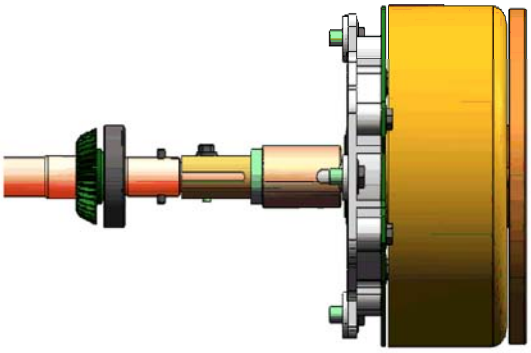
| | |
|---|---|
| 1. | Drum Cleaning Motors x4*1 |
| 2. | Development Motors x4*1 |
| 3. | Drum Motors x4 |
| 4. | Development Coil Shaft |
| 5. | Drum Cleaning Motor Shaft |
| 6. | Drum Motor Shaft |
| 7. | Development Roller |
| *1: New items | |

# CHANGES TO IMPROVE TORQUE TRANSMISSION EFFICIENCY

The size of color registration errors has been reduced with changes in the design of the drum motor.

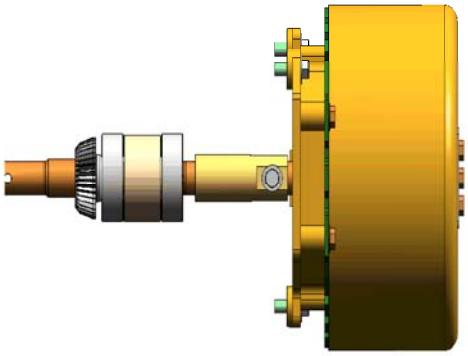
### *Drum Motor Shaft*

**B132/B200**



ho-0819-5

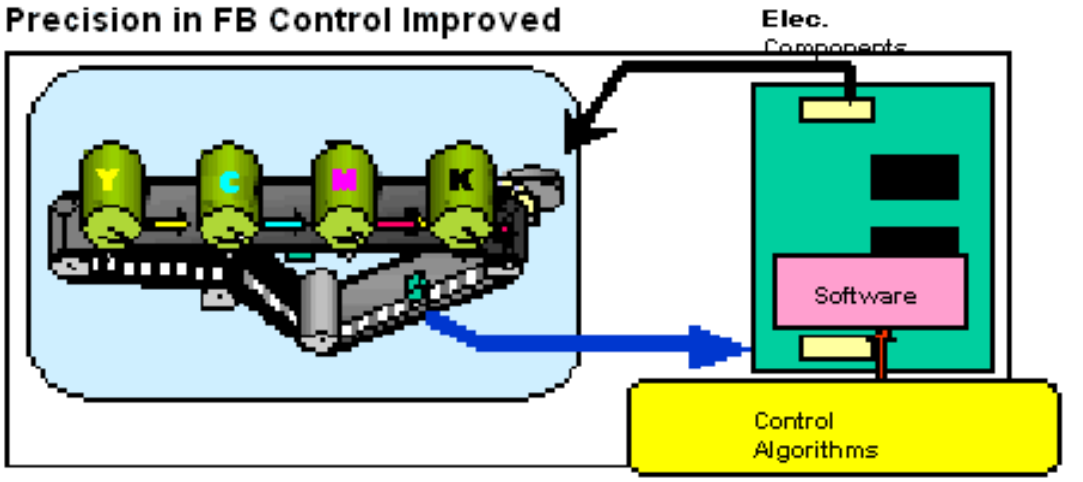
**D014/D015**



ho-0819-6

In the B132/B200, the drum motor shaft and drum motor are separate components. In the new D014/D015 drum motor, however, the shaft and motor are permanently connected. This direct-drive arrangement improves the performance of the drum motor and shaft. Also, for the D014/D015 drum motor, the rotation wave fluctuation of has been reduced by 30%.
In addition to this change in drum motor design, the FB (Feedback) control system has been improved to reduce color registration errors.

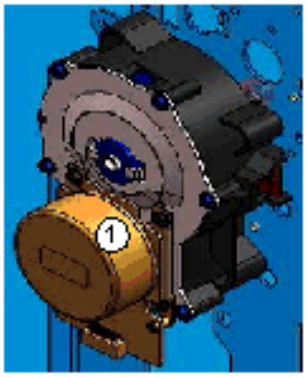
## *FB Control*



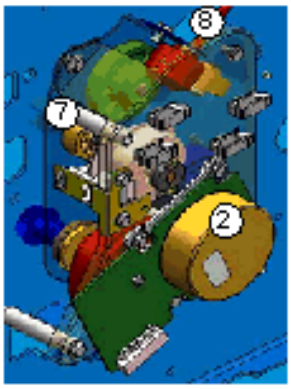

hc-0819-7

The average incidence of color registration errors on the ITB has been reduced. This has been achieved by improvement in the hardware (FB electrical components) and software (control algorithms).

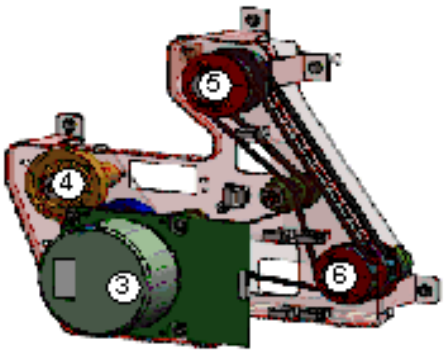
## *ITB Drive, PTR, Fusing/Exit Motors*




ho-200c




ho-200d

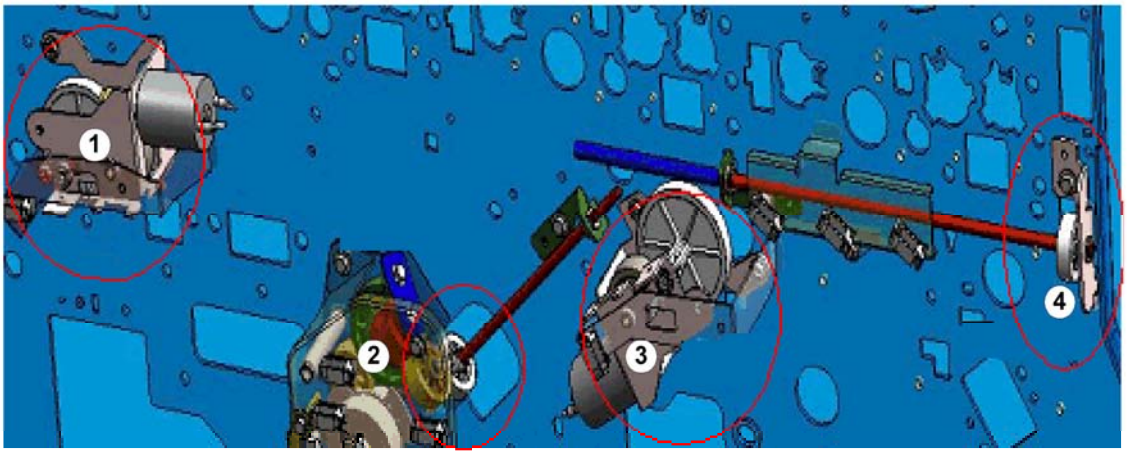



ho-200e

6ho-mtr2

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | ITB Drive Motor |
| ② | PTR Motor |
| ③ | Fusing/Exit Motor |
| ④ | Paper Transport Belt Drive Shaft |
| ⑤ | Fusing Unit Drive Shaft |
| ⑥ | Duplex Unit Drive Shaft |
| ⑦ | ITB Cleaning Unit Drive Shaft |
| ⑧ | Used Toner Drive Shaft |

## *K/YMC Lift, Used Toner Motors*




ho-200f
6ho-mtr3

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Black ITB Roller Lift Motor*[1] |
| ② | Diagonal Used Toner Coil Motor |
| ③ | ITB Lift Motor |
| ④ | Horizontal Used Toner Coil |

*[1]: New item: Lowers the black image transfer roller away from the ITB and PCU drum during automatic developer installation. **Not used at this time (Oct. 2007).**

# CONTROLLER BOARD

- The number of board slots has been reduced to three.
- The number of SD card slots has been reduced to two. (A system SD card is no longer required. The system firmware resides on the controller board.)
- A new fan has been added to the GW controller board.

## SMALL CHANGES

This is a quick summary of small changes in the D014/D015.

- **Filter Box Cover**. There are new filter boxes on the back of the machine. There are now three filter boxes.
- **Paper Tray Handles**. A new tray handle design has been adopted for the D014/D015. Also, the shape and operation of the end fence has changed.
- **Motherboard**. There is no motherboard in the D014/D015
- **Breaker Switch**. This machine does not have a breaker switch that requires testing at installation.
- **Peltier Unit**. The Peltier unit has been removed. The D014/D015 does not have a Peltier unit.
- **Paper Feed Unit**. A mylar has been added to facilitate feeding thicker paper.
- **Bypass Tray**. The operation of the side fences is much smoother.
- **Process Control**. The number of steps in process control has been reduced. Also, MUSIC processing and process control adjustment are executed at the same time at power on, so that the machine enters standby mode within a shorter length of time.
- **Fans**. Fans and ducts have been added on the faceplate that covers the toner supply unit. This new arrangement keeps the temperature lower. (The new PxP toner has a much lower melting point.)
- **Functions disabled during warm-up**. These functions have been disabled during warm-up:
  1. SP3820 (Manual Procon)
  2. Auto Color Calilbration (User Tools)
  3. Color Registration (User Tools)

## NOTES ABOUT SERVICING

These are notes about the differences in servicing the D014/D015 machine. These changes are described in detail in Section 3.

**1. Toner/developer and drum replacement.**

The STCs of the B132/B200 and D014/D015 are not interchangeable. The D014/D015 uses the new PxP toner and the developer bottle has a new design. The B132/B200 STCs cannot be inserted in the D014/D015. The OPC drums of the B132/B200 and D014/D015 are also not interchangeable.

**2. Scanner Unit.**

The shapes and sizes of some of the scanner unit boards have changed to make them easier to service. Also, the arrangement of the APS sensors has been changed. The fan has been removed from the left side of the scanner unit.

**3. Laser Unit.**

The SP codes for the laser unit (provided on a decal attached to the laser unit) have changed. Also, the polygon motor harness connector has been modified.

**4. PCU**

- The OPC and development unit must be separated for servicing.
- The K and YMC PCUs are not the same. The K unit uses a charge corona unit and the YMC units use charge rollers to charge the OPC drum.
- The charge roller and cleaning roller are much easier to remove.
- The PCU stand (stored under the machine) is still required for servicing. The bottom of the D014/D015 PCU stand stores only one jig (required for developer replacement).
- The PCU stand is required for servicing, because it provides two important functions: 1) It protects the drum from damage and exposure to light while the PCU is out of the machine, and 2) It keeps the OPC aligned correctly so the development unit can be reattached.
- The PCU stand must remain attached to the bottom of the main machine at the customer site.

  Note

  - The shape of the D014/D015 PCU stand is not the same as the B132/B200 stand, so these stands are not interchangeable. Using the B132/B200 PCU stand with a D014/D015 PCU could damage the drum.
- The cleaning blades of the K PCU and YCM PCUs are not identical. One blade is designed for use with the K PCU and another type for the YCM PCUs. Each blade is marked "K" or "MCY" to identify the blade type.

- The lubricant bar of the K PCU and YCM PCU are identical. However, the lubricant bar “units” are not the same. The K PCU is marked with a "K" to distinguish it from a YMC lubricant bar unit which is not marked. (The lubricant bar itself, however, can be used in either unit.)
- A D014/D015 PCU consists of both the drum unit and the development unit. However, unlike a B132/B200 PCU unit that could be opened, with the D014/D015 the drum unit and development unit must be separated for servicing.
- Installation of a new PCU. This procedure has changed. More SP code settings are required. These SP codes are provided on a sheet with each new PCU unit.

  Important

  - When you dust the surface of a new drum, use only Lubricant Powder B1329700 (specially designed for this machine). Do not use the yellow toner from this machine because it contains developer. The developer will damage the drum and ITB.
- Developer replacement. This is a new procedure. A jig stored on the bottom of the PCU stand is required to lock the development roller so that the old developer can be removed from the PCU.
- The rectangular developer packs of the B132/B200 have been replaced with newly designed bottles.
- Filling and replacing developer: These are new procedures.
- TD sensor. The TD sensor is of new design and extremely sensitive (calibrated at the factory). This TD sensor cannot be replaced separately.

**5. ITB unit**

There are some minor changes in the servicing of the ITB unit. One connector has been removed, and the shapes of some parts have changed. The new ITB unit has two cleaning blades. Both blades are PM parts.

Important

- When you dust the surface of a new ITB, use only Lubricant Powder B1329700 (specially designed for this machine). Do not use the yellow toner from this machine, because it contains developer, and this will damage the drum and ITB.

**6. PTR Unit**

The PTR unit has a new lift mechanism and the lubrication bar is much easier to remove. Removing dust from the PTR unit is also much easier.

**7. Fusing Unit.** The fusing unit is new.

- There is a new lock arm at the back of the unit that must be released before the fusing unit can be removed. Disassembly of the fusing unit is much easier. **Important**: There are two fusing units: a 120V unit and 240 V unit.
- The fusing lamp connectors of the 120V unit are BLUE, those of the 240V unit are PINK.
- If the wrong type of fusing unit is installed in the machine, the machine will detect this and issue a warning. There is no danger of damaging either the fusing unit or main machine.
- The B132/B200 and D014/D015 fusing belts are not interchangeable. The D014/D015 belt is longer.

**8. Boards.** The layout of the main boards has changed.

- There is no motherboard.
- The AC boards of the 120V and 240V machines are different. The boards are clearly marked "100V" or "200V" in the center of the board to prevent installing the wrong type of board.
- The controller board must be removed before the IPU/VBCU boards can be removed.

**9. HDD Removal**

The HDD must be reconnected correctly. If the HDD is connected incorrectly, the machine will issue an HDD error at power on. This will not harm the HDD or corrupt data on the disk. Just power the machine off and reconnect the HDD correctly.

**10. Motors**

- Drum motor replacement is much easier (a jig is no longer required to lock the motor shaft.)
- The development motor and drum cleaning motor can be removed separately.
- The position of the paper transfer motor has changed.
- The shape of the image transfer motor has changed.

# DETAILED SUMMARY OF CHANGES

## *External Appearance, Operation Panel*

- The operation panel includes a WVGA (Wide Video Graphic Array) Color Touch-Panel
- External covers and paper trays are newly designed. Paper trays adopt a new design.

## *Controller Box*

- New design. Layout of internal components and PCBs has been changed.
- Also, an FCU (Fax Control Unit) is a new option.

## *Main Frame Configuration, Ventilation*

- New cooling fans for the development units, and a new cooling fan near the Y PCU on the left side of the machine.
- A heat sink (in the form of a pipe) has been added to the fusing unit to improve efficiency of cooling.

## *Engine Drive Mechanisms*

- PTR motor. A reduction gear has been added to the DD (Direct Drive) motor and transfer belt cleaning has been improved.
- The ITB encoder sensor (FB or Feedback sensors), two separate sensors on the B132/B200, have been combined into one sensor to reduce cost and improve efficiency.
- The used toner horizontal transport path has been extended.
- Along with changes in component layout around the drum, new drum cleaning motors have been added. Each drum cleaning roller is now driven by a separate motor.
- The linkage of the OPC drum motors has been improved in order to shorten warm-up time and to improve the precision of drum rotation.
- The design of the output drive shaft used in each development unit has been changed to reduce wear on the development unit gears.
- The drum potential sensors (x4) have been removed from the PCUs and mounted in the main machine, one above each PCU.

## *Exposure*

- Along with improvement in the line speed, the CCD, exposure lamp, scanner motor have been modified.
- In order to reduce costs, newly designed lenses and an ADF exposure glass have been adopted for this machine.

### *Laser Writing*

- In line with the improvement in the line speed, the speed of the polygon motor has been increased. (This follows similar improvement in other machines.)

### *Paper Feed*

- In response to requests for better handling of thick paper, some changes have been done within the restricted range of the present B132/B200 layout.
- Some minor changes have been done in the paper feed trays (developed based on B132/B200) to allow feeding thicker paper.
- There are no changes in paper registration.
- Some small changes have been done within the limitations of the present design of the duplex/inverter unit for better handling of thicker paper and for reduction of paper curl.

### *Development, Toner Supply*

- Adoption of high-resolution oil-less polyester polymerization toner (hereafter "PxP toner").
- A new STC (Soft Toner Cartridge) that contains toner pre-mixed with 10 wt% carrier is used to fill the development units.
- A new single-direction development method has been devised to reduce uneven image density on a single page and reduce developer deterioration.
- In order to improve the precision of heat reduction, an aluminum steel sleeve has been adopted. Also, Vs/Vp have been reduced to correct blurring at the trailing edges of solid images
- Automatic developer installation.

### *Drum Charge, Cleaning*

The following measures have been adopted to deal with the problems of blade service life and dirty OPC drums, caused by the slippage of PxP toner on the ITB:

- The K PCU uses the Scorotron Charge Method that uses a self-cleaning charge corona wire, and an auxiliary cleaning brush.
- The other PCUs (Y,M,C) use charge rollers with retractable cleaning rollers and auxiliary cleaning brushes.

### *Image Transfer*

The following measures have been adopted to deal with the problems of blade service life and dirty OPC drums, caused by the slippage of PxP toners on the ITB:

- A lubrication brush roller and lubricant counter blade (both for ZnSt) have been added downstream of the counter blade and brush system of the B132/B200 ITB cleaning system.

### *Paper Transfer*

- Reducing the amount of toner in order to deal with the problem of the short service life of the cleaning blade, caused by the slippage of PxP toners on the ITB.
- Reverse bias is applied in the intervals between sheets on the ITB.
- A new lift device has been designed to raise and lower the PTR (raise it during paper transfer and lower it away from the ITB and bias roller when the machine is idle).

### *Fusing*

- The fusing unit employs a halogen-belt design (halogen fusing lamps with fusing belt) in order to shorten the warm-up time to less than 75 to 90 sec.
- The fusing unit employs a sponge hot roller designed for a higher line speed and better grip at the nip, and also employs a new pressure roller mechanism that keeps the pressure roller separated from the hot roller when the machine is idle (this prevents warping of the soft sponge of the hot roller).
- The effect of the paper pointing downward as it exits the nip between the hot roller and pressure roller improves separation and reduces the streaking on the copies.

### *Process Control*

- The length of time to complete process control is much shorter.
- The number of ID sensor patterns has been reduced.
- The precision of the TD sensor has been improved.

### *OPC Drums*

- Adoption of the charge corona system for the K PCU improves resistance to nitrogen oxides (NOx) in the air.

### *Toner*

- The new PxP toner used in the machine has a lower melting point. This allows a shorter warm-up time, reduces the amount of heat required for fusing, and achieves more even density in images.

# INSTALLATION

| SECTION 1 INSTALLATION REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| 19 ~ 20 | 02/21/2008 | Filling the PCU with Developer |
| 49 | 02/29/2008 | LCT Adapter |
| 101 ~ 102 | 04/01/2008 | Finisher Adapter Type C |
| 111 ~ 115 | 03/27/2008 | B831 Punch Unit |
| 125 ~ 126 | 02/29/2008 | Cover Interposer Tray CL5000 |
| 137 ~ 138 | 02/20/2008 | Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 |
| 140 | 02/20/2008 | Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 |
| 146 ~ 147 | 08/22/2008 | MFP controller options |
| 147 | 03/13/2009 | MFP Controller Options |
| 148 | 04/01/2008 | Enabling USB |
| 151 | 01/26/2009 | SD Card Applications |
| 151 | 04/13/2009 | SD Card Applications |
| 154 | 01/26/2009 | Moving Applications |
| 154 | 04/13/2009 | Moving Applications |
| 155 | 12/12/2008 | Undo Exec procedure |
| 155 | 04/13/2009 | Undo Exec |
| 157 ~ 158 | 03/05/2008 | MFP Controller Options |
| 168 | 01/26/2009 | Restoring the Encryption Key |
| 168 | 04/13/2009 | Recovery from a device problem |
| 169 | 01/26/2009 | Clearing NVRAM |
| 169 | 04/13/2009 | Clearing the NVRAM |
| 173 ~ 174 | 03/05/2008 | MFP Controller Options |
| 176 ~ 177 | 03/28/2008 | Copier connection Kit |
| 178 ~ 179 | 03/28/2008 | Gigabit Ethernet option |

# 1. INSTALLATION

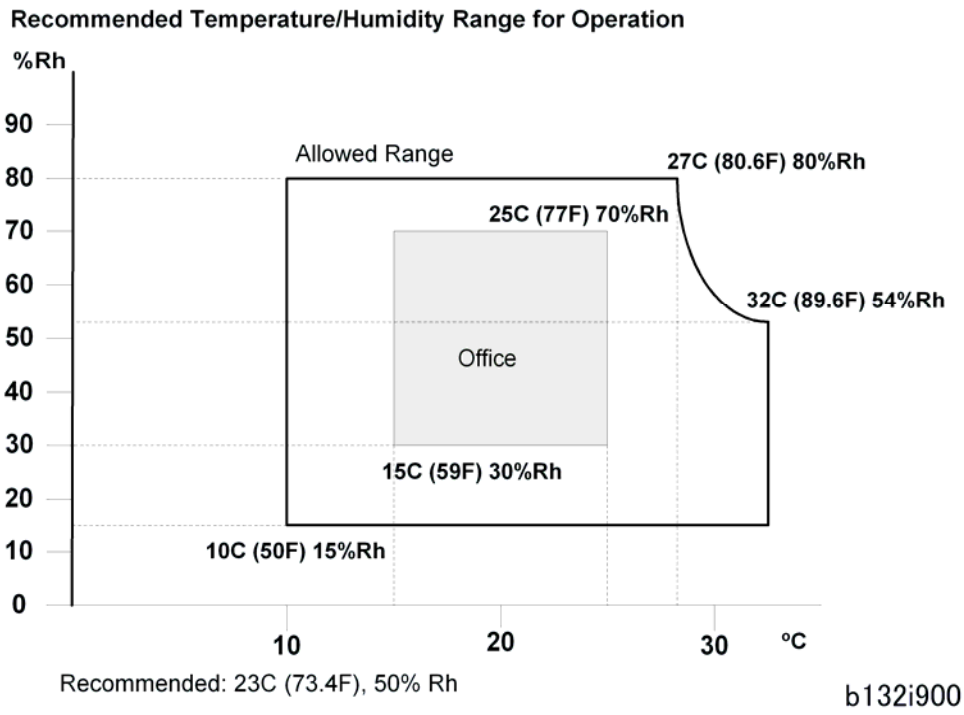
## 1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

### 1.1.1 OPERATING ENVIRONMENT

1. Temperature Range
   - Recommended Temp.: 23°C (73.4°F)
   - Allowed Temp.: 10°C to 32°C (50°F to 90°F) – See the Note below
2. Humidity Range: 15% to 80% Rh
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1,500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight or strong light.)
4. Ventilation: Air must be replaced a minimum of 3 times per hour
5. Ambient Dust: Less than 0.10 mg/m$^3$

Note

- If the machine is installed in a location where the ambient temperature is more than 30°C (86°F): (1) Do not run full color copying longer than 2 hours, and (2) never turn the main power switch off immediately after a long copy job.
- Leave the machine on so the fans can expel the hot air from the machine and cool the electronic components.



6. If the installation area has air-conditioners or heaters, put the machine in a location that agrees with these conditions:
   - Where there are no sudden temperature changes from low to high, or high to low.
   - Where it will not be directly exposed to cool air from an air conditioner in the summer.
   - Where it will not be directly exposed to reflected heat from a heater in the winter
7. Do not put the machine where it will be exposed to gases that can cause corrosion.
8. Put the copier on a strong and level surface. The front and rear of the machine must be less than 5 mm (0.2") away from level.
9. Do not put the machine where there could be strong vibrations.
10. Do not connect the machine to the same power source as other electrical devices.
11. The machine can make an electromagnetic field, and this can cause interference with radio or television reception.

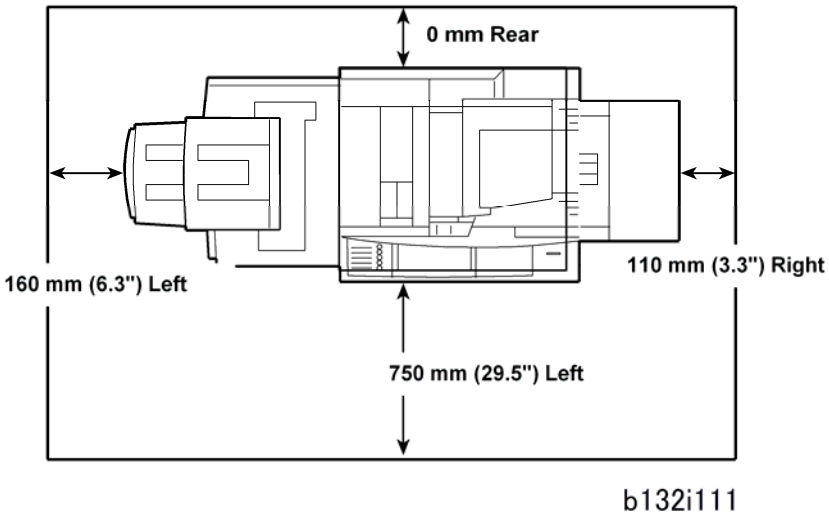
## 1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

1. Front to rear: Less than 5 mm (0.2") away from level
2. Right to left: Less than 5 mm (0.2") away from level

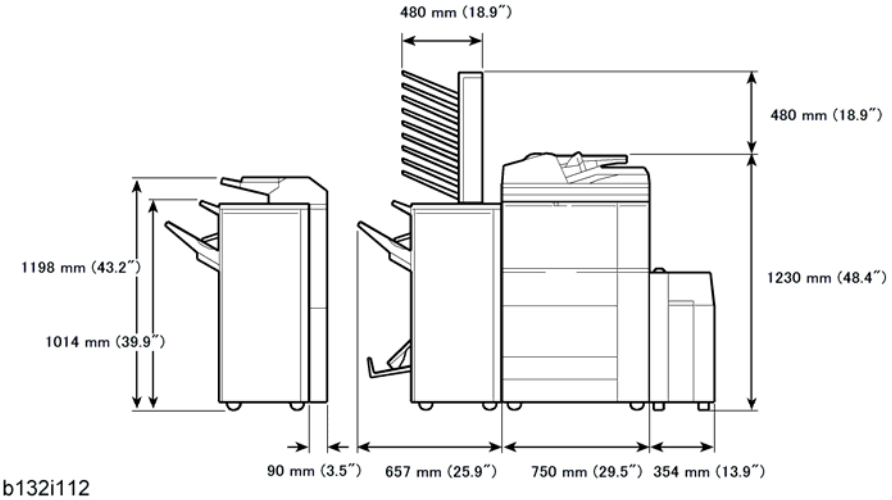
The machine legs can be turned to adjust them up or down, to make the machine level. Put a carpenter's level on the exposure glass.

## 1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS

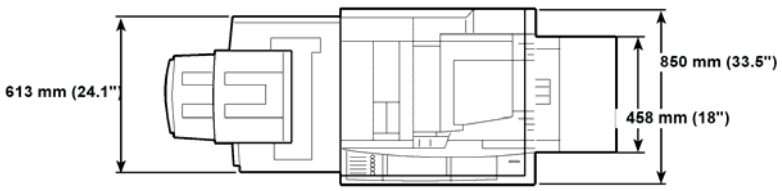
Put the copier near the power source. Minimum clearance must be as shown below. The same amount of clearance is necessary when optional peripheral devices are installed.



## 1.1.4 DIMENSIONS




b132i112




b132i113

## 1.1.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS

**⚠WARNING**

- Make sure that the wall outlet is near the main machine and that you can get access to it easily. Make sure the plug is tightly connected to the outlet.
- Do not connect more than one electrical device to the same power outlet.
- Be sure to ground the machine.
- Do not put objects on the power cord.

**Input voltage level**

- North America

| | |
|---|---|
| D014/D078 | 120V 60 Hz, more than 16A |
| D015/D079 | 208 to 240V 60 Hz, more than 12A |

Installation Requirements

- Europe/Asia

| | |
|---|---|
| D014/D015/D078/D079 | 220 to 240V 50/60 Hz, more than 12A |

Permissible voltage fluctuation: ±10%

Important

- Some electrical components are different, depending on the power supply used.

The following components are different, depending on the power supply.

1. Power supply cord
2. AC drive board
3. Fusing unit
4. Anti-condensation heaters
   - Paper trays
   - Paper transfer section
   - Scanner heater (option)
   - LCT (B473) heater (option)
   - LCIT (D350) heater (option)

**CAUTION**

- Do not turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To prevent damage to the hard disk or memory, push the operation switch to turn the power off, then do nothing until the power LED goes off, and then turn the main power switch off.

There are two power switches on the machine:

**Main Power Switch**

This is located on the front left corner of the machine and has a plastic cover. This switch must always be on unless a technician does work on the machine.

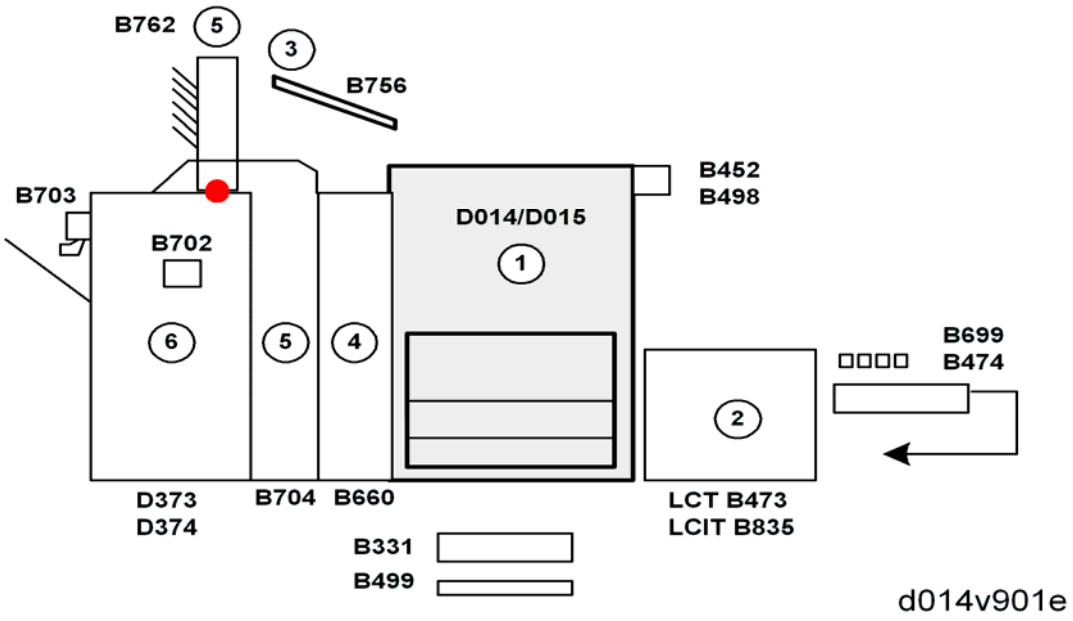
**Operation Switch**

This is located on the right side of the operation panel. This is the switch that the customer uses to turn the machine on and off.

# 1.2 COPIER AND PERIPHERALS

This is a list of the peripheral devices that can be installed with the copier. There are two basic configurations.

## 1.2.1 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION 1




The system should be installed in the order shown above and listed below.

| No. | Product No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| ① | D014/D015/D078/D079 | D014/D015/D078/D079 | Main unit |
| ② | D350 | LCIT 4000 | Only one of these options can be installed. |
| | B473 | A4/LT LCT | |
| | B699 | LCT Adapter | Required for LCT B473 to adjust its height |
| ③ | B756 | Copy Tray | Only if no finishers are installed |
| ④ | B660 | Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 | Requires either D373 or D374 |
| ⑤ | B762 | Mail Box CS391 | For Finishers D373/D374 only. |

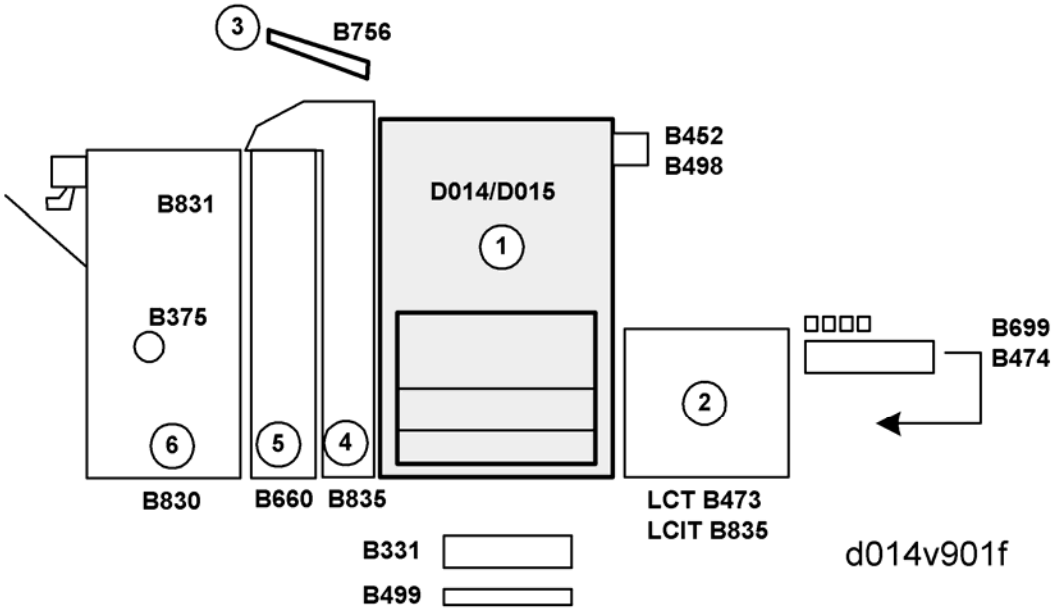
Copier and Peripherals

| No. | Product No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| | B704 | Cover Interposer Tray | Mailbox and CIT cannot be installed together. |
| ⑥ | D373 | Finisher SR4020 (D373) | D373: 2000-sheet, 50 staple, Booklet folding and stapling. D374 3000-sheet, 50 staple, corner stapling only. Only one can be installed. |
| | D374 | Finisher SR4010 (D374) | |

These remaining options can be installed at any time and in any order.

| Product No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| B331 | A3/11"x17" Tray Type | Option for tandem tray |
| B452 | Key Counter Bracket | Counter option |
| B474 | LG Unit for A4/LT LCT | Option for LCT B473 |
| B498 | Card Reader Bracket | Counter option |
| B499 | Tab Sheet Holder Type | Option for tandem tray |
| B702 | Punch Unit | For either finisher D373 or D374 |
| B703 | Output Jogger Unit | For either finisher D373 or D374 |

## 1.2.2 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION 2




The system should be installed in the order shown above and listed below.

| No. | Product No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| ① | D014/D015/D078/D079 | D014/D015/D078/D079 | Main unit |
| ② | B473<br>B699 | A4/LT LCT<br>LCT Adapter | Only one of these optional paper banks can be installed.<br>LCT Adapter: Required for LCT B473 to adjust the height of the paper exit. |
| | D350 | LCIT 4000 | |
| ③ | B756 | Copy Tray | Only if no finishers are installed |
| ④ | B835 | Cover Interposer Tray CI 5000 | Two source trays. Can be installed with 3000-sheet finisher B830 only. |
| ⑤ | B660 | Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 | Can be installed with D373, D374, B830 finishers. |
| ⑥ | B830<br>B375 | Finisher SR5000<br>Finisher Adapter | 3000-Sheet finisher, 100 staples, jogger standard. |

Copier and Peripherals

| No. | Product No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Finisher Adapter: Required for Venus-C2a and V-C2b |

These remaining options can be installed at any time and in any order.

| Product No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| B331 | A3/11"x17" Tray Type | Option for tandem tray |
| B452 | Key Counter Bracket | Counter option |
| B474 | LG Unit for A4/LT LCT | Option for LCT B473 |
| B498 | Card Reader Bracket | Counter option |
| B499 | Tab Sheet Holder Type | Option for tandem tray |
| B831 | Punch Unit PU 5000 | For 3000-sheet finisher B830 only. |

## 1.2.3 MFP OPTIONS (LISTED ALPHABETICALLY)

Here is a list of common MFP (controller) options.

| Option | Prod. No. | Config. |
|---|---|---|
| Bluetooth Interface Unit Type 3245 | B826 | Board |
| Browser Unit Type D | D377 | SD Card |
| Copy Connector Type 2105 | B328 | Board |
| Copy Data Security Unit Type F | B829 | Board |
| Data Overwrite Security Unit Type H | D377 | SD Card |
| File Format Converter Type E | D377 | Board |
| Gigabit Ethernet D377*[1] | D377 | Board |

| Option | Prod. No. | Config. |
|---|---|---|
| IEEE 1284 Interface Board Type A | B679 | Board |
| IEEE802.11a/g Interface Unit Type J | D377 | Board |
| IEEE802.11g Interface Unit Type K | D377 | Board |
| Java VM Card Type E | D377 | SD Card |
| PostScript 3 Unit Type C7500 | D378 | SD Card |
| Printer/Scanner Unit Type 7500 | D376 | SD Card |

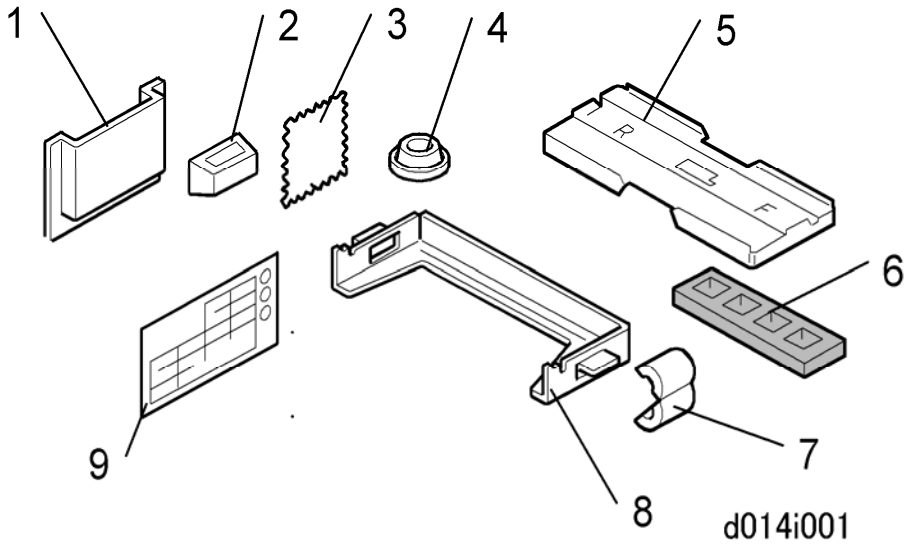
*[1]: The EFI (Fiery) Controller currently under development will be connected via the Gigabit Ethernet Board.

# 1.3 COPIER D014/D015/D078/D079

## 1.3.1 ACCESSORIES

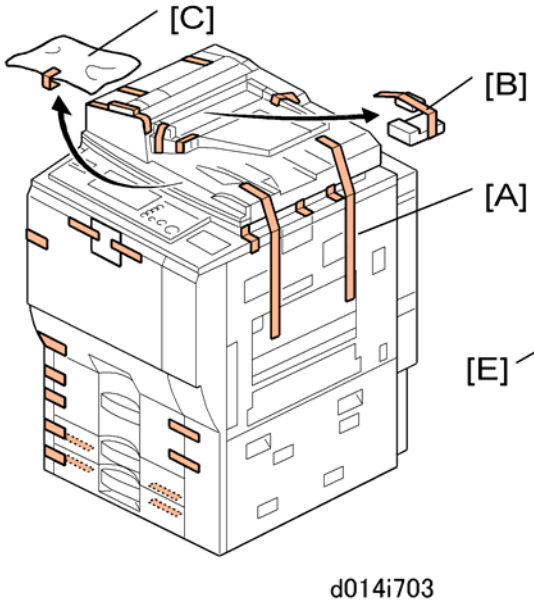
Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

| No. | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Instructions Pocket | 1 |
| 2. | Exposure glass cloth holder | 1 |
| 3. | Exposure glass cloth | 1 |
| 4. | Leveling Shoes | 4 |
| 5. | PCU stand | 1 |
| 6. | Ferrite Core | 1 |
| 7. | PCU Stand Holder | 1 |
| 8. | Decal: Paper Loading | 1 |
| 9. | Decal: Paper Size | 1 |

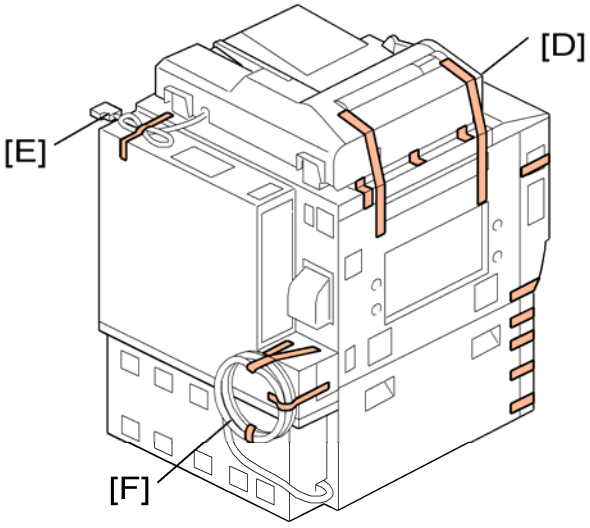


## 1.3.2 INSTALLATION

### *External Tapes and Packing Material*




d014i703




d014i004

**⚠WARNING**

- Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do these procedures.

Remove all tapes and packing material from the main machine:

1. Remove:

   [A]: ARDF, right side

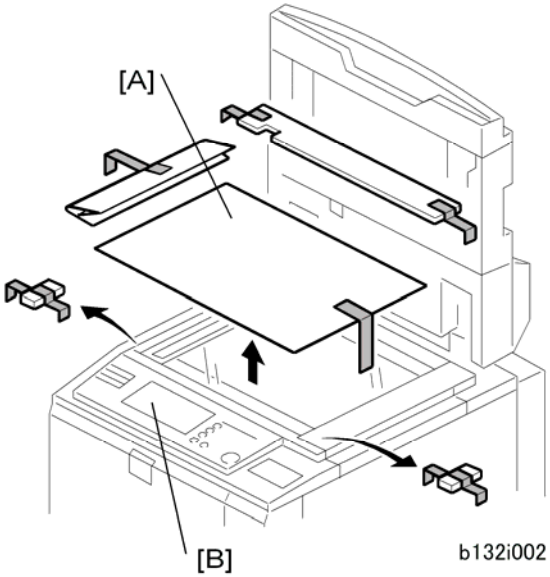
   [B]: Packing block inside ARDF

   [C]: Accessories bag. Remove other accessory bags from Tray 2, Tray 3.

   [D]: ARDF, left side

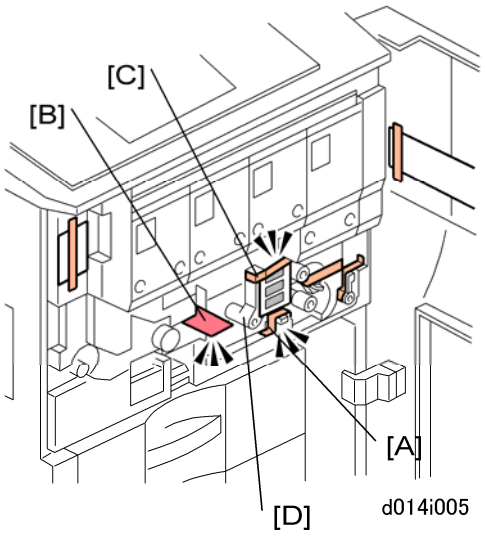
   [E]: ARDF connector cord. Remove tape and connect the cord

   [F]: Power cord




2. Remove:
   [A]: Under ARDF
   [B]: Operation panel film

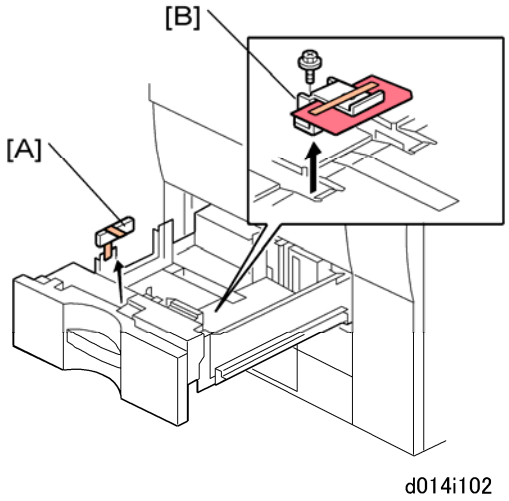
## *Internal Tapes and Packing Material*




1. Open the front door:
2. Remove the transfer belt release lever [A] (1 tape). We will install this in the correct location later.

Important

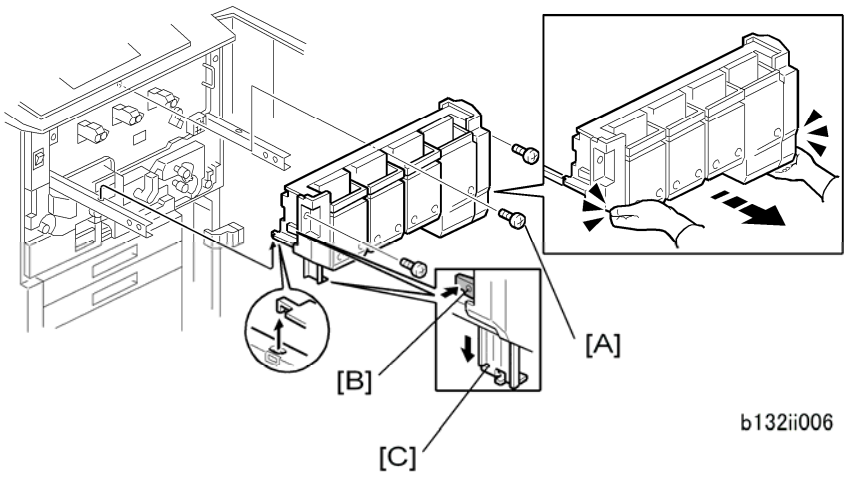
- Do not touch [B], [C], or [D] at this time. These items are removed after you remove the faceplate.
- To prevent damage to the ITB, never turn down lever [D] to pull out the drawer unit until after you have removed the rod with the red tag and wire [B].
- The drawer must remain inside the machine until after the developer is installed in the developer cartridges of the PCUs.
- The rod is removed after the faceplate is removed.




d014i102

3. From Tray 1 remove:
   [A]: Block, tape
   [B]: Retainer, tag, wire (x 1)
4. Remove all retainers and accessories from Tray 2, Tray 3.

## *Shipping Retainer Removal*




1. Prepare an open space on the floor for the hopper.
2. Remove the screws of the toner hopper cover [A] (🔩 x 3).
3. Put your hands under the left and right corners of the toner hopper, and slowly pull it out on its rails until it stops.
4. Push the lock [B] then pull down the support leg [C].
5. Make sure that the support leg is down and locked before you remove the hopper.

**⚠CAUTION**

- Always make sure that the support leg is down and locked before you remove the hopper.

6. Hold the toner hopper using the handles at the top left and right sides. Then lift the toner hopper off its rails and set it on the floor.

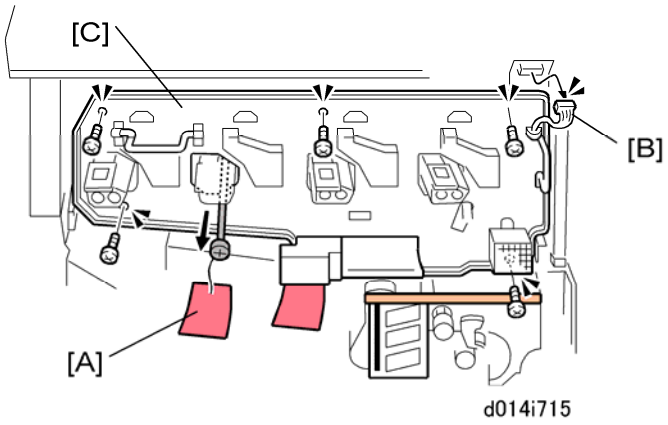
**⚠CAUTION**

- The hopper is heavy! Lift it carefully. Make sure that it disengages fully from the rails on the left and right, and then set it on the floor.

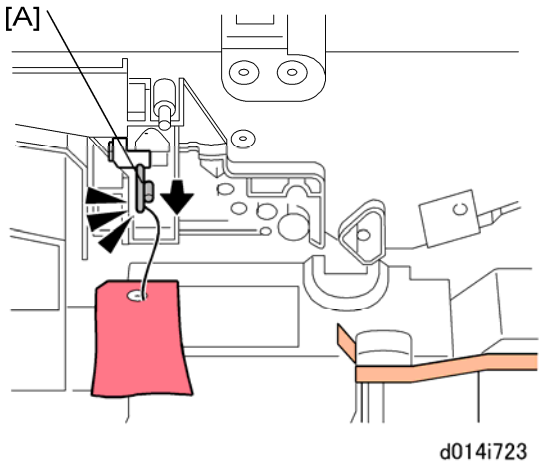
7. Push the hopper rails into the machine.

Note

- Push in the rails until approximately an inch is out of the machine. If you push the rails in fully, you must use a pair of needle-nose (radio) pliers to pull them out again.




8. Remove the tag, and rod [A] (☞ x 1).
9. Disconnect the fan connector [B].
10. Remove the faceplate [C] (☞ x 5).

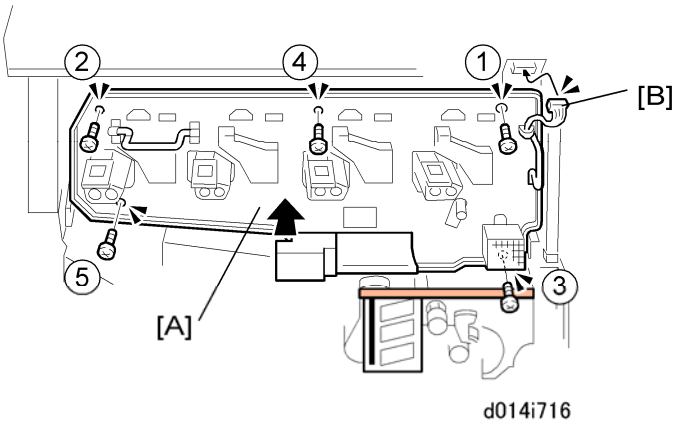



Important

- **Do not pull out the drawer unit until after you remove the stabilizing rod and tag.**

11. Pull on the reinforced ring of the red tag to pull out the stabilizing rod [A].

## *Reattach the Faceplate*




1. Attach the faceplate [A] with the screws in the sequence shown by the numbers above (🔩 x 5).

Important

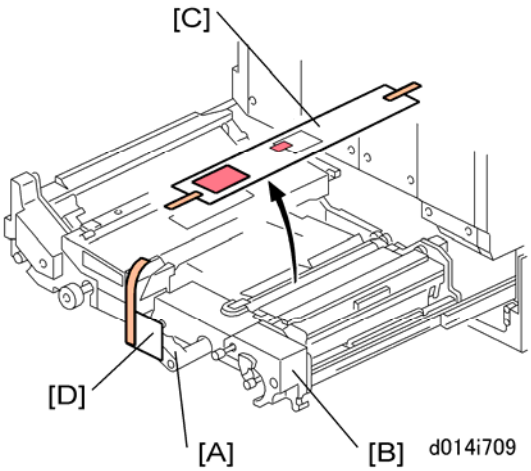
- Do not tighten these screws too much.

2. Reattach the fan [B].

Important

- Make sure the fan connector is not pinched behind the faceplate.

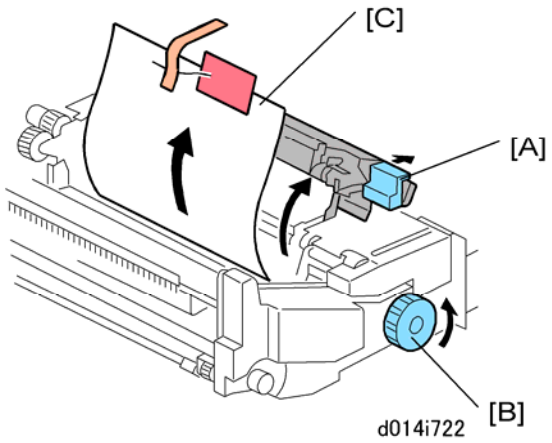
## *Remove Remaining Retainers and Packing Material*




1. Turn the lever [A] down to the left, and pull the drawer unit [B] out of the machine until it stops.
2. Remove the instruction sheets [C] and [D].

Important

- A sheet of paper protects the ITB if you accidentally pull the drawer out without first removing the rod. Do not push the drawer into the machine. Follow the procedure on the instruction sheet to remove the rod and paper.




3. Raise lever **D2** [A] of the fusing unit.
4. Turn knob **D1** [B] in the direction shown by the arrow.
5. Remove protective sheet [C] with tape and red tag.
6. Lower lever **D2** [A].
7. Push the drawer into the machine until it stops.
8. Rotate handle B2 up and to the right until it stops.

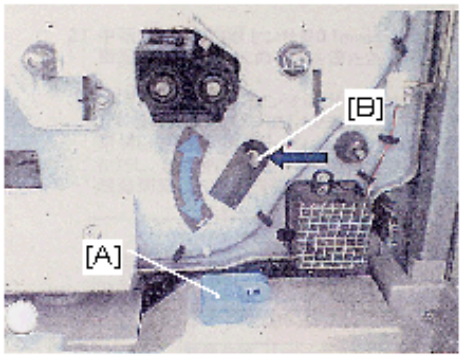
## *Filling the PCU Units with Developer*

**Before You Begin…**

- Follow this procedure in the order described below.
- Do not turn the machine on or off or open the front door until you are instructed to do so.

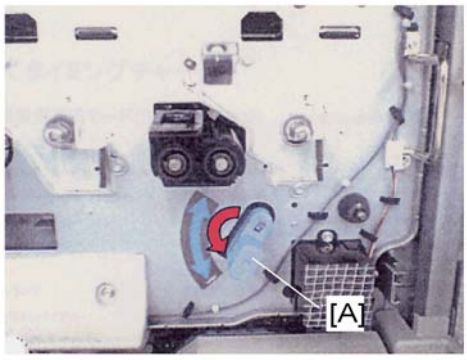
**Developer Filling Procedure**

1. If you have not already done so, remove the toner hopper unit (described above).




temp_devinstall_1

2. Attach the transfer belt release lever [A] to the tip of the shaft [B].




temp_devinstall_2

3. Rotate the lever [A] down to separate the transfer belt from the surfaces of the PCU drums.
4. Before attaching each bottle, loosen the developer to ensure that it will drain completely.

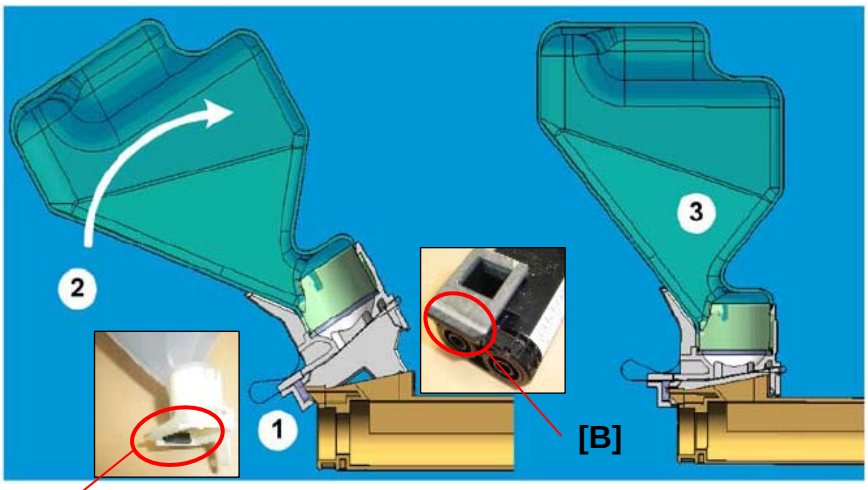
temp_dev-shake30

- Vigorously shake the bottle up and down 10 to 15 times.

Important

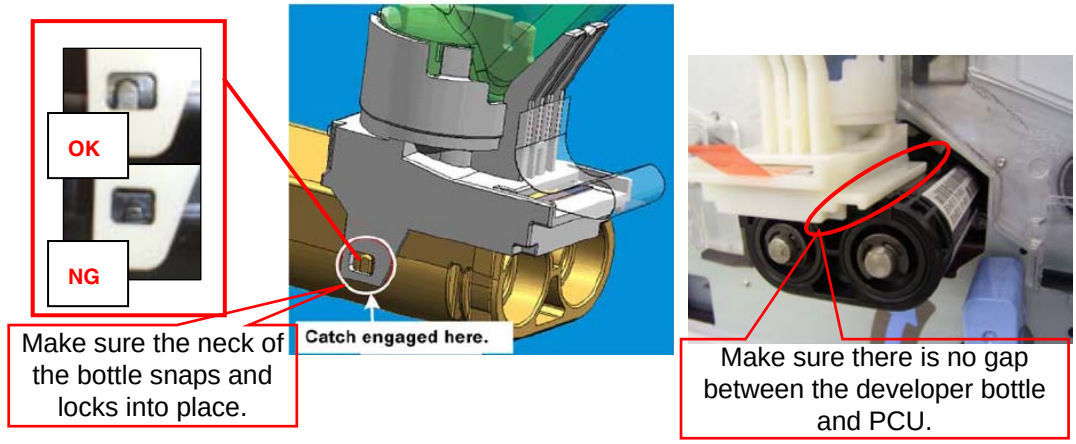
- Hold the bottle as shown above, with the white component pointing up.

⇒




Attach [A] securely to [B].

5. Mount a developer bottle on each PCU.
   - Set each bottle as shown at ①.
   - Swing the bottle ② to the right until it snaps into place and is upright ③.
   - Install the bottles from left to right in this order: Y C M K.




6. Confirm that the neck of each bottle snaps and locks in place. Confirm that the neck of each bottle is parallel with the top of each PCU.

7. To prevent the bottle from falling off, hold the bottle [B] with the left hand as shown, pull the heat seal [A] out of the developer bottle and remove it.
8. Pull the seals from all of the bottles (Y, C, M, K).
9. Make sure that you have removed all the seal strips (you should have four strips, one for each bottle).
10. Gently tap the sides of each bottle to make sure that the developer flows freely.
11. **Close the front door.**

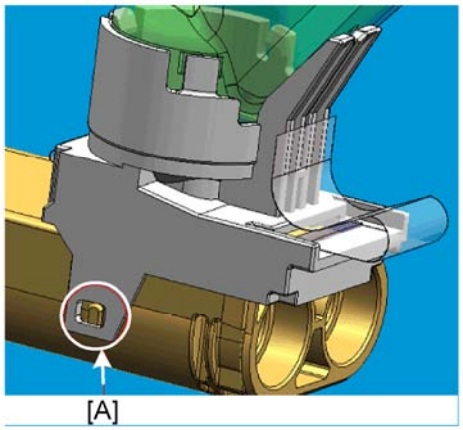
Important

- The door must be closed before you switch the machine on.

12. Turn the machine power on.
13. Enter the SP mode and do the following SPs:
    - **SP3814-1**. Fills all of the PCU units with developer from the attached bottles. It takes about 4 minutes. Press 'Exit' when 'Completed' appears on the display.
    - **SP3815**. Confirms that **SP3814-1** executed correctly. If **SP3814-1** executed correctly, you will see "**1111**" (K M C Y).

| Display | What It Means |
|---|---|
| 1 | Succeeded |
| 4 | The PCU is already full of developer. |
| 9 | Failed |
| 7 | Developer filled before doing SP3814-1 |

14. Confirm that each developer bottle is completely empty.
    - Each developer bottle must be completely empty.
    - Even if SP3815 returned a "1" for each bottle to indicate successful completion of the operation, there may be toner remaining in a bottle.
    - It is very important that you check each bottle visually for remaining developer. Shine a penlight on the bottle if it is difficult to see inside the bottle.
    - If you see developer still remains in a bottle, do not disconnect the bottle. Refer to "Handling Problems with Developer Filling" under "PCU" in Section 3.
15. Switch the machine off.

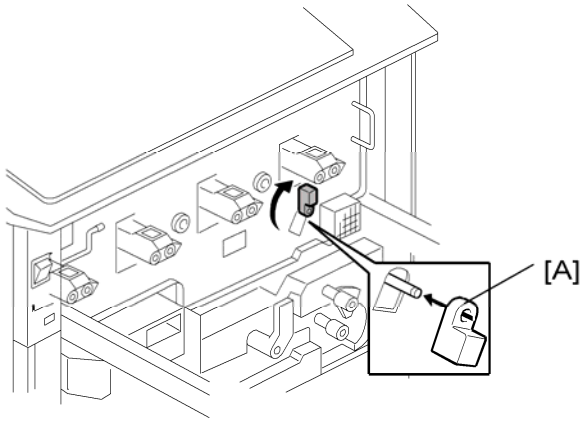



ins_0003

16. Remove the developer bottles. Use the tip of a small screwdriver to release the bottle latch at [A].
17. Discard the empty bottles.

Important

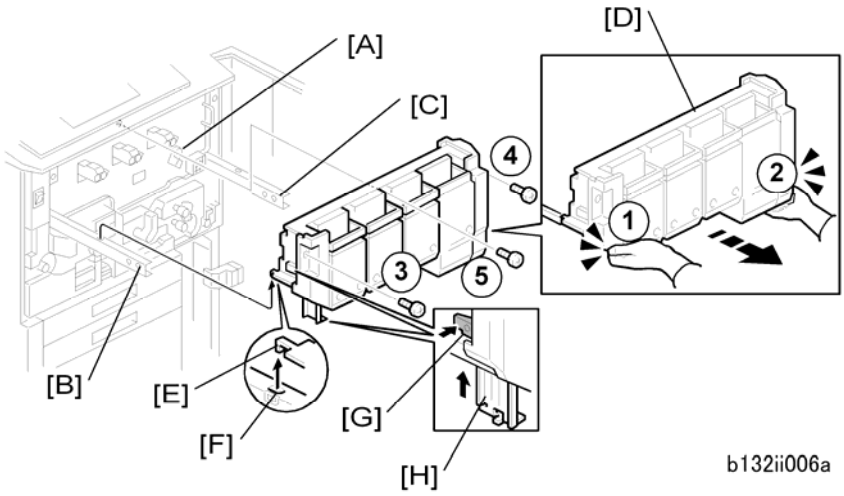
- Obey local laws and regulations concerning the disposal of items such as the empty bottles.
- If you experience any problem with developer filling, go to Section 3 and do the procedures described under "Handling Problems with Developer Filling" in the "PCU" section.




b132i707

18. Locate the transfer belt release lever [A]. (It was removed earlier with the shipping tape, and should already have been installed on the shaft in step 2.)
19. Attach the transfer belt release lever as shown above and turn it to the vertical position and make sure that it locks.

## *Reinstall the Toner Hopper*




1. Rotate the transfer release lever [A] up so that it locks.

Important

- The transfer belt release lever must be turned up and locked before you install the toner hopper. If you forget to attach the transfer belt release lever [A], or if it is not locked, this will cause an image transfer roller position error (SC447).

2. Pull out the toner hopper left rail [B] and right rail [C] until they are fully extended. (If the rails were pushed in fully, use a pair of needle-nose pliers to pull them out of the machine.)
3. Set the toner hopper [D] on the rails.
4. Make sure the steel tabs [E] of the hopper are inserted fully into the left rail hole and the right rail hole [F].
5. Push the lock [G] and push the support leg [H].
6. Make sure that the support leg is up and locked before you push the toner hopper into the machine.
7. Put your hands at the bottom of the toner hopper at ① and ②, then push the hopper into the machine against the faceplate.

Important

- To prevent damage to the hopper, never push the top of the toner hopper.

8. Make sure that the hopper is flat against the faceplate on the right side.
9. If the toner hopper [D] is not flat against the faceplate on the right side, pull it out a short distance and make sure that the transfer belt release lever is turned up fully.
10. Attach the toner hopper (🔩 x 3). Attach the screws in this sequence: ③④⑤

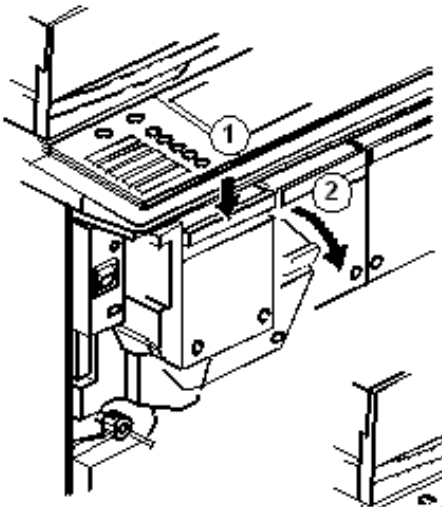
## *STC (Soft Toner Cartridge) Installation*

Before you begin:

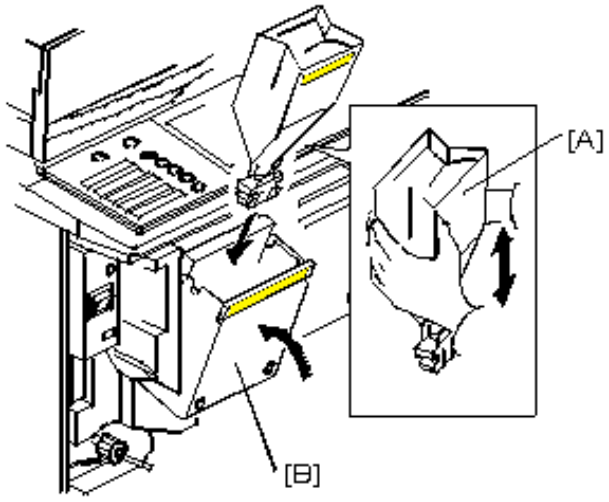
Important

- You must use the V-C2 STCs with this machine.
- The STCs of the previous model (or any other model) cannot be used with this machine (the V-C2 STCs contain 90% toner and 10% carrier).

- Make sure that you install each STC in the correct bin.
- The label on the toner cartridge must face the front of the machine.
- From left to right, the bins are for Y, C, M, K.
- The name of the color for each bin is on the decals that are attached to the bin release levers.




b1 32i1 07




b1 32i1 08

1. Push down the lock lever ① on the top edge of the Yellow bin (the bin at the far left) to release it. Then pull the bin ② in the direction of the front to open it.

   Important

   - To prevent damage to the bin door, do not try to pull a bin directly out. Push down on its top edge first to release it, then pull it to open it.

2. Remove the Yellow STC (Soft Toner Cartridge) from its box.

3. Shake the STC [A] up and down about 10 times. Do not squeeze or knead the toner cartridge (this will make clumps in the toner).
4. Make sure the flat bottom of the cartridge is up.
5. Set the Yellow STC in the bin [B].
6. Push the Yellow STC bin to close and lock it.
7. Repeat this procedure for the other three STCs (C, M, K)

Important

- Make sure that the color of each STC agrees with the label on the bin door before you install it.

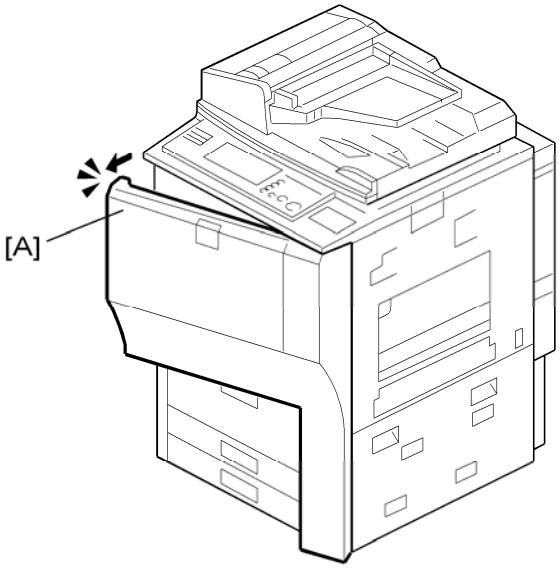
## *Initializing Developer and Toner*

Before You Begin…

- Follow this procedure in the correct order as described below.
- Do not turn on the machine until you are instructed to do so.
- To prevent damage to the drums during this procedure, **make sure that the front door is open before you switch on the machine**.

**⚠CAUTION**

- If the machine is switched on during this procedure with the front door closed, processing control executes. This causes the bare drums to rotate against the counter blades before a light coat of toner has been applied to the surfaces of the drums. This could damage the drum.




b132i721

1. **Open the front door [A].**

Important

- You must open the front door.
- Turning on the machine with the front door open prevents the machine from performing the initial process control self-check.
- If the front door is closed, the drums will start rotating with no toner in the PCUs.
- If the drums rotate with no toner in the PCUs, this can cause the cleaning blades to catch on a dry drum and damage the drum surface.

2. With the front door open, turn on the main power switch.
3. **Close the front door after "Open Cover" appears on the display.**

Important

- You must close the front door.

4. Wait for the machine to warm up and enter standby mode.
5. Enter the SP mode and do **3811-1** to send toner to the PCUs and initialize the TD sensor. This requires about 4 min.

Important

- If 'Failed' appears immediately after you start SP3811-1, the machine has not warmed up. Wait 2 minutes, and then do SP3811-1 again.
- Do SP3811-1 only once.
- Executing SP3811-1 more than once can cause toner spill inside the machine. SP3811-1 initializes not only the TD sensor but initializes the developer as well.
- Never do SP3801-1 after doing SP3811. If the TD sensor is initialized twice this will cause a fatal error in toner supply control.

6. When the message tells you that the initialization is completed, touch [Close].
7. Do **SP3812-1** to confirm that **SP3811-1** executed correctly.
   - If you see "**1111**" (K M C Y), this means **SP3811-1** executed correctly.
   - If you see any number other than "**1111**", this means an error. (See **SP3812** Errors.)

Important

- For a complete list of errors and how to solve problems related to SP3812, please refer to "4.2.3 SP3812 001 (DevSetup Execute) Errors" of the Venus-C1 B132 Service Manual.

8. Do SP **3821-1** to check that process control was completed successfully.
   - For each color, there is a two-digit code, in the order K,M,C,Y. '10' means that process control was completed successfully. '10101010' means that all 4 colors completed process control successfully.

### *Load the Paper Trays*

For each paper cassette tray:

1. Move the side fence and bottom fence to the correct positions for the paper.
2. Add paper to the trays.
3. Attach the paper size decals to the front of the paper cassette trays and the tandem tray.

Note

- It is not necessary to input the paper size setting for trays 2 and 3. This is detected automatically.

### *Make a Test Color Print*

1. Make sure that A3 or DLT paper is in one of the trays.

   Note

   - Use the same type of paper that the customer normally uses for color outputs.
2. Put a "Color Chart C-4" on the exposure glass.
3. Select full color mode and print one copy of the chart. You will use this in the ACC procedure, if ACC is necessary.
4. Check the results of the copy with the customer.
   - If the quality of the color is satisfactory, ACC adjustment is not necessary.
   - If the quality of the color is not satisfactory, do the ACC adjustment described below.

### *ACC (Automatic Color Calibration) Adjustment*

Automatic color calibration is done at the factory with the procedure given below. Do this procedure only if the color quality is not satisfactory for the customer.

1. Push [User Tools] (◈/123).
2. To print a color pattern, select Maintenance> Auto Color Calibration
3. Touch "Start".

   ```
   Machine will start self-check before
   printing test pattern
   Press [Start Printing].
   ```
4. Touch "Start Printing".

   ```
   Now self-checking.
   Test pattern will be printed.
   Please wait.
   ```

   The machine does process control, then it prints a test pattern.

   ```
   Place Test Pattern on the exposure glass correctly.
   Then press [Start Scanning]
   ```
5. Remove the C-4 test chart from the exposure glass (this was put on the exposure glass during the previous procedure 'Make a Test Color Print').
6. Place the color test pattern face-down (this is the test pattern that you made in step 4). The arrow and notation ("Face down and align the arrow with the rear left corner of the exposure glass.") must be at the rear left corner.

7. Touch [Start Scanning] on the display. The machine scans the pattern one time.

   `Scanning…`

   `Please wait.`

   If you see this error:

   `Scanning failed.`

   `Place test pattern on the exposure glass correctly.`

   `Then press [Start Scanning].`

   Make sure that the arrow on the test pattern is in the upper left corner of the exposure glass.
8. Remove the pattern from the exposure glass and replace it with the C-4 Color Chart.
9. Touch "Exit" three times to return to the Copy mode screen.
10. Make a full-color copy of the test chart.
11. Compare the results of the 1st copy (made in step 3 of "Make a Test Color Print") and the 2nd copy (made in step 10 above):

    If the results of the 2nd copy are better than the results of the 1st copy, you are finished.

    -or-

    If the results of the 2nd copy are worse than the results of the 1st copy:

    - Push the [User Tools] key
    - Touch Maintenance> Auto Color Calibration> Previous Setting.
12. Remove the color chart from the exposure glass.
13. If the customer is not satisfied with the 1st copy or the 2nd copy, you must do the printer gamma adjustment (see Printer Gamma Correction in Replacement and Adjustment in the B132/B200 service manual).

### *Do the Color Registration Procedure for MUSIC*

1. Push [User Tools].
2. Touch [Maintenance]> [Color Registration].
3. Touch [OK].

   This completes color registration.

## *Counter Display Setting*

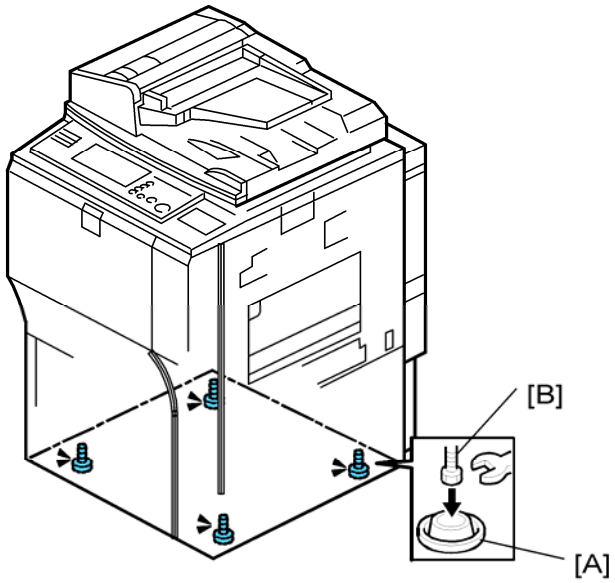
The default setting for the counter is "0" (development). Do the SP setting below to set the counter for copy/print (paper count).

1. Enter the SP mode.
2. Do **SP5045-1**.
3. Select the counter to use:
   - 0: Development counter (Default)
   - 1: Page counter

Important

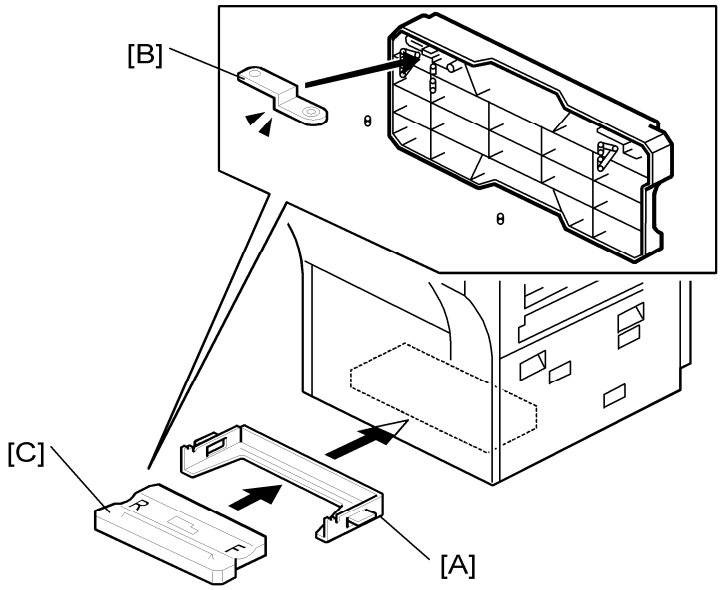
- **This setting can be done only once. After it is set to "1", the counter setting cannot be changed. If the wrong setting is selected by mistake, contact your technical supervisor.**

## *Make the Machine Level*




1. Place the leveling shoes [A] under the machine.
2. Place a level on the exposure glass.
3. Use a wrench to raise or lower the nuts [B] on the leveling shoes until the machine is less than 5 mm from level (measure from front-to-rear and left-to-right).

## *Attach the PCU Stand Rack and Store the PCU Stand*



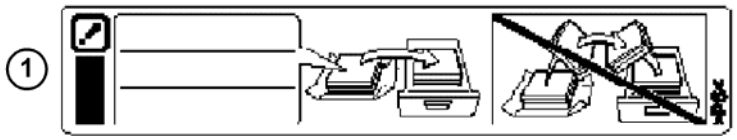

b132i718

1. Hold the PCU stand rack [A] as shown, then attach it to the bottom of the machine (magnets hold it in place).
2. Make sure long lock plate [B] is inserted into the bottom of the PCU stand.
3. Slide the PCU stand [C] into the rack below the copier.

Important

- The PCU stand is required for servicing and must remain with the machine in the field.
- After a PCU is removed from the machine, it should always be placed on the PCU stand. The PCU stand (1) protects the OPC drum while the PCU is out of the machine, and (2) keeps the PCU properly aligned so the development unit can be reattached easily (after they have been separated.)
- To prevent damage to the exposed OPC drum on the bottom of the PCU, never set the PCU on the PCU stand of the previous model. Always use the PCU stand designed for the D014/D015/D078/D079.

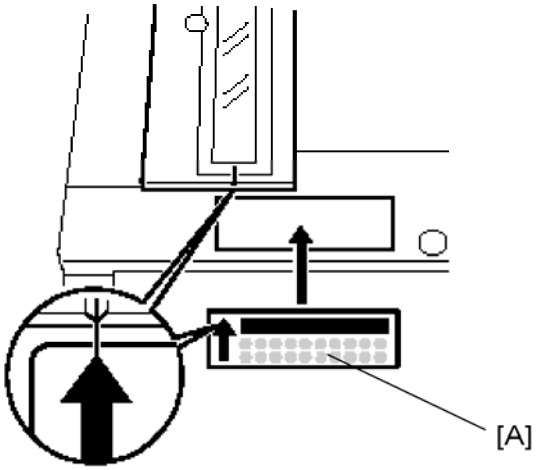
## *Attach Decals*



b132i910

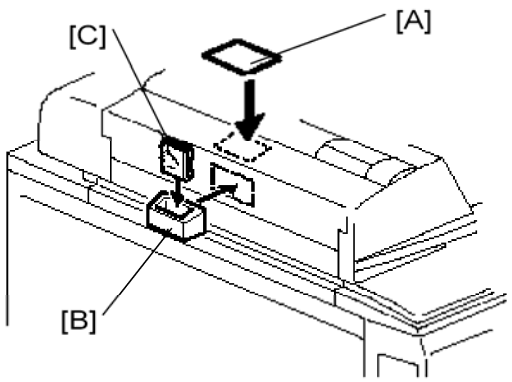
b132i911

1. Attach the paper-installation decals to the trays. These tell you how to add new paper.
   - Front set decal ①: Attach this decal to the LCT if it is installed. 'Front set' means that the paper should be face up in the tray.
   - Back set decal ②: Attach these decals to the trays of the copier. 'Back set' means that the paper should be face down in the tray.




b132i912

2. Attach exposure-glass-cleaning decal [A] at the front edge of the ARDF exposure glass.




b132i913

3. Attach the original-caution decal [A], and the silicone cloth holder [B].
4. Put the silicone cloth [C] in the holder.

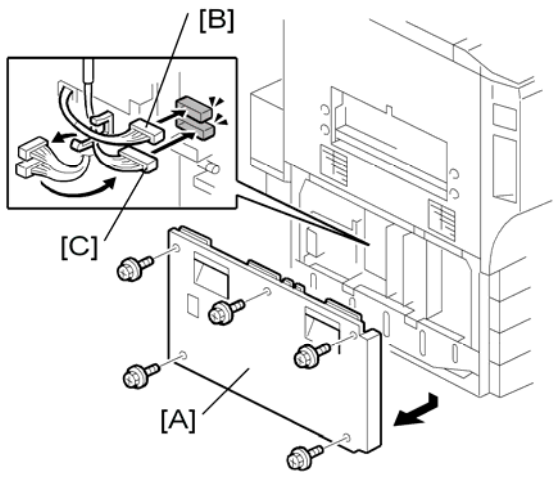
### *Enable USB*

Do SP5985 to enable USB.

### *Print an SMC Report*

1. Go into the SP mode.
2. Do **SP5990-1** to print a full SMC report. Keep it in a safe location, with the factory setting sheet.

## *Connect the Upper and Lower Tray Heaters*




b132i009

The machine comes from the factory with the tray heaters disconnected.

Note

- Heater connection is optional. Connect the heaters if the location is extremely humid. Speak with the customer before you connect the tray heaters.

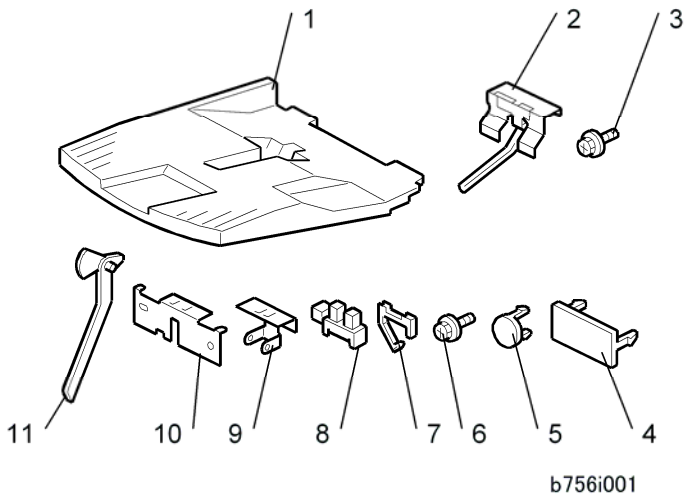
1. Remove the left lower cover [A] ( x 5).
2. If the paper tray unit heater (HTS) or image transfer/scanner heater are required, attach connectors HT5 [B] and HT6 [C] ( x 1, x 2)

# 1.4 COPY TRAY (B756)

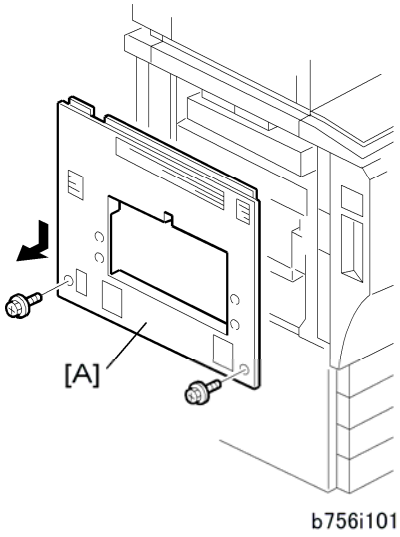
## 1.4.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

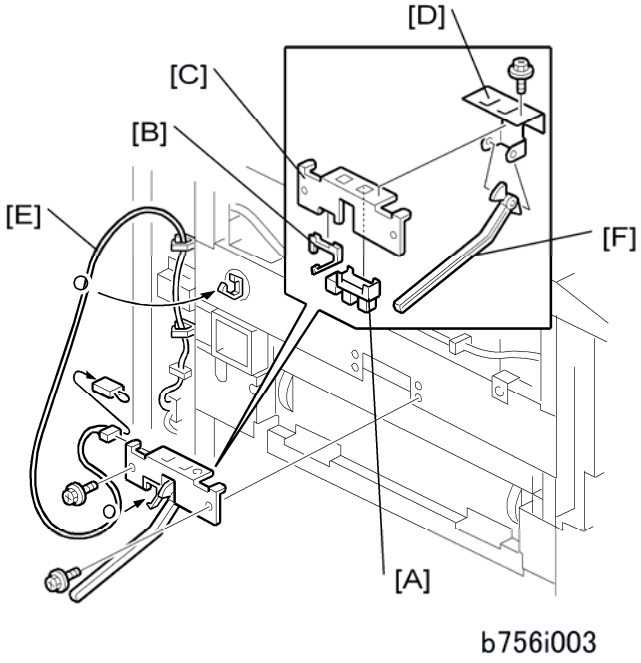
| Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|
| 1. Copy Tray | 1 |
| 2. Actuator Arm and Bracket (not used) | 1 |
| 3. Tapping Screw (not used) | 2 |
| 4. Large Cap | 1 |
| 5. Small Cap | 4 |
| 6. Tapping Screw (M4 x 8) | 1 |
| 7. Harness Clamp | 1 |
| 8. Paper Height Sensor | 1 |
| 9. Actuator Arm Bracket | 1 |
| 10. Sensor Bracket | 1 |
| 11. Actuator Arm | 1 |



## 1.4.2 INSTALLATION

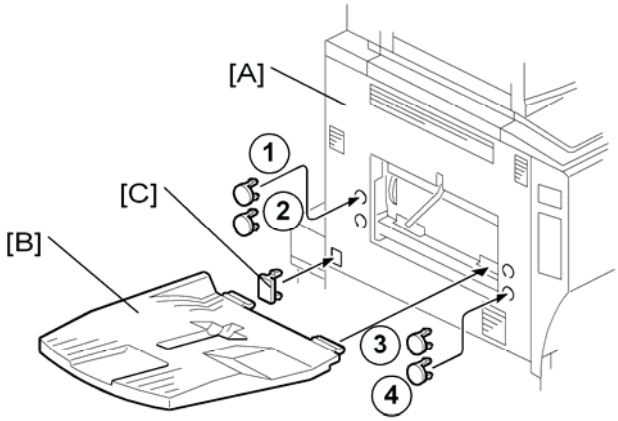



1. Remove the left upper cover [A] (🔩 x 2).




2. Attach the paper height sensor [A] and harness clamp [B] to the sensor bracket [C].
3. Attach the sensor bracket and actuator arm bracket [D] to the copier (🔩 x 3).
4. Attach the sensor harness [E] (x 1, x 4).

1. Attach the actuator [F] to the arms of the actuator arm bracket.




b756i002

2. Reattach the left upper cover [A] (🖉 x2).
3. Attach the tray [B].
4. Attach the small caps to the holes ①,②,③,④.
5. Install the large cap [C] in the finisher power connection point.

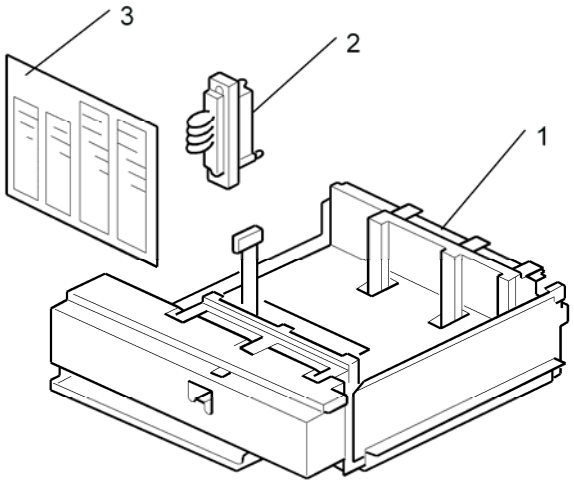
# 1.5 A3/11" X 17" PAPER SIZE TRAY (B331)

The A3/11" x 17" Paper Size Tray is installed in tray 1 of the D014/D015/D078/D079 copier.

## 1.5.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

| Description | Qty |
|---|---|
| 1. A3/DLT Tray | 1 |
| 2. Short Connector | 1 |
| 3. Paper Size Decal | 1 |

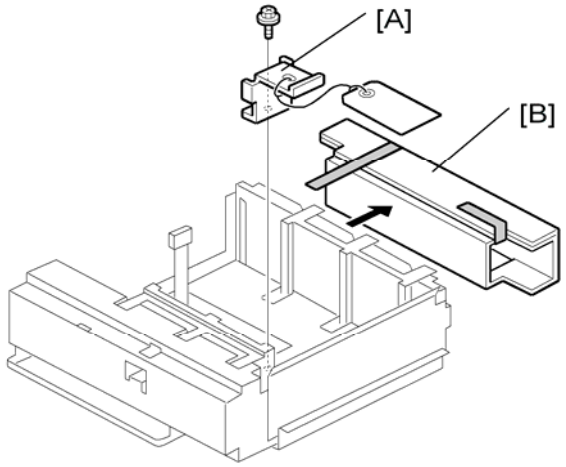



b331i001

## 1.5.2 INSTALLATION

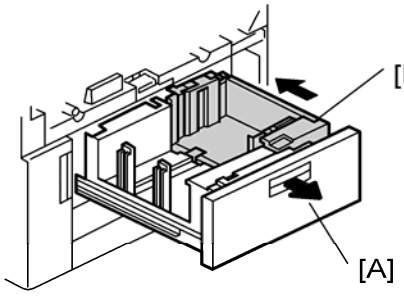
**⚠WARNING**

- Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

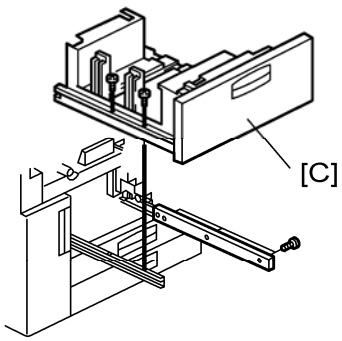



b331i011

1. Remove the metal retainer [A] and packing material [B] (🔩 x 1).
2. Check the position of the front and rear fences, and make sure that they are set for DLT or A3.



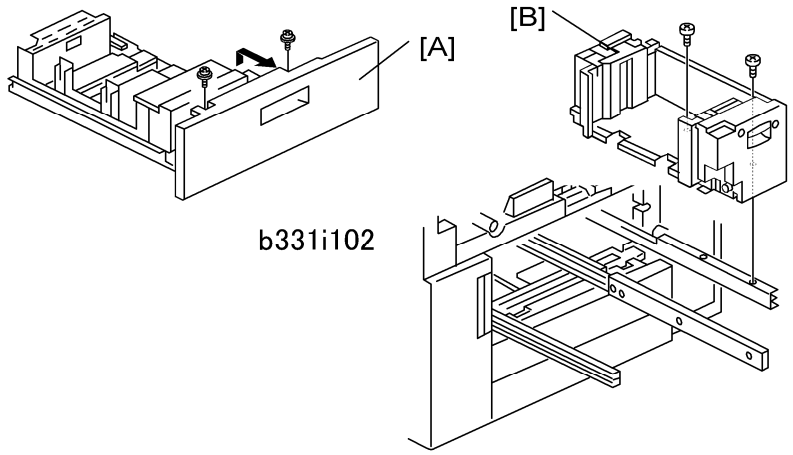

b331i707



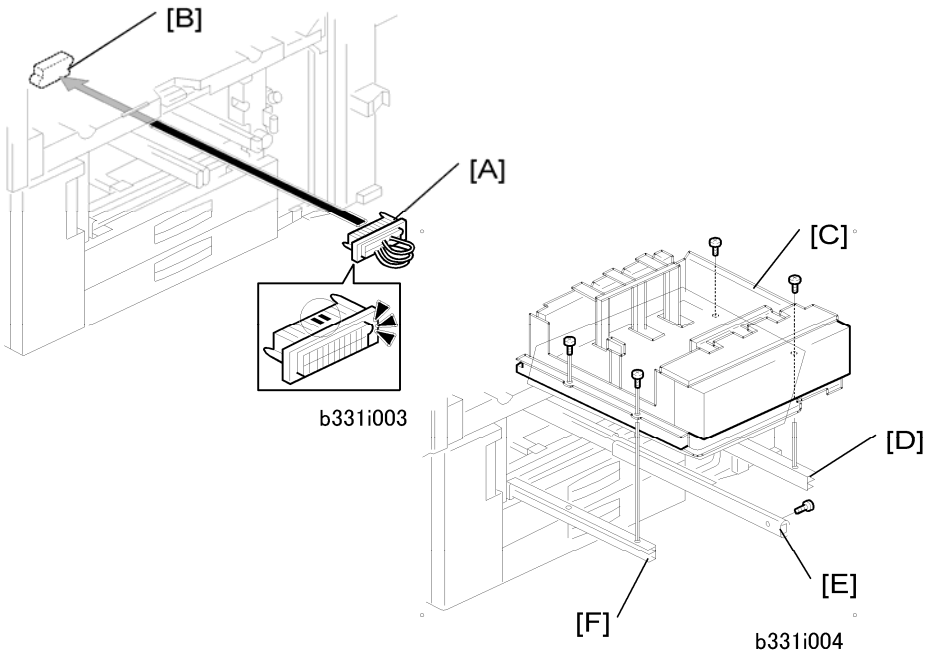

b331i708

3. Open the front doors.
4. Pull out the tandem feed tray [A] fully.
5. Push the right tandem tray [B] into the machine.
6. Remove the left tandem tray [C] (🔩 x 2 left, 🔩 x 3 right).

A3/11" X 17" Paper Size Tray (B331)




7. From the left tandem tray, remove the front cover [A] (x 2).
8. Pull out the right tandem tray [B], then remove it (x 2).




9. Put the short connector [A] into the socket in the machine [B].

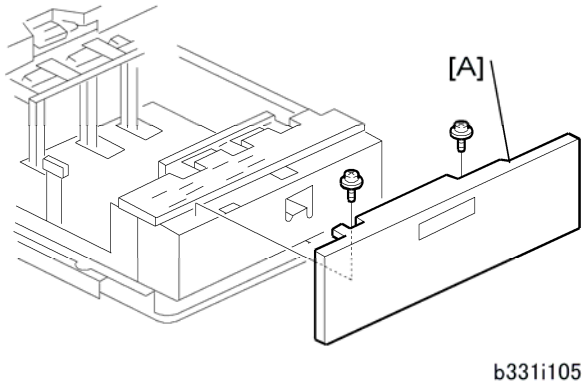
Note

- Hold the connector as shown in the illustration.

10. Install the A3/DLT tray [C] on the right rail [D], center rail [E], and left rail [F]. Use the screws that you removed in Steps 6 and 8.

Note

- You must use the short, silver screws on the left and right rails. If you use one of the longer screws, it will stop the movement of the tray on the rails.




11. Install the front cover [A] (☞ x 2) that was removed from the left tandem tray.
12. Use SP5959 001 to select the paper size for Tray 1 (A3 or DLT).
13. After you select the paper size, turn the machine off and on to change the indicator on the operation panel.

# 1.6 COUNTERS

This section describes installation of three items:

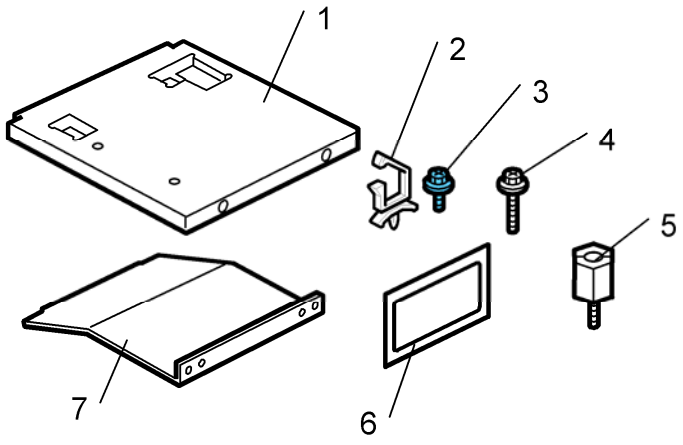
- Key Card Bracket (B498)
- Key Counter Bracket (B452)
- Optional Counter Interface (B879)

## 1.6.1 ACCESSORIES

### *Key Card Bracket B498*

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

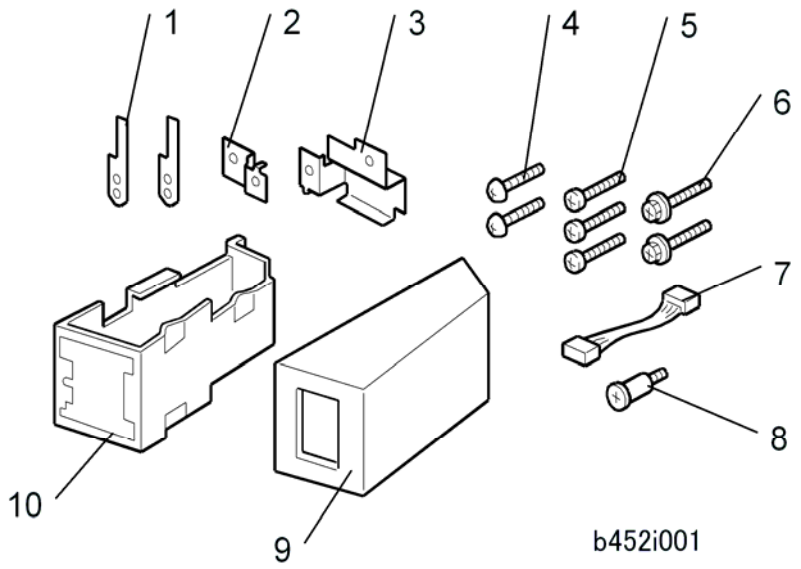
| Description | Qty |
|---|---|
| 1. Key Card Table | 1 |
| 2. Harness Clamp | 1 |
| 3. Tapping Screws (M3 x 8) | 4 |
| 4. Tapping Screws (M4 x 14) | 2 |
| 5. Stud | 1 |
| 6. Decal | 1 |
| 7. Key Card Table Support | 1 |



## *Key Counter Bracket B452 Accessories*

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

| Description | Qty |
|---|---|
| 1. Plate nuts | 2 |
| 2. Rear Bracket | 1 |
| 3. Front Bracket | 1 |
| 4. Tapping Screws (M3 x 6) | 2 |
| 5. Tapping Screws (M4 x 8) | 3 |
| 6. Tapping Screws (M4 x 16) | 2 |
| 7. Harness | 1 |
| 8. Shoulder Screw | 1 |
| 9. Key Counter Bracket Cover | 1 |
| 10. Key Counter Bracket | 1 |



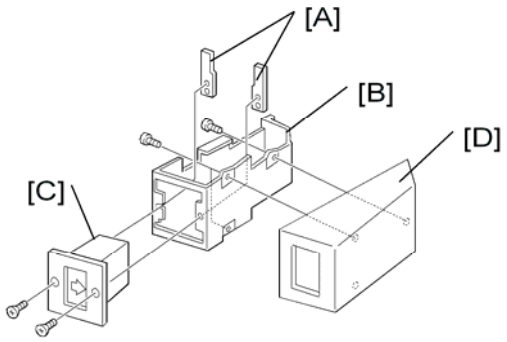
## *Optional Counter Interface Unit Type A B879 Accessories*

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

| Description | Qty |
|---|---|
| 1. Interface Board (PCB) | 1 |
| 2. Tapping Screws (M3x6) | 4 |
| 3. Harness Clamp | 1 |
| 4. PCB Support | 4 |
| 5. Harness: VBCU (White) | 1 |
| 6. Harness: MB (Gray) **Not Used** | 1 |
| 7. Harness Clamp | 1 |

## 1.6.2 INSTALLATION

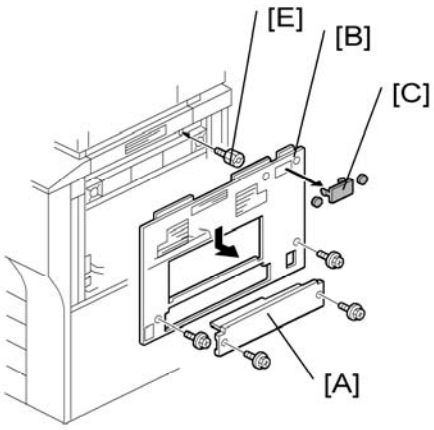
### *Assemble the Key Counter Bracket*



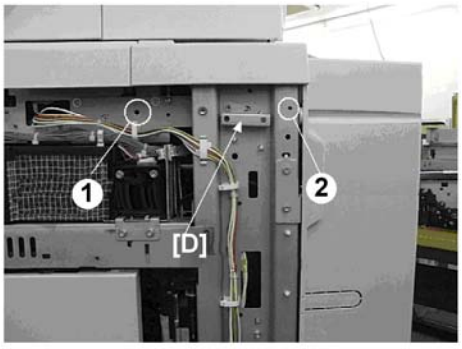

b452i002

1. Hold the key counter plate nuts [A] on the inner surface of the key counter bracket [B].
2. Attach the key counter holder [C] to the key counter bracket (☞ x 2).
3. Attach the key counter bracket cover [D] (☞ x 2).

### *Install the Key Card Bracket and Assembled Key Counter*




b498i002



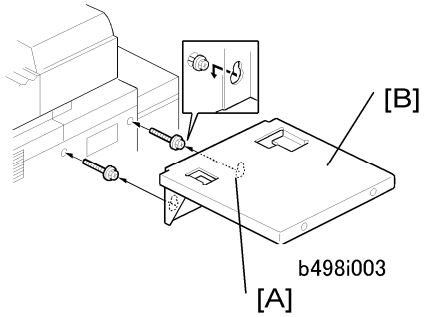

b498i010

Counters

**WARNING**

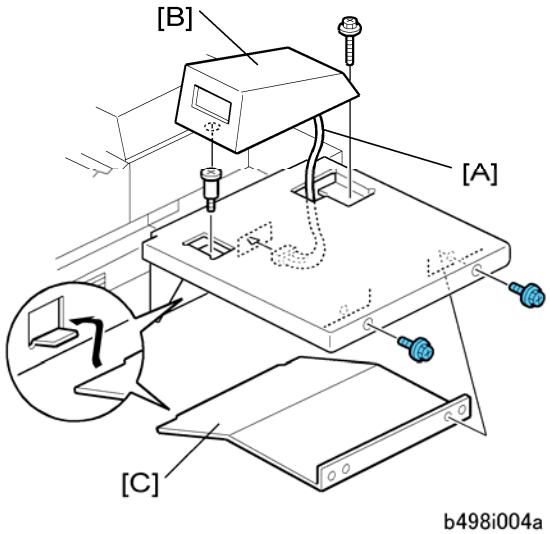
- Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do this procedure.

1. Remove the cover [A] (☞ x 2).
2. Remove the right upper cover [B] (☞ x 2).
3. Remove the three caps [C].
4. If you are installing the key counter bracket, remove connector cover [D] (☞ x 2).
5. Attach stud [E].




6. Put the keyholes [A] of the key card table [B] over the heads of the shoulder screws, as shown above.
7. Tighten the screws to attach the table (M4 x 14, ☞ x 2).
8. Attach the key counter bracket or key card. (See below.)

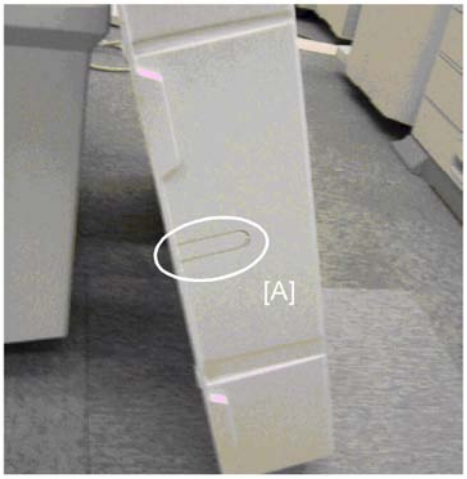
**If you are installing the key counter bracket …**




1. Connect one end of the harness [A] to the key counter bracket [B] (☜ x1).
2. Connect the other end to the 4-pin connector on the right side of the copier.
3. Attach bracket support [C] to the side of the copier (☞ x 2).

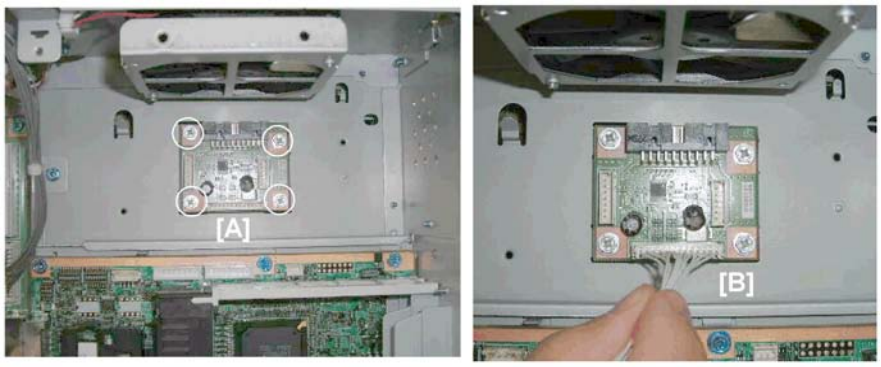
**If you are installing the key card …**

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove the control box cover.




b498i011

3. Remove the cutout [A] in the rear cover.



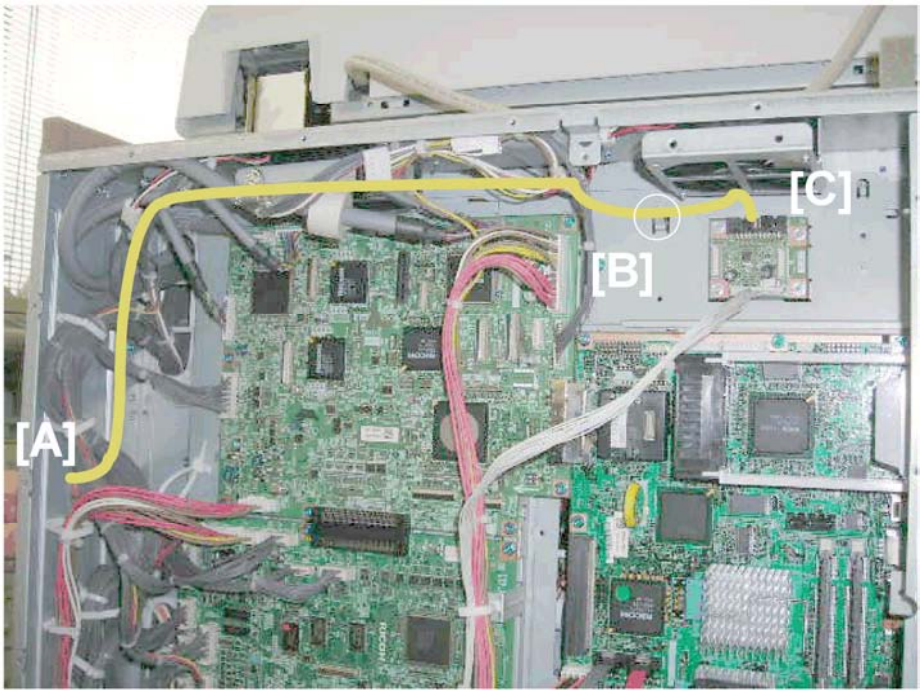

b498i020

4. Attach the circuit board [A] above the controller board (x4).
5. Connect the small cable [B] to the circuit board (x1).

Counters

b498i025

6. Route the other end of the short cable to the VBCU below (☞ x2).
7. Connect the short cable to CN223 on the VBCU (☞ x1).




b498i030

8. Route the harness of the key card through the hole [A] in the controller box as shown above.
9. Clamp the harness at [B] then connect to the top of the circuit board [C] (☞ x1, ☞x1).
10. Reattach the controller box cover and rear cover.

# 1.7 LCT (B473), LCT ADAPTER (B699)

⇒ Note

Use the **PROM: Printed Circuit Board:** marked with P/N **B4735153 or newer.**

(B473 Parts Catalog, pg. 17, item 1)

Cut-in S/N:

**B473-17: J4475300394** (May 2007 production)

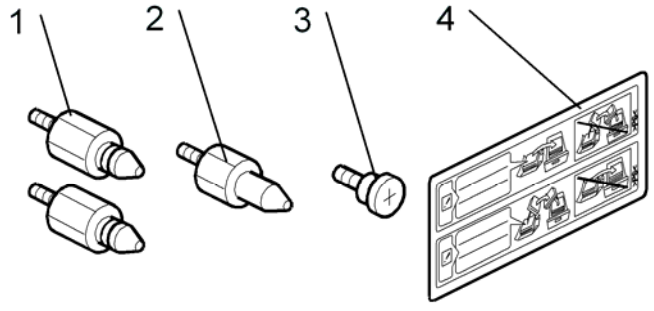
**B473-27: J4470400276** (April 2007 production)

## 1.7.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

### *LCT (B473)*

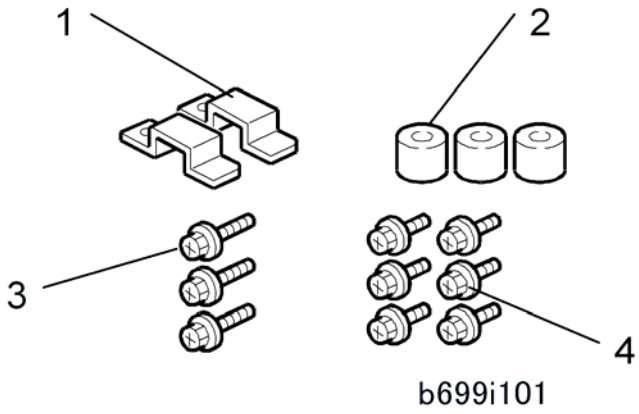
| Description | Qty |
|---|---|
| 1. Upper docking pins (grooved) | 2 |
| 2. Lower docking pin (not grooved, not for B132/B200) | 1 |
| 3. Flat-head shoulder screw - M4x6 | 1 |
| 4. Paper Set Decal | 1 |




b474i101

## *LCT Adapter (B699)*

| Description | Qty |
|---|---|
| 1. Brackets | 2 |
| 2. Supports | 3 |
| 3. Machine Screws (M3x8) | 3 |
| 4. Machine Screws (M4x8) | 6 |

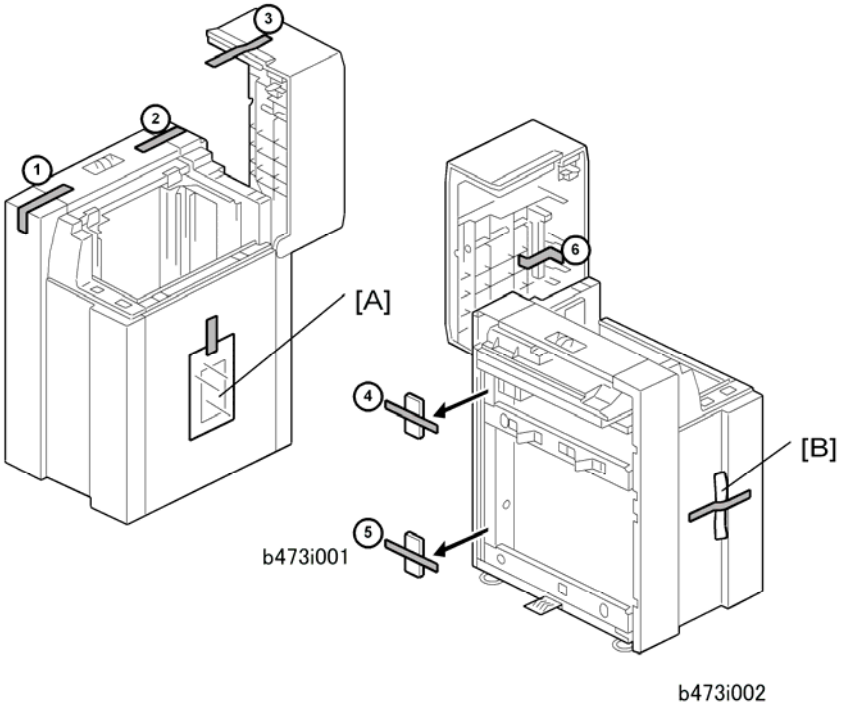


## 1.7.2 INSTALLATION

### *Removing Tape and Accessories*

**⚠WARNING**

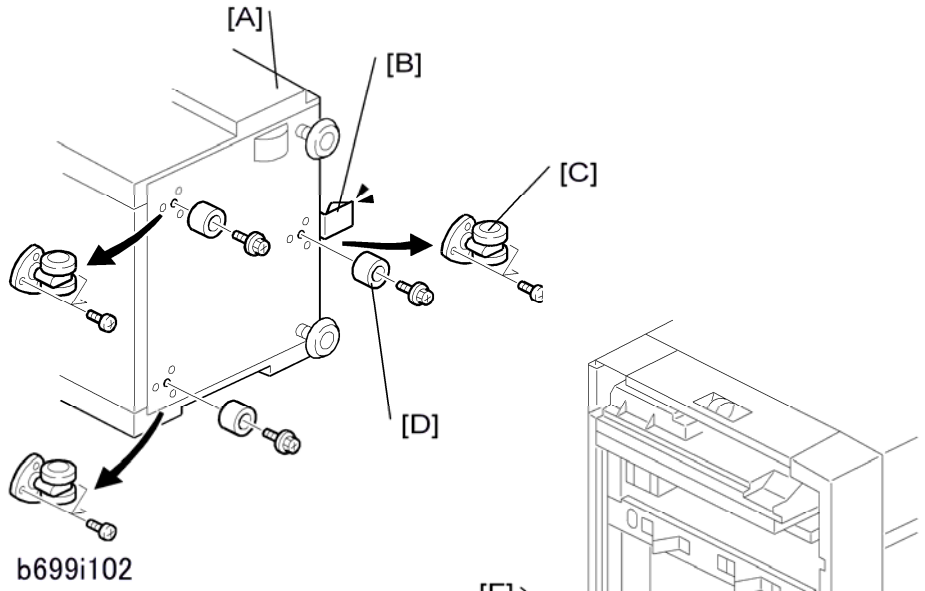
- Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do this procedure.

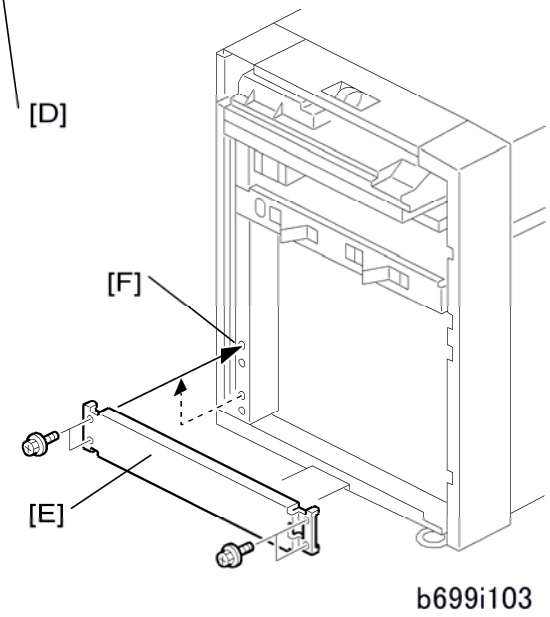



1. Remove all filament tape ① to ⑥.
2. Remove:
   [A] Decals
   [B] Docking pins

## *LCT Adapter (B699) Installation*

The LCT Adapter Kit B699 must be installed before you install the LCT.



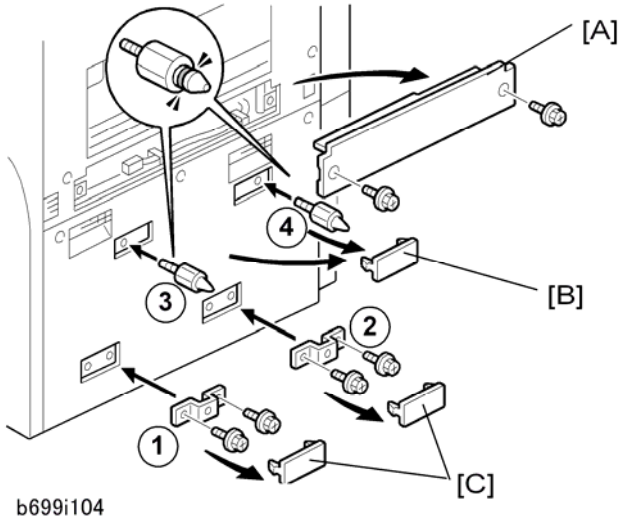




1. Put the LCT [A] on its front side.

   Important

   - Do not put the LCT on its right side (the open side), or you will bend the ground plate [B].
2. Remove the 3 casters [C] ( x 3 each).
3. Attach the 3 supports [D] ( x 1 each – M3x8 thin screws).
4. Set the LCT in a vertical position.
5. Remove the stay [E] ( x 4).
6. Attach the stay at [F] ( x 4).

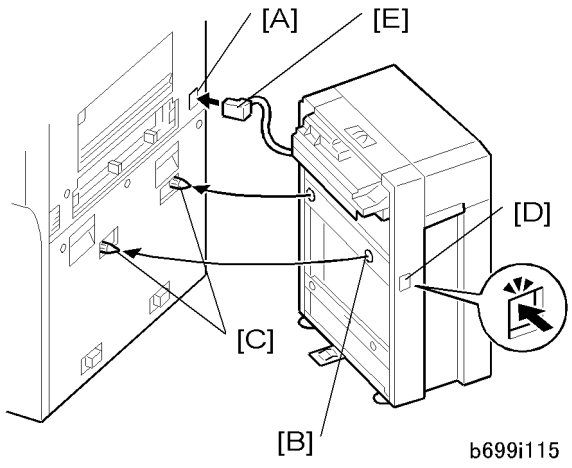
## *LCT Installation*




1. Remove the LCT installation cover [A] from the right side of the machine (☞ x 2).
2. Remove the upper covers [B].
3. Remove the lower covers [C].
4. Attach the brackets ①,② that are supplied with the LCT Adapter (B699) (☞ x 2 each – M4 x 8).
5. Attach the two grooved docking pins ③,④.

Note

- The docking pin without a groove is not necessary for this installation.



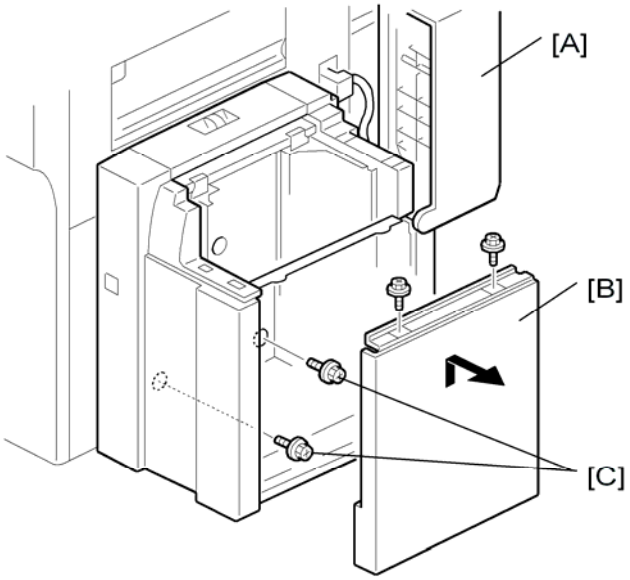

6. Remove the connector cover [A].
7. Align the holes on the side of the LCT [B] with the docking pins [C] on the side of the machine.
8. Slowly push the LCT onto the pins.

LCT (B473), LCT Adapter (B699)

Note

- The release button [D] is used to unlock the LCT.

9. Connect the plug [E] of the LCT power connector to the side of the machine.




b699i107

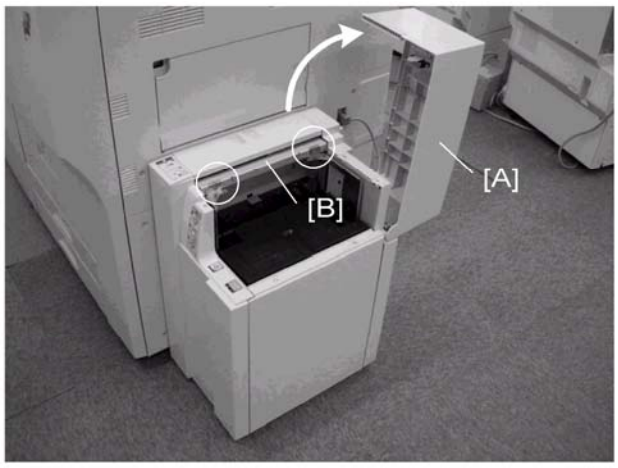
10. Open the upper cover [A].
11. Remove the cover [B] (🔩 x 2).
12. Attach screws [C] to the brackets on the side of the machine.
13. Attach the cover [B] with the screw that you removed in Step 11.

## *Adjusting Side Fences for Paper Size*

**Before You Begin…**

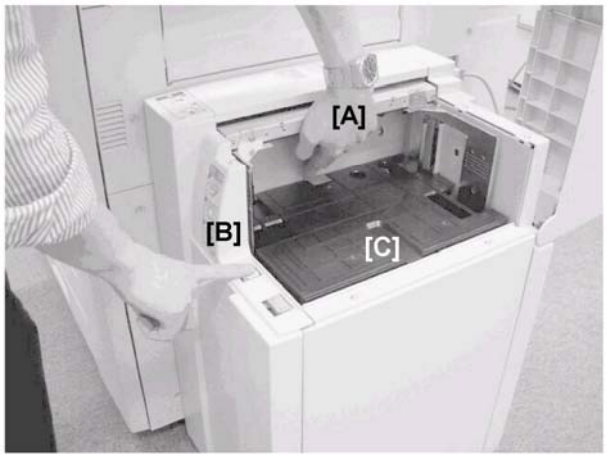
- The side fences must be adjusted manually for either A4 or LT. The procedure below is not required if the side fences are already set for A4.
- Before doing this procedure, the LCT must be installed and connected to the copier and the copier must be switched on.
- The procedure below shows how to move the side fences from the A4 to the LT positions.

1. Turn ON the copier main power switch.




b473i200

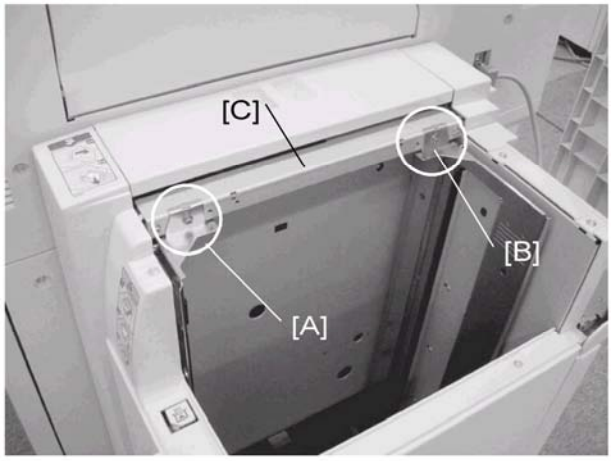
2. Open the LCT top cover [A].
3. Check the position markers on plate [B].
   - If the fences are set for A4 and you intend to load A4, the LCT is ready and you do not need to do the following steps.
   - If the fences are set for A4 and you intend to load LT, do the steps below.




b473i201

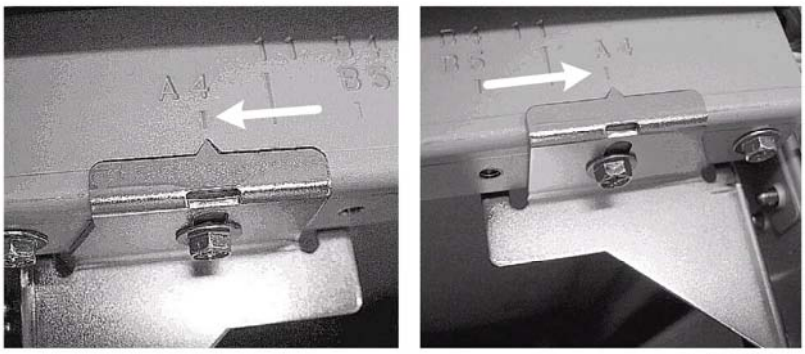
LCT (B473), LCT Adapter (B699)

4. Cover the photosensor [A] with your left hand.
5. Press the bottom plate operation button [B] until the bottom plate [C] is completely down, then release the button [B].



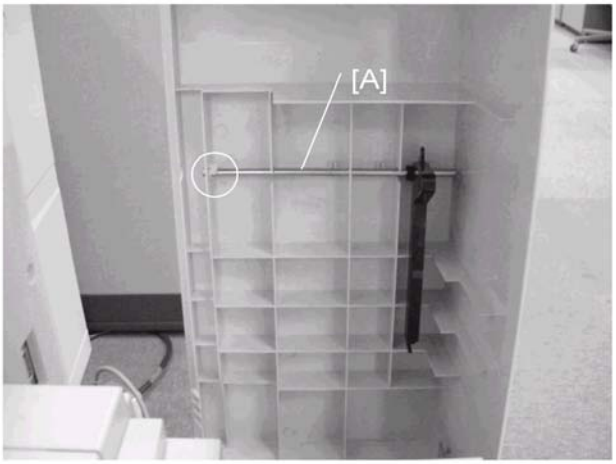

b473i203

6. Use a screw driver to remove the screws fastened to fences [A] and [B] so that the fences slide easily on plate [C].



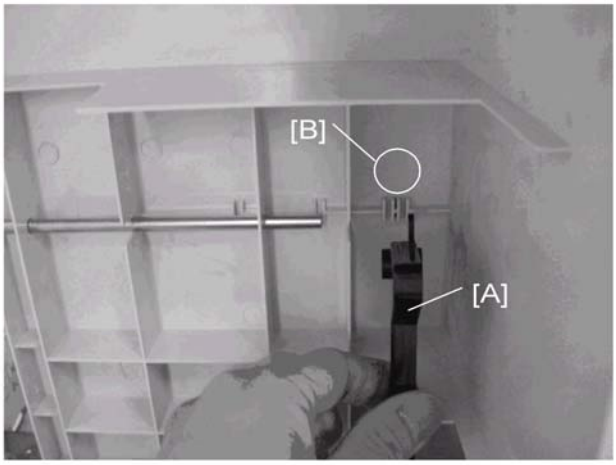

b473i203a

1. Move each side fence bracket from the A4 to the LT position, then reattach the screws.




b473i204

2. Remove the shaft [A] from under the LCT top cover (x1).




b473i205

1. Move the LCT end fence [A] from the A4 to the LT position (the position guide is written on the LCT top cover at [B]).
2. Insert the shaft [C] (x1).
3. Close the LCT top cover.
4. Do SP5959-5 and set the value to "1" (for "LT").

# 1.8 LG UNIT FOR A4/LT LCT (B474)

The 81/2" x 14"/B4 (B474) is installed in the LCT (B473).

## 1.8.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

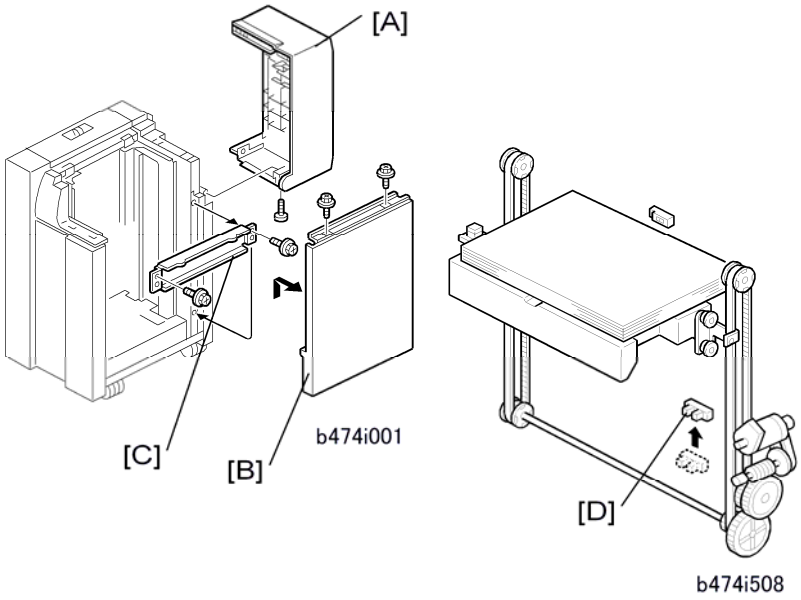
| Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|
| 1. Tapping screws - M4x8 | 4 |
| 2. Tapping hex screws - M4x8 | 6 |
| 3. Harness clamp | 1 |
| 4. B4/LG frame | 1 |
| 5. Front bracket | 1 |
| 6. Rear bracket | 1 |
| 7. Bottom plate extension | 1 |
| 8. Cover | 1 |

## 1.8.2 INSTALLATION

### *LCT Connected to the Machine*

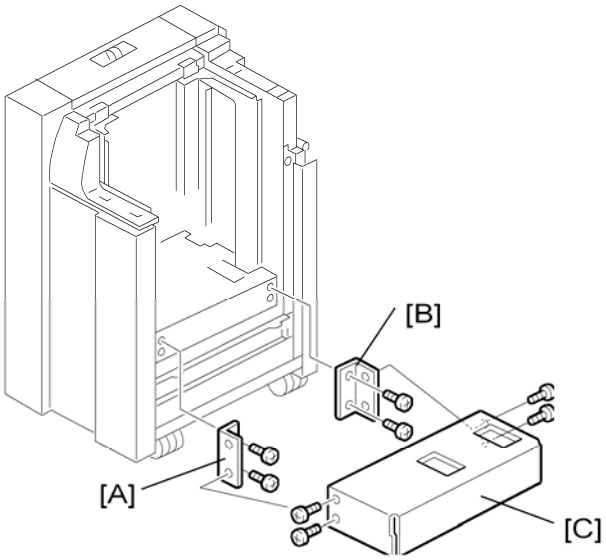
**⚠WARNING**

- Turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you start this procedure.




1. If the LCT is connected to the copier:
   - Open the cover and remove the paper.
   - Close the cover.
   - Turn the main power switch off.
   - Disconnect the LCT from the copier.
2. Remove the LCT cover [A] (🔩 x 1).
3. Remove the right cover [B] (🔩 x 2).
4. Remove the right stay [C] and attach it below (🔩 x 2).
5. Change the position of the lower limit sensor [D] (🔩 x 1).
6. Attach the harness clamp (not shown) to the rear of the plate. Use this clamp to hold the sensor connector wire.

LG Unit for A4/LT LCT (B474)

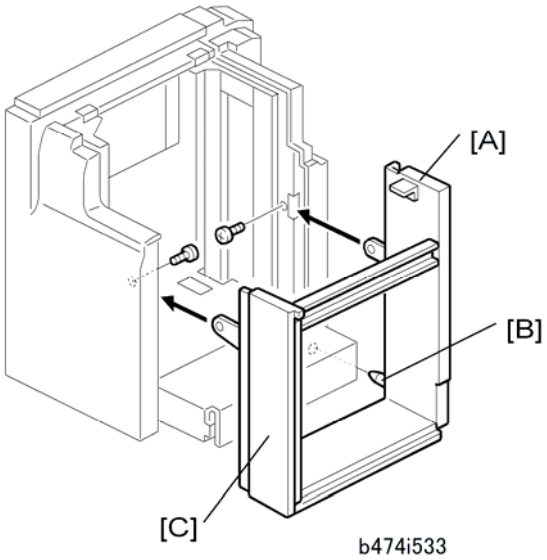



7. Attach the front bracket [A] with the beveled corner down (🔩 x 2).

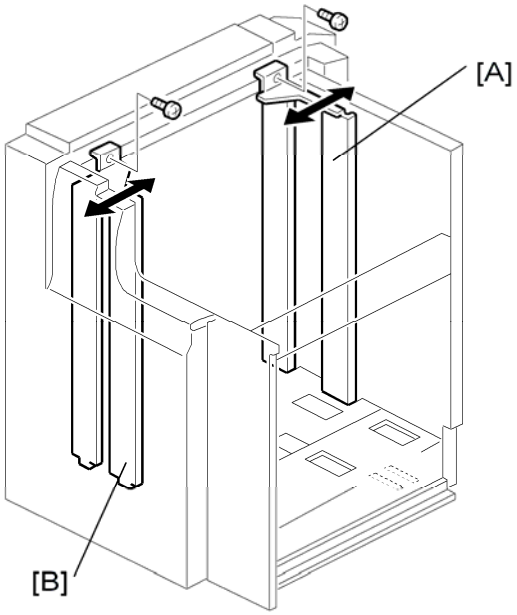
Note

- If the brackets are not easy to install, lift the bottom plate with your hand.

8. Attach the rear bracket [B] with the beveled corner down (🔩 x 2).
9. Attach the bottom plate extension [C] with the hex screws (🔩 x 4).

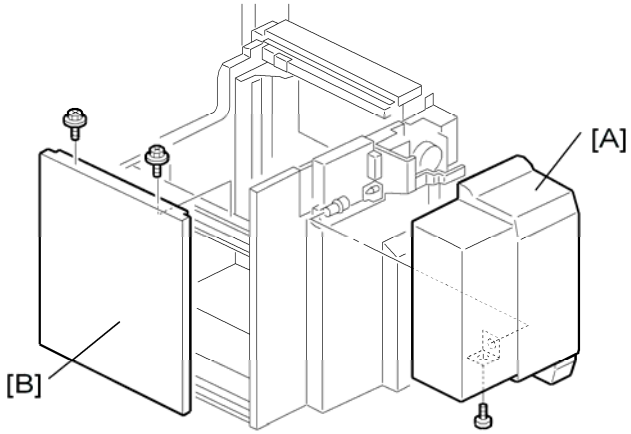



10. Remove the casters from the bottom of the B4/LG frame [A]
11. Align the positioning pin [B].
12. Attach the B4/LG frame [C] with the hex screws (🔩 x 2).




b474i555

13. Move the front side fence [A] and rear side fence [B] to the B4 or 8.5" position and attach it (☞ x 1).




b474i506

14. Attach the cover [A] (8.5" x 14"/B4) (☞ x 1).
15. Attach the right cover [B] (☞ x 2).
16. Connect the LCT to the machine.
17. Turn the machine on.
18. Go into the SP mode and do **SP5959-2.**
19. Input "5" for B4 SEF or "6" for 8.5" x 14" SEF.

# 1.9 LCIT RT4000 (D350)

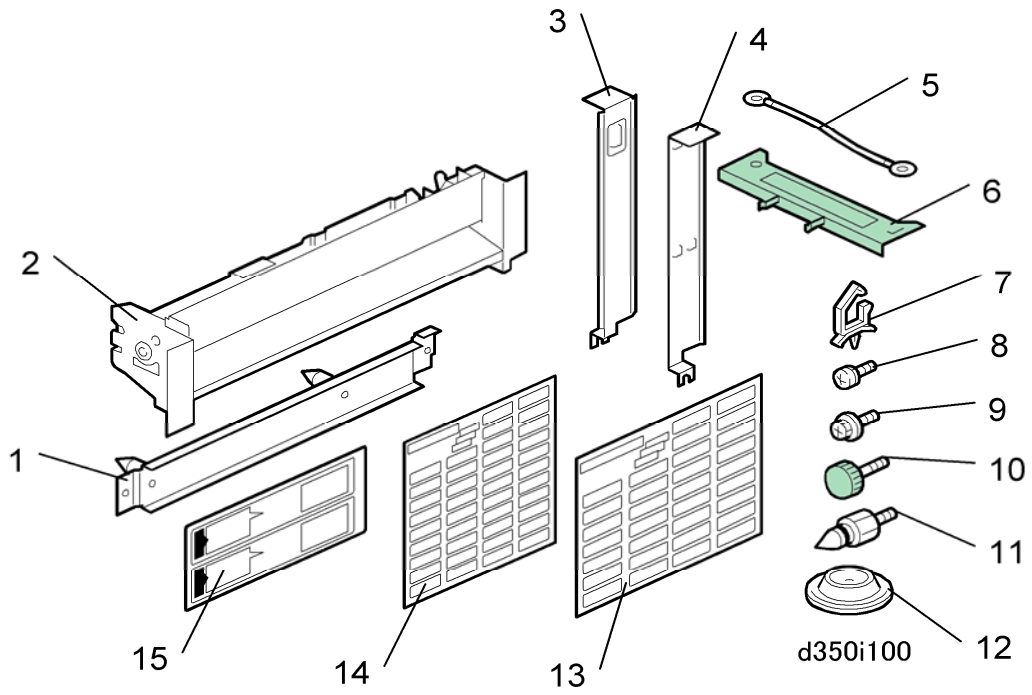
## 1.9.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

Note

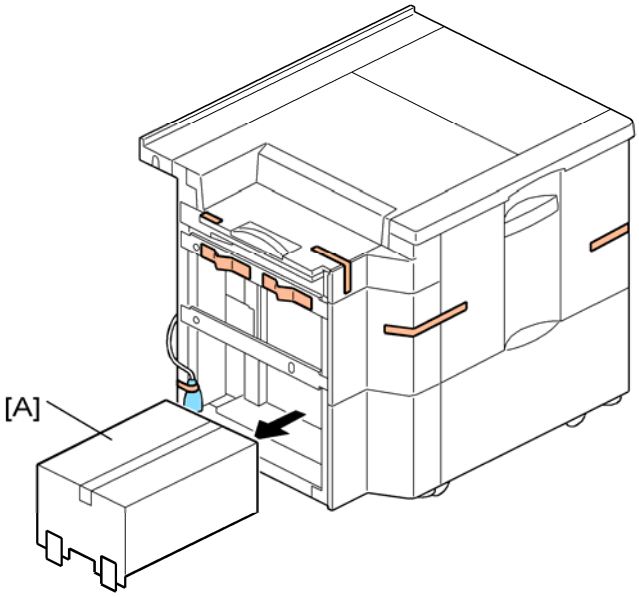
- The accessory box is inside the LCIT (see the next page).

| | Description | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Stay | 1 |
| 2. | Relay Unit | 1 |
| 3 | Left Side Fence | 1 |
| 4. | Right Side Fence | 1 |
| 5. | Ground Wire | 1 |
| 6. | Tab Sheet Holder | 1 |
| 7. | Clamp | 1 |
| 8. | Screws (M4x8) | 2 |
| 9. | Screws (M4x8) | 3 |
| 10. | Screws (Plastic Head) | 1 |
| 11. | Joint Brackets | 2 |
| 12. | Shoes | 4 |
| 13. | Paper Size Decals (A3…) | 1 |
| 14. | Paper Size Decals (A5…) | 1 |
| 15. | Paper Loading Decals | 1 |


3
4
5
6
2
7
8
9
1
10
11
12
15
14
13
d350i100

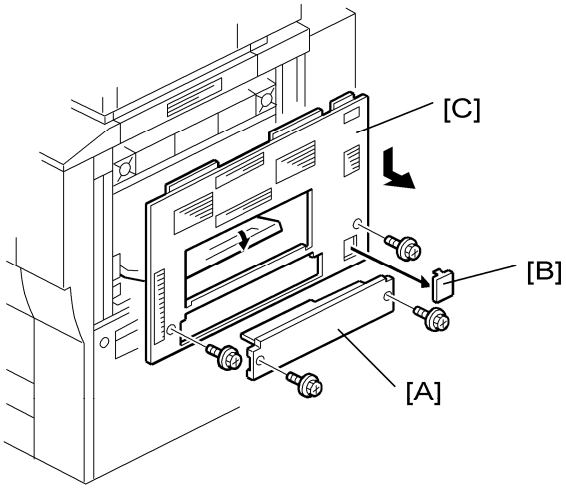
## 1.9.2 LCT INSTALLATION

### *Grounding and Preparing the LCT for Docking*



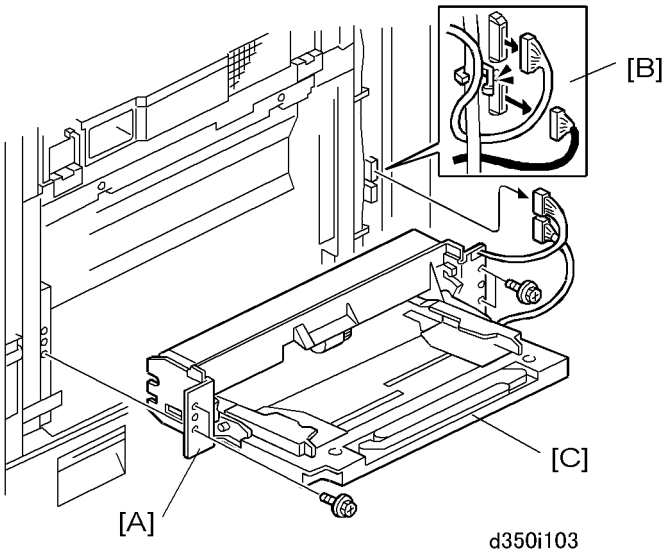

d350i101

1. Remove the accessory box [A] from inside the LCIT.
2. Remove all tapes.




d350i102

3. Remove the paper entrance cover [A] (x2).
4. Remove the connector cover [B].
5. Remove the right upper cover [C] (x2).

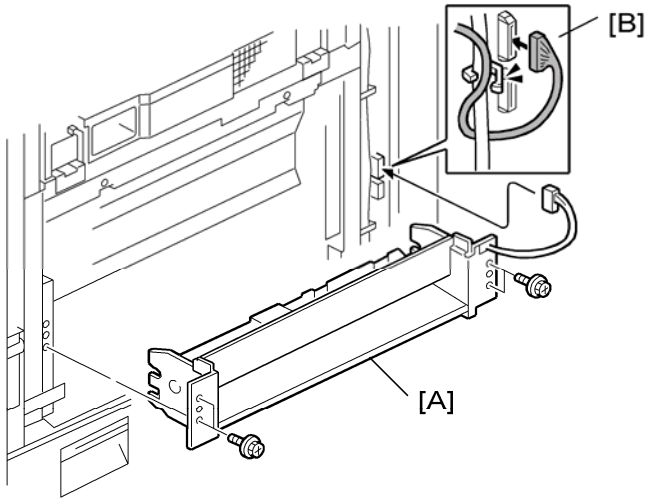



d350i103

6. Remove the plate [A] (x2).
7. Disconnect the bypass unit connectors [B] (x2).
8. Remove the bypass unit [C] (keep the screws) (x4).

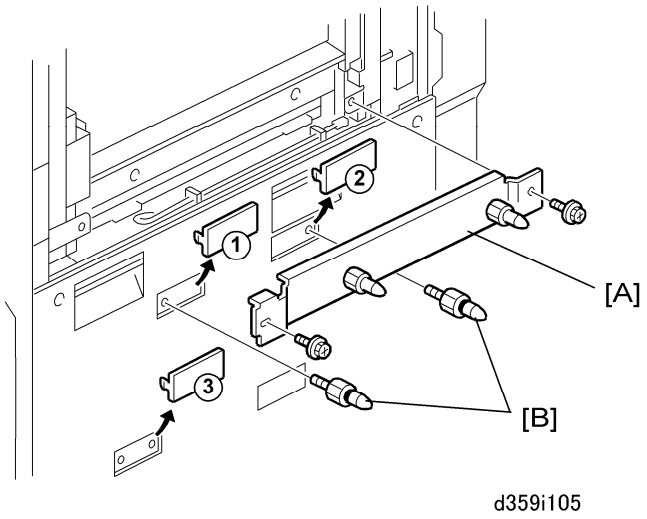
Note

- Do not throw away the bypass tray. The customer may need it again later.

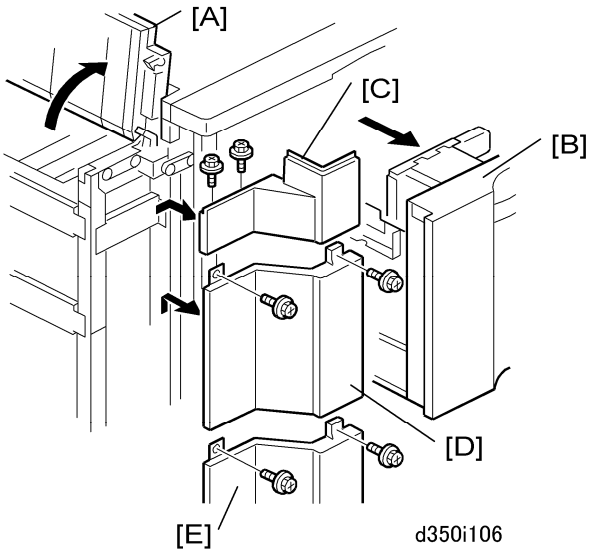



d350i104

1. Use the screws removed with the bypass tray to attach the relay unit [A] (x4).
2. Connect the relay harness [B] (x1).



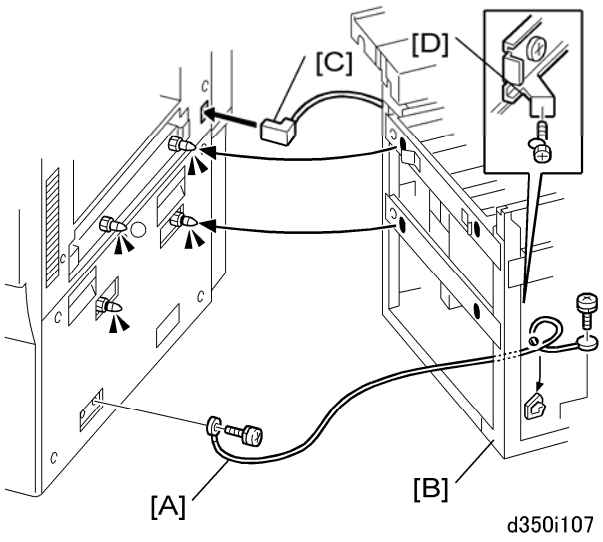

3. Remove knockouts ①, ②, ③.
4. Attached the stay [A] with the provided screws (x2).
5. Attach the joint connection pins [B] (x2).
6. Re-attach the right upper cover.



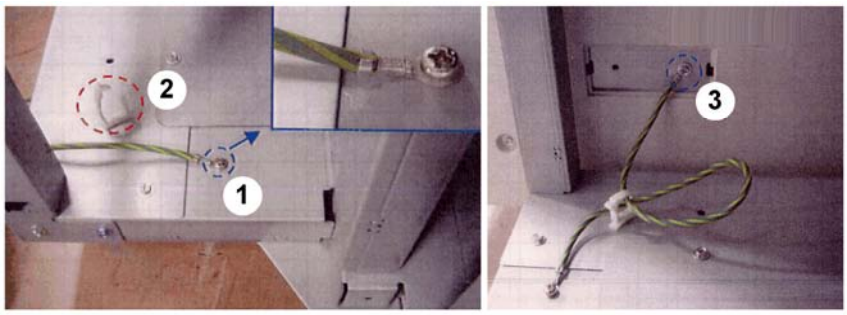

7. On the LCT, raise the paper exit cover [A].
8. Pull the paper tray [B] about halfway out of the unit.
9. Remove the left corner cover (upper) [C] (x2).
10. Remove the left corner cover (middle) [D] (x2).
11. Remove the left corner cover (lower) [E] (x2).
12. Push the paper tray [B] into the LCIT.

Important

- The paper tray [B] must be pushed in now. If the paper tray remains out, the LCIT is unstable and difficult to move.




13. Attach the ground wire [A] to the main machine and LCIT (x2).




- On the LCIT, attach the ground wire ① and clamp it at ② (x1, x1).
- Attach the other end of the ground wire to the main machine at ③ (x1).

14. Push the LCIT [B] against the side of the main machine.
15. Connect the LCIT I/F cable [C] to the main machine (x1).
16. Fasten the screw to the lock plate [D] (x1).
17. Reattach the left corner plates (x2 each), push the paper tray into the LCIT, and close the paper exit cover.
18. If you are going to install the heaters, do this now. See the next section.

    -or-

    If you will not install the heaters, skip the next section.

LCIT RT4000 (D350)

### *After Installation*

sib79

The paper tray is large and heavy, especially when it is loaded to full capacity. Direct the customer to the warning sticker on the left side of the tray. The label is a reminder that two persons are needed to lift and handle the paper tray safely.

## 1.9.3 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER TYPE B: 120V

### *Accessory Check*

| No. | Description | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | PTC Heater 100V to 240V 13W | 2 |

**⚠CAUTION**

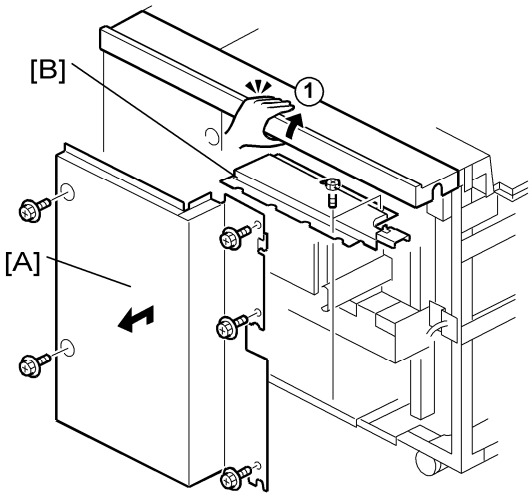
- Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.
- Do the following procedure in order to prevent damage to the harnesses.
- Check that the harnesses are not damaged or pinched after installation.

The correct wire heaters must be installed for the machine.

| Copier | PTC Heater | Harness Color |
|---|---|---|
| D014/D015/D078/D079 (120V) | 100V to 240V 13W (D3500900) | WHITE |

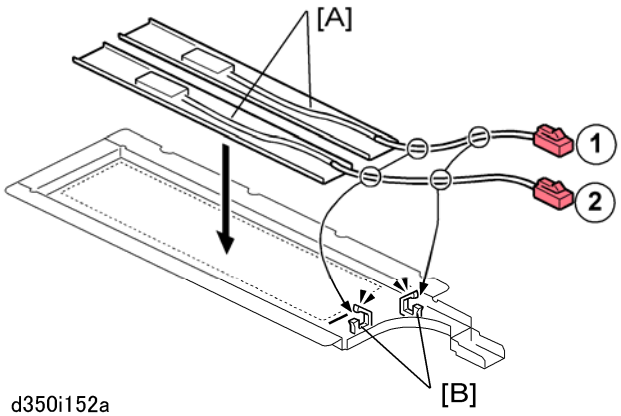
### *Installation Procedure for 120V*

1. Confirm that the heater unit is the correct type for the machine:
   - 120V Model: Both connector harnesses are WHITE. (Use for this installation.)



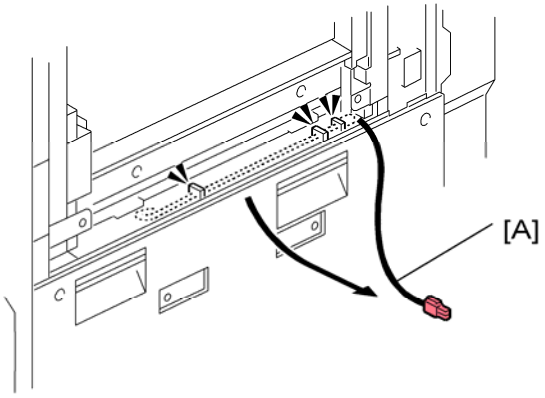

d350i151

   - 208 - 240V Model: Both connector harnesses are RED. (Do not use for this installation.)
2. At the back of the LCIT, remove:
   [A] Rear cover (☞ x5). Lift cover ① to remove rear cover.
   [B] Heater cover (☞ x2)



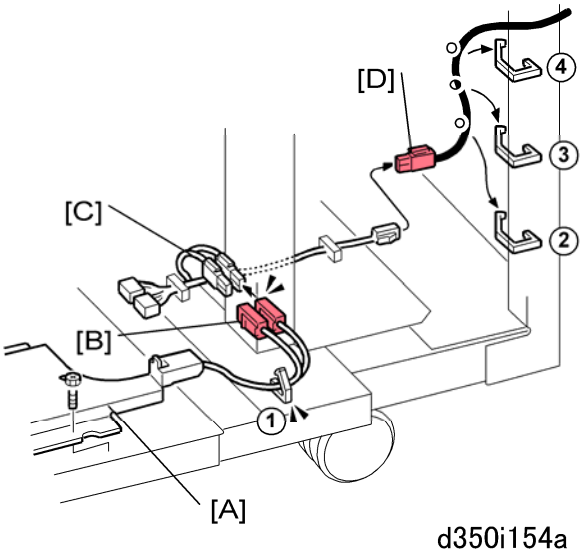

d350i152a

3. Remove the seals from the bottom of the heater units [A] and attach the heaters to the heater cover.
4. Confirm that the heaters are not touching or overlapping.
5. Route both harnesses through the clamps [B] and fasten the clamps.




d350i153

6. Pull the heater connection harness [A] away from the right side of the main machine.




d350i154a

7. Fasten the heater cover [A] to the base plate (x2).
8. Connect the heater harnesses [B] to the relay harness [C] (x2).
9. Connect the harness from the main machine [D] to the relay harness [C] (x1).
10. Clamp the harnesses as shown (x4).

## 1.9.4 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER TYPE B: 240V

### *Accessory Check*

| No. | Description | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Nichrome Wire Heater 230V 18W | 2 |

**⚠CAUTION**

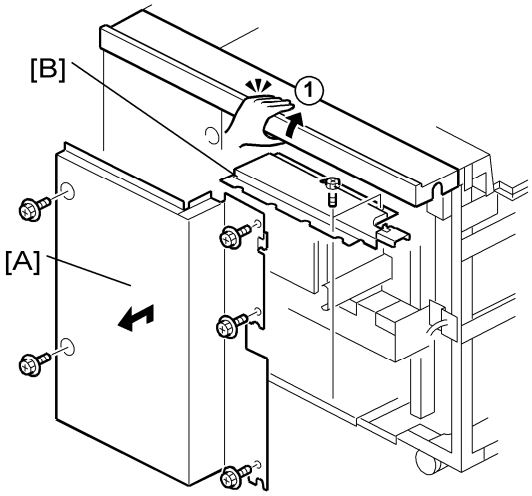
- Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.
- Do the following procedure in order to prevent damage to the harnesses.
- Check that the harnesses are not damaged or pinched after installation.

The correct wire heaters must be installed for the machine.

| Copier | Nichrome Wire Heater | Harness Color |
|---|---|---|
| D014/D015/D078/D079 (208V-240V) | 230V 18W (D3500901) | RED |

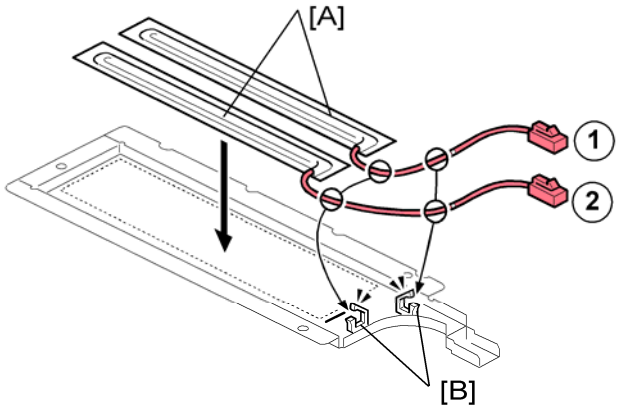
## *Installation Procedure for 240V*

1. Confirm that the heater unit is the correct type for the machine:
   - 120V Model: Both connector harnesses are WHITE. (Do not use for this installation.)
   - 208V-240V Model: Both connector harnesses are RED. (Use for this installation.)



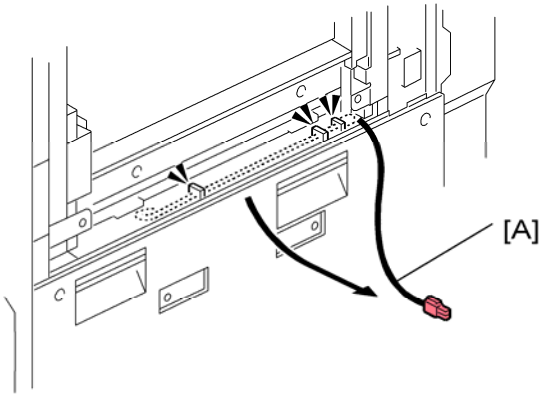

d350i151

2. At the back of the LCIT, remove:
   [A] Rear cover (x5). Lift ① to remove rear cover.
   [B] Heater cover (x2)



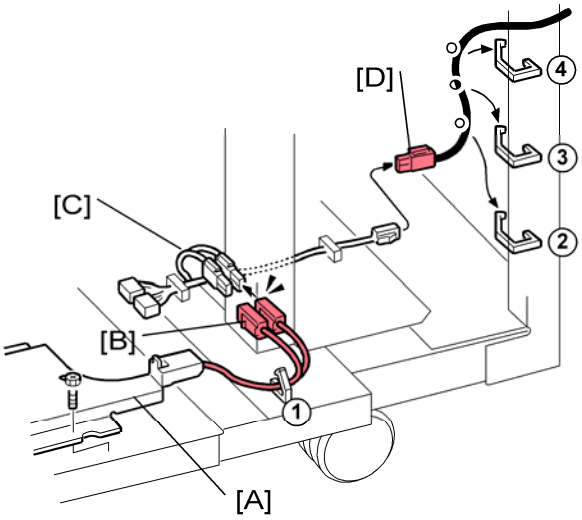

d350i152

3. Remove the seals from the bottom of the heater units [A] and attach the heaters to the heater cover.
4. Confirm that the heaters are not touching or overlapping.
5. Route both harnesses through the clamps [B] and fasten the clamps.




d350i153

6. Pull the heater connection harness [A] away from the right side of the main machine.



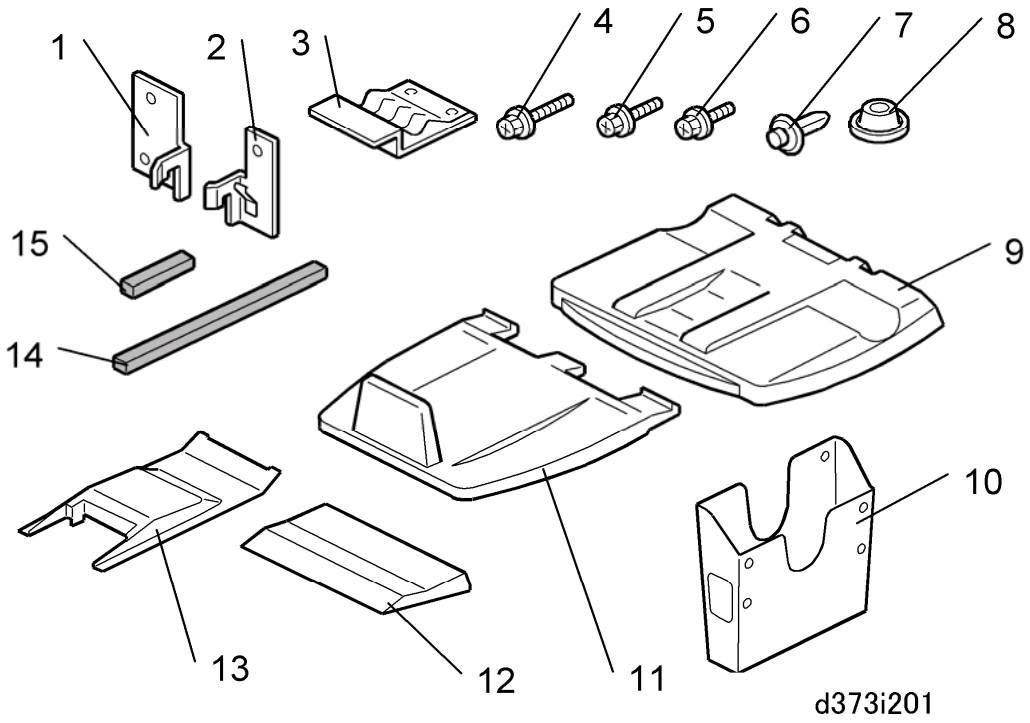

d350i154

7. Fasten the heater cover [A] to the base plate (x2).
8. Connect the heater harnesses [B] to the relay harness [C] (x2).
9. Connect the harness from the main machine [D] to the relay harness [C] (x1).
10. Clamp the harnesses as shown (x4).

# 1.10 2000/3000 SHEET FINISHERS (D373/D374)

## 1.10.1 ACCESSORIES

| | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Front joint bracket | 1 |
| 2. | Rear joint bracket | 1 |
| 3. | Ground (earth) plate | 1 |
| 4. | Screws (M4 x 14) | 4 |
| 5. | Screws (M3 x 8) | 1 |
| 6. | Screws (M3 x 6) | 3 |
| 7. | Screw (Plastic) | 2 |
| 8. | Leveling Shoes | 3 |
| 9. | Upper output tray | 1 |
| 10. | Tray Holder | 1 |
| 11. | Lower output tray (D373 Only) | 1 |
| 12. | Support Plate for Proof Tray | 1 |
| 13. | Support Plate for Shift Tray | 1 |
| 14 | Cushion (with double-sided tape) | 1 |
| 15. | Gasket Seal | 1 |




## 1.10.2 INSTALLATION

This section shows the installation instructions for two finishers:

- D373 Booklet Finisher: This can do punching, shifting, stapling, and saddle-stitching with staples. This booklet finisher can be used with the D014/D078 or D015/D079.
- D374 Finisher, capable of punching, shifting, and stapling but with no saddle-stitching unit. This finisher can be used with the D014/D015/D078/D079.

Note

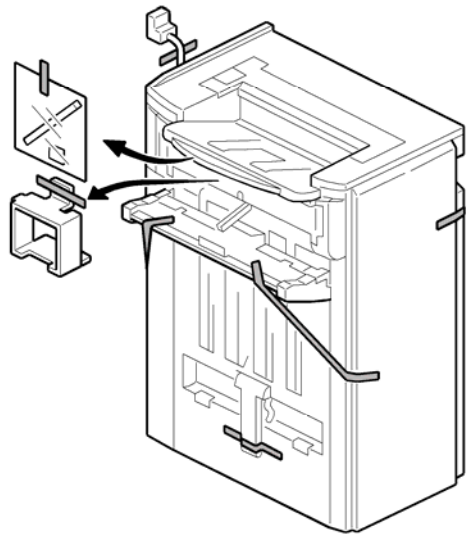
- Differences in the installation procedures are shown as "D373" or "D374"

## *Removing Tapes and Packing Materials*

**⚠CAUTION**

- Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do these procedures.

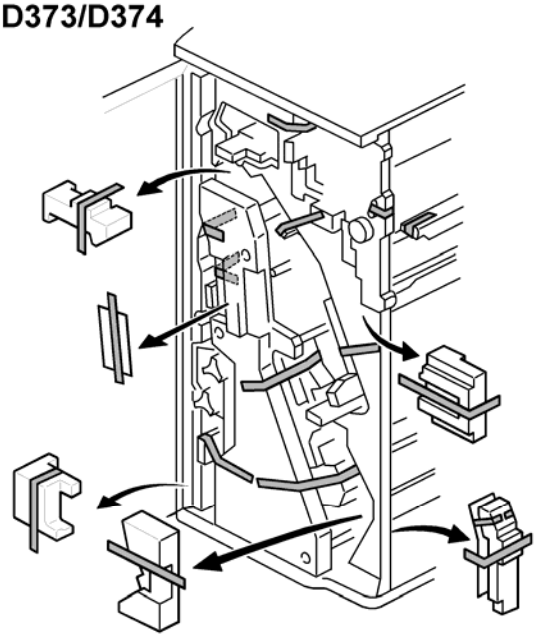
**D373/D374**



d373i102

1. Remove the machine from its box, and remove all the wrapping.
2. Remove all filament tape and packing material from the finisher.

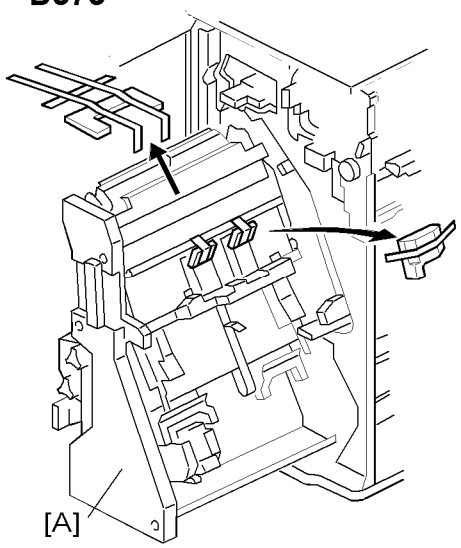
**D373/D374**



d373i202

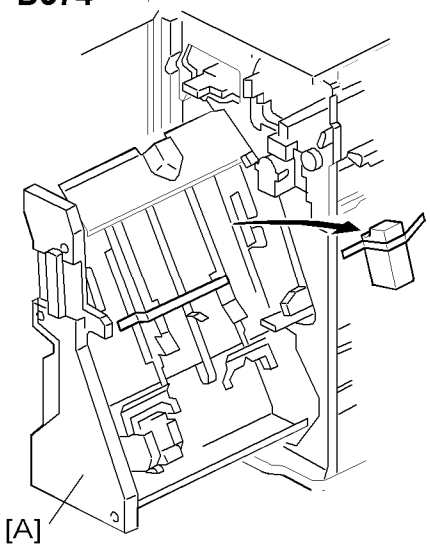
3. Open the front door.
4. Remove all tapes and packing materials inside the finisher.

**D373**




d373i204

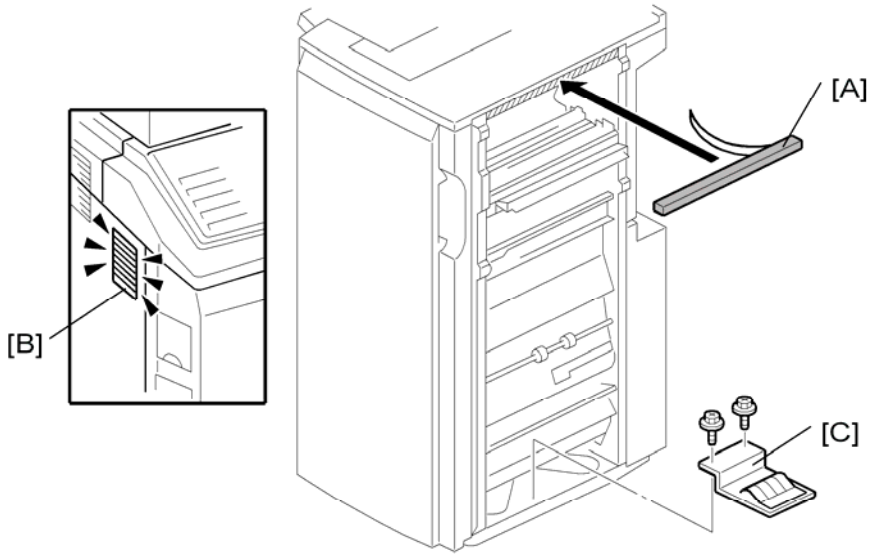
**D374**




b701i204

5. Pull the jogger unit [A] out of the finisher.
6. Remove the tapes and retainers.

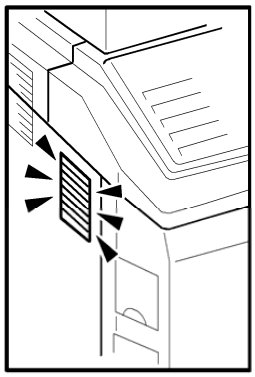
## *Docking the Finisher to the Copier*




1. The first step depends on whether you will install the Cover Interposer B704.

   **If you will not install the Cover Interposer B704:**

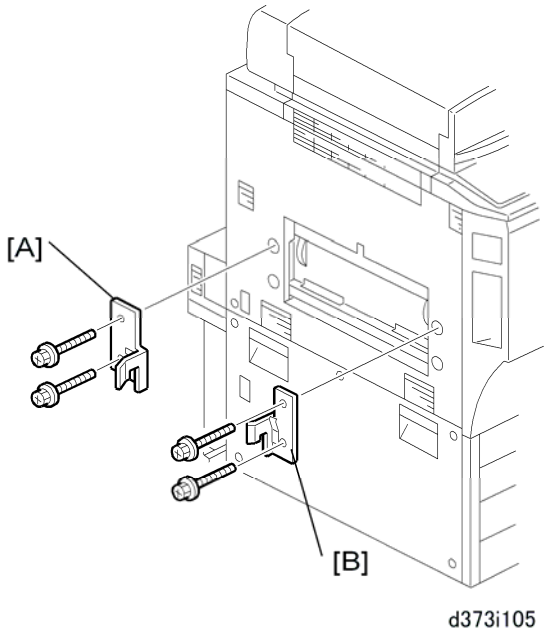
   - Remove the strip from the sponge cushion [A] and attach it to the finisher, then go to Step 2.



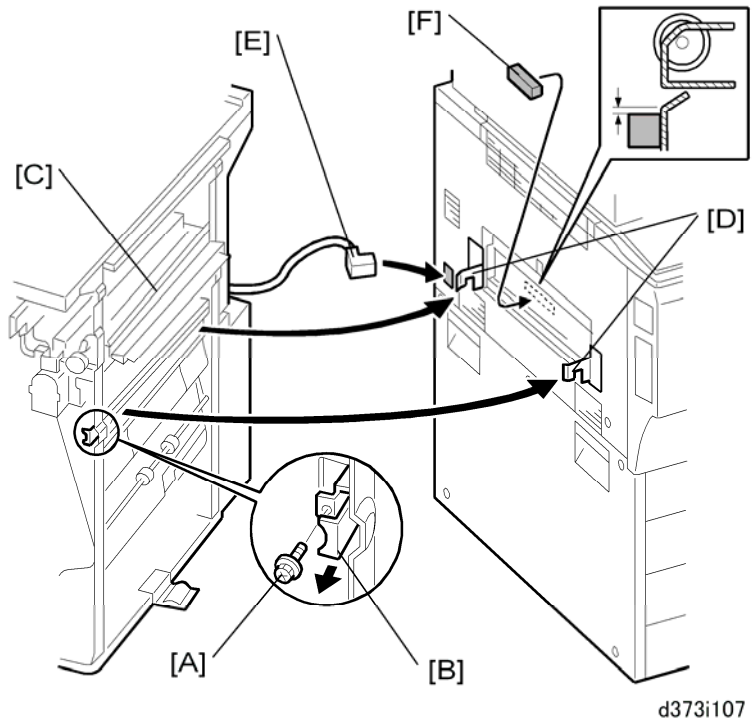

   - Do not put the sponge in a position that will prevent air flow through the air duct [B] on the copier shown above after the finisher is connected to the copier.
   - Use a short screwdriver to attach the grounding plate [C] (🔩 x 2, M3 x 6).

**If you will install the Cover Interposer B704:**

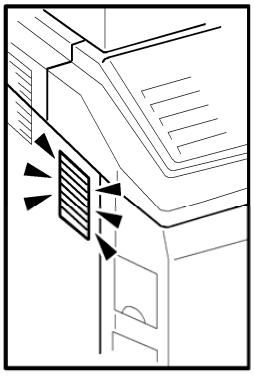
- Do not attach the sponge cushion to the finisher. It must be attached to the cover interposer.
- Do not attach the grounding plate [C] to the finisher. It must be attached to the cover interposer.
- Install the interposer on the finisher before you dock the finisher to the copier. (☛ Cover Interposer Tray (B704): do the complete procedure.) Then come back to the procedure for the D373/D374 finisher, and continue from 'Attaching the Trays'.




1. Attach the rear bracket [A] (🔩 x 2, M4 x 14).
2. Attach the front bracket [B] (🔩 x 2, M4 x 14).

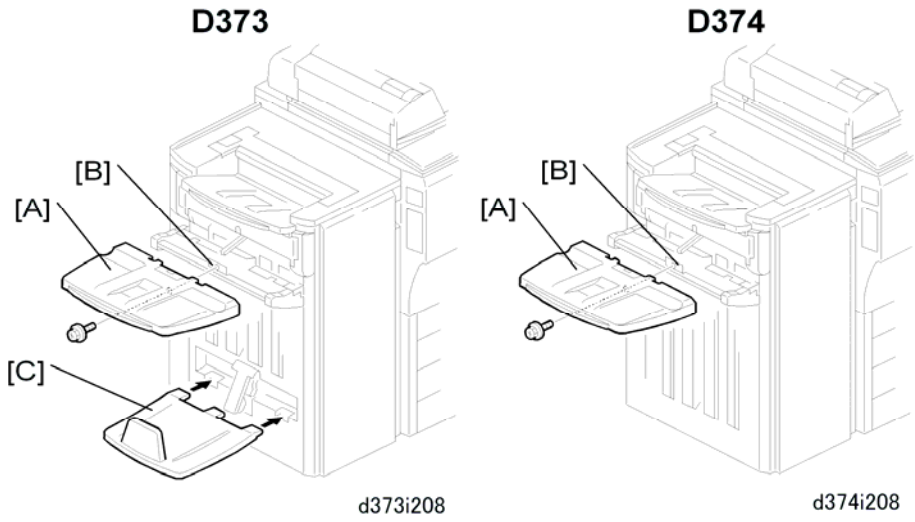



3. Remove the screw [A] to release the lock lever [B] (🔩 x 1).
4. Slowly push the finisher against the side of the machine until the brackets [D] go into their slots. If you do this too quickly, you will bend and cause damage to the paper-entrance guide plates [C].
5. Attach and tighten the screw removed in Step 4.
6. Connect finisher connector [E] to the main frame.
7. Attach the gasket seal [F] as shown.




8. Check the duct on the left side of the machine shown above. Make sure that the sponge does not block this duct.

## *Attaching the Trays*



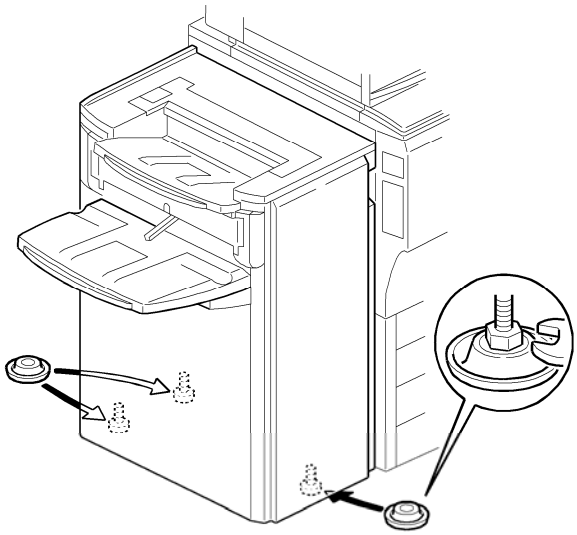

**D373**

1. Attach the upper output tray [A] (☞ x 1, M3 x 6).
2. Make sure that the metal plate [B] is on the top of the tray.
3. Attach the lower output tray [C].

**D374**

1. Attach the output tray [A].
2. Make sure that the metal plate [B] is on the top of the tray.

## *Leveling the Finisher*

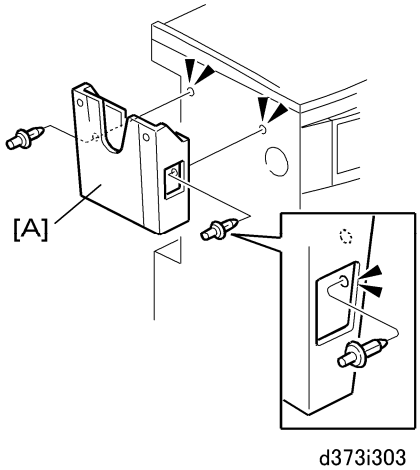


d373i109

1. Put the leveling shoes (x 3) below the feet.
2. Use a wrench to adjust the height of the screws to make the machine level.

## *Support Trays*

**Tray Holder**



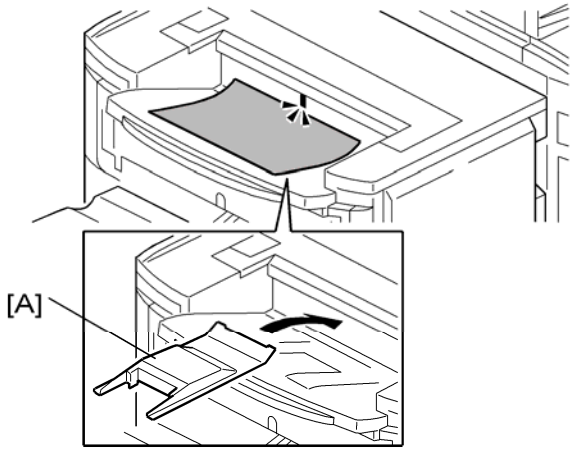

d373i303

1. Attach the tray holder [A] to the side of the finisher as shown.
2. Store the support plates for this upper tray and shift tray in this holder while they are not being used.

**Support Plate for Upper Tray**

Two support trays, one for the upper proof tray and one for the shift tray are provided. These support trays prevent excessively curled paper from activating the "Tray Full" message before the proof tray or shift tray is actually full.

1. Remove the paper from the paper feed tray, turn it upside down, then print.

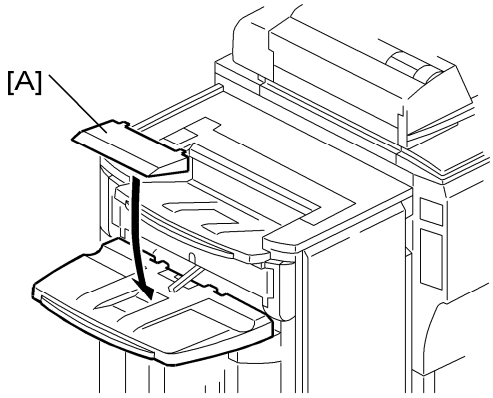



d373i301

2. If step 1 does not solve the problem, place the support tray [A] in the upper tray as shown.

**Support Plate for Shift Tray**

1. Remove the paper from the paper feed tray, turn it upside down, then print.




d373i302

2. If step 1 does not solve the problem, place the support tray [A] on the shift tray as shown.

### *Selecting the Staple Supply Name*

Go into the SP mode and input this information.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5841 | Supply Name Setting | These names show when the user prints the Inquiry List Push the Counter key, then push 'Print Inquiry List'. Push the Inquiry button on the initial User Tools screen. |
| 013 | Staple Std3 | Input the name of the staples that are used for standard stapling (not booklet stapling). This setting should be done for the D373 and D374. |
| 022 | Staple Bind2 | Input the name of the staples that are used for booklet stapling (saddle-stitching). This setting is necessary only for the D373. |

### *Enabling Booklet Binding (D373 Only)*

To use booklet stapling, you must make sure that the center-position stapling option is displayed. If it is not, select the center-position stapling mode with a user tool.

1. Push the User Tools key.
2. Touch "Copier/Document Server Features".
3. Touch the "Input/Output" tab.
4. Select "Staple Position".
5. Touch a "Staple Position" button and touch the center (saddle-stitch) stapling symbol.
6. Go out from the User Tools mode. Set the number of copies, touch the center stapling symbol on the operation panel, then start the print job.

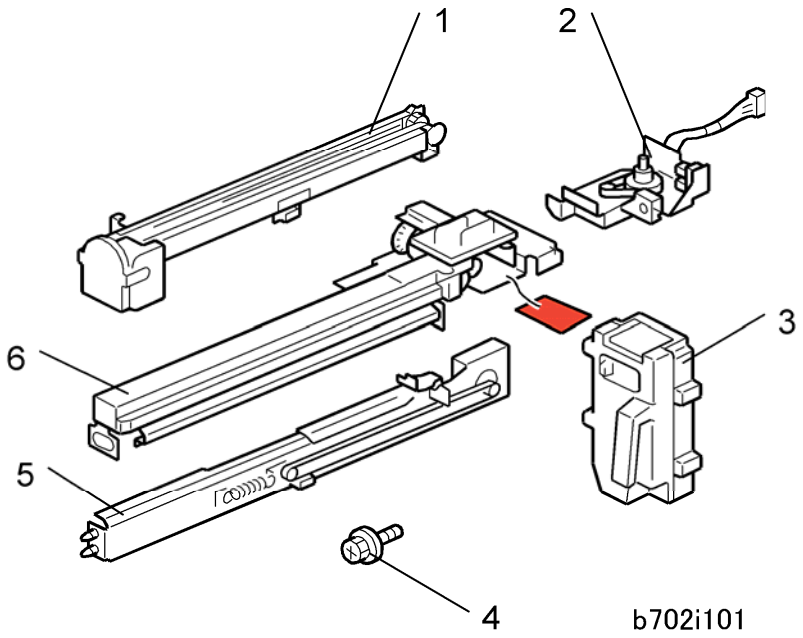
# 1.11 PUNCH UNIT (B702)

The Punch Unit B702 is installed in the 2000/3000 Sheet Finisher D373/D374.

## 1.11.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

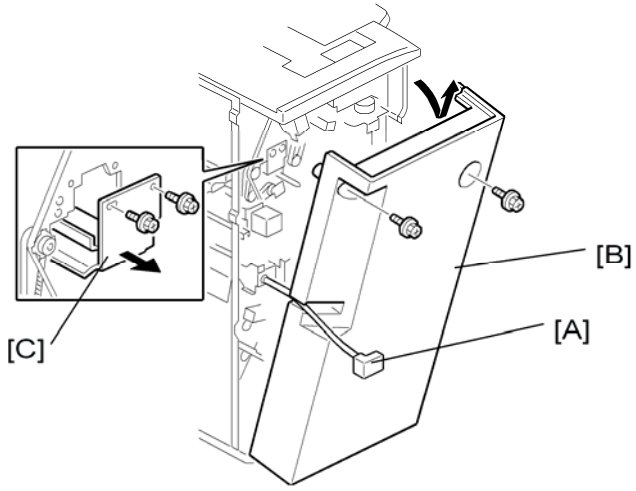
| Description | Qty |
|---|---|
| 1. Punchout Waste Unit | 1 |
| 2. Slide Drive Unit | 1 |
| 3. Punch Waste Hopper | 1 |
| 4. Screws (M3 x 6) | 5 |
| 5. Side-to-Side Detection Unit | 1 |
| 6. Punching Unit | 1 |



## 1.11.2 INSTALLATION

**⚠WARNING**

- Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do this procedure.



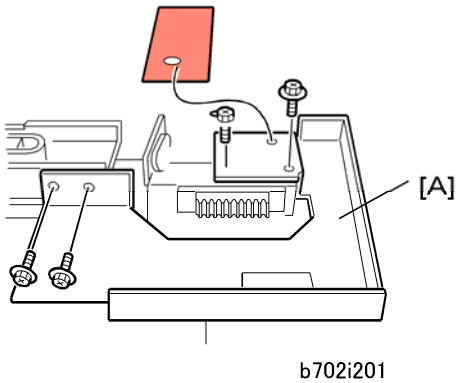

b702i102

1. If the finisher is connected to the copier, disconnect the power connector [A] and move the finisher away from the copier.
2. Remove the rear cover [B] (🔩 x 2) and open the front door.

Note

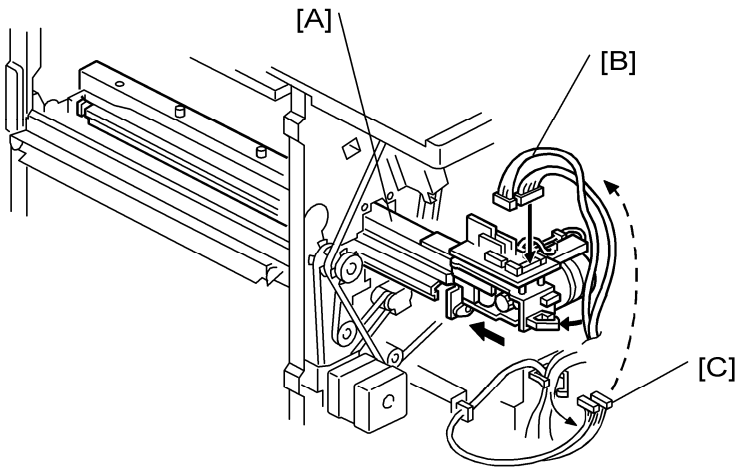
- At the bottom of the rear cover, make sure to disconnect the tabs that attach the cover to the frame.

3. Remove the guide plate [C] (🔩 x 2).



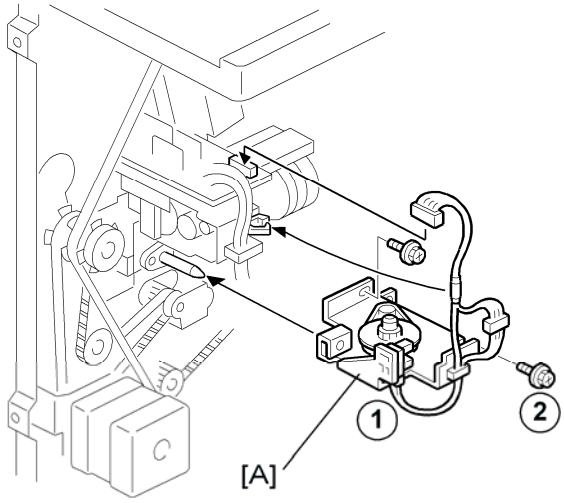

b702i201

4. Remove the shipping retainer [A] (🔩 x 4).




b702i103

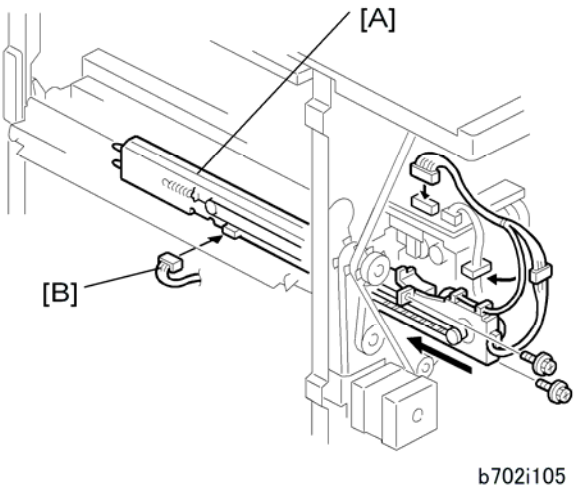
5. Slide the punch unit [A] on its rails into the finisher. Make sure that the pins engage correctly at the front and rear.
6. Connect and attach the punch unit [B] (x 2, x 1).
   - The cables [C] are coiled and attached to the PCB.
   - Attach connectors to CN601 and CN602.




b702i104

7. Attach the slide drive unit [A] to the finisher and connect it to the punch unit (x 2, x 1). Push in the slide drive unit at ① when you attach screw ②.
8. Make sure that the punch unit moves freely and is not blocked by the screws.

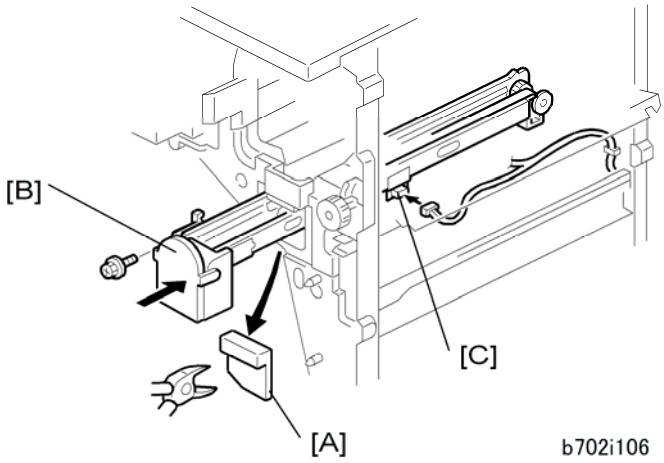
Punch Unit (B702)




9. Put the side-to-side detection unit [A] in the machine. Make sure that the two pins are engaged correctly at the front.
10. Make sure that the side-to-side detection unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with their grooves.
11. Attach the side-to-side detection unit and connect it at the rear ( x 2, x 1, x 1).
12. Pull the short connector out of the connector [B] then connect the cable ( x 1).

Note

- This is the 3-pin connector.




13. At the front, use a pair of wire cutters to remove the part [A] of the cover.
14. Install the punch-waste transport unit [B] in the finisher.

Note

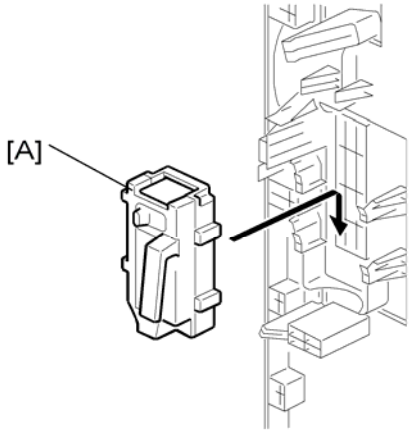
- Make sure that the punch-waste transport unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with the grooves.

15. Remove the short connector from the connector [C].

Note

- This is the 4-pin connector.

16. Connect the cable and attach the punch-waste transport unit (x 1, x 1, x 1).




b702i107

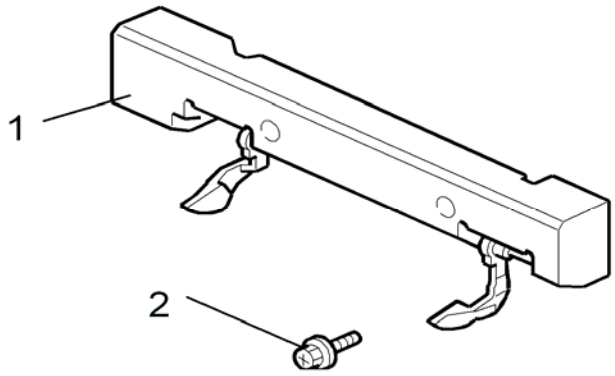
17. Set the hopper [A] in its holder.

# 1.12 OUTPUT JOGGER UNIT (B703)

## 1.12.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

| Description | Qty |
|---|---|
| 1. Jogger Unit | 1 |
| 2. Tapping Screws M3x6 | 2 |



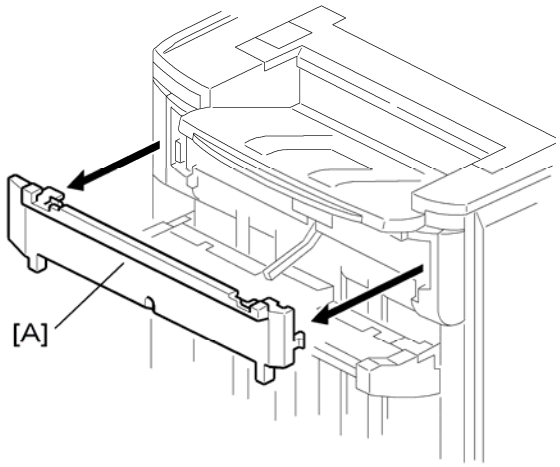

b703i101

## 1.12.2 INSTALLATION

The Output Jogger Unit B703 is installed only on the 2000/3000-Sheet Finisher D373/D374.

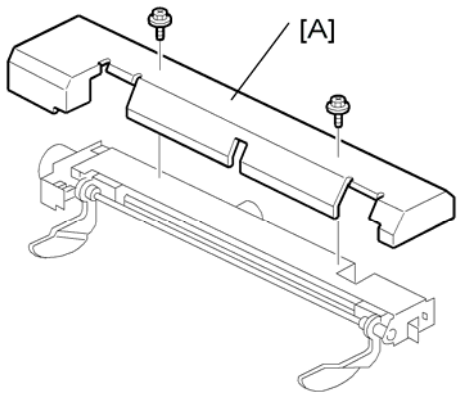
**⚠WARNING**

- Always switch the machine off and unplug the machine before doing any of the following procedures




b703i103

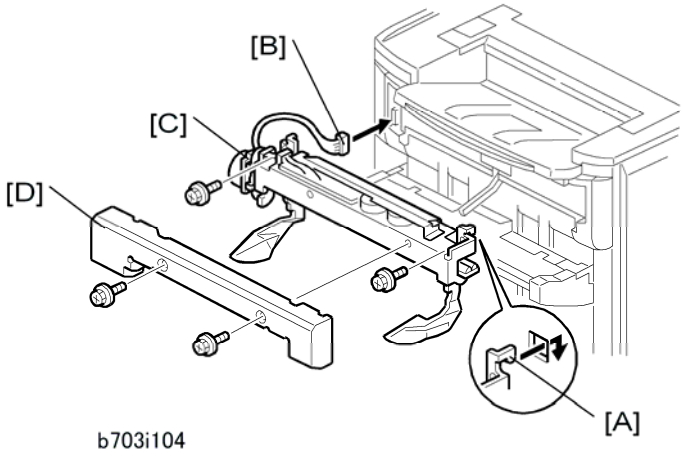
1. Turn the main machine switch off.
2. Disconnect the finisher from the main frame.
3. Use the flat head of a screwdriver to remove the left upper cover [A].




b703i102

4. Remove the cover plate [A] (🔩 x 2). Keep the screws.

Output Jogger Unit (B703)




5. While holding the jogger unit with the connector on the left, put the hooks on the frame of the jogger unit [A] into the holes in the left and right side of the finisher frame.
6. Connect connector [B] to the socket (x 1).
7. Attach the jogger unit [C] to the finisher (x 2).
8. Reattach the jogger unit cover [D] to the jogger unit (x 2).

# 1.13 MAIL BOX (B762)

The Mail Box B762 is installed on the 2000/3000 Sheet Finisher D373/D374.

## 1.13.1 ACCESSORIES

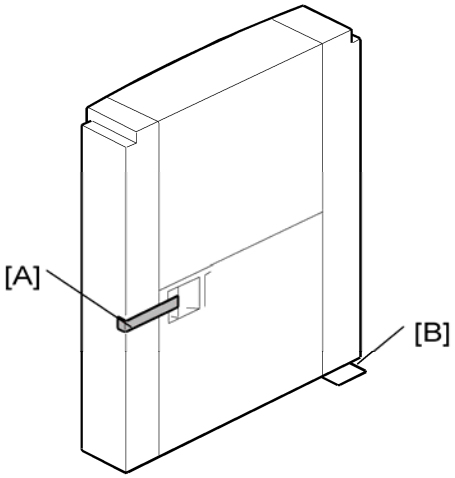
Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

| Description | Qty |
|---|---|
| 1. Trays | 9 |
| 2. Guide plate | 1 |
| 3. Decals (bin display) | 1 |
| 4. Tapping screws - M3x8 | 6 |

## 1.13.2 INSTALLATION

**WARNING**

- Turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you start this procedure.

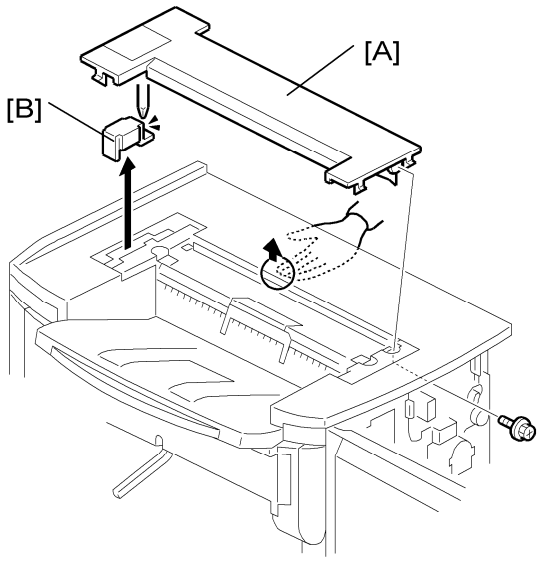



b762i101

1. Remove the filament tape [A].

Important

- Move the mailbox carefully. It is easy to cause damage to the corner leaf plate [B].



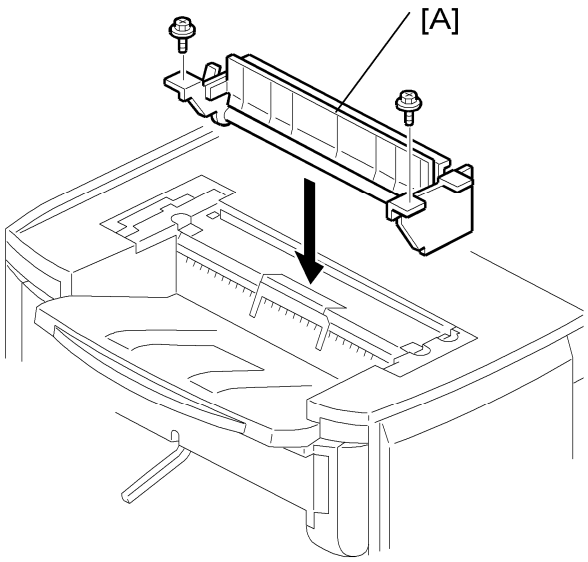

b762i102

2. If the Cover Interposer Tray B704 is installed on the D373/D374, remove it.

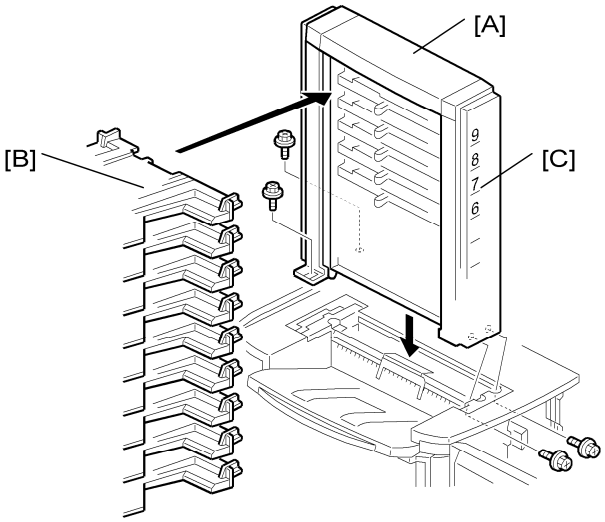
Note

- The cover interposer tray and mailbox cannot be installed on the finisher at the same time.

3. Remove the top cover [A] of the finisher (☞ x 1).
4. Remove the bracket [B] (☞ x 1).
5. Attach the guide plate [A] to the top of the finisher (☞ x 2, M3 x 8).




b762i103




b762i104

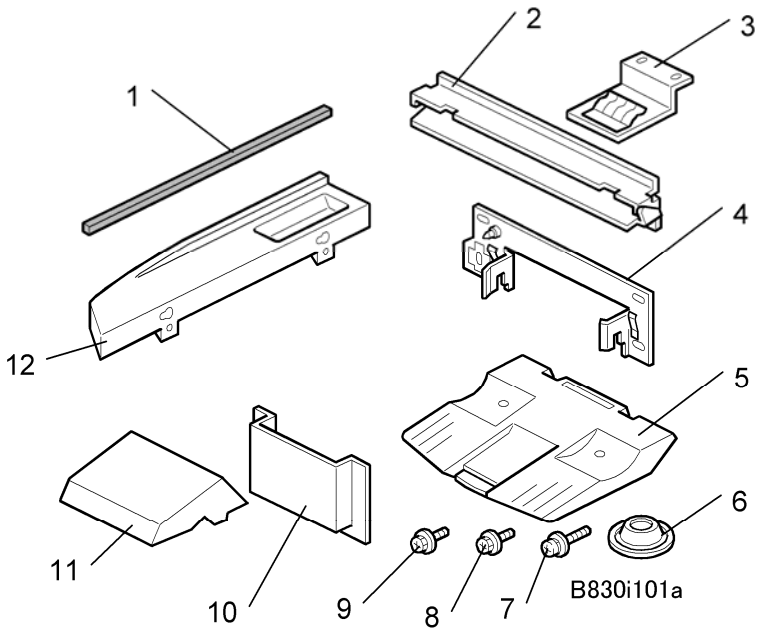
6. Attach the mailbox [A] to the top of the finisher (☞ x 4, M3 x 8).
7. Attach the 9 trays [B] to the mailbox.
8. Give the decals [C] to the customer. The customer will write on these and attach them at the correct locations.

# 1.13.3 ACCESSORIES

## 3000-SHEET FINISHER B830 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

| | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Sponge Strip | 1 |
| 2. | Entrance Guide Plate | 1 |
| 3. | Ground Plate | 1 |
| 4. | Joint Bracket | 1 |
| 5. | Shift Tray | 1 |
| 6. | Leveling Shoes | 4 |
| 7. | Tapping Screws – M4 x 12 | 4 |
| 8. | Tapping Screws – M3 x 6 | 8 |
| 9. | Tapping Screws – M4 x 8 | 2 |
| 10. | Support Plate Pocket | 1 |
| 11. | Support Plate | 1 |
| 12. | Side Tray | 1 |


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
B830i101a

## 1.13.4 FINISHER ADAPTER KIT D375 ACCESSORIES

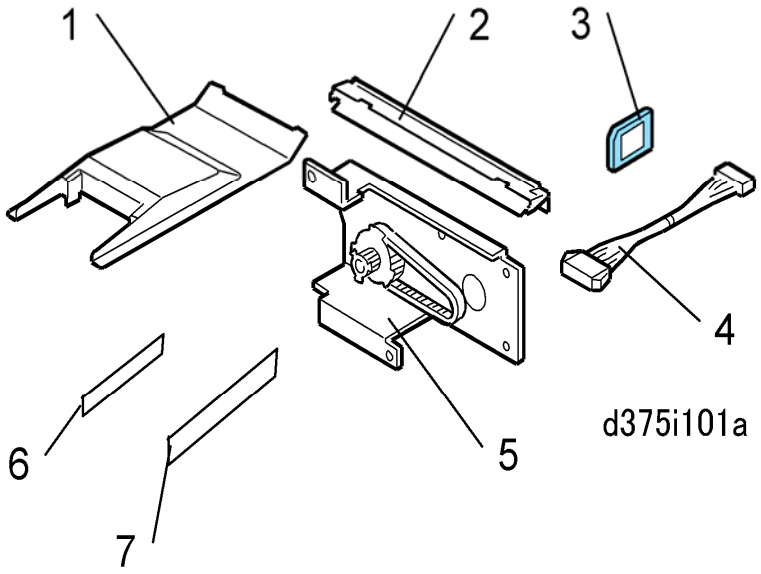
# FINISHER ADAPTER KIT D375

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

Important

- This finisher adapter kit must be installed for both machines (D014/D015/D078/D079).

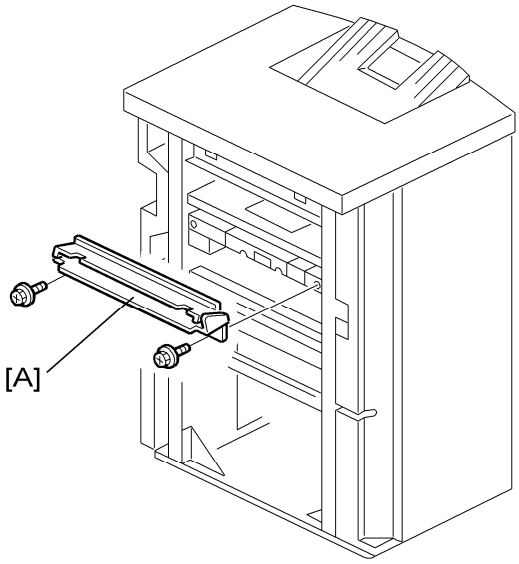
| | Description | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Proof Auxiliary Tray | 1 |
| 2. | Entrance Guide | 1 |
| 3. | SD Card (for firmware update) | 1 |
| 4. | Motor Harnesses | 2 |
| 5. | Motor Brackets | 2 |
| 6. | Serial Number Decal | 1 |
| 7. | FCC: Class-A Decal | 1 |



## *Finisher Adapter Kit D375 Installation*

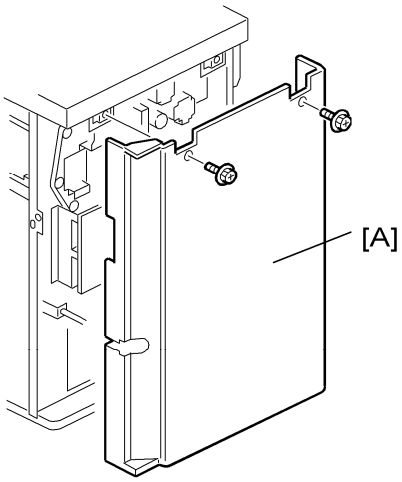
Important

- The finisher adapter kit must be installed before the finisher and punch unit are installed.




d375i102

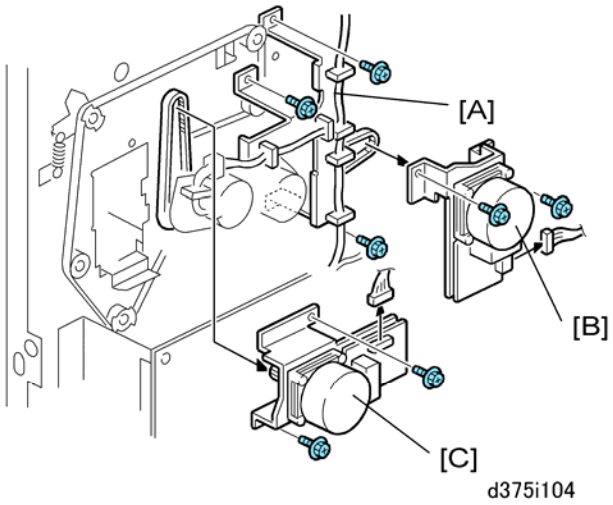
1. Attach the entrance guide [A] (🔩 x 2).
   - Attach the entrance guide only if the finisher will be connected directly to the main machine.
   - Do not install the entrance guide if you intend to install the Cover Interposer Tray (B835) or Z-Folding Unit (B660).




d375i103

2. Remove the finisher rear cover [A] (🔩 x 2).

Finisher Adapter Kit D375



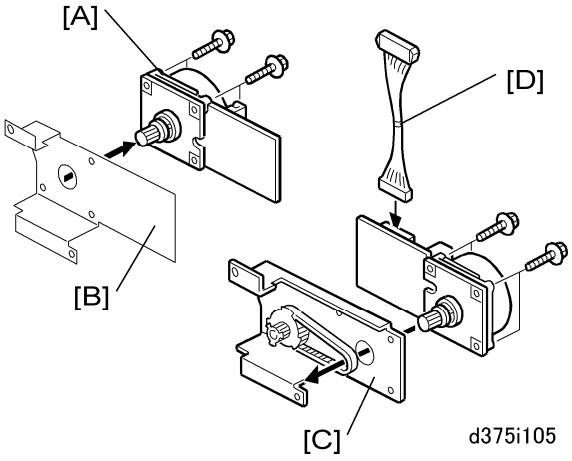

3. Remove:

   [A] Harness T-bracket screws (x3).

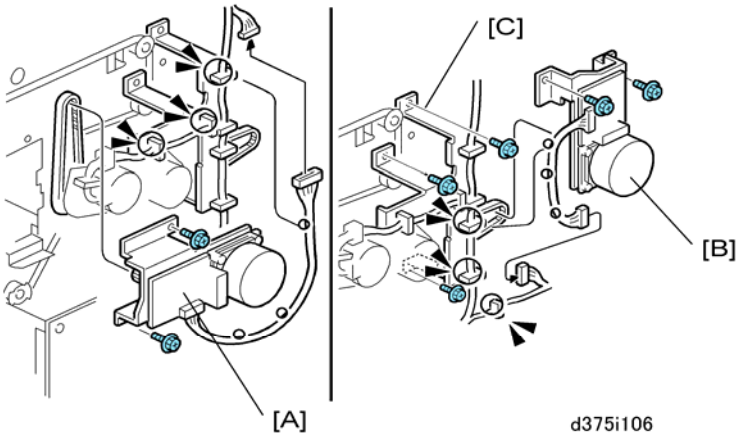
   - Remove the screws only, not the bracket.

   [B] Lower transport motor assembly (x 2, x1)

   [C] Upper transport motor assembly (x 2, x1)



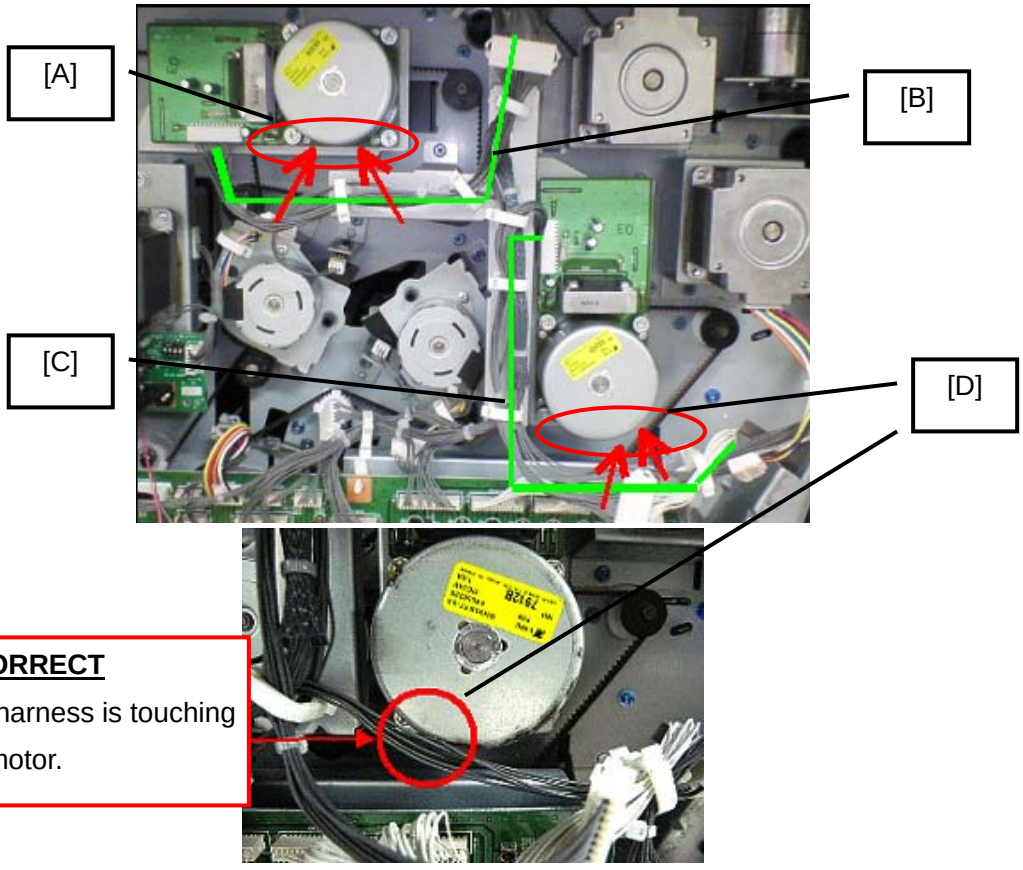

4. For both the upper and lower transport motors:
   - Remove the motor [A] from its original bracket [B] (x 2)
   - Attach the motor to the new bracket [C] (x 2).
   - Attach the new harness [D] (x 1).
5. Discard the original brackets.
   - The new brackets and harnesses are provided in the finisher adapter accessory kit. The brackets are identical.




6. Attach the upper transport motor [A] assembly as shown, with the motor pointing to the right ( x2, x1, x3).
7. Attach the lower transport motor assembly as shown, with the motor pointing down [B] ( x2, x1, x3).

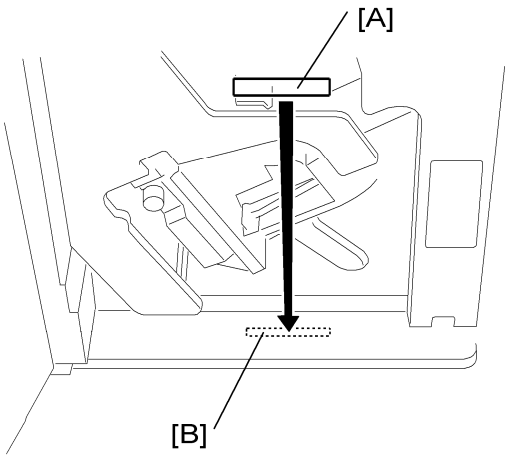
⇒ Important

Make sure to route the harness along lines [B] and [C] in the photos. If you do not, the harness may touch the motors ([A] and [D]), which can damage or disconnect the harness.



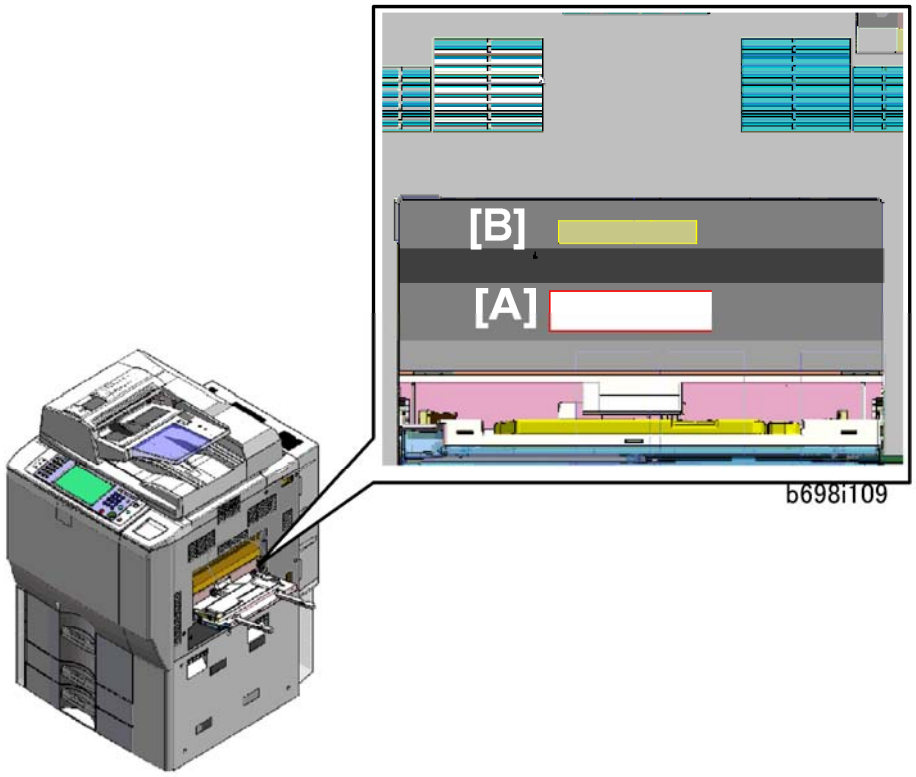

**INCORRECT**
The harness is touching the motor.

8. Reattach the harness T-bracket screws [C] (x3) that were removed earlier.
9. Open the front door.




b698i107

10. Attach the serial number decal [A] below the finisher serial number decal [B] attached to the front bottom support of the frame.




b698i109

11. On the right side of the machine, attach the FCC Class A decal [A] below the copier serial number decal [B]. (**North America Only**)

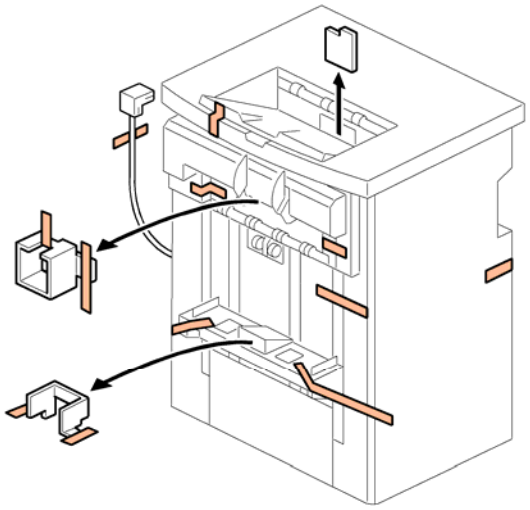
## 1.13.5 FINISHER INSTALLATION

# SR 5000 (B830) FINISHER INSTALLATION

**⚠WARNING**

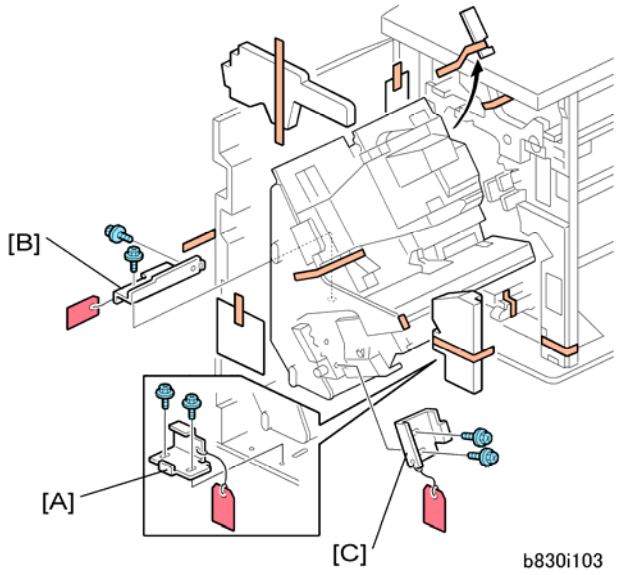
- Turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you do this procedure.

1. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.



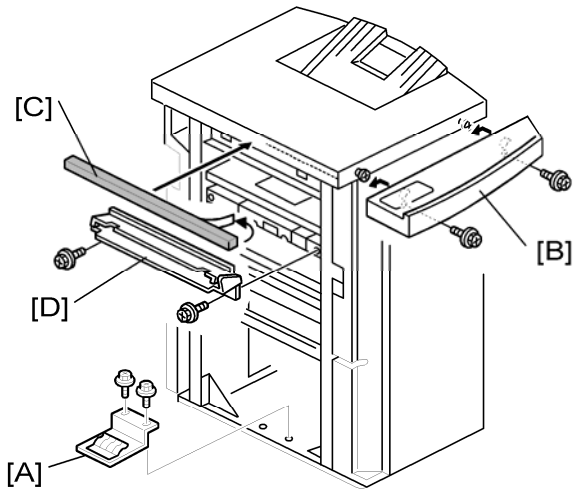
b830i102

2. Unpack the finisher and remove all tapes and shipping retainers.



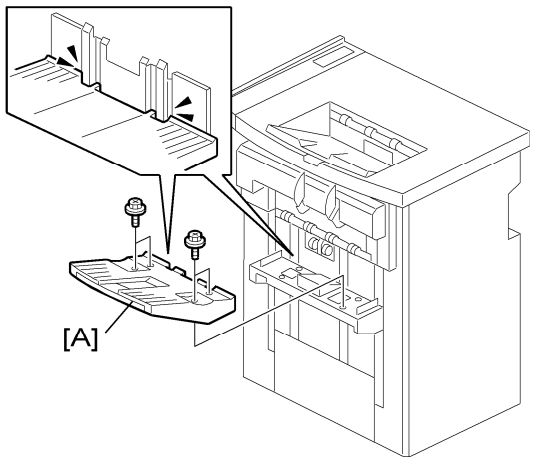

b830i103

3. Open the front door and remove the shipping retainers.
4. Remove the brackets, tags, and wires in this order: [A], B], [C] (🔩 x 2 each).




b830i105

5. Install the ground plate [A] (☞ x 2) (M3 x 6).
   Set the ground plate so that there is no gap between the plate and the bottom frame of the finisher (as shown).
6. Install the table extension [B] (☞ x 2) (M4 x 8).
   The edge of the table extension should be aligned with the edge of the finisher.
7. Attach the cushion [C] to the right side of the upper cover.
8. Install the entrance guide plate [D] (☞ x 2) (M3 x 6).




b830i109

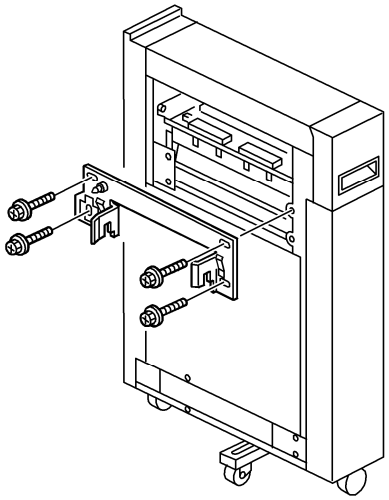
9. Insert the shift tray [A] into the grooves and fasten it (☞ x 4) (M3 x 6).

## *Docking the Finisher B830*

The Finisher (B830) is docked to:

- Z-folding unit (if the Booklet Finisher B836 is not installed)
- Cover Interposer tray (if Booklet Finisher B836 and Z-Folding Unit B660 are not installed)
- Copier (if Z-Folding Unit B660 and Cover Interposer Tray B835 are all not installed.)

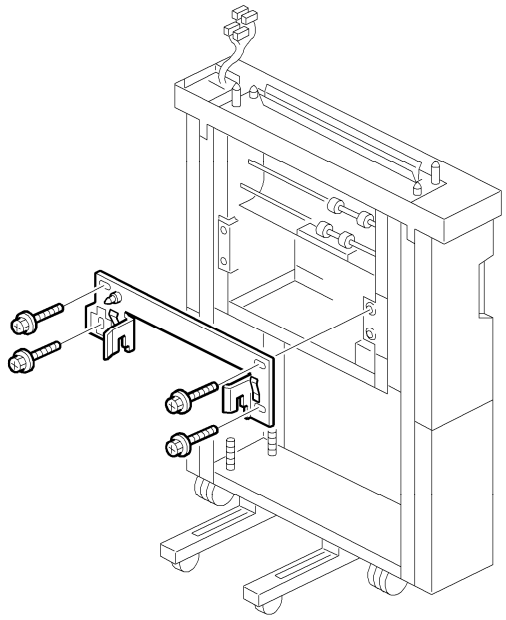
**Finisher B830 to Z-Folding Unit B660**



b830i204

1. Fasten the joint bracket to the Z-Folding Unit B660.
2. Dock the finisher. (Go to 'Connecting the Finisher B830'.)

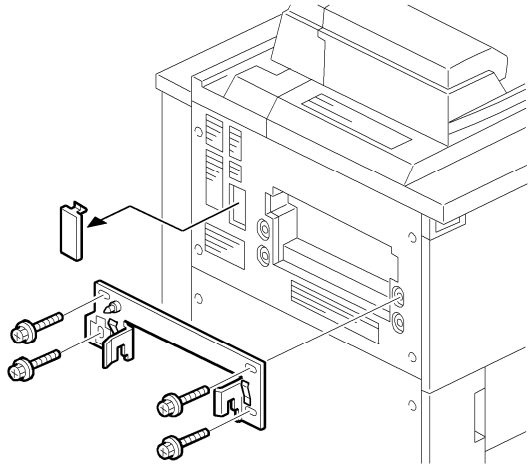
**Finisher B830 to Cover Interposer Tray B835**



b830i203

1. Fasten the joint bracket to the Cover Interposer Tray B835.
2. Dock the finisher. (Go to 'Connecting the Finisher B830'.)

**Finisher B830 to Copier D014/D078**

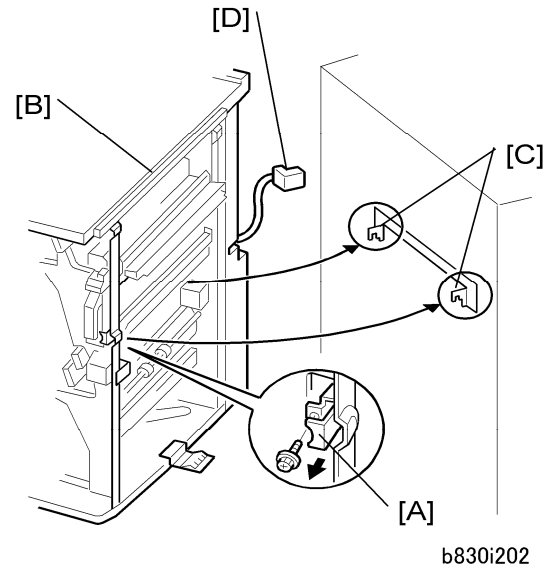


b830i201

1. Remove the connector cover
2. Fasten the joint bracket to the Copier.
3. Dock the finisher. (Go to 'Connecting the Finisher B830'.)

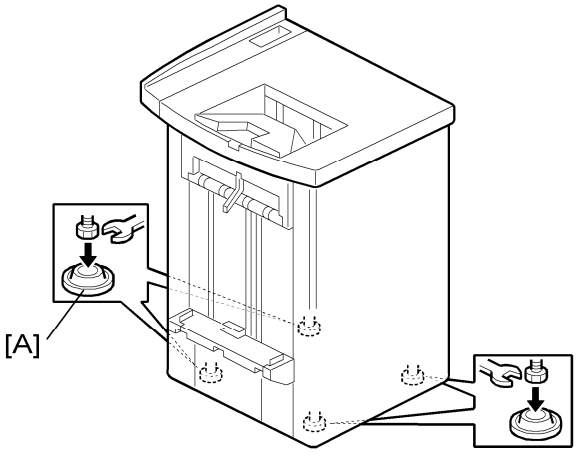
## *Connecting the Finisher B830*

1. Open the front door of the finisher.




b830i202

2. Pull out the locking lever [A] (🔩 x 1).
3. Align the finisher [B] with the joint brackets [C], then slowly push the finisher onto the brackets.
4. Connect the finisher cable [D] to the copier
5. Push in the locking lever [A].
6. Check that the top edges of the finisher are parallel with edges of the device (or copier) to the right.
7. Fasten the locking lever [A] (🔩 x 1)
8. Close the front door.

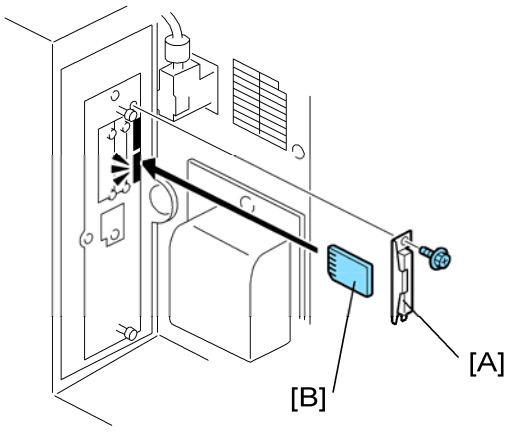



b830i206

9. Set the leveling shoes [A] (x4) under the feet.
10. Turn the nuts to adjust the height of the finisher until it is level.

## 1.13.6 UPDATING THE FIRMWARE

### FIRMWARE UDATE




d375i108

1. If the machine is on, switch it off.
2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] from the main machine (☞ x 1).
3. Insert an SD card [B] that contains the latest firmware for this finisher, downloaded from the web site. Insert this SD card into the service slot (lower slot).

   Note

   - If you do not have the latest firmware, use the SD card that is provided with the finisher adapter kit. But the firmware on this card may be old.
4. Open the front door of the main machine.
5. Switch on the machine. A message prompts you to wait for the update procedure to begin, then the initial screen appears.
6. Write down the NEW version numbers. (You will need these later to confirm the success of the firmware update.)
7. Touch "Finisher" then touch "Update".
8. Wait for the update procedure to begin.
   - The update may not start for 2 or 3 minutes.
   - When the first asterisk (*) appears in the progress bar this means the update has started.
   - The update procedure is very slow. Wait for all the hyphens (-) to be replaced by asterisks (*) in the progress bar.

Firmware Udate

Important

- Never switch off the machine while the update is in progress.

9. After asterisks have replaced all the hyphens in the progress bar, switch off the machine.
10. Remove the SD card from the SD card slot and reattach the SD card slot cover.
11. Close the front door.
12. Switch on the machine.
13. Enter the SP mode and do SP5990-5 to print the self-diagnostic report.
14. Confirm that the finisher firmware updated successfully.
    - For "Finisher 1", you should see the numbers that you saw for the NEW column in the initial screen at Step 6.
    - If you see these numbers, the update has executed successfully.
    - If the update fails, turn the machine off and try the procedure again.
15. Switch the machine off and remove the SD card.
16. Switch the machine on.

    This completes the firmware update procedure.

## 1.13.7 SP SETTING

1. Enter the SP mode.
2. Do **SP5841-12** and enter the name of the staples used for corner stapling.
    - This is the name that shows when the user prints the Inquiry List.
    - To print this list push User Tools> [Inquiry]> [Print Inquiry List]> [Start].

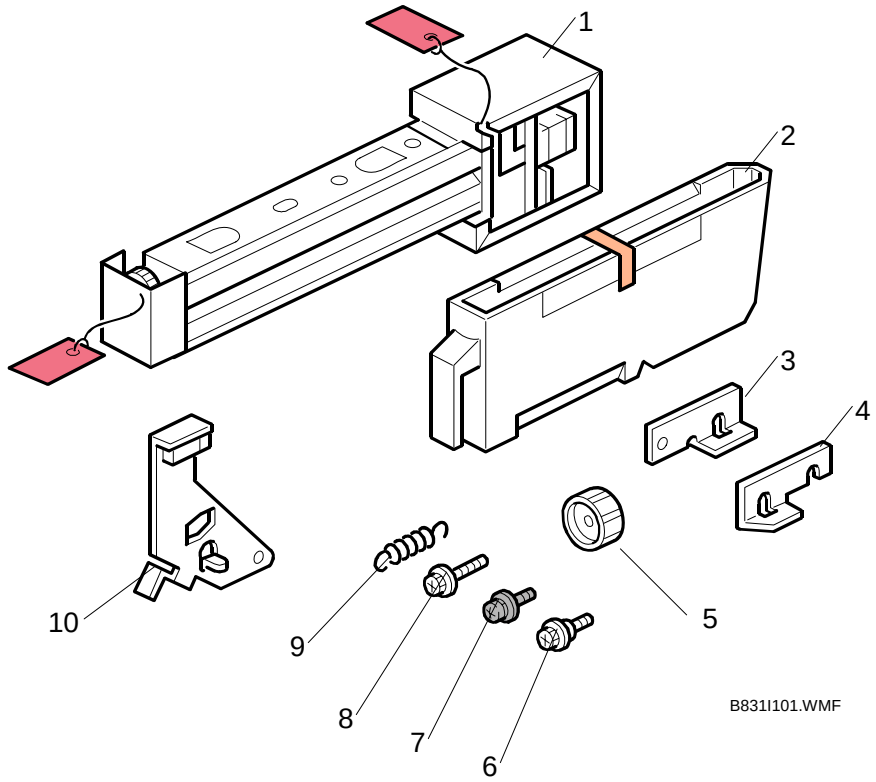
# ⇒1.14 PUNCH UNIT B831

The PU5000 Punch Unit (B831) is an accessory for the 3000-Sheet Finisher (B830).

## 1.14.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

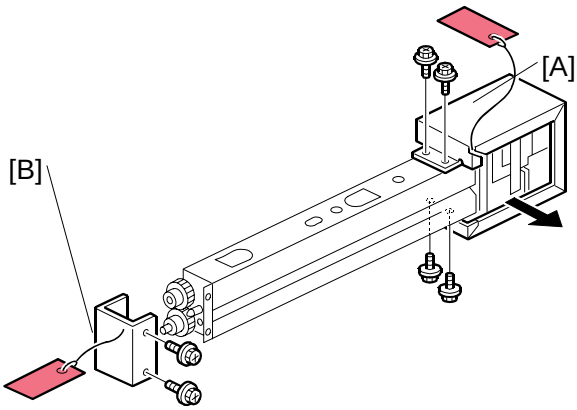
| Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|
| 1. Punch Unit | 1 |
| 2. Punch Waste Collection Hopper | 1 |
| 3. Spacer (1 mm) | 2 |
| 4. Spacer (2 mm) | 1 |
| 5. Knob | 1 |
| 6. Step Screw | 1 |
| 7. Screw (M4 x 6) Black | 1 |
| 8. Screw (M3 x 10) | 2 |
| 9. Spring | 1 |
| 10. Sensor Arm and Sensor | 1 |



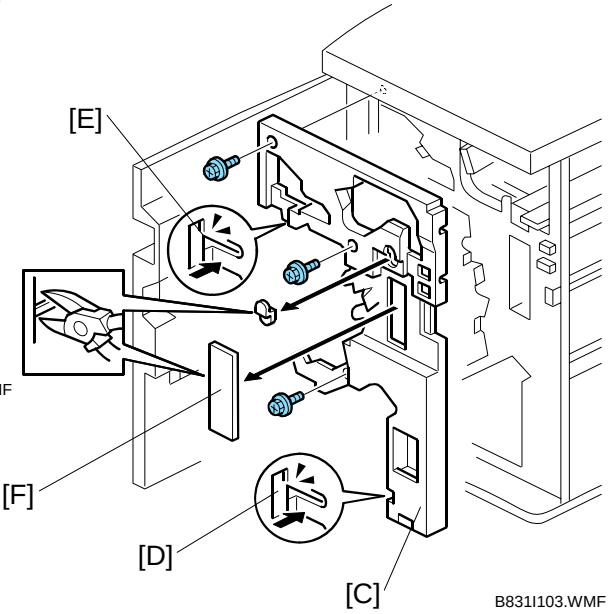
## 1.14.2 INSTALLATION

Important

- This punch unit is for the B830 (SR5000) finisher only.




B831I102.WMF

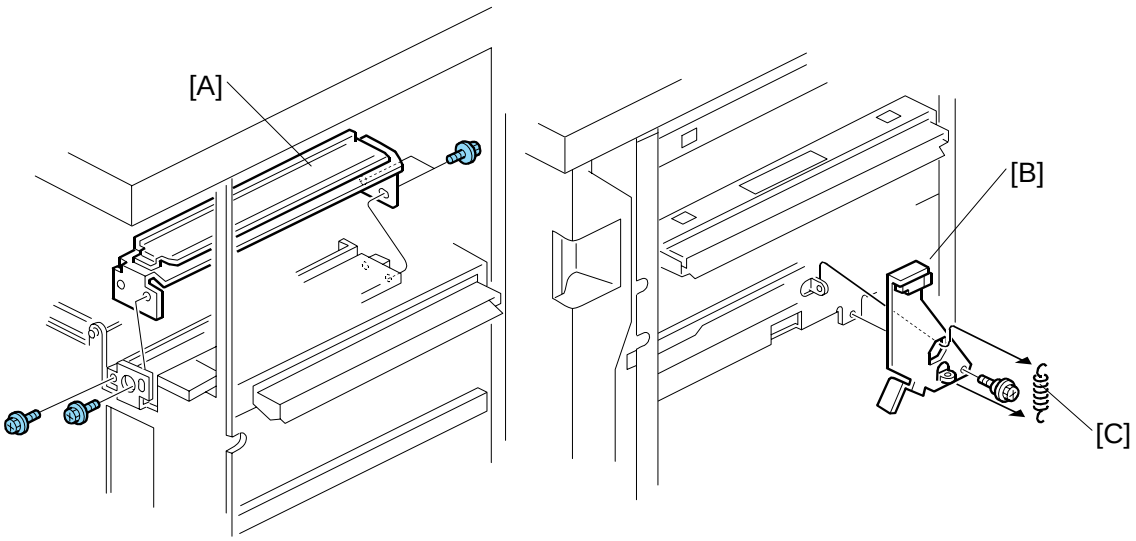



B831I103.WMF

**CAUTION**

**Switch the machine off and unplug the machine before starting the following procedure.**

1. If the finisher is connected to the machine, disconnect it.
2. Open the front door and remove the rear cover (Screw x 2 screws).
3. Unpack the punch unit and remove the motor protector plate [A] ( x 4, Step screw x1).
4. Remove the cam lock plate [B] (Screw x 1).
5. Remove the inner cover [C] (Screw x 3).
6. Behind the inner cover at [D] and [E], press the lock tab to the right to release the inner cover from the frame.
7. Remove the plastic knockouts [F].



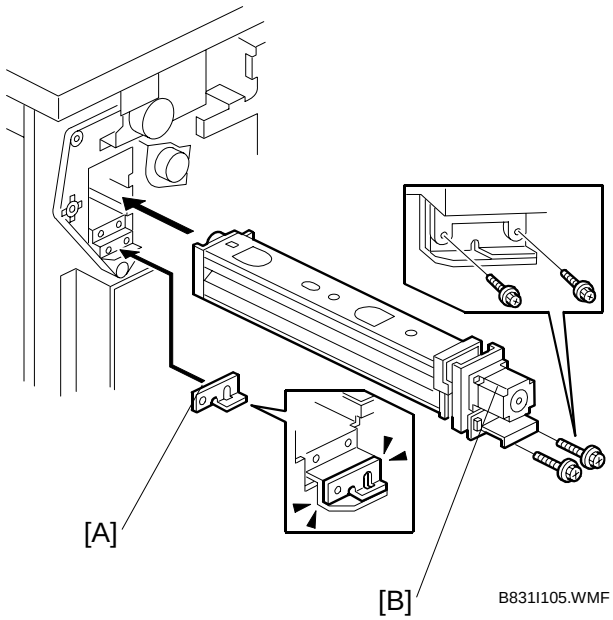

B831I106.WMF

B831I104.WMF

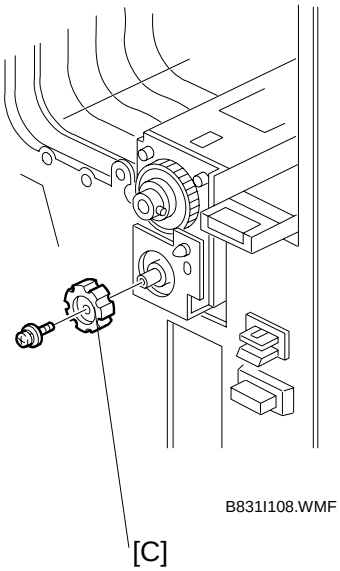
8. Remove the paper guide [A] (Screw x 4).
9. Install the sensor arm [B] (Screw x 1, small step screw (M3 x 4).

   Note

   Make sure that the sensor arm swings freely on the step screw.
10. Attach the spring [C].




B831I105.WMF

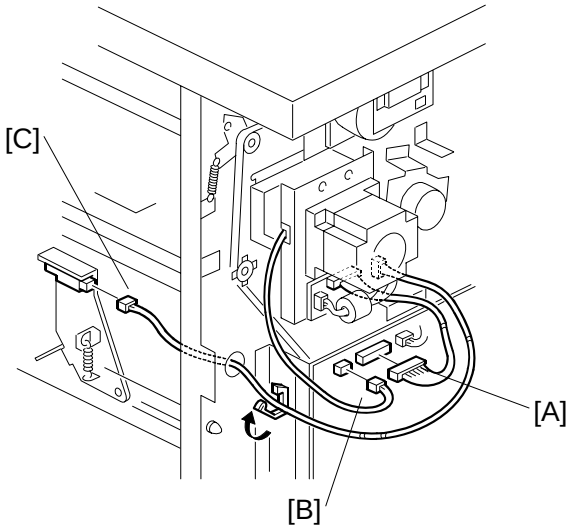



B831I108.WMF

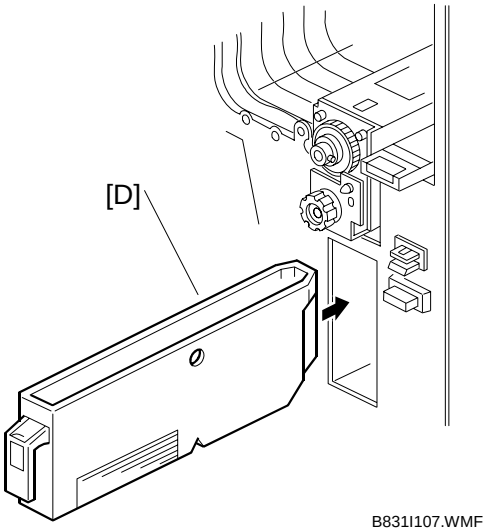
11. Position the 2 mm spacer [A] and attach the punch unit [B] (Screw x 2, M3 x 10).
12. Use one of the screws removed from the motor protector plate to fasten the remaining two spacers to the frame as shown.

    Note

    These extra spacers can be used to adjust the position of the punch holes (front to rear, across the page).
13. At the front, fasten the punch unit knob [C] (Screw x 1).




B831I107.WMF




B831I109.WMF

14. Connect the PCB harness connector [A] to **CN135** of the finisher PCB and to **CN600** of the punch unit PCB.
15. Connect the harness [B] to **CN136** of the finisher PCB.
16. Connect the single end of the hopper full sensor connector cable [C] to the hopper full sensor on the arm (Connector x 1, Clumpx 2).

    Note

    No special DIP switch settings are required for this punch unit. A signal from the punch identifies itself by sending a signal to the copier.
17. Slide the punch waste collection hopper [D] into the finisher.
18. Re-attach the inner cover and rear cover.
19. Close the front door and re-connect the finisher to the machine.

# 1.15 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY (B704)

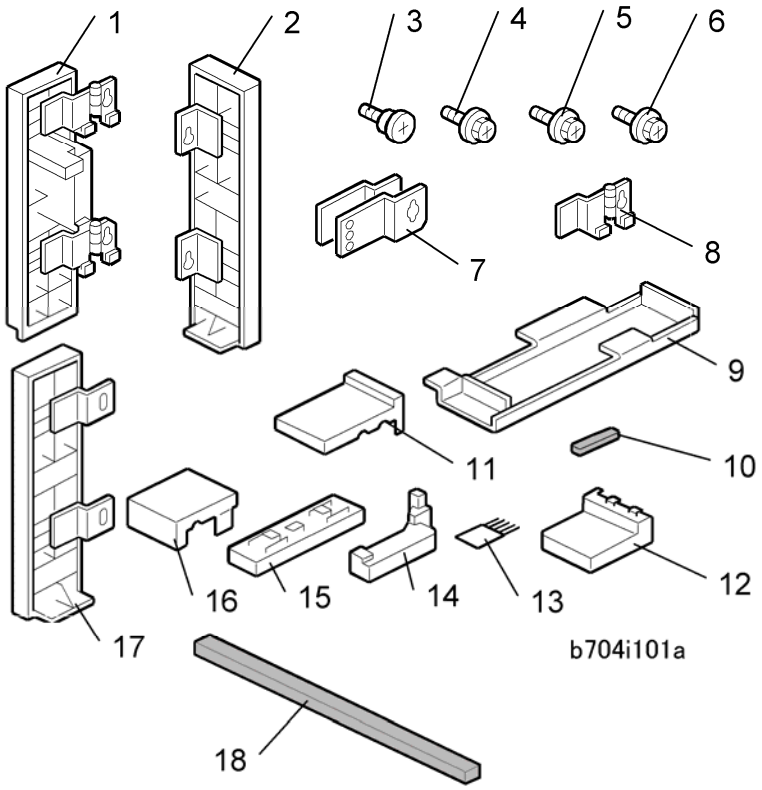
## 1.15.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list. These accessories are provided for installation for several different machines. Many of the accessory items listed below are not used for this installation. For this machine:

- Cover Interposer Tray B704 is for installation on the 2000/3000-Sheet Finishers D373/D374 only and not on 3000-Sheet Finisher D830
- Cover Interposer Tray B835 is for installation on the 3000-Sheet Finisher D830 only and not on the 2000/3000-Sheet Finishers D373/D374.

| | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Front door extension (top) | 1 |
| 2. | Rear cover extension (bottom) | 1 |
| 3. | Shoulder screws | 3 |
| 4. | Tapping screws – M4 x 8 | 9 |
| 5. | Tapping screws – M3 x 8 | 2 |
| 6. | Tapping screws – M3 x 6 | 5 |
| 7. | Adjuster plates | 2 |
| 8. | Hinge Bracket | 1 |
| 9. | Plate Extension (bottom) | 1 |
| 10. | Gasket Seals | 2 |
| 11. | Right Rear Cover Plate (B706 only) | 1 |
| 12. | Spacer | 1 |
| 13. | Anti-Static Brush | 1 |
| 14. | Spacer (B706 only) | 1 |

| | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 15. | Spacer (Not used ) | **1** |
| 16. | Right front corner plate (for B706 only) | 2 |
| 17. | Front door extension (bottom) | 1 |
| 18, | Sponge Strip | 1 |



## 1.15.2 INSTALLATION

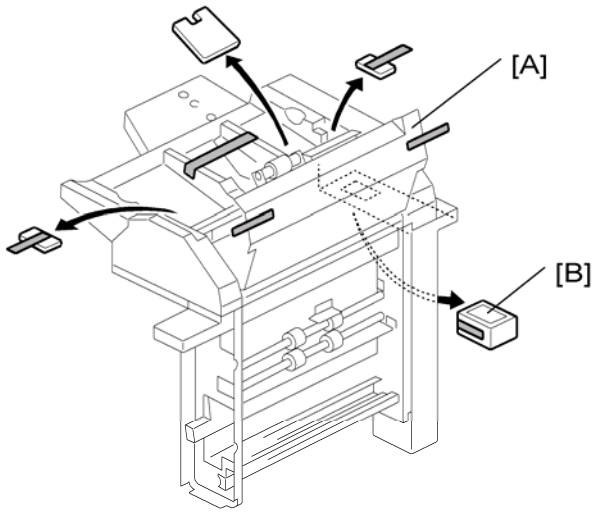
You can install the Cover Interposer Tray B704 on these finishers only:

- 2000-Sheet Booklet Finisher D373
- 3000-Sheet Finisher D374

### *Removing Tapes and Packing Materials*

**⚠WARNING**

- Make sure that the finisher is disconnected from the main machine, and that the copier is turned off and the power cord is disconnected, before you start this procedure.



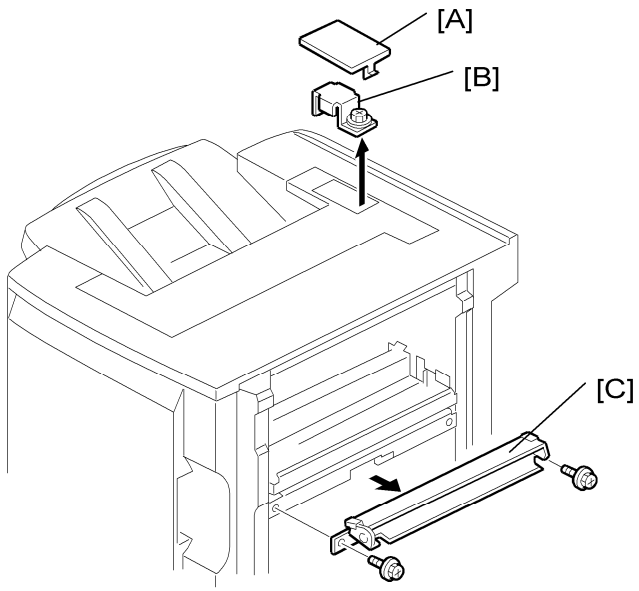

b704i102

1. If the finisher is connected to the machine, disconnect it.

   **⚠CAUTION**

   - After disconnecting the finisher, for safety remove the front and rear finisher connectors from the copier. Reattach them just before docking the finisher to the copier.
2. Remove all tape and retainers from the cover interposer tray [A].
3. Remove the tape and packing material [B] from the ground connector.

## *Preparing the Finisher*



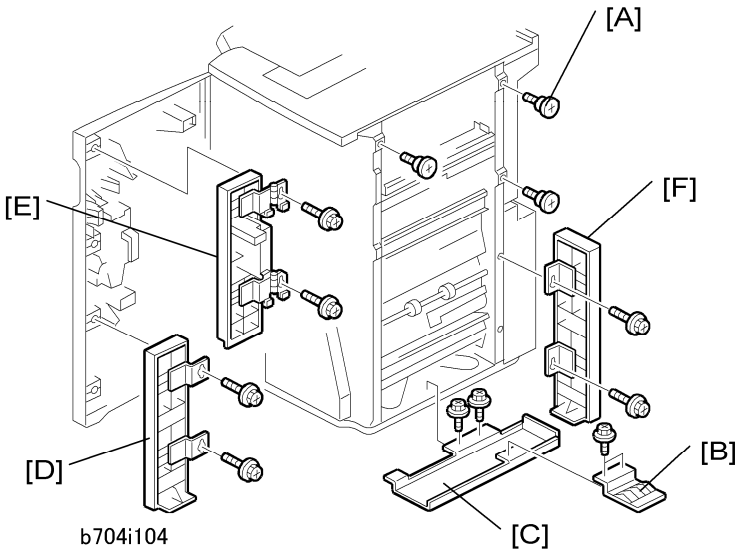

b704i103

1. Remove the cover [A] of the relay connector.
2. Loosen the screw of the bracket [B] (🔩 x 1) then remove the bracket.
3. Remove the guide plate [C]. (You will attach this guide plate to the cover interposer. Do not discard it.)

Important

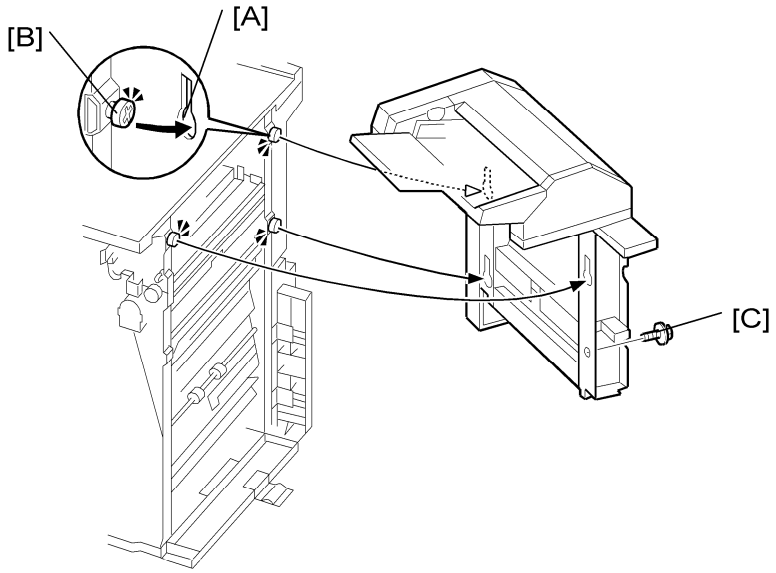
- If you will install the cover interposer tray on a D373/D374 finisher that was installed on the machine before this time, remove the sponge strip from the finisher. Keep this strip because you must attach it later to the interposer tray.

## *Attaching the Extensions*




1. Attach the three shoulder screws [A] (🔩 x 3).
2. If the finisher was previously installed, remove the ground plate [B] from the finisher and keep the screws.
3. Attach the bottom plate [C] (🔩 x 2, M3 x 6) then attach the ground plate to the bottom plate (🔩 x 2).
4. Attach the bottom front cover extension [D] (🔩 x 2, M4 x 8).
5. Attach the top front cover extension [E] (🔩 x 2, M4 x 8).
6. Attach the rear cover extension [F] (🔩 x 2, M3 x 6).

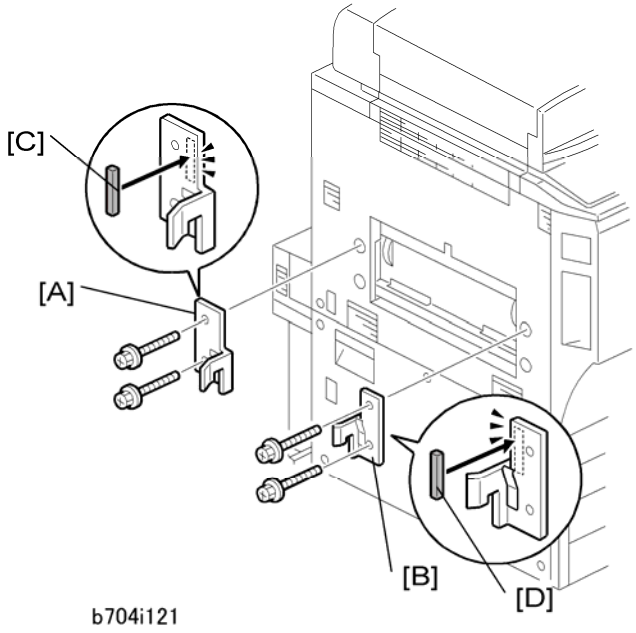
## *Attaching the Interposer Tray*



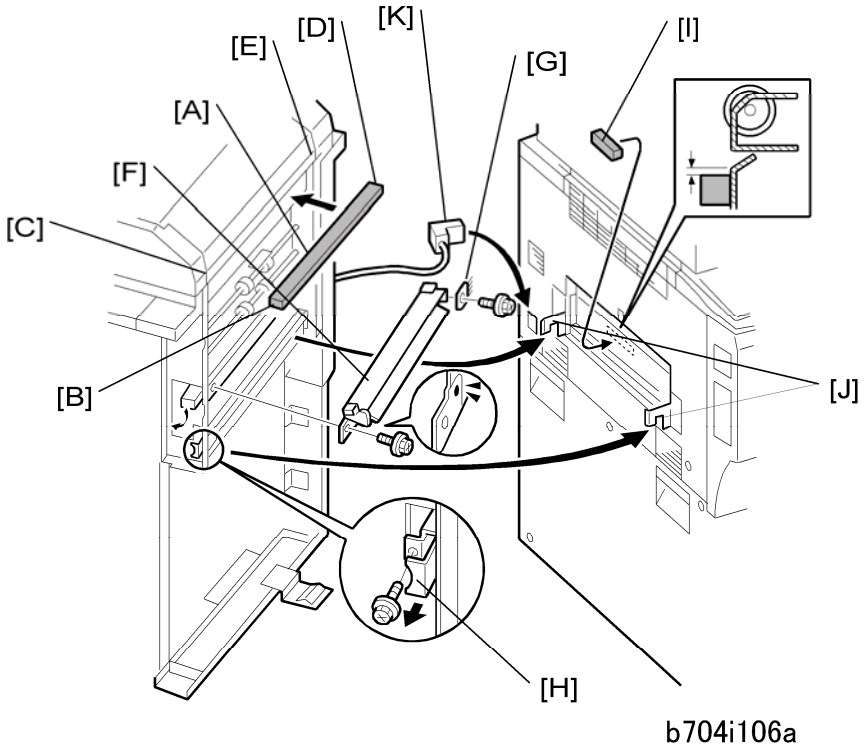

b704i105

1. Lift the cover interposer tray.
2. Align the keyholes [A] with the shoulder screws [B], and move the cover interposer down onto the screws.
3. Attach the cover interposer with the screw [C] ( x 1, M3 x 6).

## *Docking the Finisher/Interposer with the Machine*




1. Attach the rear bracket [A] (🔩 x 2, M4 x14).
2. Attach the front bracket [B] (🔩 x 2, M4 x14).
3. Attach the gasket seals [C] and [D].

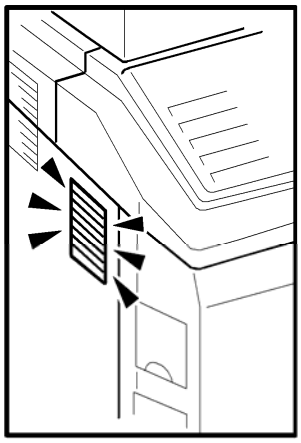



4. Attach the sponge strip [A] that is supplied with the finisher.
   - Align the sponge end [B] with the edge [C].
   - Align the sponge end [D] with the edge [E].
5. Attach the guide plate (removed from the finisher) to the cover interposer.
   - Attach the front end [F] of the plate (☞ x 1).
   - Attach the rear end of the plate with the anti-static brush [G] (☞ x 1).

   **Important**
   - Use the two small tapping screws that are supplied, and not the machine screws removed from the finisher guide plate.
6. Release the lock lever [H] (☞ x 1).
7. Attach the pad [I]. This pad is provided with the finisher.
8. Slowly push the finisher against the side of the machine until the brackets [J] go into the slots.

   **⚠WARNING**
   - Move the finisher carefully to avoid bending the entrance guide plates.
9. Attach the lock lever [H] (☞ x 1).
10. Connect the connector [K] to the copier.

Cover Interposer Tray (B704)



d373r734

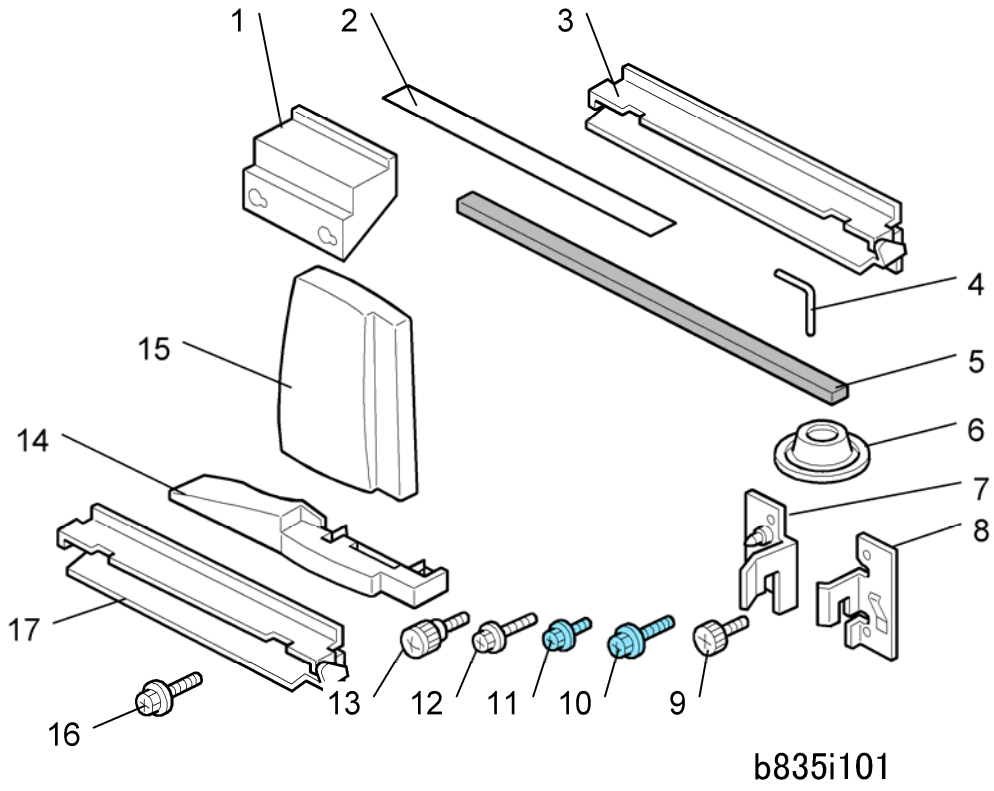
11. Check the right side of the machine and make sure that the sponge strip does not block the air flow through the duct.

# 1.16 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY CI5000 (B835)

## 1.16.1 ACCESSORIES

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list.

| | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Spacer | 1 |
| 2. | Black Mylar | 1 |
| 3. | Relay Guide Plate – Long (for B234/B235/B236) | 1 |
| 4. | "L" Hinge Pins (Tray Unit Front Cover) | 2 |
| 5. | Sponge Strip | 1 |
| 6. | Leveling Shoes | 4 |
| 7. | Rear Docking Bracket | 1 |
| 8. | Front Docking Bracket | 1 |
| 9. | Flat Knob Screw | 1 |
| 10. | Screw (M4 x 8) | 4 |
| 11. | Screw (M3 x 6) | 2 |
| 12. | Screw (M4 x 12) | 2 |
| 13. | Knob Screw | 3 |
| 14. | Base Cover (Tray Unit) | 1 |
| 15. | Rear Cover | 1 |
| 16. | Screws (M4 x 14) | 4 |
| ⇒ 17. | Relay Guide Plate – Short (for D014/D015/D078/D079) includes the following:<br>B4682196 (Guide Plate Upper) 1 pc<br>B8352191 (Guide Plate Lower) 1 pc<br>04513006N (M3x6 screws) 2 pcs | |




⇒ Important

1) Use cover interposer firmware **ver02.030:26** (P/N B8355510A) **or newer**.
   - Cut-in S/N (B835-17): **L6271100001** (November 2007 production)
2) 12" guide plates (guide plates and screws) for D014/D015/D078/D079 should be included.
   - Cut-in S/N (B835-17): **L6270400094** (April 2007 production)

   **NOTE:** 12" guide plates (guide plates and screws) for D014/D015 are available as service parts:
   B4682196 (Guide Plate Upper) 1pc
   B8352191 (Guide Plate Lower) 1pc
   04513006N (M3X6 screw) 2pcs

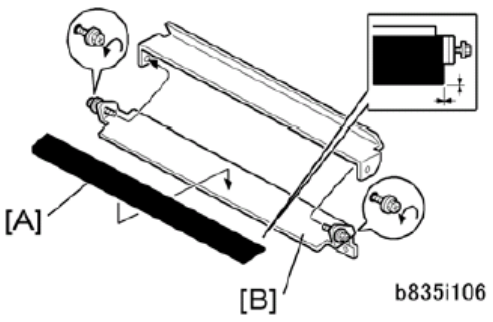
According to the configurations, attach the black Mylar [A] (included with the CI5000) to the 13" guide plate [B]:

**Configuration 1**: Mainframe + CI5000 + ZF4000 + SR4020 or SR5000

Use the 13" guide plate [B] included with the Z-Folding Unit ZF4000.

**Configuration 2**: Mainframe + CI5000 + SR5000

Use the 13" guide plate [B] included with the Finisher SR5000.

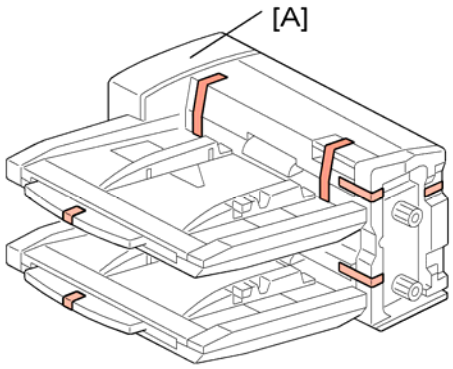


## 1.16.2 INSTALLATION

### *Setting up the Unit and Docking to the Copier*

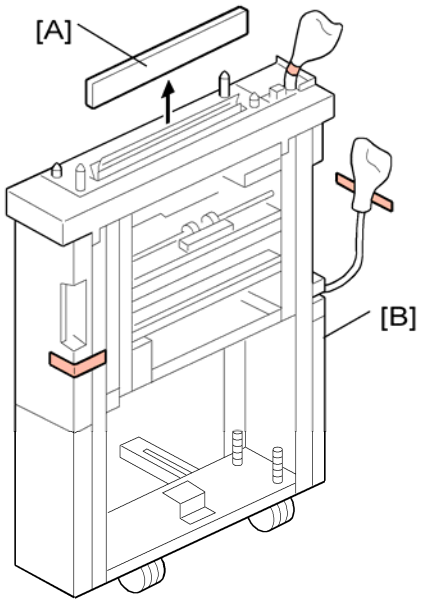
**⚠CAUTION**

- Unplug the power cord before starting the following procedure.




b835i102

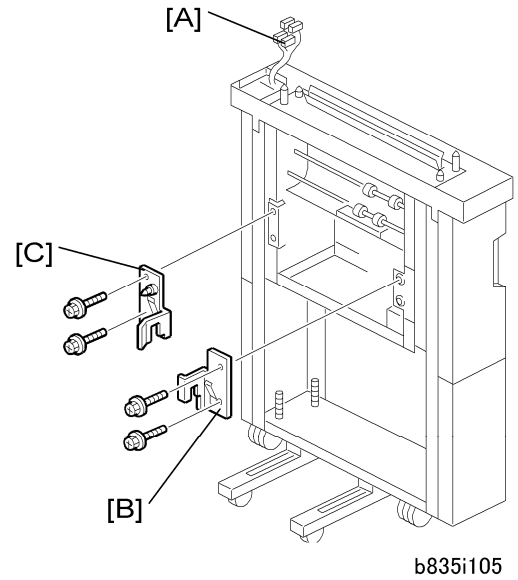
1. Remove all the tape and shipping materials from the tray unit [A].




b835i103

2. Remove cover [A].
3. Remove all tape and shipping materials from the transport unit [B].

Cover Interposer Tray CI5000 (B835)




4. Confirm that the connectors [A] are free.
5. Attach the front docking plate [B] (☞ x2).

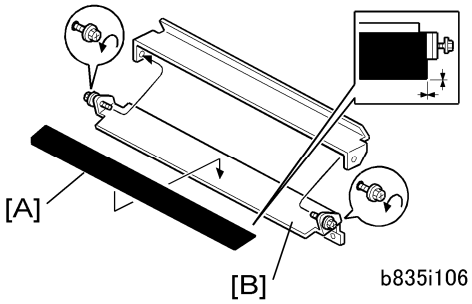
Important

- You must use the M4 x 14 screws.

6. Attach the rear docking plate [C] (☞ x2). These are the docking plates for the next device to be installed in the paper feed line.

Important

- You must use the M4 x 14 screws.




7. Attach the black mylar [A] to the relay guide plate [B] of the next finishing device to be installed to the left of the cover interposer tray (Z-folding unit or finisher).

Important

- Do not attach this mylar to either the long or short guide plates provided with the cover interposer tray accessories.

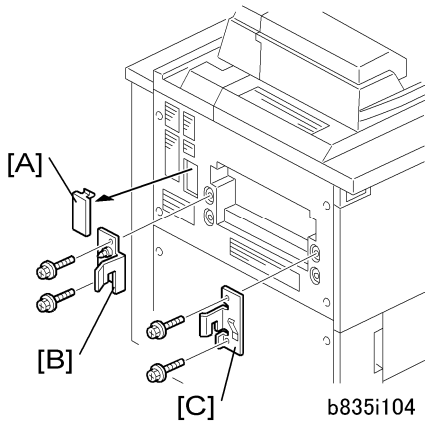
.

8. Peel the tape from the back of the sponge strip [A] and attach it as shown.
9. Attach the relay guide plate [B] (☞ x2).

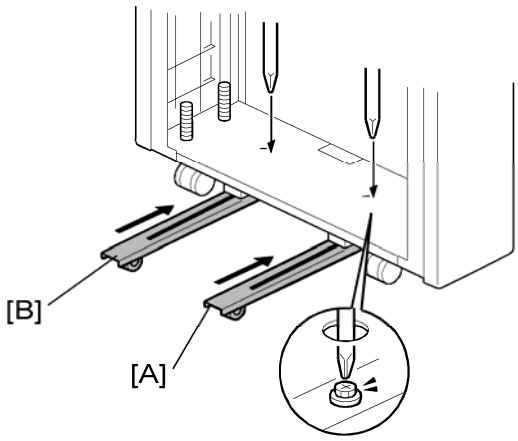
Important

- You must use the Relay Guide Plate – Short (12-in.)

10. Remove the ground plate [C] from the bottom cross-piece (x2).
11. Turn the ground plate over.
12. Reattach the ground plate with the same screws as shown (x2).

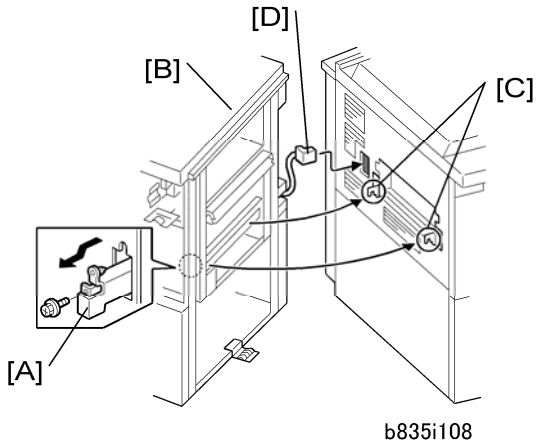



13. Remove the interface connector cover [A].
14. Attach the rear docking bracket [B] (x2).
15. Attach the front docking bracket [C] (x2).




16. If the Z-Folding Unit will be installed, loosen the screws for the rear runner [A] and front runner [B].
17. Push the runners in and re-fasten them again with the screws.

Cover Interposer Tray CI5000 (B835)




18. Open the front door of the cover interposer tray.
19. Pull out the locking lever [A].
20. Align the finisher [B] with the joint brackets [C], then slowly push the finisher onto the brackets.
21. Connect the finisher cable [D] to the copier
22. Push in the locking lever.
23. Check that the top edges of the finisher are parallel with edges of the finisher (or copier) to the right.
24. Fasten the locking lever [A] (🔩 x 1)
25. Close the front door.

### *Docking the Next Peripheral Device*

The next peripheral device to the left of the cover interposer tray must be installed before you can mount the tray unit on top of the transport unit of the cover interposer tray.

- The tray unit of the cover interposer tray is supported by the top of the next peripheral device in line to the left, as well as the transport unit of the cover interposer.
- The next peripheral device to the left of the cover interposer must be set up and docked to the cover interposer before the transport unit of the cover interposer can be mounted.

**Connect the next peripheral unit now.**

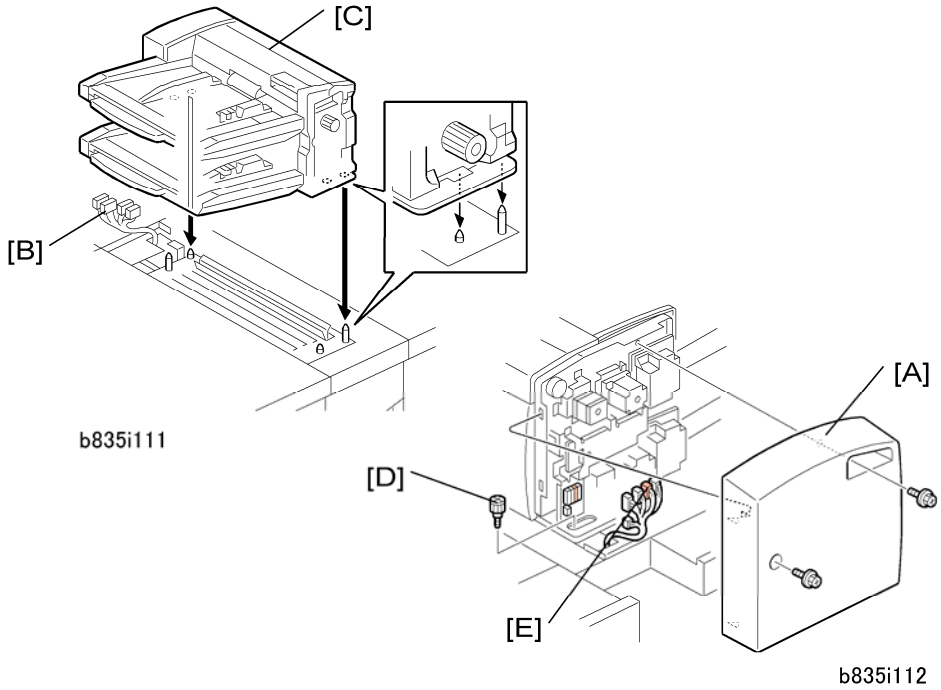
- Z-Folding Unit B660 (See "Z-Folding Unit B660" in this section)
- 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 (See "3000-Sheet Finisher B830" in this section)

**⚠CAUTION**

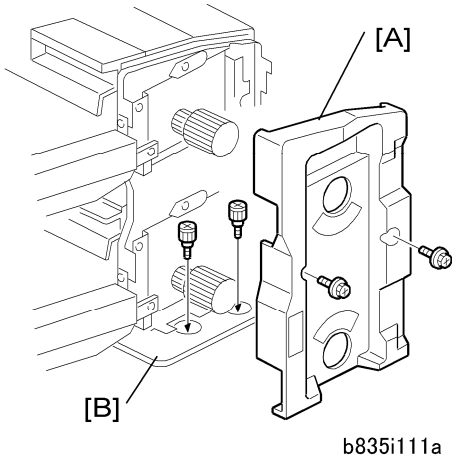
- Never attempt to mount the cover interposer tray unit until the next device in line (Z-Folding Unit B660, or 3000-Sheet Finisher (B830) has been docked to the transport unit (base) of the cover interposer tray.
- To prevent bending the frame of the tray unit and damaging its alignment, always remove the tray unit from the cover interposer tray transport unit at the following times:
- 1) Before disconnecting either the cover interposer tray or the next peripheral device to the left, or
- 2) Before doing any maintenance on either the cover interposer tray or the next peripheral device to the left.

Cover Interposer Tray CI5000 (B835)

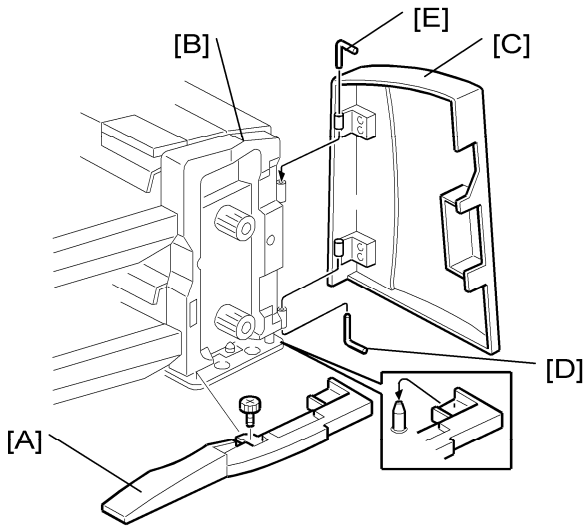
## *Mounting the Tray Unit*



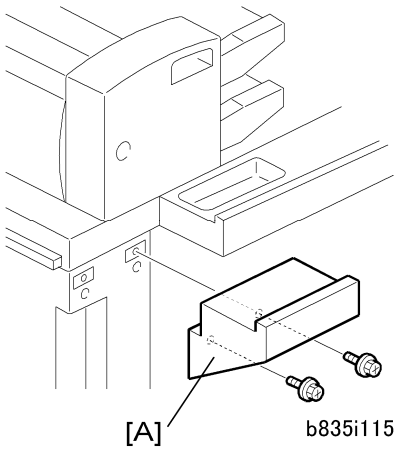

1. Remove the rear cover [A] (🔩 x2).
2. Confirm that the connectors [B] are free.
3. Place the tray unit [C] on top of the cover interposer transport unit.
4. Attach the knob screw [D] (🔩 x1).
5. Connect the harness connectors [E] (🤏 x5)
6. Reattach the rear cover.




7. Remove the front inner cover [A] from the dual-tray unit (🔩 x2).
8. Fasten the tray unit to the top of the transport unit with the knob screws [B] (🔩 x2).

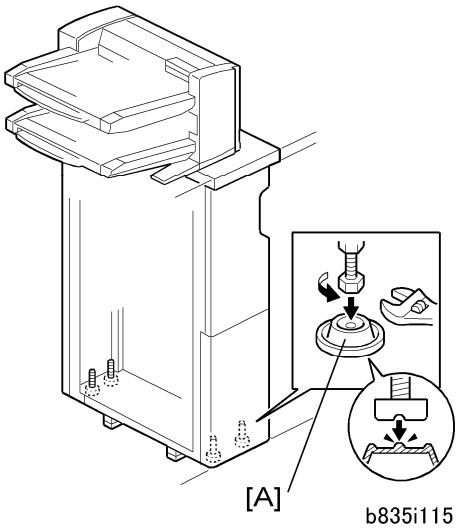



9. Attach the base cover [A] (☞ x1).
10. Confirm that the holes in the cover match the positions of the reference pins.
11. Re-attach the front inner cover [B] (removed at step 7 above).
12. Position the tray unit front door [C] so that its hinges match the posts on the frame of the tray unit.
13. Hold the lower L-pin [D] as shown, insert it halfway, push it up, then rotate it into its groove.
14. Hold the upper L-pin [E] as shown, insert it halfway, push it down, then rotate it into its groove.




15. Attach the spacer [A] to the rear of the transport unit (☞ x2).

Cover Interposer Tray CI5000 (B835)



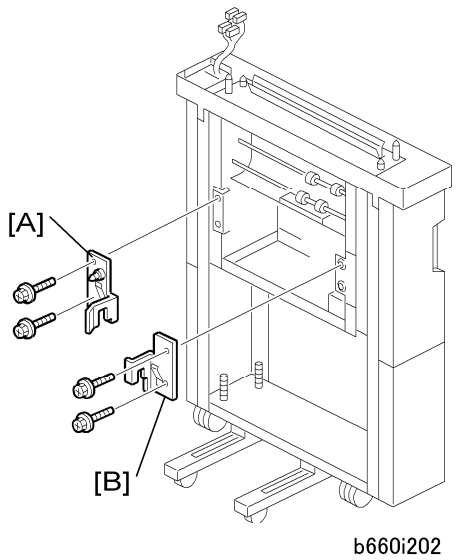

16. Set the leveling shoes [A] (x4) under the feet.
17. Turn the nuts to adjust the height of the cover interposer until it is level.

## 1.16.3 DOCKING THE COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B835

The following units are docked to the cover interposer tray:

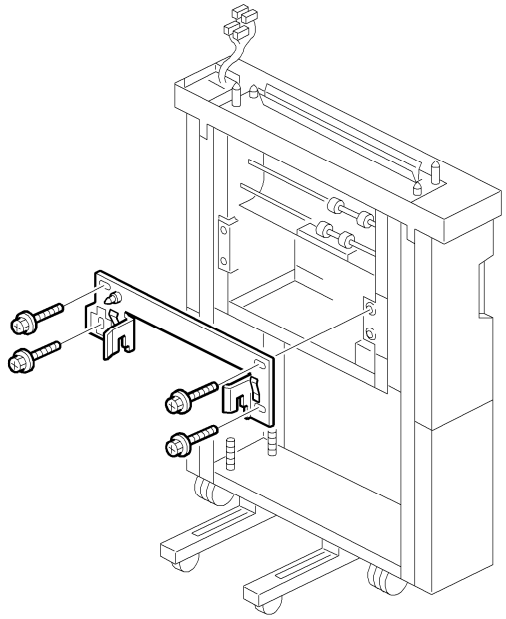
- Z-Fold Unit B660
- Finisher B830

### *Z-Fold Unit B660 to Cover Interposer Tray B835*




1. Attach the rear docking bracket [A].
2. Attach the front docking bracket [B].
3. Connect the Z-folding unit.

## *Finisher B830 to Cover Interposer Tray B835*



b830i203

1. Fasten the joint bracket to the Cover Interposer Tray B835.
2. Dock the finisher.

## *Firmware Update*

Install the latest version of the firmware for the cover interposer tray.

The cover interposer may not operate correctly with the D014/D015/D078/D079 unless the most recent version of the firmware is installed.

**North America Only**

When the Cover Interposer Tray (B835) is installed, be sure to check the FCC Class-A decal is attached to the copier below its serial number decal.

This decal is included with the Finisher Adapter (D375) because the Cover Interposer Tray CI5000 (B835) is always installed with Finisher Adapter (D375) and the 3000-Sheet Finisher (B830).

For more details see "3000-Sheet Finisher (B830), Finisher Adapter (D375)" in section "1. Installation".

# 1.17 Z-FOLDING UNIT ZF4000 (B660)

⇒ The ZF4000 supports a connection with the D014/D015/D078/D079 copier only when both of the following conditions are met:

(1) The ZF4000 must be from **May 2007 production or later.**

Cut-in S/N:

| ZF4000 machine code | Cut-in Serial Number | |
|---|---|---|
| B660-57 | **K3070400079** | **May 2007** production |
| B660-66 | **8M405700001** | **May 2007** production |
| B660-67 | **K3070500022** | **May 2007** production |

**NOTE:** For ZF4000 folding units produced from May – December 2007, there is a blue mark on the outer box and folding unit itself.

(2) The finisher must be an **SR5000** (100-Staple) or **SR4020** (Saddle Stitch).

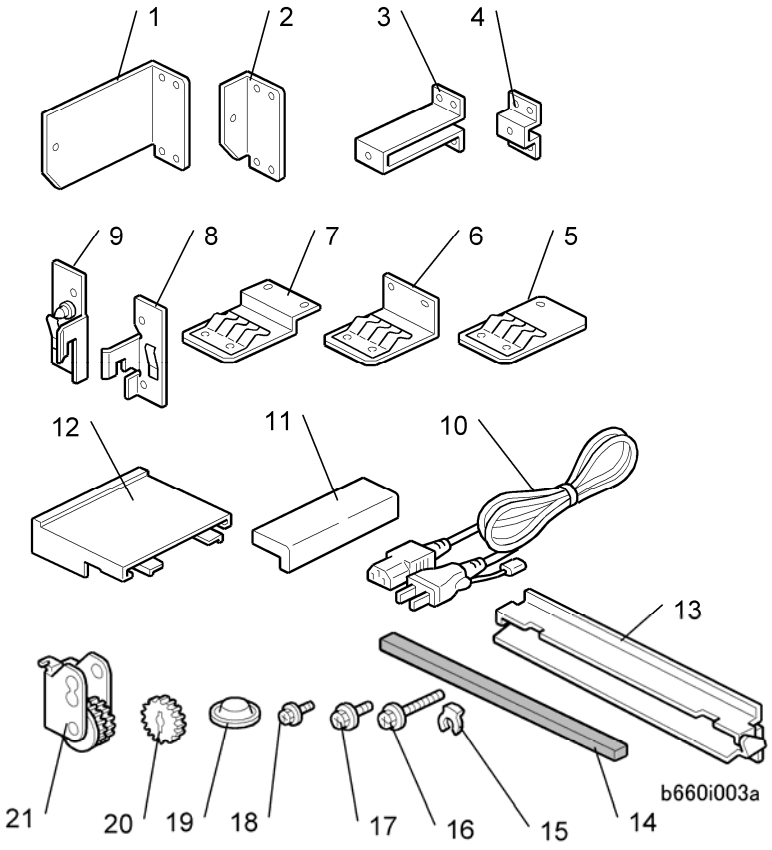
**NOTE:** Connection to a SR4010 finisher is **not supported**.

## 1.17.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

| | Description | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Lock Bracket – Rear (Cover Interposer Tray) | 1 |
| 2. | Lock Bracket – Rear | 1 |
| 3. | Lock Bracket – Front (Cover Interposer Tray)*1 | 1 |
| 4. | Lock Bracket – Front | 1 |
| 5. | Ground Plate (Cover Interposer Tray) | 1 |
| 6. | Ground Plate (Z-folding unit) | 1 |
| 7. | Ground Plate (Finisher or Cover Interposer Tray) | 1 |
| 8. | Right Docking Bracket | 1 |
| 9. | Left Docking Bracket | 1 |
| 10. | Power Cord | 1 |
| 11. | Front Spacer | 1 |
| 12. | Rear Spacer | 1 |

| | Description | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| 13. | Guide Plate | 1 |
| 14. | Sponge Strip | 1 |
| 15. | Teflon C-Clamp | 2 |
| 16. | Screws M4x10 | 4 |
| 17. | Screws M3 x 6 | 8 |
| 18. | Screws M4 x 8 | 4 |
| 19 | Leveling Shoes | 3 |
| 20. | Drive Gear (Black – for B236 135 cpm only) | 1 |
| 21. | Drive Gear Assy (Black – for B236 135 cpm only) | 1 |

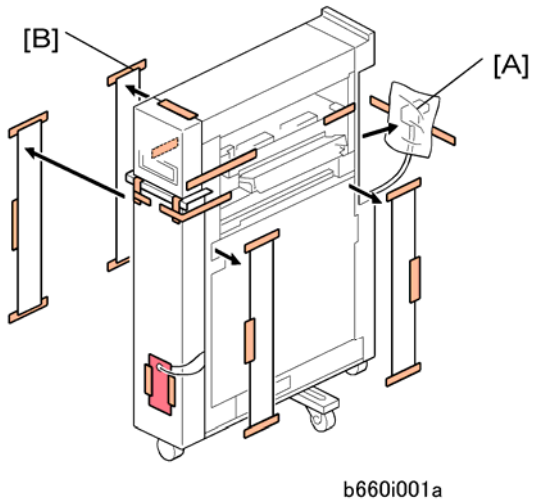


## 1.17.2 INSTALLATION

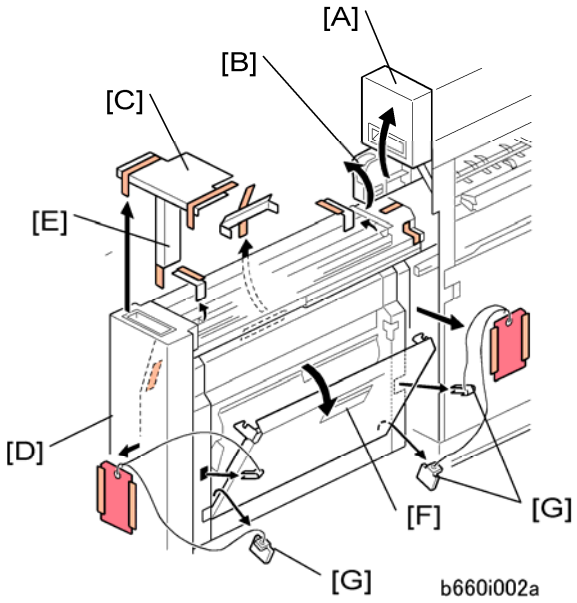
**⚠CAUTION**

- Always switch the machine off and unplug the machine before doing any of the following procedures.

### *Unpacking*



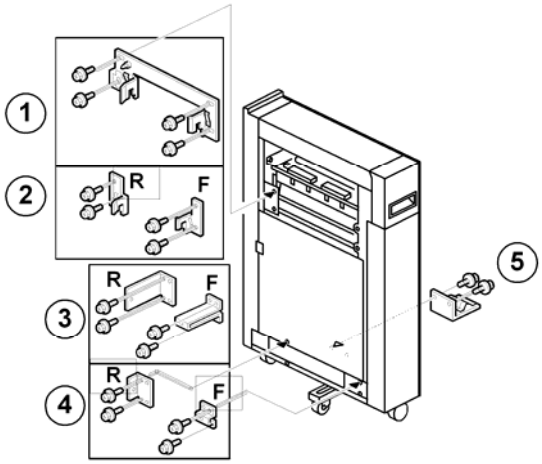

1. Detach the head of the I/F connector [A].
2. Remove all external tape [B] and shipping materials.




3. Open the front door [A].
4. Raise the horizontal transport plate [B] and remove the cushion [C].

5. Pull out the Z-folding mechanism [D] and remove the cushion [E].
6. Open the right vertical transport cover [F] completely (2 steps).
7. Remove four spacers [G] by pulling on the string.

### *Attaching the Brackets*




b660i004a

1. Attach the upper brackets.
   - If the Z-folder is installed with the 3000-Sheet Finisher B830, install bracket ① on the Finisher B830.

⇒
   - If the Z-folder is installed with the 3000-Sheet Finisher D374, install brackets ② (front and rear).

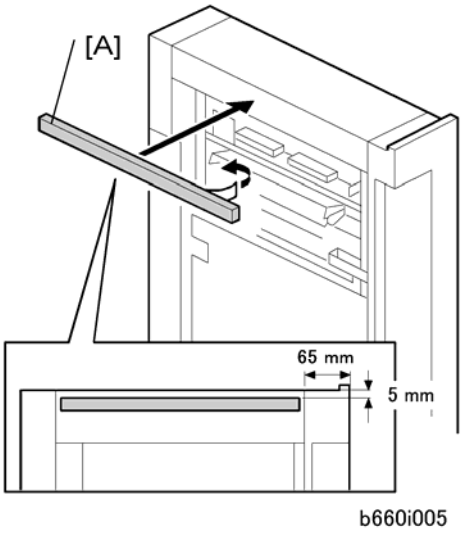
2. Attach the lower brackets.
   - If the Z-folder is installed with the cover interposer tray, install brackets ③.
   - If the Z-folder is not installed with the cover interposer tray, install brackets ④.

     Important

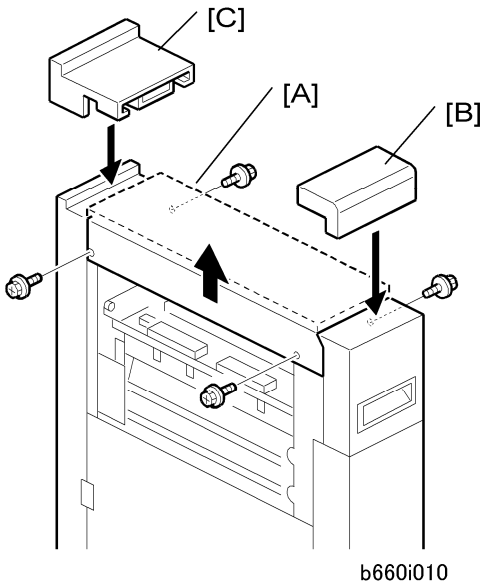
     - Bracket **"④-F"** is not required when the Z-folder is installed with the 3000-Sheet Finisher B830.

- Attach the ground (earth) plate ⑤ to the side of the Z-folding unit that is facing the copier. Use the ground plate for the Z-folding unit. (Item 6 in the accessories list.)

## *Preparing for Docking*

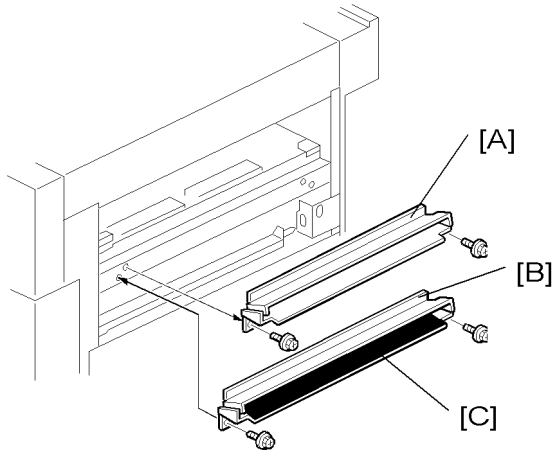



1. Remove the tape from the sponge [A] and attach it to the Z-folding unit.




2. Remove the top cover [A] (🔩 x 4).
3. Remove the seal from the double-sided tape on the bottom of the front spacer [B], then attach it.
4. Remove the seal from the double-sided tape on the bottom of the rear spacer [C], then attach it.
5. The spacers align the top of the Z-folding unit with the edge of the copier.
6. Reattach the top cover [A] (🔩 x 4).
7. Make sure that the top cover is level with the tops of the rear and front spacers.

Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 (B660)



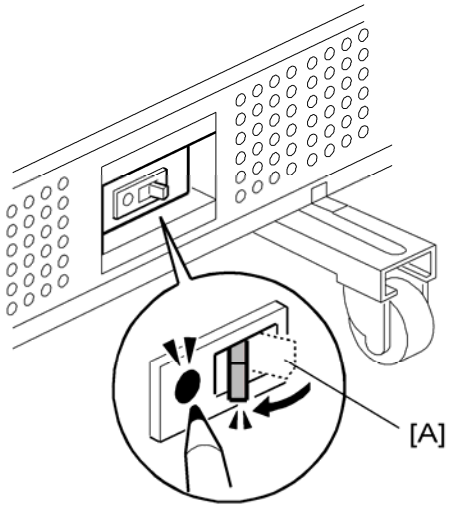

b660i003b

Important

- Do Steps 8 and 9 only when the Z-Folding Unit (B660) is installed with Cover Interposer Tray (B835).

8. Replace the entrance guide plate [A] with the longer guide plate [B] provided with the accessories (🔩 x 2).
9. Attach the mylar [C] (from the accessories for the Cover Interposer B835) as shown in the illustration only to the guide plate provided with the Cover Interposer Tray B835.

## *Testing the Breaker*




b660i003c

1. The breaker switch is at the lower right side of the Z-folder. Confirm that the manual breaker switch [A] is set to the right.

Note

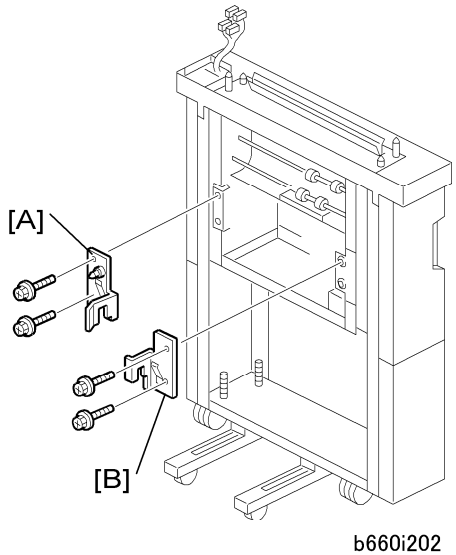
- When the breaker switch is set to the right (the "—" mark will be visible), the copier is ready to be turned on.

2. Connect the Z-folding unit power cord to the Z-folding unit and connect the other end of the cord to an ac power source.
3. Push in the breaker test button with the tip of a screw driver until the breaker switch snaps to the off position.
4. Confirm that the breaker switch is at the off position.
   - If the breaker switch does not move to the off position:
   - Confirm that the power cord is securely connected to the power supply.
   - Push the test button again.
   - If the breaker switch does not snap to the off position, the breaker switch must be replaced.
5. Reset the breaker switch to the on position.

## *Docking the Z-Folding Unit to the Cover Interposer Tray or Copier*

The Z-Folding Unit is docked to the Cover Interposer Tray B835, or to the Copier if the cover interposer tray is not used.

**Z-Fold Unit to Cover Interposer Tray B835**

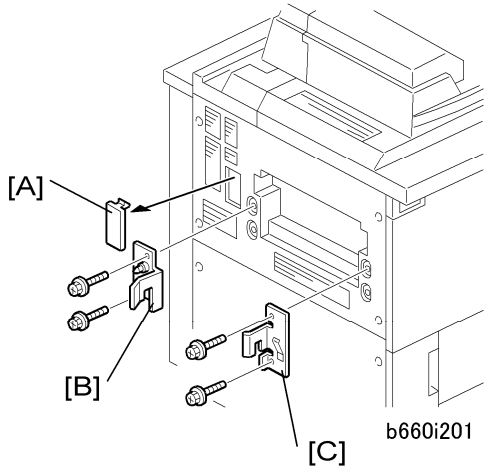



b660i202

1. Attach the rear docking bracket [A].
2. Attach the front docking bracket [B].
3. Connect the Z-folding unit.

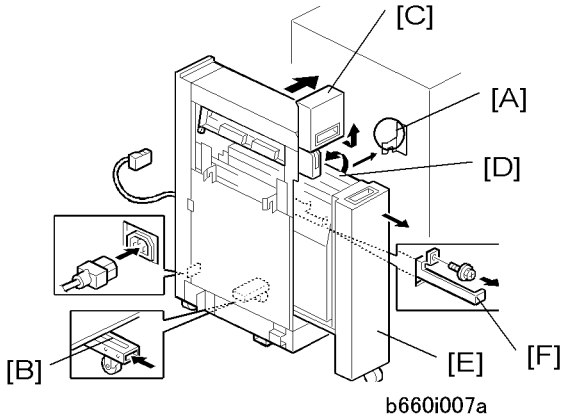
Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 (B660)

**Z-Fold B660 to Copier**




1. Remove the connector plate [A].
2. Attach the rear docking bracket [B].
3. Attach the front docking bracket [C].
4. Connect the Z-folding unit.

## *Connecting the Z-Folding Unit B660*



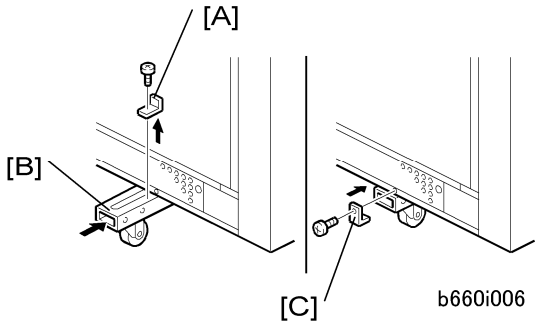

1. Fasten brackets [A] (x2) (provided accessories) to the Cover Interposer Tray B835 (or Copier) (🖉 x 2 each).
2. Remove support screw and bracket [B], push in the support, then reattach the screw and bracket.
3. Pull the top cover [C] toward you then raise it.
4. Raise the horizontal transport plate [D] to the left.
5. Pull out the Z-folding mechanism [E].
6. Pull out the Z-folding unit lock lever [F] (🖉 x 1).

7. At the right bottom edge of the Z-folding unit, confirm that the breaker switch is ON.

Note

- This switch should display "—". If you see "O", set the switch to "—". The machine will not recognize the Z-folding unit if this switch is off.

8. Dock the Z-folding unit to the cover interposer tray (or Copier).
9. Push in the lock lever [F] and fasten it (☞ x 1).
10. Push in the Z-folding mechanism [E], lower the horizontal transport plate [D], then close the front door [C].
11. Connect the Z-Folding unit to the copier.
12. Connect the Z-Folding unit power cord to the Z-folding unit and connect the other end of the cord to the power ac supply.




13. At the left bottom edge of the Z-folding unit, remove the bracket [A] (☞ x 1).
14. Push in the support [B].
15. Reattach the bracket [C] (☞ x 1).

**⚠CAUTION**

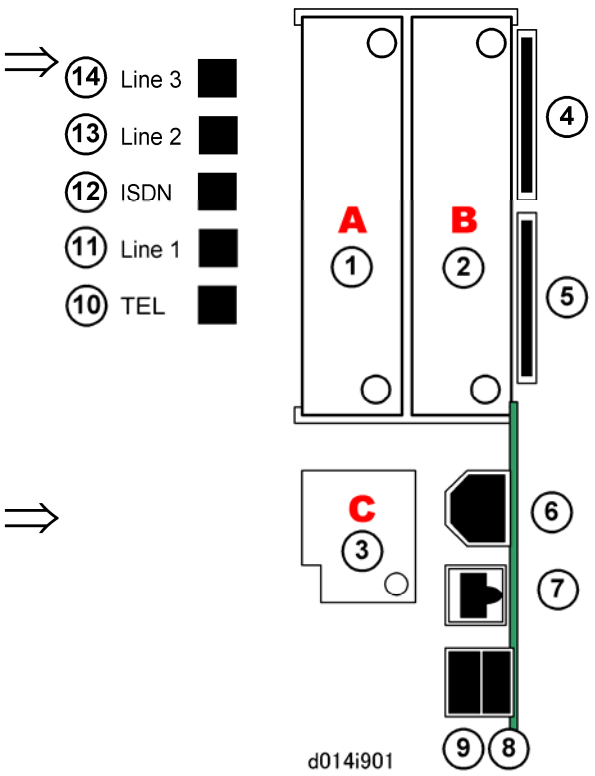
- With the support retracted, the Z-folding unit tips easily!

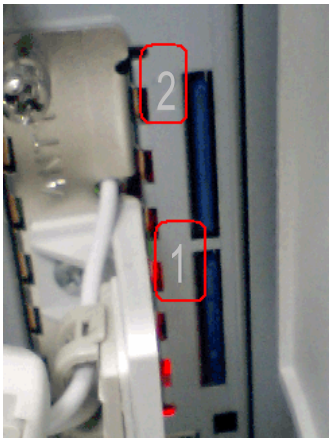
16. Attach the I/F cable to the cover interposer tray (or Copier).
17. Connect the power cord to the Z-folding unit.

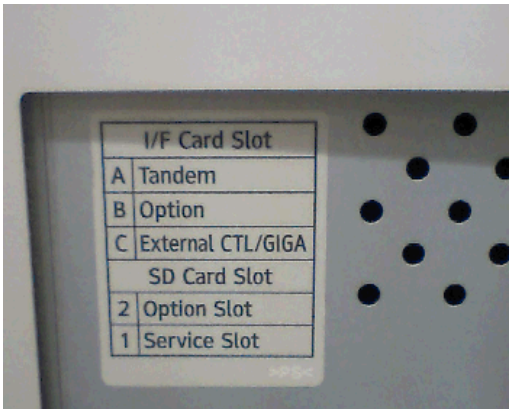
# 1.18 MFP CONTROLLER OPTIONS

## 1.18.1 OVERVIEW

The machine controller box has three board slots and two SD card slots. Make sure that each board and SD card is put in the correct slot.




**Board Slots**

| No. | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ① | Slot A | Copy Connector (B328) only |
| ② | Slot B | ▪ IEEE1284 (B679)<br>▪ File Format Converter (D377)<br>▪ IEEE802.11a/g (D377)<br>▪ Bluetooth (B826) |
| ③ | Slot C | Gigabit Ethernet (D377). The EFI (Fiery) controller is connected through Gigabit Ethernet. |

| No. | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ④ | Upper Slot<br>Slot#2<br>Option Slot | ▪ Browser Unit (D377)<br>▪ Data Overwrite Security (D377)<br>▪ HDD Encryption Unit (D377)<br>▪ PostScript3 (D378)<br>▪ Printer/Scanner Unit (D376) |
| ⑤ | Lower Slot<br>Slot#1<br>Service Slot | ▪ VM Card (D377)<br>Also used as the Service Slot for firmware updates, moving applications to another SD card with SP5873 (Apli Move). |
| ⑥ | USB 2.0 | Built-in for connection of USB devices. |
| ⑦ | 100BaseT LAN | Standard LAN connection point. |
| ⑧ | USB Ch1 | For future use (PictaBridge, other application devices).<br>**Note**: These connection points are covered with a plate. Remove the screw, rotate the plate and reattach it with the screw so that the slots are exposed, then attach the connector. |
| ⑨ | USB Ch2 | |
| ⑩ | TEL | Jack for telephone connection |
| ⑪ | Line 1 | Jack for main telephone line from the outside for connection to Fax Option (D356). |
| ⑫ | ISDN | Jack for ISDN connection **Japan Only** |
| ⑬ | Line 2 | Jack for a **2nd line** connection to G3 Interface Unit Type C7500 (D357) when this option is installed. |
| ⑭ | Line 3 | Jack for a **3rd line** connection to G3 Interface Unit Type C7500 (D357) when this option is installed. |

**Important Notes**

- Only two SD Card slots are available for applications.
- The VM card must be inserted in the lower slot.
- Other applications must be inserted in the upper slot.
- If more than one application is required in the upper slot, the applications must be

moved to the same SD card with SP5873-1.

- The PostScript3 application cannot be moved to another card. However, other applications can be moved to the PostScript3 SD card.

## ⇒1.18.2 ENABLING USB

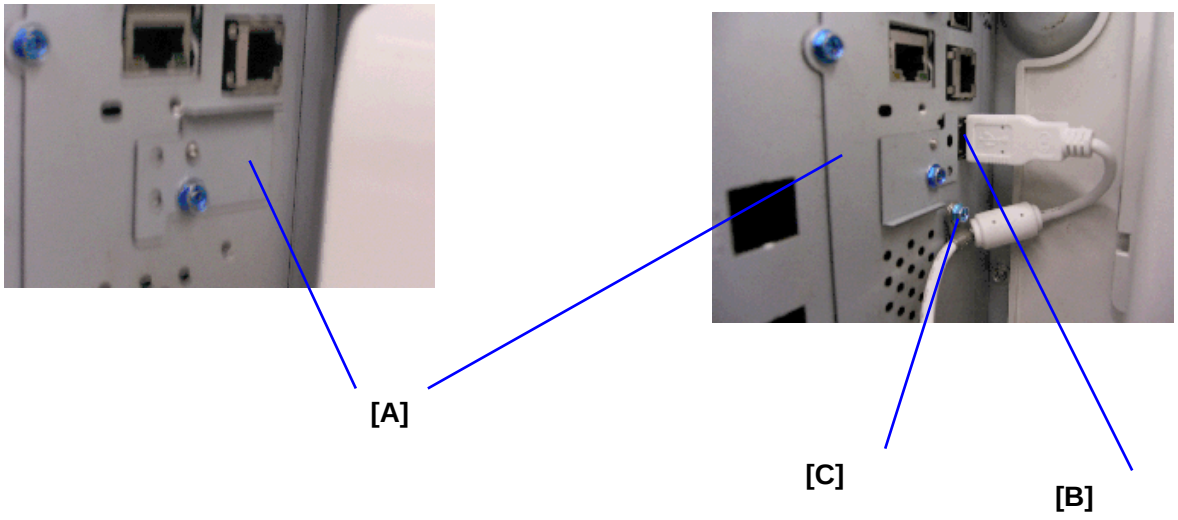
- The USB I/F on the rear face of the machine is covered by a small bracket ([A]). Use the procedure below to uncover the I/F and enable the built in USB device.

**PROCEDURE**

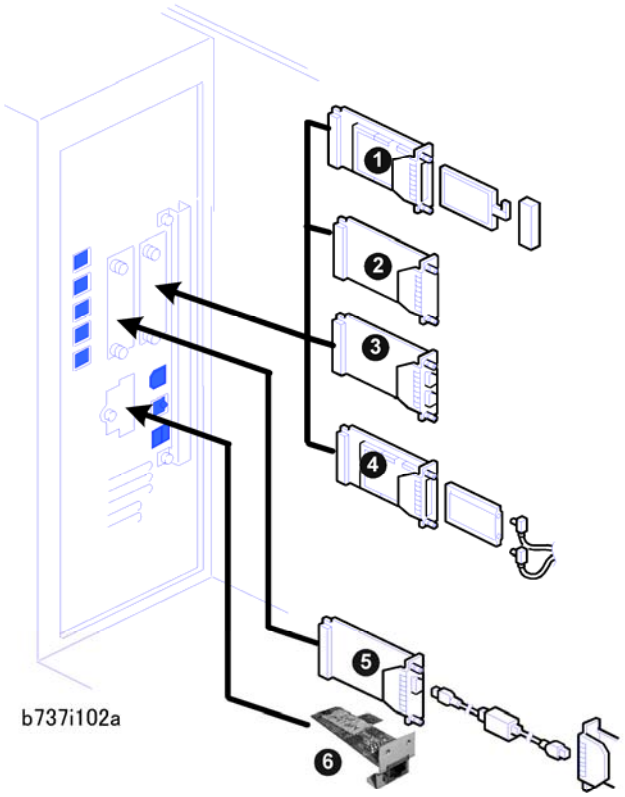
1. Loosen the screw and turn the bracket [A] 180 degrees, so that the USB I/F [B] is uncovered. Then, fasten the bracket in this position.
2. Connect the USB cable.
3. Fix the cable in place using a nylon clamp [C] (1 screw), as shown.
   **Note**: The nylon clamp is available as a service part (P/N 11050323).
4. Set SP5985-002 (On board USB Device Setting) to a value of "1" to enable the USB device. Then, turn the main power OFF/ON.

**SP5985-002: On board USB Device Setting**

| Model | Default setting: | Setting to Enable the USB device: |
|---|---|---|
| **D014/D015/D078/D079** | 0 (disabled) | **1** |



## 1.18.3 ACCESSORY CARDS



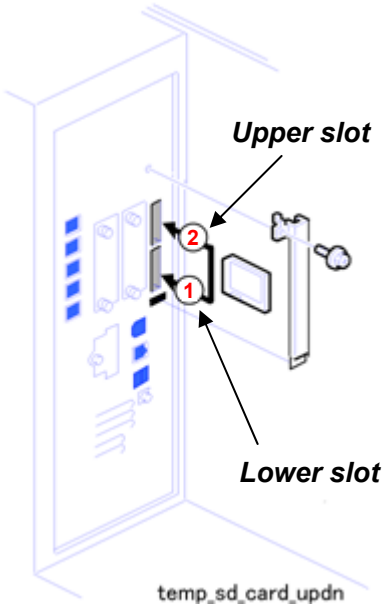

| No. | Slot | Code | Option |
|---|---|---|---|
| ① | Slot B | B826 | Bluetooth |
| ② | Slot B | D377 | File Format Converter |
| ③ | Slot B | B679 | IEEE1284 |
| ④ | Slot B | D377 | IEEE802.11a/g |
| ⑤ | Slot A | B328 | Copy Connector |
| ⑥ | Slot C | D377 | Gigabit Ethernet*1 |
| | | B828 | Copy Data Security Unit Type F (not shown, is attached to the IPU inside the controller box.) |

*[1]: The EFI (Fiery) controller is connected through Gigabit Ethernet.

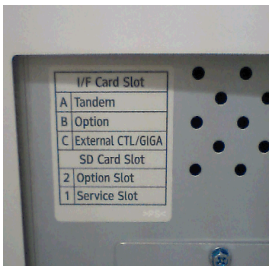
Note

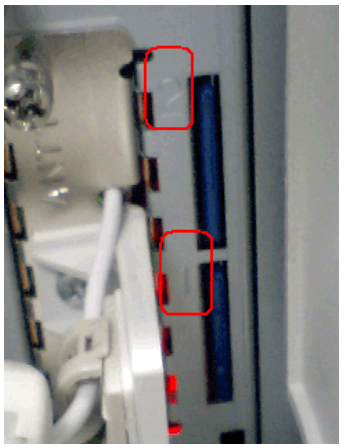
- Items ① to ⑤ must be in the same slot. Only one of these cards can be installed at the same time.

## ⇒1.18.4 SD CARD APPLICATIONS




**Note:** The decal and numbers engraved in the controller box (see below).



The following applications are available on SD cards.

| No. | Name | SD Card Slot. |
|---|---|---|
| D377 | Browser Unit Type D | **Slot 1 (lower slot)** |
| D377 | Data Overwrite Security Unit Type H | **Slot 2 (upper slot)** |
| D377 | HDD Encryption Unit Type a | **Slot 1 (lower slot)** |
| D378 | PostScript 3 | **Slot 2 (upper slot)** |
| D376 | Printer/Scanner Unit Type 7500 | **Slot 2 (upper slot)** |
| D377 | VM Card Type E | **Slot 1 (lower slot)** |

**Note**:

1. The VM Card must be inserted in **Slot 1 (lower slot)**. This is because it requires about 22 MB of disk space, and cannot be merged onto the SD card in the upper slot if that card already contains all the other applications.
2. If the customer needs more than one application in the upper slot, the applications must be moved to one SD card. (See "Moving Applications to One SD Card" in this section)
3. **Slot 1 (lower slot)** is used for installing the Browser Unit, HDD Encryption unit, VM card or for service only (for example, updating the firmware).

section)

## 1.18.5 HANDLING DIMMS AND SD CARDS

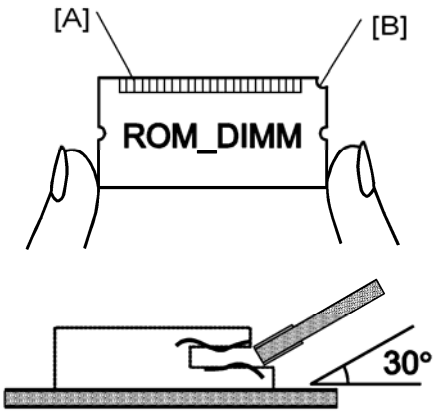
**⚠WARNING**

- Always turn the machine off and disconnect the machine power cord before you install a controller option.

**⚠CAUTION**

- To prevent damage to the controller box, always work carefully. Never put your hand or a tool into the box when you remove the controller box or install an option.
- To prevent damage to the circuits on the boards, always touch a metal surface to remove static charge from your hands before you handle a board..

### *DIMMs*




g338i901

1. Hold the ROM DIMM as shown above. The edge connector [A] points toward the slot and the notch [B] is in the top right corner.
2. Insert the edge connector [C] in the slot at a 30-degree angle from the surface of the board. If the angle is too low, the upper contact could bend.
3. Carefully move the outer edge of the ROM DIMM up and down slightly until it goes into the connector then carefully push it down unit it is level with the controller board.

Important

- If the upper contact is pushed in with force and bends, the connection will be defective and the machine will not operate.

### *SD cards*

SD cards are held in position by a small spring-lock mechanism.

1. To install an SD card, push it into the slot until it stops, then release it.
2. To remove an SD card, push the SD card in carefully to release it, and then remove it from the slot.

## 1.18.6 MOVING APPLICATIONS TO ONE SD CARD

### *Overview*

There are only two SD card slots:

- Upper slot. Insert the application card in this slot. If more than one application is required, the applications must be moved to one SD card with SP5873-1.
- Lower slot. Insert VM card application in this slot. This slot is also used for firmware update.

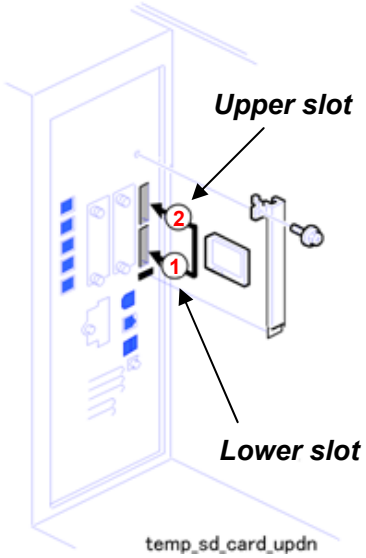
Here are some important points you should keep in mind about SD cards and their applications:

- The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program to the target SD card.
- Do not use an SD card if it has previously been used with a computer. Correct operation is not guaranteed if such an SD card is used.
- The SD card is the only evidence that the customer is licensed to use the application program. The service technician may occasionally need to check the SD card and its contents to solve problems. Although copied SD cards are disabled for use, they must be stored in the machine door for future use and reference. (See "Storing SD Application Cards on Site" in this section)
- A licensing agreement prohibits copying of a PostScript3 SD card. However, you can move other applications to the PS3 SD card.
- Once an SD card has been used to hold several applications, it should not be used for any other purpose.

## ⇒ *Moving Applications*

Do this procedure to put more than one application on one SD card.

1. Turn off the copier.
2. Remove the SD card slot cover (🔩 x 2).




3. Insert the Source SD card in the **Slot 1 (lower slot)**. This card contains the application that you want to move to the other SD card.

Note

- The PostScript3 SD card cannot be the source card because it cannot be copied.

4. Put the Target SD card in **Slot 2 (upper slot)**.
5. Open the front door.
6. Turn the copier on.
7. Go into the SP mode and do SP5873-1.
8. Follow the instructions on the display and touch "Execute" to start copying.
9. When the display tells you copying is complete, touch "Exit".
10. Turn the copier off.
11. Remove the Source SD card from the **Slot 1 (lower slot)**, and leave the target SD card in the **Slot 2 (upper slot)**.
12. Turn the copier on.
13. Go into the User Tools mode and confirm that all the applications on the SD card in the **Slot 2 (upper slot)** are enabled.
    User Tools> System Settings> Administrator Tools> Firmware Version> Next (5/5)

14. Turn the copier off again, then:
    - Reattach the SD card slot cover.
    - Remove the cover from the front door, and store the SD card that was copied. (See "Storing SD Application Cards on Site" in this section)

The SD card must be stored with the machine for these reasons:

- Once an SD card has been copied, it can no longer be used. But it must be stored in the front door to serve as proof of purchase by the customer.
- Also, at a later time the stored SD cards can be restored to full use with SP5873-2 (described in the next section).
- Before you put the card in the front cover, label it so that it can be easily identified.

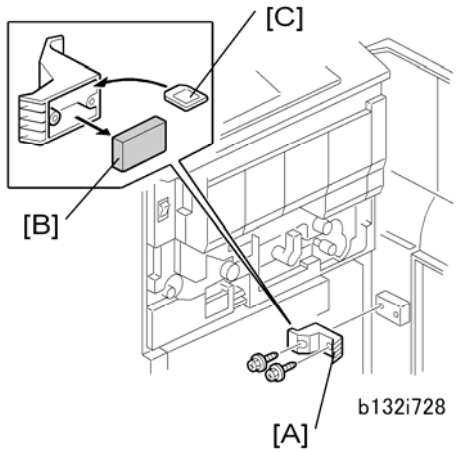
### ⇒ *Undo Exec*

1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Put the SD card with the applications in the **Slot 2 (upper slot)**.
3. Put the original destination SD card (the one stored in the front door) into the **Slot 1 (lower slot)**.

   Note

   - The SD card in **Slot 1 (lower slot)** must be the original SD card of the application you want to move from **Slot 2 (upper slot)** to **Slot 1 (lower slot)**. You cannot use any blank SD card in **Slot 1 (lower slot)**. The application will be moved only to the original SD card.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Go into the SP mode and do SP5873-2 (Undo Exec)
6. Follow the messages on the operation panel to complete the procedure.
7. Turn the main switch off.
8. Remove the SD cards from the slots.
9. Turn the main switch on.

## *Storing SD Application Cards on Site*




1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the cover [A] on the door (☞ x 2).
3. Remove the block [B].
4. Store the SD cards [C] inside the cover.
5. Attach the cover to the machine.

## 1.18.7 PRINTER/SCANNER D376 AND INTERFACE UNIT

### *Accessories*

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

| | Description | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Scanner/Printer SD Card (D376) | 1 |
| 2. | Key Top Assembly | 1 |
| 3. | Operating Instructions – Printer | 1 |
| 4. | Installation Instructions | 1 |
| 5. | FCC Label | 1 |
| 6. | Software CD-ROM | 3 |

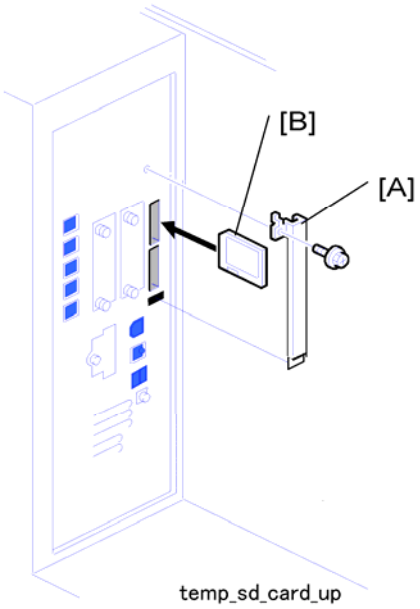
### *Installation*

**⚠WARNING**

- Turn the machine OFF and disconnect the machine power cord before you start this procedure.

⇒1. Disconnect the ARDF cable [A] (☞ x 1).

⇒




2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Insert the Printer/Scanner SD card in SD Card the upper slot [B].
4. Reattach the SD card slot cover (🔩 x 1).

## 1.18.8 IEEE 1284 INTERFACE BOARD B679 (CENTRONICS)

### *Accessories*

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

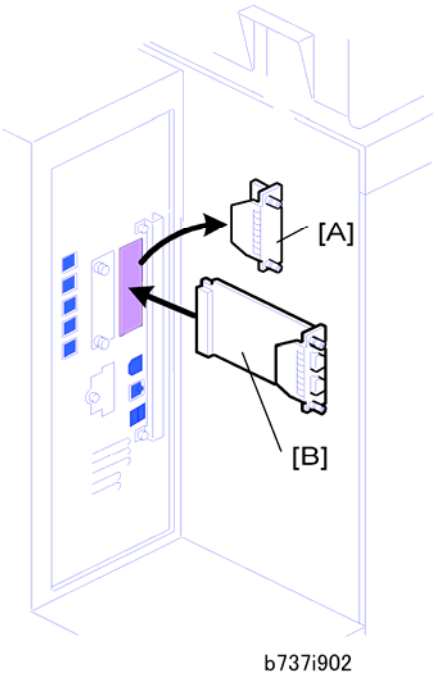
| | Description | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | IEEE 1284 | 1 |

Only one interface slot is available for one of the following options, so only one can be installed:

- Bluetooth (B826)
- File Format Converter (D377)
- IEEE1284 (B679)
- IEEE802.11a/g (D377)

### *Installation*

1. Remove the cover of Slot B [A] (x 2).
2. Touch a metal surface to discharge any static electricity from your hands.
3. Install the interface board [B] in Slot B (x 2).
4. Cycle the machine power off and on.
5. Do SP5990 to print an SMC Report.
6. Read the report and confirm that the interface board is installed correctly.



## 1.18.9 BLUETOOTH INTERFACE UNIT B826

### *Accessories*

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories.

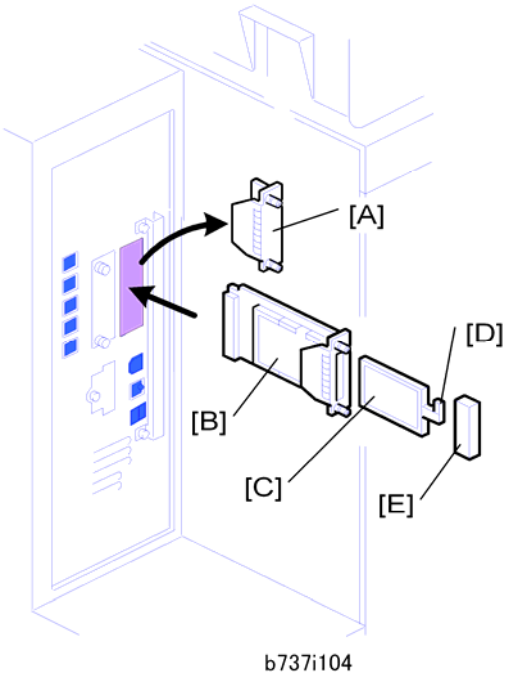
| | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Bluetooth card | 1 |
| 2 | Bluetooth card cover | 1 |
| 3 | Bluetooth board | 1 |

Only one interface slot is available for the following options, so only one can be installed:

- Bluetooth (B826)
- File Format Converter (D377)
- IEEE1284 (B679)
- IEEE802.11a/g (D377)

### *Installation Procedure*

1. Remove the cover of Slot B [A] (🔩 x 2).
2. Touch a metal surface to any static electricity from your hands.
3. Put the interface board [B] in Slot B.
4. Confirm that the board is inserted completely, then fasten it (🔩 x 2).
5. Put the Bluetooth card [C] in the slot of the interface board.
6. Push the antenna cap [D] to extend it.
7. Attach the card cover [E] (used to prevent static electricity).
8. Turn the machine off and on.
9. Enter the SP mode and do SP5990 to print an SMC.
10. Read the report and confirm that the interface board is installed correctly.



## 1.18.10 IEEE 802.11A/G INTERFACE UNIT D377

### *Accessories*

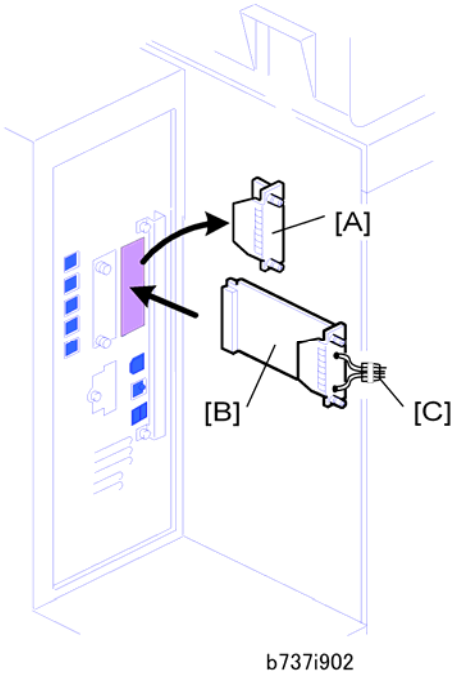
Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

| | Description | Qty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Wireless LAN PCB (GW-WLAN) | 1 |
| 2. | Card (GW-WLAN) | 1 |
| 3. | Wireless LAN Instructions | 1 |

Only one interface slot is available for the following options, so only one can be installed:

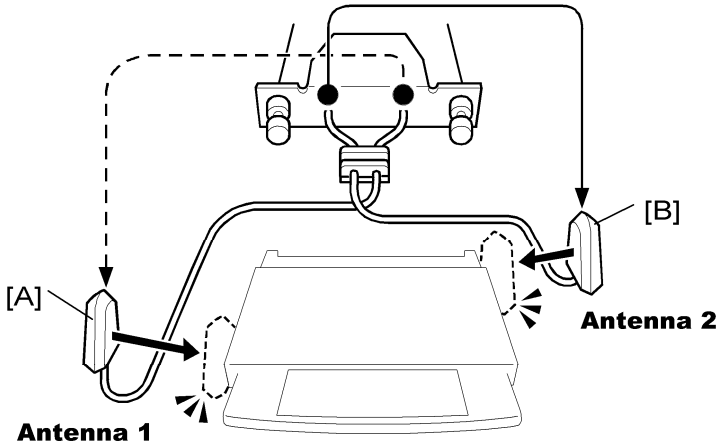
- Bluetooth (B826)
- File Format Converter (D377)
- IEEE1284 (B679)
- IEEE802.11a/g (D377)

### *Installation*




1. Remove the cover of Slot B [A] (🔩 x 2).
2. Touch a metal surface to discharge any static electricity from your hands.

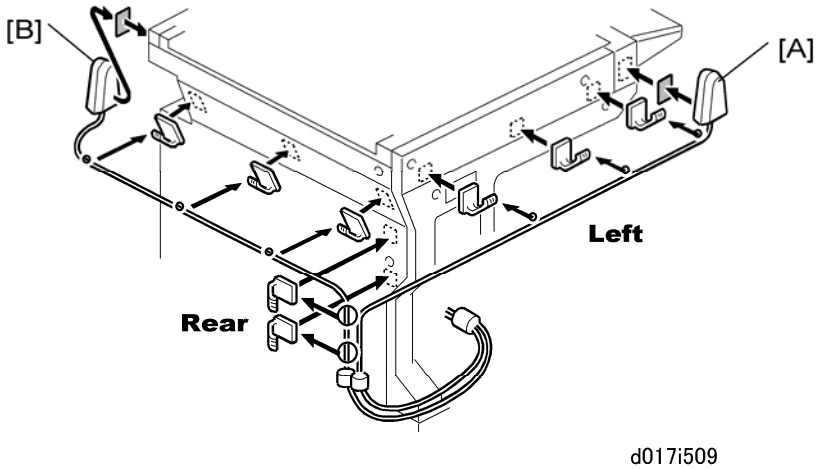
3. Put the interface board in Slot B [B].
4. Confirm that the board is inserted completely, then fasten it ( x 2).
5. Pull the antennas [C] away from machine and make sure that they are not tangled.
6. Look at the markings on the antenna bracket.
   - **ANT1**. Antenna 1 transmits and receives. It must be installed on the left front corner of the main machine. (The core on the Antenna 1 cable is black.)
   - **ANT2**. Antenna 2 only receives. It is installed on the right rear corner of the machine.




d017i508

Important

- To assure reliable data sending and receiving, Antenna 1 must be installed on the front left corner of the machine.




d017i509

7. Remove the seals from of the cable clamps and attach them to the left side of the machine as shown above.

8. Attach Antenna 1 [A] to the left front corner of the machine. (The core on the Antenna 1 cable is black.)
9. Set the cable of Antenna 1 in the clamps and close them.
10. Remove the seals from the cable clamps and attach them to the rear of the machine as shown above.
11. Attach Antenna 2 [B] to the right rear corner of the machine.
12. Set the cable of Antenna 2 in the clamps and close them.

### *SP Mode Settings for 802.11a/g Wireless LAN*

The following SP commands can be set for 802.11a/g

1. Go into the SP mode
2. Touch "Copy SP" on the touch-panel to open the SP command selection screen.
3. Do SP5840-11.

| SP No. | Name | Function |
|---|---|---|
| 5840 011 | WEP Key Select | Used to select the WEP key (Default: 00). |

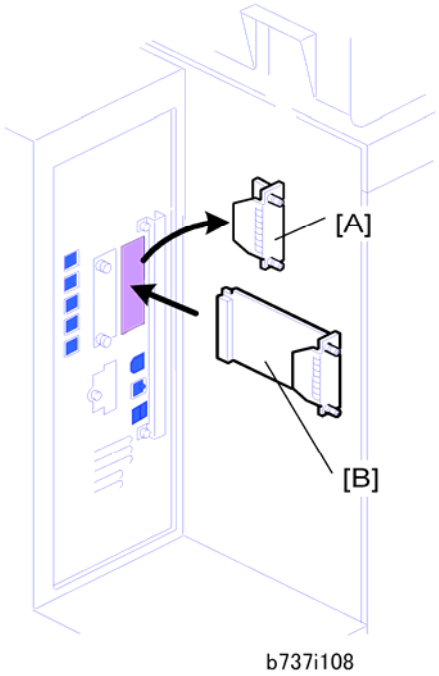
## 1.18.11 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER D377

### *Accessory Check*

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list:

| | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | File Format Converter (MLB: Media Link Board) | 1 |

### *Installation*




1. Remove the cover of Slot **A** [A] (☞ x2).
2. Touch a metal surface to discharge any static electricity from your hands.
3. Put the interface board [B] in Slot B.
4. Confirm that the board is inserted completely, then fasten it (☞ x 2).
5. Turn the machine off and on.
6. Enter the SP mode and do SP5990 to print an SMC Report.
7. Read the report and confirm that the interface board is installed correctly.

## 1.18.12 HDD ENCRYPTION UNIT

### *Before You Begin the Procedure*

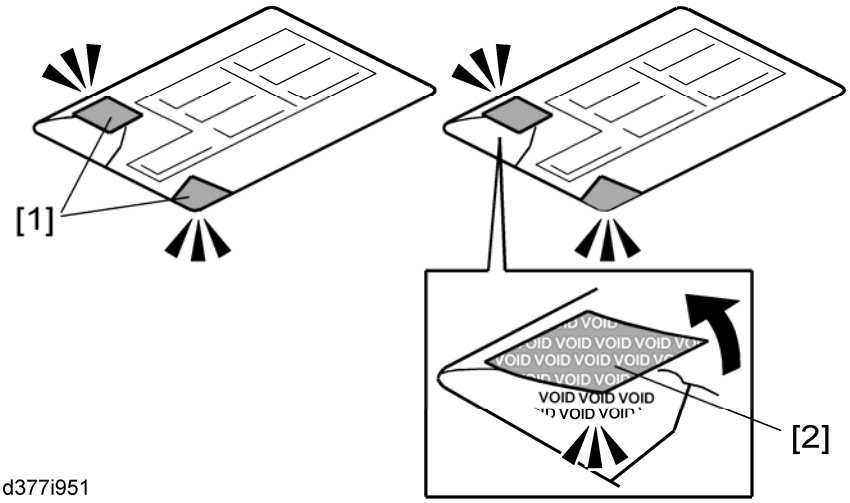
1. Make sure that the following settings are not at the factory default settings:
   - Supervisor login password
   - Administrator login name
   - Administrator login password

   Important
   - These settings must be set up by the customer before the encryption option can be installed.
2. Confirm that "Admin. Authentication" is on:
   [User Tools]> "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Administrator Authentication Management"> "Admin. Authentication"> "On"
   If this setting is "Off" tell the customer that this setting must be "On" before you can do the installation procedure.
3. Confirm that "Administrator Tools" is selected and enabled:
   [User Tools]> "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Administrator Authentication Management"> "Available Settings

   Note
   - "Available Settings" is not displayed until "Admin. Authentication" is switch on.

   If this setting is not selected tell the customer that this setting must be selected before you can do the installation procedure.

### *Seal Check and Removal*



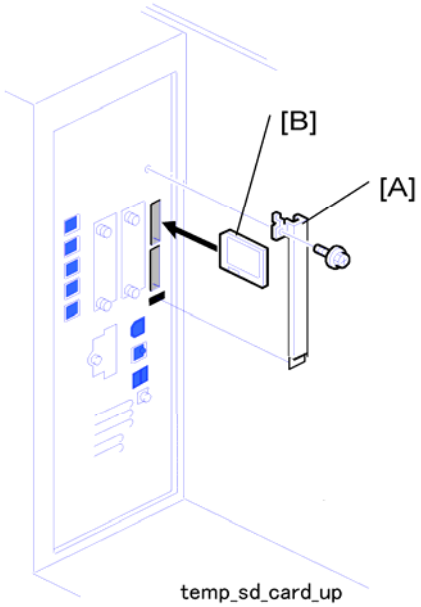

d377i951

**CAUTION**

- You must check the box seals to make sure that they were not removed after the items were sealed in the box at the factory before you do the installation.

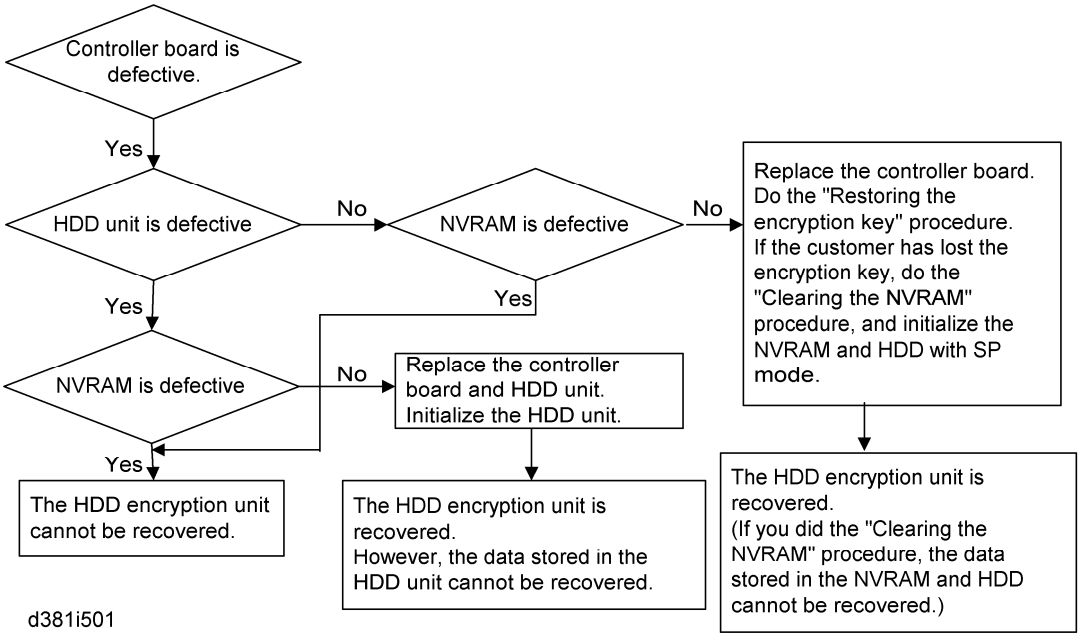
1. Check the box seals [1] on each corner of the box.
   - Make sure that a tape is attached to each corner.
   - The surfaces of the tapes must be blank. If you see "VOID" on the tapes, do not install the components in the box.
2. If the surfaces of the tapes do not show "VOID", remove them from the corners of the box.
3. You can see the "VOID" marks [2] when you remove each seal. In this condition, they cannot be attached to the box again.

## *Installation Procedure*




1. Remove the slot cover [A] (🖉 x 1).
2. Insert the SD in SD card [B] The upper slot.
3. Turn on the main power switch.
4. Enter the SP mode.
5. Select SP5878-002 (Option Setup – Encryption Option), and then touch [Execute].
6. Turn off the main power switch.
7. Remove the SD card.
8. Attach the slot cover [A] (🖉 x 1).
9. Switch the machine on.
10. Login to User Tools as the Administrator.
11. Go to [User Tools] [System Settings] [Administration Tools] Machine Data Encryption Settings] [Encrypt].
    Depending on the customers needs, choose one from the following three choices: [All Data], [File System Data Only], or [Format All Data].
12. From the window that will appear, print out the Data Encryption key by pressing the “Start” key.
13. confirm that the Data Encryption key has been printed correctly. After confirming that the Data Encryption Key has correctly printed, press OK.
14. A new window will appear informing of the changed settings. Press EXIT to continue.
15. Reboot the machine. Note: first reboot time may be significantly longer.
16. Store the Encryption Key Printout in a secure location.

### *Recovery from a Device Problem*




### *Restoring the encryption key*

When replacing the controller board for a model in which the HDD encryption unit has been installed, updating the encryption key is required.

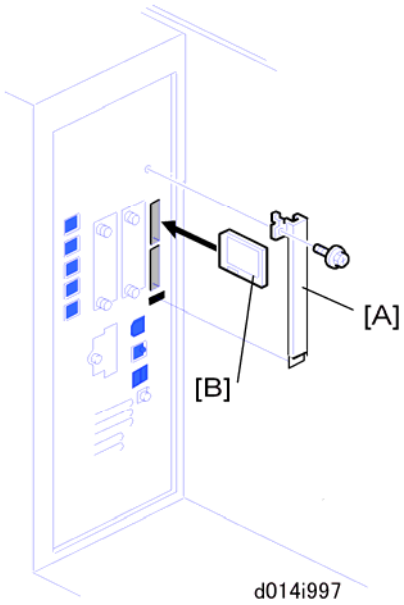
1. Prepare an SD card that has been is initialized.
2. Make the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
3. Make an "nvram_key.txt" file in the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
4. Ask an administrator to input the encryption key (this has been printed out earlier by the user) into the "nvram_key.txt" file.
5. Remove only the HDD unit.
6. Turn on the main power switch.
7. Confirm that the prompt on the LCD tells you to install the SD card (storing the encryption key) in the machine.
8. Turn off the main power switch.
9. ⇒ Insert the SD card that contains the encryption key into **Slot 1 (lower slot)**.
10. Turn on the main power switch, and the machine automatically restores the encryption key in the flash memory on the controller board.
11. Turn off the main power switch after the machine has returned to normal status.
12. ⇒ Remove the SD card from the **Slot 1 (lower slot)**.
13. Reinstall the HDD unit.

### *Clearing the NVRAM*

When replacing the controller board for a model in which the HDD encryption unit has been installed and a customer has lost the encryption key, clearing the NVRAM is required to recover the HDD encryption unit.

1. Prepare an SD card that has been initialized.
2. Make the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
3. Make an "nvram_key.txt" file in the "restore_key" folder in the SD card.
4. Input "nvclear" into the "nvram_key.txt" file.
5. Turn on the main power switch.
6. Confirm that the prompt on the LCD tells you to install the SD card (storing the encryption key) in the machine.
7. Turn off the main power switch.
8. ⟹ Insert the SD card that contains "nvclear" into **Slot 1 (lower slot)**.
9. Turn on the main power switch, and the machine automatically restores the encryption key in the flash memory on the controller board.
10. Turn off the main power switch after the machine has returned to normal status.
11. ⟹ Remove the SD card from **Slot 1 (lower slot)**.
12. Turn on the main power switch.
13. Initialize the NVRAM (SP5801-001) and HDD unit (SP5832-001) with SP mode.
14. The user must enable the HDD encryption unit with a user tool.

## 1.18.13 POSTSCRIPT3 D378




1. Remove the slot cover [A] (x1).
2. Put the PostScript3 SD card [B] in SD card the upper slot.
   - Only one SD card slot is available for applications provided on SD cards.
   - If the customer wants to use two or more applications from SD cards, the applications must be moved to a single SD card. (See "Moving Applications to One SD Card" in this section.)
   - The PostScript3 application and fonts cannot be moved to another SD card. However, other applications can be moved onto the PostScript3 SD card.

## 1.18.14 DOS UNIT TYPE H D377

### *Accessory Check*

Check the accessories and their quantities against the table below.

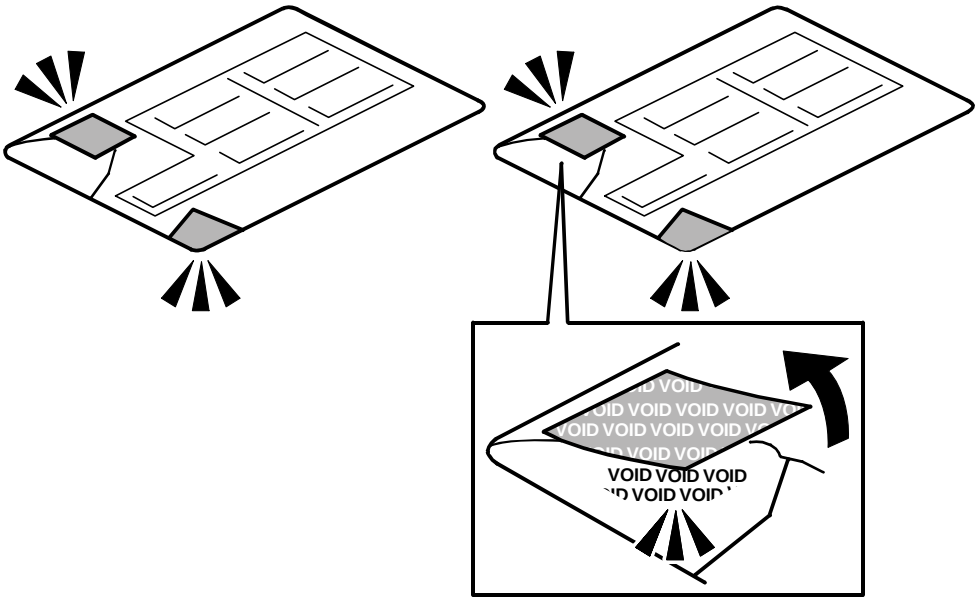
| Description | Qt'y |
|---|---|
| 1. Data Overwrite Security SD Card | 1 |
| 2. Operating Instructions CD-ROM | 1 |
| 3. Comments Sheet (17 languages) | 2 |

### *Before You Begin…*

1. Make sure that the Data Overwrite Security unit SD card is the correct type for this machine. **The correct type for this machine is type "H"**.
2. Make sure that the following settings are not at the factory default settings:
   - Supervisor login password
   - Administrator login name
   - Administrator login password

   These settings must be set up by the customer before the Data Overwrite Security unit can be installed.
3. Confirm that "Admin. Authentication" is on:
   - [User Tools]> "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Administrator Authentication Management"> "Admin. Authentication"> "On"
   - If this setting is "Off" tell the customer that this setting must be "On" before you can do the installation procedure.
4. Confirm that "Administrator Tools" is selected and enabled:
   - [User Tools]> "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Administrator Authentication Management"> "Available Settings
   - "Available Settings" is not displayed until Step 2 above is done.
   - If this setting is not selected tell the customer that this setting must be selected before you can do the installation procedure.

## *Seal Check and Removal*




1. Check the two box seals [A] on the corners of the box and confirm that they are firmly attached.

   Important

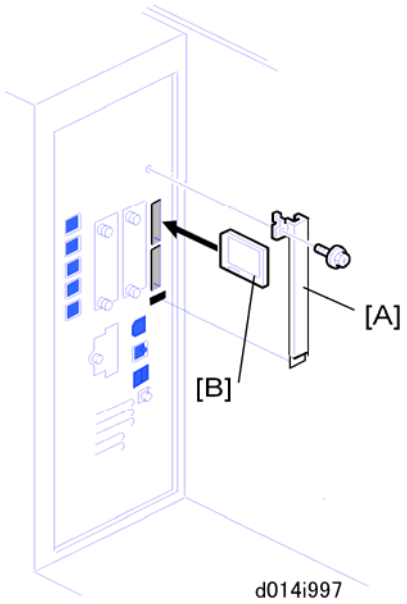
   - If you see "VOID" on the tapes or on the corners of the box this means that the seals have been removed. If the "VOID" notations are visible, do not use the SD card for this installation. Contact your sales division
2. Remove the seals from both corners of the box. The silver "VOID" notations [B] become visible only after you have removed the seals. This is normal.

## ⇒ *Installation Procedure*

**⚠CAUTION**

- Before doing the procedure, turn OFF the main power switch and unplug the machine from its power source.

1. Make sure that the machine is switched OFF and disconnected from its power source.
2. Disconnect the network cable.




3. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (x1).
4. Remove the security tape from the SD card wrapping.

Important

- If you see "VOID" on the security tape this means that the tape has been removed.
- If the "VOID" notations are visible, do not use the SD card for this installation. Contact your sales division.

5. Insert the DOS SD card [B] into the upper slot.
6. Reconnect the network cable.
7. Plug in the power cord, and turn the main power switch ON.
8. Do SP5878-1 and push [Execute] to enable the DOS option.
9. Exit out of the SP Mode.

⇒ 10. Cycle the machine OFF/ON.

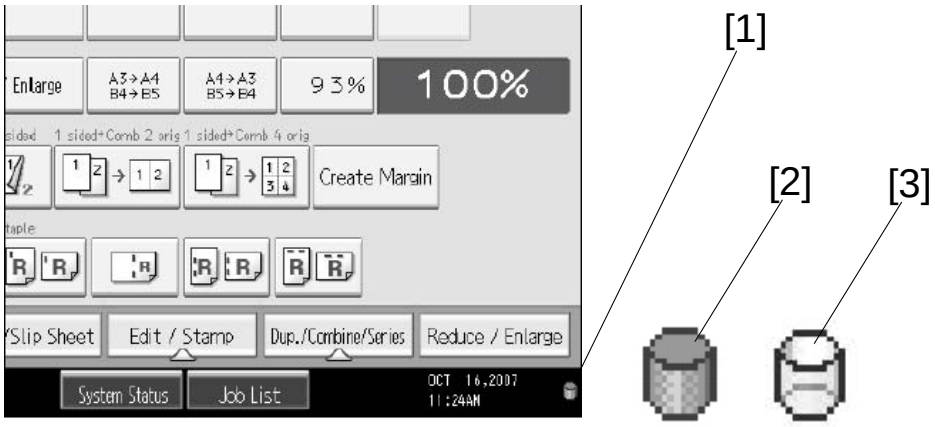
11. Do SP5990-5 to print the Self Diagnosis Report.

12. Make sure the ROM number and firmware version in area [a] of the diagnostic report are the same as those in area [b].
    - Area [a]: “ROM Number/Firmware Version” – “HDD Format Option”
    - Area [b]: “Loading Program” - “GW4a_zoffyx**”**

| Diagnostic Report: | “ROM No. / Firmware Version” [a] | “Loading Program” [b] |
|---|---|---|
| DataOverwriteSecurity Unit | HDD Format Option: **D3775902A / 1.01x** | **GW4a_zoffyx: D3775902A / 1.01x** |

## *Check Operation of the DOS Application*

1. Turn "Auto Erase Memory Setting" on:
   [User Tools]> "System Settings"> "Administrator Tools"> "Auto Erase Memory Setting"> "On"
2. Exit User Tools.
3. Check the display and make sure that the overwrite erase icon [1] is displayed.

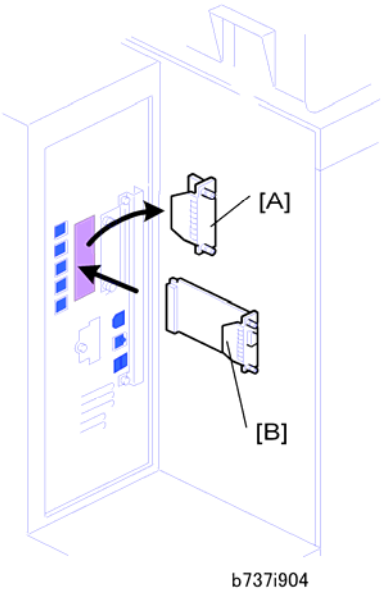



4. Check the overwrite erase icon.
   - The icon [2]: This icon is lit when there is temporary data to be overwritten, and blinks during overwriting.
   - The icon [3]: This icon is lit when there is no temporary data to be overwritten.

## 1.18.15 COPIER CONNECTION KIT B328

Check the accessories and their quantities against the table below.

| Description | Qt'y |
|---|---|
| 1. Connection PCB | 1 |
| 2. Power Repeater Cable | 1 |
| 3. Repeater Hubs | 2 |




### *Installation*

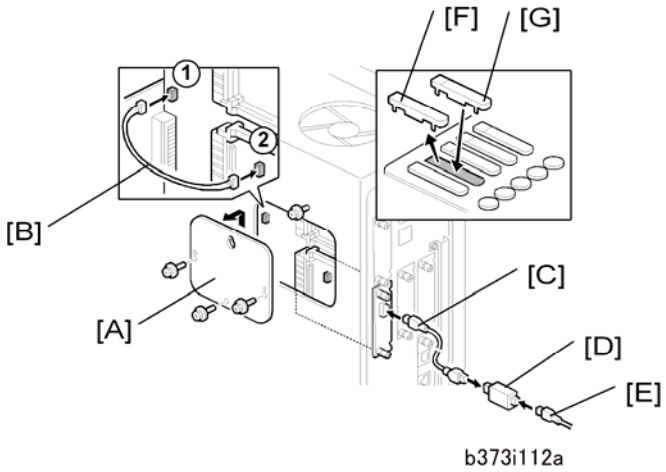
⇒1. Install the following firmware **together as a set**:

| All Machines | With Printer function | With Fax function |
|---|---|---|
| **System/Copy**<br>V1.03 D0135761 **D**<br>(or later) | **Printer**<br>V1.03 D3765902 **C**<br>(or later) | **Fax**<br>V02.00.01 D0145773 **B**<br>(or later) |
| **Scanner**<br>V01.05 D3765903<br>(or later) | **Network Support**<br>V7.05.1 D3765902 **B**<br>(or later) | **Remote Fax**<br>V02.00.00 D0145768 **B**<br>(or later) |
| **Animation**<br>V2.2 D0145772 **B**<br>(or later) | **Web Support**<br>V1.05 D0145769 **C**<br>(or later) | - |
| - | **Web Uapl**<br>V1.03 D0145770 **B**<br>(or later) | - |
| - | **Network DocBox**<br>V1.01 D0145771 **B**<br>(or later) | - |

**CAUTION**

- Turn the machine off and unplug the machine before continuing the procedure.

2. Remove the cover [A] of Slot A (☞ x 2).
3. Install the Copier Connection Kit Board B328 [B] in Slot A and fasten it (☞ x 2).
4. Remove the rear upper cover.




b373i112a

5. Remove the controller box cover [A] (☞ x 3).
6. Connect the power repeater cable [B] to:
   ① **CN594**
   ② **CN4**
7. Reattach the controller box cover and rear upper cover.
8. Repeat Steps 1 to 6 to install the connection kit on the second machine.
9. Connect the end of the interface cable [C] to the connection PCB.
10. If additional cable is required, connect the cables [E] with repeater hubs [D].
11. On the operation panel of each machine, remove the second cover [F] from the bottom ("Printer").
12. Install the appropriate key on each machine.
    Attach the "Printer/Other Function" key [G] (or its equivalent symbol for EU) if the printer/scanner option is installed.
    -or-
    Attach the "Other Function" key [G] (or its equivalent symbol for EU) if the printer/scanner option is not installed.
13. Attach the other end of the connection cable to the connection PCB installed in the other machine.

## 1.18.16 GIGABIT ETHERNET D377

### *Accessories*

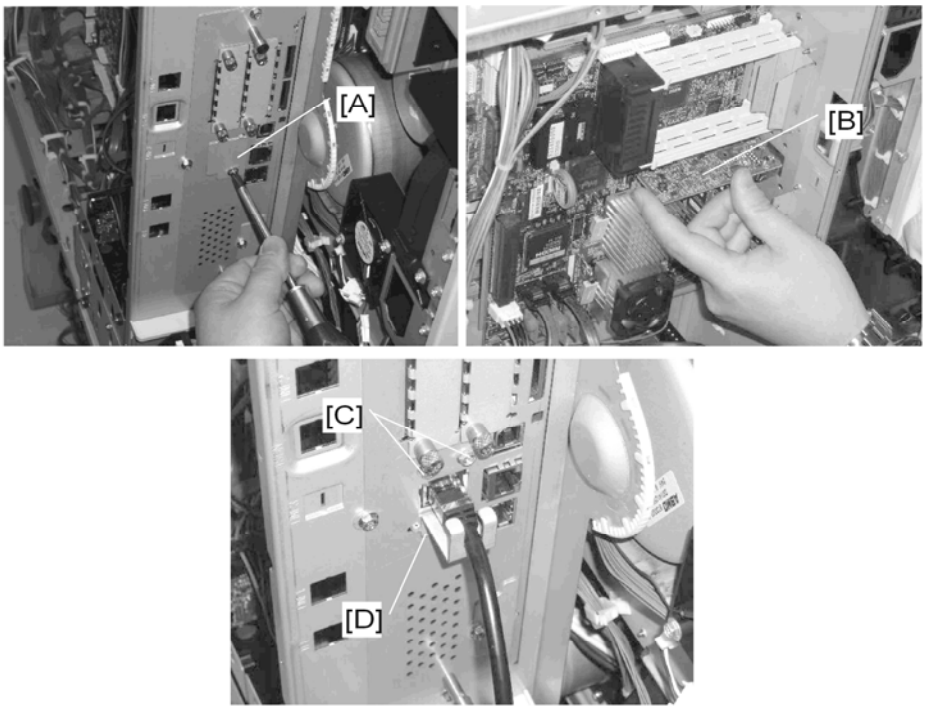
Check the accessories and their quantities against the table below.

| Description | Qt'y |
|---|---|
| 1. Gigabit Ethernet PCB | 1 |
| 2. Protector Plate | 1 |
| 3. Screws | 3 |

### *Installation*

⟹ 1. Install the following firmware **together as a set**:

| All Machines | With Printer function | With Fax function |
|---|---|---|
| **System/Copy**<br>V1.03 D0135761 **D**<br>(or later) | **Printer**<br>V1.03 D3765902 **C**<br>(or later) | **Fax**<br>V02.00.01 D0145773 **B**<br>(or later) |
| **Scanner**<br>V01.05 D3765903<br>(or later) | **Network Support**<br>V7.05.1 D3765902 **B**<br>(or later) | **Remote Fax**<br>V02.00.00 D0145768 **B**<br>(or later) |
| **Animation**<br>V2.2 D0145772 **B**<br>(or later) | **Web Support**<br>V1.05 D0145769 **C**<br>(or later) | - |
| - | **Web Uapl**<br>V1.03 D0145770 **B**<br>(or later) | - |
| - | **Network DocBox**<br>V1.01 D0145771 **B**<br>(or later) | - |




d377i200

2. Remove:
   - Rear upper cover.
   - Controller box cover
   - Cover [A] of Slot C (☞ x1)
3. Insert the edge connector of the gigabit Ethernet PCB [B] into its slot on the controller board.
4. On the other side of the faceplate, fasten the PCB (☞ x2).
5. Attach the cable.
6. With the prongs of the protector plate [D] on both sides of the attached cable, fasten the protector plate to the controller box face plate (☞ x1).

## 1.18.17 BROWSER UNIT TYPE D (D377)

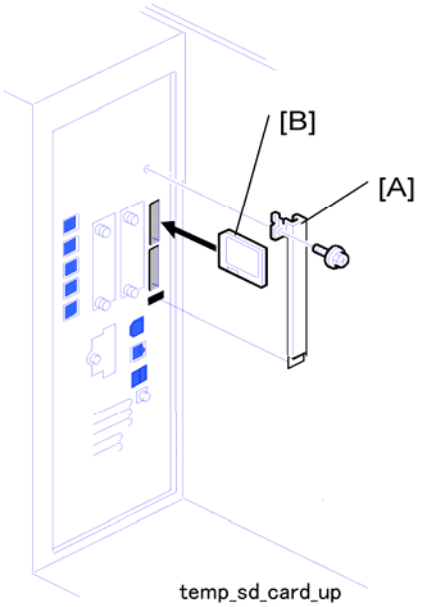
### *Accessories*

Check the accessories and their quantities against the table below.

| Description | Qt'y |
|---|---|
| 1. Browser Unit B828 SD Card | 1 |
| 2. Keytops | 2 |

### *Installation*

1. Switch the machine off.




2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A].
3. Insert the browser SD card into The upper slot [B] (upper slot).
4. Turn the machine on.
5. Push [User Tools]> [Login/Logout].
6. Login with the administrator user name and password.
7. Touch "Extended Feature Settings" twice.
8. Touch "SD Card" then touch the "Browser" line.
9. Under "Install to:" touch "Machine HDD"> "Next".
10. When you see "Ready to Install" check the information on the screen to confirm your

previous selection.

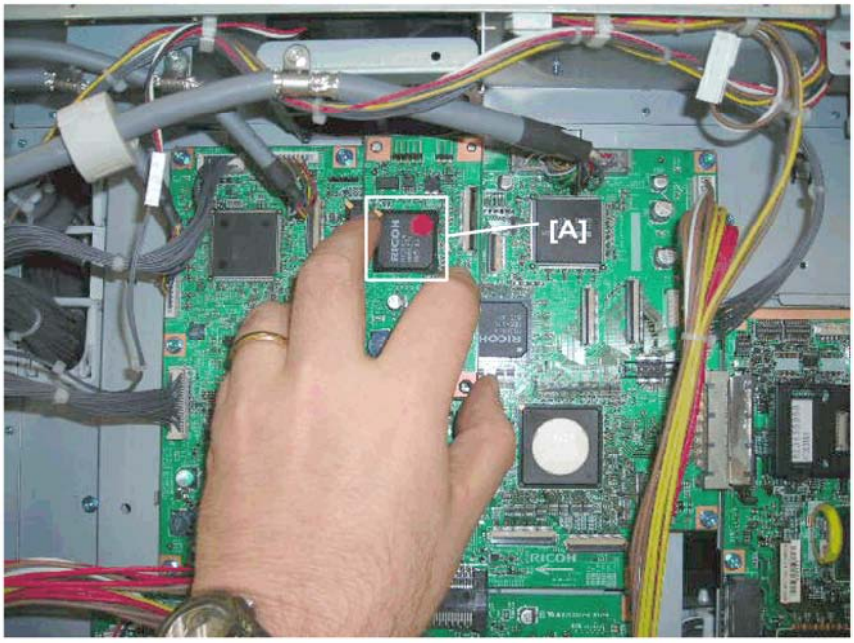
11. Touch "OK". You will see "Installing…" then "Completed".
12. Touch "Exit" twice to return to the copy screen.
13. Remove the SD card from the SD card slot.
14. On the operation panel, remove the blank keytop at the bottom and replace it with the keytop provided ("Other").

## 1.18.18 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT TYPE F (B829)

### *Accessories*

Check the accessories and their quantities against the table below.

| Description | Qt'y |
|---|---|
| 1. Copy Data Security Type F PCB | 1 |




b289i001

**CAUTION**

- Turn the machine off and disconnect its power cord from the power source.

1. Remove
   - Rear upper cover
   - Controller box cover
2. Touch a metal surface to discharge any static electricity from your hands.
3. Push the connector on the underside of the Copy Data Security PCB [A] into its slot on the IPU.
4. Carefully fasten the Copy Data Security PCB to the IPU (☞ x2).

Important

- Do not touch the surface of any other board with the tip of the screwdriver.

### *User Tool Setting*

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
2. Go into the User Tools mode, and select System Settings > Administrator Tools > Data Security for Copying > "On".
3. Exit the User Tools.
4. Check the operation.

Note

- The machine will issue an SC165 error if the machine is powered on with the ICIB-1 removed and the "Data Security for Copying" feature is set to "ON".
- When you remove this option from the machine, first set the setting to "OFF" with the user tool before removing this board. If you forget to do this, "Data Security for Copying" feature cannot appear in the user tool settings. And then SC165 will appear every time the machine is switched on, and the machine cannot be used.

5. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (☛ "Check All Connections" at the end of this section).

## 1.18.19 VM CARD TYPE E (D377)

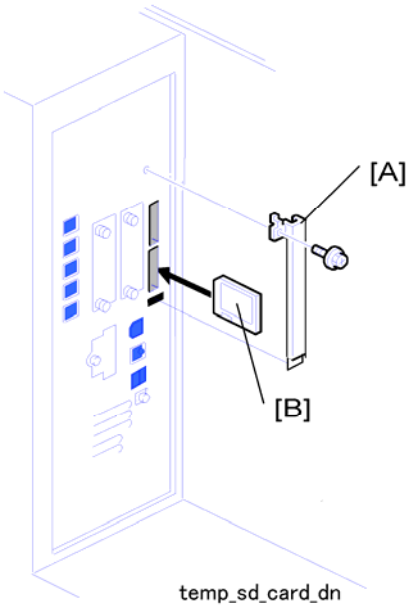
### *Accessories*

Check the accessories and their quantities against the table below.

| Description | Qt'y |
|---|---|
| 1. VM SD Card D377 | 1 |
| 2. Keytops | 2 |
| 3. Decal | 1 |

### *Installation*

1. Switch the machine off.




2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (☞ x1).
3. Insert the SD card [B] into the lower slot.
4. Reattach the SD card slot cover.
5. Switch the machine on.
6. On the operation panel, remove the bottom blank keytop and replace it with the keytop provided.
7. Attach the decal to the copier.

# PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

| REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| 7 | 03/27/2008 | Grease |
| 7 ~ 9 | 08/15/2008 | PM Tables |
| 9 | 03/27/2008 | Dev Unit Sleeve Lubrication |
| 24 ~ 24 | 03/27/2008 | Dev Unit Sleeve Lubrication Illustrations |
| 26 | 08/15/2008 | Lubricant bar replacement procedure |

# 2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

## 2.1 OVERVIEW

The amounts mentioned (K=1,000) as the PM interval indicate the number of prints or copies unless stated otherwise. These numbers are based on the PM counter.

### 2.1.1 REQUIRED MATERIALS

| Item | Part Number | |
|---|---|---|
| Optical Cloth | A0129111 | |
| Alcohol | None | |
| Exposure Glass Cleaner | A1939310 | |
| Lubricant Powder | B1329700 | |
| **Yellow Toner for B132/B200 Copier*[1]** | **NA:** | **888369 EDP Codes** |
| | **EU/AP:** | **888373 EDP Codes** |
| | **Infotec:** | **888389 EDP Codes** |

***[1]: Do not use D014/D015/D078/D079 yellow toner, because it contains developer that could damage the drum and ITB.**

Overview

Important

- Lubricant Powder (B1329700) (composed of Zinc Stearate) is specially designed for this machine (D014/D015/D078/D079).
- Always use this lubricant powder to lubricate the drum and ITB during servicing.
- Never use the yellow toner from this machine because it contains developer, and this will damage the drum and ITB.
- Never use the previous Setting Powder (54429101) in any service procedure for the D014/D015/D078/D079. The composition of this Setting Powder and the Lubricant Powder is completely different.
- If you use Setting Powder (5442910) to service this machine, you will damage the drum charge roller and cause problems with image quality.

**WARNING**

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before performing any procedure in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage the eyes.

Important

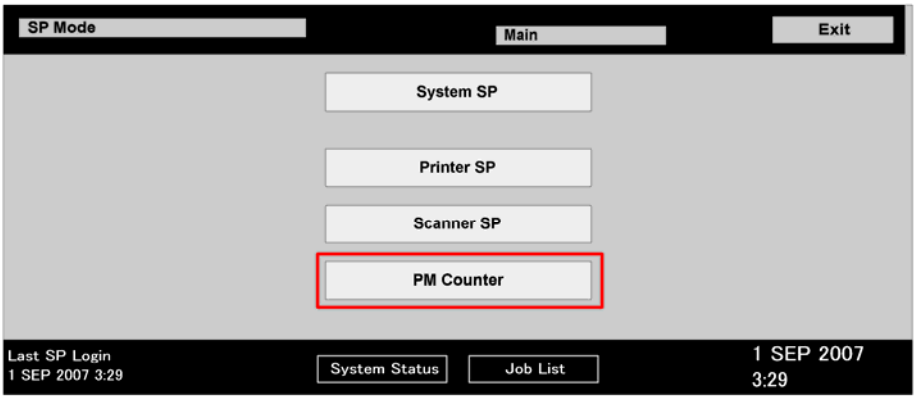
- After you do the PM, do the forced music adjustment with SP 2111 001.

# 2.2 PM COUNTER

The PM Counter main menu and submenu allows you to review the PM counts for both units and individual components.

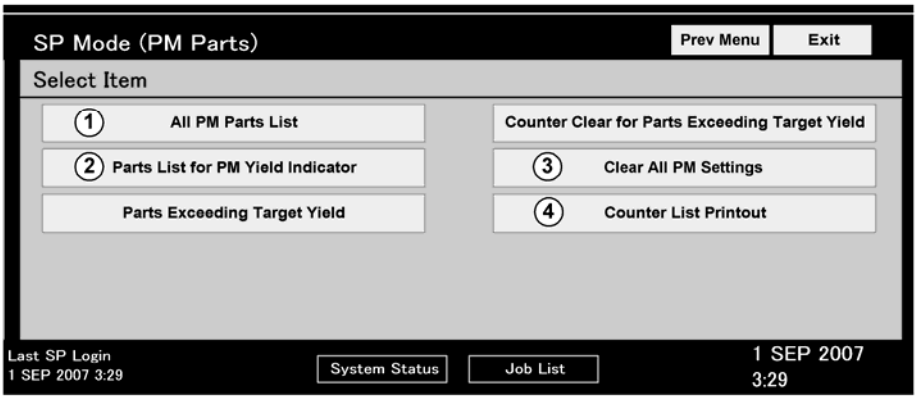
## 2.2.1 DISPLAYING THE PM COUNTER

1. Push [Clear Modes] (⊡)> "107"> [Clear/Stop] (◎).




d014p901

2. Touch [PM Counter].




d014p902

①: **All PM Parts List.** Displays all PM items (all PM items, not only PM units). Lists all PM items regardless of PM yield indicator settings.

②: **Parts list for PM yield indicator.** Displays the items that have their PM yield indicator settings set to "Yes".

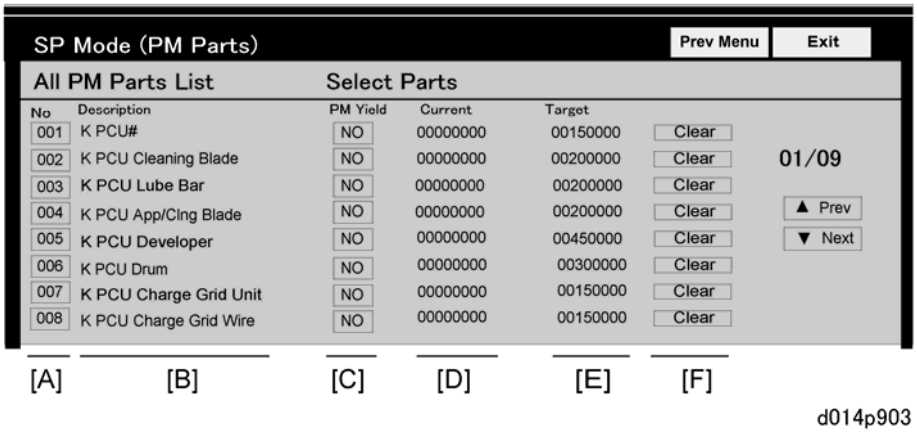
③: **Clear all PM settings.** Resets all PM counter settings to "0" at the same time. PM items can be reset one by one with the [Clear] button.

④: **Counter list print out.** Prints the PM counter on paper.

## 2.2.2 PM PARTS SCREEN DETAILS

### *All PM Parts list: Main Menu*

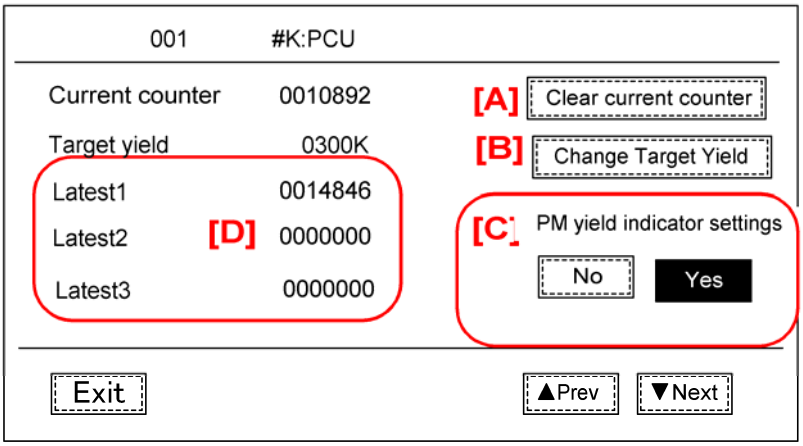
The "All PM Parts list" displays all PM units and individual items. This list shows all PM items, regardless of their "PM yield indicator settings". (☛ Number button submenu)




| | |
|---|---|
| [A] | Number buttons. Pressing a number button opens a submenu. (☛ Number button submenu) |
| [B] | Descriptions. The # mark denotes a "unit" (not individual item). |
| [C] | PM yield buttons. Function is the same as the "PM yield indicator settings" button. |
| [D] | Current PM counter value. |
| [E] | Target PM interval. This can be changed by pressing a number button [A]. |
| [F] | PM counter clear button. Function is the same as the [Clear current counter] button. |

### *Number button submenu*

Press any number button to open the submenu for a part. In the example below, the number button [001] #K:PCU was pressed.




d014p904

[A]: **Clear current counter.** Press to reset the selected PM counter (in this example 001 #K:PCU) to "0". You can also clear the settings by pressing the [Clear] button on the right side of the PM Counter Main Menu ([F] in the previous section).

[B]: **Change target yield.** Press the change the target PM yield. To change the setting:

- Press [Change target yield]
- Enter the number for the new target with the 10-key pad.
- Press [#] on the operation panel.

[C]: **PM yield indicator settings**. [Yes] is the default. Press [No] to remove the current item from the "Parts list for PM yield indicator".

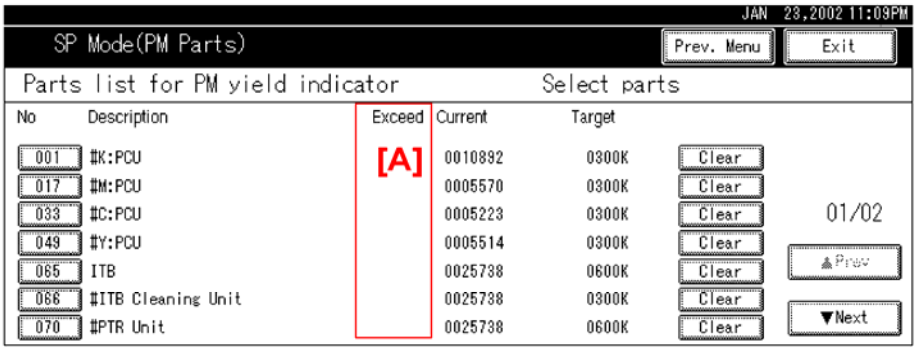
- When set to "Yes", items marked with the # mark (# = a unit) will not have their individual items
- When set to "No", items marked with the # mark (# = a unit) only the individual components will appear in the list (the units will not appear).

[D]: **PM counter history**. This is a summary of the most recent counts

- Latest 1. The latest PM count since the unit (or part) was replaced.
- Latest 2. The previous PM count since the unit (or part) was replaced.
- Latest 3. The previous but one PM count since the unit (or part) was replaced.

## *Parts list for PM yield indicator*

This list shows the PM Parts Main Menu with only items set to "Yes" displayed.




b132p905

**Note::**

- The # mark denotes a unit.
- Items without the # (065 ITB) denote individual components.
- An asterisk (⁎) will appear in the Exceed column [A] to show items that that have exceeded their target PM yields.

# 2.3 PM TABLES

## 2.3.1 MAIN MACHINE

**Symbol Key for PM Tables**

| | |
|---|---|
| I | Inspect. Clean, replace, or lubricate as needed. |
| C | Cleaning required. |
| R | Replacement required. |
| L | Lubrication required:<br>▪ Silicone Grease 501 (52039502)<br>▪ Grease Barrierta – S552R (A2579300)<br>▪ Grease – KS660 – SHIN-ETSU<br>▪ Grease – KD660B (D0149800)<br>▪ Heat Resisting Grease MT-78<br>▪ Launa Oil 40<br>⇒ ▪ G104 Yellow Toner (D0159500)<br>▪ Zinc Stearate (D0159501) |

### *Main Machine PM Parts*

**OPTICS**

| | 150K | 200K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Reflector | | | C | | | Optical cloth |
| 1st Mirror | | | C | | | Optical cloth |
| 2nd Mirror | | | C | | | Optical cloth |
| 3rd Mirror | | | C | | | Optical cloth |
| Scanner Rails | | | C | | | Alcohol then dry cloth |
| Exposure Glass | | | C | | | Exposure glass cleaner |
| Toner Shield Glass | | | C | | | Optical cloth |

| | 150K | 200K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| APS Sensor | | | C | | | Dry cloth |
| ARDF Exposure Glass | | | C | | | Exposure glass cleaner |
| Dust Filters | | | C | | | Blower brush |

**PCU**

| | 150K | 200K | 300K | 400K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| OPC Drums | | | | | R | | KYMC:450K |
| Charge Roller Units*[1] | R | | | | | | Replace YMC together |
| Charge Wire Unit*[1] | | R | | | | | K only |
| Drum Cleaning Blade | R | R | | | | | YMC:150K<br>K:200K |
| Drum Lubricant Blade | R | R | | | | | YMC:150K<br>K:200K |
| Drum Lubricant Bar (x2)*[2] | R | R | | | | | |
| ⇒ Lubricant Brush | | | R<br>(Y,C,M) | R<br>(K) | | | After replacement, apply the G104 Yellow Toner and Zinc Stearate. (See Replacement Procedure on page 2—27.) |
| PCU Joint | | | R | R | | | YMC:300K<br>K:400K |
| Drum Lubricant Brush Gear | | | R | R | | | |
| Idle Gear 1 | | | R | R | | | |
| Idle Gear 2 | | | R | R | | | |
| Used Toner Collection Gear | | | R | R | | | |

| | 150K | 200K | 300K | 400K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Drum Cleaning Brush Gear | | | R | R | | | |
| Development Unit | L | | | | | | Lube the Dev Sleeve Shaft with Grease – KS660B |
| Developer K | | | | | R | | |
| Developer Y, M, C | | | | | R | | |
| Quenching LED | C | | C | | | C | |

*[1]: The K PCU uses a charge corona system. The YMC PCUs use a charge roller system.

*[2] The lubricant bar is the same for both K and YMC PCUs when replaced as an individual part. However, the drum lubricant bar assembly which contains the springs is not the same. The K assembly is clearly marked "K" to prevent installation of the wrong type in a PCU.

**TRANSFER UNITS**

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **ITB Unit** | | | | | |
| ITB (Image Transfer Belt) | | | | R | |
| ITB Unit Rollers | | I | | C | Wipe with dry cloth |
| ITB Encoder Sensor | | C | | | Wipe with damp cloth (alcohol) |
| ID and MUSIC Sensors | | C | | | |
| ITB Cleaning Blade | | R | | | These items are always replaced as a set. |
| ITB Lubricant Bar | | R | | | |
| ITB Lubricant Blade | | R | | | |
| ITB Lubricant Brush Roller | | R | | | |

PM Tables

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **PTR Unit** | | | | | |
| PTR (Paper Transfer Roller) | | | | R | |
| PTR Cleaning Blade | | R | | | |
| PTR Lubrication Bar | | R | | | |
| Paper Transfer Discharge Plate | | R | | | |

**FUSING UNIT**

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Fusing Belt | | | | R | |
| Hot Roller | | R, L*[1] | | | |
| Pressure Roller | | | | R, L*[1] | |
| Pressure Roller Cleaning Roller | | R | | | |
| Oil Supply Roller | | R | | | |
| Heating Roller | | | | C, L*[1] | |
| Heating Roller Shaft Bearings | | | | C, L*[1] | |
| Hot Roller Shaft Bearings | | | | C, L*[1] | |
| Pressure Roller Shaft Bearings | | | | R, L*[1] | ServiceLife:600K |
| Pressure Roller Stripper Pawls | | I,C | | | Dry cloth |
| Fusing Belt Stripper Plate | | I,C | | | |
| Thermistors | | I, C | | | Dry cloth |
| Upper Entrance Guide Plate | I | C | | | Damp cloth (alcohol) |
| Lower Entrance Guide Plate | I | C | | | |

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Gears | L*[1] | | | | |

*[1]: The lubrication points for the fusing unit are described in the "Lubrication Points" section.



**PAPER FEED: COPIER**

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Registration Rollers | | C | | | Alcohol, dry cloth |
| Paper Dust Removal Unit | | C | | | Dry cloth |
| Registration Sensor | | C | | | Blower brush |
| Vertical Transport Roller Sensors | | C | | | Blower brush |
| LCT Relay Sensor | | C | | | Blower brush |
| Bypass Feed Sensor | | C | | | Blower brush |
| Bypass Paper End Sensor | | C | | | Blower brush |

**PAPER FEED: Trays**

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Feed Guide Plate | | C | | | Dry cloth |
| Grip Rollers (Drive & Idle) | | C | | | Alcohol, dry cloth |
| Pick-up Rollers (Tray 1 to Tray 3) | | | | | Service Life: 1000K Replace if jams, double-feeds occur with increasing frequency. |
| Paper Feed Rollers (Tray 1 to Tray 3) | | | | | |

PM Tables

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Separation Rollers (Tray 1 to Tray 3) | | | | | |
| Grip Roller (Drive Roller) | | C | | | Dry cloth |
| Paper Feed Sensor | | C | | | Blower brush |
| Vertical Feed Sensors | | C | | | Blower brush |
| Paper-End Sensor | | C | | | Blower brush |

**DUPLEX UNIT**

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Duplex Entrance Sensor | | C | | | Blower brush |
| Reverse Rollers (Drive & Idle) | | C | | | Alcohol, dry cloth |
| Inverter Exit Roller | | C | | | Dry cloth |
| Transport Rollers (x4) | | C | | | Dry cloth |
| Duplex Entrance Anti-Static Brush | | C | | | Dry cloth |
| Inverter Junction Gate | | C | | | Dry cloth |
| Inverter Entrance Roller | | C | | | Dry cloth |

**PAPER EXIT**

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Heat Dissipation Roller | | C | | | Alcohol, dry cloth |
| Exit Anti-Static Brush | | C | | | Inspect, replace if deformed. |
| Paper Exit Rollers (Upper, Lower) | | C | | | Alcohol, dry cloth |
| Paper Exit Sensor | | C | | | Blower brush |
| Transport Rollers | | C | | | Blower brush |

**OTHER**

| | 150K | 300K | 450K | 600K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Upper Dust Filter | | R | | | |
| Lower Dust Filters | I,C | | R | | |
| Ozone Filters | | | | | Service Life: 1200K |
| Development Filters | | | R | | |
| Used toner bottle | I,R | I,R | I,R | I,R | Empty and clean every inspection |

## *ARDF PM Parts*

The "K" number in the table below is the number of originals that have been fed.

| | PM Visit | 120K | EM | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| External Covers | I, C | | | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Feed Belt | C | R | R | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Pick-up Roller | C | R | R | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Separation Roller | C | R | R | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Original Length Sensors | C | | C | Blower brush |
| Skew Correction Sensor | C | | C | Blower brush |
| Interval Sensor | C | | C | Blower brush |
| Registration Sensor | C | | C | Blower brush |
| Paper Exit Sensor | C | | C | Blower brush |
| Lower Inverter Sensor | C | | C | Blower brush |
| Separation Sensor | C | | C | Blower brush |
| Upper Inverter Sensor | C | | C | Blower brush |
| White Cover | C | | C | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Transport Belt | C | R | C | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Feed Drive Gears | L | | | G501 Grease |
| Grip Roller | | | C | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Transport Rollers | | | C | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Scanner Rollers (Entrance/Exit) | | | C | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Exit Rollers | | | C | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |

| | PM Visit | 120K | EM | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Inverter Rollers (Lower, Exit, Upper) | | | C | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Idle Rollers | | | C | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |



## 2.3.2 LCT B473

| | 1000K | 2000K | 3000K | Expected | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Paper feed roller | R | R | R | | |
| Pick-up roller | R | R | R | | |
| Separation roller | R | R | R | | |
| Transport guide plate | Inspect and clean every 350K. | | | | |
| Grip roller | Inspect and clean every 350K. | | | | |

## 2.3.3 LCT D350

| | 500K | 1000K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|
| Paper feed roller x3 | | R | |
| Pick-up rollers x3 | | R | |
| Separation rollers x3 | | R | |
| Transport guide plate | I | | |
| Grip rollers (drive, idle rollers) | I | | |

## 2.3.4 2000/3000-SHEET FINISHERS D373/D374

| | 300K | 2400K | 3000K | 4000K | EM | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Covers | | | | | I,C | Alcohol or water, dry cloth |
| Drive Rollers | | | | | C | Damp cloth, dry cloth |
| Idle Rollers | | | | | C | Damp cloth, dry cloth |
| Anti-Static Brush | | | | | C | Dry cloth |
| Sensors | | | | | C | Blower brush |
| Corner Stapler | | | | R | | Print an SMC report with SP5990.<br>Replace the unit if the staple count is 500K. |
| Booklet Stapler | | | | R | | Print an SMC report with SP5990.<br>Replace the unit if the staple count is 200K. |

## 2.3.5 PUNCH B702

| | 300K | 2400K | 3000K | 4000K | EM | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Punch Waste Hopper | I | I | I | I | I | Remove and empty |
| Punch Unit | | | | | | Replace after 1000k punches. |

## 2.3.6 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B704

The PM interval is for the number of sheets that have been fed.

| | 60K | 120K | 180K | EM | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Feed Belt | R | R | R | | Replace as a set. |
| Pick-up Roller | R | R | R | | Replace as a set. |
| Separation Roller | R | R | R | | Replace as a set. |
| Driver Rollers | C | C | C | | Damp clean cloth. |
| Idle Rollers | C | C | C | | Damp clean cloth. |
| Discharge Brush | C | C | C | | Damp clean cloth. |
| Sensors | C | C | C | | Blower brush. |

## 2.3.7 Z-FOLDING UNIT B660

| | As Needed | Note |
|---|---|---|
| Drive Rollers | C | Dry cloth. |
| Idle Rollers | C | Dry cloth. |
| Anti-Static Brush | C | Dry cloth. |
| Bushings | L | Silicone Oil |
| Sensors | C | Dry cloth. |

## 2.3.8 3000-SHEET FINISHER B830

| | 350K | 700K | 1050K | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **FINISHER** | | | | |
| Driver rollers | I | I | I | Alcohol |
| Idle rollers | I | I | I | Alcohol |
| Discharge brush | I | I | I | Alcohol |
| Shaft Bearings | I | I | I | Lubricate with silicone oil if noisy. |
| Sensors | I | I | I | Blower brush. |
| Jogger fences | I | I | I | Make sure that the screws are tight. |
| Staple waste hopper | C | C | C | Empty staple waste. |

## 2.3.9 PUNCH B831

| | 300K | 450K | 600K | EM | Note |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Punch Waste Hopper | I | I | I | | Remove and empty |

## 2.3.10 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B835

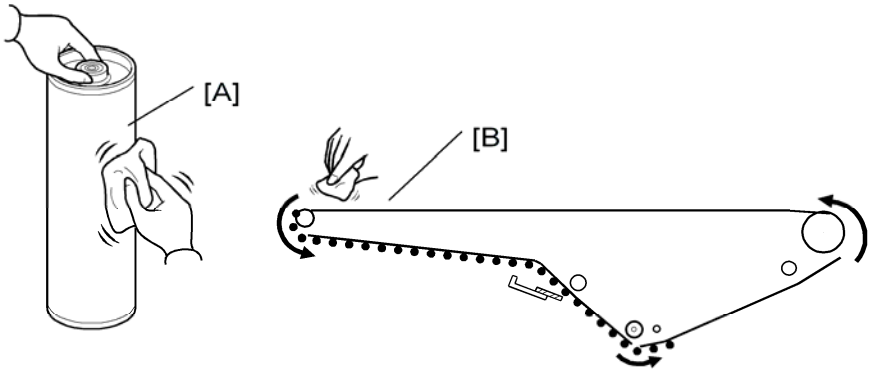
The PM interval is for the number of sheets that have been fed.

| | 60 K | As Needed | Note |
|---|---|---|---|
| Drive rollers | | C | Dry cloth |
| Idle rollers | | C | Dry cloth |
| Feed belt | R | | |
| Separation roller | R | | |
| Pick-up roller | R | | |
| Sensors | | C | Blower brush. |
| Drive gears | | I | Lubricate with a very small amount of G501. |

# 2.4 LUBRICATION POINTS

## 2.4.1 COPIER

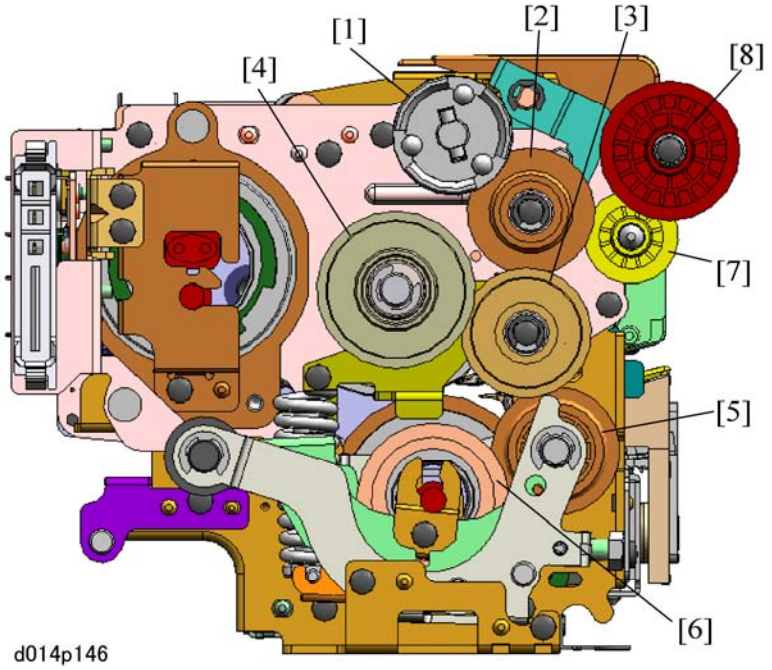
### *OPC, ITB Replacement*




Be sure to apply Lubricant Powder B1329700 when re-installing the drum [A] or ITB [B].

For more, please refer to "Replacement and Adjustment".

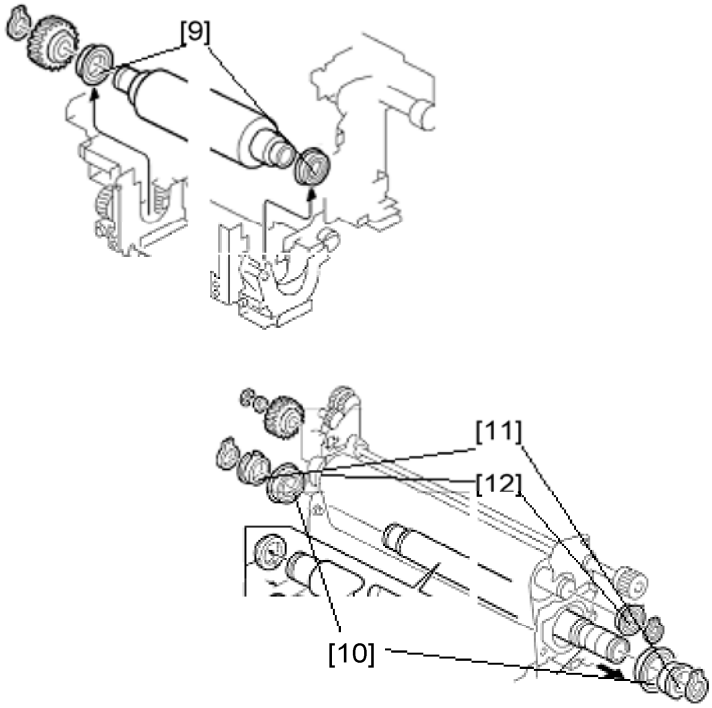
## *Fusing Unit*




| | Part Name | Lubricant | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|
| [1] | Drive Gear | Barrierta S552R | Brush all gear teeth |
| [2] | Idle Gear | Barrierta S552R | Brush all gear teeth |
| [3] | Hot roller Idle Gear | Barrierta S552R | Brush all gear teeth |
| [4] | Hot roller Drive Gear | Barrierta S552R | Brush all gear teeth |
| [5] | Pressure roller Idle Gear | Barrierta S552R | Brush all gear teeth |
| [6] | Pressure roller Drive Gear | Barrierta S552R | Brush all gear teeth |
| [7] | Exit Idle Gear | Barrierta S552R | Brush all gear teeth |
| [8] | Exit Drive Gear | Barrierta S552R | Brush all gear teeth |

d014p146a

Lubricate gears [2] and [5] at every 150K. Lubrication applied to these gears will lubricate the other gears during fusing unit operation.



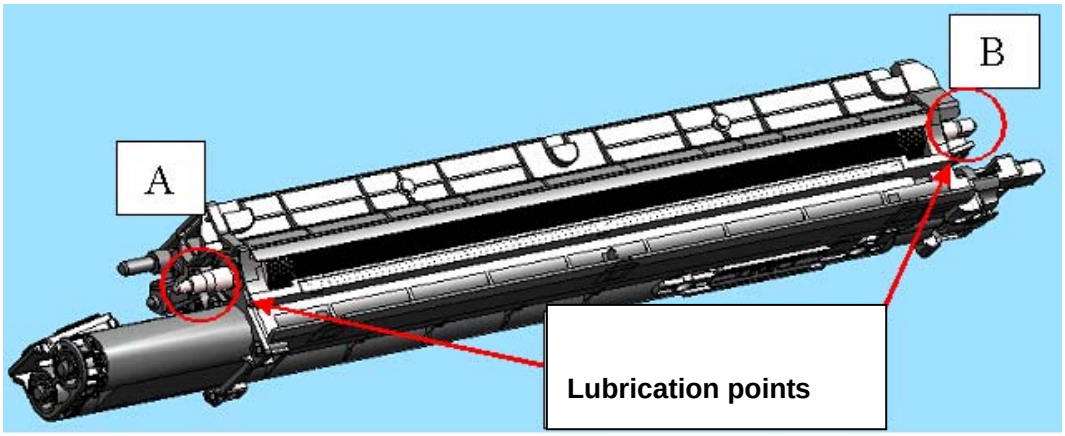

d014p145

| | Part Name | Lubricant | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|
| [9] | Bearing Race φ20 × φ32 × 7 | Barrierta S552R | Brush both ends |
| [10] | Bearing Race φ35 × φ47 × 7 | Barrierta S552R | Brush both ends |
| [11] | Bushing Race | Barrierta S552R | Brush both ends |
| [12] | Bearing Race φ20 × φ32 × 7 | Barrierta S552R | Brush both ends |

d014p145a

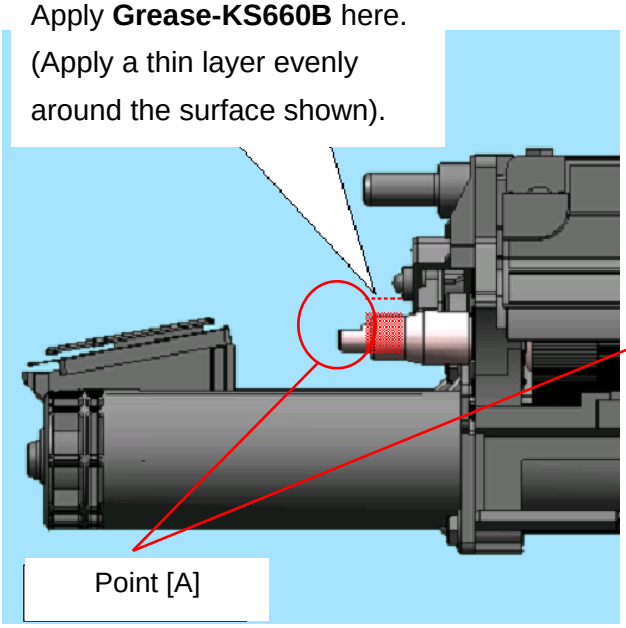
Lubricate all bearings after replacement of the hot roller, pressure roller, and/or heating roller.

## ⇒*Development Unit*




**Enlarged view of lubrication point [A]**

Apply **Grease-KS660B** here.
(Apply a thin layer evenly
around the surface shown).



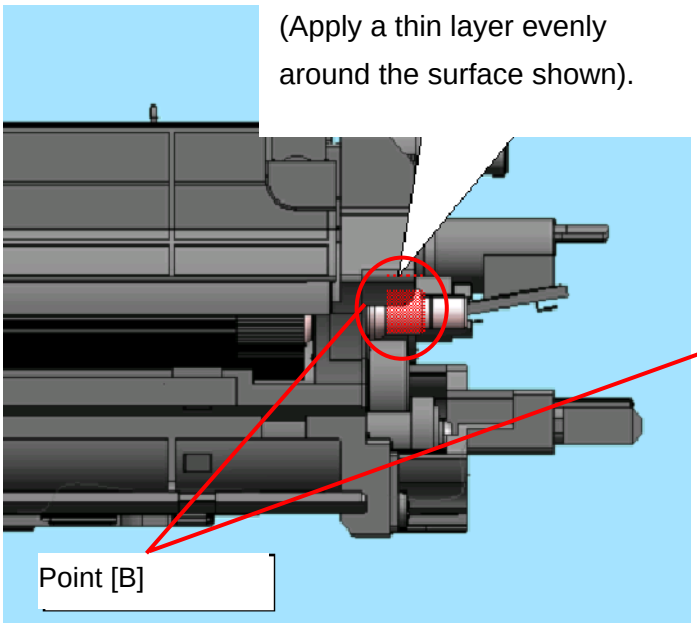
**⚠CAUTION**

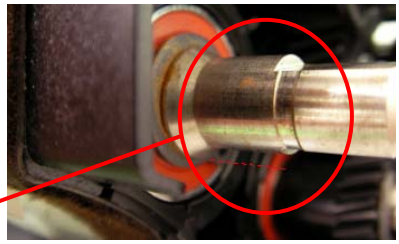
Conductive Grease-KS660B is only for use on the D014/D015.

**DO NOT** use on B132/B181/B200 series machines.

**Enlarged view of lubrication point [B]**

Apply **Grease-KS660B** here.
(Apply a thin layer evenly around the surface shown).



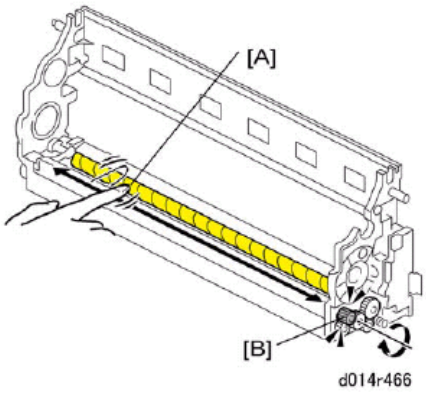



## ⟹ *Lubricant Bar Replacement Procedure*

1. Place a sheet of clean paper on the flat surface.
2. Pour a small amount of G104 Yellow Toner (D0159500) from its bottle onto the paper.
3. Pour a small amount of Zinc Stearate (D0159501) from its bottle onto the paper.
4. Mix G104 Yellow Toner and Zinc Stearate together evenly.

**NOTE:**

Do not use the D014/D015/D078/D079 yellow toner instead of G104 yellow toner, because it contains developer that could damage the drum and ITB.




While rotating the gear [B] in the direction of the arrow shown, use your finger to apply **the Mixed Powder of G104 Yellow Toner and Zinc Stearate** across the surface of the PCU lubricant brush roller [A].

**⚠ IMPORTANT:**

1. Use a brush to apply the powder if one is available.
2. Only use this mixed powder for the **PCU Lubricant Brush Roller** of the **D014/D015/D078/D079** copier. Never apply this powder to another part or another model.

# REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

| SECTION 3 REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| 124 ~ 125 | 01/26/2009 | NVRAM |
| 124 ~ 125 | 04/13/2009 | NVRAM |
| 124 | 08/27/2009 | NVRAM |
| 139 | 01/26/2009 | Firmware Update Procedure |
| 139 | 04/13/2009 | Firmware Update Procedure |

# 3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

## 3.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS

Important

- Never switch off either power switch while any of the electrical components are operating. Doing so might cause damage to units such as the transfer belt, drum, and development unit when they are pulled out of or put back into the copier.



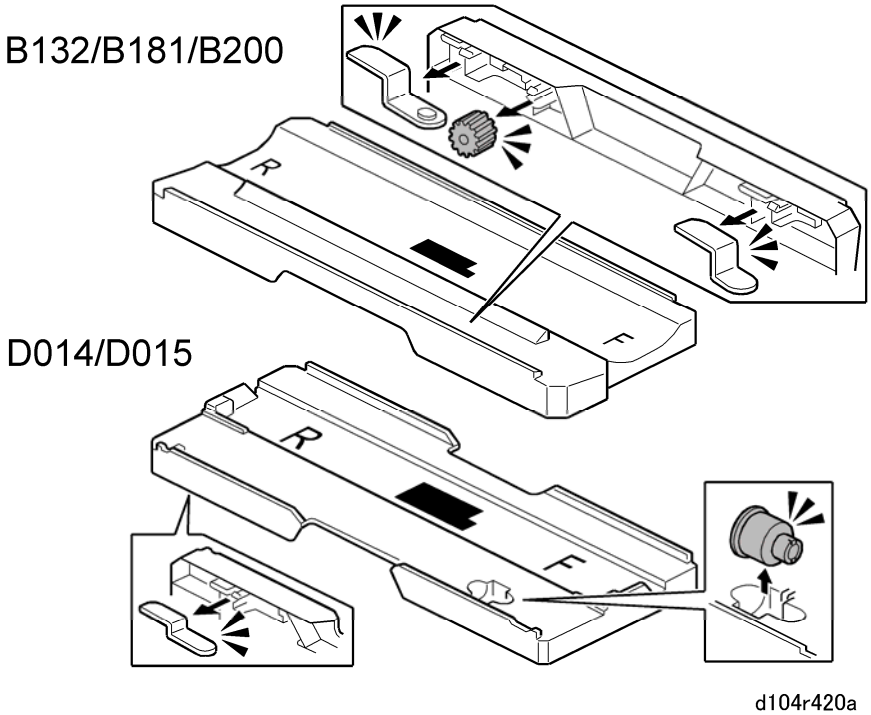
### 3.1.1 DRUM

An organic photoconductor (OPC) drums are more sensitive to light and ammonia gas than a selenium drum. Follow the cautions below when handling an OPC drum.

1. When a PCU unit is removed from the machine, always place it on the PCU stand provided with the machine.
2. Never expose a drum to direct sunlight.
3. Never expose a drum to direct light of more than 1,000 Lux for more than a minute.
4. Never touch a drum surface with bare hands. If the drum surface is touched with a finger or becomes dirty, wipe it with a dry cloth or clean it with wet cotton. Wipe with a dry cloth after cleaning with wet cotton.
5. Never use alcohol to clean the drum (alcohol dissolves the drum surface).
6. Store drums in a cool, dry place away from heat.
7. Take care not to scratch the drum as the drum layer is thin and is easily damaged.
8. Never expose a drum to corrosive gases such as ammonia gas.
9. Dispose of used drums in accordance with local regulations.

## 3.1.2 PCU

1. The PCU stand is stored in a rack attached to the bottom of the machine with strong magnets.
2. Before pulling a PCU unit out of the machine, spread some clean paper to catch spilt toner, remove the PCU stand from the bottom of the machine, clean it with a clean cloth, and then set the PCU stand on the paper to hold the PCU as soon as it is removed from the machine.
3. To prevent drum scratches, always set the PCU on the stand and leave it there as long as it is out of the machine.
4. Remove only one PCU at a time for servicing. Only one PCU stand is provided with the machine.




d104r420a

- The D014/D015/D078/D079 PCU stand is not the same as the PCU stand of the B132/B200. As shown above, the B132/B200 PCU stand holds two jigs and one gear. The D014/D015/D078/D079 PCU stand holds only one jig and a coupler. Also, the shapes of these PCU stands are not the same.

Important

- **Never use a B132/B200 PCU stand to service a D014/D015/D078/D079 PCU. The B132/B200 PCU stand could damage the exposed drum on the bottom of a D014/D015/D078/D079 PCU.**

1. The Y, M, and C charge rollers should always be replaced together as a set.

## 3.1.3 TRANSFER BELT UNIT

1. Never touch the transfer belt surface with bare hands.
2. Take care not to scratch the transfer belt, as the surface is easily damaged.
3. Before installing a new transfer belt, clean all the rollers and the inner part of the transfer belt with a dry cloth to prevent the belt from slipping.



## 3.1.4 SCANNER UNIT

1. When installing a new exposure glass, make sure that the white paint mark is at the rear left corner.
2. Clean the exposure glass with alcohol or glass cleaner to reduce the amount of static electricity on the glass surface.
3. Use a cotton pad with water or a blower brush to clean the mirrors and lenses.
4. Never bend or crease the exposure lamp cables.
5. Never disassemble the lens unit. Doing so will throw the lens and the copy image out of focus.
6. Never adjust any CCD positioning screw. Doing so will throw the CCD out of position.

## 3.1.5 LASER UNIT

1. Never loosen the screws that secure the LD drive board to the laser diode casing. Doing so would throw the LD unit out of adjustment.
2. Never adjust the variable resistors on the LD unit, as they are adjusted in the factory.
3. Never open the optical housing unit. The polygon mirror and lenses are sensitive to dust.
4. Never touch the glass surface of the polygon mirror motor unit with bare hands.

## 3.1.6 DEVELOPMENT

1. Avoid nicking or scratching the development roller.
2. Place a development unit on a sheet of paper after removing it from a PCU.
3. Always clean the drive gears after removing used developer.
4. Always dispose of used developer in accordance with local regulations.
5. Never load types of developer and toner into the development unit other than specified for this model. Doing so will cause poor copy quality and toner scattering.
6. Immediately after installing new developer or toner during the machine installation procedure, do the SPs as described in the Installation procedure.
7. Immediately after replacing the developer, do the SPs as described in the 'SP Codes after Replacement' section of PCU replacement.
8. Never do **SP3801** or **SP3811** with used developer.
9. When using a vacuum cleaner to clean the development unit casing, always ground the casing with your fingers to avoid damaging the toner density sensor with static electricity.
10. The TD sensor must be initialized:
    - At installation, exactly as described in the installation procedure
    - After replacing developer. (Initialize the TD sensor only for the PCU where the developer was replaced.)

    Important

    - Never initialize the TD sensor more than once. Initializing the TD sensor more than once can cause toner scatter inside the machine.

## 3.1.7 CLEANING

1. When servicing cleaning components, avoid nicking the edges of the cleaning blades.
2. Never handle a cleaning blade with bare hands.
3. Before disassembling a cleaning section, place a sheet of paper under it to catch any toner falling.

## 3.1.8 FUSING UNIT

1. Never handle fusing lamps and rollers with bare hands.
2. Make sure that the fusing lamps are positioned correctly and do not touch the inner surface of the rollers.



## 3.1.9 PAPER FEED

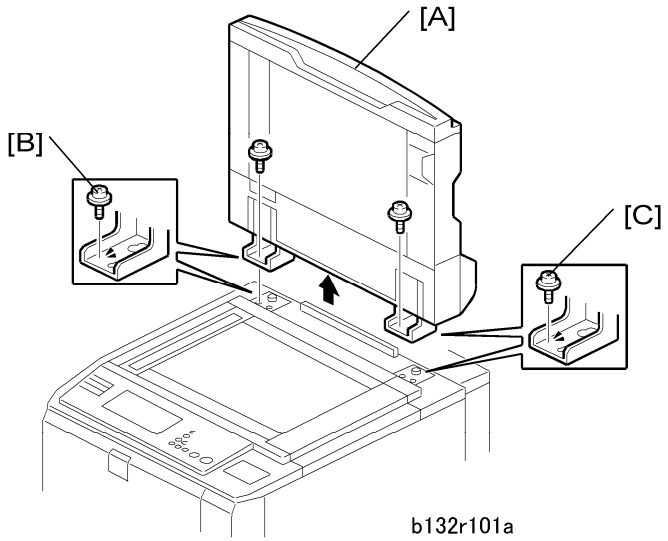
1. Do not touch the surfaces of the pick-up, feed, and separation rollers.
2. To avoid paper misfeeds, the side fences and end fence of the paper trays must be positioned correctly to align with the actual paper size.

## 3.1.10 USED TONER

1. Check the amount of used toner at every service visit.
2. Always dispose of used toner in accordance with local regulations.
3. Never throw toner into an open flame.

# 3.2 COMMON PROCEDURES

## 3.2.1 ARDF

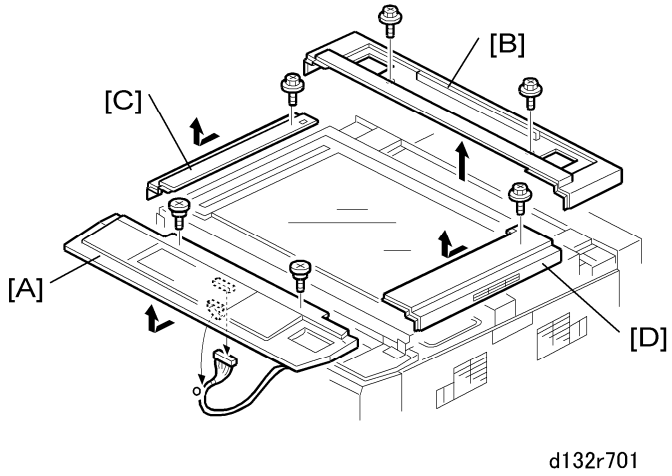



**CAUTION**

- The ARDF is very heavy.

1. Raise the ARDF [A] to the vertical position.
2. At the rear left corner of the machine, disconnect the ARDF cable.
3. Remove the left screw [B] and right screw [C].
4. Slide the ARDF back until the heads of the screws are in the large end of the keyholes, then lift the ARDF off the machine.

## 3.2.2 OPERATION PANEL, TOP COVERS




1. Remove the ARDF (x1, x2).
2. Open the front door.
3. Remove:

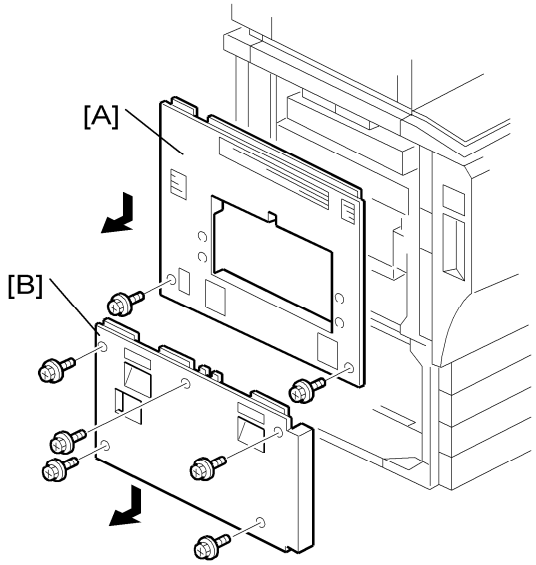
   [A]: Operation panel (x1, x2)

   [B]: Top rear cover (x2)

   [C]: Left top cover (x1)

   [D]: Right top cover (x1)

## 3.2.3 LEFT COVERS




b132r702

1. If a finisher is connected:
   - Disconnect the finisher.
   - Remove the front and back finisher connection brackets.
2. Remove:

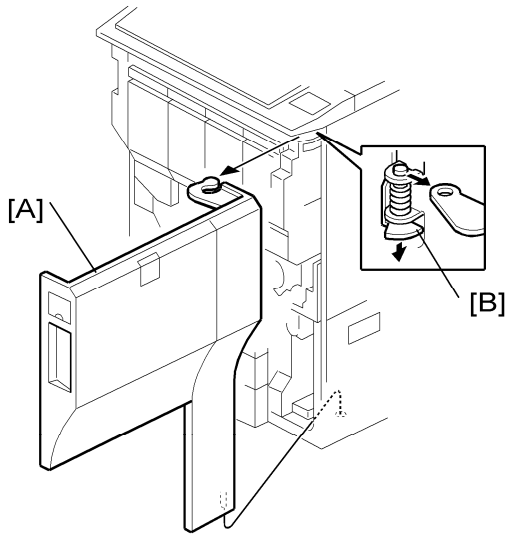
   [A]: Left upper cover (☞ x2)

   [B]: Left lower cover (☞ x5)

**Reinstallation**

- Make sure all cover tabs are inserted correctly before you fasten the screws.

## 3.2.4 FRONT DOOR

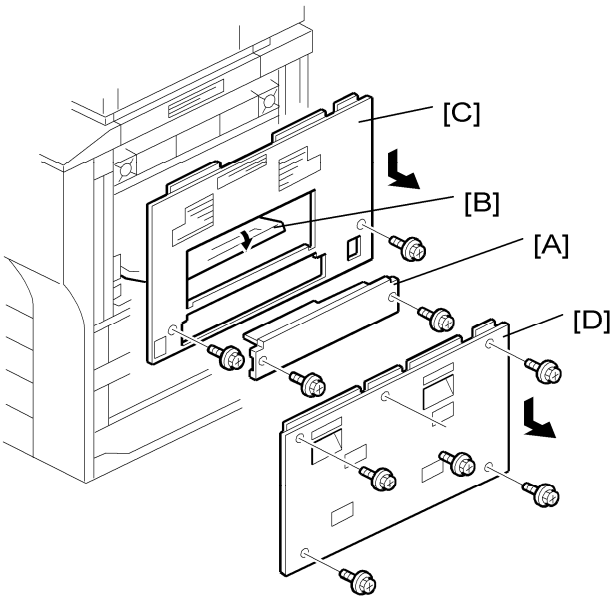



b132r703

1. Grip the front door [A] with one hand.
2. Press down the hinge bracket [B].
3. Lift the front door slightly to remove it.

- If you must replace the front door, make sure that you put the SD cards from the storage location in the old front door into the storage location in the new front door.

## 3.2.5 RIGHT COVERS




b132r704

1. Disconnect and separate the LCT if it is installed.
2. Remove:

   [A]: Knockout (🔩 x2).

   This has been removed already if the LCT has been installed.

   [B]: Open the bypass tray.

   [C]: Right upper cover (🔩 x2).

   Pull the bottom of the cover down and toward you as you remove it.

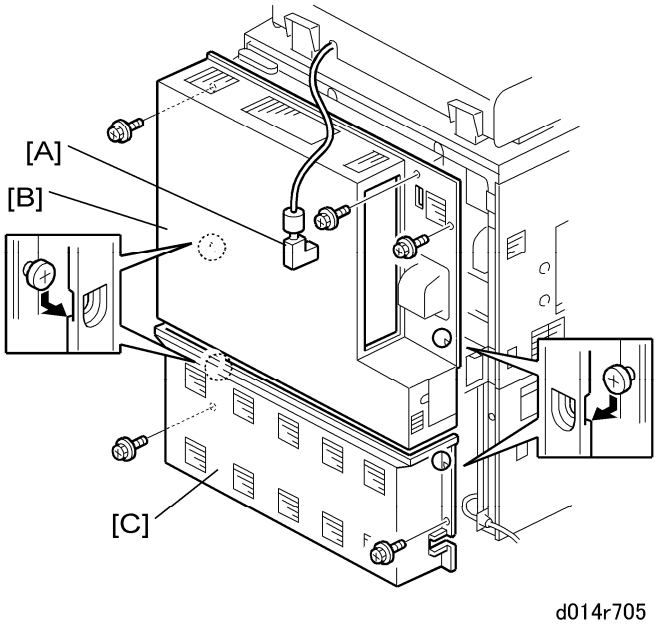
   [D]: Right lower cover (🔩 x5).

   Pull the bottom of the cover down and toward you as you remove it.

**Reinstallation**

- Make sure all the cover tabs are inserted correctly before you fasten the screws.

## 3.2.6 REAR COVERS




1. Remove:

   [A]: ARDF connector (☞ x1)

   [B]: Rear upper cover (☞ x3)

   [C]: Rear lower cover (☞ x2)

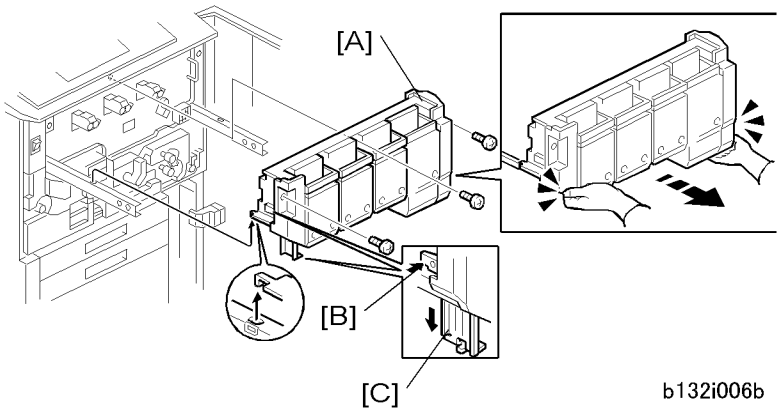
   - Remove the bottom screws
   - Do not remove the shoulder screws.

## 3.2.7 TONER HOPPER, FACEPLATE, PCU

### *Removing Hopper, Faceplate, PCU*

Important

- To avoid damaging the toner end sensor, make sure that the main power switch is turned off and that the power cord is disconnected from the power source before you remove the hopper.




**To remove the hopper:**

1. Prepare an open space on the floor for the hopper.
2. Remove the screws of the toner hopper [A] (x3).
3. Place your hands under the left and right corners of the toner hopper and slowly pull it out on its rails until it stops.

   Important

   - The hopper can easily slip off its rails!
4. Press the release [B] to drop the support leg [C].
5. Confirm that the support leg is down and locked.

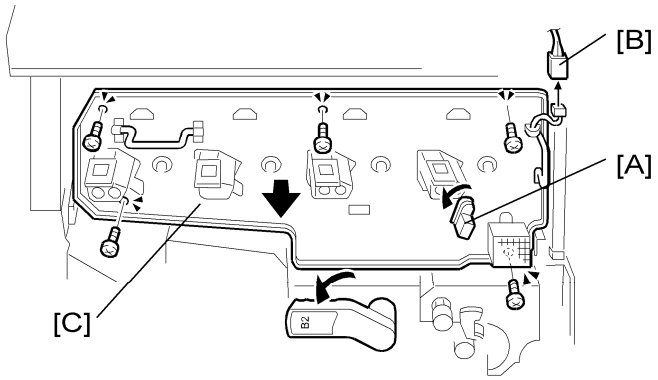
   Important

   - Always make sure that the support leg is down and locked before you remove the hopper.
6. Lift the toner hopper off its rails and set it on the floor.

   CAUTION

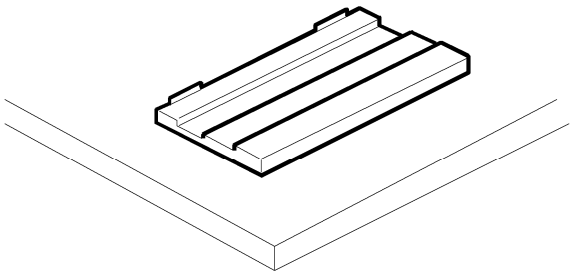
   - The hopper is heavy, so lift it carefully. Make sure the hopper unit tabs have disengaged completely from the rails before you try to set the unit on the floor.
7. Push the hopper rails into the machine.

**To remove the faceplate**




b132r201

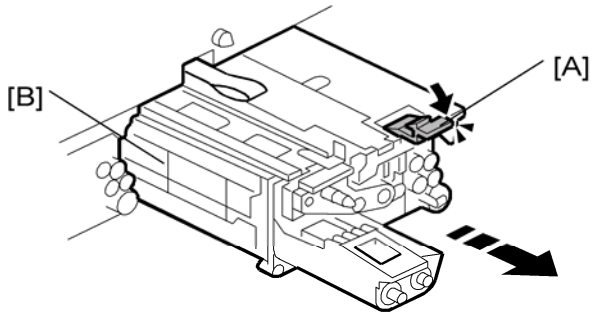
1. Rotate the transfer belt release lever [A] counter-clockwise until it stops
2. Disconnect the fan connector [B].
3. Remove the faceplate [C] (🔩 x5).
4. Remove the PCU stand from its storage rack under the machine.



b132i902

5. Place the PCU stand on a flat surface.
6. Wipe the surface of the stand with a clean cloth to remove dust.

**To remove a PCU**



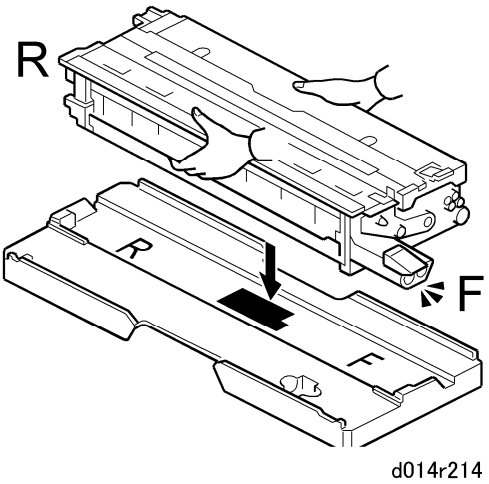

b132r202a

1. Confirm that the machine is switched off and disconnected from its power source.

Important

- To prevent damage to the drum potential sensor and its relay board, always make sure that the machine is turned off and that the power cord is disconnected from the power source before you remove a PCU.

2. While pressing down the release tab [A] above the PCU, pull the PCU [B] out of the machine.




d014r214

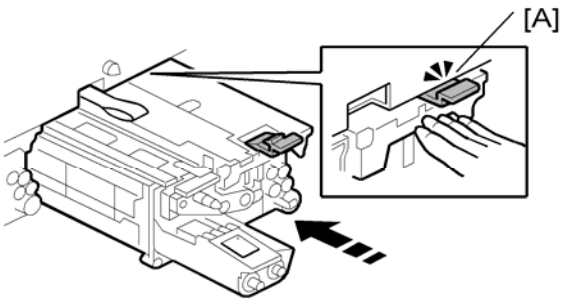
3. With both hands on either side of the PCU [A], remove it from the machine and set it on the PCU stand [B].

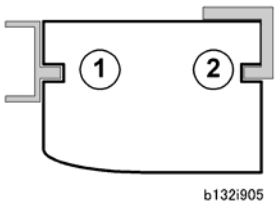
Important

- This PCU stand was specially designed for the D014/D015/D078/D079. Do not use the PCU stand that was made for the B132 series copiers.
- The OPC drum is exposed on the bottom of the PCU, so never place your hand under the PCU.
- Never place the PCU on any surface other than the PCU stand.

## *Reinstalling PCU, Faceplate, Toner Hopper*

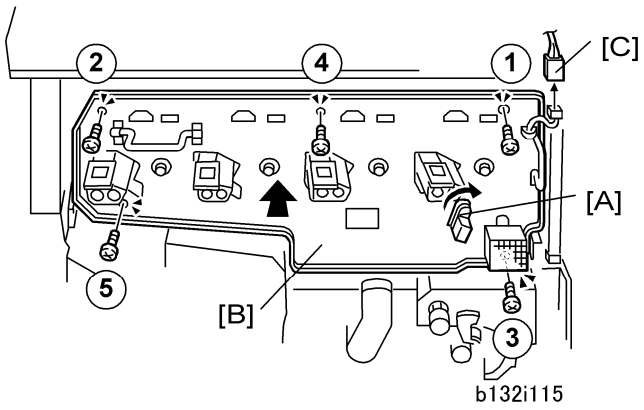
**To reinstall a PCU**



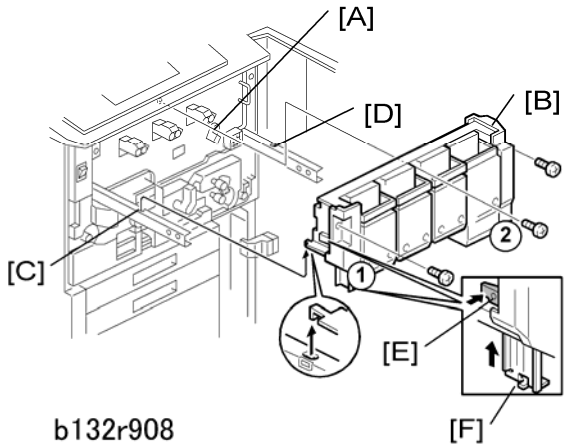

1. Hold the PCU [A] in front of the slot where you removed it
2. Engage the slots ① and ② in the sides of the PCU with the rails. The PCU will not slide smoothly into the machine until the slots and rails are engaged properly.
3. Slowly push the PCU into the slot.
4. Make sure the release tab [A] above the PCU is locked.

**To reinstall the faceplate**




1. Rotate the transfer belt release lever [A] clockwise to lock it.
2. Attach the faceplate [B] with the screws in order as shown above (x5).
3. Reconnect the fan connector [C] ( x1).

**To reinstall the hopper**




1. Confirm that the transfer belt release lever [A] is up and locked before you reattach the hopper.
2. Make sure the hopper rails are fully extended, then set the toner hopper [B] on the rails,
3. Make sure the steel tabs of the hopper are inserted into the holes in the left rail [C] and right rail [D].
4. Push up the release [E] and support leg [F].

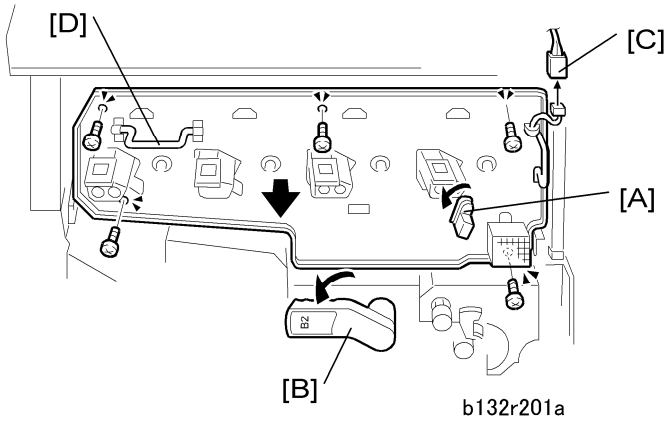
   Important

   - Make sure that the support leg is up and locked before you push the toner hopper into the machine.
5. Place your hands at the bottom of the toner hopper at ① and ② then push the hopper against the face plate.

   Important

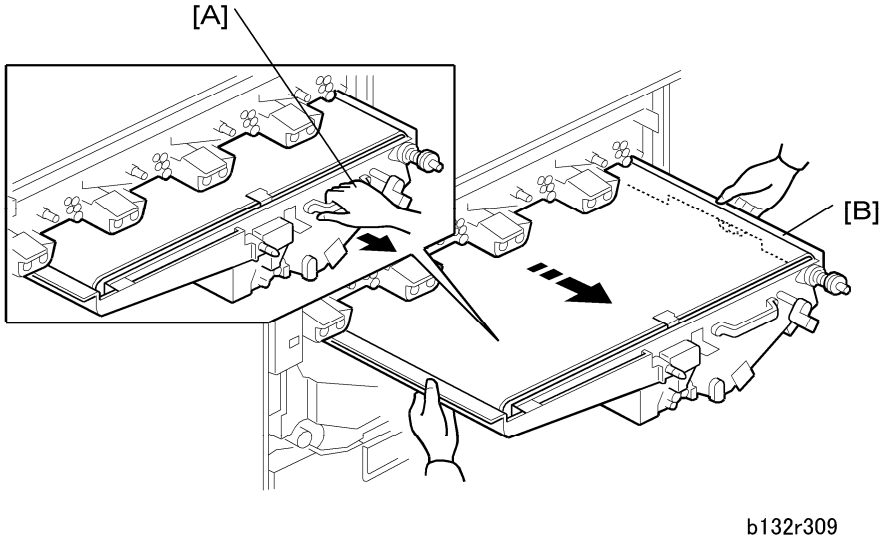
   - To avoid damaging the hopper, never press on the top of the toner hopper.
6. Check the right side and confirm that the hopper unit is flat against the faceplate.
   If the toner hopper [B] is not flat against the face plate on the right side, pull it out slightly and make sure that the transfer belt release lever is rotated up completely and locked.
7. Fasten the toner hopper to the face plate (x3).

## 3.2.8 IMAGE TRANSFER UNIT





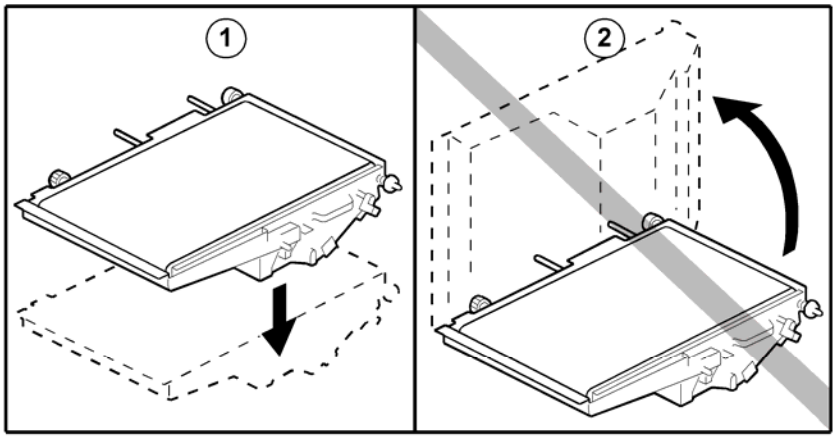

1. Cover the floor or a table with paper to prepare a place to put the image transfer unit.
2. Open the front door.
3. Remove the toner hopper, then push the hopper rails into the machine.
4. Rotate the transfer belt release lever [A] down to the left until it stops.
5. Rotate the lever **B2** [B] on the drawer unit counter-clockwise to separate the transfer roller from the ITB.
6. Disconnect [C].
7. Remove the faceplate [D] (x1, x5).




8. Use the handle [A] on the front of the transfer unit to pull the unit [B] partially out of the machine.
9. Grip both sides of the image transfer unit and pull it slowly out of the machine.

**Handling Precautions**

- Remove the image transfer unit carefully. The unit is heavy and not attached to the rails with screws.




b132r309b

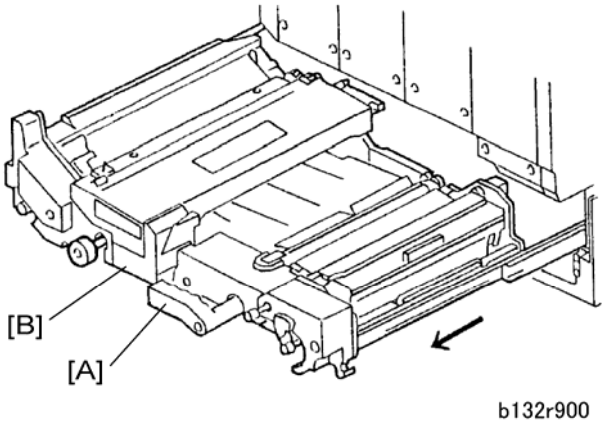
- To prevent toner scattering inside and outside the unit, keep the unit ① flat when you remove it, lift it, carry it, and put it down.
- Never stand the ITB unit ② on its edge before you remove the cleaning unit from the ITB.
- Never place the ITB unit on a carpet where toner can scatter or where the unit will collect dust.

**Reinstallation**

- Re-insert the image transfer unit slowly and carefully to avoid snagging the belt on the frame of the machine.
- Make sure that the image transfer unit does not snag on the toner cap of the yellow PCU on the far left.

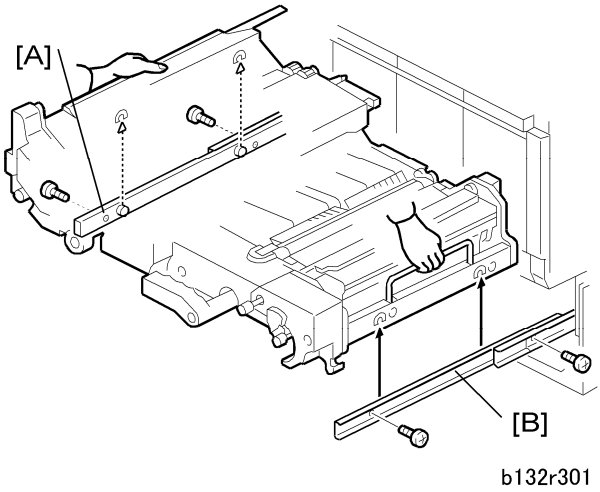
## 3.2.9 DRAWER UNIT

### *To pull out the drawer unit:*




1. Remove the front door.
2. Rotate the lever [A] down to left until it stops.
3. Grip the lever to pull the unit [B] out of the machine until it stops.

### *To remove the drawer unit:*



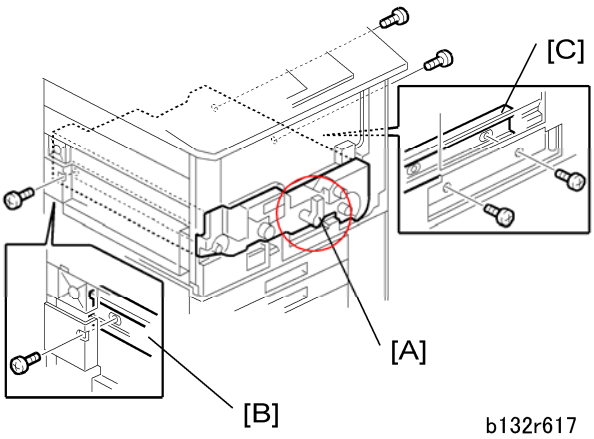

**⚠CAUTION**

- The drawer unit is very heavy (30 kg/66lb.).

1. Disconnect the left rail [A] (☞ x2).
2. Disconnect the right rail [B] (☞ x2).
3. Lift the unit off the rails.
4. Push the rails into the machine.

To re-install the drawer unit

Common Procedures



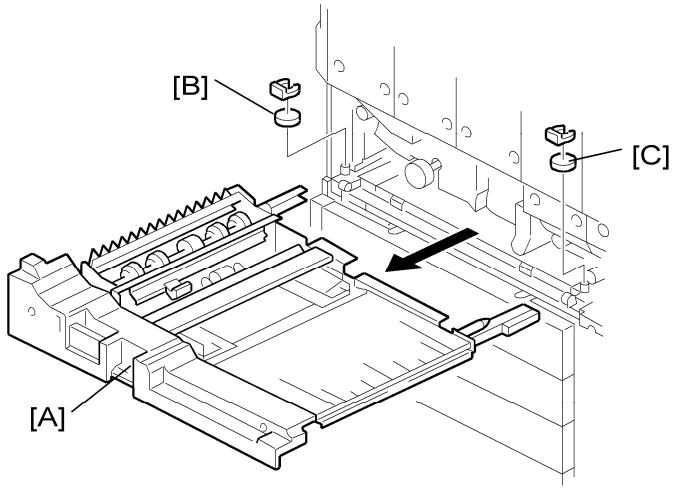

1. Remove the right upper cover and the left upper cover.
2. Open the front door.
3. Pull out the left rail and right rail.
4. Set the unit on the rails.

**⚠CAUTION**

- The drawer unit is very heavy (30 kg/66lb.). Make sure that hooks are engaged with the holes in the rails.

5. Slowly push the unit into the machine until it stops.
6. Rotate the lever [A] to the vertical position.
7. Fasten the screws to the left rail [B] (🔩 x2).
8. Fasten the screws to the right rail [C] (🔩 x2).
9. To ensure that the unit is positioned correctly, check each screw and confirm that it is fastened tightly.

## 3.2.10 DUPLEX UNIT

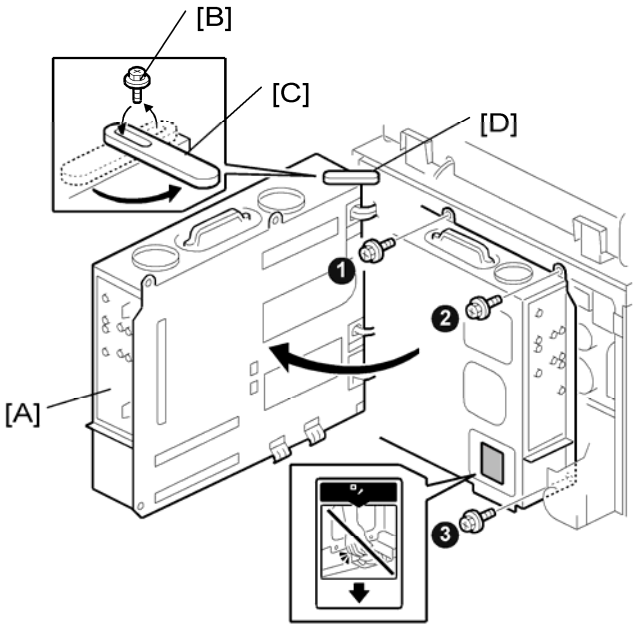



1. Open the front door.
2. Pull the duplex unit [A] out until it stops.
3. Remove the Teflon ring [B] from the left rear corner (x1).
4. Remove the Teflon ring [C] from the right rear corner (x1).
5. Lift the duplex unit from the rails and place it on a flat, level surface.

## 3.2.11 OPENING, LOCKING THE CONTROLLER BOX COVER

**⚠CAUTION**

- To prevent personal injury and damage to the controller box, when the controller box is open, it should always be locked as described below. Before doing the procedure, always switch the machine off and disconnect the power cord.




b132r715

1. Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord.
2. Remove the rear covers.
3. Remove controller box screws ①,②,③.
4. Open the controller box [A] to the left until it stops.

   Important

   - Obey the warning on the decal to avoid touching the fan blades when you open and close the controller box.
5. Remove the left screw [B].
6. Rotate the plastic stopper [C] counter-clockwise until it is aligned with the hole below and its tip [D] is touching the machine frame.
7. Reattach the screw removed in Step 5 to lock the arm in position.

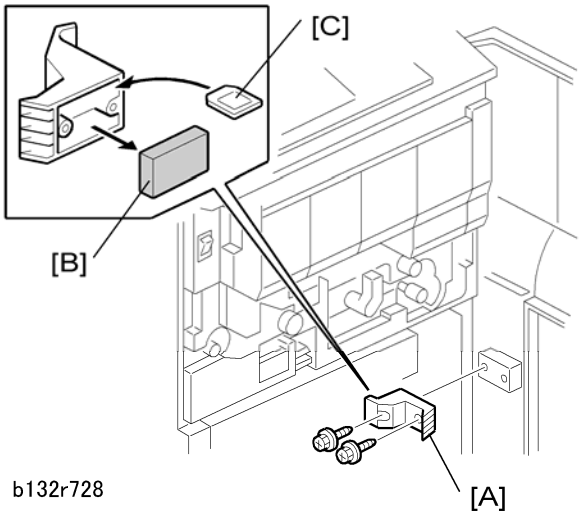
**Reinstallation**

- Before closing the controller box, reattach the stopper arm at its original position.

## 3.2.12 SD CARD STORAGE

After an application has been moved from its original SD card to another SD card with SP5873-1, the empty SD card should be stored on site inside the front door of the machine.

- The original SD card is proof that the customer has purchased that application and must remain with the machine.
- If the front door is replaced, the stored SD cards must be removed and stored inside the new door.



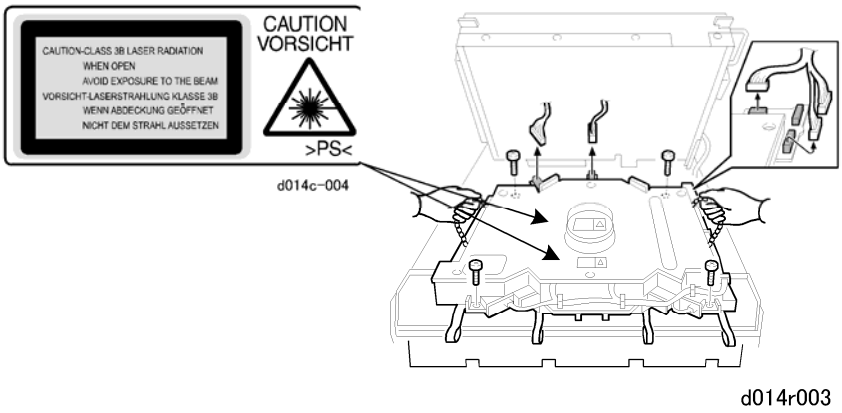

1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the cover [A] on the door (🔩 x2).
3. Remove the block [B].
4. Store extra SD cards [C] inside the cover.
5. Reattach the cover to the door.

# 3.3 LASER UNIT

**⚠WARNING**

- This laser unit employs two laser beams produced by a Class IIIb LD with a wavelength of 648 to 663 nm and intensity of 9 mW. Direct exposure to the eyes could cause permanent blindness.
- Before adjusting or replacing the laser unit, push the main power switch to power the machine off then unplug the machine from the power source. Allow the machine to cool for a few minutes. The polygon motor continues to rotate for approximately one to three minutes after the machine is switched off.
- Never power on the machine with any of these components removed: 1) LD unit, 2) polygon motor cover, 3) synchronization detector.

## 3.3.1 CAUTION DECALS



## 3.3.2 POLYGON MOTOR

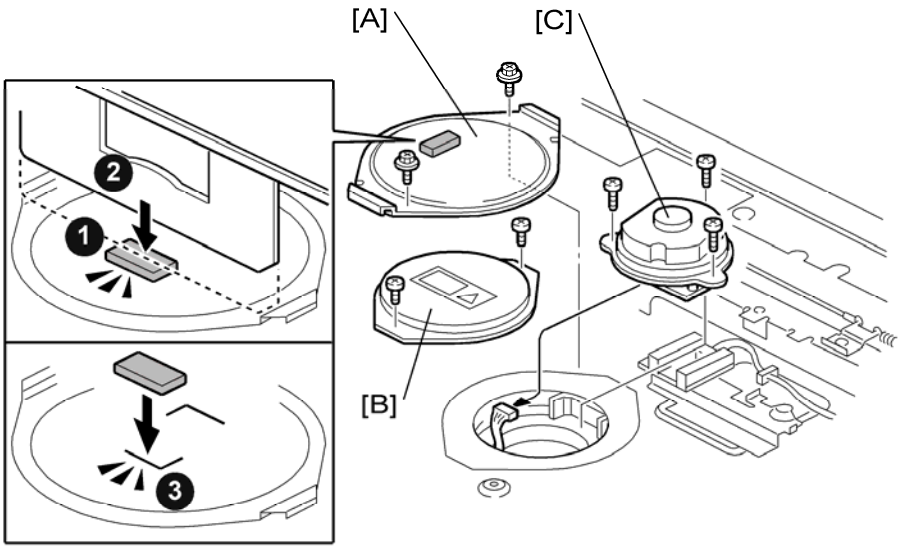
**⚠WARNING**

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before performing any procedure in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage the eyes and cause permanent blindness.

Important

- An accidental static discharge could damage the laser diode board attached to the lens block unit.
- Touch a metal surface to discharge any static electricity from your hands.
- The polygon motor rotates at extremely high speed and continues to rotate after you switch the machine off. To avoid damaging the motor, never remove the polygon motor within three minutes of switching off the main power and disconnecting the power plug.






d014r131a

1. Remove:
   - Exposure glass
   - Lens block
2. Remove:
   [A] Top cover (x2)
   [B] Middle cover (x2)
   [C] Polygon motor (x3, x1, x1)

Laser Unit

Important

- Never remove the paint-lock screws on top of the lens block unit.
- Never touch the glass covers of the laser ports on the sides of the polygon motor [C].

**Re-installation**

The top cover [A] must be positioned correctly for reinstallation.

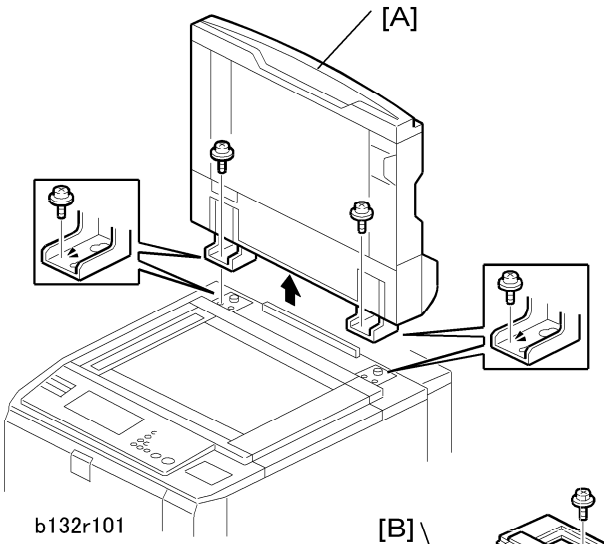
1. When you reinstall the top cover [A], set the top cover so that gasket ① touches lens bracket ②.

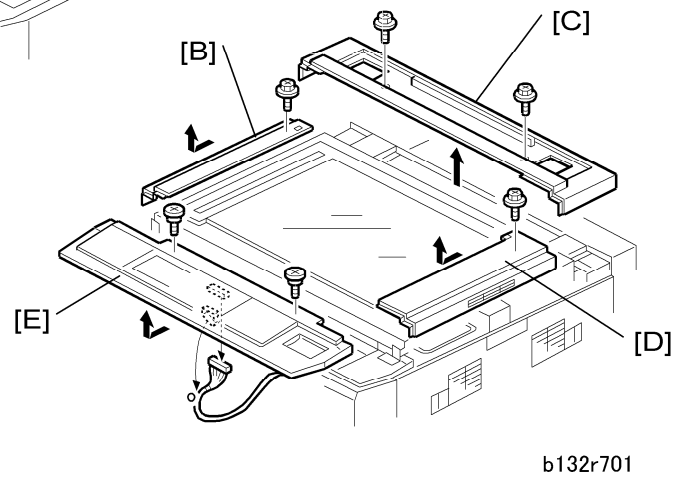
   Important

   - If the top cover is not positioned this way, the unit could generate electrical noise.

2. If the gasket has peeled off during removal, install a new gasket aligned with the line ③ on the top cover. (A replacement gasket is available as a service part.)

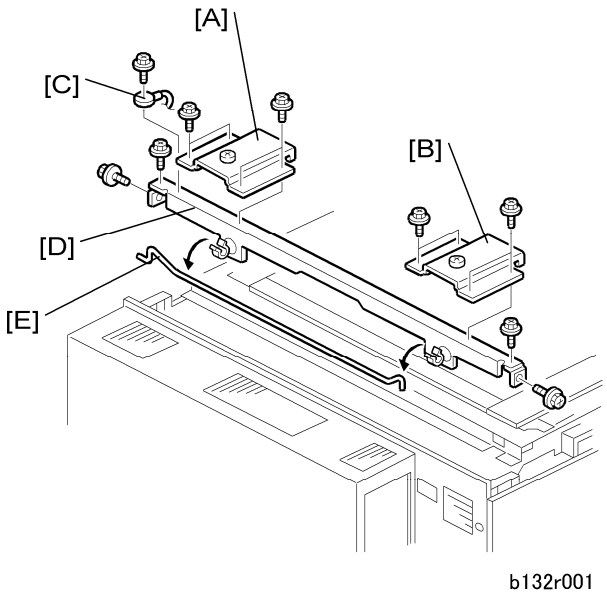
## 3.3.3 LASER UNIT




1. Remove:
   [A] ARDF (x1, x2)
   [B] Left top cover (x1)
   [C] Rear top cover (x2)
   [D] Right top cover (x1)
   [E] Operation panel (Shoulder x2, x1)

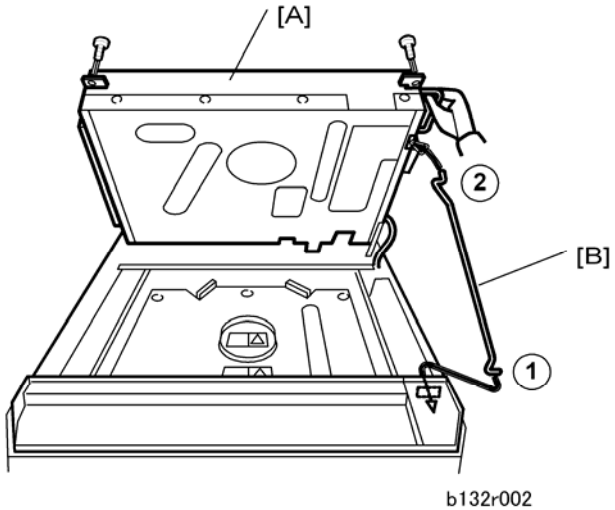
Laser Unit




2. Remove:
   [A] Left plate (☞ x4)
   [B] Right plate (☞ x4)
   [C] Ground wire (☞ x1)
   [D] Cross piece (☞ x4)
   [E] Detach the support rod from the rubber clamps.

**Reinstallation**

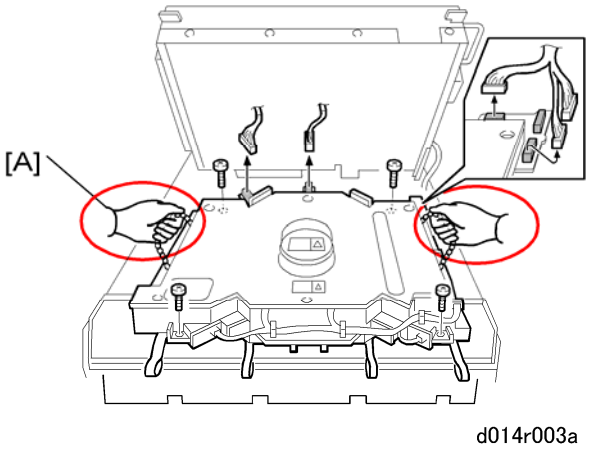
- Be sure to reconnect ground wire [C].




1. Raise the scanner unit [A] (☞ x 2).
2. Set the support rod [B] at the base ①, then under the front right corner ② of the scanner unit.

**CAUTION**

- The scanner unit is very heavy. Never remove the support rod during servicing.




3. Remove the laser unit [A] (x4, x6)

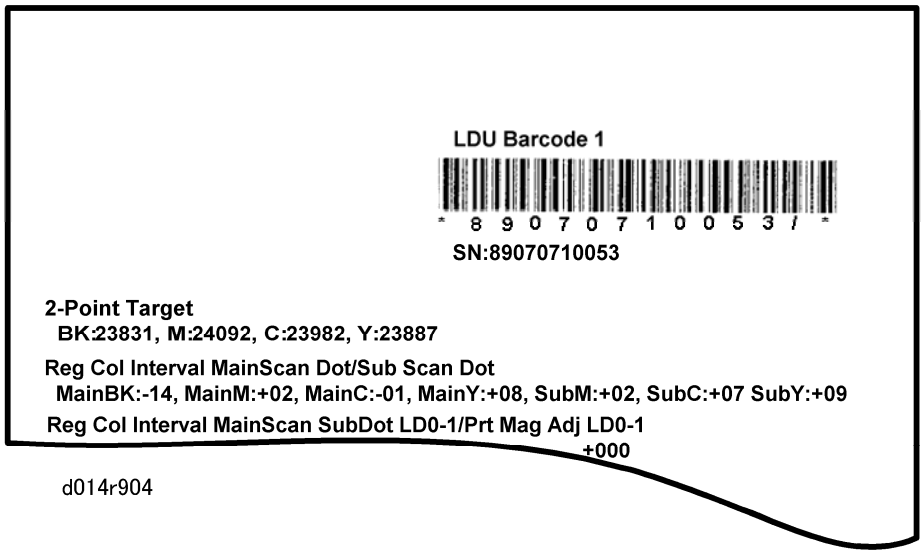
Note

- The laser unit includes four LD sub units. However, the LD sub units cannot be replaced separately because factory adjustment is required.

**Reinstallation**

- Be sure to reconnect the ground wire ([C] in step 2).

## 3.3.4 SP ADJUSTMENTS AFTER LASER UNIT REPLACEMENT




SP codes and settings are written on an A5-size sheet of paper (similar to the sample above) provided with the laser unit.

Note

- Only the settings described below are required. The other information on the sheet can be ignored.

1. Enter the values on the first item in the list. These "2-Point Target" values must be entered after the LD unit has been replaced.
   2156-1 (K)
   2156-2 (M)
   2156-3 (C)
   2156-4 (Y)
2. Next, do these SP codes and enter the values for "Prt Mag Adj LD0-1" (listed on Line 3 of the sheet).
   2102-5
   2102-6
   2102-7
   2102-8
   - The values are in the third item on the list.
   - Two values are given for each SP (for example, BK:001 -001). Enter the 2nd value for each SP code (-001 for BK for example).

3. Next, do these SP codes and enter the values for "Spd Diff Ofset: Main". These values appear as the 8th item in the list on the sheet:
   - 2101-60 (K)
   - 2101-61 (M)
   - 2101-62 (C)
   - 2101-63 (Y)
4. Next, set the following SP codes to "0":
   - 2102-10
   - 2102-11
   - 2102-12
   - 2102-13
5. Do SP2109-2, select Pattern 14, and print a test pattern to confirm the settings.



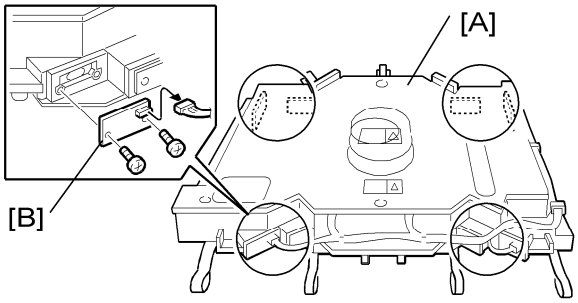
### *Color Registration Errors*

- In addition to the SP adjustments printed on the seal attached to the LD unit, if color registration errors occur immediately after you change the laser unit, an additional adjustment is required.
- This additional adjustment is normally not required in the field. Do it only if you see color registration errors in test prints.
- See "Color Registration Test and Error Adjustment" for instructions on how to do this adjustment.

### *Skew*

If skew occurs immediately after you change the laser unit, do the skew adjustment. (See "Skew Adjustment After Laser Unit Replacement" in Section 3 of the B132/B200 Service Manual (Venus-C1).

## 3.3.5 LASER SYNCHRONIZATION DETECTOR




1. Remove:
   [A] Laser unit
   [B] Laser synchronization detector ( x2, x1)

Note

- The locations of the 8 laser synchronization detectors are circled in the illustration above.

# 3.4 PCU

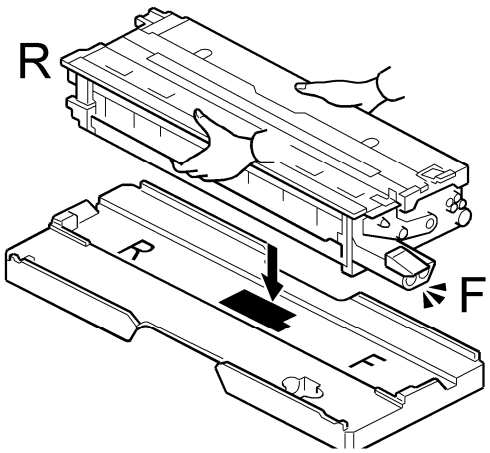
## 3.4.1 CHARGE UNITS

The procedure for removing the drum charge components in the K PCU and YMC PCUs is different.

- The YMC PCUs use a charge roller to charge the OPC drum.
- The K PCU uses a charge wire unit to charge the OPC drum.

### *Preparation*

1. Remove the PCU stand from the bottom of the machine.
2. Remove the PCU from the machine.




d014r214

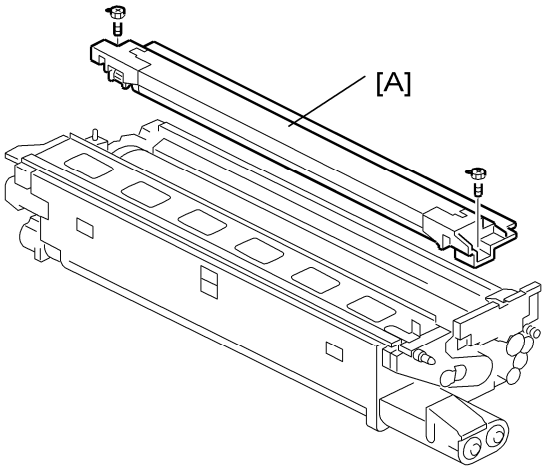
3. Set the PCU on the PCU stand.

Important

- The PCU stands for the D014/D015/D078/D079 and B132/B200 copiers are different. Be sure to use the PCU stand for the D014/D015/D078/D079. If you use the PCU stand for the B132/B200, this could damage the exposed drum on the bottom of the PCU.

PCU

## *Charge Roller Unit: YMC PCUs*




d014r452

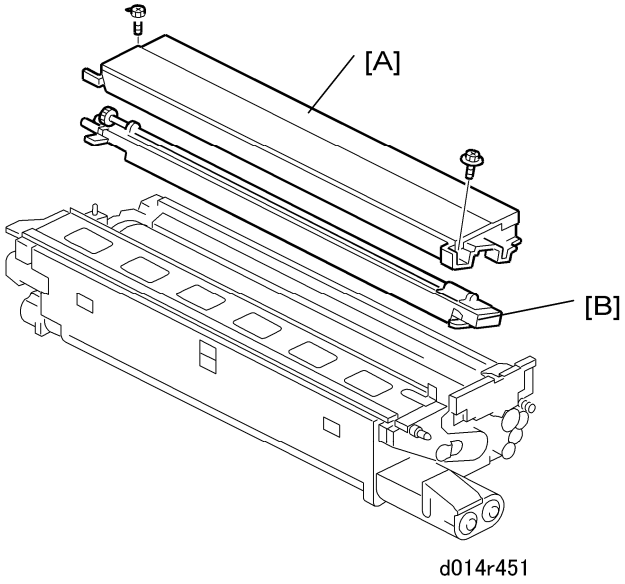
1. Remove the charge roller unit [A] (🔩 x2).

   This unit contains the charge roller and charge roller cleaning roller.

   Important

   - If you need to replace a charge roller unit, be sure to replace the C, M, Y charge roller units together.

### *Charge Wire Unit: K PCU*



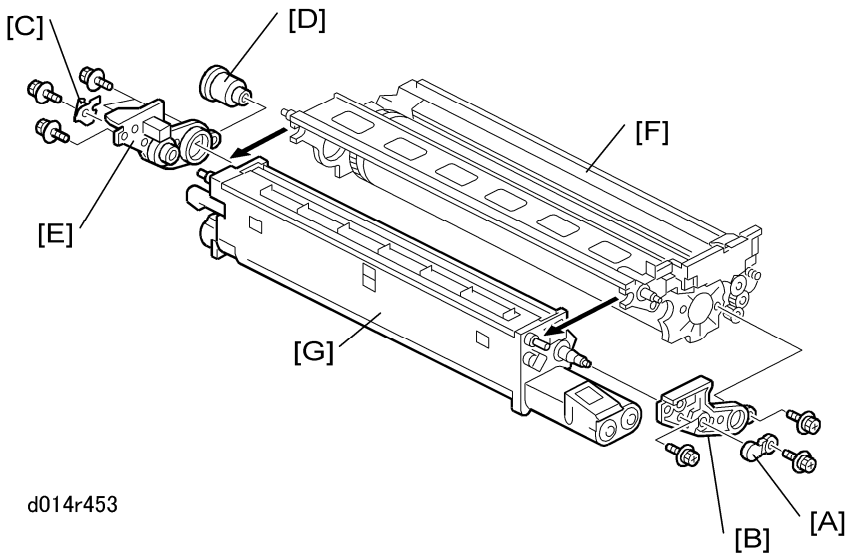

1. Remove:
   [A] Cover (🔩 x2)
   [B] Charge wire unit
   The charge corona wire and charge corona wire cleaning mechanism comprise the charge wire unit. The unit is replaced as you see it above (no further disassembly is required).

## 3.4.2 SEPARATING DRUM/CLEANING UNIT, REMOVING THE OPC DRUM

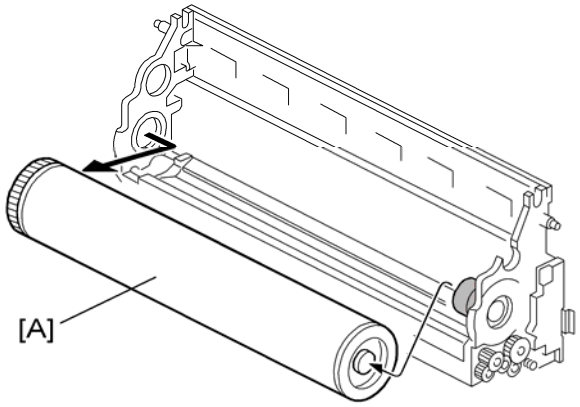
Before doing maintenance on a PCU:

- Separate the development unit and cleaning unit.
- Remove the drum and cover it with a sheet of clean paper to protect it from light.

1. Remove:
   - PCU
   - Charge roller unit (or charge wire unit for K PCU)




2. At the front, remove:
   [A] Small lock plate (☞ x1)
   [B] Large lock plate (☞ x2)
3. At the rear, remove:
   [C] Small lock plate (☞ x1)
   [D] Brown coupling
   [E] Large lock plate (☞ x3)
4. Separate the drum unit [F] from the development unit [G].




d014r454



5. Remove the drum [A] from the development unit.
6. Wrap the drum in a sheet of clean white paper to protect it from light.

### *Reinstallation of the Drum*

This procedure is the same for the YMC PCUs and the K PCU.

- Always dust the surface of a new drum before you install it.
- If you have removed the drum and intend to re-install the same drum, the surface of this drum should be dusted as well.

**Before you begin…**

- Make sure that you have the correct type of dusting powder for the drum. Use only Lubricant Powder B1329700 (specially designed for this machine).

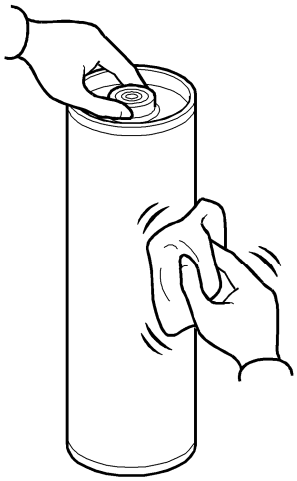
Important

  - Never use Setting Powder 54429101. This powder can damage the drum and charge roller.
  - Do not use the yellow toner of the D014/D015/D078/D079 copier because it contains developer that could damage the drum and ITB.

**To dust the drum:**

1. Spread a small amount of lubricant powder on a clean sheet of paper.
2. Dip a clean, dry cloth into the lubricant powder.

PCU



d014r960

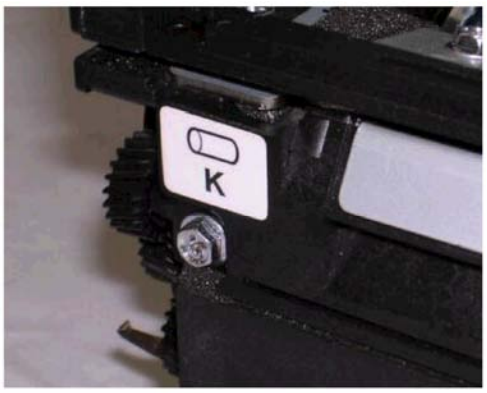
3. Dust the surface of the drum with the cloth until the entire surface is covered.
4. When you reinstall the drum:
   Reinstall the front end of the drum first.
   Never rotate the drum manually after reinstalling it.
5. You must do the appropriate SP codes to prevent a fatal error, depending on whether you have replaced only the drum or the drum/cleaning blade. For more details, refer to the SP Codes After Replacement table.

## 3.4.3 PCU BLADES AND ROLLERS

This section describes how to replace these parts of the drum cleaning unit:

- Lubricant bar
- Lubricant blade
- Lubricant brush roller
- Drum cleaning blade
- Collection coil

  The procedures described below apply to both a YMC PCU and K PCU.
- However, the lubricant bar unit is not the same for both units. The lubricant bar unit is marked "K" for the black PCU.



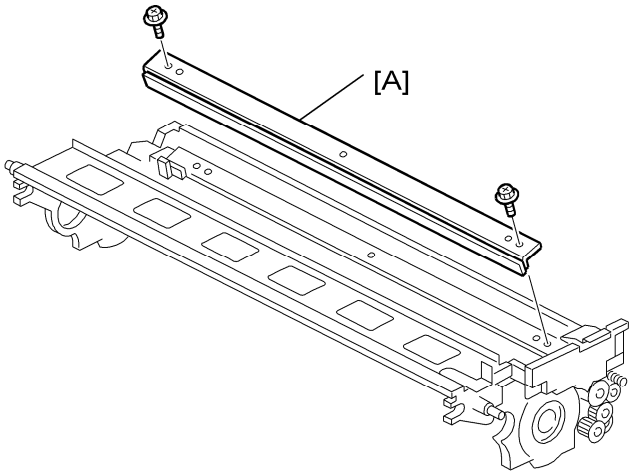

ra_0700

- If you replace a cleaning blade, apply lubricant powder to that cleaning blade and to the drum.

## *Lubricant Bar and Lubricant Blade*

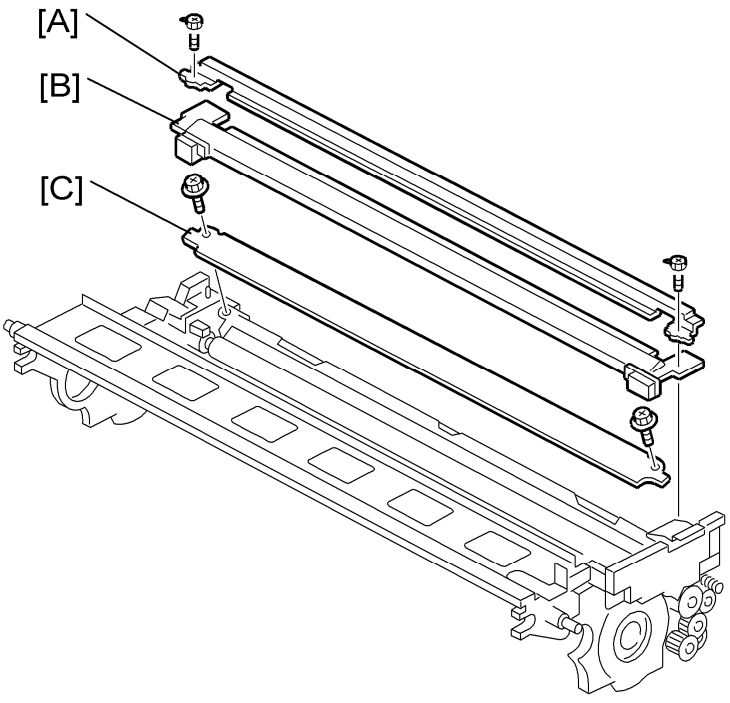
**Preparation**

- Remove the PCU
- Separate the development unit and drum unit.
- Remove the drum, cover it with a piece of clean paper, and set it aside.



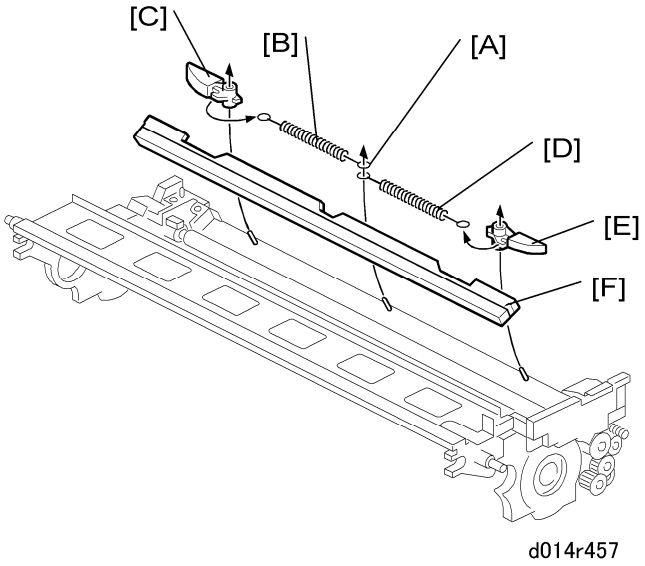

d014r455

1. Remove the lubricant blade (☞ x2).
2. Remove the screws from the ends of the lubricant bar unit [A] (☞ x2).




d014r456

3. Remove:
   [A] Charger roller unit holder (x2)
   [B] Bracket with sponge seal
   [C] Lubricant bar unit cover (x2)
   **To remove the old lubricant bar:**




1. At the center [A], disconnect springs from the post.
2. Disconnect the rear spring [B] from the rear bar support, then remove the support [C] from its post.
3. Disconnect the front spring [D] from the front bar supports, then remove the support [E] from its post.
4. Remove the lubricant bar [F] and replace it with a new one.

Note

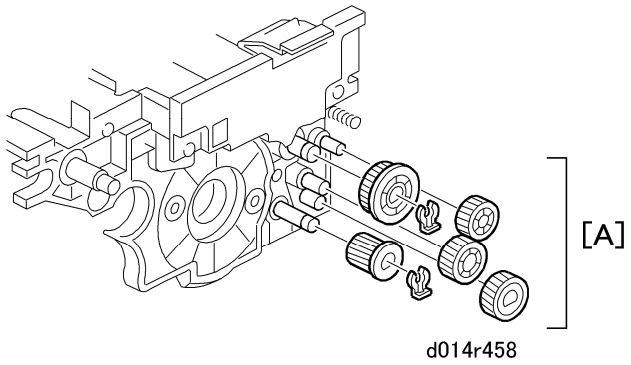
- The lubricant bars of the K PCU and YMC PCUs are identical. The same type of lubricant bar can be installed in either type of PCU.

Important

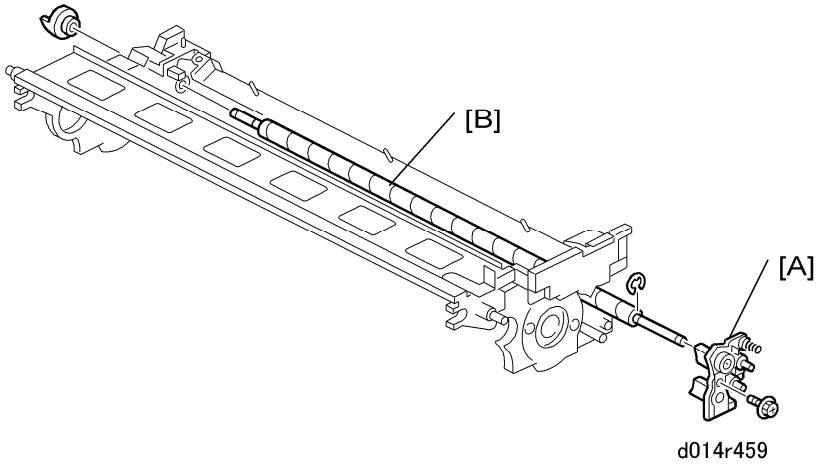
- The springs of the lubricant bar units are not interchangeable. The springs of the CMY lubricant bar unit are brown and stronger than the springs of the K lubricant bar unit (the K lubricant bar springs are black).

PCU

## *Lubricant Brush Roller*

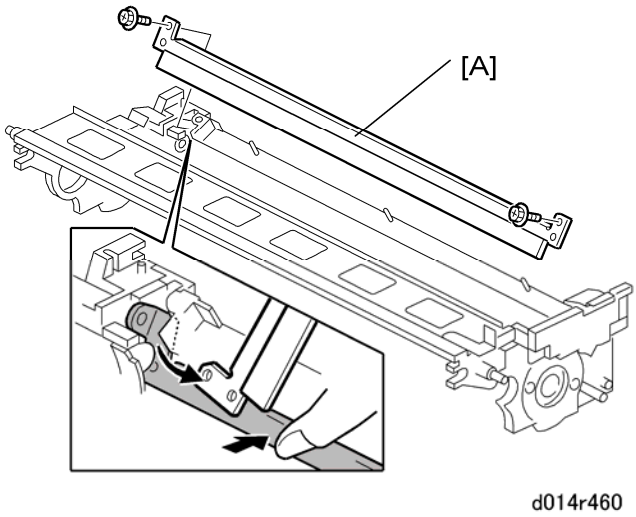



1. Remove:
   [A] Gears (⛭ x2, Gears x5).




2. Remove:
   [A] Shaft lock plate (🔩 x1)
   [B] Lubricant brush roller (Coupling x1, ⛭ x1)

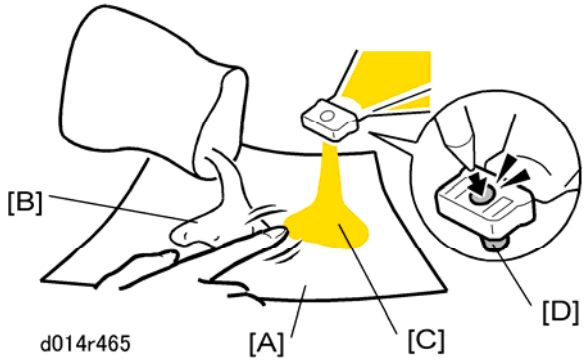
### *Drum Cleaning Blade*




1. Remove:
   [A] Drum cleaning blade (☞ x2).

## *After Replacement*

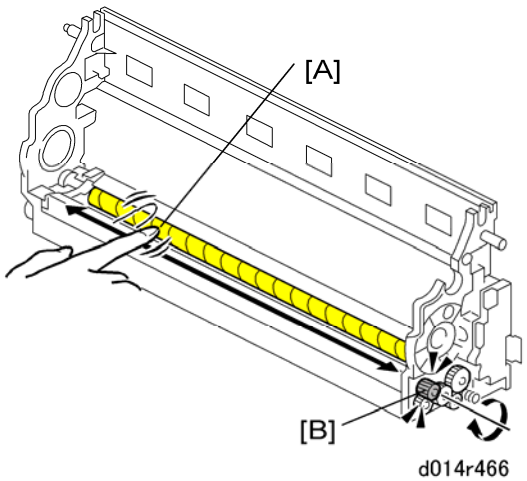
Do the procedure below after replacing the lubricant brush roller.




1. Place a sheet of clean paper [A] on a flat surface.
2. Pour a small amount of Lubricant Powder (B1329700) [B] from its bag onto the paper.
3. Pour a small amount of yellow toner (B132/B200) [C] from its toner cartridge. (Use the tip of a pen or a pointed tool to depress plug [D] to release the yellow toner.)

   Important

   - You must use yellow toner for the B132/B200.
   - Do not use D014/D105/D078/D079 yellow toner because it contains developer that could damage the drum and ITB.
   - The correct EDP codes for the yellow toner are listed in the table under Required Materials in Section 2.
4. User your finger to mix evenly the lubricant powder and yellow toner on the paper.




5. Use your finger to apply the lubricant-toner mix to the cleaning brush at [A] while rotating the gear [B] in the direction shown by the arrow.

Important

- You must rotate the gear in the direction shown above.

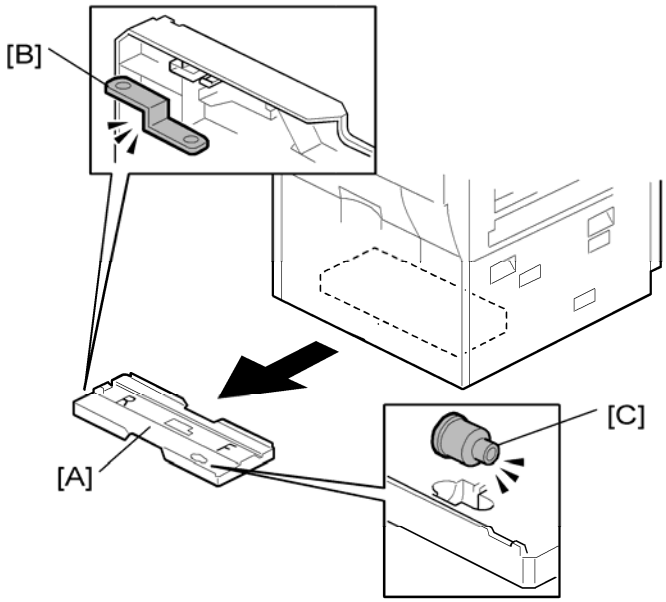
6. After reinstalling the unit in the machine, do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001.

## 3.4.4 DEVELOPER REPLACEMENT

The developer replacement procedure is the same for the YMC PCUs and the K PCU.

### *Preparation*

1. Spread some paper on a flat surface to hold developer that will be dumped from the development unit.

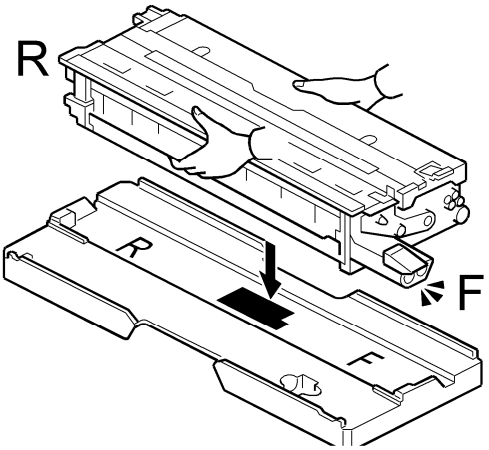



d014r718

2. Remove:
   [A] PCU stand from bottom of the machine
   [B] Jig
   [C] Brown coupling

   Important

   - The PCU stands for the D014/D015/D078/D079 and B132/B200 copiers are different. Be sure to use the PCU stand for the D014/D015/D078/D079. If you use the PCU stand for the B132/B200, this could damage the exposed drum on the bottom of the PCU.
3. Remove the metal jig [B] and brown coupling [C] from the bottom of the PCU stand.
4. Set the PCU stand on a flat surface.
5. Remove:
   - Toner hopper
   - Faceplate
   - PCU




d014r214

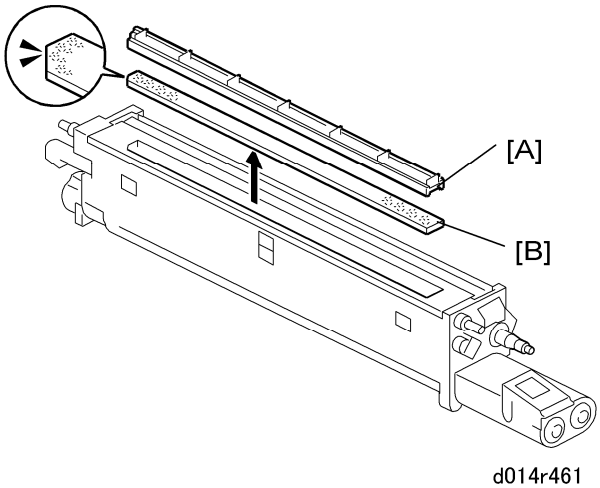


6. Position the front and rear of the PCU so that it matches the F (front) and R (rear) markings on the PCU stand.
7. Set the PCU on the stand.
   - The front-rear alignment aligns the shape of the stand with the contours of the PCU bottom.
   - This also protects the exposed drum on the bottom of the PCU during servicing.

## *Removing the old developer*

**Preparation**

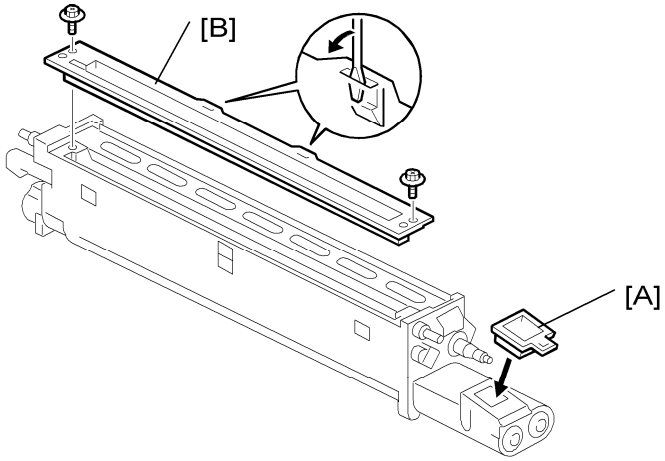
- Separate the drum unit and development unit.
- Cover the drum with a sheet of clean paper and set it aside.




d014r461

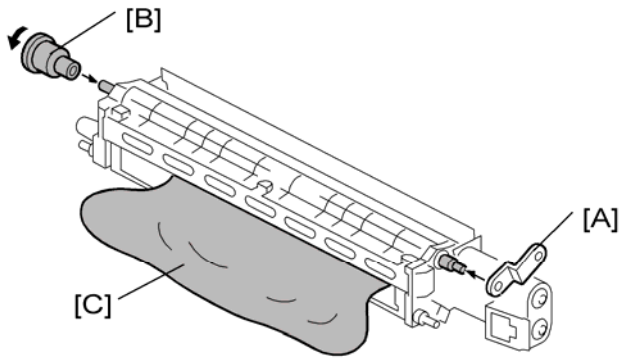
PCU

1. Remove:
   [A] Filter frame
   [B] Filter



d014r462

2. Insert the plug [A] into the toner port.
3. Remove the plastic cover [B] (x2). Use the tip of a small screwdriver to dislodge the cover.



d014r463

4. Attach the metal jig [A] to the end of the development roller. The jig must be set as shown.

Note

- The D-shaped hole of the metal jig must fit over the D-shaped shaft tip. If the hole of the metal jig is not aligned with the shaft, rotate the D-shaped shaft tip to position the shaft so the metal jig can be attached.

5. Attach the brown coupling [B] (removed from the PCU stand) to the other end of the development roller.

Important

- Use the brown coupling provided with the PCU stand. Using the coupling of the PCU could break it or wear it out.

6. Rotate the brown coupling in the direction shown above so the developer [C] starts to come out of the development unit.

Note

- Turning the brown coupling in the opposite direction will not damage anything but developer will fail to come out of the development unit.

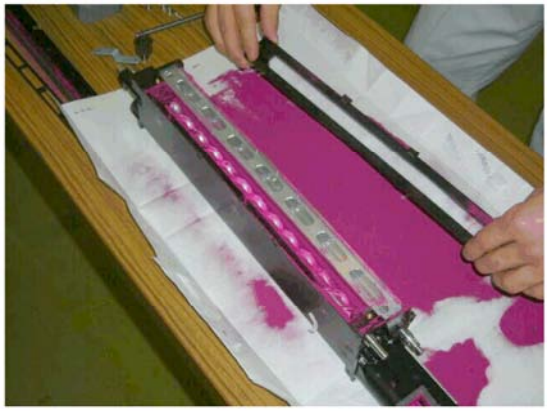
temp_0772

7. Tip the development unit on its end to dump any remaining developer.

temp_0774

8. Rotate the brown coupling again to push out more developer.

PCU



temp_0775

9. Remove the filter unit.

Important

- The filter must be replaced every time the developer is replaced.

temp_0776

10. After the filter unit has been removed, dump the last bit of developer.

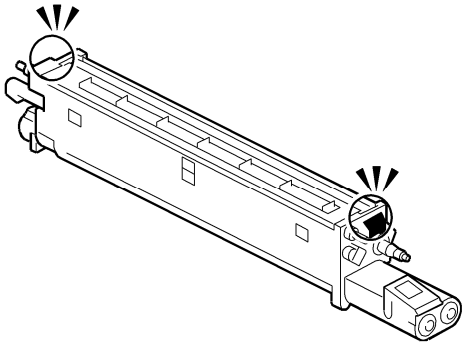
Important

- Never touch or attempt to remove the doctor blade. The doctor blade is set at the factory and requires no cleaning or adjustment.

temp_0778



11. Vacuum clean the unit, then clean it with a dry cloth.



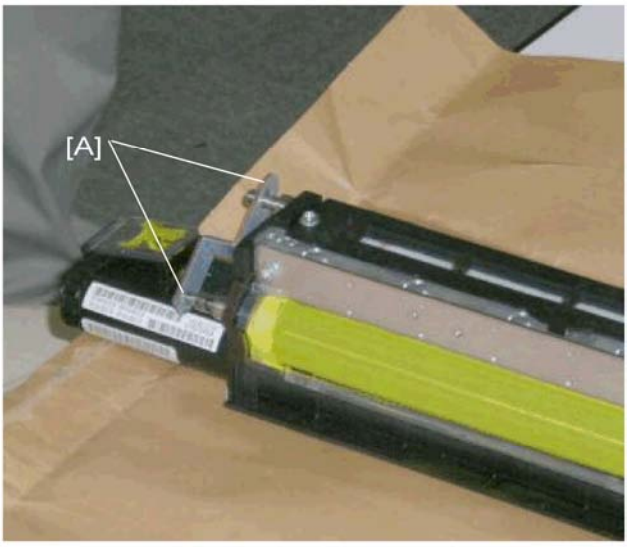
d014r464

12. Clean both ends of the unit. The ends must be clean and completely free of old developer.

**Reinstallation**

- Always replace the filter before reinstalling the cleaned PCU. The filter must be replaced every time the developer is replaced.)

PCU




temp_0779a

- Attach the metal jig [A] (provided with the PCU stand) to the ends of the shafts shown above. This aligns the shafts correctly for reinstallation of the PCU.
- Reinstall the PCU and faceplate.
- Do not reinstall the toner hopper yet.

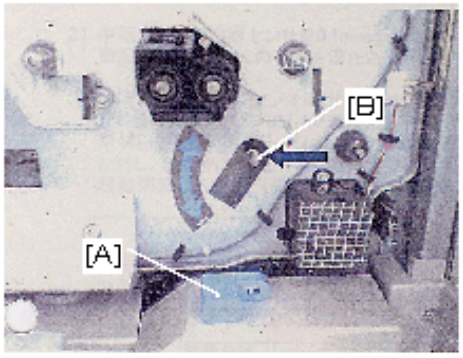
## *Adding New Developer*

**Before You Begin…**

- Follow this procedure in the order described below.
- Do not turn on the machine or open the front door until you are instructed to do so.

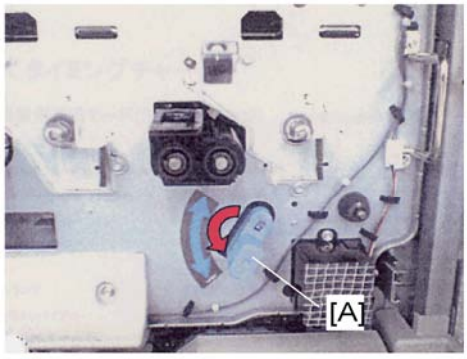
**PCU Filling Procedure**

1. If you have not already done so, remove the toner hopper unit (described above).




temp_devinstall_1

2. Attach the transfer belt release lever [A] to the tip of the shaft [B].



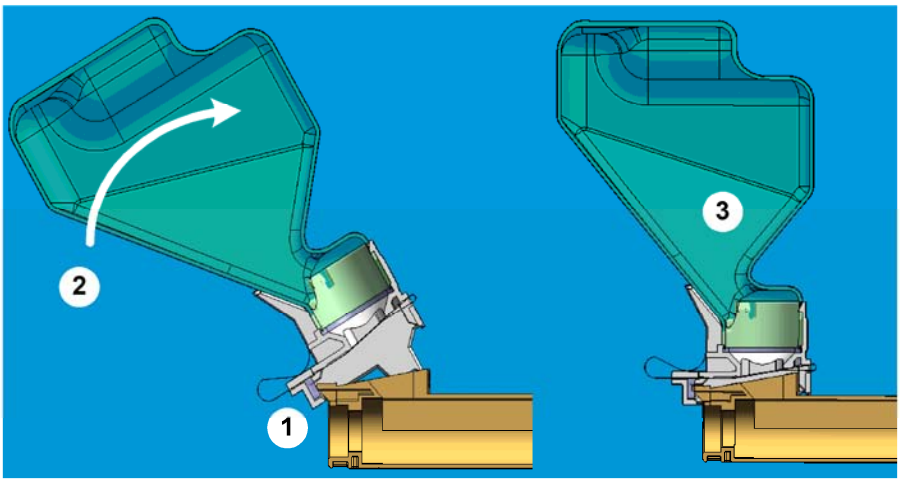

temp_devinstall_2

3. Rotate the lever [A] down to separate the transfer belt from the surfaces of the PCU drums.
4. Before attaching each bottle, loosen the developer to ensure that it will drain completely.

PCU

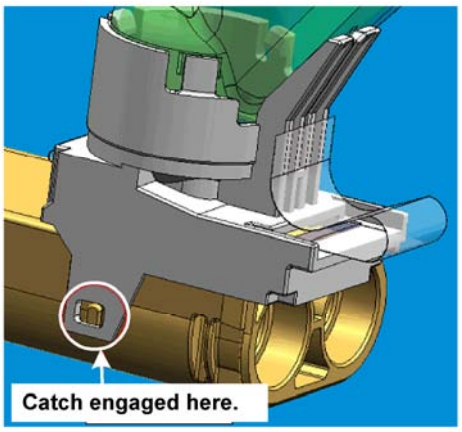
temp_dev-shake30

- Vigorously shake the bottle up and down 10 to 15 times.




ins_0001

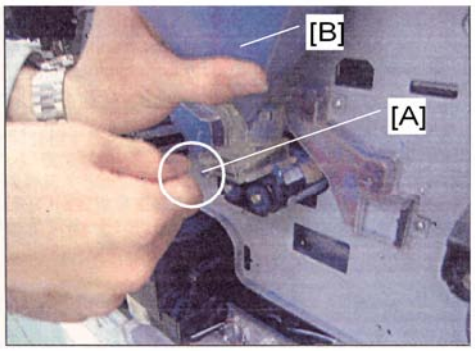
5. Mount a developer bottle on each PCU.
   - Set each bottle as shown at ①.
   - Swing the bottle ② to the right until it snaps into place and is upright ③.




ins_0002



6. Confirm that the neck of each bottle snaps and locks in place. Confirm that the neck of each bottle is parallel with the top of each PCU.




temp_devinstall_3

7. To prevent the bottle from falling off, hold the bottle [B] with the left hand as shown, pull the heat seal [A] out of the developer bottle and remove it.
8. Pull the seal from the developer bottle.
9. Make sure that you have removed the seal from the development bottle.
10. Gently tap the right side of each bottle to make sure that the developer flows freely.
11. Close the front door.

Important

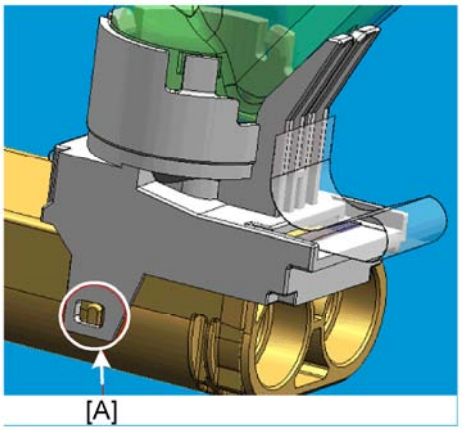
- You must close the front door.

12. Turn the machine's power on.

13. Enter the SP mode and do the appropriate SP codes:

| SP | Function |
|---|---|
| 3814-1 | All (KMCY) |
| 3814-2 | MCY Only |
| 3814-3 | K |
| 3814-4 | M |
| 3814-5 | C |
| 3814-6 | Y |
| 3815 | Confirms that SP3814 executed correctly by displaying "**1111**" (KMCY). A "9" indicates an error |

14. Confirm that the developer bottle is completely empty.
    - Each developer bottle must be completely empty. Even if SP3815 returned a "1" for each bottle to indicate successful completion of the operation, there may be toner remaining in a bottle. It is very important that you check each bottle visually.
    - If you see toner still remains in a bottle, do not disconnect the bottle. Refer to the next section below.
15. Switch the machine off and disconnect the power cord.




ins_0003

16. Remove the developer bottles. Use the tip of a small screwdriver to release the bottle latch at [A].

17. Discard the empty bottles.

Important

- Obey local laws and regulations concerning the disposal of items such as the empty bottles.

18. Reattach the toner hopper.
19. Open the front door [A].

Important

- You must open the front door.
- Turning on the machine with the front door open prevents the machine from performing the initial process control self-check.
- If the front door is closed, the drums will start rotating with no toner in the PCUs.
- If the drums rotate with no toner in the PCUs, this can cause the cleaning blades to catch on a dry drum and damage the drum surface.

20. With the front door open, turn on the main power switch.
21. Do the SPs that are indicated by the table in the 'SP Codes after Replacements' section.

Note

- If you add developer at the same time as you install a new PCU, do SP3010, 3011, 3012, or 3013 before you initialize the developer.

## *Handling Problems with Developer Filling*

**Procedure 1**

Do this procedure first.

The most common cause of an SP3815 error is failure to remove the tape from one of the bottles. If you see any number other than "**1**" after doing SP3815:

1. Note the position of the digit where the number is displayed. For example, If the displays reads "**1191**" the problem occurred at the C PCU.
2. Check the attachment of the bottle at the affected PCU and make sure that the tape was removed.
3. If the tape has been removed, do Procedure 2

**Procedure 2**

Do this procedure only after you have done Procedure 1 immediately above.

If all tapes have been removed but developer remains in one or more bottles, do the procedure below.

1. Do SP3814-1 to 6 for the color of whichever PCU is to be filled with developer..

2. Hold the bottle to prevent it from coming off, then tap the bottle gently a few times.
3. Open the front door then switch on the main power switch.

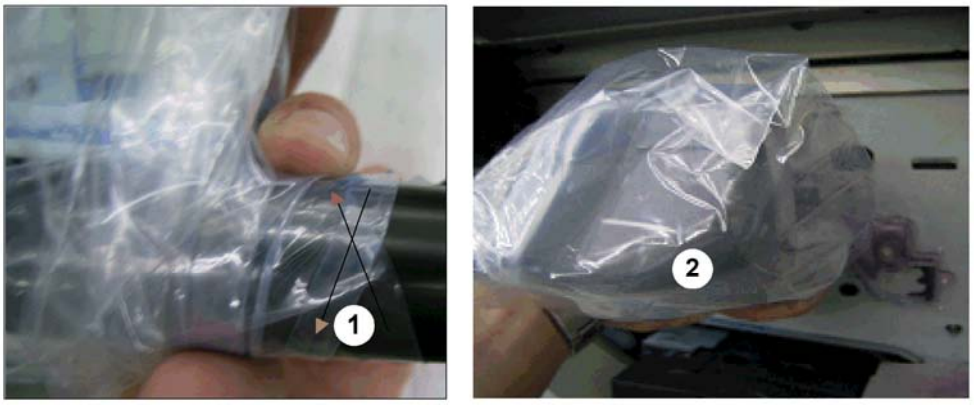
Important

- The door must be open.

1. When you see the door open message on the screen, close the door.
2. Wait about 40. sec. until the SC code appears on the screen, then turn off the power switch.
3. Repeat this procedure until the bottle becomes empty.
4. After 10 attempts if the bottle is still not empty, do procedure 3 below.

**Procedure 3**

The developer has probably clogged inside the bottle, so you must remove the developer bottle and the PCU. Do this procedure only after you have done Procedures 1 and 2 immediately above.




temp_devbotoff

Note

- The initial process control self-check (process control after the prescribed idle time and MUSIC) is disabled after SP3814 (Developer Fill) is executed and will remain disabled until after SP3801 (TD Sensor Initialization) or SP3811 (Developer Setup) are executed.

1. Cover the toner bottle with a plastic bag, and seal the mouth of the bag ① with your hand.
2. Remove the bottle ②.
3. Remove the faceplate (🔩 x5).
4. Remove the PCU from the machine.
5. Open the top of the development unit (🔩 x2).
6. Pour remaining developer from the bottle into the development unit.

## 3.4.5 NEW PCU

There are two types of PCU. Before replacing a PCU, make sure that you have the correct type:

- The K PCU contains a charge wire unit, used only for black.
- The YMC PCUs use a charge roller. This PCU type can be used to replace Y, M, or C PCU.

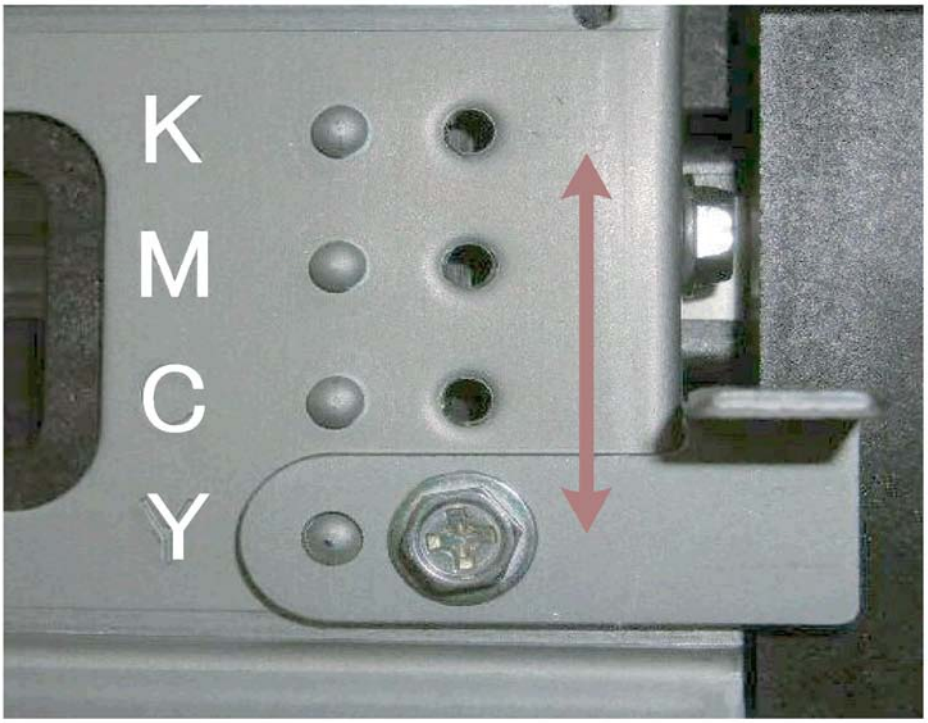
temp_0936

1. Remove the seal from the new PCU (the seal is similar to the permanently attached one, shown above, but you can tear it off).

temp_0938

2. Stick the seal on the guide sheet provided. This reminds you which SP codes must be set for the PCU later.

PCU




temp_0939

3. Remove the screw and set the plate to the correct position for the PCU to be replaced. This adjustment prevents the PCU from being installed in the wrong position.
4. Install the new PCU in the machine.

5.

6. Execute the SP codes described on the guide sheet.

| | | * : K=0, M=1, C=2, Y=3 |
|---|---|---|
| ☐ | SP3010-001 TD Sensor:K Vtcnt<br>SP3010-002 TD Sensor:K Vt(H)<br>SP3010-003 TD Sensor:K Vt(M)<br>SP3010-004 TD Sensor:K Vt(L) | |
| ☐ | SP3011-001 TD Sensor:M Vtcnt<br>SP3011-002 TD Sensor:M Vt(H)<br>SP3011-003 TD Sensor:M Vt(M)<br>SP3011-004 TD Sensor:M Vt(L) | |
| ☐ | SP3012-001 TD Sensor:C Vtcnt<br>SP3012-002 TD Sensor:C Vt(H)<br>SP3012-003 TD Sensor:C Vt(M)<br>SP3012-004 TD Sensor:C Vt(L) | |
| ☐ | SP3013-001 TD Sensor:Y Vtcnt<br>SP3013-002 TD Sensor:Y Vt(H)<br>SP3013-003 TD Sensor:Y Vt(M)<br>SP3013-004 TD Sensor:Y Vt(L) | |

d014s901

- Four SP codes must be set for the new PCU.
- Execute only the SP codes where the sticker is attached (removed and attached to the guide sheet).
- Do not execute any other SP codes on this sheet.
- If you replace only the development unit, you must also do these SP modes.

7. Add developer to the new PCU.

Note

- Do SP3010, 3011, 3012, or 3013 before you initialize the developer.

## 3.4.6 SP CODES AFTER REPLACEMENTS

Do the following procedure after you replace the PCU, development, or any related parts. Pay attention to the combination of replaced parts in the table below (required procedures are different). Any SPs listed in this table should be performed as described below.

1. Open the front cover, then turn on the main power.
2. After the "Open Cover" message is shown on the display, close the front cover.
3. Execute the required SPs.

**Replaced Parts Table**

Please refer to the notes below.

| No. | Replaced Parts | | | Required SPs | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Drum | Developer | Drum Cleaning Blade | | |
| 1. | ✓ | | | 3820-2 | Before installation cover the drum completely with lubricant powder.<br>**Do NOT initialize the TD sensor with:**<br>**- 3801-1 to 6**<br>**- 3811-1 to 6** |
| 2. | ✓ | | ✓ | | |
| 4. | ✓ | ✓ | | 3801-1 to 6 | Before installation cover the drum completely with lubricant powder. Do the SPs to initialize the TD sensor only for the color(s) that were replaced. |
| 5. | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | 3811-1 to 6 | |
| 6. | | ✓ | | 3801-1 to 6 | Do the SPs to initialize the TD sensor only for the color(s) that were replaced. |
| 7. | | ✓ | ✓ | 3811-1 to 6 | |

d014r900

1. Initialize the TD sensor once only.
2. If you replace the developer for two colors (C, M, Y), do the developer set up for each color, one by one. (**Never use SP3811-002**.)

**CAUTION**

- Never initialize the TD sensor more than once. Initializing the TD sensor more than once can cause toner scatter inside the machine.

Initialize the TD sensor only at the following times:

- At installation, exactly as explained in the installation procedure.
- After you replace developer (only initialize the TD sensor for the color that you replaced)
- As instructed in specific troubleshooting procedures.

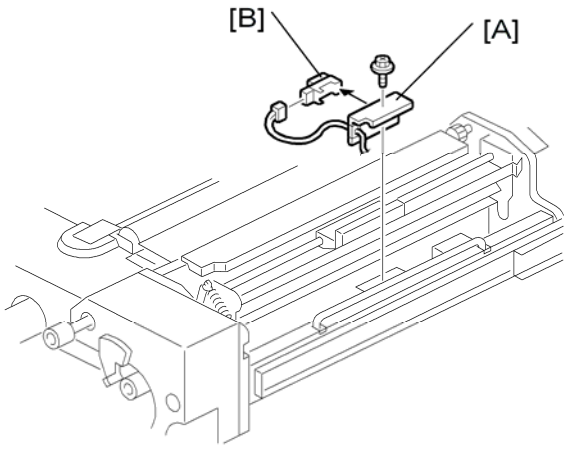
Here is a summary of the important difference between SP3801 001-006 (Init TD sensor) and SP3811 001-006 (Dev Setup Exe):

- SP3801 001-006 (Init TD sensor) only initializes the TD sensor.
- SP3811 001-006 (Dev Setup Exe) initializes the TD sensor and sends toner to the sub hopper of each PCU. This covers the PCU drum with a layer of toner.

Covering the drum with toner prevents the cleaning blades from scratching or bending the drums. SP3811 is necessary only when both the developer and cleaning blade are replaced together. For the other procedures, if you send toner to the PCU, that toner is wasted.

# 3.5 PTR UNIT

## 3.5.1 RELAY SENSOR



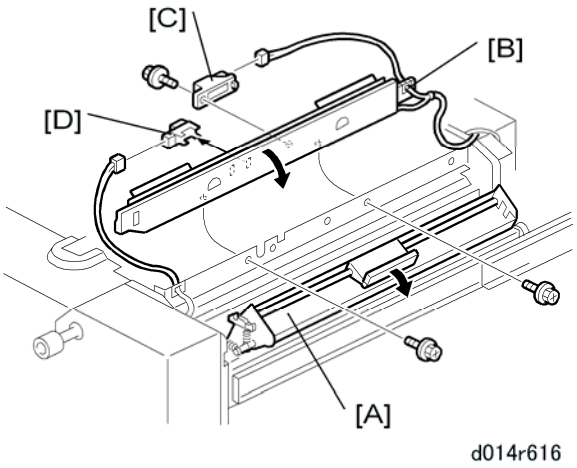

d014r615

1. Pull out the drawer unit.
2. Remove:
   [A] Sensor bracket (☞ x1)
   [B] Relay sensor (☞ x1)

**Reinstallation**

- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001.

## 3.5.2 DOUBLE-FEED DETECTION PHOTOSENSOR, REGISTRATION SENSOR

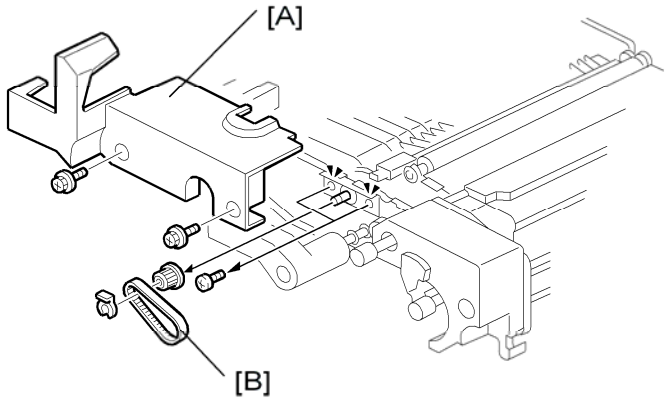



1. Pull out the drawer unit.
2. Open the guide plate [A].
3. Remove:
   [B] Sensor support plate (🔩 x2)
   [C] Double-feed detection photosensor (🖐x1, 🔩 x1)
   [D] Registration sensor (🖐 x1)

**Reinstallation**

- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001

## 3.5.3 PTR UNIT



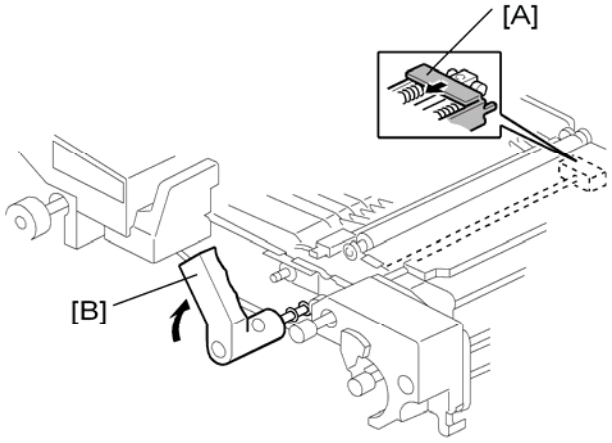

d014r302

1. Pull out the drawer unit.
2. Remove:

   [A] Paper transport unit cover (☞ x2)

   [B] Timing belt, gear (☞ x1)

   - Do not loosen or remove the paint-locked screws.

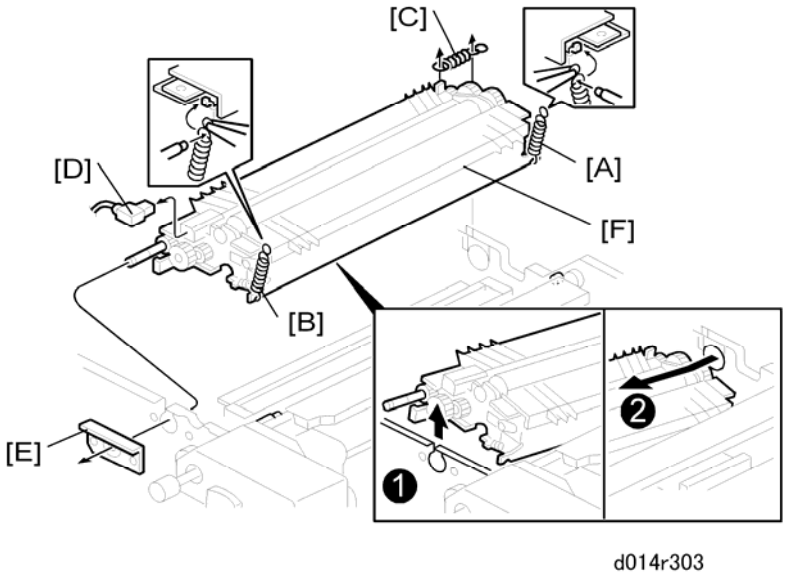



d014r302a

3. Remove:

   [A] Press the release forward

   [B] Raise the handle to the vertical position.



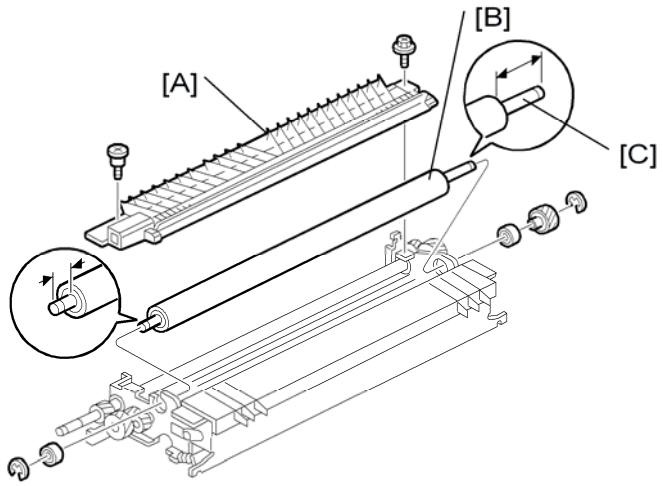



4. Change the position of:
   [A] Spring
   [B] Spring
5. Remove:
   [C] Spring
   [D] Connector (x1) (use a pair of small pliers to remove the connector)
   [E] Bracket (x2)
   [F] PTR Unit
   - The handle should be up.
   - Raise the front ①.
   - Pull the rear ②.

**Reinstallation**

- Be sure to set springs [A], [B], and [C] in their original positions before you re-install the PTR Unit.
- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001.

## 3.5.4 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER, DISCHARGE PLATE




1. Remove:
   - PTR Unit

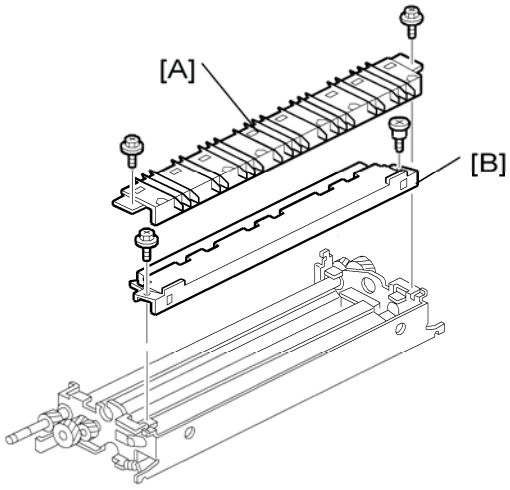
   [A] Paper transfer discharge plate (☞ x2)

   [B] Paper transfer roller (ℂ x2, Gear x1, Shaft bearings x2)

**Reinstallation**

- When you install the roller, the long end [C] is at the rear.
- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001.

## 3.5.5 LUBRICANT BAR




d014r305

Important

- Work carefully to avoid scratching the paper transfer roller.

1. Remove:
   - PTR Unit

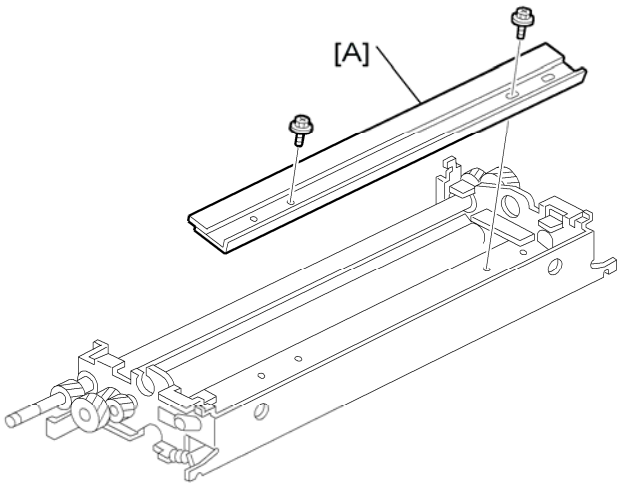
   [A] Entrance guide plate (x2)

   [B] Lubrication bar (x2)

**Reinstallation**

- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001

## 3.5.6 CLEANING BLADE




d014r306

1. Remove:
   - PTR Unit
   - Lubrication bar

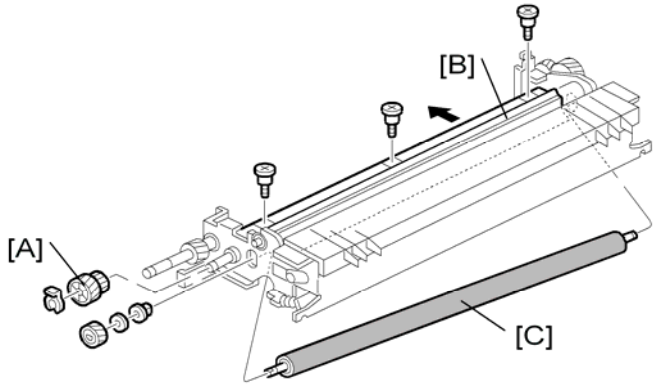
   [A] Cleaning blade (🔩 x2)

**Reinstallation**

- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001.

## 3.5.7 CLEANING BRUSH ROLLER

### *Replacement*



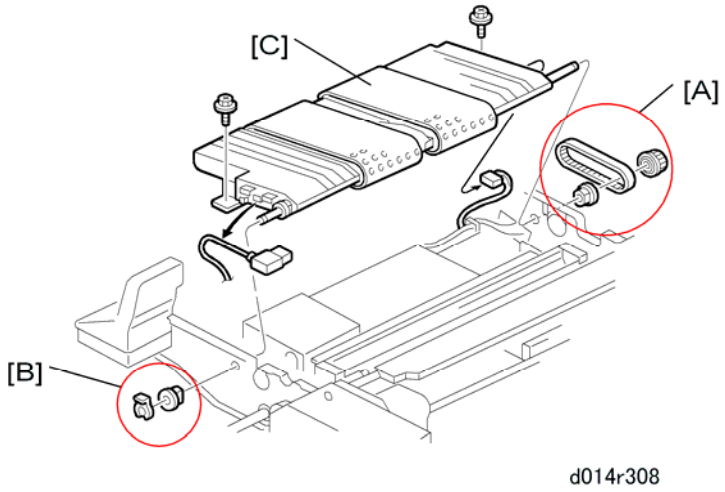

1. Remove:
   - PTR Unit
   - Transfer exit guide, paper transfer roller

   [A] Gear (x1, Gear x1)

   [B] Brush roller cover (x3)

   [C] Cleaning brush roller (Gear x1, Washer x1, Shaft bearing x1)

## 3.5.8 PAPER TRANSPORT BELT, PAPER SEPARATION POWER PACK

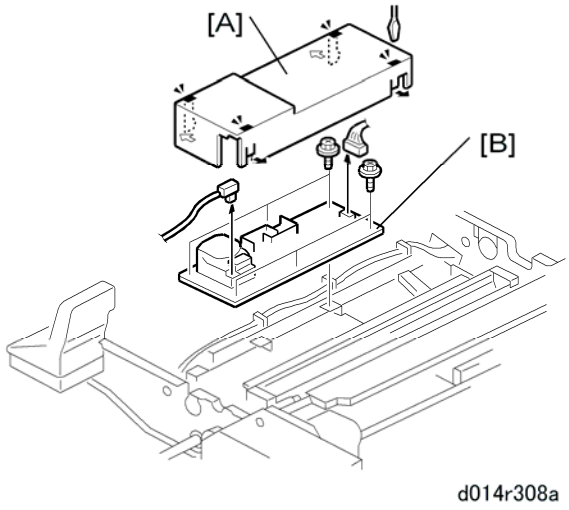



1. Pull out the drawer unit
2. Remove:
   - Paper transport unit lever and cover
   - Fusing unit

   [A] Timing belt x1, Gear x1, Shaft bearing x1

   [B] Snap ring x1, Shaft bearing

   [C] Paper transport belt (x2, x2)




3. Remove:

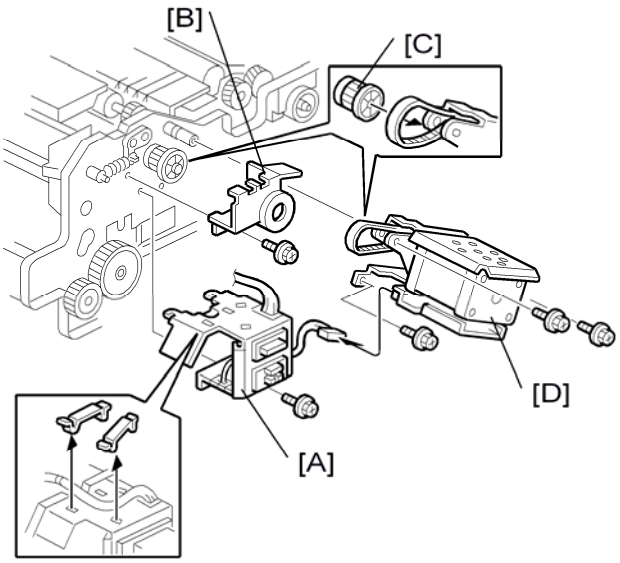
   [A] Cover

   [B] Separation power pack (x6, x2)

**Reinstallation**

- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001.

## 3.5.9 REGISTRATION MOTOR




d014r618

1. Remove:
   - Drawer unit

   [A] Drawer unit connector bracket (x1, x3, x2)

   [B] Gear cover (x1)

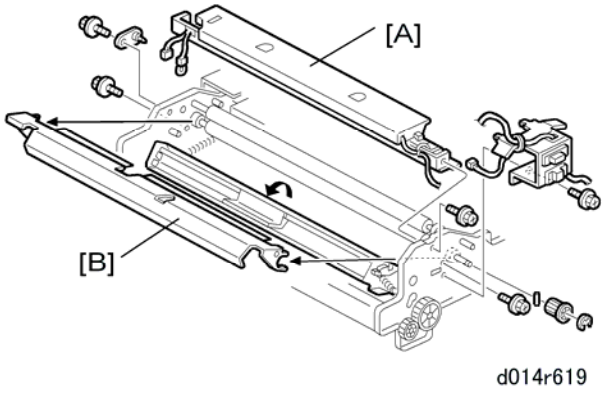
   [C] Registration gear (x1, Spring pin x1)

   [D] Registration motor assembly (x3, x1)

**Reinstallation**

- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001

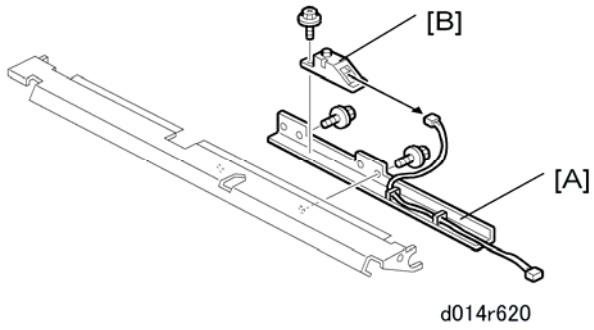
## 3.5.10 DOUBLE-FEED DETECTION LED




1. Remove:
   - Drawer unit
   - Drawer unit connector bracket
   - Registration motor
   - Sensor support plate
   - Registration motor inner cover (☞ x4)

   [A] Upper stay (☞ x2)

   [B] Lower stay (☞ x2, 🖑 x1)




2. Remove:

   [A] Sensor bracket (☞ x2)

   [B] Double-feed detection LED (☞ x1, 🖑 x1)

**Reinstallation**

- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP 2111 001.

# 3.6 IMAGE TRANSFER UNIT

## 3.6.1 EMPTYING THE DUST COLLECTION UNIT

ra_0911

1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the drawer unit.
3. Insert a sheet of A3 paper [A] under the dust collection unit.
4. Disconnect the dust collection unit [B].
5. Dump the paper dust from the dust collection unit [C] onto the paper [D].
6. Carefully remove the paper and discard.

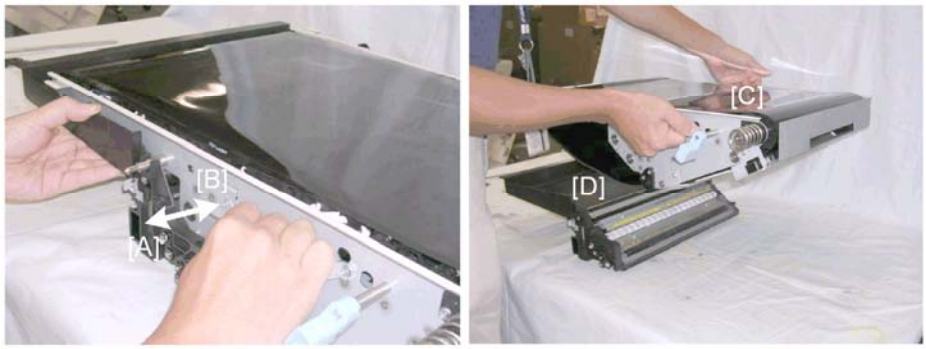
## 3.6.2 SEPARATING THE BELT UNIT AND BELT CLEANING UNIT

### *Disassembly and ITB Replacement*

1. Put a clean sheet of paper on a flat surface.
2. Remove the ITB from the machine.
3. Place the ITB unit on the sheet of paper.
   To prevent spilling used toner, always hold the unit level when you remove it, lift it, carry it, or set it down.

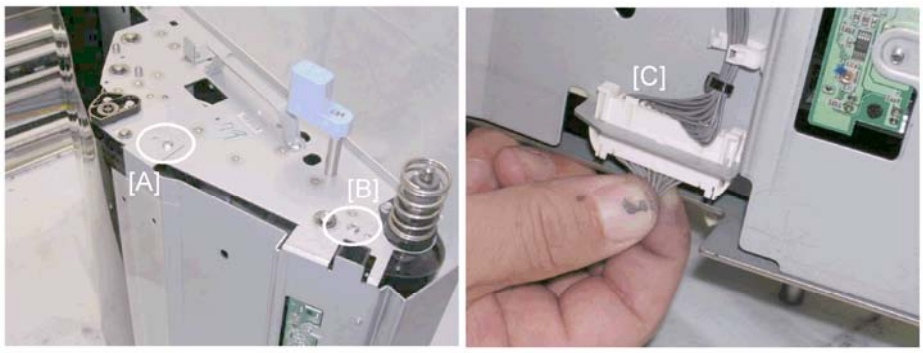
ra_0997

4. Remove screws [A] and [B] (🔩 x2).




ra_1001

5. Pull the ITB cleaning unit [A] forward while pushing the ITB belt unit backward to separate the cleaning unit from the belt unit.
6. Lift the belt unit [C] off the cleaning unit [D].



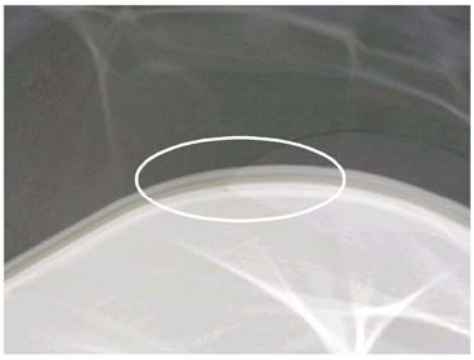

ra_1030

7. Remove:
   [A] Screw (x1)
   [B] Screw (x1)
8. Disconnect [C] (x1)

## 3.6.3 REASSEMBLING THE BELT UNIT AND BELT CLEANING UNIT

### *Before You Begin...*

Here are some important precautions you should obey when reassembling the ITB Unit.



ra_0958

- When you install the new belt, the edge of the belt with the encoder film strip must be at the back of the unit with the image position sensor. The encoder edge of the ITB is silver.

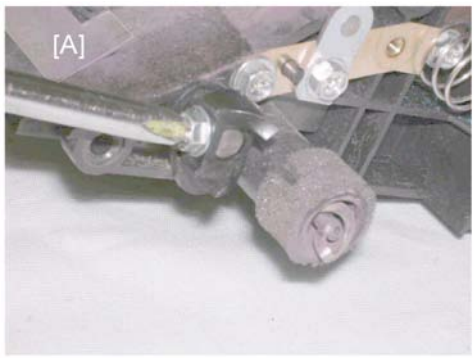
ra_0960

- Never touch the ITB rollers when removing/installing the belt. If a roller (or the surface of the belt) is touched accidentally, moisten a clean cloth and clean the affected area.

ra_0959



- Make sure that the belt is even with the edge of the roller as shown above.




ra_1026

- When reinstalling the ITB cleaning brush roller, confirm that the seal [A] is on top and visible.
- Always dust the ITB with lubricant powder before reinstalling the ITB unit in the machine.

## *Reassembling the Belt Unit and Cleaning Unit*

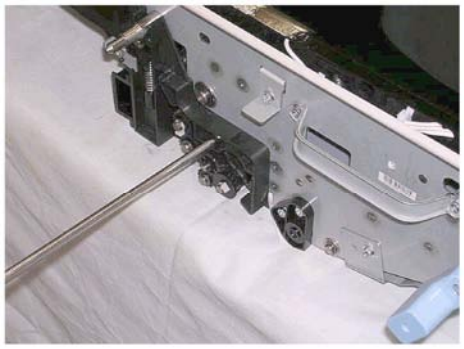
ra_0952

1. Insert one sheet of A4/LT paper under the lubricant blade as shown to protect the corner seals of the belt cleaning unit.

   Important

   - The paper should be under the under the blade as shown above, not over the blade.

2. Lower the belt unit [A] onto the cleaning unit [B].



ra_1041

3. Reassemble the belt unit and belt cleaning unit.

ra_1042

4. Set the reassembled ITB unit on end as shown.
5. Pull the paper out slowly.
6. Check the paper.

   If the paper is unmarked, go to the next step.

   -or-

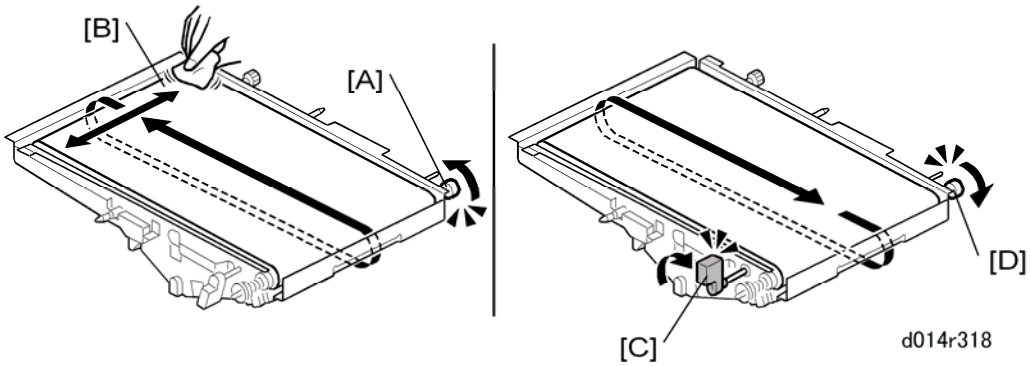
   If the paper is creased or torn, separate the image transfer belt and cleaning unit.

   Inspect the seal. If the seal is damaged, replace it.

## *Dusting the ITB with Lubricant Powder*

1. Get a pack of Lubricant Powder B1329700.
   - The ITB must be coated with lubricant powder B1329700 before installing a new ITB.
   - The lubricant powder (B1329700) (composed of ZnSt) is specially designed for this machine.
   - Never use setting powder (54429101) for this machine. Using this setting power will damage the drum charge roller and cause problems with image quality.

     Important
     - Do not use the yellow toner from this machine, because it contains developer, and this will damage the drum and ITB.



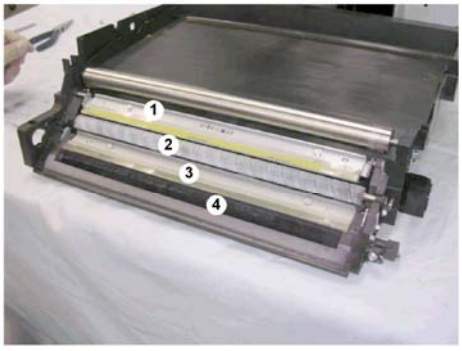

2. While rotating the knob [A] in the direction indicated by the arrow, apply Lubricant Powder B1329700 at [B] with a soft dry cloth.
3. Keep rotating the ITB at [A] while continuing to apply the powder at [B] through one full rotation until the ITB is completely covered with powder.
4. After the ITB has been completely covered with the lubricating powder, turn lever [C] to the up position.
5. After the ITB is completely covered with powder, rotate the knob [D] in the direction indicated by the arrow.
6. Keep rotating the knob at [D] until the ITB has made one full rotation. This reverse rotation covers the edge of the belt cleaning blade with lubrication powder.

**Reinstallation**

- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP2111-1.

## 3.6.4 ITB CLEANING UNIT

This is the ITB cleaning unit with the belt unit removed.




ra_1003

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Lubricant Blade |
| ② | Lubricant Brush Roller*1 |
| ③ | ITB Cleaning Blade |
| ④ | ITB Brush Cleaning Roller |

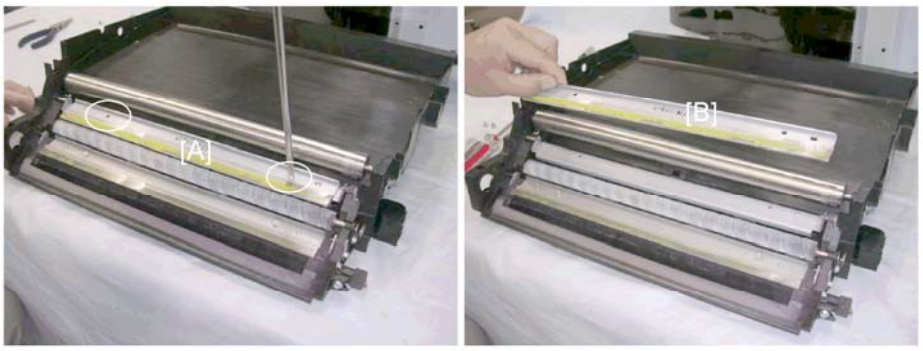
*1 A lubricant bar is under the lubricant brush roller.

Before servicing the cleaning unit, please note:

- The lubricant blade ① and ITB cleaning blade ③ are not the same, so they are not interchangeable.
- The PM interval of the lubricant blade ① and lubricant brush roller ② pair and the ITB cleaning blade ③ and ITB brush cleaning roller ④ pair is the same (300K). These four items are always replaced together.

Image Transfer Unit

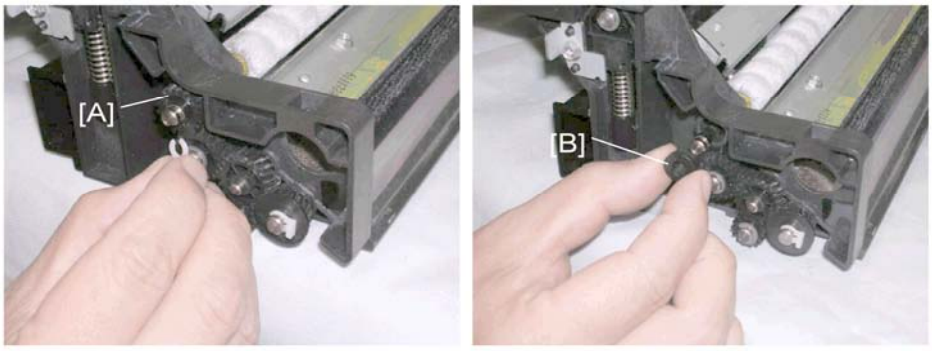
## *Lubricant Blade*




ra_1005

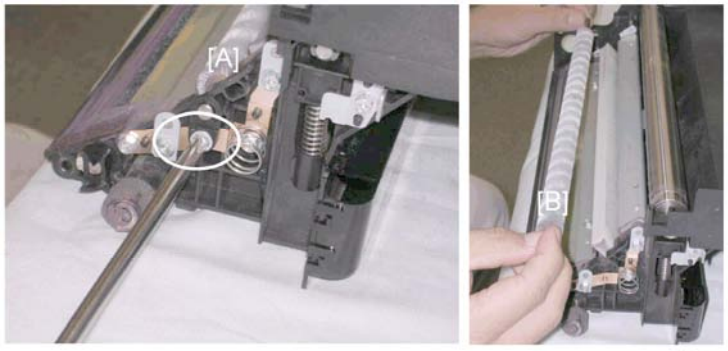
1. Remove the screws of the lubricant blade [A] (x2).
2. Remove the lubricant blade [B].

## *Lubricant Brush Roller, Lubricant Bar*




ra_1008

1. At the back, remove:
   [A] Gear (x1)
   [B] Coupling




ra_1012

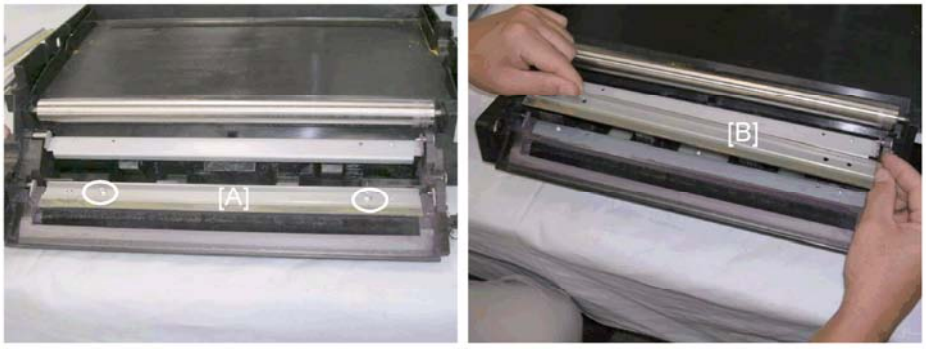
2. At the front, remove screw [A] (x1).

3. Remove the lubricant brush roller [B].

ra_1016

4. Remove the lubricant bar [A]

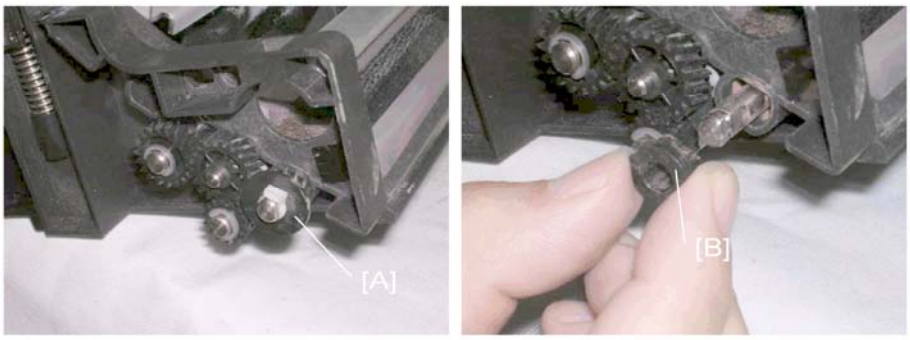
## *ITB Cleaning Blade*




ra_1017

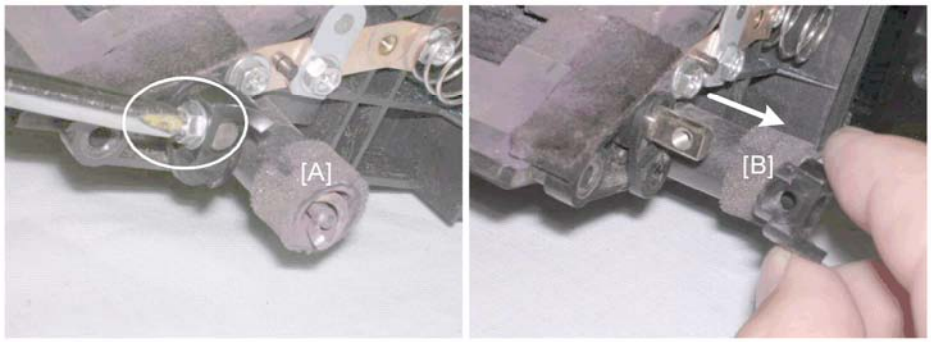
1. Remove the screws of the ITB cleaning blade [A] (x2).
2. Remove the ITB cleaning blade [B].

## *ITB Brush Cleaning Roller*




ra_1021

1. Remove the ITB cleaning blade (x2).
2. At the rear:
   - Remove gear [A] (x1).
   - Remove coupling [B].



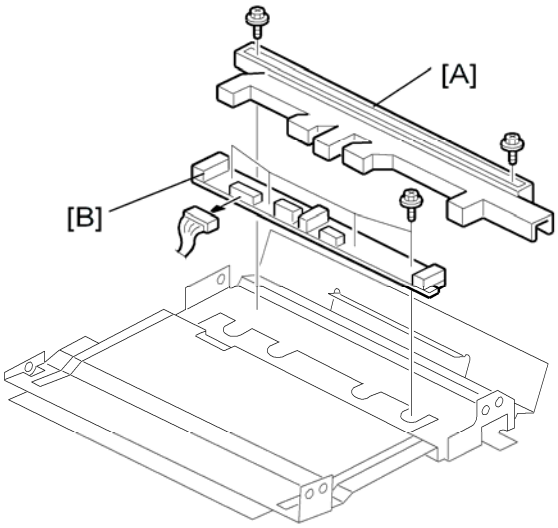

ra_1027

3. At the front:
   - Remove screw [A] (x1)
   - Remove coupling [B].

ra_1028

4. Remove sponge and seal casing [A].
5. Remove the ITB brush cleaning roller [B].

## 3.6.5 MUSIC AND ID SENSORS




d014r332

1. Remove
   - ID sensor/MUSIC sensor plate

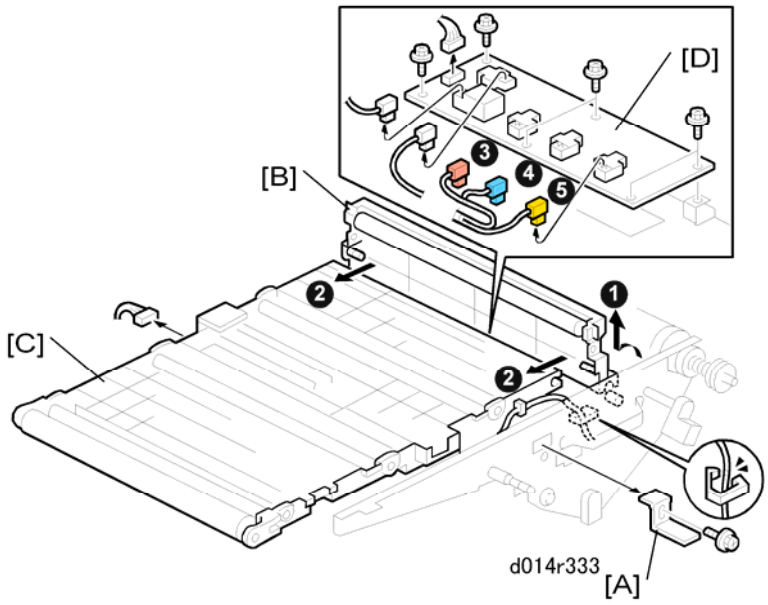
   [A] Cover (x2)

   [B] MUSIC and ID sensors (x4, x1)

**Reinstallation**

- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP2111-1.

## 3.6.6 IMAGE TRANSFER POWER PACK




1. Remove:
   - ITB

   [A] Support bracket (🔩 x1)

   [B] Small idle roller plate

   [C] Large idle roller plate

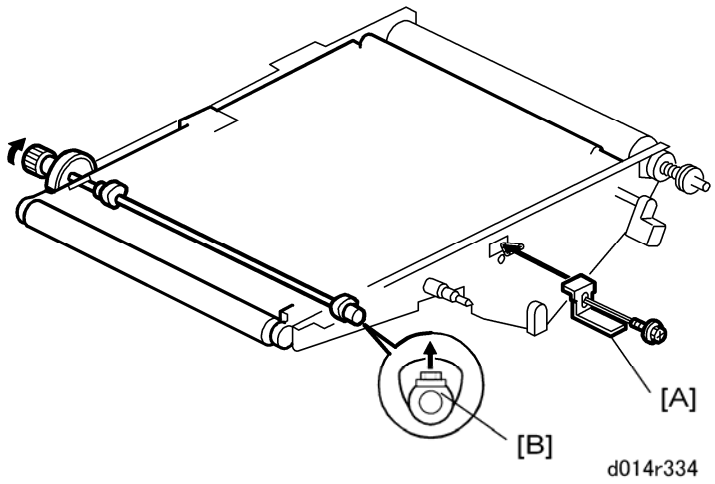
   [D] Image transfer power pack (🔩 x6, 🖐 x6)
2. Note the correct positions of the color coded connectors when you disconnect them, so that you can reconnect them correctly:

   ③ Red

   ④ Blue

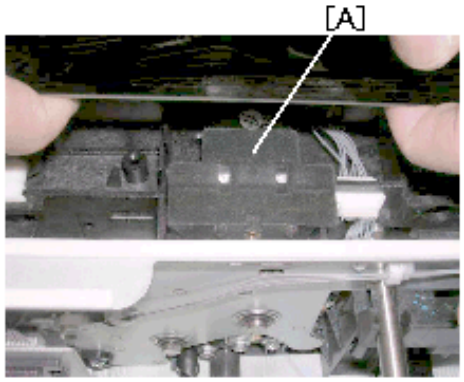
   ⑤ Yellow

**Reinstallation**




- When you reattach the support bracket [A], rotate the screw [B] up as shown, then tighten it.
- Do the forced MUSIC adjustment with SP2111-1.

## 3.6.7 BELT POSITION SENSOR




ra_1044

1. Remove:

- ITB

  [A] Belt position sensor assembly (x2, x1)

**Reinstallation**

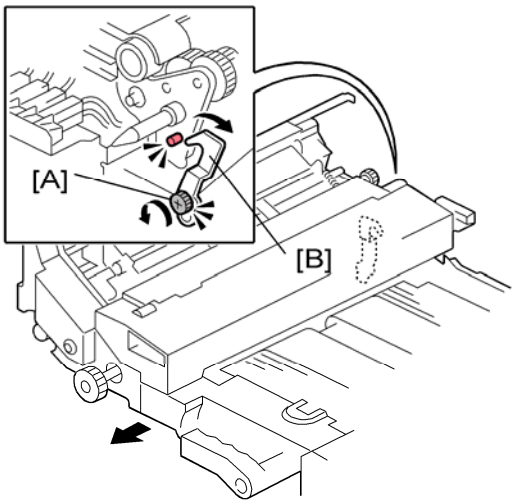
After the reinstallation of the new sensor, do the following SP codes:

- SP2912-1 (Encoder Sn: Adj Light)
- SP2914-1 (Encoder Sn Get 1st Phase)
- SP2111-1 (Forced MUSIC Adjustment)

# 3.7 FUSING UNIT

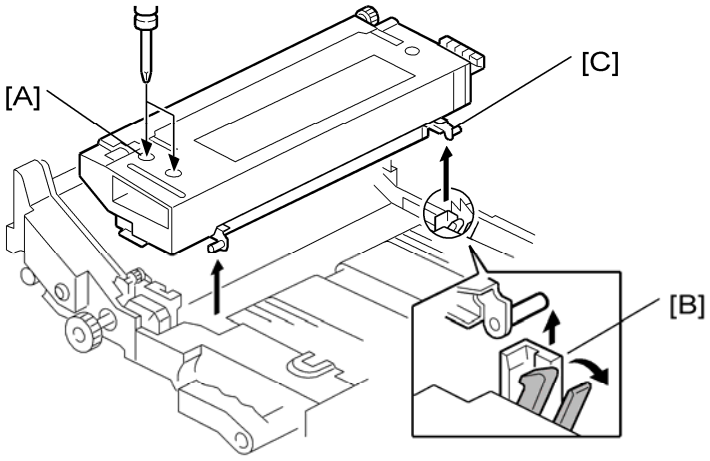
## 3.7.1 REMOVING THE FUSING UNIT

1. Turn off the copier and disconnect the power cord at the power source.
2. Open the front door.
3. Pull out the drawer unit.
4. Allow the machine to cool for at least 10 minutes.




d014r401

5. At the back of the fusing unit, loosen the screw of the lock/release lever [A]. (Do not remove the screw.)
6. Rotate the lever [B] away from the pin, then tighten the screw with the lever in the open position. (Tightening the screw keeps the lever at the open position so that the fusing unit can be reinstalled easily.)




d014r402

Fusing Unit

7. Loosen both screws [A] (☞ x2). (These screws cannot be removed.)
8. Press down both levers [B] (front and back) to unlock (to release the pins [C] at front and back).
9. Lift the fusing unit out of the drawer.
10. Set the fusing unit on a clean surface.

**Reinstallation**

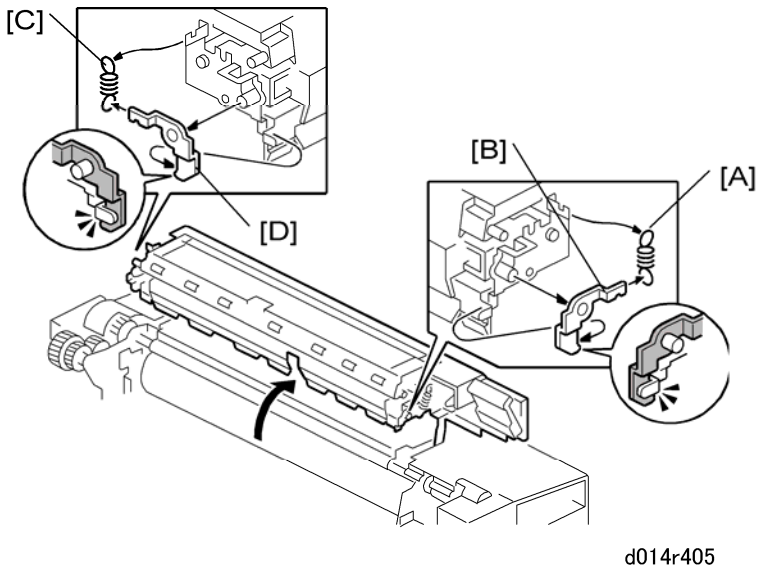
- Before setting the fusing unit in the drawer, make sure that the lock/release lever is in the open position.
- After reinstalling the fusing unit, make sure that the lock/release lever is in the locked position and finger tight before you close the drawer unit.
- If the lock/release lever is not locked, this could cause a problem if power is turned off accidentally during copying. If this occurs, the drawer unit can be pulled out, but the user may not be able to push it back in because the fusing unit is still pressed up by the cam. Do the following to reset the cam.
    1. Remove the fusing unit from the drawer unit.
    2. Close the drawer, then close the front door.
    3. Turn the main power on. The cam moves down.
    4. Open the drawer and put the fusing unit back in the machine.
    5. Confirm that the lock/release lever is in the locked position.
    6. Close the drawer unit and front door.

## 3.7.2 FUSING CLEANING UNIT

### *Fusing Belt Strippers*

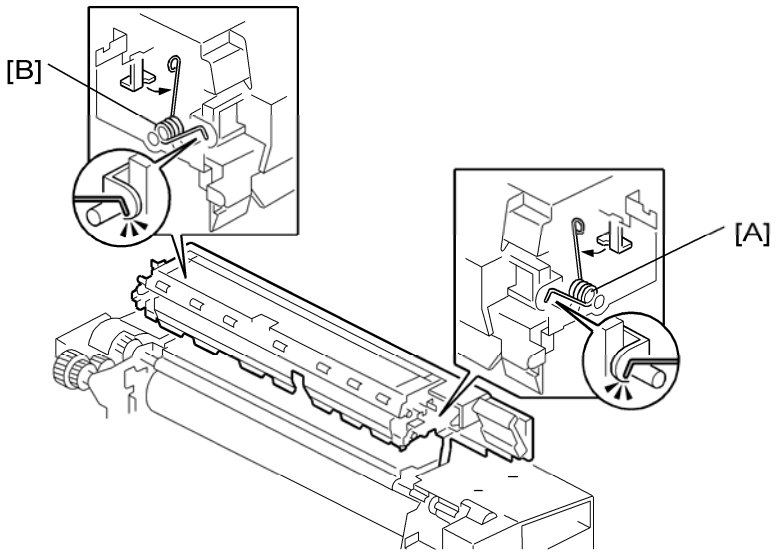
**Preparation**

- Remove the fusing unit from the machine.
- Allow the unit to cool for at least 10 minutes.
- Raise **D2** to a 45° slant.

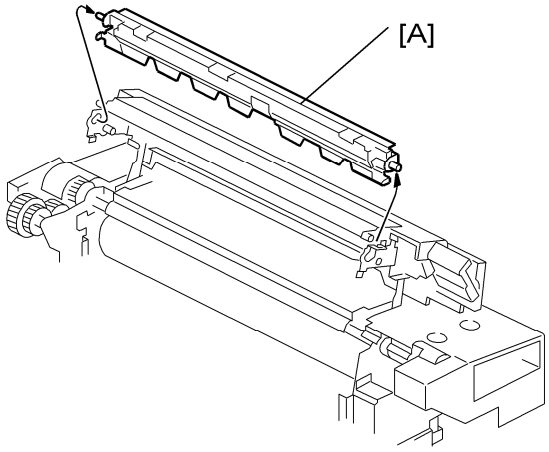



1. Remove:
   [A] Spring
   [B] Plate
   [C] Spring
   [D] Plate

Fusing Unit

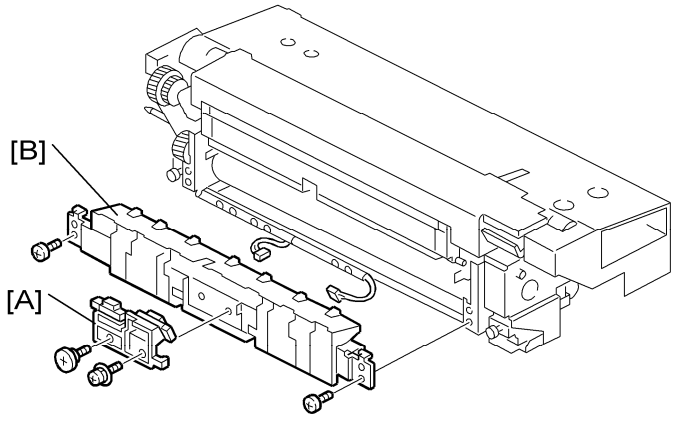



2. Remove:
   [A] Spring
   [B] Spring

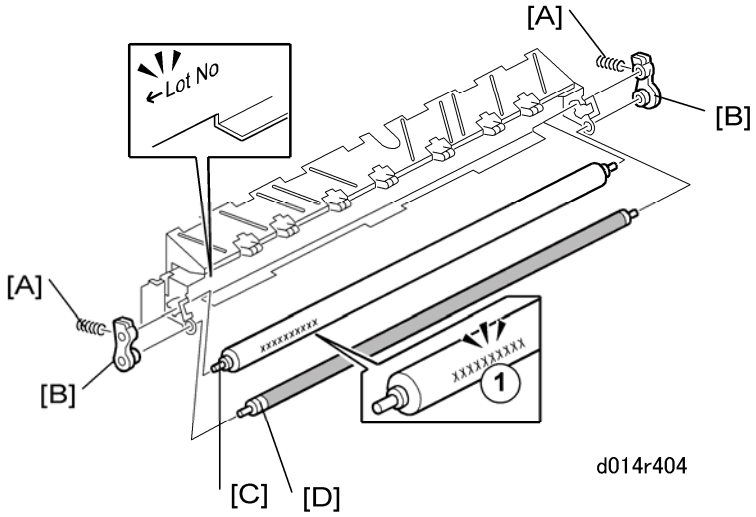



1. Remove fusing belt stripper plate [A] with strippers attached.

## *Oil Supply Roller Cleaning Roller, Oil Supply Roller*




1. Remove:
   [A] Paper exit sensor bracket (x2, x2)
   [B] Paper exit guide (x2)

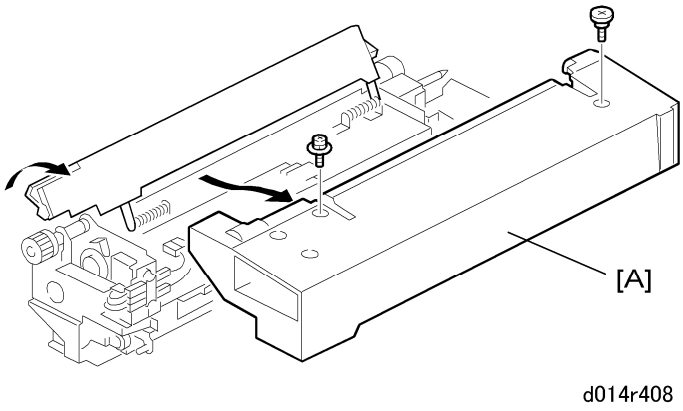



2. Remove:
   [A] Spring (Front x1, Back x1)
   [B] Lock plate (Front x1, Back x1)
   [C] Oil supply roller
   [D] Oil supply roller cleaning roller

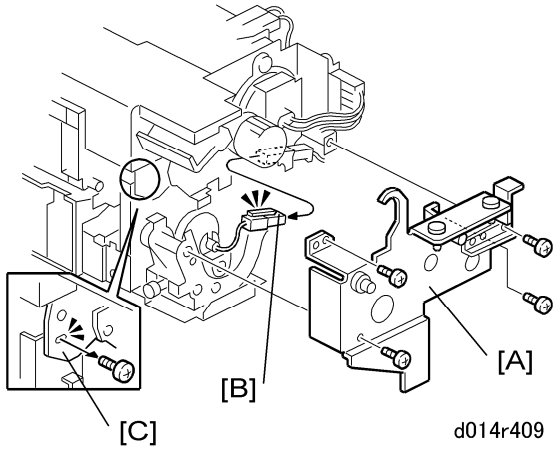
**Reinstallation**

- The end of the oil supply roller with the number ① above must be installed at the front of the fusing cleaning belt unit.

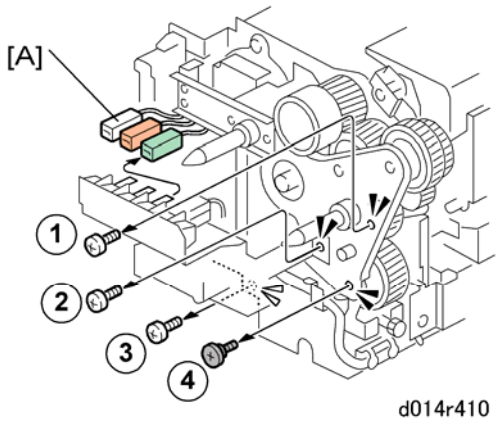
## 3.7.3 FUSING LAMPS, DIVIDING THE FUSING UNIT




1. Remove:
   [A] Fusing unit cover (x2)



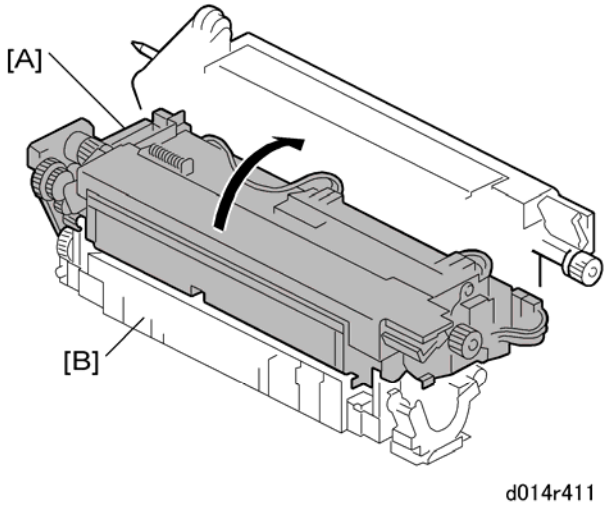

2. Remove:
   [A] Bracket (x4)
   [B] Connector (x1)
   [C] Screw (x1)



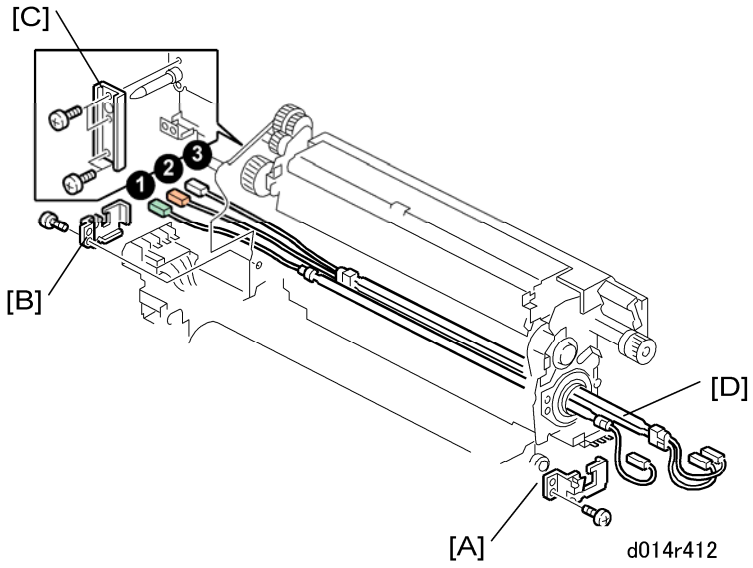
3. Disconnect

   [A] Fusing lamps (☜ x3)

4. Remove screws ①, ②, ③ (normal screws) ④ (step screw) (☞ x3)




5. Separate the two halves of the fusing unit [A] and [B].




6. Remove:

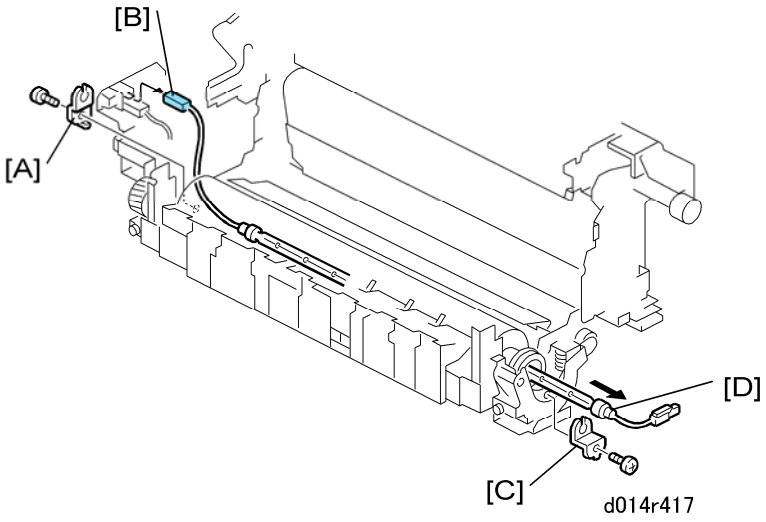
   [A] Lock plate (☞ x1)

   [B] Lock plate (☞ x1)

   [C] Bracket (☞ x4)

   [D] Heating roller fusing lamps (☜ x3)

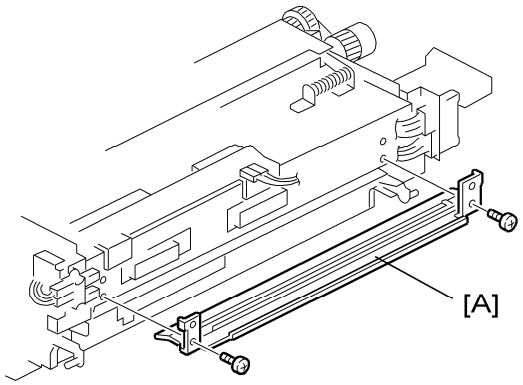
Fusing Unit




7. Remove:
   [A] Lock plate (x1)
   [B] Connector (x1)
   [C] Lock plate (x1)
   [D] Pressure roller fusing lamp (x1)

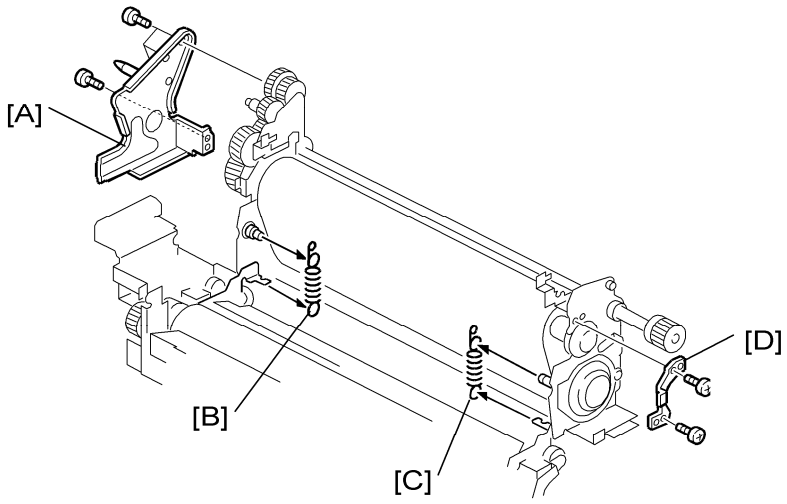
## 3.7.4 FUSING UNIT ROLLERS, FUSING BELT

### *Removing the Fusing Belt, Hot Roller, Heating Roller, Pressure Roller*




d014r413

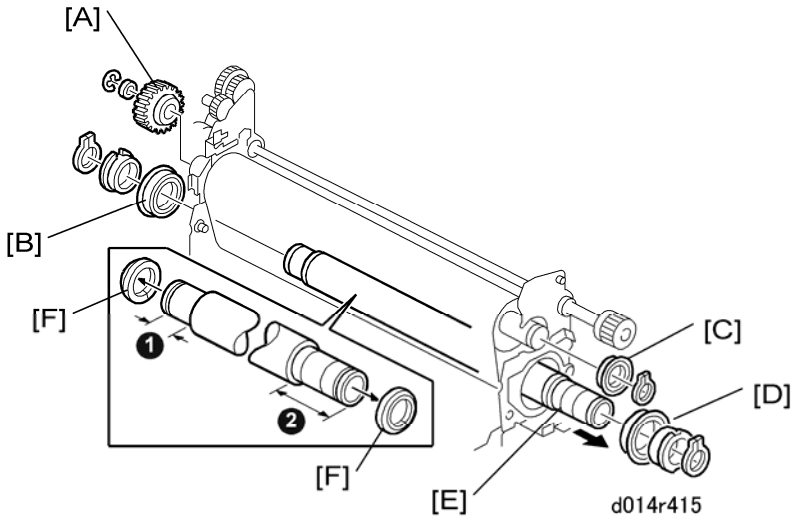
1. Remove:
   [A] Upper entrance guide plate (☞ x2)




d014r414

2. Remove:
   [A] Plate (☞ x4)
   [B] Spring x1
   [C] Spring x1
   [D] Bracket (☞ x2)

Fusing Unit




3. Remove:

   [A] Gear, bushing (ℂ x1)

   [B] Bearing, bushing (C-ring x1)

   **Note**: The flanges of the bearing and the bushing face out for reinstallation.

   [C] Bearing (C-ring x1)

   **Note**: The bearing flange faces out for reinstallation.

   [D] Bearing, bushing (C-ring x1)

   **Note**: The flanges of bearing and the bushing face out for reinstallation.

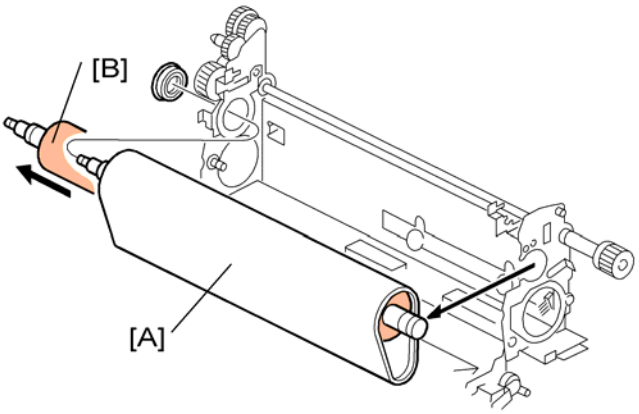
   [E] Heating roller

   **Note**:

   - Flanges [F] should be separated from the heating roller.
   - Flanges [F] should be reused with the new roller if the heating roller is replaced.

   **Reinstallation**

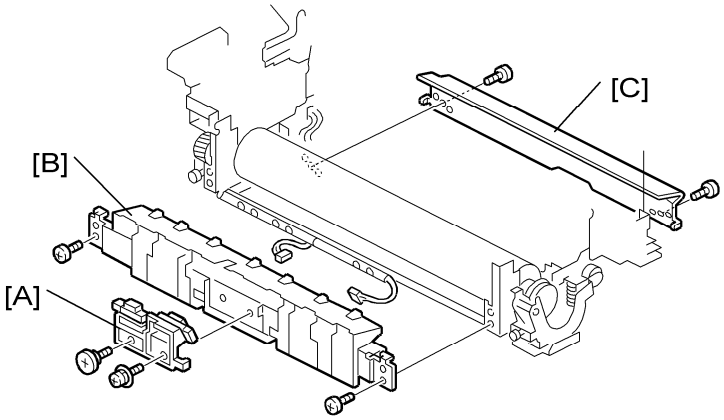
- Make sure that the ends of the heating roller are arranged as shown by ① and ② in the illustration above. (① is shorter than ②.)




d014r416



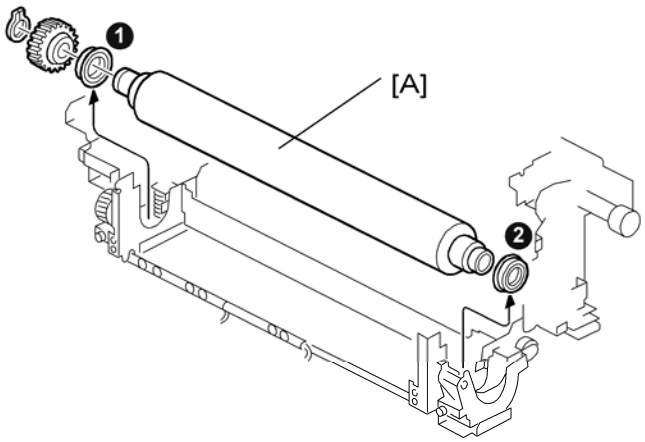
1. Remove:
   [A] Fusing belt
   [B] Hot roller




d014r418

2. Remove:
   [A] Paper exit sensor bracket (x2, x2)
   [B] Paper exit guide (x2)
   [C] Lower entrance guide plate (x2)

Fusing Unit




3. Remove:
   [A] Pressure roller (C-ring x1, gear x1, bearings x2)
   **Note**: The flanges of bearings ① and ② face in for reinstallation.

## *Lubrication after Replacement*

Lubricate all bearings after replacement of the hot roller, pressure roller, and/or heating roller.

For details on the lubrication points, please refer to ‘Lubrication Points’ in ‘2. Preventive Maintenance’.

## *Adjusting the Gap Between Fusing Belt Strippers and Fusing Belt*

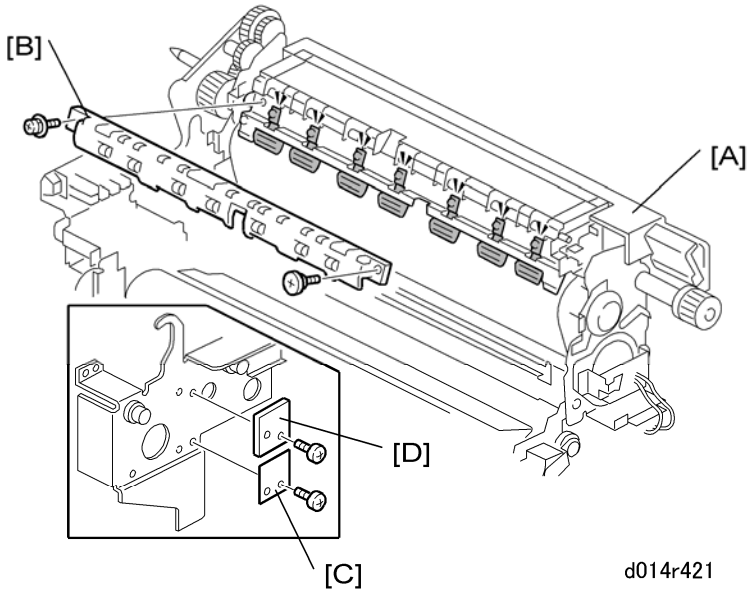
After replacement of the hot roller, the gap between the fusing belt strippers and the fusing belt may need to be adjusted. Normally this procedure is not required. Do this procedure only when:

- Paper has been frequently sticking to the fusing belt and jamming the fusing unit.
- Streaking caused by fusing belt stripper pawls has been occurring frequently in solid image areas.

Important

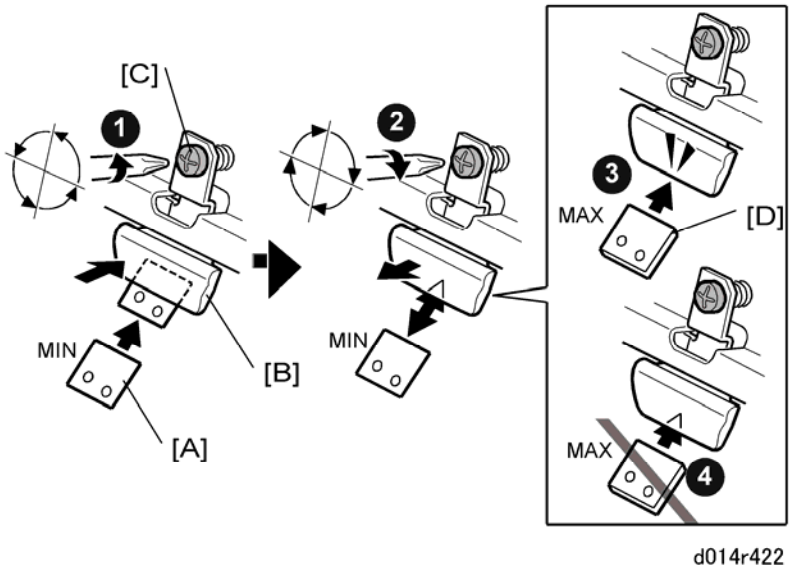
- Do this procedure to adjust the gaps only after the fusing unit has been allowed to cool. If the fusing unit is still warm when the adjustments are done, the gap adjustment may not be within specification.

1. Reinstall the fusing belt and hot roller.





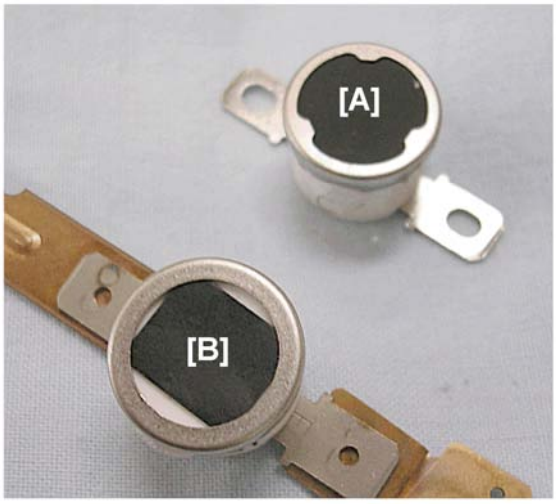

2. Separate the two halves of the fusing unit [A].
3. Remove:
   [B] Fusing belt separation pawl guide plate (☞ x2)
   [C] MIN thickness plate (☞ x1)
   [D] MAX thickness plate (☞ x1)




4. Insert MIN thickness plate [A] between the separation pawl [B] and fusing belt.
5. Turn screw [C] in 90 degree steps to adjust the gap to the thickness of the MIN thickness plate inserted between the pawl and belt.
   - Turning the screw 90 degrees counter-clockwise ① reduces the gap.
   - Turning the screw 90 degrees clockwise ② increases the gap.

6. Remove the MIN thickness plate.
7. Confirm that the MAX thickness plate [D] cannot slip between the separation pawl and the fusing belt.
   - If the MAX thickness plate cannot slip between the separation pawl and fusing belt ③, no further adjustment is necessary.
   - If the MAX thickness plate can slip between the separation pawl and fusing belt ④, repeat from Step 5 to reduce the gap.
8. Repeat this procedure from Step 4 for every separation pawl.
9. After the gaps have been adjusted for every pawl, reinstall the MIN and MAX thickness plates.

## 3.7.5 IMPORTANT WARNING ABOUT THERMOSTATS




ra_0978

The old type of thermostat [A] has been replaced with a new type of thermostat [B]. The new type has a rectangular cover with exposed edges.

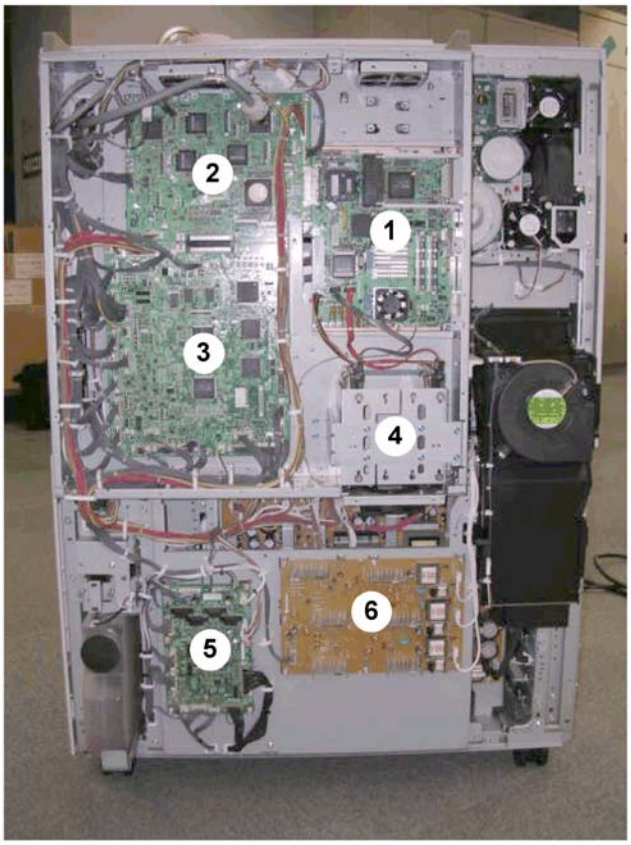
**⚠WARNING**

- Never attempt to reset a blown thermostat by manipulating the edges of the black cover with a screw driver. Resetting a thermostat manually could cause a failure to detect overheating in the fusing unit and cause a fire hazard.

# 3.8 BOARDS

## 3.8.1 PCB LAYOUT

**Controller Box Closed**

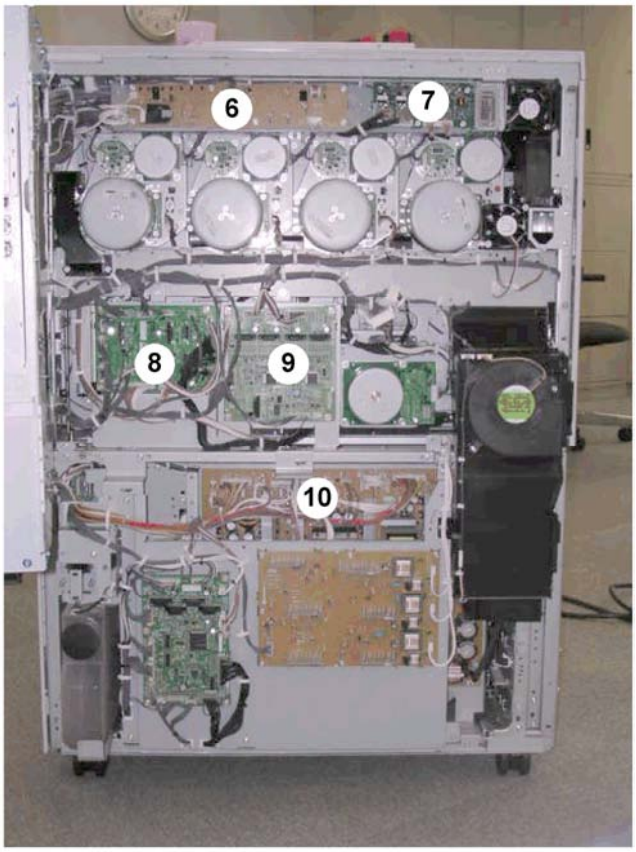



ra_1097

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Controller Board |
| ② | IPU Board |
| ③ | VBCU Board |
| ④ | HDD Unit |
| ⑤ | PFB (Paper Feed Board) |
| ⑥ | HVPS (High Voltage Power Supply) |

Boards

**Controller Box Open**




ra_1098

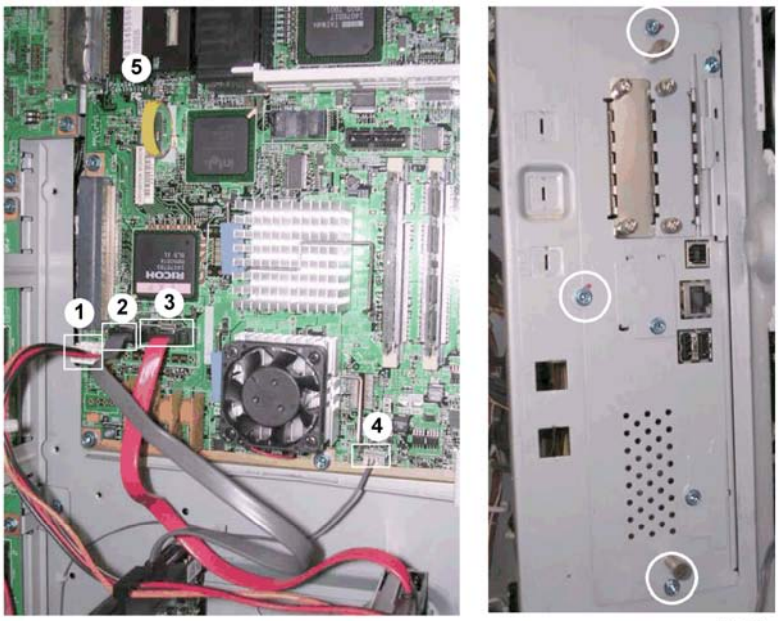
| | |
|---|---|
| ⑥ | Charge Roller Power Pack |
| ⑦ | Potential Sensor Power Pack |
| ⑧ | DRB (Motor Drive Board) |
| ⑨ | DTMB (Drum Transfer Motor Board) |
| ⑩ | PSU |

**Left Lower Cover Removed**

temp_0875

| | |
|---|---|
| ⑪ | AC Drive Board |

## 3.8.2 CONTROLLER




ra_1099

Important

- The controller box cover should always be removed so that the controller board can be disconnected before removal of the controller board.
- Never attempt to pull the controller unit out of the machine until you have removed the box cover and disconnected the controller board.
- If you attempt to pull the controller unit out of the machine without first disconnecting the board, you will break or damage the connectors.

1. Remove the controller box cover (☞ x16)
2. Disconnect four connectors ①, ②, ③, ④(☞ x4).
3. Remove the screws (☞ x3).
4. Remove the controller board.

### *When installing the new controller board*

Important

- The machine will issue SC195 (Machine Serial Number Error) if you fail to do the procedure below.

1. Remove the NVRAMs ⑤ from the old controller board. (See previous illustration.)
2. Install them on the new controller board after you replace the controller board.
3. Replace the NVRAMs if the NVRAM on the old controller board is defective.

Note

- Make sure you print out the SMC reports ("SP Mode Data" and "Logging Data") before you replace the NVRAMs.

**CAUTION**

- Keep NVRAMs away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage NVRAM data.
- Make sure the NVRAMs are correctly installed on the controller board.
- Make sure that the DIP-switch settings on the old controller board are the same for the new controller board. Do not change the DIP switches on the controller board in the field.

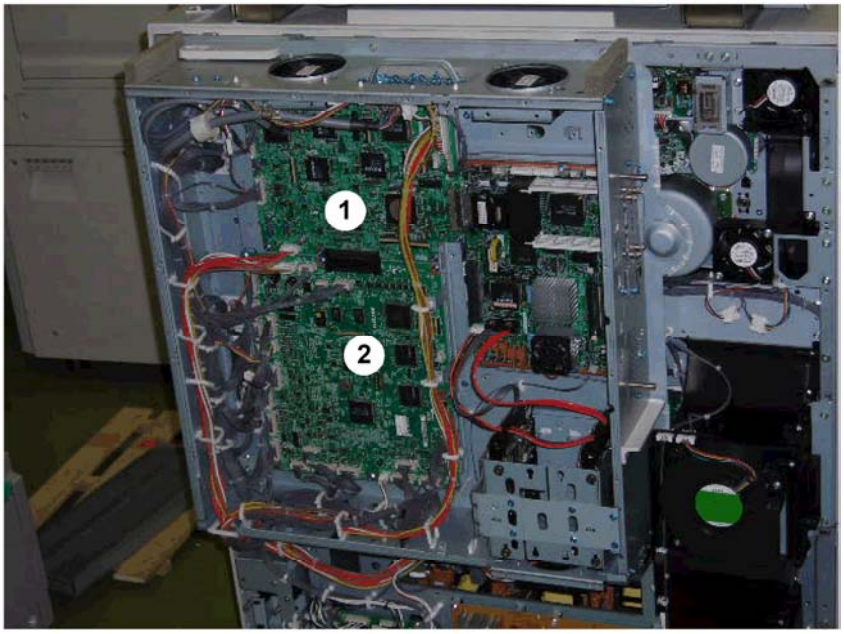


### *After installing the controller board*

1. For a model without a HDD, do **SP5846-052** to copy back the address book to the flash ROM on the controller board from the SD card to which you have already copied the address book data if possible.
2. For a model in which the HDD encryption unit has been installed, restoring the encryption key is required. Refer to "Recovery from a Device Problem" in the installation procedure for the HDD Encryption Unit.
3. Turn the main power switch off/on.

## 3.8.3 IPU/VBCU

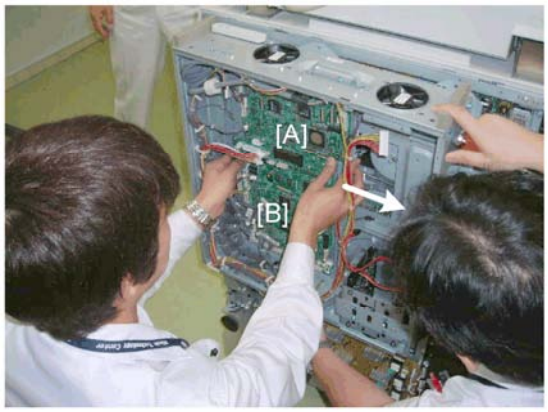
### *IPU/VBCU Removal*




temp_0866

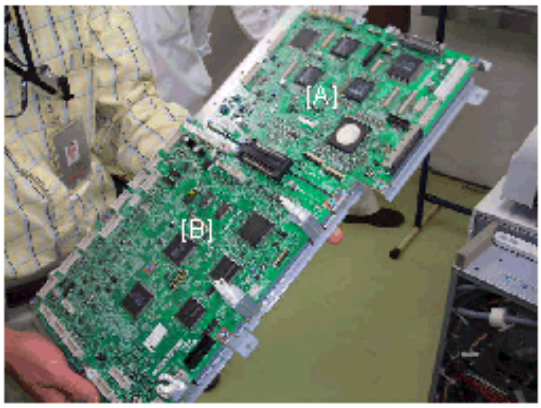
**Before You Begin…**

- The IPU ① and VBCU ② are connected and mounted on same plate. They must be removed together.
- The controller board must be removed before the IPU/VBCU can be removed.




temp_1001

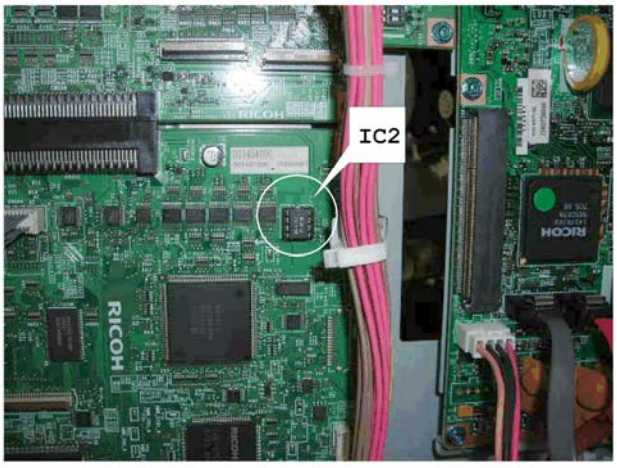
1. Remove the controller board.
2. Disconnect the boards.
   [A] IPU (☞ x8)
   [B] VBCU (☞ x26)
3. Slide the plate with the boards attached to the right.




temp_1003

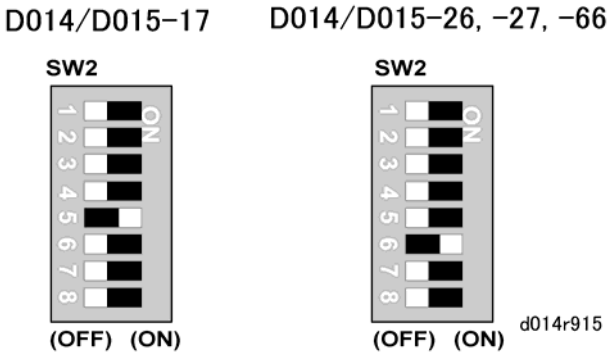
4. Remove the boards from the frame.
   [A] IPU (🔩 x8)
   [B] VBCU (🔩 x9)

## *VBCU Replacement*




d014r501

1. Remove the EEPROM from the old VBCU. (The EEPROM shown above is marked "IC2" with a notation on the board.)
2. Install the EEPROM on the new VBCU.
3. Set the DIP SW (SW2) for the machine as shown below.




d014r915

## 3.8.4 HDD

The HDD contains two separate hard disks (160 Gigabytes each x2 = 320 Gigabytes).

Important

- The two disks are always replaced together as a unit. Never attempt to replace a single disk.

### *Before replacing the HDD unit*

Copy the address book data to an SD card from the HDD with **SP5846-051** if possible.

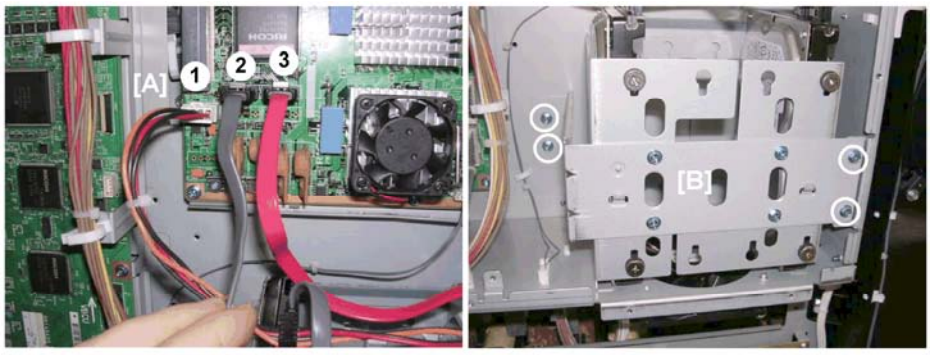
### *Replacement Procedure*

1. Remove:
   - Rear covers
   - Controller box cover
2. Mark the harness connectors before you disconnect them:

- Gray: Left
- Red: Right

Important

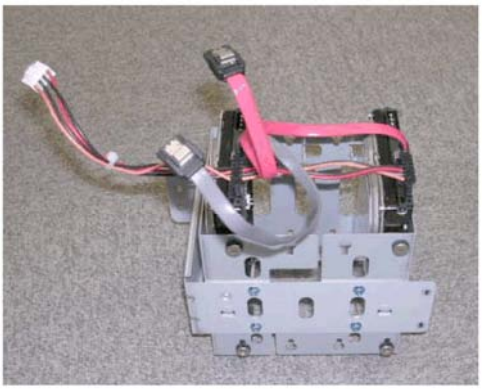
- The connectors fit either socket but they must be connected in the correct order as shown above: Gray: Left, Red: Right
- If the connections are reversed, the machine will issue an error at startup.
- If this occurs just reconnect the HDD correctly and start again. The HDD will not be damaged by such an incorrect startup.




ra_1101

1. Disconnect the HDD unit from the controller board [A] (x3).
2. Remove the HDD unit [B] (x4).

Boards



ra_1103

3. Install the new HDD unit.
4. Reassemble the machine.
5. Enter the SP mode and do SP5832-1 to format the hard disks.

Note

- Formatting the hard disks is recommended, even if they have already been formatted.

6. Do SP5853-1 to download the fixed stamps from the ROM to the HDD.
7. Cycle the machine power off/on to enable the fixed stamps for use.

### *After installing the new HDD unit*

1. Do **SP5832-001** to format the hard disk.
2. Do **SP5853-001** to copy the preset stamp data from the firmware to the hard disk.
3. Do **SP5846-052** to copy back the address book to the hard disk from the SD card to which you have already copied the address book data if possible.
4. Turn the main power switch off/on.

**Disposal of HDD Units**

- Never remove an HDD unit from the work site without the consent of the client.
- If the customer has any concerns about the security of any information on the HDD, the HDD must remain with the customer for disposal or safe keeping.
- The HDD may contain proprietary or classified (Confidential, Secret) information. Specifically, the HDD contains document server documents and data stored in temporary files created automatically during copy job sorting and jam recovery. Such data is stored on the HDD in a special format so it cannot normally be read but can be recovered with illegal methods.

**Reinstallation**

- Explain to the customer that the following information stored on the HDD is lost when the HDD is replaced: document server documents, fixed stamps, document server

address book

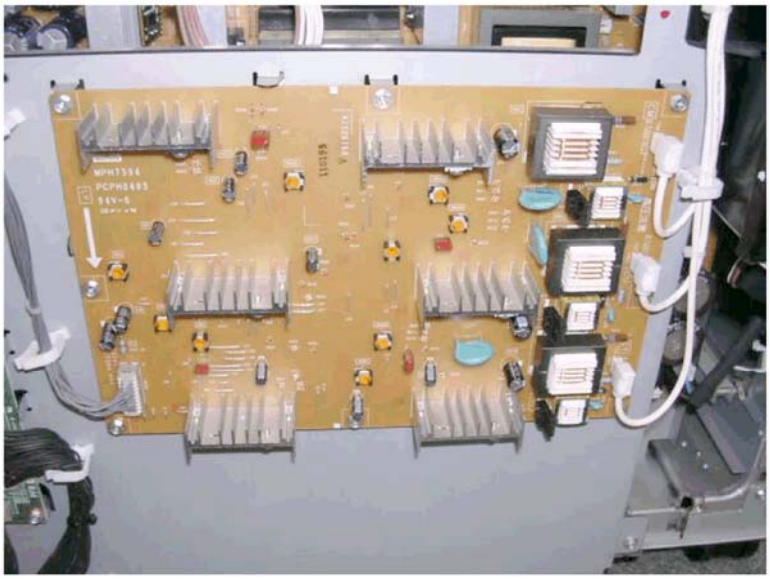
- The address book and document server documents (if needed) must be input again.
- If the customer is using the Data Overwrite Security or the Data Encryption feature, these applications must be installed again. For more, see Section "1. Installation".
- If the customer is using the HDD Encryption Unit, the encryption key must be restored after replacing the HDD unit. For details, see the installation procedure for the HDD Encryption Unit.

## 3.8.5 PFB

ra_1104

1. Remove the PFB (x14, x6).

## 3.8.6 HVPS



ra_1105

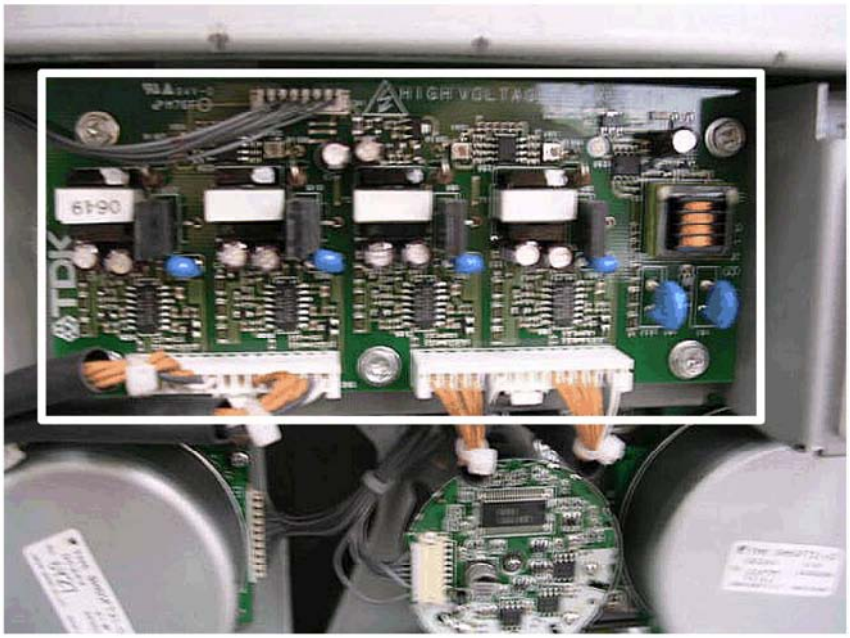
1. Remove the HVPS (✋ x4, 🔧 x8).

## 3.8.7 CHARGE ROLLER POWER PACK

ra_1106

1. Remove the charge roller power pack (x5, x6).

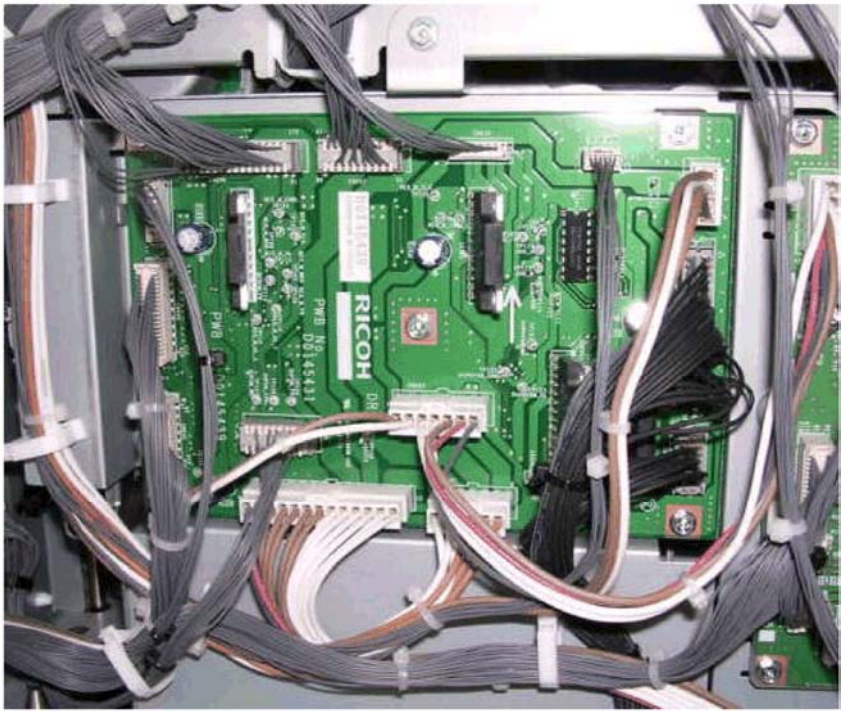
## 3.8.8 POTENTIAL SENSOR POWER PACK




ra_1108

1. Remove the potential sensor power pack (x3, x5).

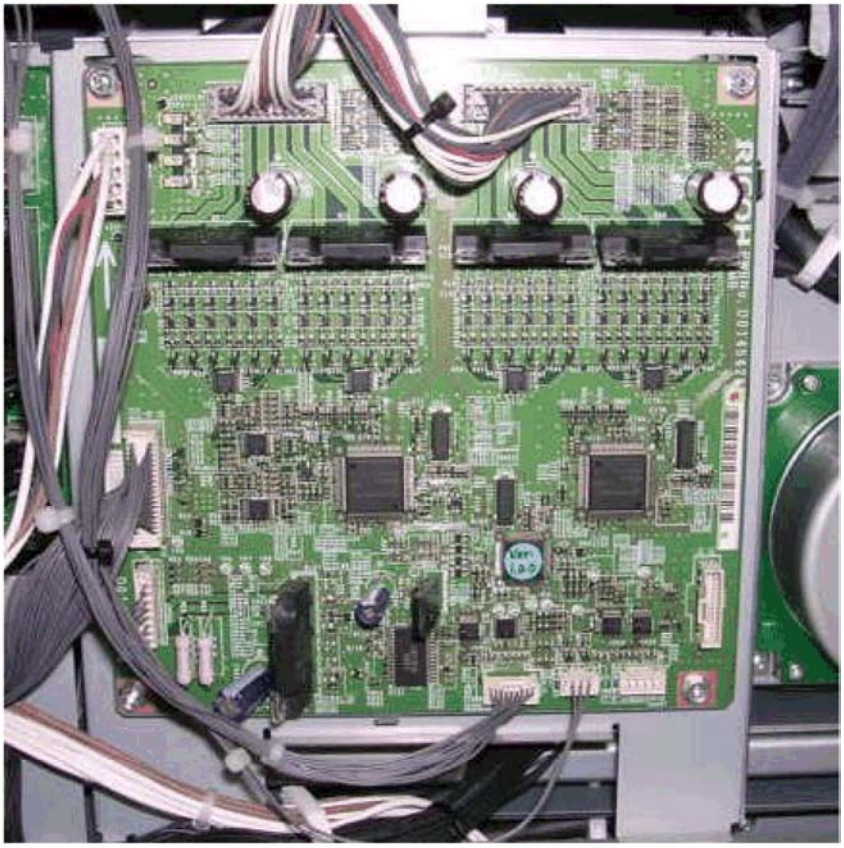
## 3.8.9 DRB




ra_1109

1. Remove the DRB (x14, x5).

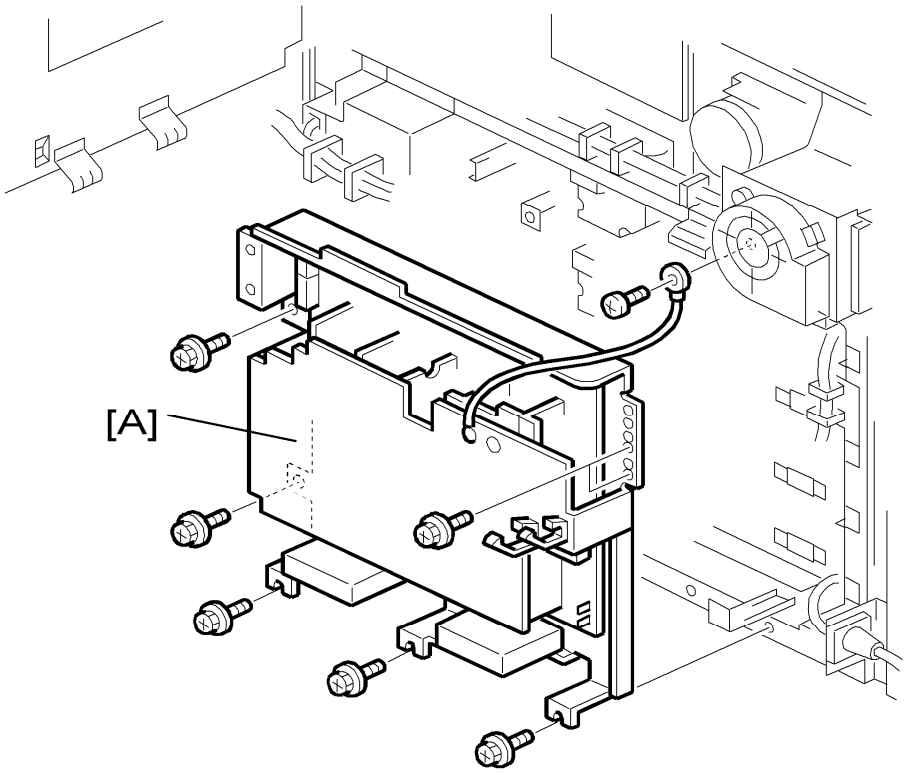
## 3.8.10 DTMB



ra_1112

1. Remove the DTMB (x7, x4).

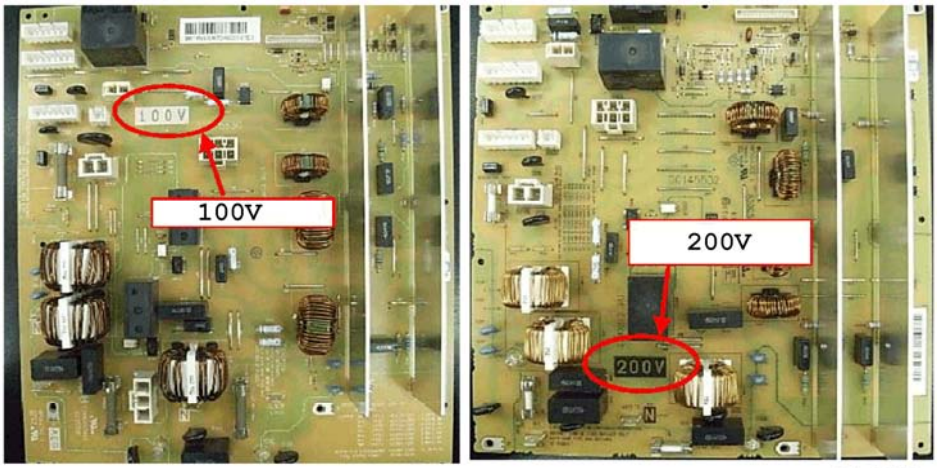
## 3.8.11 PSU




ra_1112a

1. Remove the rear covers.
2. Open the controller box door.
3. Remove the PFB/HVPS board frame.
4. Remove:
   [A] PSU (x9, x8).

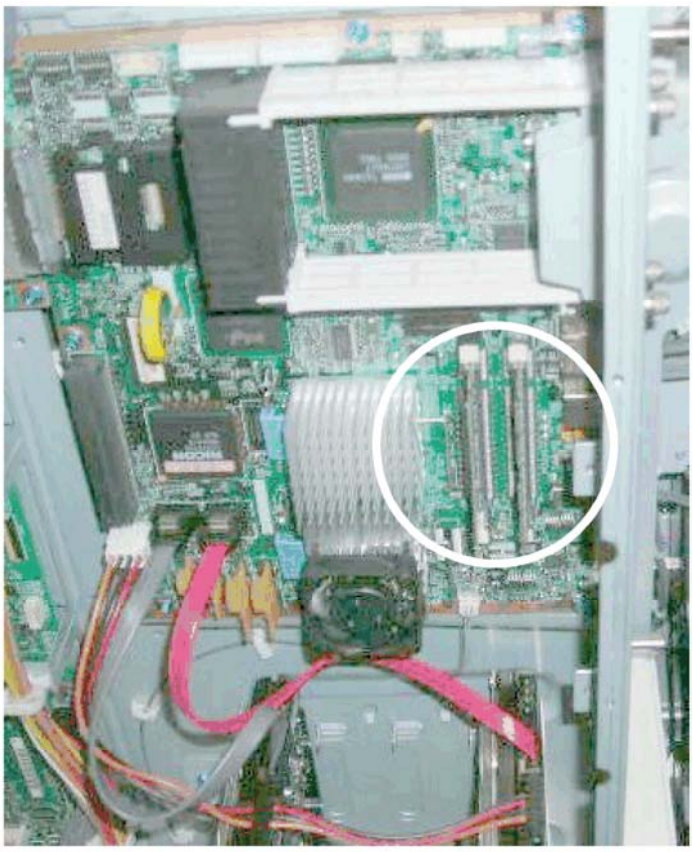
## 3.8.12 AC DRIVE BOARD




d014r505

1. Make sure that you have to correct type of board for the machine.
   - There are two types of AC drive boards: 100V and 200V.
   - The boards are clearly marked at the locations shown above.
   - Confirm the marking before installing the AC drive board.
2. Remove the AC drive board (☞ x7, 🪛 x8).

## 3.8.13 MEMORY



temp_0869

1. Install memory chips.

## 3.8.14 NVRAM

### *Before You Begin…*

- Never remove the NVRAM until you have uploaded its contents.
- Always touch a metal surface to discharge any static on your hands before you touch the controller board.
- Work carefully when removing the NVRAM to avoid damaging other components on the controller board or short circuiting the pins of other chips.
- ⇒ Print out the SMC report (SP5990 001) **before** a Memory clear is performed.

⇒ Important

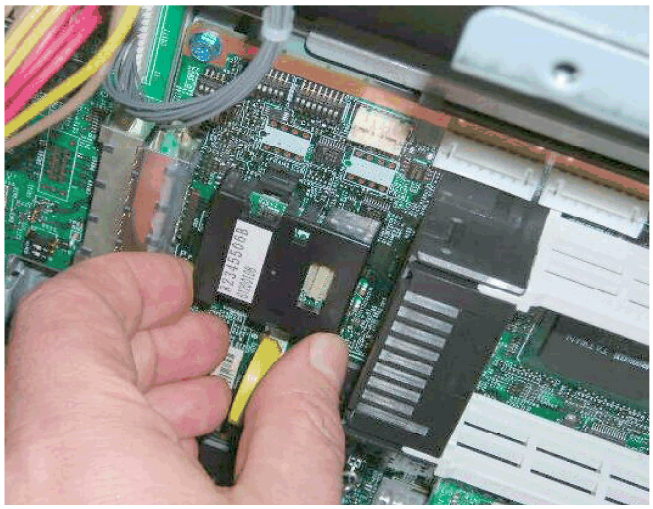
The following data stored in the NVRAM is **not saved** to the SD card when you perform an NVRAM data upload (SP5824) Be sure to print out the SMC report.

- ✧ Total Counter Value
- ✧ C/O, P/O counter values
- ✧ Duplex, A3/DLT/Over 420mm, Stapler, and Scanner counter values
- ✧ Engine SP data

### *Upload NVRAM Data to SD Card*

1. Do SP5990 001 to print the SMC report.
2. Turn the copier main power switch off.
3. Insert an SD card in **Slot 1 (lower slot)**.
4. Execute SP5824 to upload the data to the SD card.
5. Switch the machine off and disconnect the power cord.

### *Replace NVRAM*



1. Remove the old NVRAM.
2. Attach the new NVRAM.

### *Download NVRAM Data from SD Card*

1. Turn the copier main power switch off.
2. Put the SD card with the NVRAM data into **Slot 1 (lower slot)**.
3. Open the front door of the copier.
4. Turn the copier main power switch on.
   If the NVRAM is new, SC195 (Machine Serial Number Error) may appear. If this occurs:
   - Enter the SP mode and do SP5801 001 to reset the memory to the defaults (All).
   - Switch the machine off/on and start from Step 1.

   Important
   - If SC195 occurs the serial number must be input. You must contact your technical supervisor.
5. Execute SP5825 to download the data uploaded from the old NVRAM.
6. Switch the machine off and remove the SD card.
7. Switch the machine on, then do SP5990-1 to print another SMC report.
8. Compare this new SMC report with the report you printed in Step 1. If any of the SP settings are different, enter the SP settings of the first report.
9. Execute SP5907 and enter the brand and model name of the machine for Windows Plug & Play capability.

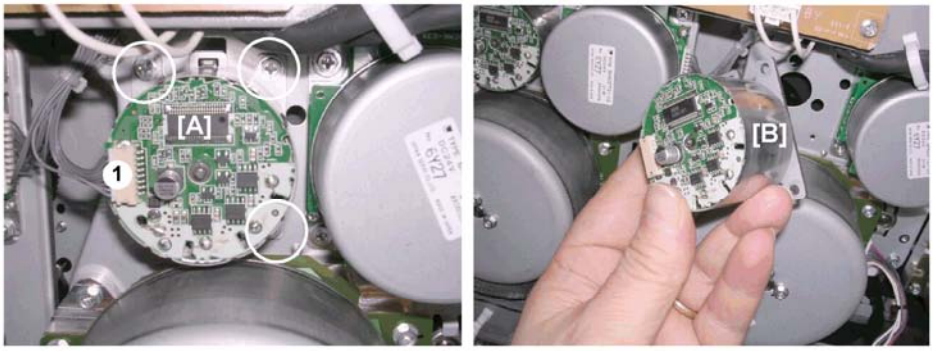
# 3.9 MOTORS

ra_0001

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Development Motor |
| ② | Drum Cleaning Motor |
| ③ | Drum Motor |
| ④ | Paper Transfer Motor |

1. Remove the rear covers.
2. Open and lock the controller box.

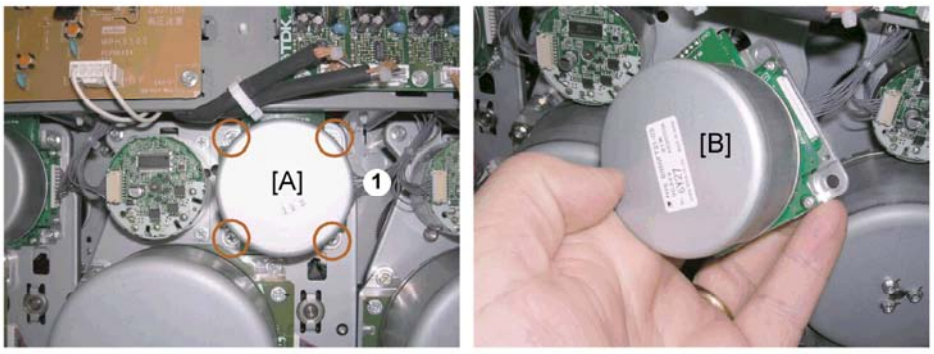
## 3.9.1 DRUM CLEANING MOTORS




ra_0005

1. Disconnect the drum cleaning motor [A] (x1, x3).
2. Remove the drum cleaning motor [B].

## 3.9.2 DEVELOPMENT MOTORS

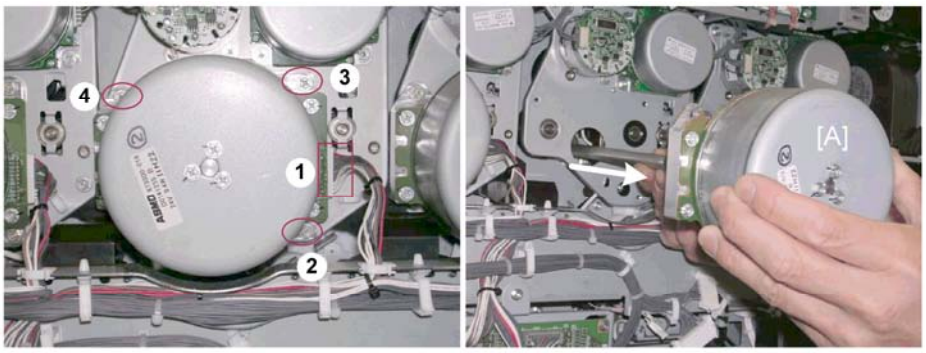



ra_0009

1. Disconnect the development motor [A] (x1, x4).
2. Remove the development motor [B].

## 3.9.3 DRUM MOTOR

### *Drum Motor Removal*




ra_1045

1. Remove the Toner Hopper, Faceplate, PCU.
2. Disconnect the connector ① (🖐 x1).
3. Remove screws ②, ③, ④ (🪛 x3).
4. Remove the ITB unit.

Note

- Removing the ITB unit is recommended to prevent the tip of the drum motor shaft from scratching the surface of the ITB when the motor is removed or reinstalled.

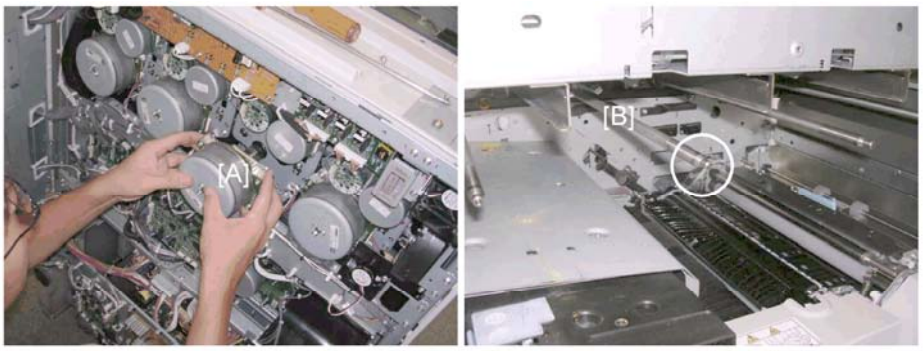
5. Pull out the motor [A] with its drive shaft.

ra_1052

Important

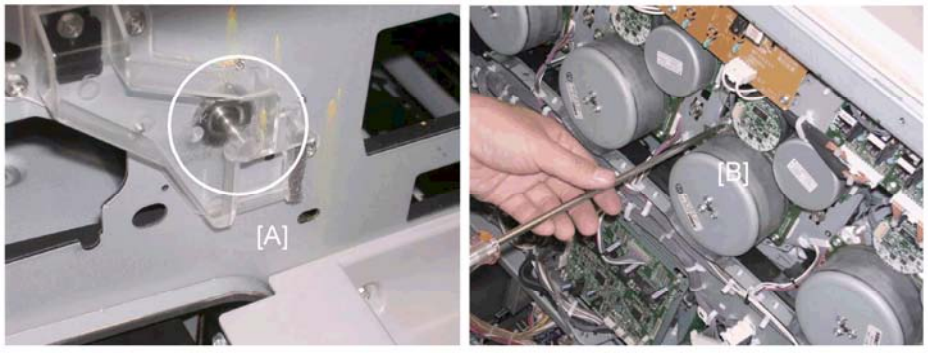
- In order to remove the K PCU motor [A], you must first loosen the duct [B].
- Before removing the Y PCU motor [C], you must first loosen the fan [D].

## *Drum Motor Reinstallation*




ra_1059

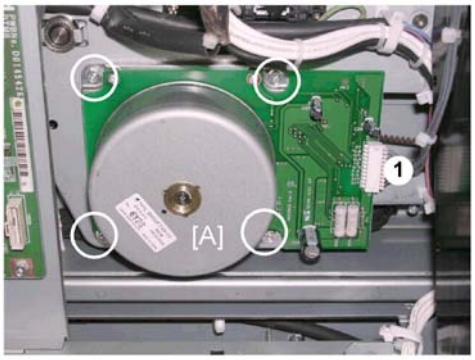
1. Push the shaft into the machine and set the motor [A], so that it is straight.
2. Attach the screws and tighten them only halfway. This leaves the motor shaft loose so it can float slightly.
3. Check the front of the machine and confirm that the shaft [B] is straight.




ra_1063

4. At the front, set the faceplate set the shaft [A] as shown above.
5. Fasten the faceplate with its screws (x3).
6. At the back, tighten the screws (x3) of the drum motor [B] and attach its connector (x1).

## 3.9.4 FUSING/EXIT MOTOR

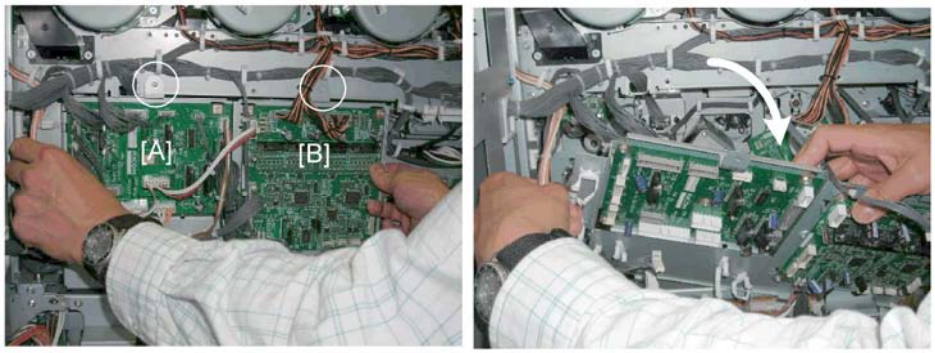



ra_0006

1. Remove the paper transfer motor [A] (x1, x4).

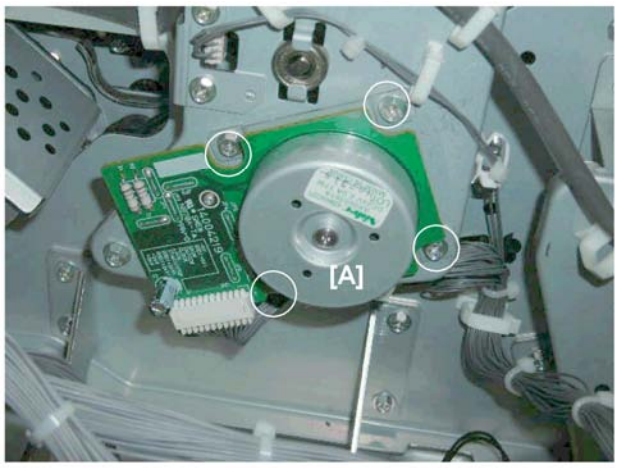
## 3.9.5 PTR MOTOR

1. Remove the rear covers.
2. Open the controller box door.




d014r510

3. Remove the plate that holds the DRB [A] and DTMB [B] (x2, x all)

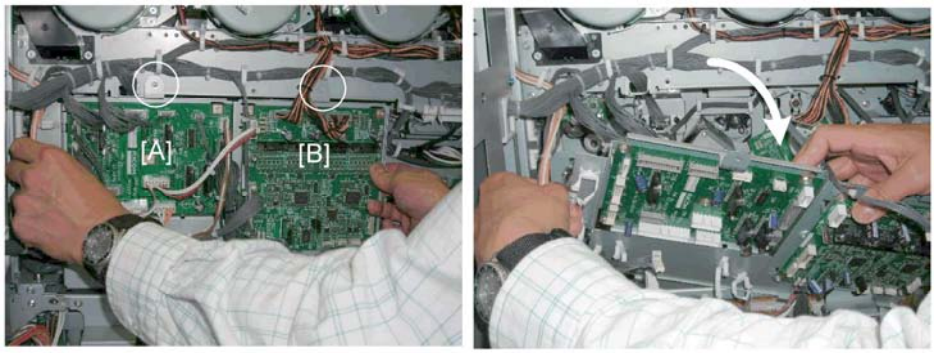



d014r511

4. Remove the PTR motor [A]( x4, x1).

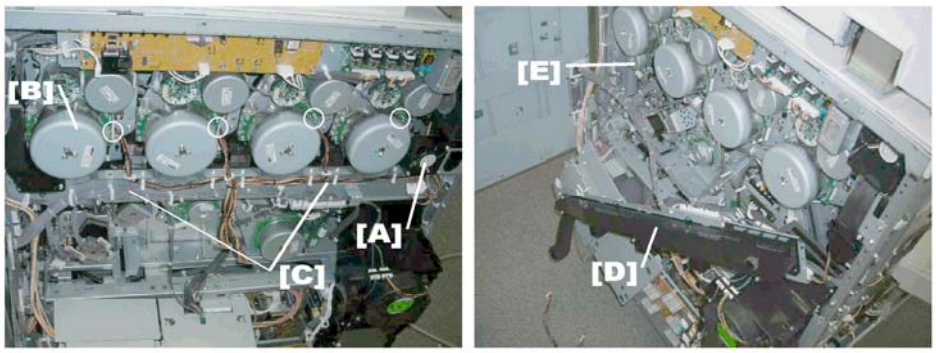
## 3.9.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR

1. Remove the rear covers.
2. Open the controller box door.




d014r510

3. Remove the plate that holds the DRB [A] and DTMB [B] (x2, x All)

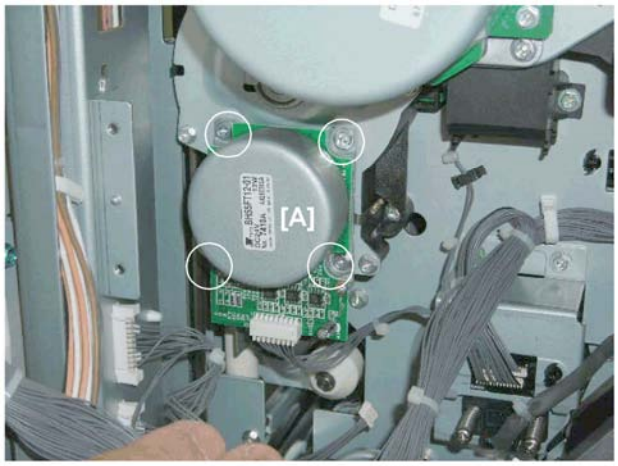



d014r520

1. Remove the fan plate with fan [A] attached (x2).
2. Disconnect the drum motors [B] (x4).
3. Disconnect the cross-brace [C]. (There are two screws on each end of the cross-brace.)

Important

- Do not release the harnesses that are permanently locked. Release only enough harnesses so you can pull the cross-brace [D] away from the machine so that you can see the ITB motor [E].




d014r521

4. Remove the ITB drive motor [A] (x4, x1).

# 3.10 AIR FILTERS AND OZONE FILTERS

ra_0030

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Upper Filter Box |
| ② | Middle Filter Box |
| ③ | Lower Filter Box |

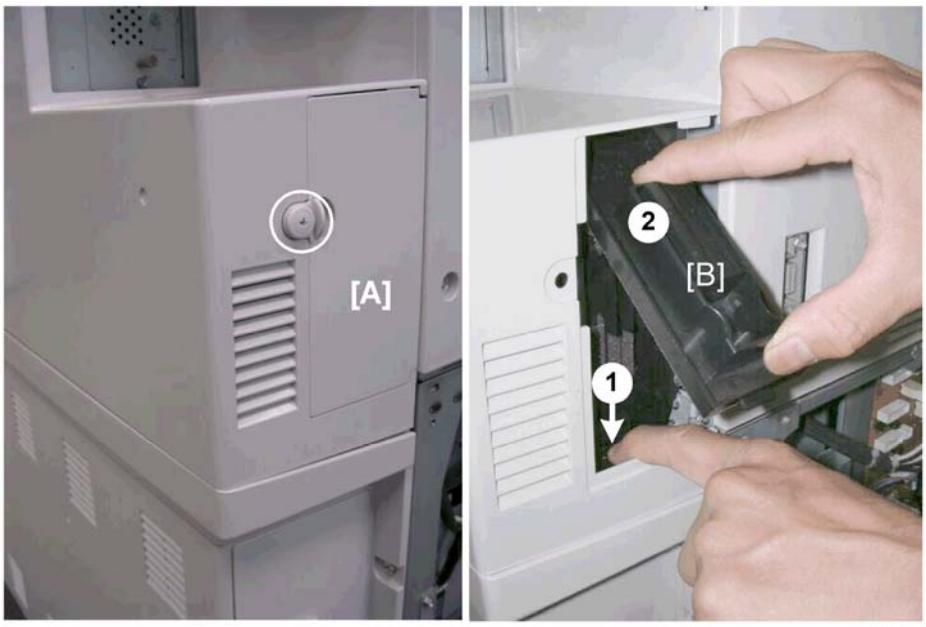
This machine has three filter boxes on the left rear corner. These boxes contain air filters and one ozone filter each.

## 3.10.1 UPPER FILTER BOX

ra_0028

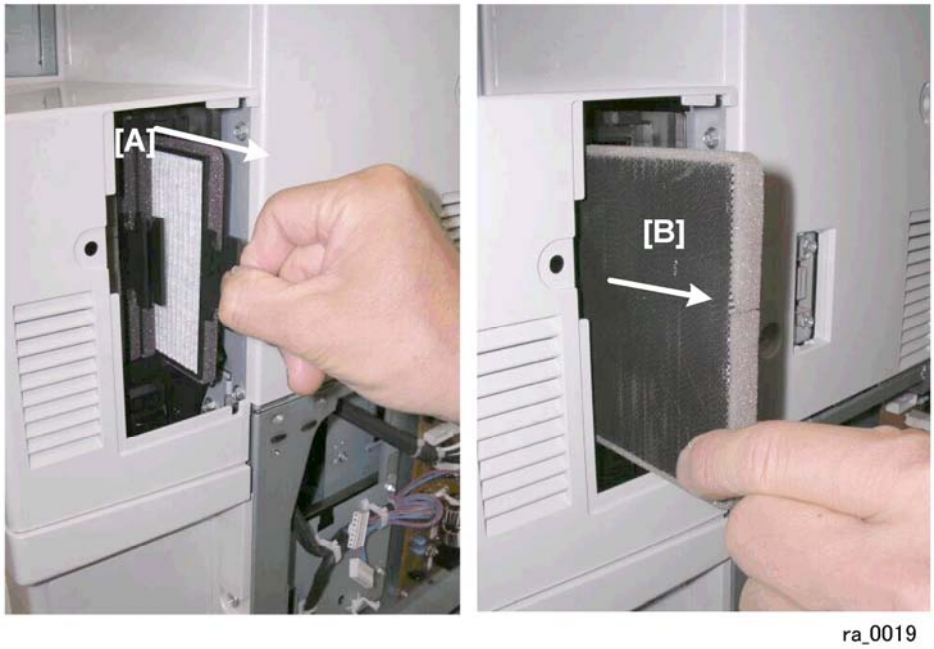
1. Remove:
   [A] Upper filter box cover (🔩 x1)
   [B] Air filters

## 3.10.2 MIDDLE FILTER BOX




ra_0015

1. Remove:
   [A] Middle filter box cover (🔩 x1)
   [B] Inner cover. Depress at ① then pull out ②.



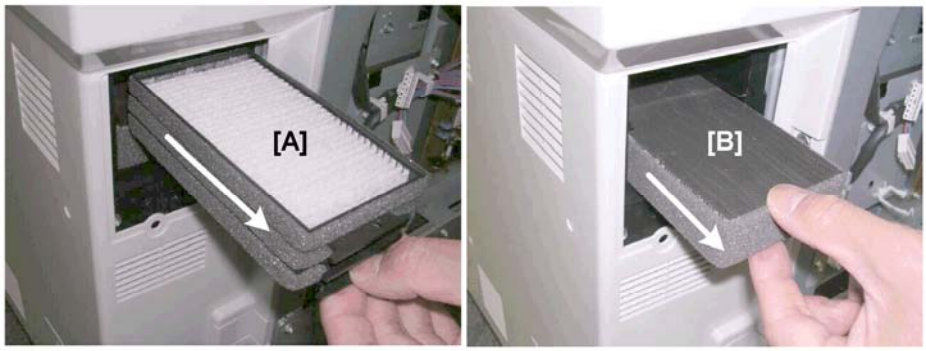

ra_0019

2. Remove:
   [A] Air filters
   [B] Ozone filter

## 3.10.3 LOWER FILTER BOX

ra_0021

1. Remove:
   [A] Lower filter box cover (🔩 x1)
   [B] Inner cover. Depress at ① then remove.




ra_0025

2. Remove:
   [A] Air filters
   [B] Ozone filter

# 3.11 FIRMWARE UPDATE

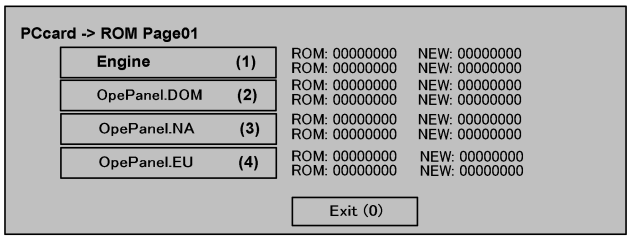
## 3.11.1 BEFORE YOU BEGIN…

Always obey these rules when handling and using SD cards:

- Never connect or remove an SD card with the machine on.
- Never turn the power off while the machine is downloading data from an SD card.
- The SD card is a precision item. Use it carefully. Do not keep the card in a location where there is high temperature, high humidity, or light from the sun.
- Handle SD cards carefully to avoid bending, scratching, or dropping them.
- If a power failure occurs during the firmware update, turn the machine power off/on without removing the SD card. The firmware update procedure should start again.

## 3.11.2 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE

1. Obtain the System SD card.
2. Disconnect the network cable and other interface cables. This prevents outside interference caused by data transfers to the machine while the software is being uploaded.
3. Turn the main switch off.
4. Remove the SD card slot cover (x1).
5. Insert the SD card into **Slot 1 (lower slot)**.
6. Open the front door of the copier. This prevents generation of electrical noise from motors during the update procedure.
   You will see "Please Wait" then "Preparing to start firmware update."
   The first screen appears after about 90 sec.



d014r912

7. Check the notations to the right.
   - "ROM" tells you the module number and version of the currently installed software.
   - "NEW" tells you the module number and version of software on the SD card in **Slot 1 (lower slot)**.
8. Touch "Engine" or "OpePanel.xxx". The item that you select changes to dark gray.

Note

- You can select "Engine" and one "OpePanel" selection if you want to update both

9. Touch [Update] or push [#] on the 10-key pad to start the update.
   While the Update Is in Progress
   - Remain with the machine. Do not leave it unattended.
   - Never close the front door during firmware update.
   - The [Start] key flashes RED during firmware update, and then lights GREEN when the update is finished.
   - When the [Start] key LED starts flashing rapidly, this means the update is almost finished.
   - Never switch the machine off while the [Start] key is flashing RED.

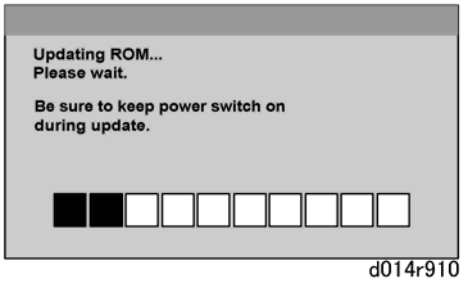
Replacement Adjustment

Firmware Update

- If the machine is switched off or accidentally unplugged before the update is finished, do not remove the SD card. Just switch the machine on again. The firmware update should restart automatically. If the firmware update does not recover, obtain a new System SD card.

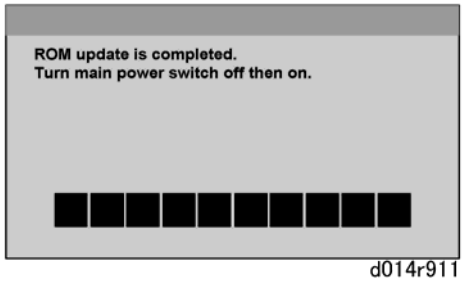
The following screen sequence appears after selecting one "OpePanel" selected for update.

**Operation Panel Update**



d014r910

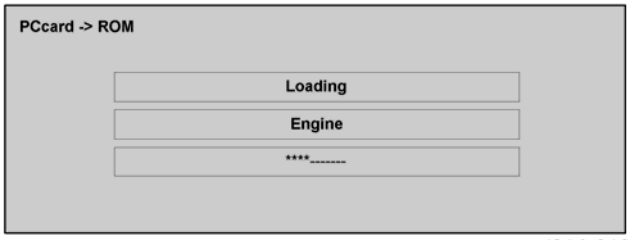
- The blocks of the progress bar fill as the update is done.
- The update requires about 9 to 10 minutes.



d014r911

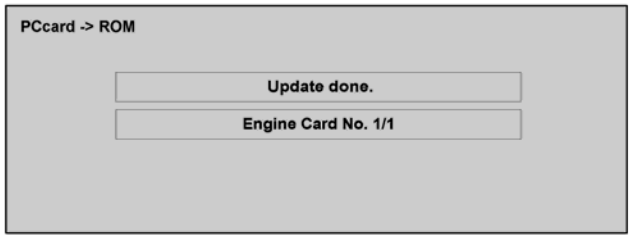
- When you see the 'update completed' message, the firmware update is complete.

**Engine Update**



d014r913

- The middle bar tells you the name of the item that you are updating.
- The bottom bar shows the progress of the update procedure.




d014r914

- The update is complete when you see the "Update done" message.
- The update requires about 2.5 minutes.

10. When you see the update completed message, turn the machine off.
11. Remove the SD card from the SD card slot.
12. Switch the machine on.

    This completes the update procedure.

# TROUBLESHOOTING

| REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| 38 ~ 39 | 09/04/2008 | Service Call Tables |
| 39 | 07/30/3009 | SC534 – Added NOTE. |
| 46 | 09/04/2008 | Service Call Tables |
| 51 | 08/11/2008 | SC670 |
| 51 ~ 52 | 01/07/2009 | SC636 SD Card Error |
| 70 | 05/20/2008 | Removed SC800 |
| 71 | 05/02/2008 | SC816 |
| 71 | 05/20/2008 | SC800:Overall System |
| 76 ~ 90 | 05/22/2009 | Service Call Tables |

# 4. TROUBLESHOOTING

## 4.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

### 4.1.1 SERVICE CALL TABLE

There are 4 levels of service call conditions.

| Level | Definition | Reset Procedure |
|---|---|---|
| A | Fusing unit SCs are displayed on the operation panel. The machine is disabled, and operator cannot reset the SC. | Enter SP mode and do SP5810 to release the machine for servicing. |
| B | SCs that disable only the features that use the defective item. These SCs are not shown to the operator under normal conditions. They are displayed on the operation panel only when the defective feature is selected. | Turn the main power switch off and on. |
| C | SCs that are not shown on the operation panel. They are internally logged. | Logging only |
| D | Turning the operation switch (or main power switch) off then on resets these SCs. These SCs are displayed on the operation panel and displayed again if the error reoccurs. | Turn the operation switch (or main power switch) off and on, or the machine reboots automatically. (See below.) |

**When a Level "D" SC code occurs**

When a Level D SC occurs, a screen opens on the operation panel to tell the operator:

- An error occurred
- The job in progress will be erased
- The machine will reboot automatically after approximately 30 seconds.

The operator can wait until the machine reboots automatically or touch "Reset" on the screen to reset the machine immediately and go back to the copy screen.

Service Call Conditions

**If the operator does not touch "Reset"**

The next message tells the operator that the machine will reset automatically and that the previous job was lost and must be started again. After reading the message, the operator touches "Confirm" on the screen. The next screen shows the number and title of the SC code, and stops until the operator turns the machine off and on.

**If the operator touches "Reset"**

If the operator touches "Reset" to bypass the 30-second interval for the machine to reboot, the machine reboots immediately and the operation panel displays the copy screen.

Important

- Do not try to use the operation panel during an automatic reboot. If the Remote Service System is in use, the SC code is sent immediately to the Service Center

## 4.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS

**Before You Begin…**

- If a problem concerns a circuit board, disconnect and reconnect the connectors and then test the machine. Often a loose or disconnected harness is the cause of the problem. Always do this before you decide to replace the PCB.
- If a motor lock error occurs, check the mechanical load before you decide to replace the motor or sensors.
- When a Level "A" or "B" SC occurs while in an SP mode, the machine cannot display the SC number. If this occurs, check the SC number after leaving the SP mode.
- The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues a Level "D" SC code. This is done for Level "D" SC codes only.

**⚠CAUTION**

- Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

The main power LED (☀⏻) lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

# 4.2 SERVICE CALL TABLES

## 4.2.1 SC CODES GROUP 1: SCANNING

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC101 | D | Exposure lamp error | |
| | | The white level peak did not reach the prescribed threshold when the white plate was scanned. | ▪ Dirty optics<br>▪ Dirty white plate<br>▪ Exposure lamp defective<br>▪ Exposure lamp does not turn on<br>▪ Lamp stabilizer defective<br>▪ High voltage line leak<br>▪ SIB defective<br>▪ SBU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC120 | D | Scanner home position error 1 | |
| | | The scanner home position sensor did not detect the home position (did not go OFF) after the scanner moved forward 20 mm.. | ▪ Scanner motor defective<br>▪ Scanner HP sensor defective<br>▪ Harness between scanner motor and SIOB disconnected or broken.<br>▪ SIOB defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC121 | D | Scanner home position error 2 | |
| | | The scanner home position sensor did not go ON after the scanner moved forward 6 mm and the feeler entered the HP sensor. | ▪ Scanner motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Scanner motor defective<br>▪ Scanner HP sensor disconnected, defective<br>▪ SIOB defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC141 | D | Black level detection error | |
| | | During AGC the value for black level was not within ±3 of the prescribed value. | ▪ SBU defective<br>▪ Harness defective<br>▪ Check harnesses between SBU and IPU<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC142 | D | White level detection error | |
| | | During AGC the value for white level was not within -7 of the prescribed value. | ▪ Exposure lamp defective<br>▪ Harness disconnected, damaged<br>▪ Dirty exposure glass, optics<br>▪ Scanner motor, drive assembly defective<br>▪ SBU board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC143 | C | SBU Auto Adjust Error | |
| | | At power on the automatic white level adjustment failed. | ▪ Clean the white plate<br>▪ Clean the optics and lenses<br>▪ Check the connectors between the SBU and IPU.<br>▪ Replace the SBU<br>▪ Replace the IPU<br>▪ Replace the VBCU<br>▪ Replace the exposure lamp |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC144 | D | SBU communication error | |
| | | When the machine is switched on, or when the machine returns to full operation from the energy save mode, the machine can not access the SBU register, or the SBU register values are abnormal.<br>**Note**: The ASIC IDs read during automatic adjustment of the SBU can be displayed with SP4600. | ▪ SBU harness loose, disconnected, defective<br>▪ SBU board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC161 | D | IPU error | |
| | | Communication error between IPU, SBU, and VBCU. | ▪ Check harness connections between SBU and IPU/VBCU<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC165 | B | Illegal Copy Prevention Error | |
| | | An abnormality was detected with the ICIB board at power on. | ▪ ICIB connected incorrectly<br>▪ ICIB defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC180 | D | Scanner fan lock | |
| | | The fan motor next to the SIOB did not switch on within 10 sec. after the CPU issued the ON signal. | ▪ Fan defective<br>▪ Foreign object interfering with operation of fan<br>▪ Motor harness loose, disconnected, or broken<br>▪ SIOB defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC181 | B | Scanner Fan Error: Lamp Stabilizer | |
| | | The exposure lamp regulator fan is not rotating. | ▪ Check the fan connections<br>▪ Fan defective<br>▪ Check SBU connection<br>▪ Check SIOB connection<br>▪ SBU defective<br>▪ SIOB defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC182 | B | Scanner Fan Error: Right Side | |
| | | The fan located on the right side of the exposure unit is not rotating. | ▪ Check the fan connections<br>▪ Fan defective<br>▪ Check SBU connection<br>▪ Check SIOB connection<br>▪ SBU defective<br>▪ SIOB defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC195 | D | Machine serial number error | |
| | | The number registered for the machine serial number does not match. | ▪ Confirm the correct serial number of the machine in the specifications<br>▪ **Important**: When SC195 occurs, the serial number must be input. Please contact your technical supervisor. |

## 4.2.2 SC CODES GROUP 2: EXPOSURE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC202 | D | Polygon motor error: ON timeout | |
| | | The polygon mirror motor does not reach the targeted operating speed within the prescribed time. | ▪ Harness to polygon motor drive board disconnected, defective<br>▪ Polygon motor defective<br>▪ Polygon motor drive board defective<br>▪ Polygon motor defective. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC203 | D | Polygon motor error: OFF timeout | |
| | | The polygon mirror motor does leave the READY status within 3 seconds after the polygon motor switches off. | ▪ Harness to polygon motor driver board disconnected, defective<br>▪ Polygon motor defective<br>▪ Polygon motor driver board defective<br>▪ Polygon motor defective. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC204 | D | Polygon motor error: XSCRDY signal error | |
| | | The polygon motor stopped operating while the LD unit was firing. | ▪ Harness to polygon motor driver board disconnected, defective<br>▪ Polygon motor defective<br>▪ Polygon motor driver board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC210 | D | Laser beam detection error: K (Black) | |
| SC211 | D | Laser beam detection error: Y (Yellow) | |
| SC212 | D | Laser beam detection error: M (Magenta) | |
| SC213 | D | Laser beam detection error: C (Cyan) | |
| | | The laser synchronization sensor failed to detect the beginning and end of the laser beam flash for the designated color onto the polygon mirror while the mirror is rotating at the prescribed number of revolutions. | ▪ Laser synchronization detector sensor connection loose, not connected<br>▪ Laser synchronization detector sensor defective<br>▪ LD unit defective<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC220 | D | Laser Synchronization Detector Error: K Leading Edge: LD0 | |
| | | While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for LD0 black, or leading edge, even after the laser diode has been firing for 2 sec. | ▪ Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective<br>▪ Check all connections between LD unit, LDB, IPU<br>▪ LD unit<br>▪ LDB defective<br>▪ IPU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC221 | D | Laser Synchronization Detector Error: K Leading Edge (Not LD0) | |
| | | While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for black, leading edge for any LD other than LD0. | ▪ Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective<br>▪ Check all connections between LD unit, LDB, IPU<br>▪ LD unit<br>▪ LDB defective<br>▪ IPU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC222 | D | Laser Synchronization Detector Error: Y Leading Edge: LD0 | |
| | | While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for LD0 yellow, leading edge. | ▪ Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective<br>▪ Check all connections between LD unit, LDB, IPU<br>▪ LD unit<br>▪ LDB defective<br>▪ IPU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC223 | D | Laser Synchronization Detector Error: Y Leading Edge (Not LD0) | |
| | | While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for yellow, leading edge for any LD other than LD0. | ▪ Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective<br>▪ Check all connections between LD unit, LDB, IPU<br>▪ LD unit<br>▪ LDB defective<br>▪ IPU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC224 | D | Laser Synchronization Detector Error: M Leading Edge: LD0 | |
| | | While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for LD0 magenta, leading edge. | ▪ Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective<br>▪ Check all connections between LD unit, LDB, IPU<br>▪ LD unit<br>▪ LDB defective<br>▪ IPU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC225 | D | Laser Synchronization Detector Error: M Leading Edge (Not LD0) | |
| | | While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for magenta, leading edge for any LD other than LD0. | ▪ Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective<br>▪ Check all connections between LD unit, LDB, IPU<br>▪ LD unit<br>▪ LDB defective<br>▪ IPU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC226 | D | Laser Synchronization Detector Error: C Leading Edge: LD0 | |
| | | While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for LD0 cyan, leading edge. | ▪ Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective<br>▪ Check all connections between LD unit, LDB, IPU<br>▪ LD unit<br>▪ LDB defective<br>▪ IPU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC227 | D | Laser Synchronization Detector Error: C Leading Edge (Not LD0) | |
| | | While the polygon motor is rotating normally, no synchronizing detection signal is output for cyan, leading edgefor any LD other than LD0. | ▪ Harness between the laser synchronizing detector and I/F unit is disconnected, defective<br>▪ Check all connections between LD unit, LDB, IPU<br>▪ LD unit<br>▪ LDB defective<br>▪ IPU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC230 | D | FGATE error: Feedback remains HIGH for K write | |
| | | After the start of timing to create the black image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD did not assert. | ▪ Harness between the VBCU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.<br>▪ LD unit defective<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ Controller board disconnected, defective<br>▪ HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC231 | D | FGATE error: Feedback remains LOW for K write | |
| | | After the start of timing to create the black image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD did not assert. | ▪ Harness between the VBCU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.<br>▪ LD unit defective<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ Controller board disconnected, defective<br>▪ HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC232 | D | FGATE error: Feedback remains HIGH for Y write | |
| | | After the start of timing to create the yellow image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD did not assert. | ▪ Harness between the VBCU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.<br>▪ LD unit defective<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ Controller board disconnected, defective<br>▪ HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC233 | D | FGATE error: Feedback remains LOW for Y write | |
| | | After the start of timing to create the yellow image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD did not assert. | ▪ Harness between the VBCU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.<br>▪ LD unit defective<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ Controller board disconnected, defective<br>▪ HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC234 | D | FGATE error 1: Feedback remains HIGH for M write | |
| | | After the start of timing to create the magenta image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD did not assert. | ▪ Harness between the VBCU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.<br>▪ LD unit defective<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ Controller board disconnected, defective<br>▪ HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC235 | D | FGATE error: Feedback remains LOW for M write | |
| | | After the start of timing to create the magenta image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD does not assert. | ▪ Harness between the VBCU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.<br>▪ LD unit defective<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ Controller board disconnected, defective<br>▪ HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC236 | D | FGATE error 1: Feedback remains HIGH for C write | |
| | | After the start of timing to create the cyan image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD did not assert. | ▪ Harness between the VBCU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.<br>▪ LD unit defective<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ Controller board disconnected, defective<br>▪ HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC237 | D | FGATE error: Feedback remains LOW for C write | |
| | | After the start of timing to create the cyan image, the PFGATE register of the GAVD does not assert. | ▪ Harness between the VBCU and LDB unit disconnected, loose, or defective.<br>▪ LD unit defective<br>▪ IPU defective<br>▪ Controller board disconnected, defective<br>▪ HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC240 | C | LD error: K | |
| SC241 | C | LD error: Y | |
| SC242 | C | LD error: M | |
| SC243 | C | LD error: C | |
| | | An error occurred at the LD error terminal of the K, Y, M, or C LD driver after initialization of the LD because the power to the LD was higher or lower than the prescribed limit. | ▪ LD defective due to wear, damage, short circuit<br>▪ LDB harness disconnected, loose or defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC268 | C | Optical unit sensor error | |
| | | At power on, one of the two temperature sensors in the optics unit detected a temperature lower than -10°C.<br>-or-<br>It detected a temperature higher than 80°C. | ▪ Thermistor disconnected (causes extremely low temperature reading)<br>▪ Thermistor damaged and short circuited (causes extremely high temperature reading)<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC270 | C | Skew Control Upper Lower Limit: Y | |
| | | The pulse total for Yellow skew control is not within the prescribed range. | ▪ ITB not installed correctly.<br>▪ ITB defective<br>▪ Optical unit installed incorrectly<br>▪ Optical unit defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC271 | C | Skew Control Upper Lower Limit: M | |
| | | The pulse total for Magenta skew control is not within the prescribed range. | ▪ ITB not installed correctly.<br>▪ ITB defective<br>▪ Optical unit installed incorrectly<br>▪ Optical unit defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC272 | C | Skew Control Upper Lower Limit: C | |
| | | The pulse total for Cyan skew control is not within the prescribed range. | ▪ ITB not installed correctly.<br>▪ ITB defective<br>▪ Optical unit installed incorrectly<br>▪ Optical unit defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC285 | C | MUSIC Continuous Failure | |
| | | The MUSIC adjustment failed after four attempts. | ▪ Fusing belt installed incorrectly<br>▪ Fusing belt surface scoured, scratched<br>▪ MUSIC sensors dirty, defective |

## 4.2.3 SC CODES GROUP 3: IMAGE DEVELOPMENT – 1

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC300 | D | Drum charge corona wire error: K | |
| | | The output of the charge corona wire of the black PCU is abnormal. | ▪ CGB power pack connection loose, broken defective<br>▪ Check CGB power pack connection to BCU<br>▪ CGB power pack defective<br>▪ BCU defective<br>▪ Replace OPC drum |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC301 | D | AC charge output error: M |
| SC302 | D | AC charge output error: C |
| SC303 | D | AC charge output error: Y |
| | | An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 10 ms. This SC is issued if the VBCU detects a short in the AC charge for M, C, Y. |
| | | ▪ Disconnect the high voltage cable from Terminal C of the multiple high-voltage supply board.<br>▪ Attach a voltmeter to the terminal.<br>▪ If there is no output from the terminal, replace the high voltage power supply.<br>-or-<br>▪ If there is output from the terminal, test the resistance between the high voltage cable and the ground. If resistance is nearly "0", check the high-voltage harness for defects and replace it if necessary.<br>▪ Test the conductivity between the OPC unit and the ground. If there is no conductivity between the OPC unit and ground, replace the OPC unit.<br>▪ If there is no charge PWM signal, replace the harness and/or VBCU. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC304 | B | Charge Corona Error: Charge Leak (K PCU) | |
| | | A abnormal detection signal (H) was detected for longer than 250 ms. | ▪ Turn the machine power off/on<br>▪ CGB power pack harness connectors loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Corona wire caps loose, missing<br>▪ CGB power pack defective<br>▪ Charge corona unit connectors loose, broken, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC308 | C | Charge Corona Error: Wire Cleaner Error (K PCU) | |
| | | The charge corona wire cleaner motor remained locked after the motor was switched on, or failed to switch off within the prescribed time after cleaning started. | ▪ Turn the machine power off/on<br>▪ Motor overloaded due to a physical obstruction<br>▪ Motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC313 | D | Charge, development error: M | |
| SC314 | D | Charge, development error: C | |
| SC315 | D | Charge, development error: Y | |
| | | After the M, C, or Y drum started to rotate, the feedback for the charge unit of the color dropped below 0.3V. | ▪ Make sure that the settings of SP2202 are at the defaults.<br>▪ Check harness connections between charge roller and transfer power pack.<br>▪ Defective charge roller<br>▪ Defective power pack |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC316 | C | Drum Charge Error: K | |
| SC317 | C | Drum Charge Error: M | |
| SC318 | C | Drum Charge Error: C | |
| SC319 | C | Drum Charge Error: Y | |
| | | Drum charge output voltage (Vpp) exceeded 2.8 kV. | ▪ Check the connections of the charge unit of the PCU where the problem occurred.<br>▪ Replace the charge unit of the PCU (CBG power pack for the K PCU, charge roller unit for YMC PCUs) |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC320 | D | Development power pack error: K | |
| SC321 | D | Development power pack error: M | |
| SC322 | D | Development power pack error: C | |
| SC323 | D | Development power pack error: Y | |
| | | This SC is issued if the VBCU detects a short in the development DC charge for K, M, C, Y. | ▪ Development power pack defective<br>▪ High voltage power supply defective<br>▪ High voltage power supply harness defective<br>▪ Development unit defective<br>▪ IOB harness disconnected or defective<br>▪ IOB defective |
| | | ▪ Disconnect the high voltage cable from Terminal B of the high-voltage supply board.<br>▪ Attach a voltmeter to the terminal.<br>▪ If there is no output from the terminal, replace the high voltage power supply.<br>-or-<br>▪ If there is output from the terminal, test the resistance between | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | the high voltage cable and the ground.<br>▪ If resistance is "0" or nearly "0", check the high-voltage harness for defects and replace it if necessary.<br>▪ If replacing the harness does not solve the problem,<br>▪ Test the resistance between the development unit terminal and the ground. If there is no resistance (0Ω) between the development unit and the ground, replace the development unit.<br>▪ If there is no development PWM signal, replace the harness and/or IOB. | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC324 | D | Development motor error: K | |
| SC325 | D | Development motor error: M | |
| SC326 | D | Development motor error: C | |
| SC327 | D | Development motor error: Y | |
| | | The PLL lock signal remained HIGH or LOW for longer than the prescribed time for the K, M, C, or Y, development motor. | ▪ Development motor shaft locked, blocked by obstruction<br>▪ Development motor defective<br>▪ DRB defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC336 | D | Developer set error: K |
| SC337 | D | Developer set error: M |
| SC338 | D | Developer set error: C |
| SC339 | D | Developer set error: Y |
| | | The value of Vcnt is set at the maximum or minimum setting when the TD sensor is initialized. |
| | | 1. Open the front door.<br>2. Pull out the film seal from the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow developer bottle.<br>3. Do the correct SP for the affected color:<br>▪ SP3801 003 to initialize the TD sensor for K.<br>▪ SP3801 004 to initialize the TD sensor for M.<br>▪ SP3801 005 to initialize the TD sensor for C.<br>▪ SP3801 006 to initialize the TD sensor for Y |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC348 | D | Toner supply motor error | |
| | | 2 sec. after the motor START signal is output, a LOCK signal cannot be detected. | ▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, or defective<br>▪ Toner pump overload<br>▪ Sub hopper overload<br>▪ Toner hopper motor defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC350 | B | Developer Fill Error: K |
| SC351 | B | Developer Fill Error: M |
| SC352 | B | Developer Fill Error: C |
| SC353 | B | Developer Fill Error: Y |
| | | The PCU failed to fill with developer from the developer bottle when SP3814-1 was executed. |
| | | ▪ Developer bottle not set correctly<br>▪ Developer in the bottle is clogged and not flowing<br>**Note**: For detailed information about how to handle problems developer filling, see "Handling Problems with Developer Filling" under "PCU" in Section 3. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC360 | D | TD sensor (Vt high) error: K |
| SC361 | D | TD sensor (Vt high) error: M |
| SC362 | D | TD sensor (Vt high) error: C |
| SC363 | D | TD sensor (Vt high) error: Y |
| | | The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor exceeds 0.5V for 10 counts. |
| | | ▪ Black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor disconnected<br>▪ Harness between TD sensor and PCU defective<br>▪ Defective TD sensor, replace the PCU<br>**Note**: The TD sensor cannot be replaced independently. The PCU must be replaced if the TD sensor is defective. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC364 | D | TD sensor (Vt low) error: K |
| SC365 | D | TD sensor (Vt low) error: M |
| SC366 | D | TD sensor (Vt low) error: C |
| SC367 | D | TD sensor (Vt low) error: Y |
| | | The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is below 0.5V for 10 counts. |
| | | ▪ TD sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective<br>▪ A drawer connector (located on the rear of a development unit) disconnected, loose, defective<br>▪ TD sensor defective, replace the PCU<br>**Note**: The TD sensor cannot be replaced independently. The PCU must be replaced if the TD sensor is defective. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC372 | D | TD sensor adjustment error: K |
| SC373 | D | TD sensor adjustment error: M |
| SC374 | D | TD sensor adjustment error: C |
| SC375 | D | TD sensor adjustment error: Y |
| | | During TD sensor initialization with SP3801, the output value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is not within the range of 2.5±0.2V |
| | | TD harness sensor disconnected, loose or defective<br>Harness between TD sensor and drawer disconnected, defective<br>▪ TD sensor defective, replace the PCU<br>**Note**: The TD sensor cannot be replaced independently. The PCU must be replaced if the TD sensor is defective. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC396 | D | Drum motor error: K |
| SC397 | D | Drum motor error: M |
| SC398 | D | Drum motor error: C |
| SC399 | D | Drum motor error: Y |
| | | The motor is trying to rotate at power on or during normal operation but there is an excessive load on the drum shaft. The motor has no traction (due to a bent cleaning blade, for example). |
| | | ▪ Drum motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Drum motor defective<br>DTMB defective |

## 4.2.4 SC CODES GROUP 4: IMAGE DEVELOPMENT - 2

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC400 | D | ID sensor error: Calibration | |
| | | Before adjustment Vsg_reg<0.5 but Vsg_reg could not be adjusted to the target Vsg_reg = 4.0±0.2V during process control. | ▪ ID sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective<br>▪ ID sensor dirty<br>▪ ID sensor defective<br>▪ ITB unit drawer connector dirty |
| | | **Note**: Vsg_reg is the voltage reading of the light reflected directly from the bare surface of the ITB. The additional receptor on the color sensor is not used to read the bare surface of the belt. For more, see Section "6. Details". | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC410 | D | ID sensor error: Development γ K |
| SC411 | D | ID sensor error: Development γ M |
| SC412 | D | ID sensor error: Development γ C |
| SC413 | D | ID sensor error: Development γ Y |
| | | Development gamma for black, magenta, cyan, or yellow is not within range (0.3 to 6.0). Process control halts when this SC is issued. |
| | | ▪ Toner density abnormal. Refer to the image troubleshooting section in Section 4 of the Venus-C1 B132 Service Manual (Self-Check Error Codes 55 to 59, 61).<br>▪ LD sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Potential sensor defective<br>▪ LD unit not firing<br>▪ ITB separation for CMY abnormal<br>Transfer power pack defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC414 | D | ID sensor error: Development start voltage K |
| SC415 | D | ID sensor error: Development start voltage M |
| SC416 | D | ID sensor error: Development start voltage C |
| SC417 | D | ID sensor error: Development start voltage Y |
| | | The development start voltage in the development of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow PCU is not within the correct range (±150V) |
| | | ▪ Toner density abnormal. Refer to the image troubleshooting section in Section 4 of the Venus-C1 B132 Service Manual (Self-Check Error Codes 55 to 59, 61).<br>▪ Potential sensor defective<br>▪ LD unit not firing<br>▪ ITB separation for CMY abnormal<br>Transfer power pack defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC418 | C | LED error during Vsg adjustment | |
| | | PWM value: Ifsg>3000<br>This means the current to the LED of the ID sensor is abnormal. | ▪ ID sensor dirty<br>▪ ID sensor defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC420 | C | Potential sensor error: Vd Adjustment K |
| SC421 | C | Potential sensor error: Vd Adjustment M |
| SC422 | C | Potential sensor error: Vd Adjustment C |
| SC423 | C | Potential sensor error: Vd Adjustment Y |
| | | The development potential of the drum before exposure (Vd) cannot be adjusted to within ±8 V of the target voltage (-900V). |
| | | ▪ Drum potential sensor harness, connector is loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Drum potential sensor dirty<br>▪ Drum potential sensor defective<br>▪ Drum connector, harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Development power pack defective<br>VBCU defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC424 | C | Potential sensor error 5: Vl adjustment K |
| SC425 | C | Potential sensor error 6: Vl adjustment M |
| SC426 | C | Potential sensor error 7: Vl adjustment C |
| SC427 | C | Potential sensor error 8: Vl adjustment Y |
| | | Vpl could not be adjusted to within ±5V of the target Vpl after exposure of the ID sensor patterns. |
| | | ▪ Drum worn<br>▪ LD unit dirty<br>Poor drum ground connection |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC432 | C | Potential sensor error 1: Vr K |
| SC433 | C | Potential sensor error 2: Vr M |
| SC434 | C | Potential sensor error 3: Vr C |
| SC435 | C | Potential sensor error 4: Vr Y |
| | | Vr > 200V. The residual voltage (Vr), the amount of voltage that remains on the surface of the drum after the QL fires is greater than 200V. |
| | | ▪ Potential sensor dirty<br>▪ Potential sensor defective<br>▪ Charge roller defective<br>▪ Charge power pack defective<br>OPC defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC436 | D | Potential sensor error: Vd K |
| SC437 | D | Potential sensor error: Vd M |
| SC438 | D | Potential sensor error: Vd C |
| SC439 | D | Potential sensor error: Vd Y |
| | | The VdHome reading, the first step of the process control self-check, detected that the development potential of the unexposed areas of the drum are not within the prescribed range (-500 to -800) |
| | | ▪ Potential sensor dirty<br>▪ Potential sensor defective<br>▪ Charge roller defective<br>▪ Charge power pack defective<br>OPC defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC440 | D | Image transfer power pack error: K |
| SC441 | D | Image transfer power pack error: M |
| SC442 | D | Image transfer power pack error: C |
| SC443 | D | Image transfer power pack error: Y |
| | | An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 10 ms. This SC is issued if the VBCU detects a short in the power pack for K, M, C, or Y. |
| | | ▪ Transfer belt damaged, insulation damaged<br>▪ Insulation on high voltage cable damaged<br>▪ Another hot point inside the machine has damaged insulation<br>Insulation around high-voltage power supply damaged |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC445 | D | Image transfer motor error | |
| | | The control board of the ITB motor belt generated signals that indicate there is problem with the image transfer belt motor. | ▪ ITB motor defective<br>▪ ITB control board defective<br>▪ ITB overloaded<br>▪ Encoder strip on the edge of the ITB damaged. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC446 | D | ITB lift motor error | |
| | | The state of the ITB lift sensor does not change its state (switching from off to on or vice versa), even after the ITB lift motor starts rotating. | ▪ ITB lift sensor dirty, disconnected, defective<br>▪ ITB lift motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ ITB sensor defective<br>▪ ITB lift motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC447 | D | Image transfer roller position error | |
| | | The machine checks for the presence of the K STC and the checks the status of the K image transfer roller lift sensor after the door is closed. | ▪ Transfer belt release lever down<br>▪ Lift sensor connector loose, broken, dirty<br>▪ Lift sensor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC450 | D | Transfer power pack output error | |
| | | An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 2 ms. This SC is issued if the VBCU detects a short in the power pack 250 times at T2 within 500 ms. | ▪ Damaged insulation on the high-voltage supply cable<br>▪ Damaged insulation around the high-voltage power supply.<br>▪ Check SIOB harness connections<br>▪ SIOB defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC452 | D | PTR lift mechanism error | |
| | | The PTR was not detected at the home position within 2 sec. after the PTR lift motor turned on. | ▪ PTR HP sensor dirty, disconnected, defective<br>▪ PTR lift motor disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC455 | D | PTR motor error | |
| | | The lock signal from the paper transfer motor was not detected within 1 sec. after the motor switched on. | ▪ Motor disconnected<br>▪ PTR shaft locked, needs cleaning, blocked by obstruction<br>▪ Drive shaft of the ITB locked and overloaded, needs cleaning, or blocked by obstruction<br>▪ DRB disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC460 | D | Separation power pack output error | |
| | | This SC is issued if the VBCU detects a short in the transfer power pack. | ▪ Damaged insulation on the high-voltage supply cable (replace cable)<br>▪ Damaged insulation around the transfer power pack |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC465 | B | Image Transfer Roller End: K | |
| SC466 | B | Image Transfer Roller End: M | |
| SC467 | B | Image Transfer Roller End: C | |
| SC468 | B | Image Transfer Roller End: Y | |
| | | The machine detected an abnormal reading of the resistance of the transfer roller because it is near the end of its service life. | ▪ Check the connections between the transfer roller power pack the roller<br>▪ Replace image transfer roller<br>▪ Image transfer power pack defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC472 | | ITB Bias Roller End | |
| | | The machine detected an abnormal reading of the resistance of the ITB bias roller because it is near the end of its service life. | ▪ Check the connections between the transfer power pack<br>▪ Replace image transfer roller<br>Transfer power pack defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC480 | | Drum cleaning motor error: K | |
| SC481 | | Drum cleaning motor error: M | |
| SC482 | | Drum cleaning motor error: C | |
| SC483 | | Drum cleaning motor error: Y | |
| | | The drum cleaning motor failed to switch on (motor lock), or failed to reach the required speed within the prescribed time. | ▪ Motor block by physical obstruction<br>▪ Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>Motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC484 | D | Used toner bottle full | |
| | | The toner full sensor has detected that the used toner bottle is full. | ▪ Remove the used toner bottle<br>▪ Empty the used toner bottle and reinstall it |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC485 | D | Used toner bottle motor error | |
| | | The lock signal of the used toner bottle motor remains HIGH for more than 600 ms. | ▪ Used toner bottle harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Used toner bottle motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC487 | D | Used toner bottle set error | |
| | | The set sensor of the used toner bottle remains LOW for more than 500 ms. (The sensor goes HIGH when the bottle is installed correctly.) | ▪ Used toner bottle not installed<br>▪ Remove used toner bottle and reinstall correctly |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC488 | D | Used toner transport lock | |
| | | Used toner cannot be transported to the used toner bottle. | ▪ Blockage in the line to the used toner bottle |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC490 | D | MUSIC sensor error | |
| | | One or more of the MUSIC sensors is not functioning normally. | ▪ MUSIC sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Sensor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC495 | | ITB encoder sensor error | |
| | | The ITB encoder sensor that reads the encoded strip on the ITB is not functioning properly. | ▪ Sensor dirty<br>▪ Sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Sensor out of position because installed incorrectly<br>▪ ITB installed incorrectly |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC496 | C | MUSIC sensor error |
| | | The MUSIC sensor detected an abnormal pattern on the ITB because:<br>▪ ADC exceeded upper or lower limit.<br>▪ The pattern used to calculate the amount of skew is abnormal.<br>▪ The reading of the pattern exceeded the length of time the LED projected light.<br>▪ LED light could not be adjusted correctly. |
| | | ▪ ITB installed incorrectly<br>▪ Inspect ITB belt for damage, replace<br>▪ MUSIC pattern abnormal; do a forced process control (SP3821) and check the result.<br>▪ MUSIC sensor defective or disconnected |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC497 | C | Temperature and humidity sensor error: M PCU | |
| | | The thermistor output of the temperature and humidity sensor above the M PCU was not within the prescribed range (0.5V to 4.2V) | ▪ Temperature and humidity sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective<br>▪ Temperature and humidity sensor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC498 | C | Temperature and humidity sensor error: Toner Bottle | |
| | | The thermistor output of the temperature and humidity sensor below the used toner bottle was not within the prescribed range (0.5V to 4.2V) | ▪ Temperature and humidity sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective<br>▪ Temperature and humidity sensor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC499 | C | ITB encoder sensor error | |
| | | The ITB sensor that reads the encoded film strip on the edge of the image transfer belt is sending is operating correctly. | ▪ ITB encoder sensor dirty<br>▪ Sensor harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Encoded scale on the edge of the ITB is damaged or dirty<br>▪ ITB installed incorrectly |

## 4.2.5 SC CODES GROUP 5: PAPER FEED

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC501 | B | Tray 1 (tandem tray) feed error (**Japan Only**) | |
| | | The tray 1 lift sensor does not switch on 10 s after the tray lift motor switches on and starts lifting the bottom plate.<br>When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec.<br>The lower limit sensor of the tandem tray does not detect the lower limit within 10 sec. | ▪ Tray lift motor harness disconnected, loose, defective<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor<br>▪ Tray lift sensor disconnected, damaged<br>▪ Lower limit sensor disconnected, damaged<br>▪ Pick-up solenoid disconnected, blocked by an obstacle |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC502 | B | Tray 2 (paper cassette) feed error (**Japan Only**) | |
| | | The lift sensor is not activated within 10 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.<br>When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec.<br>The lower limit sensor of the tandem tray does not detect the lower limit within 10 sec. | ▪ Tray lift motor defective or disconnected<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor<br>▪ Pick-up solenoid disconnected or blocked by an obstacle |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC503 | B | Tray 1 feed error | |
| | | The lift sensor is not activated within 10 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.<br>When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec. | ▪ Tray lift motor defective or disconnected<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor<br>▪ Pick-up solenoid disconnected or blocked by an obstacle |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC504 | B | Tray 2 feed error | |
| | | The lift sensor is not activated within 10 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.<br>When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec. | ▪ Tray lift motor defective or disconnected<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor<br>▪ Pick-up solenoid disconnected or blocked by an obstacle |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC505 | C | Tandem tray rear fence motor error | |
| | | The return sensor does not switch on within 10 sec. after the rear fence motor switches on.<br>The HP sensor does not switch on 10 sec. after the rear fence motor switches on.<br>The HP sensor and return sensor switch on at the same time. | ▪ Rear fence motor defective or poor connection<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle interfering with operation of the sensors<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle trapped between tray and motor<br>▪ Motor mechanical overload due to obstruction<br>▪ Return sensor or HP sensor defective or dirty |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC510 | B | LCT tray error: B473/D350 |
| | | When the bottom plate is lifted, the upper limit sensor does not come on for 30 sec.<br>When the bottom plate is lowered, the lower limit sensor does not come on for 30 sec.<br>After lift begins, the upper limit sensor does not switch on before the pick-up solenoid switches on.<br>The paper end sensor switches on during lift and the upper limit sensor does not switch on for 2.5 s, and a message prompts user to reset paper. |
| | | ▪ Tray lift motor harness, disconnected, loose, or defective<br>▪ Tray lift motor defective<br>▪ Lift sensor defective or disconnected<br>▪ Pick-up solenoid defective or disconnected<br>▪ Paper end sensor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC515 | C | Duplex jogger motor error 1 | |
| | | When the jogger fence moves to the home position, the jogger fence HP sensor does not switch on even after the jogger motor has moved the jogger fence 153.5 mm. | ▪ Jogger fence motor defective or poor connection<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle interfering with operation of the sensors or motor<br>▪ Return sensor or HP sensor defective, dirty, or disconnected<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle has jammed mechanism<br>▪ HP sensor connector disconnected or defective<br>▪ HP sensor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC516 | B | Duplex Jogger Motor Error 2 | |
| | | When the jogger fence moves from the home position, the jogger fence HP sensor does not turn off even if the jogger motor has moved the jogger fence 153.5 mm. | ▪ Jogger fence motor defective or poor connection<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle interfering with operation of the sensors or motor<br>▪ Return sensor or HP sensor defective, dirty, or disconnected<br>▪ Paper or other obstacle has jammed mechanism<br>▪ HP sensor connector disconnected or defective<br>▪ HP sensor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC517 | D | LCIT Air Assist Front Fan Error | |
| | | The front air assist fan is not functioning properly. | ▪ Fan harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Fan blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Fan damaged, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC518 | D | LCIT Air Assist Rear Fan Error | |
| | | The rear air assist fan is not functioning properly. | ▪ Fan harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Fan blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Fan damaged, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC530 | B | Fusing cooling fan error | |
| | | The VBCU did not receive the lock signal 5 seconds after the fusing unit fan switches on. | ▪ Fan harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Fan blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Fan damaged |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC531 | B | Fusing Fan Error: Front | |
| | | The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan at the front of the fusing unit near the heat dissipation fins was operating. | ▪ Fan harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Fan blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Fan damaged |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC532 | B | Controller fan error | |
| | | The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan that cools the printed circuit boards was operating. | ▪ Fan harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Fan blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Fan damaged |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC533 | B | Fusing unit suction fan error | |
| | | The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan that draws air out of the fusing unit was operating. | ▪ Fan harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Fan blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Fan damaged |

⇒

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC534 | B | Duplex unit fan error | **NOTE**: The fans described in SC534 are the Front Duplex and Rear Duplex Fan Motors. Refer to the D014/D015 Electrical Motor Layout 2/3 Symbols M29 and M30. |
| | | The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan that draws air out of the duplex unit was operating. | ▪ Fan harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Fan blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Fan damaged |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC535 | B | Development Intake Fan Error | |
| | | The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan in the Y development unit was operating. | ▪ Fan harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Fan blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Fan damaged |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC536 | B | Development Intake Fan Error: Y | |
| SC537 | B | Development Intake Fan Error: C | |
| SC538 | B | Development Intake Fan Error: M | |
| SC539 | B | Development Intake Fan Error: K | |
| | | The lock signal remained HIGH for 5 sec. while the fan in the development unit was operating. | ▪ Fan harness disconnected or damaged<br>▪ Fan blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Fan damaged |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC540 | | Fusing/exit motor error | |
| | | Motor operation was detected abnormal at power on. | ▪ Check inside the fusing unit for any obstructions<br>▪ Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Motor or its driver board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC541 | A | Heating roller thermistor (center) error 1 | |
| | | The "floating" (non-contact) thermistor at the center of the heating roller is not operating correction. | ▪ Thermistor harness connection loose, disconnected, defective<br>▪ Thermistor installed incorrectly<br>▪ Thermistor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC543 | A | Heating roller thermistor (center) error 2 | |
| | | The thermistor at the center of the heating roller detected an abnormally high temperature (over 250°C) | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ TRIAC short, AC drive board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC544 | A | Heating roller thermistor (center) error 3 | |
| | | The thermistor detected a temperature over 260°C.. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ TRIAC short, AC drive board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC545 | A | Lamp remains on | |
| | | After hot roller reaches warm-up temperature, the center fusing lamps in the heating roller remained on at full capacity after reaching the warm-up temperature while the hot roller was not rotating. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ Heating roller thermistor damaged, or out of position<br>▪ Fusing lamp disconnected, broken |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC546 | A | Heating roller thermistor error (side) | |
| | | The temperature measured by the heating roller thermistor does not reach 0°C after 50 sec. and remains over this temperature for 10 readings. | ▪ Loose connection of the heating roller thermistor<br>▪ Defective heating roller thermistor |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC547 | A | Zero cross error | |
| | | When the main switch is turned on, the machine checks how many zero-cross signals are generated within 500 ms. This SC code is issued if the number of zero-cross signals detected is not within specification.<br>**Note**: Zero cross signals, generated from an ac power supply, are used to generate a trigger pulses to control the applied power accurately. | |
| | | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ Electrical noise on the power supply line<br>▪ Fusing relay damaged, replace the AC drive board. | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC549 | A | Heating roller thermistor (center): software error | |
| | | The thermistor detected a temperature over 250°C 10 times within 1 sec. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ TRIAC short, AC drive board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC550 | A | Heating roller thermistor 3 (side): hardware error | |
| | | The thermistor detected a temperature over 260°C.. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ TRIAC short, AC drive board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC551 | A | Pressure roller thermistor error 1 | |
| | | The temperature measured by the pressure roller thermistor did not reach 0°C after 10 attempts. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ Loose connection of the pressure roller thermistor<br>▪ Thermistor positioned incorrectly<br>▪ Defective pressure roller thermistor |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC552 | A | Pressure roller thermistor error 2 |
| | | After the main switch is turned on or the cover is closed, the heating roller temperature did not reach the ready temperature (45°C) within 80 sec. after the fusing lamp switches on.<br>-or-<br>If the fusing unit did not reach the reload temperature after 350 sec. |
| | | ▪ Pressure roller thermistor harness loose, disconnected, defective<br>▪ Pressure roller thermistor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC553 | A | Pressure roller thermistor (software) error | |
| | | The thermistor detected a temperature over 220°C 12 times within 1 sec. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ TRIAC short, AC drive board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC554 | A | Pressure roller thermistor (hardware) error | |
| | | The thermistor detected a temperature over 230°C. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code<br>▪ TRIAC short, AC drive board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC555 | A | Pressure roller fusing lamp remains on | |
| | | After hot roller reaches warm-up temperature, the pressure roller fusing lamp remained for 300 sec. while the hot roller is not rotating. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ Thermistor damaged, or out of position<br>▪ Fusing lamp disconnected, broken |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC556 | A | Heating roller fusing lamp error | |
| | | After hot roller reaches warmup temperature, the heating roller fusing lamp (ends) remains for 10 sec. while the hot roller is not rotating. | ▪ Thermistor damaged, or out of position<br>▪ Fusing lamp disconnected, broken |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC557 | | Zero Cross Over Error | |
| | | At power on the fusing relay was detected as defective. | ▪ Replace the AC drive board. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC559 | A | Three Successive Paper Jams in Fusing Unit | |
| | | This SC only occurs if SP1159 is on, and a jam occurred in the fusing unit for three consecutive sheets of paper. With SP1159 set to "1" the machine operation can be restored only by the service technician. | |
| | | The paper cooling job time sensor detected paper late for 3 counts. | ▪ Remove the paper that is jammed in the fusing unit.<br>▪ Make sure that the fusing unit is clean and has no obstacles in the paper feed path. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC561 | A | Heating roller non-contact thermistor error 1 | |
| | | The temperature measured by the heating roller thermistor (non-contact) on the end of the heating roller did not reach the prescribed warm-up temperature within 1 sec. | ▪ Loose, broken, damaged connector<br>▪ Defective thermistor |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC562 | A | Heating roller non-contact thermistor error 2 |
| | | After the main switch is turned on or the cover is closed, the heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature within 100 sec. after the heater switches on.<br>-or-<br>The heating roller did not reach the ready temperature within 150 sec.<br>▪ Note: Thermistor 2 stops monitoring the temperature when Thermistor 1 detects the ready temperature. |
| | | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code<br>▪ Defective hot roller thermistor<br>▪ Heating roller disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC563 | A | Heating roller non-contact thermistor error 3 | |
| | | The thermistor 2 (of the heating roller) detected a temperature over 250°C 10 times within 1 sec. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ TRIAC short, AC drive board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC564 | A | Heating roller non-contact thermistor error 3 | |
| | | The thermistor detected a temperature over 260°C. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ TRIAC short, AC drive board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC565 | A | Heating roller fusing lamp on error | |
| | | After fusing belt reached warm-up temperature, the heating roller fusing lamp remained on for 20 sec. while the hot roller was not rotating. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ Thermistor damaged, or out of position<br>▪ Fusing lamp disconnected, broken |

⇒

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC566 | A | Heating Roller Non-Contact Thermistor 3 | |
| | | Thermistor detects a temperature less than 0 degrees more than 3 times. | ▪ Do SP5810 to cancel the SC fusing code.<br>▪ Hot Roller Thermistor (☛ SM 6.10.2, Call Out #1) is disconnected, broken. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC568 | D | Pressure roller lift error 1 | |
| | | Even after the leading edge of the paper reached the fusing exit sensor, the pressure roller lift motor did not raise the pressure roller. | ▪ Pressure roller lift sensor connection loose, broken, damaged<br>▪ Clean the pressure roller lift sensor<br>▪ Pressure roller lift harness loose, broken, damage<br>▪ Pressure roller lift motor blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Pressure roller lift motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC569 | B | Pressure roller lift error 2 | |
| | | Pressure roller lift motor not operating correctly. (No signal to indicate completion of operation.) | ▪ Pressure roller lift sensor connection loose, broken, damaged<br>▪ Clean the pressure roller lift sensor<br>▪ Pressure roller lift harness loose, broken, damage<br>▪ Pressure roller lift motor blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Pressure roller lift motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC570 | | Development intake fan error | |
| | | Fan motor not operating correctly. | ▪ Fan harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Fan overload due to physical obstruction<br>▪ Fan motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC571 | B | Ozone exhaust fan (FC) error | |
| | | The fan of the middle ozone filter box not operating correctly. | ▪ Fan harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Fan overload due to physical obstruction<br>▪ Fan motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC572 | B | Ozone exhaust fan (K) error | |
| | | The fan of the lower ozone filter box not operating correctly. | ▪ Fan harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Fan overload due to physical obstruction<br>▪ Fan motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC573 | B | Ozone intake fan error | |
| | | The ozone filter intake fan not operating correctly. | ▪ Fan harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Fan overload due to physical obstruction<br>▪ Fan motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC574 | | Y thermistor error | |
| | | The thermistor near the Y PCU has short circuited or otherwise not operating correctly. | ▪ Harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Thermistor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC599 | B | Tray 1 lift motor error | |
| | | An error was detected in the operation of the lift motor for Tray 1 (tandem tray). | ▪ Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Motor overload due to an obstruction<br>▪ Motor defective |

## 4.2.6 SC CODES GROUP 6: DEVICE COMMUNICATION

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC620 | D | ARDF communication error | |
| | | A BREAK signal occurs after the machine detects the ARDF, or a communication timeout occurs. | ▪ ARDF disconnected<br>▪ VBCU board harness disconnected, defective<br>▪ VBCU board defective<br>▪ Spurious noise from the power supply line<br>▪ ARDF defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC621 | D | Mailbox-to-Finisher communication error | |
| | | Communication between the mailbox and finisher is interrupted. An ACK/NCK signal was not received within 100 ms after a data frame is sent and 3 retries failed. | ▪ Connection cable between mailbox and finisher disconnected, defective<br>▪ Finisher main board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective<br>▪ PSU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC622 | D | PFB communication error | |
| | | Communication between the VBCU and PFB was interrupted. (Communication status is monitored at 30 ms intervals.) | ▪ Connection cable between the VBCU and PFB is disconnected, defective<br>▪ VBCU defective<br>▪ PFB defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC624 | D | Mailbox-to-copier communication error | |
| | | Communication between the mailbox and copier is interrupted. An ACK/NCK signal was not received within 100 ms after a data frame is sent and 3 retries failed. | ▪ Mailbox cable disconnected, defective<br>▪ Mailbox main board defective<br>▪ VBCU defective<br>▪ PSU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC625 | B | VBCU-DTMB (DMC1) communication error | |
| | | Communication between the VBCU and DMC (main) was interrupted. An ACK/NAK signal was not received within 100 ms after a data frame was sent and three retries failed. | ▪ Check the DTMB harness connections at the DTMB and VBCU<br>▪ DTMB defective<br>▪ PSU defective<br>▪ VBCU defective<br>▪ 5V power supply defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC626 | B | VBCU-DTMB (DMC2) communication error | |
| | | Communication between the VBCU and DMC (sub) was interrupted. An ACK/NAK signal was not received within 100 ms after a data frame was sent and three retries failed. | ▪ Check the DTMB harness connections at the DTMB and VBCU<br>▪ DTMB defective<br>▪ VBCU defective<br>▪ PSU defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC627 | B | VBCU-DTMB (TMC) communication error | |
| | | Communication between the VBCU and TMC was interrupted. An ACK/NAK signal was not received within 100 ms after a data frame was sent and three retries failed. | ▪ DTMB harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ DTMB defective<br>▪ VBCU defective<br>▪ PSU defective |

⇒

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC636 | | SD Card Error | |
| -001 | B | Expanded authentication module error | |
| | | 1. There is no expanded authentication module in the machine.<br>2. The SD card or the expanded authentication module file is broken.<br>3. There is no DESS module in the machine. | 1. Install the correct SD card or expanded authentication module file.<br>2. Install the DESS module. |
| -002 | B | Version error | |
| | | 1. The version of the expanded authentication module is not correct. | 1. Install the correct expanded authentication module file. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC670 | D | Engine startup error | |
| | | 1. Engine does not respond within 30sec after power on.<br>2. Engine down detected suddenly during power on and warm up. | ▪ VBCU installation incorrect<br>▪ VBCU defective<br>▪ Sudden communication reset occurred between the VBCU and the Controller |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC687 | B | Memory address command error | |
| | | The VBCU does not receive a memory address command from the controller 120 seconds after paper is in the position for registration. | ▪ Turn the machine power off/on<br>▪ Check the controller board connections<br>▪ Controller defective |

## 4.2.7 SC CODES GROUP 7: PERIPHERALS

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC701 | D | ARDF original pickup operation error |
| | | Even though the pickup motor is rotating clock-wise, the pickup roller home position sensor cannot detect the position of the pickup roller. |
| | | ▪ Pickup roller HP sensor harness loose, disconnected, defective<br>▪ Pickup roller HP sensor defective<br>▪ Pickup motor harness loose, disconnected, defective<br>▪ Pickup motor defective<br>▪ ARDF control board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC705 | D | ARDF bottom plate lift motor |
| | | The bottom plate HP sensor did not detect the home position of the bottom plate after the bottom plate lift motor switches on and lowers the bottom plate.<br>The bottom plate position sensor does not detect the position of the plate after the lift motor switches on and raises the bottom plate. |
| | | ▪ ARDF feed motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Bottom plate HP sensor disconnected, defective<br>▪ ARDF main board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC720 | D | Finisher lower transport motor error | |
| | | No encoder pulse signal is detected for the transport motor within the prescribed time.<br>The 1st failure causes an original jam message, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Lower transport motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Finisher connection to transport motor loose, defective<br>▪ Lower transport motor defective<br>▪ Finisher main board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC721 | B | Finisher jogger motor error (D373/D374, B830) | |
| | | The jogger fences move out of the home position but the HP sensor output does not change within the specified number of pulses. The 1st failure causes an original jam message, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Jogger HP sensor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Jogger motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Jogger motor overloaded due to obstruction<br>▪ Finisher main board and jogger motor connection loose, defective<br>▪ Finisher main board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC723 | B | Finisher feed-out motor (B830) | |
| | | The stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not activate within the specified time after the stack feed-out belt motor turns on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Stack feed-out HP sensor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Feed-out motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Finisher main board connection to feed out motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Motor overload due to obstruction |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC724 | D | Finisher stapler hammer motor error (B830) | |
| | | Stapling does not finish within the prescribed time after the staple hammer motor turns on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Stapler hammer motor overloaded due to obstruction, jammed staple, number of sheets exceeds limit for stapling<br>▪ Stapler hammer motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Staple hammer motor HP sensor disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC725 | D | Finisher exit guide plate motor error (D373/D374, B830, B660) | |
| | | After moving away from the guide plate position sensor, the exit guide is not detected at the home position within the prescribed time. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Guide plate motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Guide plate motor overloaded due to obstruction<br>▪ Guide plate position sensor disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC726 | B | Shift jogger motor 1 error (D373/D374, B830) | |
| | | The sides fences do not retract within the prescribed time after the shift jogger motor switches on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Shift jogger motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Shift jogger motor overloaded due to obstruction<br>▪ Shift jogger HP sensor disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC727 | B | Shift jogger motor 2 error (D373/D374) | |
| | | The side fences do not retract within the prescribed time after the shift jogger motor switches on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective<br>▪ Motor defective<br>▪ Motor overload<br>▪ HP defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC728 | B | Shift jogger retraction motor error (D373/D374) | |
| | | The side fences do not retract within the prescribed time after the retraction motor switches on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective<br>▪ Motor defective<br>▪ Motor overload<br>▪ HP defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC730 | B | Finisher Tray 1 shift motor error (B830) | |
| | | The shift roller HP sensor of the upper tray does not activate within the prescribed time after the shift tray starts to move toward or away from the home position. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Shift tray HP sensor of the upper tray disconnected, defective<br>▪ Shift tray motor of the upper tray is disconnected, defective<br>▪ Shift tray motor of the upper tray overloaded due to obstruction |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC731 | B | Upper Transport Motor Error (Proof Tray): B830 | |
| | | No encoder pulse signal is detected for the upper transport motor within 600 ms. The 1st failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Upper transport motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Finisher connection to upper transport motor loose, defective<br>▪ Upper transport motor blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Upper transport motor defective<br>▪ Finisher main board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC732 | D | Shift Tray Exit Motor: 3K Finisher B830 | |
| | | The shift tray exit motor is not operating. | ▪ Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Motor is blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Motor defective<br>▪ Finisher main control board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC733 | D | Stapler Exit Motor: B830 | |
| | | The stapler exit motor is not operating. | ▪ Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Motor is blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Motor defective<br>▪ Finisher main control board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC734 | B | Upper Tray Junction Gate Motor: 3K Finisher B830 | |
| | | The upper tray junction gate HP sensor did not detect the gate at the home position within 200 ms after two attempts.<br>-or-<br>The HP sensor twice detected the gate at the home position for more than 200 ms after it was supposed to open. | ▪ Junction gate did not arrive at the home position within the specified time<br>▪ Junction gate did not leave the home position within the specified time |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC735 | B | Staple Junction Gate Motor Error: B830 | |
| | | The staple tray junction gate HP sensor did not detect the gate at the home position within 200 ms after two attempts.<br>-or-<br>The HP sensor twice detected the gate at the home position for more than 200 ms after it was supposed to open. | ▪ Junction gate did not arrive at the home position within the specified time<br>▪ Junction gate did not leave the home position within the specified time |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC736 | D | Pre-Stack Junction Gate Motor Error: 3K Finisher B830 | |
| | | The pre-stack junction gate HP sensor did not detect the gate at the home position for within 200 ms after two attempts.<br>-or-<br>The HP sensor twice detected the gate at the home position for more than 200 ms after it was supposed to open. | ▪ Junction gate did not arrive at the home position within the specified time<br>▪ Junction gate did not leave the home position within the specified time |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC737 | D | Pre-Stack Transport Motor Error: B830 | |
| | | The pre-stack transport motor is not operating. | ▪ Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Motor is blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Motor defective<br>▪ Finisher main control board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC738 | D | Pre-Stack Junction Gate Release Motor Error: B830 | |
| | | The pre-stack junction gate release HP sensor did not detect the gate at the home position within 200 ms after two attempts.<br>-or-<br>The HP sensor twice detected the gate at the home position for more than 200 ms after it was supposed to open. | ▪ Junction gate did not arrive at the home position within the specified time<br>▪ Junction gate did not leave the home position within the specified time |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC740 | B | Finisher corner stapler motor error (B830) | |
| | | The stapler motor does not switch off within the prescribed time after operating. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Staple jam<br>▪ Number of sheets in the stack exceeds the limit for stapling<br>▪ Stapler motor disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC741 | B | Finisher corner stapler rotation motor error | |
| | | The stapler does not return to its home position within the specified time after stapling. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Stapler rotation motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Stapler rotation motor overloaded due to obstruction<br>▪ Stapler rotation HP sensor disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC742 | B | Finisher stapler movement motor error | |
| | | The stapler HP sensor is not activated within the specified time after the stapler motor turned on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Stapler movement motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Stapler movement motor overloaded due to obstruction<br>▪ Stapler HP sensor disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC743 | B | Booklet stapler motor error 1 | |
| | | The front stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Front motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Front motor overloaded due to obstruction |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC744 | B | Booklet stapler motor error 2 | |
| | | The rear stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Rear motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Rear motor overloaded due to obstruction |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC745 | D | Feed-Out Belt Motor Error (D373/B830) |
| | | The stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not activate within the specified time after the stack feed-out belt motor turns on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. |
| | | If the motor is operating<br>1. Stack feed-out HP sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>2. Stack feed-out HP sensor defective<br>If the motor is not operating:<br>1. Feed-out motor blocked by an obstruction<br>2. Feed-out motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>3. Feed-out motor defective<br>4. Booklet finisher main board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC746 | D | Stack Plate Motor Error 1: Front Motor (B830) |
| | | The stack plate HP sensor (front) does not activate within 500 ms after the motor turns on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. |
| | | If the motor is operating<br>1. Front stack plate HP sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>2. Front stack plate HP sensor defective<br>If the motor is not operating:<br>1. Motor blocked by an obstruction<br>2. Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>3. Motor defective<br>4. Booklet finisher main board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC747 | D | Stack Plate Motor Error 2: Center Motor (B830) |
| | | The stack plate HP sensor (center) does not activate within 500 ms after the motor turns on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. |
| | | If the motor is operating<br>1. Center stack plate HP sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>2. Center stack plate HP sensor defective<br>If the motor is not operating:<br>1. Motor blocked by an obstruction<br>2. Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>3. Motor defective<br>4. Booklet finisher main board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC748 | D | Stack Plate Motor Error 3: Rear Motor (B830) |
| | | The stack plate HP sensor (rear) does not activate within 500 ms after the motor turns on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. |
| | | If the motor is operating<br>1. Rear stack plate HP sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>2. Rear stack plate HP sensor defective<br>If the motor is not operating:<br>1. Motor blocked by an obstruction<br>2. Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>3. Motor defective<br>4. Booklet finisher main board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC750 | B | Finisher tray 1 (upper tray lift) motor error | |
| | | The upper tray paper height sensor does not change its status with the specified time after the tray raises or lowers. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Tray lift motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Upper tray paper height sensor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Finisher main board connection to motor loose<br>▪ Finisher main board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC753 | D | Stacking Roller Motor Error (B830) |
| | | The return drive HP sensor did not detect the stacking roller at the HP sensor within 1 sec.<br>-or-<br>The stacking roller did not leave the home position at the specified time. |
| | | If the motor is operating<br>1. Return drive HP sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>2. Return drive HP sensor defective<br>If the motor is not operating:<br>1. Motor blocked by an obstruction<br>2. Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>3. Motor defective<br>4. Finisher main board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC754 | D | Stacking Roller Drag Motor Error (B830) | |
| | | The stacking roller drag motor did not turn on. | ▪ Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Motor defective<br>▪ Finisher control board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC755 | D | Shift Motor Error: 3K Finisher (B830) |
| | | The shift tray half-turn sensors:<br>Failed twice to detect the shift tray at the home position at the specified time.<br>-or-<br>Failed twice to detect that the shift tray had left the home position. |
| | | If the motor is operating<br>1. Half-turn sensor 1, 2 harnesses loose, broken, defective<br>2. One of the half-turn sensors defective<br>If the motor is not operating:<br>1. Motor blocked by an obstruction<br>2. Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>3. Motor defective<br>4. Finisher main board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC760 | D | Finisher punch motor error (B830) | |
| | | The punch HP sensor is not activated within the specified time after the punch motor turned on. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Punch HP sensor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Punch motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Punch motor overload due to obstruction |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC761 | B | Finisher folder plate motor error (D373) | |
| | | The folder plate moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | Folder plate HP sensor disconnected, defective<br>Folder plate motor disconnected, defective<br>Folder plate motor overloaded due to obstruction. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC763 | D | Punch movement motor error | |
| | | Occurs during operation of the punch unit. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective<br>Motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC764 | D | Paper position sensor slide motor error | |
| | | Occurs during operation of the punch unit. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective<br>Motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC765 | D | Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor Error (D373) | |
| | | The fold unit bottom fence did not return to the home position within the specified time. | ▪ Fold bottom fence mechanism overloaded due to an obstruction<br>▪ Fold bottom fence HP sensor connector loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Fold bottom fence HP sensor defective<br>▪ Fold bottom fence lift motor connector loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Fold bottom fence lift motor defective<br>▪ Main control board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC766 | D | Clamp Roller Retraction Motor (D373) | |
| | | The clamp roller did not return to the home position within the specified time. | ▪ Clamp roller mechanism overloaded due to an obstruction<br>▪ Clamp roller HP sensor connector loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Clamp roller HP sensor defective<br>▪ Clamp roller retraction motor connector loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Clamp roller retraction motor defective<br>▪ Main control board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC767 | D | Stack Junction Gate Motor (D373) | |
| | | The stack junction gate did not return to the home position within the specified time. | ▪ Stack junction mechanism overloaded due to an obstruction<br>▪ Stack junction gate HP sensor connector loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Stack junction gate HP sensor defective<br>▪ Stack junction gate motor connector loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Stack junction gate motor defective<br>▪ Main control board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC770 | D | Cover Interposer Lift Motor 1 Error |
| | | In the first tray:<br>▪ The upper limit sensor did not detect the bottom plate within the specified time after the lift motor switched on to lift the bottom plate.<br>▪ The lower limit sensor did not direct the bottom plate within the specified time after the lift motor switched on to lower the bottom plate.<br>**Note**: In both cases, 1 error count indicates a jam, 2 error counts cause this SC code. |
| | | ▪ Lift motor, upper limit sensor, lower limit sensor harnesses, connectors loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Lift motor defective<br>▪ Upper limit sensor defective<br>▪ Lower limit sensor defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC771 | D | Cover Interposer Lift Motor 2 Error |
| | | In the second tray:<br>▪ The upper limit sensor did not detect the bottom plate within the specified time after the lift motor switched on to lift the bottom plate.<br>▪ The lower limit sensor did not direct the bottom plate within the specified time after the lift motor switched on to lower the bottom plate.<br>**Note**: In both cases, 1 error count indicates a jam, 2 error counts cause this SC code. |
| | | ▪ Lift motor, upper limit sensor, lower limit sensor harnesses, connectors loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Lift motor defective<br>▪ Upper limit sensor defective<br>▪ Lower limit sensor defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC772 | D | Cover Interposer Pickup Motor 1 Error |
| | | In the first tray:<br>▪ While the pick-up roller motor was on, the pick-up roller HP sensor did not detect the pick-up roller at the home position within the specified number of pulses.<br>▪ While the pick-up roller motor was on, the pick-up roller HP sensor did not detect the pick-up roller at the home position above the specified number of pulses.<br>**Note**: In both cases, 1 error count indicates a jam, 2 error counts cause this SC code. |
| | | ▪ The pick-up motor, pick-up roller HP sensor harnesses, connectors were loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Pick-up motor overload due to an obstruction<br>▪ Pick-up motor defective<br>▪ Pick-up roller HP sensor defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC773 | D | Cover Interposer Pickup Motor 2 Error |
| | | In the second tray:<br>▪ While the pick-up roller motor was on, the pick-up roller HP sensor did not detect the pick-up roller at the home position within the specified number of pulses.<br>▪ While the pick-up roller motor was on, the pick-up roller HP sensor did not detect the pick-up roller at the home position above the specified number of pulses.<br>**Note**: In both cases, 1 error count indicates a jam, 2 error counts cause this SC code. |
| | | ▪ The pick-up motor, pick-up roller HP sensor harnesses, connectors were loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Pick-up motor overload due to an obstruction<br>▪ Pick-up motor defective<br>▪ Pick-up roller HP sensor defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC775 | D | Jogger Top Fence Motor: 3K Finisher B830 |
| | | The top fence HP sensor detected that:<br>The top fence did not arrive at the home position within the specified number of pulses.<br>-or-<br>The top fence failed to leave the home position within the specified number of pulses. |
| | | If the jogger top fence motor is operating:<br>1. Top fence HP sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>2. Top fence HP sensor defective<br>If the jogger top fence motor is not operating:<br>1. Motor blocked by an obstruction<br>2. Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>3. Motor defective<br>4. Finisher main board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC776 | D | Jogger Bottom Fence Motor (B830) |
| | | The bottom fence HP sensor detected that:<br>The bottom fence did not arrive at the home position at the specified time.<br>-or-<br>The bottom fence failed to leave the home position at the specified time. |
| | | If the jogger bottom fence motor is operating:<br>1. Bottom fence HP sensor harness loose, broken, defective<br>2. Bottom fence HP sensor defective<br>If the jogger bottom fence motor is not operating:<br>1. Motor blocked by an obstruction<br>2. Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>3. Motor defective<br>4. Finisher main board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC780 | D | Z-Fold Feed Motor Error | |
| | | The feed motor that drives the feed rollers and exit rollers in the Z-fold unit is not operating. The 1st alert signals a jam, the 2nd alert triggers this SC. | ▪ Motor harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Motor blocked by an obstruction<br>▪ Motor defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC781 | D | Z-Fold Lower Stopper Motor Error | |
| | | The lower stopper failed to leave the home position with the specified number of motor pulses.<br>**Note**: The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Lower stopper motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Lower stopper motor overloaded due to obstruction<br>▪ Lower stopper HP sensor disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC782 | D | Z-fold Upper Stopper Motor | |
| | | The upper stopper failed to leave the home position with the specified number of motor pulses.<br>**Note**: The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. | ▪ Upper stopper motor disconnected, defective<br>▪ Upper stopper motor overloaded due to obstruction<br>▪ Upper stopper HP sensor disconnected, defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC784 | D | Z-Fold Timing Sensor Adjustment Error 1 | |
| | | The output voltage light emitted from the sensor changed, but the return input was not sufficient to attain V0. | ▪ Sensor, mirror dirty from paper dust, other particles<br>▪ Harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Mirror out of position |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC785 | D | Z-Fold Timing Sensor Adjustment Error 2 | |
| | | The output voltage light emitted from the sensor changed, but the return input was not sufficient to attain V0. | ▪ Sensor, mirror dirty from paper dust, other particles<br>▪ Harness loose, broken, defective<br>▪ Mirror out of position |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC786 | D | Z-Fold Memory Error | |
| | | Several attempts to write to the Z-fold memory failed. | ▪ Turn the machine power off/on<br>▪ EEPROM on Z-Folder main board defective |

## 4.2.8 SC800: OVERALL SYSTEM

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC816 | B | Error in STR (Suspend To RAM) control ASIC *GW | |
| | | Error is detected in the signal from the ASIC, which controls the STR (Suspend To RAM) function | ▪ ASIC (Controller Board) defective. Turn the Main Switch OFF/ON. If the SC reoccurs, replace the Controller Board. |

⇒ **Note:** STR is a newly-added feature of the D014/D015/D078/D079 copier, which further minimizes energy consumption while the machine is in Energy Saver mode.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC817 | C | Boot loader error *GW | |
| | | The boot loader cannot read one of the following: self-diagnostic module, kernel, or one of the files of the root file system, or the check of one of these items on the system SD card failed. | ▪ File or module on the system SD card is corrupted<br>▪ File or module on the system SD card is illegal<br>▪ Make sure that the system SD card is the one designed for the machine<br>▪ Replace controller board. |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SC819 | C | Fatal kernel error *GW | | |
| | | Due to a control error, a RAM overflow occurred during system processing. One of the following messages was displayed on the operation panel. | | ▪ System program defective<br>▪ Controller board defective<br>▪ Optional board defective<br>▪ Replace controller firmware |
| | | 0x696e | init died | |
| | | 0x766d | vm_pageout: VM is full | |
| | | 4361 | Cache Error | |
| | | Other | | |

**Note**: For more details about this SC code error, execute SP5990 to print an SMC report so you can read the error code list. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SC821 | C | Self-diagnostic error 1: ASIC *GW | | |
| | | The ASIC provides the central point for the control of bus arbitration for CPU access, for option bus and SDRAM access, for SDRAM refresh, and for management of the internal bus gate. | | |
| | | 0B00 | Error code 0xffff ffff is returned when the register Write & Verify check is executed on the ASIC mounted on the controller board. The ASIC controls the ROM and buses for other devices. | ▪ ASIC (controller board defective) |
| | | 0B06 | ASIC not detected | ▪ ASIC (controller board defective)<br>▪ Poor connection between North Bridge and PCI I/F: Replace controller board |
| | | 0B10 | Failed to initialize or could not read connection bus. Data in SHM register incorrect. | ▪ Replace controller board |

**Note**: For more details about this SC code error, execute SP5990 to print an SMC report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SC822 | C | Self-diagnostic error 2: HDD *GW | | |
| | | 3003 | Check performed when HDD is installed:<br>HDD device busy for over 31 s.<br>After a diagnostic command is set for Sthe HDD, but the device remains busy for over 6 s.<br>A diagnostic command is issued to the HDD device but the result is an erro | ▪ HDD defective<br>▪ HDD harness disconnected, defective<br>▪ Controller board defective |
| 3004 | No response to the self-diagnostic command from the ASIC to the HDDs | ▪ HDD defective | | |
| 3013 | Mandolin does not respond, the HDD device remains BUSY for more than 31 s, or the BUSY signal does not drop within 6 s after | ▪ HDD defective<br>▪ HDD connector loose or defective<br>▪ Controller defective | | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | the diagnostic command is issued to the HDDs. | | | |
| 3014 | Error returned from HDD in response to the self-diagnostic command, Mandolin could not be located due to a read/write error at the HDD register. | ▪ HDD defective | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC824 | C | Self-diagnostic error 3: NVRAM *GW | |
| | | NVRAM device does not exist, NVRAM device is damaged, NVRAM socket damaged | ▪ NVRAM defective<br>▪ Controller board defective<br>▪ NVRAM backup battery exhausted<br>▪ NVRAM socket damaged |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC829 | | Self-diagnostic error 5: Optional RAM | |
| | | Verify error for optional RAM. | ▪ Make sure that the resident RAM is installed in the correct slot.<br>▪ Make sure the optional RAM is installed in the correct slot (Slot 0) |

| SC833 | D | Self-diagnostic error 8: Engine I/F ASIC *GW | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0F30<br>0F31 | | ASIC (Mandolin) for system control could not be detected. After the PCI configuration, the device ID for the ASIC could not be checked. | ▪ Replace the VBCU |
| 0F41 | | The read/write check done for resident RAM on the mother board could not be done correctly. | ▪ Replace the VBCU. |
| 50B1 | | Could not initialize or read the bus connection. | ▪ Check for loose connections at VBCU.<br>▪ Replace VBCU |
| 50B2 | | Value of the SSCG register is incorrect. | ▪ Check for loose connections at VBCU.<br>▪ Replace VBCU |

| SC834 | D | Self-diagnostic error 9: Optional Memory RAM DIMM | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 5101 | | The write/verify check for the optional RAM chip on the controller board returned an error. | ▪ Controller defective |

| SC850 | B | Net I/F error | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Duplicate IP addresses.<br>Illegal IP address.<br>Driver unstable and cannot be used on the network. | ▪ IP address setting incorrect<br>▪ Ethernet board defective<br>▪ Controller board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC851 | B | IEEE 1394 I/F error |
| | | Driver setting incorrect and cannot be used by the 1394 I/F. |
| | | **Not supported by this machine**<br>▪ NIB (PHY), LINK module defective; change the Interface Board<br>▪ Controller board defective |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC853 | B | Wireless LAN Error 1 |
| | | During machine start-up, the machine can get access to the board that holds the wireless LAN, but not to the wireless LAN card (Bluetooth). |
| | | ▪ Wireless LAN card missing (was removed) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC854 | B | Wireless LAN Error 2 |
| | | During machine operation, the machine can get access to the board that holds the wireless LAN, but not to the wireless LAN card (Bluetooth). |
| | | ▪ Wireless LAN card missing (was removed) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC855 | B | Wireless LAN error 3 |
| | | An error is detected on the wireless LAN card (802.11a/g, g or Bluetooth). |
| | | ▪ Wireless LAN card defective<br>▪ Wireless LAN card connection incorrect |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC856 | B | Wireless LAN error 4 |
| | | An error was detected on the wireless LAN card (Bluetooth). |
| | | ▪ Wireless LAN card defective<br>▪ PCI connector (to the mother board) loose |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC857 | B | USB I/F Error |
| | | The USB driver is not stable and caused an error. |
| | | ▪ Bad USB card connection<br>▪ Replace the controller board |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC858 | B | Data Encryption Error 1 | |
| | | These are errors of the HDD Data Encryption Option D377. | |
| | 0 | Key Acquistion | Key could be acquired.<br>▪ Replace the controller board |
| | 1 | HDD Key Setting Error | The key was acquired but the HDD could not be set.<br>▪ Turn the machine power off/on several times.<br>▪ Replace the controller board. |
| | 2 | NVRAM Read Error | NVRAM data conversion failed (mismatch with nvram.conf)<br>▪ Replace the NVRAM |
| | 30 | NVRAM Before Replace Error | DFU. May occur during development.<br>▪ Turn the machine power off/on several times.<br>▪ Replace the controller board. |
| | 31 | Other Error | An unexpected error occurred while data was being converted. This error is the same as SC991. See SC991 below. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC859 | B | Data Encryption Error 2 | |
| | | These are errors of the HDD Data Encryption Option D377. | |
| | 8 | HDD Check Error | Data conversion was attempted with no HDD unit present.<br>▪ Confirm that HDD unit installed correctly<br>▪ Initialize HDD with SP5832-1<br>**Note**: After installation, a new HDD should be formatted with SP5832-1 |
| | 9 | Power Loss During Data Conversion | Data conversion stopped before NVRAM/HDD data was converted.<br>▪ Format HDD with SP5832-1 |
| | 10 | Data Read Command Error | More than two illegal DMAC communications were returned.<br>▪ HDD defective<br>▪ Format HDD with SP5832-1<br>▪ Replace HDD |

⇒

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC860 | B | HDD startup error at main power on | |
| | | ▪ HDD is connected but a driver error is detected.<br>▪ The driver does not respond with the HDD within 30 s. | |
| | | ▪ HDD is not initialized<br>▪ Label data is corrupted<br>▪ Defective HDD<br>▪ Initialize the HDD with SP5832-001. | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC861 | D | HDD re-try failure *GW | |
| | | At power on with the HDD detected, power supply to the HDD is interrupted, after the HDD is awakened from the sleep mode, the HDD is not ready within 30 s. | Harness between HDD and board disconnected, defective<br>HDD power connector disconnected<br>HDD defective<br>Controller board defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC863 | D | HDD data read failure *GW | |
| | | The data written to the HDD cannot be read normally, due to bad sectors generated during operation. | HDD defective<br>Note: If the bad sectors are generated at the image partition, the bad sector information is written to NVRAM, and the next time the HDD is accessed, these bad sectors will not be accessed for read/write operation. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC864 | D | HDD data CRC error *GW | |
| | | During HDD operation, the HDD cannot respond to an CRC error query. Data transfer did not execute normally while data was being written to the HDD. | HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC865 | D | HDD access error *GW | |
| | | HDD responded to an error during operation for a condition other than those for SC863, 864. | HDD defective. |

⇒

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC866 | B | SD card error 1: Confirmation |
| | | The machine detects an electronic license error in the application on the SD card in the controller slot immediately after the machine is turned on. The program on the SD card contains electronic confirmation license data. If the program does not contain this license data, or if the result of the check shows that the license data in the program on the SD card is incorrect, then the checked program cannot execute and this SC code is displayed. |
| | | ▪ Program missing from the SD card<br>▪ Download the correct program for the machine to the SD card |

Trouble-shooting

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC867 | D | SD card error 2: SD card removed | |
| | | The SD card in the slot is removed while the machine is on. | Insert the SD card, then turn the machine OFF and ON. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC868 | D | SD card error 3: SD card access | |
| | | An error occurred while an SD card is being used. | ▪ SD card not inserted correctly<br>▪ SD card defective<br>▪ Controller board defective<br>**Note:** If you want to try to reformat the SC card, use SD Formatter Ver 1.1. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC870 | B | Address book data error | |
| | | The address book data cannot be read from the HDD, SD card or flash ROM on the controller where it is stored, or the data read from the media is defective. | ▪ Software defective. Cycle the machine off/on, then replace the controller firmware.<br>▪ HDD defective. |
| | | More Details:<br>▪ Do SP5846-50 (UCS Settings – Initialize all Directory Info.) to reset all address book data.<br>▪ Reset the user information with SP5832-6 (HDD Formatting– User Info).<br>▪ Replace the HDDs. | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC872 | B | HDD mail receive data error |
| | | ▪ The machine detects that the HDD is not operating correctly at power on.<br>▪ The machine detects that the HDD is not operating correctly (can neither read nor write) while processing incoming email. |
| | | ▪ HDD defective<br>▪ The machine is turned off while the HDD is being accessed.<br>▪ Do SP5832-007 to format the mail RX data on the HDD. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC873 | B | HDD mail send data error |
| | | An error is detected on the HDD immediately after the machine has been turned on, or power has been turned off while the machine has used the HDD. |
| | | 1. Do SP5832-008 (Format HDD – Mail TX Data) to initialize the HDD.<br>2. Replace the HDD |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC874 | D | Delete All error 1: HDD *GW | |
| | | A data error was detected for the HDD/NVRAM after the Delete All option was used.<br>**Note**: The source of this error is the Data Overwrite Security Unit running from an SD card. | ▪ Turn the main switch off/on and try the operation again.<br>▪ Install the Data Overwrite Security Unit again.<br>▪ HDD defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC875 | D | Delete All error 2: Data area *GW | |
| | | An error occurred while the machine deleted data from the HDD.<br>**Note**: The source of this error is the Data Overwrite Security Unit D377 running from an SD card. | ▪ Cycle the machine off/on.<br>▪ Try the operation again. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC876 | D | Log Data Error |
| | | An error is detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating. |
| -001 | | Log Data Error 1 |
| | | ▪ Damaged log data file in the HDD<br>▪ Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004. |
| -002 | | Log Data Error 2 |
| | | ▪ HDD encryption unit not installed<br>▪ Ask the customer's administrator to disable the HDD encryption setting with a user tool.<br>▪ Install the HDD encryption unit. |
| -003 | | Log Data Error 3 |
| | | ▪ Invalid log encryption key due to defective NVRAM data<br>▪ Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.<br>▪ Ask the customer's administrator to disable the HDD encryption setting with a user tool. |
| -004 | | Log Data Error 4 |
| | | ▪ Unusual HDD encryption function due to defective NVRAM data<br>▪ Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004. |
| -005 | | Log Data Error 5 |
| | | ▪ Installed a NVRAM or HDD which was used in another machine<br>▪ Reinstall the previous NVRAM or HDD.<br>▪ Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004. |
| -099 | | Log Data Error 99 |
| | | ▪ Other than the above causes<br>▪ Ask your supervisor. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC877 | B | HDD DataOverwriteSecurity SD card error |
| | | The 'all delete' function cannot be executed but the DataOverwriteSecurity Unit is installed and activated. |
| | | ▪ Defective SD card<br>▪ SD card not installed |
| | | 1. Replace the NVRAM and then install the new SD card.<br>2. Check and reinstall the SD card. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC878 | D | TPM system authentication error |
| | | The system firmware is not authenticated by TPM (security chip). |
| | | ▪ Incorrect updating for the system firmware<br>▪ Defective flash ROM on the controller board<br>▪ Replace the controller board. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC880 | B | File Format Converter (MLB) error |
| | | A request to get access to the MLB is not answered within the specified time. |
| | | ▪ MLB defective, replace the MLB |

## 4.2.9 SC900: MISCELLANEOUS

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC900 | D | Electrical total counter error |
| | | The total counter contains something that is not a number. |
| | | ▪ NVRAM incorrect type<br>▪ NVRAM defective<br>▪ NVRAM data scrambled<br>▪ Unexpected error from external source |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC901 | | Mechanical Counter 1 error | |
| | | Mechanical Counter 1 was not set correctly at power on, or the operator disconnected the counter while machine was operating. | ▪ Mechanical Counter 1 connection loose or defective<br>▪ Mechanical Counter 1 defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC902 | | Mechanical Counter 2 error | |
| | | Mechanical Counter 2 was not set correctly at power on, or the operator disconnected the counter while machine was operating. | ▪ Mechanical Counter 2 connection loose or defective<br>▪ Mechanical Counter 2 defective |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC910 | B | External controller error 1 *GW | |
| SC911 | | External controller error 2 *GW | |
| SC912 | | External controller error 3 *GW | |
| SC913 | | External controller error 4 *GW | |
| | | The external controller (Fiery) sends an error message. | ▪ Turn the machine power OFF/ON |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC914 | B | External controller error 5 *GW | |
| | | The external controller (Fiery) sends an error message. | ▪ Turn the machine power OFF/ON |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC919 | D | External controller down *GW | |
| | | The EAC received an interrupt signal from the FLUTE serial driver during print jobs in progress and the connection between the copier and external controller was broken. Note: The EAC is the External Api Converter. | ▪ Switch the machine OFF and ON. |

⇒

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC920 | B | Printer error 1 |
| | | An internal application error was detected and operation cannot continue. |
| | | ▪ Software defective; turn the machine OFF/ON, or change the controller firmware<br>▪ Insufficient memory |

⇒

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC921 | D | Printer font error |
| | | A necessary font is not found in the SD card. |
| | | ▪ A necessary font is not found in the SD card.<br>▪ The SD card data is corrupted. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC925 | B | Net File function error *GW |
| | | The NetFile file management on the HDD cannot be used, or a NetFile management file is corrupted and operation cannot continue. The HDDs are defective and they cannot be debugged or partitioned, so the Scan Router functions (delivery of received faxes, document capture, etc.), Web services, and other network functions cannot be used.<br>HDD status codes are displayed below the SC code: |
| | | ▪ Refer to the four procedures below (Recovery from SC 925). |

Here is a list of the HDD status codes:

| Display | Meaning |
|---|---|
| (-1) | HDD not connected |
| (-2) | HDD not ready |
| (-3) | No label |
| (-4) | Partition type incorrect |
| (-5) | Error returned during label read or check |
| (-6) | Error returned during label read or check |
| (-7) | “filesystem” repair failed |
| (-8) | “filesystem” mount failed |
| (-9) | Drive does not answer command |
| (-10) | Internal kernel error |
| (-11) | Size of drive is too small |
| (-12) | Specified partition does not exist |
| (-13) | Device file does not exist |

## Recovery from SC 925

**Procedure 1**

If the machine shows SC codes for HDD errors (SC860 to SC865) with SC 925, do the recovery procedures for SC860 to SC865.

**Procedure 2**

1. If the machine does not show one of the five HDD errors (SC860 to SC865), turn the machine power off and on.
2. If this is not the solution for the problem, then initialize the NetFile partition on the HDD with SP5832-11 (HDD Formatting – Ridoc I/F).
   NetFiles: These are jobs printed from the document server using a PC and DeskTopBinder. Before you initialize the NetFile partition on the HDD, tell the customer:
   - Received faxes on the delivery server will be erased
   - All captured documents will be erased
   - DeskTopBinder/Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor job history will be erased
   - Documents on the document server, and scanned documents, will not be erased.
   - The first time that the network gets access to the machine, the management information must be configured again (this will use a lot of time).
3. Before you initialize the Netfile partition with SP5832-11, do these steps:
4. Go into the User Tools mode and do “Delivery Settings” to print all received fax documents that are scheduled for delivery. Then erase them.
5. In the User Tools mode, do Document Management> Batch Delete Transfer Documents.
6. Do SP5832-11, then turn the machine power off and on.

**Procedure 3**

1. If “Procedure 2” is not the solution for the problem, do SP5832-1 (HDD Formatting – All)
2. Cycle the machine off/on.

- SP5832-001 erases all document and address book data on the hard disks. Consult with the customer before you do this SP code.

**Procedure 4**

If “Procedure 3” does not solve the problem, replace the HDD.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SC990 | D | Software error 1 |
| | | The software performs an unexpected function and the program cannot continue. |
| | | ▪ Software defective, re-boot |

## 4.2.10 ADDITIONAL SC CODES PRINTED IN SMC REPORTS

These codes are also used in the SMC report. Codes that have the same number in this series are identified by an additional 4-digit hexadecimal number.

| SC No. | | Symptom | Possible Cause |
|---|---|---|---|
| 853 | D | IEEE802 11b card startup error | |
| | | Not used. | |
| 854 | D | IEEE802 11b card access error | |
| | | Not used. | |
| 855 | D | IEEE802 11b card error | |
| | | Not used. | |
| 856 | D | IEEE802 11b card connection board error | |
| | | Not used. | |
| 870 | B | Address book data error | |
| | | The address book in the hard disk is accessed. → An error is detected in the address book data; address book data is not read; or data is not written into the address book. | ▪ Data corruption<br>▪ Defective hard disk<br>▪ Defective software |
| | | To recover from the error, do any of the following countermeasures:<br>▪ Format the address book by using SP5-832-8. All data in the address book (including the user codes and counters) is initialized)<br>▪ Initialize the user data by using SP5-832-6 and -7 (the user codes and counters are recovered when the main switch is turned on).<br>▪ Replace the hard disk (the user codes and counters are recovered when the main switch is turned on). | |

Trouble-shooting

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 920 | D | Printer error | |
| | | The printer program cannot be continued. | ▪ Defective hardware<br>▪ Data corruption<br>▪ Defective software |
| 925 | D | Net file error | |
| | | The management file for net files is corrupted; net files are not normally read.<br>**Netfiles**: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software | ▪ Defective hardware<br>▪ Data corruption<br>▪ Defective software |
| 992 | C | Other system SCs | |
| | | The controller received an unknown SC code from the engine. | ▪ Contact your product specialist. |
| 993 | D | Network error | |
| | | The ASIC program of GW controller cannot be continued. | ▪ Defective GW controller |

# SERVICE TABLES

| SECTION 5 SERVICE TABLES (SP MODES) REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| 130 | 08/12/2008 | Group 3000 SP modes |
| 168 ~ 169 | 04/16/2009 | Group 5000 SP Modes |
| 173 | 08/27/2009 | SP5801 |
| 201 | 04/13/2009 | SP5824 & SP5825 |
| 201 | 08/27/2009 | SP5824 |
| 237 | 9/16/2009 | SP5985 |
| 220 ~ 234 | 01/26/2009 | Group 5000 SP modes |
| 220 | 04/13/2009 | SP5846 |
| 234 | 04/13/2009 | SP5887 |
| 234 ~ 235 | 11/12/2009 | SP5894 |
| 249 ~ 270 | 08/08/2008 | SP6109 & SP6110 |
| 249 ~ 251 | 09/25/2009 | SP6109 |
| 272 | 07/30/2009 | SP7504 |
| 353 ~ 356 | 03/13/2009 | Printer Service Mode |
| 353 ~ 359 | 05/11/2009 | SP1-1001 |

# 5. SERVICE TABLES

## 5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

| Notation | What it means |
|---|---|
| [range/step] | Example: [–9~+9/0.1 mm]<br>The default setting can be adjusted in 0.1mm steps in the range ±9.<br>**Note**: The default setting for each SP mode is shown on the screen in the "Initial" box immediately below the entry box. |
| **DFU** | Denotes "Design or Factory Use". Do not change this value. |
| **Japan Only** | The feature or item is for Japan only. Do not change this value. |
| **LEF** | Long Edge Feed |
| **SEF** | Short Edge Feed |
| **Fin3, Fin4** | Please ignore. These notations refer to finishers not yet available for this machine at the present time (Oct 2007). |

# 5.2 GROUP 1000

| | |
|---|---|
| 1001 | Lead Edge Reg |
| | Adjusts the printing leading edge registration using the trimming area pattern (SP2109-2, Pattern No. 10).<br>[–9 to +9/ 0.1 mm]<br>Specification: 3 ±2mm |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1002 | Fine Adj LEdge (Thick) | |
| | Fine adjusts leading edge registration for thick paper (Thick 2, Thick 3).<br>[–9 to +9/ 0.1 mm] | |
| 1 | Thick 2 | Thick 2: 164 to 249.9 g/$m^2$ |
| 2 | Thick 3 | Thick 3: 250 to 300 g/$m^2$ |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1003 | Side-to-Side Reg | |
| | Side-to-Side Registration Adjustment. Adjusts printing side-to-side registration for each feed station, using the test pattern (SP2109-2, Pattern No. 10). These SP's should be adjusted after replacing the laser synchronization detector or the laser optical unit. | |
| 1 | Tray 1 | [–9 to +9/ 0.1 mm] |
| 2 | Tray 2 | |
| 3 | Tray 3 | |
| 4 | Tray 4 | **Japan Only** |
| 5 | Bypass Tray | |
| 6 | Dupx Tray | |
| 7 | LCT | LCT1: B473 |
| 8 | WIDE LCT | LCT2: D350 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1004 | Reg Buckle Adj | |
| | Registration Buckle Adjustment. Adjusts the registration motor timing. This timing determines the amount of paper buckle at registration. (A higher setting causes more buckling.) | |
| 1 | Trays & LCT | [–9 to +9/1 mm] |
| 2 | Dupx Tray | |
| 3 | Bypass Tray | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1005 | Reg Buckle Adj (Thick) | |
| | Registration Buckle Adjustment (Thick Paper)<br>Adjusts the registration motor timing for thick paper only. This timing determines the amount of paper buckle at registration. (A higher setting causes more buckling.) | |
| 1 | Thick 2 | Thick 2: 164 to 249.9 g/m$^2$ |
| 2 | Thick 3 | Thick 3: 250 to 300 g/m$^2$ |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1006 | Bypass Size Disp |
| | Bypass Paper Size Detection Display. Use this SP to display and confirm the size of the paper detected in the by-pass tray if paper is skewing during feeding.<br>[0 to 255/1 mm] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1007 | Duplex Fence Adj |
| | Duplex Side Fence Position Adjustment. Allows fine adjustment of the distance between the edges of the sheet and the jogger fences when the fences come together to position the sheet in the duplex unit.<br>[-3 to +3/0.1 mm] |

Group 1000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1008 | Reg Roller Adj | |
| | Sets the length of time the paper is force pre-fed and stopped at the registration roller for normal speed and half-speed. | |
| 1 | Normal Speed | [-3 to +3/ 0 /0.1 |
| 2 | Half Speed | [-3 to +3/ -0.6 /0.1 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1009 | PreFeed Time Adj | |
| | Sets the length of time the paper is force pre-fed and stopped at the registration roller for each paper feed source..<br>[0 to 3/ 0 / 1] | |
| 1 | Tray 1 | |
| 2 | Tray 2 | |
| 3 | Tray 3 | |
| 4 | Tray 4 | |
| 5 | LCT 1 | |
| 6 | LCT 2 | |
| 7 | Bypass Tray | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1010 | Fine Adj Mtr Speed **DFU** | |
| | These SP codes are used to fine adjust the speed of the motors.<br>[-3 to 3/-0.3/0.1 | |
| 1 | Drum Motor:K | |
| 2 | Drum Motor:M | |
| 3 | Drum Motor:C | |
| 4 | Drum Motor:Y | |
| 5 | K Dev Motor: Norm2 | |
| 6 | M Dev Motor: Norm2 | |
| 7 | C Dev Motor: Norm2 | |
| 8 | Y Dev Motor: Norm2 | |
| 9 | K Drum CL Mtr: Norm2 | |
| 10 | M Drum CL Mtr: Norm2 | |
| 11 | C Drum CL Mtr: Norm2 | |
| 12 | Y Drum CL Mtr: Norm2 | |
| 13 | ITB Motor: Norm2 | |
| 14 | PTR Motor: Norm2 | |
| 15 | Fusing Motor: Norm2 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1011 | Motor Adj.: Norm 1 **DFU** | |
| | These SP codes are used to adjust the speed of the motors for Normal speed 1.. [-3 to 3/0/0.1 | |
| 5 | K Dev Motor | |
| 6 | M Dev Motor | |
| 7 | C Dev Motor | |
| 8 | Y Dev Motor | |
| 9 | K Drum CL Mtr | |
| 10 | M Drum CL Mtr | |
| 11 | C Drum CL Mtr | |
| 12 | Y Drum CL Mtr | |
| 13 | ITB Motor | |
| 14 | PTR Motor | |
| 15 | Fusing Motor | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1012 | Mtr Adj.: Half 2 **DFU** | |
| | These SP codes are used to adjust the speed of the motors for Half speed 2.<br>[-3 to 3/0/0.1 | |
| 5 | K Dev Motor | |
| 6 | M Dev Motor | |
| 7 | C Dev Motor | |
| 8 | Y Dev Motor | |
| 9 | K Drum CL Mtr | |
| 10 | M Drum CL Mtr | |
| 11 | C Drum CL Mtr | |
| 12 | Y Drum CL Mtr | |
| 13 | ITB Motor | |
| 14 | PTR Motor | |
| 15 | Fusing Motor | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1013 | Motor Adj.: Half 1 **DFU** | |
| | These SP codes are used to adjust the speed of the motors for Half speed 1.<br>[-3 to 3/0/0.1 | |
| 5 | K Dev Motor | |
| 6 | M Dev Motor | |
| 7 | C Dev Motor | |
| 8 | Y Dev Motor | |
| 9 | K Drum CL Mtr | |
| 10 | M Drum CL Mtr | |
| 11 | C Drum CL Mtr | |
| 12 | Y Drum CL Mtr | |
| 13 | ITB Motor | |
| 14 | PTR Motor | |
| 15 | Fusing Motor | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1105 | Hot, Htg, Press Roll Temp **DFU** | |
| | [140 to 200/ 170 / 1 deg.] | |
| 1 | Htg Roll Ctr:Reload | |
| 2 | Htg Roll Ctr:Idle:Reload | |
| 3 | Htg Roll Ctr:Wait:Norm | |
| 4 | Htg Roll Ctr:Wait:Low | |
| 5 | Htg Roll Ctr:Wait:High | |
| 6 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Norm1:Normal | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Norm1:high adhesion | |
| 8 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Norm2:Normal | |
| 9 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Norm2:high adhesion | |
| 10 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Trace:Normal | |
| 11 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Trace:high adhesion | |
| 12 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Mid Thk:Normal | |
| 13 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Mid Thk:high adhesion | |
| 14 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Thk1:Normal | |
| 15 | Htg Roll Ctr:1-S:Thk1:high adhesion | |
| 16 | Htg Roll Ctr:Thk2:Normal | |
| 17 | Htg Roll Ctr:Thk2:high adhesion | |
| 18 | Htg Roll Ctr:Thk3:Normal | |
| 19 | Htg Roll Ctr:Thk3:high adhesion | |
| 20 | Htg Roll Ctr:OHP:Normal | |
| 21 | Htg Roll Ctr:OHP:high adhesion | |
| 22 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Norm1:1C | |
| 23 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Norm1:FC | |
| 24 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Norm2:1C | |
| 25 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Norm2:FC | |
| 26 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Trace:1C | |
| 27 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Trace:FC | |
| 28 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Mid Thk:1C | |
| 29 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Mid Thk:FC | |

Group 1000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 30 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Thk1:1C | |
| 31 | Htg Roll Ctr:2-S:Thk1:FC | |
| 32 | Htg Roll End:Reload: Adj | |
| 33 | Htg Roll End:Idle:Reload:Adj | |
| 34 | Htg Roll End:Wait:Norm:Adj | |
| 35 | Htg Roll End:Wait:Low:Adj | |
| 36 | Htg Roll End:Wait:High:Adj | |
| 37 | Htg Roll End:Feed:Adj | |
| 38 | Press Roll:Reload | |
| 39 | Press Roll:Idle:Reload | |
| 40 | Press Roll:Wait:Norm | |
| 41 | Press Roll:Wait:Low | |
| 42 | Press Roll:Wait:High | |
| 43 | Press Roll:1-S:Norm1 | |
| 44 | Press Roll:1-S:Norm2 | |
| 45 | Press Roll:1-S:Trace | |
| 46 | Press Roll:1-S:Mid Thk | |
| 47 | Press Roll:1-S:Thk1 | |
| 48 | Press Roll:Thk2 | |
| 49 | Press Roll:Thk3 | |
| 50 | Press Roll:OHP | |
| 51 | Press Roll:2-S:Norm1 | |
| 52 | Press Roll:2-S:Norm2 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 53 | Press Roll:2-S:Trace | |
| 54 | Press Roll:2-S:Mid Thk | |
| 55 | Press Roll:2-S:Thk1 | |
| 56 | Hot Roll:Wait:Norm | |
| 57 | Hot Roll:Wait:Low | |
| 58 | Hot Roll:Wait:High | |
| 59 | Hot Roll L3:Ctr Corr Temp | |
| 60 | Hot Roll L3:End correction Temp | |
| 61 | Hot Roll:High Rot Temp | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1106 | Temp Ctrl | |
| | These SP codes control the temperature control of the hot roller and display the temperatures of the hot roller, pressure roller, heating roller, and heating roller lamps. | |
| 1 | 0:ON/OFF 1:PID | Hot roller fusing lamp control switch<br>0: OFF, **1: PID** |
| 2 | Htg Roll Ctr Temp | Displays the temperature in centigrade of the fusing lamp (center) in the heating roller. Range: 0 to 230 |
| 3 | Htg Roll End Temp | Displays the temperature in centigrade of the fusing lamp (ends) in the heating roller. Range: 0 to 230 |
| 4 | Press Roll Temp | Displays the temperature in centigrade of the pressure roller. Range: 0 to 230 |
| 5 | Hot Roll Temp | Displays the temperature in centigrade of the hot roller. Range: 0 to 230 |

Group 1000

| 1107 | Mode Shift **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Low Temp On/Off | |
| 2 | High Temp On/Off | |
| 3 | Low Temp:Reload | |
| 4 | High Temp:Reload | |
| 5 | Low Temp:Feed | |
| 6 | High Temp:Feed | |
| 7 | L-Limit:Htg Roll:Reload | |
| 8 | L-Limit:Press Roll:Reload | |
| 9 | H-Limit:Htg Roll:Reload | |
| 10 | H-Limit:Press Roll:Reload | |
| 11 | L-Limit:Htg Roll:Feed | |
| 12 | L-Limit:Press Roll:Feed | |
| 13 | H-Limit:Htg Roll:Feed | |
| 15 | Press Temp:Norm1 | |
| 16 | Press Temp:Norm2 | |
| 17 | Press Temp:Trace | |
| 18 | Press Temp:Mid Thk | |
| 19 | Press Temp:Thk1 | |
| 20 | Press Temp:Thk2 | |
| 21 | Press Temp:Thk3 | |
| 22 | Press Temp:OHP | |
| 25 | Idle:Reload:Time | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 26 | Idle:Wait/Time,Low | |
| 27 | Ready:Feed:Time | |
| 28 | Press:Time | |
| 29 | Idle:End:Time | |
| 35 | Idle:Wait:Time,High | |
| 36 | Low Temp Reload Time Extend | |
| 37 | Extend Start Time Allowed: Line Feed | |

| 1109 | High Adhesion Mode |
|---|---|
| 1 | [*0:Normal]<br>[1: High Adhesion] |

| 1110 | Change Temp | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Norm1 | |
| 2 | Norm2 | |
| 3 | Trace | |
| 4 | Mid Thk | |
| 5 | Thk1 | |
| 6 | Thk2 | |
| 7 | Thk3 | |
| 8 | OHP | |

Group 1000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1111 | Measure Mode | |
| | Nip Width Measurement Setting Mode | |
| 1 | Nip Width:Execute | Determines whether the nip at the hot roller and pressure roller is calibrated.<br>Touch [Execute]. |
| 2 | Nip Width:Stop Time | Determines the down time of the fusing/exit motor in the fusing nip band calibration mode.<br>[1 to 100/1 sec.] |
| 3 | Nip Width:Stop Interval | Determines the intervals between the down times of the fusing/exit motor in the nip band calibration mode.<br>[0 to 2000/100 msec.] |
| 4 | Nip Width:Htg Roll Temp:Ctr | |
| 5 | Nip Width:Htg Roll Temp:End | |
| 6 | Nip Width:Press Roll Temp | |
| 11 | Belt:0:off 1:on | |
| 12 | Belt:Rotation Time | |
| 13 | Belt:Htg Roll Temp:Ctr | |
| 14 | Belt:Htg Roll Temp:End | |
| 15 | Belt:Press Roll Temp | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1112 | Fuser Unit In/Out **DFU** |
| | Fusing Unit: In/Out: Start Fusing Unit<br>Determines whether the fusing unit operates during the copy cycle for image creation and paper feed.<br>**[*1: In]** [0: Out] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1113 | Fusing SC Issue Time Info **DFU** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1159 | Fusing SC Settings | |
| | These SP codes determine whether the fusing unit SC codes are displayed. | |
| 1 | SC On:1/Off:0 for 3 Jams | This SP determines whether the machine stops and displays an SC if three consecutive jams occur in the fusing unit.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: Disable. SC code is not displayed.<br>1: Enable. SC code is displayed. |
| 2 | SC On:0/Off:1 for No Fusing Pressure | This SP determines whether an SC is displayed if the fusing pressure mechanism is not operating.<br>0: Enable. SC code is displayed.<br>1: Disable. SC code is not displayed.<br>**Note**: A jam does not necessarily occur in the fusing unit if the pressure roller lift mechanism is not operating. |

Group 1000

| 1201 | CPM Down **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| | Adjusts the CPM down. | |
| 1 | L Temp:Judge Down Temp | Down Judgment Temp |
| 2 | L Temp:Judge Up _Temp | Up Judgment Temp |
| 3 | L Temp:1st CPM Down | CPM |
| 4 | L Temp:2nd CPM Down | |
| 5 | L Temp:3rd CPM Down | |
| 6 | Unit Low Temp:Judge Temp | Judgment Temp |
| 7 | H Temp:1st CPM Down | CPM |
| 8 | H Temp:2nd CPM Down | |
| 9 | H Temp:3rd CPM Down | |
| 10 | Down Temp: HiTemp 1: 1st CPM | Down Judgment Temp |
| 11 | Down Temp: HiTemp 1: 2nd CPM | |
| 12 | Down Temp: HiTemp 1: 3rd CPM | |
| 13 | Down Temp: HiTemp 2: 1st CPM | |
| 14 | Down Temp: HiTemp 2: 2nd CPM | |
| 15 | Down Temp: HiTemp 2: 3rd CPM | |

| 1202 | Htg Press Roll:Panel Off/Low Power **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Htg Roll Ctr:Panel off mode | |
| 2 | Htg Roll Ctr:Low Power Mode | |
| 3 | Htg Roll End:Panel off mode | |
| 4 | Htg Roll End:Low Power Mode | |
| 5 | Press Roll:Panel off mode | |
| 6 | Press Roll:Low Power Mode | |

| 1203 | Power Control **DFU** |
|---|---|
| | [-4 to +4/ 0 / 1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1301 | Paper Type Detect | |
| | These SP settings switch the on/off the paper type detection function.<br>Two sensors, one mounted above and one below the paper at the registration rollers, detect the opacity of the first sheet and compares this reading for every subsequent sheet. If the reading is higher (thicker paper) or lower (thinner paper), the sensor triggers an error.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Enable, 1: Disable | |
| 1 | Tray 1 | |
| 2 | Tray 2 | |
| 3 | Tray 3 | |
| 4 | Tray 4 | **Japan Only** |
| 5 | Bypass Tray | |
| 6 | LCT | B473 |
| 7 | Wide LCT | D359 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1302 | Double-Feed Detect | |
| | These SP settings switch the on/off the double-feed detect function.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Enable, 1: Disable<br>Two sensors, one mounted above and one below the paper at the registration rollers, detect the opacity of the first sheet and compares this reading for every subsequent sheet. If the reading is higher (thicker paper) or lower (thinner paper), the sensor triggers an error. | |
| 1 | Tray 1 | |
| 2 | Tray 2 | |
| 3 | Tray 3 | |
| 4 | Tray 4 | **Japan Only** |
| 5 | Bypass Tray | |
| 6 | LCT | |
| 7 | Wide LCT | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1902 | CPM Down Set | |
| 1 | Custom (0:Off 1:On) | |
| 2 | Pre-Punch (0:Off 1:On) | |

| 1903 | Thick Mode (Re-Pickup) | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Tray 2 (0:Off 1:On) | |
| 2 | Tray 2 (0:Off 1:On) | |
| 3 | Tray 3 (0:Off 1:On) | |
| 4 | Tray 4 (0:Off 1:On) | |
| 5 | Bypass (0:Off 1:On) | |

| 1905 | Bypass Feed Restart | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0:Timer 1:[Start] | |
| 2 | Timer: 0:1s 1:2s 2:3s | |

| 1906 | PType Det Light Amt | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Norm Paper Light Amt | |
| 2 | Trans Paper Light Amt | |
| 3 | OHP Light Amt | |

| 1907 | Ptype Det Corr Amt | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Normal Paper | |
| 2 | Translucent Paper | |
| 3 | OHP | |

| 1909 | Force Jam Feed | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0:Off 1:On | |

| 1920 | WideLCT Fan Duty | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Fan F | |
| 2 | Fan R | |

| 1921 | WideLCT Fan time – Start Time |
|---|---|

| 1922 | WideLCT Fan ON/OFF |
|---|---|
| 1923 | Wide LCT Pickup Assist |
| | [*0: Auto Select]<br>[1: Force On]<br>[2: Force Off] |

| 1924 | Adj Start Timing: Paper Type Dbl Feed | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Line Speed 1 | |
| 2 | Line Speed 2 | |

| 1925 | Adj Value: Paper Type Dbl Feed | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Main Tray/LCT | |
| 2 | Bypass/Wide LCT | |

Group 1000

| 1950 | Set Fan Operation | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Fan Op Temp | |
| 2 | To Standby Mode Time | |
| 3 | Fan Off:LCT T/H Sensor | |
| 4 | Fan Off:Y Thermistor | |
| 5 | Fan Off Time | |
| 11 | To Standby EngA:Sn | |
| 12 | To Standby EngB:Ozone | |
| 13 | To Standby EngC:Envir | |

# 5.3 GROUP 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2101 | Reg Col Interval | Color Interval Registration Adjustment. |
| | Use these SPs to correct problems with color registration. Color registration problems can be detected by checking the results of 2901 002 Pattern 1. Before doing these adjustments, try to solve the problem by doing SP2111. For more, see "4. Troubleshooting" in the B132/B200 Service Manual. | |
| 1 | Main Scan Dot:K | |
| 2 | Main Scan Dot:M | |
| 3 | Main Scan Dot:C | |
| 4 | Main Scan Dot:Y | |
| 5 | Main/Sub Scan:K | |
| 6 | Main/Sub Scan:M | |
| 7 | Main/Sub Scan:C | |
| 8 | Main/Sub Scan:Y | |
| 9 | Main/Sub Scan:K1-2 | |
| 10 | Main/Sub Scan:M1-2 | |
| 11 | Main/Sub Scan:C1-2 | |
| 12 | Main/Sub Scan:Y1-2 | |
| 20 | SubScan Line:K-M | |
| 21 | SubScan Line:K-C | |
| 22 | SubScan Line:K-Y | |
| 23 | SubScan M Adj:K-M | |
| 34 | SubScan M Adj:K-C | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 25 | SubScan M Adj:K-Y | |
| 30 | M Diff:Main | |
| 31 | C Diff:Main | |
| 32 | Y Diff:Main | |
| 33 | M Diff:Main/Sub | |
| 34 | C Diff:Main/Sub | |
| 35 | Y Diff:Main/Sub | |
| 40 | M Diff:Sub | |
| 41 | C Diff:Sub | |
| 42 | Y Diff:Sub | |
| 43 | M Diff:Sub D Motor | |
| 44 | C Diff:Sub D Motor | |
| 45 | Y Diff:Sub D Motor | |
| 60 | Spd Diff Offset:K Main | |
| 61 | Spd Diff Offset:M Main | |
| 62 | Spd Diff Offset:C Main | |
| 63 | Spd Diff Offset:Y Main | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2102 | Prt Mag Adj | | Print Magnification Adjustment |
| | These SP codes adjust the print magnification in the main scan direction. | | |
| 1 | Main Scan Mag | | |
| 5 | Mag Rate:K 1-2 | | |
| 6 | Mag Rate:M 1-2 | | |
| 7 | Mag Rate:C 1-2 | | |
| 8 | Mag Rate:Y 1-2 | | |
| 10 | Mag Diff:K1-2 | | |
| 11 | Mag Diff:M1-2 | | |
| 12 | Mag Diff:C1-2 | | |
| 013 | Mag Diff:Y1-2 | | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2103 | Prt Erase Margin | |
| | Adjusts the white space at the leading edge. This adjustment can be done for each paper source (Tray 1, Tray 2, etc.) | |
| 1 | LEdge:Tray 1 | |
| 2 | Adj TEdge Margin | |
| 3 | Adj Left Margin | |
| 4 | Adj Right Margin | |
| 5 | TEdge Margin:Tray1 | |
| 6 | TEdge Margin:Tray2 | |
| 7 | TEdge Margin:Tray3 | |
| 8 | TEdge Margin:Tray4 | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 9 | LEdge Custom:Bypass | |
| 10 | LEdge Custom:LCT | |
| 11 | LEdge: Tray 2 | |
| 12 | LEdge: Tray 3 | |
| 13 | LEdge: Tray 4 | |
| 14 | LEdge: Bypass | |
| 15 | LEdge: LCT | |
| 16 | LEdge: Duplex | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2104 | Skew Adj | |
| | Use these SPs to correct skew in color registration. For more, see "4. Troubleshooting" in the B132/B200 Service Manual. | |
| 1 | Bk-M | |
| 2 | Bk-C | |
| 3 | Bk-Y | |
| 11 | Skew Corr Total M | |
| 12 | Skew Corr Total C | |
| 13 | Skew Corr Total Y | |

| 2105 | LD Syn PM Adj **DFU** | | LD Pulse Modulation Synchronization Adjustment |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Raises the pulse modulation for the LD0 beam of K. | | |
| 1 | Bk1 | | |
| 2 | M1 | | |
| 3 | C1 | | |
| 4 | Y1 | | |
| 5 | Bk2 | | |
| 6 | M2 | | |
| 7 | C2 | | |
| 8 | Y2 | | |

| 2106 | Poly Mtr OFF - Time Until Stop | Polygon Motor Off Setting |
|---|---|---|
| | The polygon mirror motor turns off if the machine receives no print job for the time specified in this SP mode after the previous job was completed.<br>[0 to 180/1 sec] | |

| 2107 | Prt Param On/Off |
|---|---|
| | Switches enhanced shading on/off. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2108 | Col Prt Stop | |
| | This SP determines which color to switch off for printing. | |
| 1 | Bk | [0 to 1/0]<br>0: Off. Color prints<br>1: On. Color does not print |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2109 | Test Pattern | | |
| | Write Test Pattern. Some of these test patterns are used for copy image adjustments but most are used primarily for design testing. These test patterns do not use the IPU. | | |
| 1 | Image Add | | Select "1" to have the patterns selected with SP2109 002 print overlapped on one another.<br>[0 to 1/1] 0: Off, 1: On |
| 2 | Select Pattern | | Allows you to select the pattern to print.<br>[0 to 20/1] |
| | 0 | Off | |
| | 1 | Grid Pattern | |
| | 2 | Slant Grid Pattern | |
| | 3 | 2-Dot Horizontal Line | |
| | 4 | 2-Dot Vertical Line | |
| | 5 | 1-Dot Horizontal Line | |
| | 6 | 1-Dot Vertical Line | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 7 | 1-Dot Independent | |
| | 8 | 2-Dot Independent | |
| | 9 | 4-Dot Independent | |
| | 10 | Trim Area | |
| | 11 | Belt Pattern | |
| | 12 | 100% Coverage | |
| | 13 | Vertical Cross-Stitch | |
| | 14 | Horizontal Cross-Stitch | |
| | 15 | Crop Marks | |
| | 16 | Vertical Belt | |
| | 17 | Checkered Flag | |
| | 18 | 20 mm Grid | |
| | 19 | Horizontal Grayscale | |
| | 20 | Horizontal Grayscale-White Stripes | |
| 4 | Col Select:YCMK | | [0 to 255/1] |
| 5 | Density:K | | [0 to 15/1] |
| 6 | Density:M | | [0 to 15/1] |
| 7 | Density:C | | [0 to 15/1] |
| 8 | Density:Y | | [0 to 15/1] |
| 11 | Gray Density 1 | | [0 to 15/1] |
| 12 | Gray Density 2 | | [0 to 15/1] |
| 13 | Gray Density 3 | | [0 to 15/1] |
| 14 | Gray Density 4 | | [0 to 15/1] |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 15 | Gray Density 5 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 16 | Gray Density 6 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 17 | Gray Density 7 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 18 | Gray Density 8 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 19 | Gray Density 9 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 20 | Gray Density 10 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 21 | Gray Density 11 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 22 | Gray Density 12 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 23 | Gray Density 13 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 24 | Gray Density 14 | [0 to 15/1] |
| 25 | Gray Density 15 | [0 to 15/1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2110 | Force Tnr Cycle | |
| | Force Toner Supply Cycle. | |
| 1 | Do Correction | |
| 2 | Do With LD Wavelength | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2111 | Force Tnr Pos |
| | Force Toner Position Alignment.Touch [EXECUTE] to execute the MUSIC feature.<br>MUSIC is the "Mirror Unit for Skew and Interval Correction".<br>Three MUSIC sensors mounted above the ITB read three MUSIC sensor patterns developed on the ITB.<br>The sensors read the patterns and the machine uses this feedback to adjust: 1) the positions of the 3rd scanner mirrors to correct skew (main scan), and 2) the speed of the drum motors to correct the intervals (sub scan) between the patterns.<br>If the vertical alignment of the patterns or the intervals are not correct, this causes color offset. This adjustment is done for each color (Y, M, C, K).<br>MUSIC executes automatically:<br>▪ When the machine is turned on or returns from an energy save mode.<br>▪ At the interval prescribed by SP2153 015 (Default: 8 min.)<br>▪ After completion of the process control cycle.<br>▪ When the machine receives a job after remaining idle for a long period.<br>▪ After the fusing unit exceeds the prescribed temperature. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2112 | Mag Point Adj | |
| | Magnification Point Adjustment. Corrects the difference in magnification for each color in the left and right direction.<br>[-4 to +4/0/1]<br>Do SP2109 002 and print Pattern 1 on A3 size paper. Examine the pattern with a scaled loupe. For every 50 μm adjust the setting in the left or right direction. A 1 step correction corrects 50 μm. For more, see "4. Troubleshooting" in the B132/B200 Service Manual. | |
| 1 | M Left | |
| 2 | M Right | |
| 3 | C Left | |
| 4 | C Right | |
| 5 | Y Left | |
| 6 | Y Right | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2150 | Prt Area Pulse **DFU** | |
| | Pulse Setting: Print Area Only. These SPs fine adjust magnification in the main scan direction in increments of 1/32 dots. | |
| 1-10 | K Area 1 to 10 | [-120 to +120/32 sub dot] |
| 11-20 | M Area 1 to 10 | |
| 21 - 30 | C Area 1 to 10 | |
| 31 - 40 | Y Area 1 to 10 | |

| 2152 | Shading Coeff **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| | Shading Correction Coefficient. These SPs set the shading correction coefficient for Areas 01 to 19 for each color. For a list of the ranges and default settings, print the SMC report with SP5990. | |
| 1 - 15 | K Area 1 to 15 | |
| 21 - 35 | M Area 1 to 15 | |
| 41 - 55 | C Area 1 to 15 | |
| 61 - 75 | Y Area 1 to 15 | |

| 2153 | MUSIC Settings **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs determine how MUSIC executes. In the settings below 0: On, 1:Off. | |
| 1 | Auto Execute | Sets MUSIC to execute automatically.<br>[0 to 1/1] |
| 2 | During ProCon | Sets MUSIC to execute after completion of the process control self-check.<br>[0 to 1/1] |
| 3 | Initialization | Sets MUSIC to execute after the machine is switched on.<br>[0 to 1/1] |
| 4 | During Data In | Sets MUSIC to execute before image data output.<br>[0 to 1/1] |
| 5 | Writing | Sets MUSIC to execute during long print jobs.<br>[0 to 1/1] |
| 6 | MUSIC Temp Intervals | |
| 20 | MUSIC:Temp Chg | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 23 | 2-Point Page Interval | |
| 24 | Assign Page Interval | |
| 29 | MUSIC Density Lvl | |
| 30 | Clear Main Slip | |
| 31 | Clear Sub Slip | |
| 32 | Clear Skew Amt | |
| 33 | 2-Pt Corr:Clr Offset | |
| 39 | Get Init 2-Pt Setting | |
| 50 | Add M Weight | |
| 51 | Add C Weight | |
| 52 | Add Y Weight | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2154 | Music Settings 2 **DFU** | |
| | These SP settings switch off feedback during MUSIC for the elements listed below. | |
| 1 | Feed Back mode | |
| 2 | Sensor Light 1 | |
| 3 | Sensor Light 2 | |
| 4 | Sensor Light 3 | |
| 5 | AutoLight | |
| 6 | AdjCoeff:FrontKf | |
| 7 | AdjCoeff:CtrKc | |
| 8 | AdjCoeff:RearKr | |
| 9 | MinPatchDiff:MainFine | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 10 | MinPatchDiff:SubFine | |
| 11 | MinPatchDiff:MainRough | |
| 12 | MinPatchDiff:SubRough | |
| 13 | ColBaseDiff:Min Value | |
| 14 | ColMidDiff:Min Value | |
| 15 | ColBaseDiff:Max Value | |
| 16 | Patch Min Gap | |
| 17 | Laser Target Adj | |
| 18 | MY Laser Max | |
| 19 | AD Upper Limit | |
| 20 | AD Lower Limit | |
| 21 | Sense Start:Norm2:Fine | |
| 22 | Sense Start:Norm2:Rough | |
| 23 | Sense Start:Norm1:Fine | |
| 24 | Sense Start:Norm1:Rough | |
| 25 | BeforeFilter:a1:Norm2:Fine | |
| 26 | BeforeFilter:a2:Norm2:Fine | |
| 27 | BeforeFilter:b0:Norm2:Fine | |
| 28 | BeforeFilter:b1:Norm2:Fine | |
| 29 | BeforeFilter:b2:Norm2:Fine | |
| 30 | AfterFilter:a1:Norm2:Fine | |
| 31 | AfterFilter:a2:Norm2:Fine | |
| 32 | AfterFilter:b0:Norm2:Fine | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 33 | AfterFilter:b1:Norm2:Fine | |
| 34 | AfterFilter:b2:Norm2:Fine | |
| 35 | BeforeFilter:a1:Norm2:Rough | |
| 36 | BeforeFilter:a2:Norm2:Rough | |
| 37 | BeforeFilter:b0:Norm2:Rough | |
| 38 | BeforeFilter:b1:Norm2:Rough | |
| 39 | BeforeFilter:b2:Norm2:Rough | |
| 40 | AfterFilter:a1:Norm2:Rough | |
| 41 | AfterFilter:a2:Norm2:Rough | |
| 42 | AfterFilter:b0:Norm2:Rough | |
| 43 | AfterFilter:b1:Norm2:Rough | |
| 44 | AfterFilter:b2:Norm2:Rough | |
| 45 | BeforeFilter:a1:Norm:1Fine | |
| 46 | BeforeFilter:a2:Norm:1Fine | |
| 47 | BeforeFilter:b0:Norm:1Fine | |
| 48 | BeforeFilter:b1:Norm:1Fine | |
| 49 | BeforeFilter:b2:Norm:1Fine | |
| 50 | AfterFilter:a1:Norm:1Fine | |
| 51 | AfterFilter:a2:Norm:1Fine | |
| 52 | AfterFilter:b0:Norm:1Fine | |
| 53 | AfterFilter:b1:Norm:1Fine | |
| 54 | AfterFilter:b2:Norm:1Fine | |
| 55 | BeforeFilter:a1:Norm:1Rough | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 56 | BeforeFilter:a2:Norm:1Rough | |
| 57 | BeforeFilter:b0:Norm:1Rough | |
| 58 | BeforeFilter:b1:Norm:1Rough | |
| 59 | BeforeFilter:b2:Norm:1Rough | |
| 60 | AfterFilter:a1:Norm:1Rough | |
| 61 | AfterFilter:a2:Norm:1Rough | |
| 62 | AfterFilter:b0:Norm:1Rough | |
| 63 | AfterFilter:b1:Norm:1Rough | |
| 64 | AfterFilter:b2:Norm:1Rough | |
| 65 | Filter QF:Norm2:Fine | |
| 66 | Filter QF:Norm2:Rough | |
| 67 | Filter QF:Norm:1Fine | |
| 68 | Filter QF:Norm:1Rough | |
| 69 | Filter Switch | |
| 70 | Adj to Target Light Amt | |
| 71 | Auto Adj to Target Light Amt | |

| 2155 | MUSIC Settings 3 **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | ADC Cycle:Norm2:Fine | |
| 2 | ADC Cycle:Norm2:Rough | |
| 3 | ADC Cycle:Norm:1Fine | |
| 4 | ADC Cycle:Norm:1Rough | |
| 5 | Store Point:Norm2:Fine | |
| 6 | Store Point:Norm2:Rough | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | Store Point:Norm2:Sub | |
| 8 | Store Point:Norm:1Fine | |
| 9 | Store Point:Norm:1Rough | |
| 10 | Store Point:Norm:1Sub | |
| 11 | M Main Offset Amt1 | |
| 12 | M Main Offset Amt2 | |
| 13 | M Main Offset Amt3 | |
| 14 | C Main Offset Amt1 | |
| 15 | C Main Offset Amt2 | |
| 16 | C Main Offset Amt3 | |
| 17 | Y Main Offset Amt1 | |
| 18 | Y Main Offset Amt2 | |
| 19 | Y Main Offset Amt3 | |
| 20 | M Sub Offset Amt1 | |
| 21 | M Sub Offset Amt2 | |
| 22 | M Sub Offset Amt3 | |
| 23 | C Sub Offset Amt1 | |
| 24 | C Sub Offset Amt2 | |
| 25 | C Sub Offset Amt3 | |
| 26 | Y Sub Offset Amt1 | |
| 27 | Y Sub Offset Amt2 | |
| 28 | Y Sub Offset Amt3 | |
| 29 | Tigger V:Fine:Sub | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 30 | Tigger V:Fine:Main | |
| 31 | Tigger V:Roug:Sub | |
| 32 | Tigger V:Rough:Main | |
| 33 | Largest Main Offset Amt1 | |
| 34 | Largest Main Offset Amt2 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2156 | 2-Point Measure **DFU** | |
| | These SP codes set the initial values for 2-point calibration. | |
| 1 | Target K | |
| 2 | Target M | |
| 3 | Target C | |
| 4 | Target Y | |
| 21 | K Differential | |
| 22 | M Differential | |
| 23 | C Differential | |
| 24 | Y Differential | |
| 41 | Focus Value:K | |
| 42 | Focus Value:M | |
| 43 | Focus Value:C | |
| 44 | Focus Value:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2180 | MUSIC Monitor | |
| | Displays the current and previous lens temperature readings. | |
| 1 | Lens Temp | |
| 10 | Previous Temp | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2181 | Alignment Result | |
| | These SPs display the amount of shift correction for each color, the amount of correction done at each sensor in both the main scan and sub scan direction.<br>[0 to 9 999 999] | |
| 1 | General | |
| 2 | M Skew Amt | |
| 3 | C Skew Amt | |
| 4 | Y Skew Amt | |
| 10 | M Main Skew 1 | |
| 11 | M Main Skew 2 | |
| 12 | M Main Skew 3 | |
| 13 | C Main Skew 1 | |
| 14 | C Main Skew 2 | |
| 15 | C Main Skew 3 | |
| 16 | Y Main Skew 1 | |
| 17 | Y Main Skew 2 | |
| 18 | Y Main Skew 3 | |
| 20 | M Sub Skew 1 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 21 | M Sub Skew 2 | |
| 22 | M Sub Skew 3 | |
| 23 | C Sub Skew 1 | |
| 24 | C Sub Skew 2 | |
| 25 | C Sub Skew 3 | |
| 26 | Y Sub Skew 1 | |
| 27 | Y Sub Skew 2 | |
| 28 | Y Sub Skew 3 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2182 | MUSIC Converge Patch:Min **DFU** | |
| | Sets the minimum value for convergence during MUSIC for the sensors in the main and sub scan directions. | |
| 1 | M Main 1 | |
| 2 | M Main 2 | |
| 3 | M Main 3 | |
| 4 | M Sub 1 | |
| 5 | M Sub 2 | |
| 6 | M Sub 3 | |
| 11 | C Main 1 | |
| 12 | C Main 2 | |
| 13 | C Main 3 | |
| 14 | C Sub 1 | |
| 15 | C Sub 2 | |
| 16 | C Sub 3 | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 21 | Y Main 1 | |
| 22 | Y Main 2 | |
| 23 | Y Main 3 | |
| 24 | Y Sub 1 | |
| 25 | Y Sub 2 | |
| 26 | Y Sub 3 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2184 | Write Pulse Result **DFU** | |
| | Displays the pulse setting rate for main scanning in black areas (Units: 1/16th dot) | |
| 1 | K Area 0 | |
| 2 | K Area 1 | |
| 3 | K Area 2 | |
| 4 | K Area 3 | |
| 5 | K Area 4 | |
| 6 | K Area 5 | |
| 7 | K Area 6 | |
| 8 | K Area 7 | |
| 9 | K Area 8 | |
| 10 | K Area 9 | |
| 11 | K Area 10 | |
| 12 | K Area 11 | |
| 21 | M Area 0 | |
| 22 | M Area 1 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 23 | M Area 2 | |
| 24 | M Area 3 | |
| 25 | M Area 4 | |
| 26 | M Area 5 | |
| 27 | M Area 6 | |
| 28 | M Area 7 | |
| 29 | M Area 8 | |
| 30 | M Area 9 | |
| 31 | M Area 10 | |
| 32 | M Area 11 | |
| 41 | C Area 0 | |
| 42 | C Area 1 | |
| 43 | C Area 2 | |
| 44 | C Area 3 | |
| 45 | C Area 4 | |
| 46 | C Area 5 | |
| 47 | C Area 6 | |
| 48 | C Area 7 | |
| 49 | C Area 8 | |
| 50 | C Area 9 | |
| 51 | C Area 10 | |
| 52 | C Area 11 | |
| 61 | Y Area 0 | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 62 | Y Area 1 | |
| 63 | Y Area 2 | |
| 64 | Y Area 3 | |
| 65 | Y Area 4 | |
| 66 | Y Area 5 | |
| 67 | Y Area 6 | |
| 68 | Y Area 7 | |
| 69 | Y Area 8 | |
| 70 | Y Area 9 | |
| 71 | Y Area 10 | |
| 72 | Y Area 11 | |

| 2201 | Set DC Charge | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs set the dc bias for the standard speed and low speed mode, but take effect only when SP3501 001 is set to "1" (Fixed). The dc bias (an absolute value) is set to +200, making the default values for each color –700. The dc bias is normally adjusted by the process control self-check, but when automatic process control is switched off (by setting SP3501 001 to "1"), these values are used for the charge potential. | |
| 1 | K | [-999 to –200/1V] |
| 2 | M | [-999 to –200/1V] |
| 3 | C | [-999 to –200/1V] |
| 4 | Y | [-999 to –200/1V] |

| 2202 | Set AC (Fixed) Charge | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs set the AC bias for the standard speed mode and low speed mode, but take effect only when SP3501 001 is set to "1" (Fixed). The default ac bias for each color is 2.2 kV (220) The ac bias is normally adjusted by process control self-check, but when automatic process control is switched off (by setting SP3501 001 to "1"), these values are used for the charge potential. | |
| 1 | Wire Current:K | |
| 2 | AC Bias :M | |
| 3 | AC Bias :C | |
| 4 | AC Bias :Y | |

| 2203 | Set Charge Current | |
|---|---|---|
| | Sets and adjusts current for charge applied to the OPC drums. | |
| 1 | Norm2:LL | |
| 6 | Norm2:ML | |
| 11 | Norm2:MM | |
| 16 | Norm2:MH | |
| 21 | Norm2:HH | |
| 26 | Norm1:LL | |
| 31 | Norm1:ML | |
| 36 | Norm1:MM | |
| 41 | Norm1:MH | |
| 46 | Norm1:HH | |
| 51 | Half-Speed2:LL | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 56 | Half-Speed2:ML | |
| 61 | Half-Speed2:MM | |
| 66 | Half-Speed2:MH | |
| 71 | Half-Speed2:HH | |
| 76 | Half-Speed1:LL | |
| 81 | Half-Speed1:ML | |
| 86 | Half-Speed1:MM | |
| 91 | Half-Speed1:MH | |
| 96 | Half-Speed1:HH | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2204 | Set AC Environ Corr | |
| | Sets the target value for adjustment of the charge rollers of the YMC PCUs. | |
| 2 | Norm2:LL:Target:M | |
| 3 | Norm2:LL:Target:C | |
| 4 | Norm2:LL:Target:Y | |
| 7 | Norm2:ML:Target:M | |
| 8 | Norm2:ML:Target:C | |
| 9 | Norm2:ML:Target:Y | |
| 12 | Norm2:MM:Target:M | |
| 13 | Norm2:MM:Target:C | |
| 14 | Norm2:MM:Target:Y | |
| 17 | Norm2:MH:Target:M | |
| 18 | Norm2:MH:Target:C | |
| 19 | Norm2:MH:Target:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 22 | Norm2:HH:Target:M | |
| 23 | Norm2:HH:Target:C | |
| 24 | Norm2:HH:Target:Y | |
| 27 | Norm1:LL:Target:M | |
| 28 | Norm1:LL:Target:C | |
| 29 | Norm1:LL:Target:Y | |
| 32 | Norm1:ML:Target:M | |
| 33 | Norm1:ML:Target:C | |
| 34 | Norm1:ML:Target:Y | |
| 37 | Norm1:MM:Target:M | |
| 38 | Norm1:MM:Target:C | |
| 39 | Norm1:MM:Target:Y | |
| 42 | Norm1:MH:Target:M | |
| 43 | Norm1:MH:Target:C | |
| 44 | Norm1:MH:Target:Y | |
| 47 | Norm1:HH:Target:M | |
| 48 | Norm1:HH:Target:C | |
| 49 | Norm1:HH:Target:Y | |
| 52 | Half-Speed2:LL:Target:M | |
| 53 | Half-Speed2:LL:Target:C | |
| 54 | Half-Speed2:LL:Target:Y | |
| 57 | Half-Speed2:ML:Target:M | |
| 58 | Half-Speed2:ML:Target:C | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 59 | Half-Speed2:ML:Target:Y | |
| 62 | Half-Speed2:MM:Target:M | |
| 63 | Half-Speed2:MM:Target:C | |
| 64 | Half-Speed2:MM:Target:Y | |
| 67 | Half-Speed2:MH:Target:M | |
| 68 | Half-Speed2:MH:Target:C | |
| 69 | Half-Speed2:MH:Target:Y | |
| 72 | Half-Speed2:HH:Target:M | |
| 73 | Half-Speed2:HH:Target:C | |
| 74 | Half-Speed2:HH:Target:Y | |
| 77 | Half-Speed1:LL:Target:M | |
| 78 | Half-Speed1:LL:Target:C | |
| 79 | Half-Speed1:LL:Target:Y | |
| 82 | Half-Speed1:ML:Target:M | |
| 83 | Half-Speed1:ML:Target:C | |
| 84 | Half-Speed1:ML:Target:Y | |
| 87 | Half-Speed1:MM:Target:M | |
| 88 | Half-Speed1:MM:Target:C | |
| 89 | Half-Speed1:MM:Target:Y | |
| 92 | Half-Speed1:MH:Target:M | |
| 93 | Half-Speed1:MH:Target:C | |
| 94 | Half-Speed1:MH:Target:Y | |
| 97 | Half-Speed1:HH:Target:M | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 98 | Half-Speed1:HH:Target:C | |
| 99 | Half-Speed1:HH:Target:Y | |

| 2205 | Adj/Display AC Charge Execution Interval | |
|---|---|---|
| | Sets the time intervals for the application of ac charge during printing. | |
| 1 | Execution Interval | |
| 2 | Temp Threshold 1 | |
| 3 | Temp Threshold 2 | |
| 4 | Previous Temp | |

| 2207 | Chg AC Reduction: Set |
|---|---|
| | Sets the low voltage of the ac charge to be applied while an image is not being created. |

| 2208 | Chg AC Adj:Execute **DFU** |
|---|---|
| | Touch [EXECUTE] to manually executes an ac charge on the charge rollers of the YMC PCUs. |

| 2209 | Chg AC Adj: Result **DFU** |
|---|---|
| | Displays the results of the ac charge applied manually to the charge rollers of the YMC PCUs with SP2208. |

| 2211 | Set LD Power | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs set the power levels of the laser diodes in the exposure unit for the standard speed mode and low speed mode for each color, but take effect only when SP3501 001 is set to "1" (Fixed). With the setting at "0" the LD output is 100%. This can be adjusted in the range –117 to +127 (44% to 160%). The "0" setting is equivalent to 0.171 mW exposed on the surface of the drum. The LD power level is normally adjusted during the process control self-check. These values are used only when automatic process control is switched off (by setting SP3501 001 to "1"). | |
| 1 | K | [-117 to +127/1] |
| 2 | M | [-117 to +127/1] |
| 3 | C | [-117 to +127/1] |
| 4 | Y | [-117 to +127/1] |

| 2212 | Set Dev DC | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs set the development dc bias for the standard speed mode and low speed mode for each color, but take effect only when SP3501 001 is set to "1" (Fixed). The dc drum charge bias (absolute value) is set to –200 V, and the default for each color is set to –500 V. These values are used only when automatic process control is switched off (by setting SP3501 001 to "1"). | |
| 1 | K | [-800 to 0/1 V] |
| 2 | M | [-800 to 0/1 V] |
| 3 | C | [-800 to 0/1 V] |
| 4 | Y | [-800 to 0/1 V] |

| 2220 | Chg Wire Cleaning Timing | |
|---|---|---|
| | Selects when the charge wire of the K PCU and the charge rollers of the YMC PCUs are cleaned..<br>[0~2 / 2 / 1]<br>0: OFF<br>1: With process control and at intervals selected with SP2221<br>2: At intervals selected with SP2221 only. | |
| 1 | Execution Timing: K | |
| 2 | Execution Timing: Y,M,C | |

| 2221 | Chg Wire Cleaning Int/Dist | |
|---|---|---|
| | Selects the interval corona wire (K PCU) and charge roller cleaning (YMC PCUs). | |
| 1 | Execution Interval:K | [0 to 9 999 999/ 200 000/ 1 cm] |
| 2 | Execution Interval:M | |
| 3 | Execution Interval:C | |
| 4 | Execution Interval:Y | |
| 5 | Distance: K | [0 to 9 999 999/ 0/ 1 cm] |
| 6 | Distance: M | |
| 7 | Distance: C | |
| 8 | Distance: Y | |
| 9 | Delay at Power On: K | [0 to 99 999/ 5000 / 100 cm] |
| 10 | Delay at Power On: M | |
| 11 | Delay at Power On: C | |
| 12 | Delay at Power On: Y | |

Group 2000

| 2222 | Execute Wire Cleaning | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SP codes manually execute wire cleaning (K PCU) and charge roller cleaning (YMC PCUs). | |
| 1 | K | |
| 2 | Y,M,C | |
| 3 | M | |
| 4 | C | |
| 5 | Y | |

| 2223 | OPC Rev After Idle Time | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SP codes allow you to set up how long the OPC will idle at the start of a print job after it has remained inactive. | |
| 1 | Execution Setting | Switches this SP code on/off. Default: Off (0)<br>This SP must be set on for the other values (2 to 5 below) to take effect. |
| 2 | Execution Timing | Sets the amount of time for the OPC drum to idle before the start of the job.<br>[0 to 360/ */1 sec.]<br>* Default setting:<br>D014/D078: 75 sec.<br>D015/D079: 60 sec. |
| 3 | Exec Threshold:Rel Humidity | Sets the threshold of relative humidity to trigger idling of the OPCu.<br>[0 to 99/ 65/ 1 %rH] |
| 4 | Exec Threshold:Idle Time | Sets the length of time for the OPC to idle, once the idle time has been triggered by the rH threshold.<br>[0 to 6000/ 360/ 10 min.] |
| 5 | Exec Threshold:OPC Usage | Sets the threshold value to trigger OPC idling, |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | depending of the number of pages printing.<br>[0 to 400 000 / 60 000/ 10 000 sheets] |
| 6 | Chg Usage | Sets the threshold of the charge for the rotation of the OPC drum by page count after the machine has been moved to a high-humidity environment.<br>[0 to 200,000/60,000/10,000 Sheets] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2225 | Cleaning Speed: K **DFU** | |
| | These settings affect the speed of rotation of the drum cleaning brush roller for monochrome printing. | |
| 1 | Norm2 | [0.1 to 3/ 0.45/ 0.01] |
| 2 | Norm1 | |
| 3 | Half-Speed2 | |
| 4 | Half-Speed1 | |
| 5 | Period of Revs | [100 to 15 000 000/100 000/10 cm] |
| 6 | Post Switching Coefficient | [0.5 to 2/ 1 0.1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2226 | Cleaning Speed: Col | |
| | These settings affect the speed of rotation of the drum cleaning brush roller for color printing. | |
| 1 | Norm2 | [0.1 to 3/ 0.45/ 0.01] |
| 2 | Norm1 | |
| 3 | Half-Speed2 | |
| 4 | Half-Speed1 | |
| 5 | Period of Revs | [100 to 15 000 000/100 000/10 cm] |
| 6 | Post Switching Coefficient | [0.5 to 2/ 1 0.1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2251 | Force Tnr Supply | |
| | Force Toner Supply:Execute.<br>Use SPs to increase manually the supply of toner to the sub hopper of the development unit to determine if toner supply is abnormal or to recover normal operation of a color toner supply when image density becomes light. After you touch "Execute" the toner supply switches on for 0.1 sec. and then off for 0.2 sec. four times for the select color or colors. | |
| 1 | Execute:K | Executes forced toner supply to the selected development unit.<br>[0 to 1/1] |
| 2 | Execute:M | |
| 3 | Execute:C | |
| 4 | Execute:Y | |
| 5 | Execute:Col | Executes forced toner supply to the Y, M, C development units only.<br>[0 to 1/1] |
| 6 | Execute:All Col | Executes forced toner supply to all development units (Y, M, C, K). |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | [0 to 1/1] |

| 2252 | Set Tnr Supply | |
|---|---|---|
| | Forced Toner Supply: Setting. Use these SPs to adjust the number of rotations done by the toner supply clutch when SP2251 001 to 006 is executed manually. The number of toner supply clutch rotations can be adjusted for each color. A high setting increases the number of rotations and increases the amount of toner supply to the development unit, resulting in a darker image for the selected color. | |
| 1 | Supply Times:K | [0 to 30/1] |
| 2 | Supply Times:M | [0 to 30/1] |
| 3 | Supply Times:C | [0 to 30/1] |
| 4 | Supply Times:Y | [0 to 30/1] |

| 2253 | Manual Tnr. Fill |
|---|---|
| | Fill Development Unit Sub Hoppers: Manual. Touch [EXECUTE] to start force filling of all development units with toner/developer from the STC units if toner supply is abnormal or to recover normal operation of a color toner supply when image density becomes light.<br>The toner supply clutch switches on for 2 sec. and then off for 0.4 sec. to fill the sub hopper of the development unit. This on/off sequence is repeated up to 20 times or until the toner end sensor detects that toner is present in the sub hopper. |

| 2260 | Pot.Sn Check |
|---|---|
| | Potential Sensor Check. Touch [EXECUTE] to execute a check of all potential sensors. |

| 2261 | Pot.Sn Chk Disp | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Displays the results of the potential sensor check executed with SP2260. | | |
| 1 | Vd:K | 7 | Vr:C |
| 2 | Vd:M | 8 | Vr:Y |
| 3 | Vd:C | 9 | Voffset:K |
| 4 | Vd:Y | 010 | Voffset:M |
| 5 | Vr:K | 011 | Voffset:C |
| 6 | Vr:M | 012 | Voffset:Y |

## Notes for SP2261

| Reading | Definition | Abnormal Reading |
|---|---|---|
| Vd | Charge bias (Cdc). This is the output of the potential sensor after –700V is applied to the drum.<br>Range: -500 to –700 V | If the reading is out of range:<br>▪ Potential sensor damaged<br>▪ Charge unit malfunction<br>▪ Charge power pack malfunction |
| Vr | Residual voltage. This is the output of the potential sensor after the LD fires at full power.<br>Normal: -200 V | If above –200V:<br>▪ Drum worn<br>▪ Toner shield glass dirty<br>▪ Potential sensor out of position |
| Voffset | This is the reading of the potential sensor with no charge applied to the drum.<br>Normal: 0 ±10V | If reading is out of range:<br>▪ Potential sensor dirty<br>▪ Potential sensor out of position |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2262 | TD Sn Chk |
| | TD Sensor Check: Execute. Touch [EXECUTE] to execute a check of all TD sensors. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2263 | TD Sn Chk Disp | |
| | Toner Density Check: Display. Displays results of 2262. Vt is the most recent output of the TD sensor. | |
| 1 | Vt:K | |
| 2 | Vt:M | |
| 3 | Vt:C | |
| 4 | Vt:Y | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2264 | ID Sn Chk |
| | ID Sensor Check: Touch [EXECUTE] to check the ID sensor. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2265 | ID Sn Chk Disp | |
| | Displays the most recent ID sensor Vsg and Voffset readings.<br>**Notes:**<br>▪ Vsg_reg is the reading of the direct sensors in the black and color ID sensors that detect the reflectivity of the bare surface of ITB. If Vsg_reg is less than 3.8V, the ID sensor may be dirty, damaged, or disconnected<br>▪ If Voffset_reg is less than 0.15, the ID sensor should be replaced. (The ID sensors are replaced as a unit.) | |
| 1 | Vsg_reg | |
| 3 | Voffset_reg | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2302 | Temp/Humid Disp | |
| | This SP displays the current temperature and humidity. These readings are output by the temperature humidity display located on the bottom of the machine below the used toner bottle. | |
| 1 | Temp Disp | Room temperature (°C).<br>[0 to 100/ 0/1 deg.] |
| 2 | Rel Humidity Disp | Relative humidity (saturation point at current temperature).<br>[0 to 100/0 /1 %rh.] |
| 3 | Abs Humidity Disp | Absolute humidity.<br>[0 to 63/ 0/ 0.01 g/$m^3$] |
| 4 | Current Env Disp | Displays the current environment control mode. The control modes are divided into 5 levels: LL, ML, MM, MH, HH. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2303 | Force Temp Corr **DFU** | |
| | Force Ambient Temperature Correction. The temperature/humidity sensor reading is used to adjust settings during process control when this SP is set to zero (the default). The value of the absolute humidity reading displayed by SP2302 003, as well as the other readings of the conditions around the machine displayed with SP2302, are used in the process control calculations. If you touch any key (1 to 6) below, the value you select is used and the readings of the temperature/humidity sensor are ignored.<br>**Note:** After you press any key (1 to 6), the setting you select remains in effect only while the machine is in the SP mode. Once you leave the SP mode, this SP is reset to zero automatically. | |
| | 0: Sensor Detect<br>1: LLL<br>2: LL<br>3: ML | 4: MM<br>5: MH<br>6: HH |

| 2304 | Set Humid Thresh | |
|---|---|---|
| | Ambient Humidity Threshold Setting. Sets the threshold values for the absolute humidity of the current LL and ML settings for the main machine in the present environment. | |
| 1 | Abs Humid:Thresh1 | [0 to 63/ 2.5/ 0.01 g/$m^3$ |
| 2 | Abs Humid:Thresh2 | [0 to 63/ 5/ 0.01 g/$m^3$ |
| 3 | Abs Humid:Thresh3 | [0 to 63/ 8.4/0.01 g/$m^3$ |
| 4 | Abs Humid:Thresh4 | [0 to 63/ 15/ 0.01 g/$m^3$ |
| 5 | Abs Humid:Thresh5 | [0 to 64/ 24/ 0.01 g/$m^3$] |

| 2307 | Set Ptype Link | |
|---|---|---|
| | Paper Type Link Setting. For the copy mode selected, these SPs 1) switch the image transfer bias for each color and 2) switch the paper transfer and separation bias | |
| 1 | Norm | [0 to 2/1]<br>0: Normal Paper<br>1: Thick Paper<br>2: OHP |
| 2 | Recycled Paper | |
| 3 | Special Paper | |
| 4 | Color 1 | |
| 5 | Color 2 | |
| 6 | Letterhead | |
| 7 | Tab Sheet | |
| 8 | Labels | |
| 9 | Tracing Paper | |
| 010 | OHP | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2308 | Set Psize Thresh | |
| | Set Paper Size Thresholds. Sets the correction values (Threshold 1, 2, 3, 4) for paper size. | |
| 1 | Psize:Thresh1 | [0 to 350-/1 mm] |
| 2 | Psize:Thresh2 | |
| 3 | Psize:Thresh3 | |
| 4 | Psize:Thresh4 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2309 | Eng d Coeff **DFU** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2312 | Margin K Bias | |
| 1 | ITB | Sets the value of image transfer bias for K in the areas of the image where nothing is printed.<br>[0 to 70/0.1] |
| 2 | PTR | [0 to 1/0.01 kV] |
| 3 | SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 4 | SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 kV] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2313 | Margin FC Bias | |
| | This SP sets the image transfer bias for each in areas of the image where nothing is printed in the full-color mode. | |
| 2 | ITB:K | [0 to 70/ 0.1 ua] |
| 3 | ITB:M | |
| 4 | ITB:C | |
| 5 | ITB:Y | |
| 7 | PTR | |
| 8 | SepDC | |
| 9 | SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2321 | Manual Vltg Meas | |
| | Takes a reading of the Vltg value for the ITB and PTR. | |
| 2 | FC | |
| 3 | B&W | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2322 | Vltg Meas Result | |
| | Displays the reading of the ITB and PTR voltages. | |
| 1 | ITB:K | |
| 2 | ITB:M | |
| 3 | ITB:C | |
| 4 | ITB:Y | |
| 5 | PTR | |

| 2323 | Vltg Meas Env Disp | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | ITB | |
| 2 | PTR | |

| 2324 | R Coeff ON/OFF | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | ITB | |
| 2 | PTR | |

| 2325 | Current R Level Disp | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | ITB: K | |
| 2 | ITB: M | |
| 3 | ITB: C | |
| 4 | ITB: Y | |
| 5 | PTR | |

| 2326 | Set Voltage Detect Interval | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Execution Interval | |
| 2 | Page Count:FC | |
| 3 | Page Count:BW | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2330 | Set R Thresh:LLL **DFU** |
| 2331 | Set R Thresh:LL **DFU** |
| 2332 | Set R Thresh:ML **DFU** |
| 2333 | Set R Thresh:MM **DFU** |
| 2334 | Set R Thresh:MH **DFU** |

Group 2000

| 2335 | Set R Thresh:HH **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | R Thresh1:ITB | |
| 2 | R Thresh2:ITB | |
| 3 | R Thresh3:ITB | |
| 4 | R Thresh4:ITB | |
| 5 | R Thresh5:ITB | |
| 6 | R Thresh1:PTR | |
| 7 | R Thresh2:PTR | |
| 8 | R Thresh3:PTR | |
| 9 | R Thresh4:PTR | |
| 010 | R Thresh5:PTR | |

| 2360 | Resist Coeff **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | R Level:R-2 | |
| 2 | R Level:R-1 | |
| 3 | R Level:R0 | |
| 4 | R Level:R+1 | |
| 5 | R Level:R+2 | |
| 6 | R Level:R+3 | |

| 2361 | Size Coeff:R-2 **DFU** |
|---|---|
| 2362 | Size Coeff:R-1 **DFU** |
| 2363 | Size Coeff:R0 **DFU** |
| 2364 | Size Coeff:R+1 **DFU** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2365 | Size Coeff:R+2 **DFU** | |
| 2366 | Size Coeff:R+3 **DFU** | |
| 1 | Side1:Size1 | |
| 2 | Side2:Size1 | |
| 3 | Side1:Size2 | |
| 4 | Side2:Size2 | |
| 5 | Side1:Size3 | |
| 6 | Side2:Size3 | |
| 7 | Side1:Size4 | |
| 8 | Side2:Size4 | |
| 9 | Side1:Size5 | |
| 10 | Side2:Size5 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2380 | Margin K:LLL **DFU** |
| 2381 | Margin K:LL **DFU** |
| 2382 | Margin K:ML **DFU** |
| 2383 | Margin K:MM **DFU** |
| 2384 | Margin K:MH **DFU** |
| 2385 | Margin K:HH **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2390 | Margin FC:LLL **DFU** |
| 2391 | Margin FC:LL **DFU** |
| 2392 | Margin FC:ML **DFU** |
| 2393 | Margin FC:MM **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2394 | Margin FC:MH **DFU** |
| 2395 | Margin FC:HH **DFU** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2401 | Norm K Bias | |
| | Sets the standard value of bias voltages at image transfer, and paper separation in areas where black is used on plain paper during black-and-white printing. | |
| 1 | ITB | [0 to 70 / 0.1 ua] |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [-100 to 0/ 1 ua] |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | [0 to 10 / 0.1 ua] |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | [8 to 12 / 0.1 ua] |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | [-100 to 0/ 0.1 ua] |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | [0 to 10/ 0.1 ua] |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | [8 to 12/ 0.1 ua] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2406 | Norm FC Bias | |
| | Set Bias for Plain Paper: FC. Sets the standard value of bias voltages at image transfer, and paper separation in areas the four colors are used on plain paper during full color printing. | |
| 1 | ITB:K | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 2 | ITB:M | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 3 | ITB:C | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 4 | ITM:Y | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 13 | Side1:PTR | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 14 | Side1:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 15 | Side1:SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 μa] |
| 21 | Side1:PTR | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 22 | Side1:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 23 | Side1:SepAC | [8 to 12/1 μa] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2421 | LEdge Cor:Norm K | |
| | Leading Edge Correction for Plain Paper: K. This SP sets the coefficient used to 1) correct bias at the leading edge for black image transfer (ITB) 2) bias at image to paper transfer, and 3) correct the dc and ac voltages applied at paper separation.<br>**Notes:** These settings apply:<br>▪ To the distance from the leading edge set with SP2422<br>▪ Only to black printing on plain paper at full speed (even when full-color is selected). | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/ 1%] |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2422 | LEdge SWT:Norm K | |
| | Leading Edge Switch Timing for Plain Paper: K. Sets the switch off timing SP2421. The value selected is the number of mm from the leading edge of the paper. These settings 1) apply only to black printing on plain paper at full speed (even when full-color is selected), and 2) apply to both sides of a duplex page. | |
| 2 | PTR | [0 to 30/1 mm] |
| 3 | SepDC | |
| 4 | SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2423 | TEdgeCor:Norm K | |
| | Trailing Edge Correction for Plain Paper: K. This SP sets the coefficient used to correct bias at image to paper transfer for each side of the paper. These settings are applied to the trailing edge for black printing on plain paper at full speed and apply to black, even when printing in full color mode. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/1%] |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2424 | TEdgeSWT:Norm K PTR |
| | Trailing Edge Switch Timing for Plain Paper: K. This setting sets the start timing for application of SP2423 at the trailing edge of each sheet (Side 1, Side 2). This setting is applied to the trailing edge for black printing on plain paper at full speed and apply to black, even when printing in full color mode.<br>[-100 to 0/1 mm]<br>The mm distance is measured away from the trailing edge of the image. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2426 | LEdgeCor:Norm FC | |
| | Leading Edge Correction for Plain Paper: FC. This SP sets the coefficient used to 1) correct bias at the leading edge for full-color image transfer (ITB) bias at image to paper transfer when using plain paper, and 3) correct the dc and ac voltages applied at paper separation.<br>**Notes:** These settings apply:<br>▪ Only the distance from the leading edge set with SP2427.<br>▪ Only to full color printing on plain paper at full speed. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/1%] |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2427 | LEdgeSWT:Norm FC | |
| | Leading Edge Switch Timing for Plain Paper: FC. This SP sets switch timing that sets the distance from the leading edge where the settings of SP2426 are to apply. The value selected is the number of mm from the leading edge of the paper. These settings 1) apply only full-color printing on plain paper at full speed, and 2) apply to both sides of a duplex page. | |
| 2 | PTR | [0 to 30/1 mm] |
| 3 | SepDC | [0 to 30/1 mm] |
| 4 | SepAC | [0 to 30/1 mm] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2428 | TEdgeCor:Norm FC | |
| | Trailing Edge Correction for Plain Paper: FC. This SP sets the coefficient used to correct bias at image to paper transfer for each side of the paper. These settings are applied to the trailing edge for full-color printing on plain paper at full speed as far as where SP2429 takes effect. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/1%] |
| 012 | Side2:PTR | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2429 | TEdgeSWT:Norm FC – PTR |
| | Switch Timing for Plain Paper: FC. This setting sets the start timing for application of SP2428 007, 2428 012 at the trailing edge of each sheet (Side 1, Side 2). These settings are applied to the trailing edge for black printing on plain paper at full speed and apply to black, even when printing in full color mode.<br>[-100 to 0/1 mm]<br>The mm distance is measured away from the trailing edge of the image. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2430 | Norm:K:LLL | Plain Paper: K Very Low |
| 2431 | Norm:K:LL | Plain Paper: K Low |
| 2432 | Norm:K:ML | Plain Paper: K Medium Low |
| 2433 | Norm:K:MM | Plain Paper: K Medium |
| 2434 | Norm:K:MH | Plain Paper: K Medium High |
| 2435 | Norm:K:HH | Plain Paper: K High |
| | These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with SP2304. | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | SP2430 – Up to SP2304 001: Threshold 1<br>SP2431 – More than SP2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP23204 002 Threshold 2.<br>SP2432 – More than SP2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3<br>SP2433 – More than SP2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4<br>SP2434 – More than SP2304 004 Threshold 4, up to SP2305 005 Threshold 3<br>SP2435 – More than SP2304 005 Threshold 5<br>These settings apply 1) only where the image is created in black (in either black-and-white or full-color mode) on plain paper at full speed. | |
| 1 | ITB | [10 to200/ 1%] |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2440 | Norm:FC:LLL | Plain Paper: FC Very Low |
| 2441 | Norm:FC:LL | Plain Paper: FC Low |
| 2442 | Norm:FC:ML | Plain Paper: FC Medium Low |
| 2443 | Norm:FC:MM | Plain Paper: FC Medium Medium |
| 2444 | Norm:FC:MH | Plain Paper: FC Medium High |
| 2445 | Norm:FC:HH | Plain Paper: FC High |
| | These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with SP2304.<br>SP2440 – Up to SP2304 001: Threshold 1<br>SP2441 – More than SP2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP23204 002 Threshold 2.<br>SP2442 – More than SP2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3 | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | SP2443 – More than SP2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4<br>SP2444 – More than SP2304 004 Threshold 4, up to SP2305 005 Threshold 3<br>SP2445 – More than SP2304 005 Threshold 5<br>These settings apply 1) only where the image is created in full-color on plain paper at full speed. | |
| 17 | Side1:PTR | [10 to 200/ 1%] |
| 18 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 19 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 27 | Side2:PTR | |
| 28 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 29 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2751 | Sp1 K Bias | |
| | Set Bias for Special Paper 1: K. These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1) create bias for image transfer from drum to ITB, 2) create bias for image transfer from ITB to paper (PTR), and 3) neutralize the charges on the both sides of the paper to separate the paper from the ITB (SepDC, SepAC). These settings are used when printing on Special Paper 1 in the black-and-white mode and are applied only to the image area. | |
| 1 | ITB | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 kV] |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | [-100 to 0/0.1 μa] |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 kV] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2756 | Sp1 K Bias | |
| | Set Bias for Special Paper 1: K. These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1) create bias for image transfer from drum of each color (Y, M, C, K) to the ITB, 2) create bias for image transfer from ITB to paper (PTR), and 3) neutralize the charges on the both sides of the paper to separate the paper from the ITB (SepDC, SepAC). These settings are used only for Y, M, C, K when printing on Special Paper 1 in the full-color mode and are applied only to the image area. | |
| 1 | ITB:K | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 2 | ITB:M | [0 to70/0.1 μa] |
| 3 | ITB:C | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 4 | ITB:Y | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 13 | Side1:PTR | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 14 | Side1:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 15 | Side1:SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 kV] |
| 21 | Side2:PTR | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 22 | Side2:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 23 | Side1:SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 kV] |

These SPs set the paper size correction coefficients for Special Paper 1 relative to the settings done with SP2308 (Set Psize Thresh). All of hese settings:

- Apply to printing on Special Paper 1 in the black-and-white mode
- Apply only to the image area

The title of each SP tells you the side and size where the setting is applied at ITB-to-paper transfer, for example: "Side1:Size1:PTR" means the setting applies to only the first side of Size 1 when the image is transferred from belt to paper.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2771 | LEdge Cor:Sp1:K | |
| | Leading Edge Correction for Special Paper 1: K. Sets the leading edge correction coefficient when bias is applied as far as allowed by the setting of SP2772 for drum to image transfer of the image during black and white copying on Special Paper 1. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/ 1%] |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2772 | LEdge SWT:Sp1:K | |
| | Leading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 1: K. Sets the switch off timing of SP2771. The selected value is the number of mm from the leading edge. Applies only to printing in black-and-white mode on Special Paper 1. | |
| 2 | PTR | [0 to 30/1 mm] |
| 3 | SepDC | |
| 4 | SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2773 | TEdge Cor:Sp1 K | |
| | Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 1: K. Sets the bias applied at the trailing edge when the image is transferred from ITB to paper by setting the start timing for SP2774 at the trailing edge. Applied to the trailing edge for black-and-white mode on Special Paper 1 only. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/1%] |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2774 | TEdge SWT:Sp1 K |
| | Trailing Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 1: K.<br>Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the settings of SP2773 are applied during image transfer from ITB to paper.<br>Applied only when in black-and-white mode on Special Paper 1.<br>[-100 to 0/ 1 mm] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2776 | LEdge Cor:Sp1 FC | |
| | Leading Edge Correction for Special Paper 1: FC.<br>These SPs do the following settings when printing on Special Paper 1 in the full-color mode:<br>1) ITB: Sets strength/timing of the correction coefficient for the application of bias when the image is transferred from the drum to the ITB.<br>2) PTR: Sets the strength/timing of the correction coefficient for the application of bias when the image is transferred from ITB.<br>3) SepDC, SepAC: Set the strength/timing of the dc and ac charges applied to neutralize the charges on the belt and paper so they will separate more easily.<br>**Note:** SP2776 selects the strength of the bias coefficient, and SP2777 sets the start timing of the bias application. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/ 1%] |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2777 | LEdge SWT:Sp1 FC | |
| | Leading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 1: FC. Sets the switch off timing of SP2776. The selected value is the number of mm from the leading edge. Applies only to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 1. | |
| 2 | PTR | [0 to 30/1 mm] |
| 3 | SepDC | |
| 4 | SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2778 | TEdge Cor:Sp1 FC (PTR) | |
| | Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 1: FC. Sets the strength of the bias coefficient for the bias applied at the trailing edge when the image is transferred from ITB to paper. Applied when printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 1. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/1%] |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2779 | TEdge SWT:Sp1 FC (PTR) |
| | Switch Timing for Special Paper 1: FC. Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the SP2778 settings are applied during image transfer from ITB to paper. Applied only when printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 1.<br>[-100 to 0/1 mm] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2780 | Sp1:K:LLL | Special Paper 1: K Very Low |
| 2781 | Sp1:K:LL | Special Paper 1: K Low |
| 2782 | Sp1:K:ML | Special Paper 1: K Medium Low |
| 2783 | Sp1:K:MM | Special Paper 1: K Medium |
| 2784 | Sp1:K:MH | Special Paper 1: K Medium High |
| 2785 | Sp1:K:HH | Special Paper 1: K High |
| | These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with SP2304.<br>SP2780 – Up to SP2304 001: Threshold 1<br>SP2781 – More than SP2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP23204 002 Threshold 2.<br>SP2782 – More than SP2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3 | |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | SP2783 – More than SP2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4<br>SP2784 – More than SP2304 004 Threshold 4, up to SP2305 005 Threshold 3<br>SP2785 – More than SP2304 005 Threshold 5<br>These settings apply only to the image area printed on Special Paper 1 in black-and-white mode. | |
| 1 | ITB | [10 to 200/ 1%] |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2790 | Sp1:FC:LLL | Special Paper 1: FC Very Low |
| 2791 | Sp1:FC:LL | Special Paper 1: FC Low |
| 2792 | Sp1:FC:ML | Special Paper 1: FC Medium Low |
| 2793 | Sp1:FC:MM | Special Paper 1: FC Medium |
| 2794 | Sp1:FC:MH | Special Paper 1: FC Medium High |
| 2795 | Sp1:FC:HH | Special Paper 1: FC High |
| | These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with SP2304.<br>SP2790 – Up to SP2304 001: Threshold 1<br>SP2791 – More than SP2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP23204 002 Threshold 2.<br>SP2792 – More than SP2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3<br>SP2793 – More than SP2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4<br>SP2794 – More than SP2304 004 Threshold 4, up to SP2305 005 Threshold 3 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | SP2795 – More than SP2304 005 Threshold 5<br>These settings apply only to the image area printed on Special Paper 1 in full-color mode. | |
| 1 | ITB | [10 to 200/ 1%] |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| 2801 | Sp2 K Bias | Set Bias for Special Paper 2: K |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1) create bias for image transfer from drum to ITB, 2) create bias for image transfer from ITB to paper (PTR), and 3) neutralize the charges on the both sides of the paper to separate the paper from the ITB (SepDC, SepAC). These settings are used when printing on Special Paper 2 in the black-and-white mode and are applied only to the image area. | |
| 1 | ITB | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 kV] |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 kV] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2806 | Sp2 FC Bias | |
| | Set Bias for Special Paper 2: K. These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1) create bias for image transfer from drum of each color (Y, M, C, K) to the ITB, 2) create bias for image transfer from ITB to paper (PTR), and 3) neutralize the charges on the both sides of the paper to separate the paper from the ITB (SepDC, SepAC). These settings are used only for Y, M, C, K when printing on Special Paper 1 in the full-color mode and are applied only to the image area. | |
| 1 | ITB:K | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 2 | ITB:M | [0 to70/0.1 μa] |
| 3 | ITB:C | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 4 | ITB:Y | [0 to 70/0.1 μa] |
| 13 | Side1:PTR | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 14 | Side1:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 15 | Side1:SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 kV] |
| 21 | Side2:PTR | [-100 to 0/1 μa] |
| 22 | Side2:SepDC | [0 to 10/0.1 μa] |
| 23 | Side2:SepAC | [8 to 12/0.1 kV] |

These SPs set the paper size correction coefficients for Special Paper 2 relative to the settings done with SP2308 (Set Psize Thresh). All of these settings:

- Apply to printing on Special Paper 2 in the black-and-white mode
- Apply only to the image area

The title of each SP tells you the side and size where the setting is applied at ITB-to-paper transfer, for example: "Side1:Size1:PTR" means the setting applies to only Side 1 of Size 1 when the image is transferred from belt to paper at the PTR.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2821 | LEdge Cor:Sp2:K | |
| | Leading Edge Correction for Special Paper 2: K. Sets the leading edge correction coefficient when bias is applied as far as allowed by the seting of SP2822 for drum to image transfer of the image during black and white copying on Special Paper 2. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/1%] |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2822 | LEdge SWT:Sp2:K | |
| | Leading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 2: K. Sets the switch off timing of SP2821. The selected value is the number of mm from the leading edge. Applies only to printing in black-and-white mode on Special Paper 2. | |
| 2 | PTR | [0 to 30/ 1mm] |
| 3 | SepDC | |
| 4 | SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2823 | TEdge Cor:Sp2 K – PTR | |
| | Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 2: K. Sets the bias applied at the trailing edge when the image is transferred from ITB to paper by setting the start timing for SP2824 at the trailing edge. Applied to the trailing edge for black-and-white mode on Special Paper 2 only. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/1%] |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2824 | TEdge SWT:Sp2 K – PTR |
| | Trailing Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 2: K. Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the settings of SP2823 is applied during image transfer from ITB to paper. Applied only when in black-and-white mode on Special Paper 2.<br>[-100 to 0/1 mm] |

| 2826 | LEdge Cor:Sp2 FC | |
|---|---|---|
| | Leading Edge Correction for Special Paper 2: FC. These SPs do the following settings when printing on Special Paper 2 in the full-color mode:<br>1) PTR: Sets the strength/timing of the correction coefficient for the application of bias when the image is transferred from ITB.<br>2) SepDC, SepAC: Set the strength/timing of the dc and ac charges applied to neutralize the charges on the belt and paper so they will separate more easily.<br>**Note:** SP2826 selects the strength of the bias coefficient, and SP2827 sets the start timing of the bias application. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250 / 1%] |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| 2827 | LEdge SWT:Sp2 FC | |
|---|---|---|
| | Leading Edge Switch Timing for Special Paper 2: FC. Sets the switch off timing of SP2826. The selected value is the number of mm from the leading edge. Applies only to printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 2. | |
| 2 | PTR | [0 to 30/ 1 mm] |
| 3 | SepDC | |
| 4 | SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2828 | TEdge Cor:Sp2 FC | |
| | Trailing Edge Correction for Special Paper 2: FC. Sets the strength of the bias coefficient for the bias applied at the trailing edge when the image is transferred from ITB to paper. Applied when printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 2. | |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | [0 to 250/1%] |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2829 | TEdge SWT:Sp2 FC | |
| | Switch Timing for Special Paper 2: FC. Sets the switch timing that determines the distance from the leading edge where the SP2828 settings are applied during image transfer from ITB to paper. Applied only when printing in full-color mode on Special Paper 2.<br>[-100 to 0/1 mm] | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2830 | Sp2:K:LLL | Special Paper 2: K Very Low |
| 2831 | Sp2:K:LL | Special Paper 2: K Low |
| 2832 | Sp2:K:ML | Special Paper 2: K Medium Low |
| 2833 | Sp2:K:MM | Special Paper 2: K Medium |
| 2834 | Sp2:K:MH | Special Paper 2: K Medium High |
| 2835 | Sp2:K:HH | Special Paper 2: K High |
| | These SPs set the paper size correction coefficient for the image to paper transfer bias threshold values calculated based on the reading of the absolute humidity from the temperature/humidity sensor and the thresholds set with SP2304 8.<br>SP2830 – Up to SP2304 001: Threshold 1<br>SP2831 – More than SP2304 001 Threshold 1, up to SP23204 002 Threshold 2.<br>SP2832 – More than SP2304 002 Threshold 2, up to SP2304 003 Threshold 3<br>SP2833 – More than SP2304 003 Threshold 3, up to SP2304 004 Threshold 4<br>SP2834 – More than SP2304 004 Threshold 4, up to SP2305 005 Threshold 3<br>SP2835 – More than SP2304 005 Threshold 5<br>These settings apply only to the image area printed on Special Paper 2 in black-and-white mode. | |
| 1 | ITB | [10 to 200/ 1% |
| 7 | Side1:PTR | |
| 8 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 9 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 12 | Side2:PTR | |
| 13 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 14 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2840 | Sp2:FC:LLL | Special Paper 2: FC Very Low |
| 2841 | Sp2:FC:LL | Special Paper 2: FC Low |
| 2842 | Sp2:FC:ML | Special Paper 2: FC Medium Low |
| 2843 | Sp2:FC:MM | Special Paper 2: FC Medium |
| 2844 | Sp2:FC:MH | Special Paper 2: FC Medium High |
| 2845 | Sp2:FC:HH | Special Paper 2: FC High |
| | These SPs set the standard values of the electrical charges that are applied to 1) create bias for image transfer from drum to ITB, 2) create bias for image transfer from ITB to paper (PTR), and 3) neutralize the charges on the both sides of the paper to separate the paper from the ITB (SepDC, SepAC). These settings are used when printing on Special Paper 2 in the full-color mode and are applied only to the image area. | |
| 1 | ITB | [10 to 200/ 1% |
| 17 | Side1:PTR | |
| 18 | Side1:SepDC | |
| 19 | Side1:SepAC | |
| 27 | Side2:PTR | |
| 28 | Side2:SepDC | |
| 29 | Side2:SepAC | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2901 | Disp T/H Sn:PCU | |
| | Temperature/Humidity Sensor: PCU. This SP displays the temperature (°C) and humidity (both relative and absolute) readings of the temperature and humidity sensor located above the M PCU on the right side of the machine. These readings are updated every 60 sec.<br>▪ 001 to 004 display the current readings.<br>▪ 005 to 008 display the previous readings. | |
| 1 | Humid:Recent | [0 to 100/ 1 deg (or %rH) |
| 2 | Rel Humid:Recent | |
| 3 | Abs Humid:Recent | |
| 4 | Environ:Recent | |
| 5 | Humid:JobEnd | |
| 6 | Rel Humid:JobEnd | |
| 7 | Abd Humid:JobEnd | |
| 8 | Environ:JobEnd | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2902 | Env Set:PCU | |
| | Use these settings to turn off the temperature/humidity sensor, and raise or lower the level of detection.<br>[0 to 6/1 | |
| | 0: Sensor Detect<br>1: LLL<br>2: LL<br>3: ML | 4: MM<br>5: MH<br>6: HH |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2903 | Env Thresh: PCU | |
| | This SP sets the threshold value of LL and ML for the current room temperature. | |
| 1 | Abs Humid: 1 | [0 to 100/0.01 g/$m^3$] |
| 2 | Abs Humid: 2 | |
| 3 | Abs Humid: 3 | |
| 4 | Abs Humid: 4 | |
| 5 | Abs Humid: 5 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2904 | Prevent Blade Bending | |
| | A blade-bend prevention pattern is created with K toner on the ITB between every copy image to lubricate the ITB cleaning blade so it will not bend or scour the surface of the ITB. These SPs set 1) pattern creation interval, 2) density of the pattern, 3) whether the pattern is displayed, 4) the temperature at which the operation is done.<br>**Note:** This function is OFF. Changing this setting is normally not required for this machine. | |
| 1 | Pattern Create Interval | Sets the number of pages between patterns.<br>[0 to 200/1 pg.] |
| 2 | Pattern Light Intensity | Sets the density of the pattern.<br>[0 to 63/1] |
| 3 | Op Pg Count Display | Displays the count for the number of blade prevention patterns.<br>[0 to 200/1 pg.] |
| 4 | Set Operation Temp | Sets the threshold temperature for this SP code to start operating.<br>[0 to 50/ 1 deg] |

| 2905 | Used Toner Mtr 2 | Used Toner Motor 2 Control |
|---|---|---|
| | The used toner bottle is provided with a near-full sensor and an auger that evenly distributes the used toner inside the bottle. To extend the life of the used toner bottle near-full motor that rotates this auger, the motor and auger do not operate continuously. The motor is turned on only after a prescribed amount of toner has been consumed. | |
| 1 | Tnr Consumed | Sets the amount of toner to be consumed before the used toner bottle is switched on.<br>[1 to 10/1 g] |
| 2 | Tnr Mtr On Time | Sets the amount of time the motor remains on.<br>[1 to 10/1 sec.] |

| 2906 | Stop Time Reverse Ctrl | |
|---|---|---|
| | The K drum motor, YMC drum motor, ITB motor, and PTR motor can be set to reverse slightly immediately after they stop. This removes dust from the edges of the cleaning blades. These SP codes:<br>▪ Switch this feature on/off (Default: OFF)<br>▪ Set the absolute intervals (distance) for execution of stop/reverse timing<br>▪ Set the intervals (distance) for execution of stop/reverse timing during long print jobs. | |
| 1 | Set Rev Execute:K | These SP codes switch on/off the stop/reverse feature for the K PCU drum motor, YMC PCU drum motor, ITB motor, and PTR motor.<br>Default: Off |
| 2 | Set Rev Execute:YCM | |
| 3 | Set Rev Execute:ImgTrans | |
| 4 | Set Rev Execute:PaperTrans | |
| 5 | Set Rev Execute Interval | Sets the distance interval between motor stop/reverse executions.<br>[1 to 500/ 1 m] Default: 30 m |
| 6 | Assign Execution | Switches on the time interval that controls motor reverse executions during continuous print jobs. |

Group 2000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | Set Execute Interval | Sets the distance interval between motor reverse executions during continuous print jobs.<br>[1 to 500/ 1 m] Default: 250 m |
| 8 | Op Time Setting:Bk | Sets the length of time for the K PCU drum motor to reverse.<br>[2 to 500/30/2 msec] |
| 9 | Op Time Setting:YCM | Sets the length of time for the YMC PCU drum motors to reverse.<br>[2 to 500/30/2 msec] |
| 10 | Op Time Setting:ImgTrans | Sets the length of time for the ITB motor to reverse.<br>[2 to 500/30/2 msec] |
| 11 | Op Time Setting:PaperTrans | Sets the length of time for the PTR motor to reverse.<br>[2 to 500/30/2 msec] |
| 12 | Adj Reverse Start Time | Synchronizes the timing for the K PCU drum motor, ITB motor and PTR motor to reverse simultaneously.<br>[2 to 500/0/2 msec] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 2907 | PTR Lift **DFU** |
| | This SP switches the operation of the PTR lift motor off and on. The PTR lift motor presses the PTR against the fusing belt above during belt-to-paper image transfer and lowers the PTR when it is idle. This prevents the PTR from warping.<br>**[*0: Lift Operation On]**<br>[1: Lift Operation Off] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2911 | Environ Ctrl | |
| | These SP codes control the operation of the Peltier unit.<br>**Note**: The Peltier unit is not provided as a standard component of this machine. However, it is available as an option. | |
| 1 | Environ Ctrl On | Switches Peltier unit control on/off.<br>***OFF**/ON |
| 4 | Op Humidity | Sets the humidity level for the Peltier unit to operate.<br>[0 to 100/60/1%] |
| 5 | Stop Humidity | Sets the humidity level for the Peltier unit to switch off.<br>[0 to 100/35/1%] |
| 6 | Op On Time | Sets the timer for the humidity level for the Peltier unit to switch on, regardless of the humidity level control settings done with SP2911-4, -5.<br>[1 to 60/10/1 min.] |
| 7 | Op Off Time | Sets the timer for the humidity level for the Peltier unit to switch off, regardless of the humidity level done with SP2911-4, -5.<br>[1 to 60/5/1 min. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2912 | Encoder Sn:Adj Light | |
| 1 | Adj Light Amt | |
| 2 | Light Amt Adj:Pass/Fail | |
| 3 | Vref_Disp:Main Setting | |
| 4 | Vref_Disp:Sub Setting | |
| 5 | Analog Out:Main:After F Adj | |
| 6 | Analog Out:Sub:After F Adj | |
| 7 | Light Amt Change Flag | |

Group 2000

| 2913 | Encoder Sn:Output Disp | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Analog:Ave:Main | |
| 2 | Analog:Max:Main | |
| 3 | Analog:Min:Main | |
| 4 | Analog:Ave:Sub | |
| 5 | Analog:Max:Sub | |
| 6 | Analog:Min:Sub | |

| 2914 | Encoder Sn:Get 1stPhase **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Get Phases:Execut All | |
| 2 | 352.8 Line Speed:Execute | |
| 3 | 282.0 Line Speed:Execute | |
| 4 | 176.4 Line Speed:Execute | |
| 5 | 141.0 Line Speed:Execute | |
| 6 | 352.8 Phase Disp/Set | |
| 7 | 282.0 Phase Disp/Set | |
| 8 | 176.4 Phase Disp/Set | |
| 9 | 141.0 Phase Disp/Set | |

| 2915 | Encoder Sn Ctrl Condition **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | SC499 Occurrences | |
| 2 | SC499 Causes | |
| 3 | ITB Encoder Sn Ctrl | |

# 5.4 GROUP 3000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3001 | TD Sn:Vt Display | |
| | Displays the current value of Vt (output voltage of the TD sensor). This is the value that the machine uses to calculate the density of the toner in each development unit. The toner density is checked after every page prints. The TD sensor output voltage is inversely proportional to the toner density:<br>▪ If toner density is high, the voltage is low.<br>▪ If toner density is low, the voltage is high.<br>**Note:** These readings are used to control toner supply. When the machine uses PID logic to control the machine (the default method selected with SP3301 001). The difference between Vt and Vtref is calculated and this result is used to control the on time of the sub hopper clutches that control the supply of toner to the PCUs. | |
| 1 | Current Val:K | [0 to 5./0.01 V] |
| 2 | Current Val:M | |
| 3 | Current Val:C | |
| 4 | Current Val:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3002 | Vtcnt:Disp/Set | |
| | Display Vtcnt (TD Sensor Control Voltage).<br>Use SP 3002-001 to 004 to display and confirm the present Vtcnt setting. Vtcnt is the TD sensor control voltage. If there is a large difference between this value and the value of SP3002-005 to 008 (Initial Vtcnt), this means that over time Vtcnt will require large adjustments due to environmental conditions. The initial value of Vtcnt is determined when the developer is initialized. This value is used as a reference to adjust Vt during the auto process control self check and when the TD sensor checks the toner density between pages. | |
| 1 | Current Val:K | [0 to 12/0.01 V] |
| 2 | Current Val:M | |
| 3 | Current Val:C | |
| 4 | Current Val:Y | |
| 5 | Initial Val:K | [0 to 12/0.01 V] |
| 6 | Initial Val:M | |
| 7 | Initial Val:C | |
| 8 | Initial Val:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3003 | Vtref:Disp/Set | |
| | This SP displays the TD sensor target voltage. This target voltage is inversely proportional to the density of the toner:<br>▪ If the target is high, toner density is lowered.<br>▪ If the target is low, toner density is raised.<br>The machine uses readings of the ID sensor patterns between pages to determine the amount of toner coverage and compared with the threhold values for the upper and lower limit of coverate. The result of this calculation is used to calculate Vtref.<br>**Note:** Vtref is the TD sensor reference voltage. It is frequently updated to stabilize the toner concentration in the development unit. | |
| 1 | Current Val:K | [0 to 5/0.01 V] |
| 2 | Current Val:M | |
| 3 | Current Val:C | |
| 4 | Current Val:Y | |
| 5 | Initial Val:K | [0 to 5/0.01 V] |
| 6 | Initial Val:M | |
| 7 | Initial Val:C | |
| 8 | Initial Val:Y | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 3010 | TD Sn: Factory Data: K |
| 3011 | TD Sn: Factory Data: M |
| 3012 | TD Sn: Factory Data: C |
| 3013 | TD Sn: Factory Data: Y |
| | These SP codes display the factory default settings for TD sensor initialization for the K, M, C, and Y PCUs. |

Group 3000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Vtcnt | Gain value calculated during TD sensor initialization. This is used to adjust the Vt (TD sensor output). A large gain increases Vt, and a small gain decreases it. The result of this calculation is also used to calibrate Vt during TD sensor initialization. |
| 2 | Vt(H) | "x" is K, M, C, or Y.<br>The Vt readings are H (High), M (Medium), L (Low). |
| 3 | Vt(M) | |
| 4 | Vt(L) | |

| 3021 | Set Vt Shift | |
|---|---|---|
| | Use this SP to correct Vt (TD sensor output voltage) in the low speed mode (128 to 256 g/$m^2$). The machine then uses this value to calculate Vt for low speed mode. | |
| 1 | Shift (Stdd1) | V-C2a [0 to 5/ 0/ 0.01 V]<br>V-C2b [0 to 5/ 0.2/0.01 V] |
| 2 | Shift (Half d2) | |
| 3 | Shift (Half d1) | |

| 3042 | Set Vtref Cor | |
|---|---|---|
| | Set Vtref Correction.<br>Vtref is frequently updated in the toner supply cycle to stabiize the concentration of toner in the developer. Vtref is corrected between every printed page in the paper path using the correction amounts listed below for each color. This is the default setting (0) for SP3042 001. However, you can use this SP to switch this function off.<br>Vtref (TD sensor reference voltage). It is frequently updated to stabilize the toner concentration in the development unit. | |
| 1 | Vtref Corr Mode | [0 to 1/1] 0: On, 1: Off<br>Setting this SP to 1 switches off Vtref correction between pages. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Corr Amt(+):K | [0 to 1/0.01 V] |
| 3 | Corr Amt(+):M | |
| 4 | Corr Amt(+):C | |
| 5 | Corr Amt(+):Y | |
| 6 | Corr Amt(-):k | |
| 7 | Corr Amt(-):M | |
| 8 | Corr Amt(-):C | |
| 9 | Corr Amt(-):Y | |
| 10 | Vtref Corr Target:K | [-0.1 to 0.1/0.001 mg/cm$^2$] |
| 11 | Vtref Corr Target:M | |
| 12 | Vtref Corr Target:C | |
| 13 | Vtref Corr Target:Y | |
| 14 | Corr Thresh:M | [-0.1 to 0.1/0/ mg/cm$^2$] |
| 15 | Corr Thresh:C | |
| 16 | Corr Thresh:Y | |
| 17 | Corr Thresh:K | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3044 | Img Area | |
| | These SP codes display the percentage of coverage on printed pages. | |
| 1 | Latest:K | [0 to 9999/ 1 cm$^2$] |
| 2 | Latest:M | |
| 3 | Latest:C | |
| 4 | Latest:Y | |
| 5 | Ave.S:K | [0 to 100/ 0.01%] |

Group 3000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6 | Ave.S:M | |
| 7 | Ave.S:C | |
| 8 | Ave.S:Y | |
| 9 | Ave.M:K | |
| 10 | Ave.M:M | |
| 11 | Ave.M:C | |
| 12 | Ave.M:Y | |
| 13 | Ave.L:K | |
| 14 | Ave.L:M | |
| 15 | Ave.L:C | |
| 16 | Ave.L:Y | |
| 17 | Set N Pgs Ave.:S | [0 to 100/ 1 sheet] |
| 18 | Set N Pgs Ave.:M | |
| 19 | Set N Pgs Ave.:L | |
| 24 | DotCoverage | [0 to 100/ 0.01%] |
| 25 | DotCoverage | |
| 26 | DotCoverage | |
| 27 | DotCoverage | |

| 3101 | ID Pattern:Display | |
|---|---|---|
| | ID Sensor Pattern Coverage Display.<br>Displays the amount toner to be used (coverage) to create the ID sensor patterns between pages. The ID sensors cannot accurately detect the patterns if there is too much reflectivity from the black toner. This SP changes the solid ID sensor pattern to a hatched pattern.<br>**Note**: SP3101-1 to 4 sets detection and update timing for the creation of the ID sensor patterns. | |
| 1 | Applied:K | |
| 2 | Applied:M | |
| 3 | Applied:C | |
| 4 | Applied:Y | |
| 5 | Target Apply:K | |
| 6 | Target Apply:M | |
| 7 | Target Apply:C | |
| 8 | Target Apply:Y | |

| 3102 | ID Pattern:Int | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SP patterns set the time interval for creation of the ID sensor pattern on the drum. | |
| 1 | Create Int:K | [0 to 200/10/ 1 page] |
| 2 | Create Int:M | |
| 3 | Create Int:C | |
| 4 | Create Int:Y | |
| 5 | K Page Cnt | [0 to 200/0/ 1 page] |

Group 3000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6 | M Page Cnt | |
| 7 | C Page Cnt | |
| 8 | Y Page Cnt | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3111 | ID Sn:Voffset **DFU** | |
| | Displays the output voltage of the directly reflected light when the LED of the ID sensor is switched off. | |
| 1 | Voffset_Reg | [0 to 5/0.01 V] |
| 2 | Voffset_Dif | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3121 | Adjusted Vsg **DFU** | |
| | This SP displays the 1) results of the most recent Vsg adjustment. | |
| 1 | Vsg_Reg:Col | [0 to 5/0.01 V] |
| 2 | Vsg_Dif:Col | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3131 | Ifsg After Vsg | |
| | Displays as a PWM value (pulse width modulation) the level of the ID sensor LED after Vsg has been adjusted. Normal Vsg readings of the ITB bare surface reflectivity should be in the range 4.0 ±0.2V. | |
| 1 | Ifsg:Col | [0 to 4096/1] |
| 3 | Ifsg:K | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 3141 | ID Sn:Vmin |
| | Displays the minimum values read from the graduated patterns read by the ID sensor during process control. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3194 | ID Coeff Display | |
| | Displays the most recent and averaged readings of the sensitivity correction coefficients (K2 and K5). | |
| 1 | K2:Last | [0 to 5/0.0001] |
| 2 | K5:Last | |
| 5 | K2:Ave | |
| 6 | K5:Ave | |

| 3251 | Tnr Supply Time | |
|---|---|---|
| | Toner Calibration Time: Display<br>Displays for confirmation the length of time the sub hopper clutch remained on to send toner to the sub hopper after a new toner cartridge was installed. | |
| 1 | Sub Hopper CL:K | [0 to 99 999 999/1 ms] |
| 2 | Sub Hopper CL:M | |
| 3 | Sub Hopper CL:C | |
| 4 | Sub Hopper CL:Y | |
| 5 | Toner Pump CL:K | Use these SPs to display the accumulated drive time for each powder pump clutch before installing a new one.<br>[0 to 99 999 999/1 ms] |
| 6 | Toner Pump CL:M | |
| 7 | Toner Pump CL:C | |
| 8 | Toner Pump CL:Y | |

| 3301 | Tnr Supply | |
|---|---|---|
| | Select toner supply method | |
| 1 | K | [0 to 1/1]<br>0: Fixed toner supply<br>**1:** PID Toner Supply |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3302 | Tnr Supply | |
| | Sets the toner supply rate for fixed toner supply mode. The rate is set by adjusting the on time of the toner supply clutch. This setting is used only if SP3301 is set to "0". | |
| 1 | Supply Rate:K | [0 to 100/ 1%] |
| 2 | Supply Rate:M | |
| 3 | Supply Rate:C | |
| 4 | Supply Rate:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3303 | Tnr Supply Rate | |
| | Displays for confirmation the toner supply rate of toner supply control using the PID method. The toner supply rate is calculated as:<br>Toner Supply Rate = Toner Supply Time/Time Allowed for Toner Supply x 100<br>where:<br>▪ Time is measured in msec.<br>▪ "Time Allowed for Toner Supply (ms)" = Length of the paper (mm) + Width of the gap between sheets (mm)/Drum speed (mm/s) x 1000.<br>**Note:** The toner supply control method is selected with SP3301. | |
| 1 | Last Val:K | [0 to 100/1%] |
| 2 | Last Val:M | |
| 3 | Last Val:C | |
| 4 | Last Val:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3304 | Tnr SupplyLimits | |
| | Set Upper/Lower Limits for Toner Supply.<br>Sets the upper and lower limits for toner supply rate with the fuzzy logic (PID) used as the toner supply control method.<br>**Note**: This SP takes effect only if 1 is selected for SP3301 to enable fuzzy logic as the toner supply method.<br>The machine reads 1) the maximum and minimum settings of this SP and 2) the toner consumption of the output image surface (pixel count data). Then it calculates the maximum and minimum amount of toner for that image. After this is done, toner supply amount will not change during the job, even if Vt or any other measurement determines that more toner is necessary. | |
| 1 | Max Supply Rate:K | [0 to 150/1%] |
| 2 | Max Supply Rate:M | |
| 3 | Max Supply Rate:C | |
| 4 | Max Supply Rate:Y | |
| 5 | Min Supply Time:K | [0 to 255/1 ms] |
| 6 | Min Supply Time:M | |
| 7 | Min Supply Time:C | |
| 8 | Min Supply Time:Y | |

| 3306 | Tnr Supply Coeff | |
|---|---|---|
| | Set Toner Supply Coefficient<br>These SPs set the toner supply coefficients for the fuzzy logic method of toner supply control.<br>**Note:** These SP codes operate only when 1 is selected for SP3301. | |
| 1 – 4 | Ratio Coeff1:K, M, C, Y | [0 to 4300/1] |
| 21 – 24 | P_Vt_Coeff:K, M, C, Y | [0 to 150/1%] |
| 25 – 28 | I_Vt_Coeff:K, M, C, Y | |
| 29 – 32 | Si:K, M, C, Y | [-5 to 5/0.01] |
| 33 –36 | P_Px1_Coeff1:K, M, C, Y | [0 to 150/1%] |
| 37 – 40 | P_Px1_Coeff3:K, M, C, Y | [0 to 2.55/0.01] |
| 41– 44 | P_Px1_Coeff3:K, M, C, Y | |

| 3310 | Next Tnr Supply | |
|---|---|---|
| | Displays information about the next toner supply: Amount, Image Area (coverage), Wait Time | |
| 1 | K Amount | [0 to 65 535 / 1 mg] |
| 2 | M Amount | |
| 3 | C Amount | |
| 4 | Y Amount | |
| 5 | K Image Area | [0 to 65 535 / 1 $cm^2$] |
| 6 | M Image Area | |
| 7 | C Image Area | |
| 8 | Y Image Area | |

Group 3000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 9 | K Wait Time | [0 to 65 535 / 1 mg] |
| 10 | M Wait Time | |
| 11 | C Wait Time | |
| 12 | Y Wait Time | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 3401 | TE Detect Set **DFU** |
| | This SP code switches operation of the toner end sensor off/on.<br>[*0:Detect], [1: No Detect] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3410 | Toner Remains | |
| | These SP codes display the estimated amount of toner remaining. | |
| 1 | K | These SP codes display the estimated amount of toner remaining.<br>[0 to 10 / 1]<br>10 to 2: Full to sufficient toner remaining<br>2: Estimated near end<br>1: Measured near end<br>0: Toner end |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |
| 5 | K Remain | These SP codes display by weight (mg) the amount of toner remaining.<br>[0 to 99 999 999/ 1 mg] |
| 6 | M Remain | |
| 7 | C Remain | |
| 8 | Y Remain | |
| 9 | K % Remain | These SP codes display the percent of toner remaining.<br>[0 to 100/ 1%] |
| 10 | M % Remain | |
| 11 | C % Remain | |
| 12 | Y % Remain | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3411 | TNE Detect Disp/Set | |
| | This SP sets the number of pages to print after the toner near-end alert has been issued. | |
| 1 | TNE:K Sheets | Sets toner end to be measured by the number of sheets printed (toner end sensor input is ignored).<br>[0 to 30/ 1 Sheet] |
| 2 | TNE:YMC Sheets | |
| 3 | K Pg Count | Displays the number of continuous sheets detected for toner end while the toner end sensor input is ignored.<br>[0 to 30/ 1 Sheet] |
| 4 | M Pg Count | |
| 5 | C Pg Count | |
| 6 | Y Pg Count | |
| 7 | Disp Timing:K | This setting displays the percentage of toner remaining for toner near end.<br>[0 to 100/ 1%] |
| 8 | Disp Timing:M | |
| 9 | Disp Timing:C | |
| 10 | Disp Timing:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3412 | TE Detect:Disp/Set | |
| | These SP codes determine how many pages print before toner supply reaches toner end. | |
| 1 | TE:Sheets:Min:K | These SPs set the minimum number of monochrome and color pages guaranteed to print after the machine has determined near end until the toner-end message is displayed.<br>[0 to 50 / 10/ 1 Sheet] |
| 2 | TE:Sheets:Min:Col | |
| 3 | TE:Sheets:Max:K | These SPs set the maximum number of pages for monochrome and color guaranteed to print after the machine has determined near end until the toner-end message is displayed. |
| 4 | TE:Sheets:Max:Col | |

Group 3000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | [0 to 2000/ 600/ 1 Sheet] |
| 5 | TE:Pixel:K | These SP codes set the number of pages for monochrome and color pages to be output based on 5% A4 coverage after the machine has determined near end until the toner-end message is displayed.<br>[0 to 100/ 30/ 1 Sheet] |
| 6 | TE:Pixel:Col | |
| 7 | K Page Cnt | These SP codes determine for each color how many pages will be output after the machine has determined near end.<br>[0 to 2000/ 0/ 1 Sheet] |
| 8 | M Page Cnt | |
| 9 | C Page Cnt | |
| 10 | Y Page Cnt | |
| 11 | K Pixel Cnt | These SP codes display the number of pages for monochrome and color pages to output based on the amount of toner consumed ($cm^2$) after the machine determined near end.<br>[0 to 1 000 000/ 0/ 1 $cm^2$] |
| 12 | M Pixel Cnt | |
| 13 | C Pixel Cnt | |
| 14 | Y Pixel Cnt | |
| 15 | Page Cnt Stop:Coverage | This SP sets the number of pages to print after the machine has determined near end based on percent of A4 coverage until the toner pump is switched off.<br>[0 to 100/ 0/ 1%] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3501 | Select ProCon | |
| | Select Process Control Method<br>The settings of these SP codes modify the operation of the automatic process control self-check. Automatic process control is done at these times:<br>▪ When the machine is turned on<br>▪ At the end of the job, if the number of pages since the previous process control, exceeds the value of SP 3551<br>▪ Before ACC adjustment<br>▪ When the developer is initialized with SP3811.<br>For more about process control, see "Process Control" in Section 6. | |
| 1 | Potential Ctrl<br>[0 to 2/1] **0: Auto**, 1: Fixed<br>When the machine starts (with the front door closed), the process control self-check begins using as reference bias voltages set with the Group 3 SP codes. The referenced voltages are different, depending on whether "Auto" or "Fixed" is set: | |
| | **Referenced SPs with "Auto" Selected** | |
| | SP3575 001 to 016 | Dev DC Control |
| | SP3576 001 to 016 | Chrg DC Control |
| | SP3577 001 to 004 | Chrg AC Control |
| | SP3581 001 to 008 | LD Power Control |
| | SP3551 001, 002 | Procon Int |
| | SP3554 001 | Init ProCon Set |
| | SP3801 001 | DevSetup Execute |
| | SP3811 001 to 006 | DevSetup Execute |
| | **Reference SPs with "Fixed" Selected** | |
| | SP2201 001 to 004 | Set DC Charge |

Group 3000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | SP2202 001 to 004 | Set AC Charge |
| | SP2211 001 to 004 | Set LD Power |
| | SP2212 001 to 004 | Set Dev DC |
| 3 | Density Adj Mode | Sets the execution timing of toner density adjustment with the automatic process control self-check.<br>[0 to 3/1]<br>0: Do not execute,<br>1: 1st Power On,<br>2: 1st Power On & Job End |
| 4 | ACC Before ProCon | Determines whether process control is executed before a gradation test pattern is printed using the operation panel with: [User Tools]> Maintenance> Auto Color Calibration<br>[0 to 3/2/1]<br>0:Do not execute<br>1:Execute Potential Control<br>2:Execute Potential Control and Toner Density Adjustment |
| 5 | DnstyAdjTimes | Sets the upper limit of the loop wherein density is adjusted during process control. Default: 5 |
| 6 | DevGamma(EnvCorrct) | Switches correction of the development gamma adjustment with the readings of the temperature/humidity sensor off and on. Touch either the "OFF" or "ON" button to toggle the setting. |
| 7 | DevGamma(TimeCorrct) | Switches the timing of the development gamma adjustment during process control off and on. Touch either the "OFF" or "ON" button to toggle the setting. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3511 | Poten Tbl:Disp | |
| | Display Potential Table<br>Displays the numbers in the Potential Table selected for process control.<br>The Potential Table is the lookup table that contains the potential target values (Vd, Vb, Vl) for adjustment of the development potential.<br>▪ Vd: Initial charge applied to the drum by the charge roller.<br>▪ Vb: Development bias<br>▪ Vl: Value used to correct the strength of the lasers.<br>A 4-grade pattern is first created on the drum and then transferred to the ITB:<br>▪ On the drum, the potential sensor uses their readings of this pattern to determine development potential.<br>▪ On the ITB, the ID sensors use their readings of this pattern to determine the amount of toner coverage necessary.<br>For more about process control, see "Process Control" in Section 6. | |
| 1 | K Value | Displays the current numbers in the Potential Table for each color.<br>[1 to 99/1] |
| 2 | M Value | |
| 3 | C Value | |
| 4 | Y Value | |
| 5 | Target: K | Displays the target values for Vd*, Vb*, Vl* after measurements of ambient conditions and compensating for residual charge on the drum (Vr).<br>If the actual development gamma is less than the target development gamma, this SP shows a smaller value than the selected pointer table value.<br>If the actual development gamma is greater than the target development gamma, this SP shows a larger value than the selected pointer table value.<br>[1 to 99/1] |
| 6 | Target: M | |
| 7 | Target: C | |
| 8 | Target: Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3531 | ProCon Target | |
| | Set Target Amount for Process Control<br>This SP sets the value for the maximum coverage to be achieved by the process control self-check. Process control then analyzes the readings of the 4-grade pattern, calculates the potentials required for development gamma and Vk (starting voltage), and then determines the drum charge levels, development biases, and LD power levels necessary to achieve the target coverage.<br>**Note**<br>▪ This SP can be used to darken printed images.<br>After this SP is changed, process control must be executed manually with SP3820. | |
| 1 | Max Tnr Amt:K | [0 to 1/ 0.001 mg/cm$^2$] |
| 2 | Max Tnr Amt:M | |
| 3 | Max Tnr Amt:C | |
| 4 | Max Tnr Amt:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3540 | Image Quality Adjust: Interval | |
| | Adjusts the interval between image quality adjustments. | |
| 1 | During Job | Sets the page interval for image quality adjustment.<br>[0 to 100/30/1 Page] |
| 2 | During Standby | Sets the time interval for image quality adjustment while the machine is in standby mode.<br>[0 to 100/10/1 Min.] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3551 | Set Procon:Job End | |
| | This SP sets timing of the process control self-check for job end. The process control self-check never interrupts a job to execute, even if it is time for the next self-check. | |
| 1 | B/W Mode | This SP sets the page interval for execution of process control at job end for monochrome printing.<br>[0 to 5000/250/1] |
| 2 | Color Mode | This SP sets the page interval for execution of process control at job end for color printing.<br>[0 to 5000/250/1] |
| 3 | Pg Cnt:B&W Mode | Displays the current page interval counts for the execution of process control execution for both monochrome and color printing.<br>[0 to 5000/0/1] |
| 4 | Pg CntColor Mode | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3552 | Set Procon:Interrupt | |
| | These SP codes settings determine whether a long print job is interrupted temporarily in order to execute process control. (Normally long print jobs are not interrupted for process control unless these settings are changed.) | |
| 1 | B/W Mode | Sets the page interval to trigger process control during a long monochrome print job.<br>[0 to 2000/0/ 1 sheet] |
| 2 | Color Mode | Sets the page interval to trigger process control during a long color print job.<br>[0 to 1000/0/ 1 sheet] |
| 3 | Pg Cnt:B&W Mode | Displays the current page counts that will interrupt long monochrome or color print jobs in order to execute process control.<br>[0 to 5000/ 0/ 1 sheet] |
| 4 | Pg Cnt:Color Mode | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3554 | Init ProCon Set | |
| | The machine determines the amount of time elapsed since the drum motors stopped (print end, process control end, etc.) and the amount of change in the temperature and humidity since the last cold start.<br>In order to determine if initial processing control self-check executes, the machine compares:<br>▪ The time the drum stop last stopped (SP3556-1 to 5: Last Print Date/Time)<br>▪ The temperature and humidity when the drum last stopped (SP2901-5 to 8)<br>If the difference between temperature and humidity is higher than the temperature/humidity threshold for a cold start, then initial process control self-check executes again. | |
| 1 | Non-use Time Setting | Sets the amount of time to elapse for the K drum motor to remain idle after power on.<br>[0 to 1440/360/1 min.] |
| 2 | Temperature Range | Sets the temperature for the K drum motor idle time at power on.<br>[0 to 99/ 10/ 1 degC] |
| 3 | Relative Humidity Range | Sets the relative humidity for the K drum motor idle time at power on.<br>[0 to 99/ 50/ 1 % rh] |
| 4 | Absolute Humidity Range | Sets the absolute humidity for the K drum motor idle time at power on.<br>[0 to 99/ 6 1 g/$m^3$] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3555 | Non-use Time Procon Set | |
| | After the time set with SP3540-2 has elapsed the current temperature and humidity are compared with the temperature and humidity the last time the drum stopped. If the difference is greater than the threshold values set with this SP, initial process control executes. | |
| 1 | Non-use Time Setting | Sets the amount of time to elapse from the last time the K drum motor stopped. The reading is updated every 10 minutes.<br>[0 to 1440/360/1 min.] |
| 2 | Temperature Range | Sets the temperature to be compared with the temperature from the last time the K drum motor stopped. The reading is updated every 10 minutes.<br>[0 to 99/ 10/ 1 degC] |
| 3 | Relative Humidity Range | Sets the relative humidity to be compared with the relative humidity from the last time the K drum motor stopped. The reading is updated every 10 minutes.<br>[0 to 99/ 50/ 1 % rh] |
| 4 | Absolute Humidity Range | Sets the absolute humidity to be compared with the relative humidity from the last time the K drum motor stopped. The reading is updated every 10 minutes.<br>[0 to 99/ 6 1 g/m3] |
| 5 | Max Times | Sets the maximum number of times for these SP codes to execute while the machine remains in standby mode.<br>[0 to 99/ 10/ 1 times] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3556 | Latest Print Date Time | |
| | These SP settings display the date of the most recent print job. | |
| 1 | Year | [1 to 12/1/1 year] |
| 2 | Month | [1 to 31/1/1 month] |
| 3 | Day | [1 to 23/1/1 day] |
| 4 | Hour | [1 to 23/1/1 hour] |
| 5 | Min. | [1 to 59/1/1 min.] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3561 | Dev gamma:Disp/Set | |
| | Displays the value of development gamma, an indicator of development capacity. In order for the machine to determine the development potential to obtain the target coverage. During processing control the graduated patterns are created first on the drums and then on the ITB. The potential sensors read the development potential, and the ID sensors read the amount of coverage on the ITB.<br>Plotting the development potential on the X axis against coverage on the Y-axis results in the development gamma curve. For more, see "Process Control" in Section 6. | |
| 1-4 | Actual Val:K,M,C,Y | |
| 5-8 | Target Val:K,M,C,y | |
| 9-012 | Initial Val:K,M,C,Y | |
| 013 | Environ Corr:Bk | |
| 014 | Environ Corr:Col | |
| 15-18 | Time Lapse Corr:K,M,C,Y | |
| 19-22 | Tnr Density Corr:K,M,C,Y | |
| 23-26 | Toner Use Count:K,M,C,Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 27-30 | TnrDensity:K,M,C,Y | |
| 31-38 | Environ Corr 1-8:K | |
| 39-46 | Environ Corr 1-8:Col | |
| 47-56 | Time Lapse Corr 1-10:K | |
| 57-71 | Time Lapse Corr 1-15:Col | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3562 | Display Vk | |
| | Display Vk (Development Start Voltage)<br>Displays Vk, the development start voltage. This development start voltage is used to indicate whether the developer has deteriorated. However, this is only a rough measurement due to other factors:<br>▪ A low threshold setting for the target development gamma.<br>▪ Operational variations between machines<br>▪ Precision of the ID sensor measurements<br>Normal range for Vk: -150V to +150V | |
| 1 | K | [-300 to +300/1 V] |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3563 | Display Vr | |
| | Display Vr (Residual Potential)<br>Vr is the potential that remains on the surface of the drum after full exposure to the laser. The existence of this residual voltage is used as an indicator to determine the level of deterioration of the drum. Vr becomes larger as the drum deteriorates.<br>Normal range for Vr: -200V to 0V | |
| 1 | K | [-300 to +300/1 V] |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3571 | Display V0 | |
| | Display Vd (Value for Control of Charge Potential)<br>Displays the value for V0, the measure of drum potential on dark areas of the drum before laser exposure.<br>Normal range: -700 V to –500 V | |
| 1 | K | [-999 to 0/1 V] |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3572 | Display Vdhome | |
| | Display Vd (Value for Control of Charge Potential)<br>Displays the value for Vdhome, the electrical potential of the drum after a fixed dc bias (dc –700V) is applied by the drum charge roller. Normal range: -700V to –500V | |
| 1 | K | [-999 to 0/1 V] |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3573 | Target Poten:Vd | |
| | Display Target Potential (VdDisplay)<br>Vd (read by the potential sensor) is the potential of dark areas of a drum before full laser exposure. This SP displays the value of Vd used by processing control to determine the target potential (Vd). The machine performs a calculation using development gamma, Vk and the maximum coverage, and then uses the result to lookup and retrieve the correct voltage from the Potential Table. This retrieved value is used to raise the charge of the charge roller that charges the drums. | |
| 1 | K | [-999 to 0/1 V] |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3574 | Target Poten:Vl | |
| | Display Target Potential (VlDisplay)<br>Vl (read by the potential sensor) is the potential of the exposed areas after full laser exposure. This SP displays the value of Vl used by processing control to determine the target potential (Vl). The machine performs a calculation using development gamma, Vk and the maximum coverage, and then uses the result to lookup and retrieve the correct voltage from the Potential Table. This retrieved value is used to raise the input current of the laser diode. | |
| 1 | K | [-999 to 0/1 V] |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3575 | Dev DC Control | |
| | Display Value for Control of Development DC<br>Displays the development bias that was referenced during processing control and used in the previous jobs (Used if process control is set for Auto with SP3501 001.) | |
| 1 | Std Spd2:K | [-999 to -200/ 1V] |
| 2 | Std Spd2:M | |
| 3 | Std Spd2:C | |
| 4 | Std Spd2:Y | |
| 5 | Std Spd1:K | [-999 to -200/ 1V] |
| 6 | Std Spd1:M | |
| 7 | Std Spd1:C | |
| 8 | Std Spd1:Y | |
| 9 | Low Spd2:K | [-999 to -200/ 1V] |
| 10 | Low Spd2:M | |
| 11 | Low Spd2:C | |
| 12 | Low Spd2:Y | |
| 13 | Low Spd1:K | [-999 to -200/ 1V] |
| 14 | Low Spd1:M | |
| 15 | Low Spd1:C | |
| 16 | Low Spd1:Y | |

| 3576 | Chrg DC Control | |
|---|---|---|
| | Displays the value for control of development dc. (Used if process control is set for Auto with SP3501 001.) | |
| 1 | Std d2:K | |
| 2 | Std d2:M | |
| 3 | Std d2:C | |
| 4 | Std d2:Y | |
| 5 | Std d1:K | |
| 6 | Std d1:M | |
| 7 | Std d1:C | |
| 8 | Std d1:Y | |
| 9 | Low d2:K | |
| 10 | Low d2:M | |
| 11 | Low d2:C | |
| 12 | Low d2:Y | |
| 13 | Low d1:K | |
| 14 | Low d1:M | |
| 15 | Low d1:C | |
| 16 | 16Y | |

| 3577 | Chrg AC Control | |
|---|---|---|
| | Displays the ac bias that was referenced during processing control and used in the previous jobs. Used if process control is set for Auto with SP3501 001. | |
| 1 | K | [0.5 to 1.5/ 1/ 0.01 mA] |
| 2 | M | [1.6 to 3/ 2.2/ 0.01 kV] |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |

| 3581 | LD Power Control | |
|---|---|---|
| | Displays the LD power that was referenced during processing control and used in the previous jobs. Used if process control is set for Auto with SP3501 001. | |
| 1 | NorM2&Low2:K | |
| 2 | NorM2&Low2:M | |
| 3 | NorM2&Low2:C | |
| 4 | NorM2&Low2:Y | |
| 5 | Norm1&Low1:K | |
| 6 | Norm1&Low1:M | |
| 7 | Norm1&Low1:C | |
| 8 | Norm1&Low1:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3701 | Tnr Refresh Mode | |
| | These SP settings determine how the toner refresh mode is activated. | |
| 5 | Image Area Thresh:K | Sets the threshold (percentage of coverage) to trigger toner refresh mode.<br>[0 to 25.5/5/0.1%] |
| 6 | Image Area Thresh:M | |
| 7 | Image Area Thresh:C | |
| 8 | Image Area Thresh:Y | |
| 9 | Max Pattern Length | Sets the threshold (number of sheets) to trigger toner refresh mode.<br>[0 to 25/25/1 mm] |
| 10 | Need Ref Length:K | Displays the amount of fresh toner required.<br>[0 to 65 535/ 0/1 mm] |
| 11 | Need Ref Length:M | |
| 12 | Need Ref Length:C | |
| 13 | Need Ref Length:Y | |
| 14 | Interrupt Thresh:K | Sets the threshold for the amount of toner consumption to trigger toner refresh mode.<br>[0 to 65 535/ 300/1 mm] |
| 15 | Interrupt Thresh:M | |
| 16 | Interrupt Thresh:C | |
| 17 | Interrupt Thresh:Y | |

| 3702 | Set Expel Dev Mode | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Set Expel Dev Mode | Switches toner purging off/on. Default: ON |
| 2 | Required Expel Time:K | Displays the length of time required to purge K, M, C, Y toner.<br>[0 to 655.35/ 0/0.01 sec.] |
| 3 | Required Expel Time:M | |
| 4 | Required Expel Time:C | |
| 5 | Required Expel Time:Y | |
| 6 | Execution Threshold Value | Sets the time threshold for toner purging.<br>[2 to 255/15/ 1 sec.] |
| 7 | Calculated Value:Half-Speed | Sets the time needed to calculate filling toner for half-speed (thick paper).<br>[0 to 655.35/ 31/ 0.01 sec.] |

| 3710 | Tnr Density Adj **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | K SuppTime Coeff | |
| 2 | M SuppTime Coeff | |
| 3 | C SuppTime Coeff | |
| 4 | Y SuppTime Coeff | |
| 5 | K UseTime Coeff | |
| 6 | M UseTime Coeff | |
| 7 | C UseTime Coeff | |
| 8 | Y UseTime Coeff | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3801 | Init TD Sensor | |
| | Execute Developer Setup<br>Do this SP after replacing the developer in one or more of the PCUs when servicing the machine. This SP:<br>▪ Checks for the presence of developer in the development unit. This ensures that the development unit has been filled.<br>▪ Initializes TD sensor. (Calibrates Vtcnt).<br>▪ Calibrates development gamma and calibrates toner density. Also does the MUSIC check and correction.<br>**Note:** Do SP3811 after drum and cleaning blade replacement. SP3811 should always be done:<br>▪ During the machine installation procedure after the developer and toner have been installed, and<br>▪ During machine maintenance after a drum and cleaning blade have been replaced.<br>In both cases, SP3811 prevents the blade from scouring a dry drum. | |
| 1 | All Colors | |
| 2 | Col | |
| 3 | K | |
| 4 | M | |
| 5 | C | |
| 6 | Y | |
| 7 | Dev Auger Time | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 3802 | TD Sn Init OK? |
| | This SP displays the results of the TD sensor initialization with SP3801 001 to 006. The machine returns the status of the previous initialization with numbers, 1 digit for each PCU. The numbers are read in order as "K, M, C, Y".<br>Four numbers are used to indicate the status of the execution.<br>1: OK (success)<br>2: Cancelled (door opened, etc.)<br>4: Not executed (not selected for execution; this is not an error)<br>9: Vtcnt abnormal. Vtcnt (TD sensor control voltage) could not be adjusted to within 2.5 ±0.2V. The machine issued a TD sensor error for the PCU where there is a problem (SC372 to SC375).<br>**Note!**: The "1111" display is read from left to right: KMCY. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3810 | ClngInitSetExe | |
| | These SPs should be executed after replacement of the drum cleaning roller or drum cleaning blade. | |
| 1 | All Colors | Y, M, C, K |
| 2 | Col | Excludes Black (Y, M, C only |
| 3 | K | |
| 4 | M | |
| 5 | C | |
| 6 | Y | |
| 7 | A3 Page Cover | Sets the number of sheets for A3 coverage to prevent scouring of the OPC drum.<br>[0 to 100/ 3/ 1 sheet] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3811 | DevSetup Execute | |
| | Execute Developer Setup<br>Do this SP during the installation procedure after the developer and toner cartridges have been installed in the machine, or after the drum and cleaning blade have been replaced. This SP:<br>▪ Checks and confirms each PCU is installed and filled with developer.<br>▪ Switches on toner supply and sends toner to the sub hopper of each PCU.<br>▪ Sends toner to the PCU to coat the drum with toner. This prevents the cleaning blades from bending and scouring the drums.<br>▪ Initializes the TD sensors.<br>▪ Starts the process control self-check to set the target for development gamma and adjusts toner density.<br>▪ Starts the MUSIC sequence to check and correct color image offset.<br>**Note:**<br>▪ After doing SP3811, always do SP3812 to confirm that SP3811 executed correctly.<br>▪ SP3811 001 is done only at machine installation, or after a drum and cleaning blade has been replaced in the PCU.<br>▪ SP3801 001 to 006 is done after developer replacement for one or more PCUs. | |
| 1 | Devr Setup:All | [0 to 1/1] |
| 2 | Devr Setup:Col | |
| 3 | K | |
| 4 | M | |
| 5 | C | |
| 6 | Y | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 3812 | DevSetup Execute |
| | Display Result of Developer Setup Execution<br>Do this SP to confirm that SP3811 executed correctly. After execution the machine displays a "1" to confirm that SP3811 executed correctly for each PCU. The "1111" display indicates the return value for each PCU: K, M, C, Y<br>**Note!**: The "1111" display is read from left to right: KMCY. |

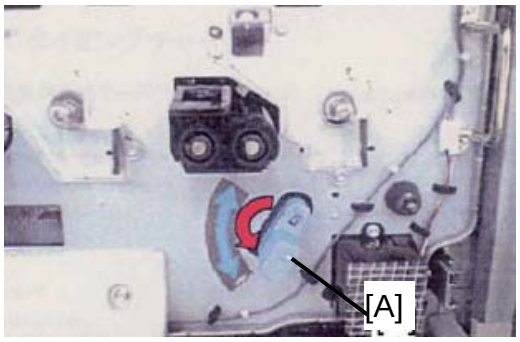
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3813 | Used Tnr Mode Exe | |
| | Used Toner Mode Execute<br>When the machine is printing in full-color mode, the waste toner in the PCUs is transported to the waste toner bottle for the amount of time specified with SP3813 003 below. | |
| 1 | All Colors | [0 to 1/1] 0:Off, 1: On |
| 2 | K Only | |
| 3 | Set Op. Time | [10 to 240/1 sec.] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3814 | Execute Developer Fill | |
| | These SP codes fill the PCUs with developer from the developer bottle. After doing one or more of these SP codes, always do SP3815 to confirm that the PCUs filled successfully. | |
| 1 | All (KMCY) | |
| 2 | MCY Only | |
| 3 | K | |
| 4 | M | |
| 5 | C | |
| 6 | Y | |

⇒ 1. Execute SP3814 **after the machine has beeped twice**. (This means that the fusing temperature has reached the “Ready” condition level).

2. Make sure the ITB release level [A] is at the **lower position** (As shown below) when you execute SP3814.

**IMPORTANT:** After you execute SP3814, set the ITB release lever to the upper position. This is necessary in order to execute SP3811 (Developer Set Up).




| | |
|---|---|
| 3815 | Developer Fill:Disp Result |
| | Always execute this SP code to confirm successful execution of SP3814.<br>**Note!**: The "1111" display is read from left to right: KMCY. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3816 | Developer Fill:Set **DFU** | |
| 1 | Belt Form Start Time:A | |
| 2 | Developer Fill Time:B | |
| 3 | Belt Length:C | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3817 | Developer Filling: Admission | |
| | When SP3814 (Execute Developer Fill) is executed, the process control self-check, but the MUSIC adjustment are disabled until after one of the SP codes has been executed after developer filling:<br>▪ SP3811 (Developer Setup)<br>▪ SP3801 (TD Sensor Initialization)<br>This is the condition normally in effect. (SP codes 1 to 4 will display "1"). | |
| 1 | K | Display the permission status of each PCU for developer filling after SP3814 was executed.<br>1: Developer filling enabled. No process control self-check, no MUSIC adjustment until SP3811 or SP3801 have been execute.<br>0: Developer filling disabled |
| 2 | M | |
| 3 | C | |
| 4 | Y | |
| 5 | Reset Status: All Colors | Forcibly resets the status to "0". |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3820 | Manual ProCon | |
| | Use these SP codes to execute process control manually.<br>You must do SP3820 to enable any values you change with SP3531 (Procon Target). Use SP3561 to display the results of SP3820 execution.<br>**Note**:<br>▪ Process control is disabled during machine warm-up.<br>▪ If you execute this SP code during machine warm-up, "Completed" is displayed immediately. However, the manual process control setting was not actually done. | |
| 1 | Normal ProCon | Does potential control only. |
| 2 | Exe Density Adj | Does potential control and toner density adjustment. |
| 3 | ACC RunTime ProCon | Executes process control again just before ACC executes. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3821 | ProCon OK? | | |
| | Use this SP to display the history of process control executions. These SP codes are used to troubleshoot processing control.<br>[0 to 99999999/1] | | |
| 1 | History:Last | 6 | History:Last 6 |
| 2 | History:Last 2 | 7 | History:Last 7 |
| 3 | History:Last 3 | 8 | History:Last 8 |
| 4 | History:Last 4 | 9 | History:Last 9 |
| 5 | History:Last 5 | 10 | History:Last 10 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 3900 | RsetProConSP |
| | Reset All Process Control SP Codes<br>Press [EXECUTE] to reset all process control related SP codes to their default values. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 3910 | Forbid LD Write **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 3920 | Recovery Operation Request **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 3930 | Sheet Threshold Display |
| | This setting determines sets the threshold to determine when the machine switches from FC to BW printing during a long print job.<br>[0 to 99/0/1]<br>0: No switching from FC to BW<br>1: Switches according to print job (FC/BW)<br>2 to 99: Switches FC to BW based on the number of pages. |

# 5.5 GROUP 4000

| | |
|---|---|
| 4008 | Sub Scan Magnification Adj |
| | Adjusts the sub-scan magnification by changing the scanner motor speed.<br>[-10 to +10/0.1%] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4010 | Sub Scan Registration Adj |
| | Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the scanning start timing in the sub-scan direction.<br>[-30 to +30/0.1 mm] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4011 | Main Scan Reg |
| | Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the scanning start timing in the main scan direction.<br>**Note:** This adjustment is done for the ADF with SP6006 (ADF Reg. Adj.).<br>[-25 to +25/0.1 mm] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4012 | Set Scale Mask | |
| | Sets the blank margin at each side for erasing the original shadow caused by the gap between the original and the scale. This can be done for both scanning on the exposure glass (book mode) and the ADF (ADF) for the leading and trailing edges. | |
| 1 | Book:Sub LEdge | [0 to 30/0.1 mm] |
| 2 | Book:Sub TEdge | |
| 3 | Book:Main:LEdge | |
| 4 | Book:Main:TEdge | |
| 5 | ADF:Sub:LEdge | |
| 7 | ADF:Main:LEdge | |
| 8 | ADF:Main:TEdge | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4013 | Scanner Free Run | |
| | Free Run: Scanner<br>Performs the scanner free run with the exposure lamp on or off for full-color, full size (A3 or DLT). | |
| 1 | Lamp:Off | [0 to 1/1] 0: Off, 1: On |
| 2 | Lamp:On | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4014 | Scan **DFU** |
| | Touch [Execute] to execute one scanning operation with the scanner at the home position. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4020 | Dust Check |
| | These SP codes adjust the dust check operation at the ADF scanning glass and the white scanning belt.<br>**Note:** Dust that triggers a warning could be removed from the glass by the originals in the feed path. If the dust is removed by passing originals, this is not detected and the warning remains on. |
| 1 | Dust Detect:On/Off |
| | Switches the dust warning on and off. When this SP is on, a warning is issued if the check detects dust on the ADF scan glass or the white plate above the scanning glass. Always clean the ADF scanning glass and white plate before turning this SP on.<br>[0 to 1/1] 0: Off, 1: On |
| 2 | Dust Detect:Lvl |
| | Adjusts the sensitivity of the check. If you see black streaks in copies when no warning has been issued, raise the setting to increase the level of sensitivity. If warnings are issued when you see no black streaks in copies, lower the setting.<br>[0 to 8/1] |
| 3 | Dust Reject:Lvl |
| | Sets the level for vertical line correction caused by dust. A high setting can eliminate unwanted vertical lines caused by dust but it can also thin vertical lines of the original.<br>[0 to 4/1] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4301 | Operation Check APS Sensor |
| | This SP confirms that the APS sensors are operating correctly. Place a sheet of paper on the exposure glass, then execute this SP code. For example, and A3 sheets returns the display **1111 1111** to indicate that all sensors are activated and operating normally.<br>**Note**: Only the first 5 bits are used:<br>Bit 0: APS Sensor 1<br>Bit 1: APS Sensor 2<br>Bit 2: APS Sensor 3<br>Bit 3, APS Sensor 4<br>Bit 4: APS Sensor 5 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4303 | Min Size for APS |
| | Sets the minimum size that the will be detected by APS<br>[0 to 2/1]<br>[*0: Unknown Document Size]<br>[1 A5-Lengthwise (HLT Lengthwise]<br>[2 A5 Sideways HLT Sideways] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4305 | 8K/16K Detection |
| | This SP enables the machine to recognize 8K/16K size paper automatically.<br>[*0: Normal]<br>[1: A4-Sideways LT-Lengthwise]<br>[2: A4-Lengthwise LT-Sideways]<br>[3: 8KAI, 16 KAI] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4400 | Org Edge Mask | |
| | This SP sets the area to be masked during platen (book) mode scanning. | |
| 1 | Book:Sub:LEdge | [0 to 30/0.1 mm] |
| 2 | Book:Sub:TEdge | |
| 3 | Book:Main:LEdge | |
| 4 | Book:Main:Tedge | |
| 5 | ADF:Sub:LEdge | |
| 7 | ADF:Main:TEdge | |
| 8 | ADF:Main:TEdge | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4417 | IPU Test Pattern | | | |
| | Use this SP to select the IPU test pattern to print. | | | |
| | | Test Pattern [0 to 24/1] | | |
| 0 | Scanned Image | 13 | Grid Pattern CMYK | |
| 1 | Gradation Main Scan A | 14 | Color Patch CMYK | |
| 2 | Gradation Main Scan B | 15 | Gray Pattern (1) | |
| 3 | Gradation Main Scan C | 16 | Gray Pattern (2) | |
| 4 | Gradation Main Scan D | 17 | Gray Pattern (3) | |
| 5 | Gradation Sub Scan 1 | 18 | Shading Pattern | |
| 6 | Grid Pattern | 19 | Thin Line Pattern | |
| 7 | Slant Grid Pattern | 20 | Scanned + Grid Pattern | |
| 8 | Gradation RGBCMYK | 21 | Scanned + Grayscale | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 9 | UCR Pattern | 22 | Scanned + Color Patch | |
| 10 | Color Patch 16 (1) | 23 | Scanned + Slant Grid C | |
| 11 | Color Patch 16 (2) | 24 | Scanned + Slant Grid D | |
| 12 | Color Patch 16 64 | | | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4429 | Select Copy Data Security | |
| | xxx<br>[0 to 3/3/1]<br>0:<br>1:<br>2:<br>3: | |
| 1 | Copying | |
| 2 | Scanning | |
| 3 | Fax Operation | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4440 | Saturation Adj |
| | Adjust Color Saturation<br>This SP adjusts the saturation level for copying.<br>[0 to 5/1]<br>0: High<br>1: Lowest<br>2: Lower<br>3: Default<br>4: Higher<br>5: Highest |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4460 | Digital AE **DFU** | |
| | These SP codes set parameters for the AE function. | |
| 1 | Low Limit Value | This setting determines the lower limit for level of background to be skipped for the AE function. The higher the setting, the more background will be ignored.<br>[0 to 1023/ 392/ 1] |
| 2 | Background Level | This setting determines the level of background to be output for the AE function.<br>[0 to 1023/888/1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4501 | ACC Target Den(sity) | |
| | This SP sets the target density for the ACC adjustment for machines connected with the Copier Connection Kit. For more, see "Troubleshooting – Special Procedures – Color Adjustment for Connected Copiers" in the Venus-C1 (B132/B200) Service Manual. | |
| 1 | Copy:K:Text | [0 to 50/1] |
| 2 | Copy:C:Text | |
| 3 | Copy:M:Text | |
| 4 | Copy:Y:Text | |
| 5 | Copy:K:Photo | |
| 6 | Copy:C:Photo | |
| 7 | Copy:M:Photo | |
| 8 | Copy:Y:Photo | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4505 | ACC Cor:Bright | |
| | Sets correction for bright areas for ACC correction. | |
| 1 – 4 | Master:K, M, C, Y | [-128 to +128/1] |
| 5 – 8 | Slave:K, M, C, Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4506 | ACC Cor:Dark | |
| | Sets correction for dark areas for ACC correction. | |
| 1 – 4 | Master:K, M, C, Y | [-128 to +128/1] |
| 5 – 8 | Slave:K, M, C, Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4540 | Print Coverage | |
| | This SP corrects printer coverage of 12 hues (RY, YR, YG, etc. x 4 Colors (K, C, M, Y) for a total of 48 parameters. | |
| 1 | RY Phase: Option | [-128 to +128/1] |
| 2-4 | RY Phase: R, G, B | |
| 5 | YR Phase: Option | |
| 6-8 | YR Phase: R, G, B | |
| 9 | YR Phase: G | |
| 10-12 | YR Phase: R, G, B | |
| 13 | GY Phase: Option | |
| 14-16 | GY Phase: R, G, B | |
| 17 | GC Phase: Option | |
| 18-120 | GC Phase: R, G, B | |
| 21 | CG Phase: Option | |
| 22-24 | CG Phase: R, G, B | |
| 25 | CB Phase: Option | |
| 26-28 | CB Phase: R, G, B | |
| 29 | BC Phase: Option | |
| 30-32 | BC Phase: R, G, B | |
| 33 | BM Phase: Option | |
| 34-36 | BM Phase: R, G, B | |
| 37 | MB Phase: Option | |
| 38-40 | MB Phase: R, G, B | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 41 | MR Phase: Option | |
| 42-44 | MR Phase: R, G, B | |
| 45 | RM Phase: Option | |
| 46-48 | RM Phase: R, G, B | |
| 4550 | Scan Apli:Txt/Print | |
| 4551 | Scan Apli:Txt | |
| 4552 | Scan Apli:Txt Dropout | |
| 4553 | Scan Apli:Txt-Photo | |
| 4554 | Scan Apli:Photo | |
| 4565 | Scan Apli:GrayScale | |
| 4570 | Scan Apli:Col Txt-Photo | |
| 4571 | Scan Apli:Col Gloss Photo | |
| 4572 | Scan Apli:AutoCol | |
| 4580 | Fax Apli:Txt-Chart | |
| 4581 | Fax Apli:Txt | |
| 4582 | Fax Apli:Txt-Photo | |
| 4583 | Fax Apli:Photo | |
| 4584 | Fax Apli:Original 1 | |
| 4585 | Fax Apli:Original 2 | |
| 5 | MTF: 0(Off) 1-15 (Weak-Strong) | Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect.<br>[0 to 15/1] |
| 6 | Smoothing: 0(x1) 1-7 (Weak-Strong) | Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. |

Group 4000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | Set higher for smoother.<br>[0 to 7/1] |
| 7 | Brightness: 1-255 | Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter.<br>[1 to 255/1] |
| 8 | Contrast: 1-255 | Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast.<br>[1 to 255/1] |
| 9 | Ind Dot Erase: 0(Off) 1-7 (Strong) | Use to remove individual dots in the background if they appear. Set higher for removal of more background.<br>[0 to 7/1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4600 | Display the ID of ASIC **DFU** | |
| | These SP codes display the readings of IDs read during automatic adjustment of the SBU. If one of these IDs is incorrect, this triggers SC144. | |
| 1 | VSBCNT | Displays the value read for VSBCNT during automatic SBU adjustment. |
| 2 | DAGL_L | Displays the value read for DAGL_L_ID during automatic SBU adjustment. |
| 3 | DAGL_F | Displays the value read for DAGL_F_ID during automatic SBU adjustment. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4603 | AGC Operation **DFU** |
| | Touch [EXECUTE] to execute automatic gain control (AGC) for HP detection. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4609 | Gray Balance Adj Value R **DFU** |
| 4610 | Gray Balance Adj Value G **DFU** |
| 4611 | Gray Balance Adj Value B **DFU** |
| 4615 | Gray Balance Adj Value R **DFU** |
| 4616 | Gray Balance Adj Value G **DFU** |
| 4617 | Gray Balance Adj Value B **DFU** |
| | These SP codes display the reference voltages stored in NVRAM at the factory for Red, Green, and Blue before the machine was shipped. The SBU acquires these settings every time the machine is switched on.<br>[-256 to +255/1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4628 | Gain Adj Range:R **DFU** | |
| 4629 | Gain Adj Range:G **DFU** | |
| 4630 | Gain Adj Range:B **DFU** | |
| | When switched on, these SP display the current range for the gain of RED, GREEN, and BLUE in the ASCI on the SBU after white level adjustment every time the machine is switched on. | |
| 1 | FC:F:R (G, B) | |
| 3 | FC:L:R (G, B) | |
| 5 | BK:F:R (G, B) | |
| 7 | BK:L:R (G, B) | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4631 | Gain Adj Value:R **DFU** | |
| | When switched on, this SP displays the current range for the E (EVEN) or O (ODD) in the ASCI on the SBU after white level adjustment every time the machine is switched on. | |
| 1 | FC:F:RE | |
| 2 | FC:F:RO | |
| 3 | FC:L:RE | |
| 4 | FC:L:RO | |
| 5 | BK:F:RE | |
| 6 | BK:F:RO | |
| 7 | BK:L:RE | |
| 8 | BK:L:RO | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4632 | Gain Adj Value:G **DFU** | |
| | When switched on, this SP displays the current range for E (EVEN) or O (ODD) gain of GREEN or B/W in the ASCI on the SBU after white level adjustment every time the machine is switched on. | |
| 1 | FC:F:GE | |
| 2 | FC:F:GO | |
| 3 | FC:L:GE | |
| 4 | FC:L:GO | |
| 5 | BK:F:GE | |
| 6 | BK:F:GO | |
| 7 | BK:L:GE | |
| 8 | BK:L:GO | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4633 | Gain Adj Value:B **DFU** | |
| | When switched on, this SP displays the current range for E (EVEN) or O (ODD) gain of GREEN or B/W in the ASCI on the SBU after white level adjustment every time the machine is switched on. | |
| 1 | FC:F:BE | |
| 2 | FC:F:BO | |
| 3 | FC:L:BE | |
| 4 | FC:L:BO | |
| 5 | BK:F:BE | |
| 6 | BK:F:BO | |
| 7 | BK:L:BE | |
| 8 | BK:L:BO | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4641 | LoopNumber:WhiteLevel **DFU** | |
| | Displays the number of loops done color correction for AGC (Automatic Gain Correction) during white level adjustment. | |
| 1 | FC | [0 to 1023/1] |
| 2 | BK | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4646 | ErrorFlag:Auto-Adj Scanner **DFU** | |
| | This SP sets the error flag to display as the SBU is updated automatically when the machine is switched on. | |
| 1 | Gain1:First | |
| 2 | Gain1:Last | |
| 3 | Gain2:First | |
| 4 | Gain2:Last | |
| 5 | Black Level :first :FC | |
| 6 | Black Level :Last :FC | |
| 7 | Black Level :first :BK | |
| 8 | Black Level :Last :BK | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4647 | ErrorFlag:Scanner Hardware **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4677 | Gain Range Adj Value:R **DFU** |
| 4678 | Gain Range Adj Value:G **DFU** |
| 4679 | Gain Range Adj Value:B **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4680 | Gain Adj Value: R **DFU** |
| 4681 | Gain Adj Value: G **DFU** |
| 4682 | Gain Adj Value: B **DFU** |
| | When switched on, these SP codes display the settings done at the factory for Red (Green, Blue) O (ODD) and E (EVEN) gain in the ASIC on the SBU after white level adjustment every time the machine is switched on. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4690 | White Level Peak Data:R **DFU** |
| 4691 | White Level Peak Data:G **DFU** |
| 4692 | White Level Peak Data:G **DFU** |
| | When switched on, these SP codes display E (EVEN) or O (ODD) for the white level peak Red (Green, Blue) data after white level detection (AGC) after the machine is switched on. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4693 | Black Level Data:R **DFU** |
| 4694 | Black Level Data:G **DFU** |
| 4695 | Black Level Data:G **DFU** |
| | When switched on, these SP codes display E (EVEN) or O (ODD) for the black level check done in the SBU for RED after the machine is switched on. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4800 | DF Density Adj Value **DFU** | |
| | This SP adjusts the white shading parameter for scanning an image with the ADF. Adjusts the density level if the ID of outputs from the DF and Platen mode are different. | |
| 1 | RED | [1 to 200/1] |
| 2 | GREEN | [1 to 200/1] |
| 3 | BLUE | [1 to 200/1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4802 | Scanner Free Run | |
| | This SP sets the scanner in the free run mode for testing. The free run can be set with the exposure lamp off or on. | |
| 1 | DF mode :Lamp Off | Touch [OFF] or [ON] |
| 2 | DF mode :Lamp On | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4804 | Home Position Operation |
| | Touch [Execute] to do the home position operation once. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4806 | FL Correction On/Off **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4808 | Result FL Detection **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4809 | Result FL Correction **DFU** |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4902 | Disp ACC Data | | |
| | This SP outputs the final data read at the end of ACC execution. A zero is returned if there was an error reading the data. | | |
| 1 | R_DATA1 | Photo C Patch Level 1 (8-bit) | [0 to 255/1] |
| 2 | G_DATA1 | Photo M Patch Level 1 (8-bit) | |
| 3 | B_DATA1 | Photo Y Patch Level 1 (8-bit) | |
| 4 | R_DATA2 | Photo C Patch Level 17 (8-bit) | |
| 5 | G_DATA2 | Photo M Patch Level 17 (8-bit) | |
| 6 | B_DATA2 | Photo Y Patch Level 17 (8-bit) | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4904 | Test Scan IPU | |
| | Test Scanner IPU Board<br>This SP tests the components of the BICU:<br>▪ Test 1 performs write and read tests the CPU by conducting a compare check that reads and writes to each register of the ASIC.<br>Test 2 performs a check of the image paths and connections and displays the location of a defect of an error is detected. | |
| 1 | Test 1 | [0 to 65535/1] |
| 2 | Test 2 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4905 | Select Gradation Level |
| | This SP changes the threshold parameters of error diffusion.<br>[0 to 255/1] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4907 | Set SBU Test Pattern |
| | This SP selects the pattern generated by the SBU. |
| | [*0: Normal Scanner Output]<br>[1: Fixed Value Output]<br>[2: Main Scan Grayscale Output]<br>[3: Sub Scan Grayscale Output]<br>[4: Grid Output] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4918 | Man Gamma Adj **DFU** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4948 | ACC Execute Time:Present | |
| 1 | yy/mm/dd | |
| 2 | hh/mm/ss | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4949 | ACC Execute Time:Previous **DFU** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4954 | Read/Restore Std | |
| | Use this SP to calibrate the scanner gamma on each machine connected with the Copier Connection Kit. | |
| 1 | Read New Chart | Reads the "Standard Color Test Chart" to calibrate the scanner gamma curve for two machines connected with the Copier Connection Kit. Do this SP with the test chart on each connected machine. |
| 2 | Recall Prev Chart | Restores the scanner gamma to the previous value (not the factory setting). |
| 3 | Read Std. Chart | |
| 4 | Set Std Chart | |

Group 4000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4991 | Image Path Selection | |
| | Use this SP to use the 10-key pad to enter the number to determine the image path. | |
| | IPU | [0 to 14/1] |
| | 0 | DFID input RGB images (upper 8 bits) |
| | 1 | Synchronous RGB images in DFID |
| | 2 | Data with shading correction on |
| | 3 | Data with shading correction off |
| | 4 | Data before black offset correction |
| | 5 | Data after black offset correction |
| | 6 | Shading data |
| | 7 | Test pattern data (grayscale) |
| | 8 | RGB image after line interval correction |
| | 9 | RGB image after dot correction and pre-gamma |
| | 10 | RGB image after vertiial line correction |
| | 11 | RGB image after scanner gamma correction |
| | 12 | RTB image after filtering with MTF |
| | 13 | RTB image after ADS |
| | 14 | RGB image after color processing |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4993 | High Light Correction **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4994 | Adj Txt/Photo Recognition Level **DFU** |

# 5.6 GROUP 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 5024 | mm/inch Display Selection |
| | Selects the unit of measurement.<br>After selection, turn the main power switch off and on.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: mm<br>1: inch |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5040 | Custom Size: Main Scan |
| | This SP adjusts the width (main scan direction) for custom size paper used with the LCIT D350.<br>[100 to 330.2/**297**/0.1 mm] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5041 | Custom Size: Sub Scan |
| | This SP adjusts the length (sub scan direction) for custom size paper used with the LCIT D350.<br>[139.7 to 482.6/**210**/0.1 mm] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5045 | Accounting Counter |
| | Selects the counting method if the meter charge mode is enabled.<br>**Note**: You can change the setting only one time.<br>[0 to 1/ 1] |
| | 0: Development counter. Shows the total counts for color (Y,M,C) and black (K).<br>1: Paper counter. Shows the total page counts for: Color Total, Black Total, Color Copies, Black Copies, Color Prints, Black Prints. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5047 | Reverse Paper Display |
| | Determines whether the tray loaded with paper printed on one side is displayed.<br>[0 to 1/1] |
| | 0: Not displayed<br>1: Displayed |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5051 | Toner Refill Detection Display **Japan Only** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5055 | Display IP Address |
| | Switches the IP address display on the operation panel on/off.<br>OFF: IP address not displayed on operation panel<br>ON: IP address displayed on operation panel. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5056 | Coverage Counter Display |
| | Display or does not display the coverage counter on the LCD.<br>[0 to 1 / **0** / 1]<br>0: Not displayed, 1: Displayed |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5061 | Toner Remaining Icon Display |
| | This SP switches the toner remaining icon on/off. Default: Off |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5062 | Parts PM Display Setting |
| | This SP switches the PM parts banner display. Default: OFF<br>Touch [ON] then [OK] to enable the PM parts display. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5112 | Non-Std. Paper Sel. |
| | Determines whether a non-standard paper size can be input for the universal cassette trays (Tray 2, Tray 3)<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: No<br>1: Yes. If "1" is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using the UP mode. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5113 | Optional Counter Type |
| 1 | Default Optional Counter Type |
| | Selects the type of counter:<br>0: None<br>1: Key card (RK3, 4) Japan only<br>2: Key card down<br>3: Pre-paid card<br>4: Coin Lock<br>5: MF key card<br>11: Exp Key Card (Add)<br>12: Exp Key Card (Deduct) |
| 2 | External Optional Counter Type |
| | Enables the SDK application. This lets you select a number for the external device for user access control.<br>Note: "SDK" refers to software on an SD card.<br>[0 to 3/1]<br>0: None<br>1: Expansion Device 1<br>2: Expansion Device 2<br>3: Expansion Device 3 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5114 | Optional Counter I/F |
| | This SP sets the machine for use with the optional counter.<br>Default: Off |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5118 | Disable Copying |
| | Temporarily denies access to the machine. **Japan Only**<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Release for normal operation<br>1: Prohibit access to machine |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5120 | Mode Clear Opt. Counter Removal |
| | Do not change. **Japan Only**<br>[0 to 2/1]<br>0: Yes. Normal reset<br>1: Standby. Resets before job start/after completion<br>2: No. Normally no reset |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5121 | Counter Up Timing |
| | Determines whether the optional key counter counts up at paper feed-in or at paper exit. **Japan Only**<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Feed count<br>1: No feed count |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5126 | Set F-Size Document |
| | Set F Original Size Selection<br>Sets the original size that the machine detects for F sizes.<br>[*0: 8½ x 13]<br>[1: Folio 8¼ x 13]<br>[2: F 8 x 13] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5127 | APS Mode |
| | This SP can be used to switch APS (Auto Paper Select) off when a coin lock or pre-paid key card device is connected to the machine.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: On<br>1: Off |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5128 | Code Mode With Key/Card Option **Japan Only** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5131 | Paper Size/Type Selection |
| | Selects the paper size type (for originals and copy paper). (Only needs to be adjusted if the optional printer controller is installed)<br>[0 to 2/1]<br>0: JP (Japan)<br>1: NA (North America)<br>2: EU (Europe)<br>After changing the value, turn the main power switch off and on. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5150 | Bypass Length Setting |
| | Sets up the by-pass tray for long paper.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Off<br>1: On. Sets the tray for feeding paper up to 600 mm long.<br>With this SP selected on, paper jams are not detected in the paper path. |

| 5162 | App. Switch Method |
|---|---|
| | Controls if the application screen is changed with a hardware switch or a software switch.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Soft Key Set<br>1: Hard Key Set |

| 5167 | Fax Printing Mode Optional Counter OFF |
|---|---|
| | Enables or disables automatic print out without an accounting device. This SP is used when the receiving fax is control by an external accounting device.<br>**0**: Automatic printing<br>1: No automatic printing |

| 5165 | Z-Fold Position | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Adjusts the Z-fold position for different paper sizes.<br>Note: In the table below "T" means "SEF" | | | |
| | 1 | A3T | 5 | LGT |
| | 2 | B4T | 6 | LTT |
| | 3 | A4T | 7 | 12x18 |
| | 4 | DLTT | 8 | Other |

| 5169 | CE Login |
|---|---|
| | If you will change the printer bit switches, you must 'log in' to service mode with this SP before you go into the printer SP mode.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Off. Printer bit switches cannot be adjusted.<br>1: On. Printer bit switches can be adjusted. |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 5187 | PM Counter Print Out in UP |
| | This setting determines whether the PM parts counter list is printed with or without the standard values.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: Does not print standard values<br>1: Prints standard values |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5188 | Copy NV Version |
| | Displays the version number of the NVRAM on the controller board. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5191 | Mode Set **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5193 | External Controller Info. Settings **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5195 | Limitless SW DFU **DFU** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5212 | Page Numbering | |
| 3 | Duplex Printout Left/Right Position | Horizontally positions the page numbers printed on both sides during duplexing.<br>[–10 to +10/1 mm]<br>0 is center; minus is left, + is right. |
| 4 | Duplex Printout High/Low Position | Vertically positions the page numbers printed on both sides during duplexing.<br>[–10 to +10/1 mm]<br>0 is center, minus is down, + is up. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5302 | Set Time **DFU** |
| | Sets the time clock for the local time. This setting is done at the factory before delivery. The setting is GMT expressed in minutes.<br>[–1440 to 1440/1 min.]<br>JA: +540 (Tokyo)<br>NA: -300 (NY)<br>EU: +6- (Paris)<br>CH: +480 (Peking)<br>TW: +480 (Taipei)<br>AS: +480 (Hong Kong) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5307 | Summer Time | |
| | Lets you set the machine to adjust its date and time automatically with the change to Daylight Savings time in the spring and back to normal time in the fall. This SP lets you set these items:<br>▪ Day and time to go forward automatically in April.<br>▪ Day and time to go back automatically in October.<br>▪ Set the length of time to go forward and back automatically.<br>The settings for 002 and 003 are done with 8-digit numbers: | |
| | **Digits** | **Meaning** |
| | 1st, 2nd | Month. 4: April, 10: October (for months 1 to 9, the first digit of 0 cannot be input, so the eight-digit setting for 002 or 003 becomes a seven-digit setting) |
| | 3rd | Day of the week. 0: Sunday, 1: Monday |
| | 4th | The number of the week for the day selected at the 3rd digit. If "0" is selected for "Sunday", for example, and the selected Sunday is the start of the 2nd week, then input a "2" for this digit. |
| | 5th, 6th | The time when the change occurs (24-hour as hex code). |

Group 5000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| . | | Example: 00:00 (Midnight) = 00, 01:00 (1 a.m.) = 01, and so on |
| | 7th | The number of hours to change the time. 1 hour: 1 |
| | 8th | If the time change is not a whole number (1.5 hours for example), digit 8 should be 3 (30 minutes). |
| 1 | Setting | Enables/disables the settings for 002 and 003.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Disable<br>1: Enable |
| 2 | Rule Set (Start) | The start of summer time |
| 3 | Rule Set (End) | The end of summer time |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5401* | Access Control **(DFU)** | |
| | This SP stores the settings that limit uses access to SDK application data. | |
| 103 | Default Document ACL | |
| | Whenever a new login user is added to the address book in external certification mode (for Windows, LDAP, RDH), the default document ACL is updated according to this SP setting.<br>[0 to 3 / **0** / 1]<br>0: View<br>1: Edit<br>2: Edit/Delete<br>3: Full control<br>Note: This SP setting is ignored on a machine that is not using document server. | |
| 200 | SDK1 Unique ID | "SDK" is the "Software Development Kit". This data can be converted from SAS (VAS) when installed or uninstalled. **(DFU)** |
| 201 | SDK1 Certification Method | |
| 210 | SDK2 Unique ID | |
| 211 | SDK2 Certification Method | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 220 | SDK3 Unique ID | |
| 221 | SDK3 Certification Method | |
| 230 | SDK certification device | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5404 | User Code Count Clear |
| | Touch [EXECUTE] to clear all user code counters. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5411 | LDAP Certification |
| 4 | Easy Certification<br>Determines whether easy LDAP certification is done.<br>[0 to 1/1/1]<br>1: On<br>0: Off |
| 5 | Password Null Not Permit<br>This SP is referenced only when SP5411-4 is set to "1" (On).<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: Password NULL not permitted.<br>1: Password NULL permitted. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5413 | Lockout Setting |
| 1 | Lockout On/Off<br>Switches on/off the lock on the local address book account.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: Off<br>1: On |
| 2 | Lockout Threshold<br>Sets a limit on the frequency of lockouts for account lockouts.<br>[1 to 10/5/1] |
| 3 | Cancellation On/Off |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| | Determines whether the system waits the prescribed time for input of a correct user ID and password after an account lockout has occurred.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: Off (no wait time, lockout not cancelled)<br>1: On (system waits, cancels lockout if correct user ID and password are entered. |
| 4 | Cancellation Time<br>Determines the length of time that the system waits for correct input of the user ID and password after a lockout has occurred. This setting is used only if SP5413-3 is set to "1" (on).<br>[1 to 999/60/1 min.] |

| 5414 | Access Mitigation |
|---|---|
| 1 | Mitigation On/Off<br>Switches on/off masking of continuously used IDs and passwords that are identical.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: Off<br>1: On |
| 2 | Mitigation Time<br>Sets the length of time for excluding continuous access for identical user IDs and passwords.<br>[0 to 60/15/1 min.] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5415 | Password Attack |
| 1 | Permissible Number<br>Sets the number of attempts to attack the system with random passwords to gain illegal access to the system.<br>[0 to 100/30/1 attempt] |
| 2 | Detect Time<br>Sets the time limit to stop a password attack once such an attack has been detected.<br>[1 to 10/5/1 sec.] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5416 | Access Information |
| 1 | Access User Max Number<br>Limits the number of users used by the access exclusion and password attack detection functions.<br>[50 to 200/200/1 users] |
| 2 | Access Password Max Number<br>Limits the number of passwords used by the access exclusion and password attack detection functions.<br>[50 to 200/200/1 passwords] |
| 3 | Monitor Interval<br>Sets the processing time interval for referencing user ID and password information.<br>[1 to 10/3/1 sec.] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5417 | Access Attack |
| 1 | Access Permissible Number<br>Sets a limit on access attempts when an excessive number of attempts are detected for MFP features.<br>[0 to 500/100/1] |
| 2 | Attack Detect Time |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Sets the length of time for monitoring the frequency of access to MFP features.<br>[10 to 30/10/1 sec.] |
| 3 | Productivity Fall Waite<br>Sets the wait time to slow down the speed of certification when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected.<br>[0 to 9/3/1 sec.] |
| 4 | Attack Max Number<br>Sets a limit on the number of requests received for certification in order to slow down the certification speed when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected.<br>[50 to 200/200/1 attempt] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5420 | User Authentication |
| | These settings should be done with the System Administrator.<br>**Note**: These functions are enabled only after the user access feature has been enabled. |
| 1 | Copy<br>Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the copy applications.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: On<br>1: Off<br>2: Color Security Setting |
| ⇒ 2 | Color Security Setting<br>Bit0: Black& White Mode 1: Enable / 0: Disable (**0**)<br>Bit3: Full Color Mode 1: Enable / 0: Disable (**0**)<br>Bit4: Auto Color Select Mode 1: Enable / 0: Disable (**0**)<br>**NOTE**: Enabling the SP Mode (Value=1) for Bit 4, diables the login dialog for that color. |

⇒

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 11 | Document Server<br>Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the document server.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: On<br>1: Off | |
| 21 | Fax<br>Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the fax application.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: On<br>1: Off | |
| 31 | Scanner<br>Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the scan applications.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: On<br>1: Off | |
| 41 | Printer<br>Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the printer applications.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: On<br>1: Off | |
| 51 | SDK1 | [0 or 1/ **0** / 1] 0: ON. 1: OFF<br>Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the SDK application. |
| 61 | SDK2 | |
| 71 | SDK3 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5481 | Authentication Error Code |
| | These SP codes determine how the authentication failures are displayed. |
| 1 | System Log Disp<br>Determines whether an error code appears in the system log after a user authentication failure occurs.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: Off<br>1: On |
| 2 | Panel Disp<br>Determines whether an error code appears on the operation panel after a user authentication failure occurs.<br>[0 to 1/1/1]<br>1: On<br>0: Off |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5490 | MF Keycard **Japan Only** |
| | Sets up operation of the machine with a keycard.<br>[0 to 1/0/1]<br>0: Disabled. Cancels operation if no code is input.<br>1: Enabled. Allows operation if another code is input and decrements the counter once for use of the entered code. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5501 | PM Alarm |
| | Sets the count level for the PM alarm.<br>[0 to 9999/1]<br>0: Alarm disabled<br>The PM alarm goes off when the print count reaches this value multiplied by 1,000. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5504 | Jam Alarm **Japan Only** |
| 5505 | Error Alarm **Japan Only** |
| 5507 | Supply Alarm **Japan Only** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5508 | CC Call Japan Only | |
| 1 | Jam Remains | Enables/disables initiating a call.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Disable<br>1: Enable |
| 2 | Continuous Jams | |
| 3 | Continuous Door Open | |
| 4 | Low Call Mode | Enables/disables the new call specifications designed to reduce the number of calls.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Normal mode<br>1: Reduced mode |
| 011 | Jam Detection: Time Length | Sets the length of time to determine the length of an unattended paper jam.<br>[03 to 30/1]<br>This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is enabled (set to 1). |
| 012 | Jam Detection Continuous Count | Sets the number of continuous paper jams required to initiate a call.<br>[02 to 10/1]<br>This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is enabled (set to 1). |
| 013 | Door Open: Time Length | Sets the length of time the remains opens to determine when to initiate a call.<br>[03 to 30/1]<br>This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is enabled (set to 1). |

| 5513 | Parts Alarm Level Count Japan Only | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Normal | Sets the parts replacement alarm counter to sound for the number of copies.<br>[1 to 999/1 K] |
| 2 | DF | Sets the parts replacement alarm counter to sound for the number of scanned originals.<br>[1 to 999/1 K] |

| 5514 | Parts Alarm Level | Japan Only |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Normal | |
| 2 | DF | |

| 5610 | Base Gamma Ctrl Pt:Execute **DFU** | |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | Get Factory Default | |
| 5 | Set Factory Default | |
| 6 | Restore Orginal Value | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5611 | Toner Color in 2C **DFU** | |
| | Adjusts the toner ratio between color pairs: Black, Cyan, Magenta, Green, and Yellow. | |
| 1 | B-C | |
| 2 | B-M | |
| 3 | G-C | |
| 4 | G-Y | |
| 5 | R-M | |
| 6 | R-Y | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5618 | Color Mode Display Selection |
| | This SP switches the color display for the operation panel LCD.<br>[0 to 1/1/1]<br>0: Domestic Japan<br>1: Overseas (Outside Japan) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5792 | MCS Debug SW **DFU** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5793 | ECS Debug SW **DFU** |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ⇒ | 5801 | Memory Clear (Refer to **Important Note** in section 3.8.14 NVRAM) | |
| | | Resets NVRAM data to the default settings. Before executing this SP, print an SMC Report. | |
| | 1 | All Clear | Initializes items 2 to 15 below. |
| | 2 | Engine | Initializes all registration settings for the engine and copy process settings. |

Group 5000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | SCS | Initializes default system settings, SCS (System Control Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information. |
| 4 | IMH Memory Clear | Initializes the image file system.<br>(IMH: Image Memory Handler) |
| 5 | MCS | Initializes the automatic delete time setting for stored documents.<br>(MCS: Memory Control Service) |
| 6 | Copier application | Initializes all copier application settings. |
| 7 | Fax application | Not used. |
| 8 | Printer application | Initializes the printer defaults, programs registered, the printer SP bit switches, and the printer CSS counter. |
| 9 | Scanner application | Initializes the defaults for the scanner and all the scanner SP modes. |
| 10 | Web Service/<br>Network application | Deletes the Netfile (NFA) management files and thumbnails, and initializes the Job login ID.<br>Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software |
| 11 | NCS | Initializes the system defaults and interface settings (IP addresses also), the SmartNetMonitor for Admin settings, WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET settings.<br>(NCS: Network Control Service) |
| 14 | Clear DCS Setting | Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings. |
| 15 | Clear UCS Setting | Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings. |
| 16 | MIRS Setting | Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings. |
| 17 | CCS | Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service) settings. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 18 | SRM Memory Check | Initializes the SRM (System Resource Manager) settings. |
| 19 | LCS | Initializes the LCS (Log Count Service) settings. |
| 20 | Web Uapli | Initializes the web user application settings. |
| 21 | ECS | Initializes the ECS settings. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5803 | Input Check |
| | Use these SPs to do the input check for the electrical components of the main machine. |
| 1 | Paper Feed 1 |
| 2 | Paper Feed 2 |
| 3 | Paper Feed 3 |
| 4 | Paper Feed 4 |
| 5 | Paper Feed 5 |
| 6 | Paper Feed 6 |
| 7 | Paper Feed 7 |
| 8 | Paper Trans 1 |
| 9 | Paper Trans 2 |
| 010 | Paper Trans 3 |
| 011 | Paper Trans 4 |
| 012 | Paper Trans 5 |
| 013 | Paper Trans 6 |
| 014 | Drum Mtr Lock |
| 015 | Development Mtr Lock |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 016 | OPC Cleaning Mtr Lock |
| 017 | Other Motor Lock |
| 018 | Fan System 1 |
| 019 | Fan System 1 |
| 020 | Fan System 1 |
| 021 | Fan System 1 |
| 022 | Hi Volt SC 1 |
| 023 | Hi Volt SC 2 |
| 024 | Paper Transfer |
| 025 | Toner Supply |
| 026 | Set Detection |
| 027 | Fusing Temp Detect |
| 028 | Door |
| 029 | Used Toner Trans |
| 030 | Peltier Unit |
| 200 | HP Sensor |
| 202 | Scan Fan Lock Signal |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5804 | Output Check |
| | Use these SPs to do the output check for the electrical components of the main machine. |
| 1 | Fuse Fan: Front NS |
| 2 | Fuse Fan: Front HS |
| 3 | Fuse Fan: Back NS |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4 | Fuse Fan: Back HS |
| 5 | Opt. Fan: Front NS |
| 7 | Opt. Fan: Back NS |
| 9 | Exit Pipe Fan |
| 10 | Sub Fuse Fan: NS |
| 11 | Sub Fuse Fan: HS |
| 14 | Dupx Fan: NS |
| 15 | Dupx Fan: Front: NS |
| 16 | Dupx Fan: Front: HS |
| 17 | Dupx Fan: Back: NS |
| 18 | Dupx Fan: Back: HS |
| 19 | Exit Fan: NS |
| 20 | Exit Fan: HS |
| 21 | PCB Box Fan1:NS |
| 23 | PCB Box Fan2:NS |
| 25 | PSU Fan 1:NS |
| 26 | PSU Fan 1:HS |
| 27 | PSU Fan 2:NS |
| 28 | PSU Fan 2:HS |
| 29 | PT Fan 1:NS |
| 30 | PT Fan 2:NS |
| 31 | Pelt. Cool Fan:NS |
| 32 | Pelt. Cool Fan:HS |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 33 | Potential Sn Fan |
| 34 | Ozone Fan |
| 35 | PCU Fan:Y |
| 36 | PCU Fan:C |
| 37 | PCU Fan:M |
| 38 | PCU Fan:K |
| 39 | PCU Fan:Y:HS |
| 40 | Pelt. Cir. Fan |
| 41 | Sub Hopper CL:Y |
| 42 | Sub Hopper CL:C |
| 43 | Sub Hopper CL:M |
| 44 | Sub Hopper CL:K |
| 45 | Hopper Mtr:Fwd |
| 46 | P.Pump Drv CL:Y |
| 47 | P.Pump Drv CL:C |
| 48 | P.Pump Drv CL:M |
| 49 | P.Pump Drv CL:K |
| 50 | Used Toner Mtr 1 |
| 51 | Used Toner Mtr 2 |
| 52 | Chage dc:Y |
| 53 | Chage dc:C |
| 54 | Chage dc:M |
| 55 | Charge Grid K |

| | |
|---|---|
| 56 | Chage ac:Y |
| 57 | Chage ac:C |
| 58 | Chage ac:M |
| 59 | Charge Wire Current K |
| 60 | Dev dc:Y |
| 61 | Dev dc:C |
| 62 | Dev dc:M |
| 63 | Dev dc:K |
| 64 | Image Transfer:Y |
| 65 | Image Transfer:C |
| 66 | Image Transfer:M |
| 67 | Image Transfer:K |
| 68 | Paper Transfer:- |
| 69 | Paper Transfer:+ |
| 70 | Paper Separate dc |
| 71 | Paper Separate ac |
| 72 | ID Sensor |
| 73 | Potential Sn LED:Front |
| 74 | Potential Sn LED:Center |
| 75 | Potential Sn LED:Rear |
| 76 | QL:Y |
| 77 | QL:C |
| 78 | QL:M |

| | |
|---|---|
| 79 | QL:K |
| 80 | LD:Y |
| 81 | LD:C |
| 82 | LD:M |
| 83 | LD:K |
| 84 | Polygon Mtr |
| 85 | ITB Lift M |
| 86 | ITB Lift Motor FC |
| 95 | Drum Mtr:K |
| 96 | Drum Mtr:M |
| 97 | Drum Mtr:C |
| 98 | Drum Mtr:Y |
| 99 | K Development Mtr |
| 100 | M Development Mtr |
| 101 | C Development Mtr |
| 102 | Y Development Mtr |
| 103 | K Drum Cleaning Mtr |
| 104 | M Drum Cleaning Mtr |
| 105 | C Drum Cleaning Mtr |
| 106 | Y Drum Cleaning Mtr |
| 107 | ITB Motor |
| 108 | PRT Motor |
| 109 | Fusing/Exit M |

| | |
|---|---|
| 110 | Feed Mtr 1 Fwd:Rev2 |
| 111 | Feed Mtr 1 Fwd:Haf2 |
| 112 | Feed Mtr 1 Fwd:Hi2 |
| 113 | Feed Mtr 1 Fwd:Hi2:Haf |
| 114 | Feed Mtr 1 Rev:Nor2 |
| 115 | Feed Mtr 1 Rev:Haf2 |
| 116 | Feed Mtr 2 Fwd:Rev2 |
| 117 | Feed Mtr 2 Fwd:Haf2 |
| 118 | Feed Mtr 2 Fwd:Hi2 |
| 119 | Feed Mtr 2 Fwd:Hi2:Haf |
| 120 | Feed Mtr 2 Rev:Nor2 |
| 121 | Feed Mtr 2 Rev:Haf2 |
| 122 | Feed Mtr 3 Fwd:Rev2 |
| 123 | Feed Mtr 3 Fwd:Haf2 |
| 124 | Feed Mtr 3 Fwd:Hi2 |
| 125 | Feed Mtr 3 Fwd:Hi2:Haf |
| 126 | Feed Mtr 3 Rev:Nor2 |
| 127 | Feed Mtr 3 Rev:Haf2 |
| 128 | Feed Mtr 4 Fwd:Rev2 |
| 129 | Feed Mtr 4 Fwd:Haf2 |
| 130 | Feed Mtr 4 Fwd:Hi2 |
| 131 | Feed Mtr 4 Fwd:Hi2:Haf |
| 132 | Feed Mtr 4 Rev:Nor2 |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 133 | Feed Mtr 4 Rev:Haf2 |
| 134 | Bypass Feed CL |
| 135 | Pickup SOL:Tray 1 |
| 136 | Pickup SOL:Tray 2 |
| 137 | Pickup SOL:Tray 3 |
| 138 | Pickup SOL:Tray 4 |
| 139 | Bypass Pickup SOL |
| 142 | Rev SOL:Tray 1 |
| 143 | Rev SOL:Tray 2 |
| 144 | Rev SOL:Tray 3 |
| 145 | Rev SOL:Tray 4 |
| 146 | Tan Conn Rel SOL |
| 147 | Tan Lock SOL |
| 149 | Tandem Back Fence SOL: F |
| 150 | Tandem Back Fence SOL: R |
| 151 | Relay Mtr:Fwd:Nor2 |
| 152 | Relay Mtr:Fwd:Haf2 |
| 153 | Relay Mtr:Fwd:Hi1 |
| 154 | Relay Mtr:Fwd:Hi1:Haf |
| 155 | Relay Mtr:Rev: Nor2 |
| 156 | Relay Mtr:Rev: Haf2 |
| 157 | Registration Mtr:Nor2 |
| 158 | Registration Mtr:Haf2 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 159 | Guide Rel SOL |
| 160 | Exit JG SOL |
| 161 | Dup/Inv Mtr:Fwd:Nor2 |
| 162 | Dup/Inv Mtr:Fwd:Haf2 |
| 163 | Dup/Inv Mtr:Fwd:Hi2 |
| 164 | Dup/Inv Mtr:Fwd:Hi2:Haf |
| 165 | Dup/Inv Mtr:Rev:Nor2: Tab Shts |
| 166 | Dup/Inv Mtr:Rev:Haf2: Tab Shts |
| 167 | DupTrans Mtr:Fwd:Nor2 |
| 168 | DupTrans Mtr:Fwd:Haf2 |
| 169 | DupTrans Mtr:Fwd:Hi2 |
| 170 | DupTrans Mtr:Fwd:Hi2: Haf |
| 171 | Dup JG SOL |
| 172 | Inv Pos SOL |
| 174 | Dup Jog M:HP Sn |
| 180 | Fan K:Nor |
| 181 | Ozone Fan K:Nor |
| 182 | Ozone Fan K:Haf |
| 183 | Main Fan:Nor |
| 184 | Main Fan:Haf |
| 185 | Dev Fan Y:Nor |
| 186 | Dev Fan C:Nor |
| 187 | Dev Fan M:Nor |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 188 | Dev Fan K:Nor |
| 189 | ITB Clng Fan:Nor |
| 190 | ITB Clng Fan:Haf |
| 195 | Jam LED:Fusing |
| 196 | Jam LED:Exit |
| 200 | Scananer fanmotor |
| 202 | Scananer Lamp |
| 203 | Scanner Motor |
| 205 | Bk Drum Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 206 | M Drum Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 207 | C Drum Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 208 | Y Drum Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 209 | Bk Development Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 210 | M Development Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 211 | C Development Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 212 | Y Development Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 213 | Bk Cleaning Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 214 | M Cleaning Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 215 | C Cleaning Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 216 | Y Cleaning Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 217 | ITB Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 218 | PTR Motor: High Speed 1 |
| 219 | Fusing/Exit Motor: High Speed 1 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 220 | Bk Drum Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 221 | M Drum Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 222 | C Drum Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 223 | Y Drum Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 224 | Bk Development Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 225 | M Development Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 226 | C Development Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 227 | Y Development Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 228 | Bk Cleaning Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 229 | M Cleaning Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 230 | C Cleaning Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 231 | Y Cleaning Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 232 | ITB Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 233 | PTR Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 234 | Fusing/Exit Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 235 | Bk Drum Motor: Half Speed 2 |
| 236 | M Drum Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 237 | C Drum Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 238 | Y Drum Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 239 | Bk Development Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 240 | M Development Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 241 | C Development Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 242 | Y Development Motor: Half Speed 1 |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 243 | Bk Cleaning Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 244 | M Cleaning Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 245 | C Cleaning Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 246 | Y Cleaning Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 247 | ITB Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 248 | PTR Motor: Half Speed 1 |
| 249 | Fusing/Exit Motor: Half Speed 1 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5810 | Cancel Fusing SC |
| | When the machine issues one of the "Level A" SC codes shown below, this indicates a serious problem in the fusing unit. The machine is disabled and the operator cannot reset the SC. The machine requires servicing immediately. Touch [EXECUTE] release the machine for servicing.<br>▪ SC542 – SC545 Heating roller thermistor 1<br>▪ SC547 – Zero Cross<br>▪ SC548 – SC550 Heating roller thermistor 2<br>▪ SC551 – Pressure roller thermistor<br>▪ SC553 – SC555 Pressure roller thermistor<br>▪ SC662 – SC565 Hot roller thermistor |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5811 | Machine Serial |
| | This SP displays the machine serial number. |

| 5812 | Service Tel. No. Setting | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Service | Inputs the telephone number of the CE (displayed when a service call condition occurs.) |
| 2 | Facsimile | Use this to input the fax number of the CE printed on the Counter Report (UP mode). **Not Used** |
| 3 | Supply | Displayed on the initial SP screen. |
| 4 | Operation | Allows the service center contact telephone number to be displayed on the initial screen. |

| 5816 | Remote Service | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | I/F Setting | Turns the remote diagnostics off and on.<br>[0 to 2/1]<br>0: Remote diagnostics off.<br>1: Serial (CSS or NRS) remote diagnostics on.<br>2: Network remote diagnostics. |
| 2 | CE Call | Lets the customer engineer start or end the remote machine check with CSS or NRS; to do this, push the center report key. |
| 3 | Function Flag | Enables and disables remote diagnosis over the NRS network.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Disables remote diagnosis over the network.<br>1: Enables remote diagnosis over the network. |
| 6 | Device Information Call Display | Controls if the item for initial setting of the screen for the NRS device-information notification-call is shown.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Enabled. Item initial setting not shown.<br>1: Disable. Item for initial setting shown. |

Group 5000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | SSL Disable | Controls if RCG (Remote Communication Gate) confirmation is done by SSL during an RCG send for the NRS over a network interface.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Yes. SSL not used.<br>1: No. SSL used. |
| 8 | RCG Connect Timeout | Sets the length of time (seconds) for the time-out when the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) connects during a call via the NRS network.<br>[1 to 90/1 sec.] |
| 9 | RCG Write to Timeout | Sets the length of time (seconds) for the time-out when sent data is written to the RCG during a call over the NRS network.<br>[0 to 100/1 sec.] |
| 010 | RCG Read Timeout | Sets the length of time (seconds) for the timeout when sent data is written from the RCG during a call over the NRS network.<br>[0 to 100/1 sec.] |
| 011 | Port 80 Enable | Controls if permission is given to get access to the SOAP method over Port 80 on the NRS network.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: No. Access denied<br>1: Yes. Access granted. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 021 | RCG – C Registed |
| | This SP displays the embedded RCG-N installation end flag.<br>1: Installation completed<br>2: Installation not completed |
| 022 | RCG – C Registed Detail |
| | This SP displays the RCG device installation status.<br>0: RCG device not registered<br>1: RCG device registered<br>2: Device registered |
| 023 | Connect Type (N/M) |
| | This SP displays and selects the embedded RCG-N connection method.<br>0: Internet connection<br>1: Dial-up connection |
| 061 | Cert. Expire Timing **(DFU)** |
| | Proximity of the expiration of the certification. |
| 062 | Use Proxy |
| | This SP setting determines if the proxy server is used when the machine communicates with the service center. |
| 063 | Proxy Host |
| | This SP sets the address of the proxy server used for communication between the RCG device and the gateway. Use this SP to set up or display the customer proxy server address. The address is necessary to set up the embedded RCG-N.<br>**Note**: The address display is limited to 128 characters. Characters beyond the 128 character are ignored.<br>This address is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 064 | proxy Port Number | |
| | This SP sets the port number of the proxy server used for communication between the embedded RCG-N and the gateway. This setting is necessary to set up the embedded RCG-N.<br>**Note**: This port number is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. | |
| 065 | Proxy User Name | |
| | This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification user name.<br>**Note**: The length of the name is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. | |
| 066 | Proxy Password | |
| | This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification password.<br>**Note**: The length of the password is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. | |
| 067 | CERT: Up State | |
| | Displays the status of the certification update. | |
| | 0 | The certification used by the embedded RCG-N is set correctly. |
| | 1 | The certification request (setAuthKey) for update has been received from the GW URL and certification is presently being updated. |
| | 2 | The certification update is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the successful update. |
| | 3 | The certification update failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failed update. |
| | 4 | The period of the certification has expired and new request for an update is being sent to the GW URL. |
| | 11 | A rescue update for certification has been issued and a rescue |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | certification setting is in progress for the rescue GW connection. |
| | 12 | The rescue certification setting is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the certification update request. |
| | 13 | The notification of the request for certification update has completed successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification update request from the rescue GW URL. |
| | 14 | The notification of the certification request has been received from the rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored. |
| | 15 | The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified of the successful completion of this event. |
| | 16 | The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of this event. |
| | 17 | The certification update request has been received from the GW URL, the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescue certification is being recorded. |
| | 18 | The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update. |
| 068 | CERT: Error | |
| | Displays a number code that describes the reason for the request for update of the certification. | |
| | 0 | Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress. |
| | 1 | Request for certification update in progress. The current certification has expired. |
| | 2 | An SSL error notification has been issued. Issued after the certification has expired. |
| | 3 | Notification of shift from a common authentication to an individual certification. |

Group 5000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | 4 | Notification of a common certification without ID2. |
| | 5 | Notification that no certification was issued. |
| | 6 | Notification that GW URL does not exist. |
| 069 | CERT: Up ID | |
| | The ID of the request for certification. | |
| 083 | Firmware Up Status | |
| | Displays the status of the firmware update. | |
| 084 | Non-HDD Firm Up | |
| | This setting determines if the firmware can be updated, even without the HDD installed. | |
| 085 | Firm Up User Check | |
| | This SP setting determines if the operator can confirm the previous version of the firmware before the firmware update execution. If the option to confirm the previous version is selected, a notification is sent to the system manager and the firmware update is done with the firmware files from the URL. | |
| 086 | Firmware Size | |
| | Allows the service technician to confirm the size of the firmware data files during the firmware update execution. | |
| 087 | CERT: Macro | |
| | Displays the macro version of the @Remote certification | |
| 088 | CERT: PAC | |
| | Displays the PAC version of the @Remote certification. | |
| 089 | CERT: ID2 Code | |
| | Displays ID2 for the @Remote certification. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks (****) indicate that no NRS certification exists. | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 090 | CERT: Subject |
| | Displays the common name of the @Remote certification subject. CN = the following 17 bytes. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks (****) indicate that no DESS exists. |
| 091 | CERT: Serial No. |
| | Displays serial number for the @Remote certification. Asterisks (****) indicate that no DESS exists. |
| 092 | CERT: Issuer |
| | Displays the common name of the issuer of the @Remote certification. CN = the following 30 bytes. Asterisks (****) indicate that no DESS exists. |
| 093 | CERT: Valid Start |
| | Displays the start time of the period for which the current @Remote certification is enabled. |
| 094 | CERT: Valid End |
| | Displays the end time of the period for which the current @Remote certification is enabled. |
| 150 | Selection Country |
| | Select the country where embedded RCG-M is installed in the machine. After selecting the country, you must also set the following SP codes for embedded RCG-M:<br>▪ SP5816-153<br>▪ SP5816-154<br>▪ SP5816-161<br>0: Japan, 1: USA, 2: Canada, 3: UK, 4: Germany, 5: France<br>6: Italy, 7: Netherlands, 8: Belgium, 9: Luxembourg, 10: Spain |

| | |
|---|---|
| 151 | Line type Automatic Judgment |
| | Press [Execute].<br>Setting this SP classifies the telephone line where embedded RCG-M is connected as either dial-up (pulse dial) or push (DTMF tone) type, so embedded RCG-M can automatically distinguish the number that connects to the outside line.<br>▪ The current progress, success, or failure of this execution can be displayed with SP5816-152.<br>▪ If the execution succeeded, SP5816-153 will display the result for confirmation and SP5816-154 will display the telephone number for the connection to the outside line. |
| 152 | Line type Judgment Result |
| | Displays a number to show the result of the execution of SP5816-151. Here is a list of what the numbers mean.<br>0: Success<br>1: In progress (no result yet). Please wait.<br>2: Line abnormal<br>3: Cannot detect dial tone automatically<br>4: Line is disconnected<br>5: Insufficient electrical power supply<br>6: Line classification not supported<br>7: Error because fax transmission in progress – ioctl() occurred.<br>8: Other error occurred<br>9: Line classification still in progress. Please wait. |
| 153 | Selection Dial/push |
| | This SP displays the classification (tone or pulse) of the telephone line to the access point for embedded RCG-M. The number displayed (0 or 1) is the result of the execution of SP5816-151. However, this setting can also be changed manually.<br>[0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step]<br>0: Tone Dialing Phone<br>1: Pulse Dialing Phone |

| | |
|---|---|
| 154 | Outside Line Outgoing Number |
| | The SP sets the number that switches to PSTN for the outside connection for embedded RCG-M in a system that employs a PBX (internal line).<br>▪ If the execution of SP5816-151 has succeeded and embedded RCG-M has connected to the external line, this SP display is completely blank.<br>▪ If embedded RCG-M has connected to an internal line, then the number of the<br>▪ connection to the external line is displayed.<br>▪ If embedded RCG-M has connected to an external line, a comma is displayed with<br>▪ the number. The comma is inserted for a 2 sec. pause.<br>▪ The number setting for the external line can be entered manually (including commas). |
| 155 | Remove Service: PPP Certification Timeout **(SSP)** |
| | Sets the length of the timeout for the embedded RCG-M connection to its access point. The timeout is the time from when the modem sends the ATD to when it receives the result code.<br>[1 to 65536 / **60** / 1 /step] |
| 156 | Dial Up User Name |
| | Use this SP to set a user name for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name:<br>▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters<br>▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks ("). |
| 157 | Dial Up Password |
| | Use this SP to set a password for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name:<br>▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters<br>▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks ("). |

| | |
|---|---|
| 161 | Local Phone Number |
| | Use this SP to set the telephone number of the line where embedded RCG-M is connected. This number is transmitted to and used by the Call Center to return calls.<br>Limit: 24 numbers (numbers only) |
| 162 | Connection Timing Adjustment Incoming |
| | When the Call Center calls out to an embedded RCG-M modem, it sends a repeating ID tone (*#1#). This SP sets the time the line remains open to send these ID tones after the number of the embedded RCG-M modem is dialed up and connected.<br>[0 to 24 / **1** / 1 /step]<br>The actual amount of time is this setting + 2 sec. For example, if you set "2", the line will remain open for 4 sec. |
| 163 | Access Point |
| | This is the telephone number of the dial-up access point for embedded RCG-M. If no setting is done for this SP code, then a preset value (determined by the country selected) is used.<br>Default: 0<br>Allowed: Up to 16 numeral characters |
| 164 | Line Connecting |
| | This SP sets the connection conditions for the customer. This setting dedicates the line to embedded RCG-M only, or sets the line for sharing between embedded RCG-M and a fax unit.<br>[0 or 1 / **0** / - ]<br>0: Line shared by embedded RCG-M/Fax<br>1: Line dedicated to embedded RCG-M only<br>▪ If this setting is changed, the copier must be cycled off and on.<br>▪ SP5816-187 determines whether the off-hook button can be used to interrupt an embedded RCG-M transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 173 | Modem serial No. | |
| | This SP displays the serial number registered for the embedded RCG-M. | |
| 174 | Retransmission Limit | |
| | Normally, it is best to allow unlimited time for certification and ID2 update requests, and for the notification that the certification has been completed. However, embedded RCGM generates charges based on transmission time for the customer, so a limit is placed upon the time allowed for these transactions. If these transactions cannot be completed within the allowed time, do this SP to cancel the time restriction. | |
| 186 | RCG - C M Debug Bit SW | |
| | | |
| 187 | FAX TX Priority | |
| | This SP determines whether pushing the off-hook button will interrupt an embedded RCGM transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction. This SP can be used only if SP5816-164 is set to "0".<br>[0 or 1/ **0** / - ]<br>0: Disable. Setting the fax unit off-hook does not interrupt a fax transaction in progress. If the off-hook button is pushed during a embedded RCG-M transmission, the button must be pushed again to set the fax unit on-hook after the embedded RCG-M transmission has completed.<br>1: Enable. When embedded RCG-M shares a line with a fax unit, setting the fax unit off-hook will interrupt a embedded RCG-M transmission in progress and open the line for a fax transaction. | |
| 200 | Manual Polling | |
| | No information is available at this time. | |
| 201 | Regist: Status | |
| | Displays a number that indicates the status of the @Remote service device. | |
| | 0 | Neither the registered device by the external nor embedded RCG device is set. |

Group 5000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | 1 | The embedded RCG device is being set. Only Box registration is completed. In this status, this unit cannot answer a polling request from the external RCG. |
| | 2 | The embedded RCG device is set. In this status, the external RCG unit cannot answer a polling request. |
| | 3 | The registered device by the external RCG is being set. In this status the embedded RCG device cannot be set. |
| | 4 | The registered module by the external RCG has not started. |
| 202 | Letter Number | |
| | Allows entry of the number of the request needed for the embedded RCG. | |
| 203 | Confirm Execute | |
| | Executes the inquiry request to the @Remote Gate Way URL. | |
| 204 | Confirm Result | |
| | Displays a number that indicates the result of the inquiry executed with SP5816-203. | |
| | 0 | Succeeded |
| | 1 | Inquiry number error |
| | 2 | Registration in progress |
| | 3 | Proxy error (proxy enabled) |
| | 4 | Proxy error (proxy disabled) |
| | 5 | Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) |
| | 6 | Communication error |
| | 7 | Certification update error |
| | 8 | Other error |
| | 9 | Inquiry executing |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 205 | Confirm Place | | |
| | Displays the result of the notification sent to the device from the GW URL in answer to the inquiry request. Displayed only when the result is registered at the GW URL. | | |
| 206 | Register Execute | | |
| | Executes "Embedded RCG Registration". | | |
| 207 | Register Result | | |
| | Displays a number that indicates the registration result. | | |
| | 0 | Succeeded | |
| | 2 | Registration in progress | |
| | 3 | Proxy error (proxy enabled) | |
| | 4 | Proxy error (proxy disabled) | |
| | 5 | Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) | |
| | 6 | Communication error | |
| | 7 | Certification update error | |
| | 8 | Other error | |
| | 9 | Registration executing | |
| 208 | Error Code | | |
| | Displays a number that describes the error code that was issued when either SP5816 204 or SP5816 207 was executed. | | |
| | **Cause** | **Code** | **Meaning** |
| | Illegal Modem Parameter | -11001 | Chat parameter error |
| | | -11002 | Chat execution error |
| | | -11003 | Unexpected error |

Group 5000

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Operation Error, Incorrect Setting | -12002 | Inquiry, registration attempted without acquiring device status. |
| | | -12003 | Attempted registration without execution of an inquiry and no previous registration. |
| | | -12004 | Attempted setting with illegal entries for certification and ID2. |
| | | -12005 | @Remove communication prohibited |
| | | -12006 | Confirmation requested again after confirmation completed. |
| | | -12007 | Different numbers were used for registration and confirmation. |
| | | -12008 | Update certification failed because device was in use. |
| | Error Caused by Response from GW URL | -2385 | Attempted dial up overseas without the correct international prefix for the telephone number. |
| | | -2387 | Not supported at the Service Center |
| | | -2389 | Database out of service |
| | | -2390 | Program out of service |
| | | -2391 | Two registrations for same device |
| | | -2392 | Parameter error |
| | | -2393 | External RCG not managed |
| | | -2394 | Device not managed |
| | | -2395 | Box ID for external RCG is illegal |
| | | -2396 | Device ID for external RCG is illegal |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | -2397 | Incorrect ID2 format |
| | | -2398 | Incorrect request number format |
| 209 | Inst Clear | | |
| | Releases the machine from its embedded RCG setup. | | |
| 250 | CommLog Print | | |
| | Prints the communication log. | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5824 | NVRAM Data Upload (Refer to **Important Note** in section 3.8.14 NVRAM) |
| | Set the SD card in the **Slot 1 (lower slot)** then touch [EXECUTE] to upload the NVRAM data to an SD card.<br>**Note:** When uploading in this SP mode data, the front door must be open. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5825 | NVRAM Data Download |
| | Set the SD card in **Slot 1 (lower slot)** then touch [EXECUTE] to download data from the card to the NVRAM in the machine. After downloading is completed, remove the card and turn the machine power off and on. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5828 | Network Setting |
| 1 | IPv4 Address (Ethernet/IEEE 802.11) |
| | This SP allows you to confirm and reset the IPv4 address for Ethernet and wireless LAN (802.11): aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd |
| 2 | IPv4 Subnet Mask (Ethernet/IEEE 802.11) |
| | This SP allows you to confirm and reset the IPv4 subnet mask for Ethernet and wireless LAN (802.11): aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd |
| 3 | IPv4 default Gateway<br>(Ethernet/IEEE 802.11) |

Group 5000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | This SP allows you to confirm and reset the IPv4 default gateway used by the network for Ethernet and wireless LAN (802.11): aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd | |
| 6 | DHCP (Ethernet/IEEE 802.11) | |
| | This SP code allows you confirm and change the setting that determines whether the IP address is used with DHCP on an Ethernet or wireless (802.11) LAN network.<br>[0 to 1 / **1** / 1]<br>0: Not used (manual setting)<br>1: Used | |
| 021 | Active IPv4 Address | |
| | This SP allows you to confirm the IPv4 address that was used when the machine started up with DHCP. | |
| 022 | Active IPv4 Subnet Mask | |
| | This SP allows you to confirm the IPv4 subnet mask setting that was used when the machine started up with DHCP. | |
| 023 | Active IPv4 Gateway Address | |
| | This SP allows you to confirm the IPv4 default gateway setting that was used when the machine started up with DHCP. | |
| 050 | 1284 Compatibility (Centro) | Enables and disables bi-directional communication on the parallel connection between the machine and a computer.<br>[0 to 1 / **1** / 1 ]<br>0:Off, 1: On |
| 052 | ECP (Centro) | Disables and enables the ECP feature (1284 Mode) for data transfer.<br>[0 to 1 / **1** / 1]<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled |
| 065 | Job Spooling | Switches the job spooling on and off.<br>[0 to 1 / **0** / 1]<br>0: No spooling, 1: Spooling enabled |

<table>
<tr><td>066</td><td>Job Spooling Clear: Start Time</td><td colspan="3">This SP determines whether the job interrupted at power off is resumed at the next power on. This SP operates only when SP5828-065 is set to "1".<br>[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]<br>1: Resumes printing spooled jog.<br>0: Clears spooled job.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">069</td><td colspan="2">Job Spooling (Protocol)</td><td colspan="2">This SP determines whether job spooling is enabled or disabled for each protocol. This is a 8-bit setting.<br>[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]<br>0: No spooling, 1: Spooling enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>LPR</td><td>4</td><td>BMLinks (Japan Only)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>FTP (Not Used)</td><td>5</td><td>DIPRINT</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>IPP</td><td>6</td><td>Reserved (Not Used)</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>SMB</td><td>7</td><td>Reserved (Not Used)</td></tr>
<tr><td>090</td><td>TELNET<br>(0:OFF 1:ON)</td><td colspan="3">Disables or enables Telnet operation. If this SP is disabled, the Telnet port is closed.<br>[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]<br>0: Disable, 1: Enable</td></tr>
<tr><td>091</td><td>Web<br>(0:OFF 1:ON)</td><td colspan="3">Disables or enables the Web operation.<br>[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]<br>0: Disable, 1: Enable</td></tr>
<tr><td>145</td><td>Active IPv6 Link Local Address</td><td colspan="3">This is the IPv6 local address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11) in the format: "Link-Local address" + "Prefix Length"<br>The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. These notations can be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses " below this table.</td></tr>
</table>

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 147 | Active IPv6 Stateless Address 1 | These SPs are the IPv6 stateless addresses (1 to 5) referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format:<br>"Stateless Address" + "Prefix Length"<br>The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. |
| 149 | Active IPv6 Stateless Address 2 | |
| 151 | Active IPv6 Stateless Address 3 | |
| 153 | Active IPv6 Stateless Address 4 | |
| 155 | Active IPv6 Stateless Address 5 | |
| 156 | IPv6 Manual Address | |
| | This SP is the IPv6 manually set address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11) in the format:<br>"Manual Set Address" + "Prefix Length"<br>The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. These notations can be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses" below this table. | |
| 158 | IPv6 Gateway | |
| | This SP is the IPv6 gateway address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11). The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. These notations can be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses" below this table. | |

**Note: IPV6 Addresses**

Ethernet and the Wireless LAN (802.11) reference the IPV6 "Link-Local address + Prefix Length". The IPV6 address consists of 128 bits divided into 8 blocks of 16 bits:

aaaa:bbbb:cccc:dddd:eeee:ffff:gggg:hhhh:

The prefix length is inserted at the 17th byte (Prefix Range: 0x0 to 0x80). The initial setting is 0x40 (64).

For example, the data: "2001123456789012abcdef012345678940h" is expressed:

"2001:1234:5678:9012:abcd:ef01:2345:6789": prefixlen 64

However, the actual IPV6 address display is abbreviated according to the following rules.

**Rules for Abbreviating IPV6 Addresses**

The IPV6 address is expressed in hexadecimal delimited by colons (:) with the following characters:

0123456789abcdefABCDEF

1. A colon is inserted as a delimiter every 4th hexadecimal character.
   fe80:0000:0000:0000:0207:40ff:0000:340e
2. The notations can be abbreviated by eliminating zeros where the MSB and digits following the MSB are zero. The example in "2" above, then, becomes
   fe80:0:0:0207:40ff:0:340e
3. Sections where only zeros exist can be abbreviated with double colons (::). This abbreviation can be done also where succeeding sections contain only zeros (but this can be done only at one point in the address). The example in "2" and "3" above then becomes:
   fe80::207:40ff:0:340e (only the first null sets zero digits are abbreviated as "::")
   -or-
   fe80:0:0:0:207:40ff::340e (only the last null set before "340e" is abbreviated as "::")

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 161 | IPv6 Stateless Auto Setting | Enable or disables the automatic setting for IPv6 stateless. |
| 236 | Web Item visible | |
| | Displays or does not display the Web system items.<br>[0 x 0000 to 0 x ffff / **0 x ffff**] 0: Not displayed, 1: Displayed<br>bit0: Net RICOH<br>bit1: Consumable Supplier<br>bit2-15: Reserved (all) | |
| 237 | Web shopping link visible | |
| | Displays or does not display the link to Net RICOH on the top page and link page of the web system.<br>[0 to 1 / **1** / 1]<br>0: Not display, 1:Display | |

Group 5000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 238 | Web supplies Link visible | |
| | Displays or does not display the link to Consumable Supplier on the top page and link page of the web system.<br>[0 to 1 / **1** / 1]<br>0: Not display, 1:Display | |
| 239 | Web Link1 Name | |
| | This SP confirms or changes the URL1 name on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL name are 31 characters. | |
| 240 | Web URL | |
| | This SP confirms or changes the link to URL1 on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL are 127 characters. | |
| 241 | Web visible | |
| | Displays or does not display the link to URL1 on the top page of the web system.<br>[0 to 1 / **1** / 1]<br>0: Not display, 1:Display | |
| 242 | Web Link2 Name | Same as "-239" |
| 243 | Web Link2 URL | Same as "-240" |
| 244 | Web Link2 visible | Same as "-241" |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5832 | HDD | HDD Formatting |
| | Enter the SP number for the partition to initialize, then press #. When the execution ends, cycle the machine off and on. | |
| 1 | HDD Formatting (All) | |
| 2 | HDD Formatting (IMH) | |
| 3 | HDD Formatting (Thumbnail) | |
| 4 | HDD Formatting (Job Log) | |
| 5 | HDD Formatting (Printer Fonts) | |
| 6 | HDD Formatting (User Info.) | |
| 7 | Mail RX Data | |
| 8 | Mail TX Data | |
| 9 | HDD Formatting (Log) | |
| 10 | HDD Formatting (Log) | |
| 11 | HDD Formatting (Ridoc I/F DeskTopBinder) | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5833 | e-Cabinet Enable |
| | Enables the e-Cabinet function. Then, the user names in the cabinet are enabled for use with the POP server.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5836 | Capture Setting | |
| 1 | Capture Function (0:Off 1:On)<br>With this function disabled, the settings related to the capture feature cannot be initialized, displayed, or selected.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Disable<br>1: Enable | |
| 2 | Panel Setting | |
| | Determines whether each capture related setting can be selected or updated from the initial system screen.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Disable<br>1: Enable<br>The setting for SP5836-001 has priority. | |
| 3 | Print Backup Function (0:Off 1:On)<br>Turns the print backup feature on and off. Default: 0 (Off)<br>When this feature is on, the print backup features are shown in the initial system settings. Enabled only when optional File Format Converter (MLB:Media Link Board) is installed.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Disable<br>1: Enable | |
| 071 | Reduction for Copy Color | [0 to 3/1]<br>0:1, 1:1/2, 2:1/3, 3:1/4 **DFU** |
| 072 | Reduction for Copy B&W Text | [0 to 6/1]<br>0:1, 1:1/2, 2:1/3, 3:1/4, 6:2/3 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 073 | Reduction for Copy B&W Other | [0 to 6/1]<br>0:1, 1:1/2, 2:1/3, 3:1/4, 6:2/3 |
| 074 | Reduction for Printer Color | [0 to 3/1]<br>0:1, 1:1/2, 2:1/3, 3:1/4, **DFU** |
| 075 | Reduction for Printer B&W | [0 to 6/1]<br>0:1, 1:1/2, 2:1/3, 3:1/4, 6:2/3 |
| 076 | Reduction for Printer B&W HQ | [1 to 5/1]<br>1:1/2, 3:1/4, 4:1/6, 5:1/8 |
| 077 | Reduction for Printer Col 1200 dpi | |
| 078 | Reduction for Printer B&W 1200 dpi | |
| 081 | Format for Copy Color | [0 to 3/1]<br>0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR **DFU** |
| 082 | Format for Copy B&W Text | [0 to 3/1]<br>0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR |
| 083 | Format Copy B&W Other | [0 to 3/1]<br>0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR |
| 084 | Format for Printer Color | [0 to 3/1]<br>0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR **DFU** |
| 085 | Format for Printer B&W | [0 to 3/1]<br>0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 086 | Format for Printer B&W HQ | [0 to 3/1]<br>0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR |
| 091 | Default for JPEG | [5 to 95/1] |
| | Sets the JPEG format default for documents sent to the document management server with the MLB, with JPEG selected as the format. Enabled only when optional File Format Converter (MLB: Media Link Board) is installed. | |
| 092 | High Quality for JPEG | Sets the quality level of JPEG images for high quality sent to the Document Server with the MLB (Media Link Board). [5 to 95/1] |
| 093 | Low Quality for JPEG | Sets the quality level of JPEG images for low quality sent to the Document Server with the MLB (Media Link Board). [5 to 95/1] |
| 094 | Default Format for Backup Files | |
| | Sets the format of the backup files.<br>[0 to 2/1]<br>0: TIFF<br>1: JPEG<br>2: For printing<br>This feature can be selected only if SP5836-3 is set to "1". | |
| 095 | Default Resolution for Backup Files | Sets the resolution conversion ratio for the backup files.<br>[0 to 3/1]<br>0: 1x<br>1: 1/2x<br>2: 1/3 x<br>3: 1/4x |
| 097 | Default Compression for Backup Files | Sets the rate of compression for the backup files.<br>[0 to 2/1]<br>0: Standard<br>1: Low<br>2: High |

| | |
|---|---|
| 098 | Back Projection Removal |
| | Removes the ghost images that are copied from the back sides of two-sided originals.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Disable<br>1: Enable |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5840 | IEEE 802.11 | |
| 6 | Channel MAX | |
| | Sets the maximum range of the bandwidth for the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries.<br>[1 to 14/1] | |
| 7 | Channel MIN | |
| | Sets the minimum range of the bandwidth for operation of the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries.<br>[1 to 14/1] | |
| 8 | Transmission Speed | [0 x 00 to 0 x FF / **0 x FF to Auto** / -] |
| | **0 x FF to Auto** [Default]<br>0 x 11 – 55M Fix<br>0 x 10 – 48M Fix<br>0 x 0F – 36M Fix<br>0 x 0E – 18M Fix<br>0 x 0D – 12M Fix<br>0 x 0B – 9M Fix<br>0 x 0A – 6M Fix | 0 x 07 – 11M Fix<br>0 x 05 – 5.5M Fix<br>0 x 08 – 1M Fix<br>0 x 13 – 0 x FE (reserved)<br>0 x 12 – 72M (reserved)<br>0 x 09 – 22M (reserved) |
| 11 | WEP Key Select | |
| | Determines how the initiator (SBP-2) handles subsequent login requests.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: If the initiator receives another login request while logging in, the request is refused. | |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| | 1: If the initiator receives another login request while logging in, the request is refused and the initiator logs out.<br>**Note:** Displayed only when the wireless LAN card is installed. |
| 42 | Fragment Thresh |
| | Adjusts the fragment threshold for the IEEE802.11 card.<br>[256 to 2346 / **2346** / 1]<br>This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed. |
| 43 | 11g CTS to Self |
| | Determines whether the CTS self function is turned on or off.<br>[0 to 1 / **1** / 1] 0: Off, 1: On<br>This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed. |
| 44 | 11g Slot Time |
| | Selects the slot time for IEEE802.11.<br>[0 to 1 / **0** / 1] 0: 20 μm, 1: 9 μm<br>This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed. |
| 45 | WPA Debug Lvl |
| | Selects the debug level for WPA authentication application.<br>[1 to 3 / **3** / 1] 1: Info, 2: warning, 3: error<br>This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5841 | Supply Name Setting | |
| | Press the User Tools key. These names appear when the user presses the Inquiry button on the User Tools screen. | |
| 1 | Toner Name Setting: Black | |
| 2 | Toner Name Setting: Cyan | |
| 3 | Toner Name Setting:<br>Yellow | |
| 4 | Toner Name Setting: | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Magenta | |
| 011 | StapleStd1 | |
| 012 | StapleStd2 | |
| 013 | StapleStd3 | Standard Staples for D373/D374 |
| 014 | StapleStd4 | |
| 021 | StapleBind1 | |
| 022 | StapleBind2 | Booklet Staples for D374 |
| 023 | StapleBind3 | |

| 5842 | GWWS Analysis **DFU** | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | This is a debugging tool. It sets the debugging output mode of each Net File process.<br>Bit SW 0011 1111 | Bit | Groups |
| 0 | | System & other groups (LSB) | |
| 1 | | Capture related | |
| 2 | | Authentication related | |
| 3 | | Address book related | |
| 4 | | Machine management related | |
| 5 | | Output related (printing, delivery) | |
| 6 | | Repository related | |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 5844 | USB |
| 1 | Transfer Rate |
| | Sets the speed for USB data transmission.<br>[Full Speed]<br>[Auto Change] |
| 2 | Vendor ID |
| | Sets the vendor ID:<br>Initial Setting: 0x05A Ricoh Company<br>[0x0000 to 0xFFFF/1] **DFU** |
| 3 | Product ID |
| | Sets the product ID.<br>[0x0000 to 0xFFFF/1] **DFU** |
| 4 | Device Release Number |
| | Sets the device release number of the BCD (binary coded decimal) display.<br>[0000 to 9999/1] **DFU**<br>Enter as a decimal number. NCS converts the number to hexadecimal number recognized as BCD. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5845 | Delivery Server Setting |
| | These are delivery server settings. |
| 1 | FTP Port No. |
| | [0 to 65535/1] |
| 2 | IP Address |
| | Use this SP to set the Scan Router Server address. The IP address under the transfer tab can be used with the initial system setting.<br>[0 to FFFFFFFF/1] |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6 | Delivery Error Display Time<br>Use this setting to set the length of time that the message is shown when a test error occurs during document transfer with the NetFile application and an external device.<br>[0 to 999/1] |
| 8 | IP Address (Secondary)<br>Sets the IP address that is given to the computer that is the secondary delivery server for Scan Router. This SP lets you set only the IP address, and does not refer to the DNS setting. |
| 9 | Delivery Server Model<br>Lets you change the model of the delivery server that is registered by the I/O device.<br>[0 to 4/1]<br>0: Unknown<br>1: SG1 Provided<br>2: SG1 Package<br>3: SG2 Provided<br>4: SG2 Package |
| 010 | Delivery Svr. Capability<br>Changes the functions that the registered I/O device can do.<br>[0 to 255/1]<br>Bit7 = 1 Comment information exits<br>Bit6 = 1 Direct specification of mail address possible<br>Bit5 = 1 Mail RX confirmation setting possible<br>Bit4 = 1 Address book automatic update function exists<br>Bit3 = 1 Fax RX delivery function exists<br>Bit2 = 1 Sender password function exists<br>Bit1 = 1 Function to link MK-1 user and Sender exists<br>Bit0 = 1 Sender specification required (if set to 1, Bit6 is set to "0") |

| | |
|---|---|
| 011 | Delivery Svr.Capability (Ext) |
| | These settings are for future use. They will let you increase the number of registered devices (in addition to those registered for SP5845 010).<br>There are eight bits (Bit 0 to Bit 7). All are unused at this time. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 013 | Server Scheme (Primary) | |
| 014 | Server port Number (Primary) | [1 to 65535 / **80** / 1] |
| 015 | Server URL Path (Primary) | |
| 016 | Server Scheme (secondary) | |
| 017 | Server Port (Secondary) | [1 to 65535 / **80** / 1] |
| 018 | Server URL Path (Secondary) | |
| 019 | Capture Server Port Number | |
| 020 | Capture Server URL Path | [1 to 65535 / **80** /1] |
| 021 | Capture Server URL Path | |
| | These SPs (5845-013/014/015/016/017/018/019/020/021) listed above are used for the scan router program. | |
| 022 | Rapid Sending Control | [0 to 1 / **0** / -]<br>0: Disable, 1: Enable |
| | Enables or disables the prevention function for the continuous data sending error. | |

| 5846* | UCS Setting |
|---|---|
| 1 | Machine ID (for Delivery Server) |
| | Displays the unique device ID in use by the delivery server directory.<br>▪ The value is only displayed and cannot be changed.<br>▪ This ID is created from the NIC MAC or IEEE 1394 EUI.<br>▪ The ID is displayed as either 6-byle or 8-byte binary. |
| 2 | Machine ID Clear (for Delivery Server) |
| | Clears the unique ID of the device used as the name in the file transfer directory. Execute this SP if the connection of the device to the delivery server is unstable. After clearing the ID, the ID will be established again automatically by cycling the machine off and on. |
| 3 | Maximum Entries |
| | Changes the maximum number of entries that UCS can handle.<br>[2000 to 20000 / **2000** / 1 step]<br>If a value smaller than the present value is set, the UCS managed data is cleared, and the data (excluding user code information) is displayed. |
| 6 | Delivery Server Retry Timer |
| | Sets the interval for retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book.<br>[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 step]<br>0: No retries |
| 7 | Delivery Server Retry Times |
| | Sets the number of retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book.<br>[0 to 255 / **0** / 1step] |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Delivery Server Maximum Entries |
| 8 | Lets you set the maximum number of account entries and information about the users of the delivery server controlled by UCS.<br>[20000 to 20000 / **2000** / 1 step] |
| | LDAP Search Timeout |
| 010 | Sets the length of the time-out for the search of the LDAP server.<br>[1 to 255 / **60** /1 step] |
| | Addr Book Migration (USB -> HDD) |
| 040 | This SP moves the address book data from the SD card or flash ROM on the controller board to the HDD. You must cycle the machine off and on after executing this SP.<br>1. Turn the machine off.<br>2. Install the HDD.<br>3. Turn the machine on.<br>4. Do SP5846 040.<br>5. Turn the machine off/on.<br>**Note**: Executing this SP overwrites any address book data already on the HDD with the data from the flash ROM on the controller board.<br>We recommend that you back up all directory information to an SD card with SP5846-051 before you execute this SP.<br>After the address book data is copied to HDD, all the address book data is deleted from the flash ROM. If the operation fails, the data is not erased from the flash ROM. |
| 041 | Fill Addr Acl Info. |
| | This SP must be executed immediately after installation of an HDD unit in a basic machine that previously had no HDD. The first time the machine is powered on with the new HDD installed, the system automatically takes the address book from the NVRAM and writes it onto the new HDD. However, the new address book on the HDD can be accessed only by the system administrator at this stage. Executing this SP by the service technician immediately after power on grants full address book access to all users. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Procedure**<br>1. Turn the machine off.<br>2. Install the new HDD.<br>3. Turn the machine on.<br>4. The address book and its initial data are created on the HDD automatically. However, at this point the address book can be accessed by only the system administrator or key operator.<br>5. Enter the SP mode and do SP5846 041. After this SP executes successfully, any user can access the address book. | |
| 043 | Addr Book Media | |
| | Displays the slot number where an address book data is in.<br>[0 to 30 / **-** /1] | |
| | 0: Unconfirmed<br>1: SD Slot 1<br>2: SD Slot 2<br>4: USB Flash ROM | 20: HDD<br>30: Nothing |
| 047 | Initialize Local Address Book | |
| | Clears all of the address information from the local address book of a machine managed with UCS. | |
| 048 | Initialize Delivery Addr Book | |
| | Push [Execute] to delete all items (this does not include user codes) in the delivery address book that is controlled by UCS. | |
| 049 | Initialize LDAP Addr Book | |
| | Push [Execute] to delete all items (this does not include user codes) in the LDAP address book that is controlled by UCS. | |
| 050 | Initialize All Addr Book | |
| | Clears everything (including users codes) in the directory information managed by UCS. However, the accounts and passwords of the system administrators are not deleted. | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 051 | Backup All Addr Book | |
| | Copies all directory information to the SD card. Do this SP before replacing the controller board or HDD. The operation may not succeed if the controller board or HDD is damaged. | |
| 052 | Restore All Addr Book | |
| | Copies back all directory information from the SD card to the flash ROM or HDD. Upload the address book from the old flash ROM or HDD with SP5846-51 before removing it. Do SP5846 52 after installing the new HDD. | |
| 053 | Clear Backup Info. | |
| ⇒ | Deletes the address book uploaded from the SD card in **Slot 1 (lower slot)**t. Deletes only the files uploaded for that machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected.<br>Note: After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, turn the power off. Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing. | |
| 060 | Search Option | |
| | This SP uses bit switches to set up the fuzzy search options for the UCS local address book. | |
| | **Bit** | **Meaning** |
| | 0 | Checks both upper/lower case characters |
| | 1 | **Japan Only** |
| | 2 | |
| | 3 | |
| | 4 | --- Not Used --- |
| | 5 | --- Not Used --- |
| | 6 | --- Not Used --- |
| | 7 | --- Not Used --- |

| | |
|---|---|
| 062 | Complexity Option 1 |
| | Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to upper case and sets the length of the password.<br>[0 to 32 / **0** / 1step]<br>**Note**:<br>▪ This SP does not normally require adjustment.<br>▪ This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. |
| 063 | Complexity Option 2 |
| | Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to lower case and defines the length of the password.<br>[0 to 32 / **0** / 1step]<br>**Note**:<br>▪ This SP does not normally require adjustment.<br>▪ This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. |
| 064 | Complexity Option 3 |
| | Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to numbers and defines the length of the password.<br>[0 to 32 / **0** / 1step]<br>**Note**:<br>▪ This SP does not normally require adjustment.<br>▪ This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. |
| 065 | Complexity Option 4 |
| | Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to symbols and defines the length of the password.<br>[0 to 32 / **0** / 1step] |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Note**:<br>▪ This SP does not normally require adjustment.<br>▪ This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. |
| 091 | FTP Auth Port Setting |
| | Sets the FTP port to get the delivery server address book that is used in the individual authorization mode.<br>[0 to 65535 / **3671** / 1step] |
| 094 | Encryption Start |
| | Shows the status of the encryption function of the address book on the LDAP server.<br>[0 to 255 / 1 ] No default |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 5847 | Rep Resolution Reduction | | |
| | ▪ 5847 1 through 5847 6 changes the default settings of image data sent externally by the Net File page reference function.<br>▪ [0 to 2/1]<br>▪ 5847 21 sets the default for JPEG image quality of image files controlled by NetFile.<br>▪ "NetFile" refers to jobs to be printed from the document server with a PC and the DeskTopBinder software. | | |
| 1 | Rate After Copy Col | [0 to 5/1] | 0: 1x<br>1: 1/2x<br>2: 1/3x<br>3: 1/4x<br>4: 1/6x<br>5: 1/8x<br>6: 2/3x1<br>1: "6: 2/3x" applies to 003, 005, 006 only. |
| 2 | Rate for Copy B&W Text | [0 to 6/1] | |
| 3 | Rate for Copy B&W Other | [0 to 6/1] | |
| 4 | Rate for Printer Color | [0 to 5/1] | |
| 5 | Rate for Printer B&W | [0 to 6/1] | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 021 | Network Quality Default for JPEG |
| | Sets the default value for the quality of JPEG images sent as NetFile pages. This function is available only with the MLB (Media Link Board) option installed.<br>[5 to 95/1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5848* | Web Service | |
| | 5848-2 sets the 4-bit switch assignment for the access control setting. Setting of 0001 has no effect on access and delivery from Scan Router.<br>5848-100 sets the maximum size of images that can be downloaded. The default is equal to 1 gigabyte. | |
| 1 | Access Control.: NetFile (Lower 4 Bits Only) | |
| | Bit switch settings.<br>0000: No access control<br>0001: Denies access to Desk Top Binder. Access and deliveries from Scan Router have no effect on capture. | |
| 2 | Acc. Ctrl.: Repository (only Lower 4 Bits) | 0000: No access control<br>0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder. |
| 3 | Acc. Ctrl.: Doc. Svr. Print (Lower 4 Bits) | Switches access control on and off.<br>0000: OFF, 0001: ON |
| 4 | Acc. Ctrl.: User Directory (Lower 4 Bits) | |
| 5 | Acc. Ctrl.: Delivery Input (Lower 4 Bits) | |
| 7 | Acc. Ctrl Comm. Log Fax (Lower 4 Bits) | |
| 9 | Acc. Ctrl.: Job Control (Lower 4 Bits) | |
| 011 | Acc. Ctrl: Device Management (Lower 4 Bits) | |
| 013 | Acc. Ctrl: Fax (Lower 4 Bits) | |
| 021 | Acc. Ctrl: Delivery (Lower 4 Bits) | |

Group 5000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 022 | Acc. Ctrl: User Administration (Lower 4 Bits) | |
| 041 | Acc. Ctrl: Security Setting (Lower 4 Bits only) | |
| 100 | Repository: Download Image Max. Size | Specified the max size of the image data that the machine can download/ [1 to 1024 / **1024** / 1 K] |
| 201 | Access Ctrl: Regular Trans | |
| | No information is available at this time.<br>0: Not allowed<br>1: Allowed | |
| 210 | Setting: Log Type: Job 1 | |
| | No information is available at this time. | |
| 211 | Setting: Log Type: Job 2 | |
| | No information is available at this time. | |
| 212 | Setting: Log Type: Access | |
| | No information is available at this time. | |
| 213 | Setting: Primary Srv | |
| | No information is available at this time. | |
| 214 | Setting: Secondary Srv | |
| | No information is available at this time. | |
| 215 | Setting: Start Time | |
| | No information is available at this time. | |
| 216 | Setting: Interval Time | |
| | No information is available at this time. | |
| 217 | Setting: Timing | |

| | |
|---|---|
| | No information is available at this time. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5849 | Installation Date |
| | Displays or prints the installation date of the machine. |
| 1 | Display |
| | The "Counter Clear Day" has been changed to "Installation Date" or "Inst. Date". |
| 2 | Switch to Print |
| | Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: No Print<br>1: Print |
| 3 | Total Counter |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5850* | Address Book Function **Japan Only** |
| | The machine is sold ready to use with a G3 line. Touch [Replacement] to switch all at once to convert to G4 after you add a G4 line. Conversely, if for some reason the G4 line becomes unusable, you can easily switch back to G3. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5851* | Bluetooth |
| | Sets the operation mode for the Bluetooth Unit. Press either key.<br>**[0: Public]** / [1: Private] |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 5853 | Stamp Data Download |
| | Touch [EXECUTE] to download the fixed stamp data from the machine ROM onto the hard disk. Then these stamps can be used by the system. If this is not done, the user will not have access to the fixed stamps ("Confidential", "Secret", etc.).<br>You must always execute this SP after replacing the HDD or after formatting the HDD. Always switch the machine off and on after executing this SP. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5856 | Remote ROM Update |
| | When set to "1" allows reception of firmware data via the local port (IEEE 1284) during a remote ROM update. This setting is reset to zero after the machine is cycled off and on. Allows the technician to upgrade the firmware using a parallel cable<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: Not allowed<br>1: Allowed |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5857 | Save Debug Log |
| 1 | On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF) |
| | Switches on the debug log feature. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: OFF<br>1: ON |
| 2 | Target (2: HDD 3: SD Card) |
| | Selects the destination where the debugging information generated by the event selected by SP5858 will be stored if an error is generated<br>[2 to 3 /1] |

| | |
|---|---|
| | 2: HDD<br>3: SD Card |
| 5 | Save to HDD |
| | Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the hard disk. |
| 6 | Save to SD Card |
| | Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the SD Card. |
| 9 | Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB) |
| | Takes the most recent 4 MB of the log written to the hard disk and copies them to the SD Card.<br>A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card. |
| 010 | Copy HDD to SD Card Latest 4 MB (Any Key) |
| | Takes the log of the specified key from the log on the hard disk and copies it to the SD Card.<br>A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4 MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card. This SP does not execute if there is no log on the HDD with no key specified. |
| 011 | Erase HDD Debug Data |
| | Erases all debug logs on the HDD |
| 012 | Erase SD Card Debug Data |
| | Erases all debug logs on the SD Card. If the card contains only debugging files generated by an event specified by SP5858, the files are erased when SP5857 010 or 011 is executed.<br>To enable this SP, the machine must be cycled off and on. |
| 013 | Free Space on SD Card |
| | Displays the amount of space available on the SD card. |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 014 | Copy SD to SD (Latest 4MB) |
| | Copies the last 4MB of the log (written directly to the card from shared memory) onto an SD card. |
| 015 | Copy SD to SD (Latest 4MB Any Key) |
| | This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number. |
| 016 | Make HDD Debug |
| | This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD. |
| 017 | Make SD Debug |
| | This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5858 | Debug Save When | |
| | These SPs select the content of the debugging information to be saved to the destination selected by SP5857 002.<br>SP5858 3 stores one SC specified by number. Refer to Section 4 for a list of SC error codes. | |
| 1 | Engine SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON) | Stores SC codes generated by copier engine errors.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: OFF<br>1: ON |
| 2 | Controller SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON) | Stores SC codes generated by GW controller errors.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: OFF<br>1: ON |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Any SC Error | [0 to 65535/1] |
| 4 | Jam (0:OFF 1:ON) | Stores jam errors.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: OFF<br>1: ON |

| 5859 | Debug Save Key No. | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Key 1 | These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for functions that use common memory on the controller board.<br>[-9999999 to 9999999/1] |
| 2 | Key 2 | |
| 3 | Key 3 | |
| 4 | Key 4 | |
| 5 | Key 5 | |
| 6 | Key 6 | |
| 7 | Key 7 | |
| 8 | Key 8 | |
| 9 | Key 9 | |
| 010 | Key 10 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5860* | SMTP/POP3/IMAP4 |
| 20 | Partial Mail Receive Timeout |
| | [1 to 168 / **72** /1]<br>Sets the amount of time to wait before saving a mail that breaks up during reception. The received mail is discarded if the remaining portion of the mail is not received during this prescribed time. |
| 21 | MDN Response RFC2298 Compliance |
| | Determines whether RFC2298 compliance is switched on for MDN reply mail.<br>[0 to 1 / **1** / 1]<br>0: No, 1: Yes |
| 22 | SMTP Auth. From Field Replacement |
| | Determines whether the FROM item of the mail header is switched to the validated account after the SMTP server is validated.<br>[0 to 1 / **0** / 1]<br>0: No. "From" item not switched.<br>1: Yes. "From" item switched. |
| 25 | SMTP Auth Direct Sending |
| | Select the authentication method for SMPT.<br>Bit 0: LOGIN<br>Bit 1: PLAIN<br>Bit 2: CRAM_MD5<br>Bit 3: DIGEST_MD5<br>Bit 4 to Bit 7: Not Used<br>**Note**: This SP is activated only when SMTP authentication is enabled by UP mode. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | S/MIVE: MIME Header Setting |
| 26 | Selects the MIME header type of an E-mail sent by S/MIME.<br>[0 to 2 / **0** / 1]<br>0: Microsoft Outlook Express standard<br>1: Internet Draft standard<br>2: RFC standard |

| 5866 | E-Mail Report | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Report Validity | Enables or disables the email alert function.<br>[0 or 1 / **0** / – ] 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled |
| 5 | Add Date Field | Adds or does not add the date field to the header of the alert mail.<br>[0 or 1 / **0** / – ]<br>0: Not added, 1: Added |

| 5870 | Common Key Info Writing | |
|---|---|---|
| | Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for NRS specifications. | |
| 1 | Writing | Note: These SPs are for future use and currently are not used. |
| 3 | Initialize | |

| 5873 | SD Card Apli Move | |
|---|---|---|
| | Allows you to move applications from one SD card another. For more, see "Moving Applications to One SD Card" in Section 1. | |
| 1 | Move Exec | Executes the move from one SD card to another. |
| 2 | Undo Exec | This is an undo function. It cancels the previous execution. |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 5875 | SC Auto Reboot |
| | This SP determines whether the machine reboots automatically when an SC error occurs.<br>**Note**: The machine does not rebut for Type A (fatal) SC code errors. |
| 1 | Reboot Setting |
| | [0 to 1/ **0** / 1]<br>0: The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues an SC error and logs the SC error code. If the same SC occurs again, the machine does not reboot.<br>1: The machine does not reboot when an SC error occurs. |
| 2 | Reboot Type |
| | [0 to 1 / **0** / 1]<br>0: Manual reboot, 1: Automatic reboot |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5878 | Option Setup |
| | Select the option to enable then touch [EXECUTE]. |
| 1 | Data Overwrite Security |
| 2 | HDD Encryption |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5881 | Fixed Phase Block Erasing **DFU** |
| | Detects fixed phase. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5885* | Set WIM Function | |
| 20 | DocSvr Acc Ctrl | Allows or disallows the functions of web image monitor.<br>**0**: OFF, 1: ON<br>Bit:<br>0: Forbid all document server access<br>1: Forbid user mode access<br>2: Forbid print function<br>3: Forbid Fax<br>4: Forbid scan sending<br>5: Forbid download<br>6: Forbid delete<br>7: Forbid guest user |
| 20 | DocSvr Acc Ctrl | |
| | | |
| 50 | DocSvr Format | |
| | Selects the display type for the document box list.<br>[0 to 2 / **0** / 1]<br>0: Thumbnail, 1: Icon, 2: Details | |
| 51 | DocSvr Trans | |
| | Sets the number of documents to be displayed in the document box list.<br>[5 to 20 / **10** / 1] | |
| 100 | Set Signature | |
| | | |
| 101 | Set Encryption | |
| | Determines whether the scanned documents with the WIM are encrypted when they are transmitted by an e-mail.<br>[0 to 1 / **0** / 1]<br>0: Not encrypted, 1:Encryption | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 200 | Detect Mem Leak |
| 201 | DocSvr Timeout |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5887 | SD Get Counter |
| | This SP sends a text file to an SD card inserted in **Slot 1 (lower slot)**. The operation stores. The file is stored in a folder created in the root directory of the SD card called SD_COUNTER. The file is saved as a text file (*.txt) prefixed with the number of the machine.<br>1. Insert the SD card in SD card lower slot.<br>2. Select SP5887 then touch [EXECUTE].<br>3. Touch [Execute] in the message when you are prompted. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5888* | Personal Information Protect |
| | Selects the protection level for logs.<br>[0 to 1 / **0** / 1}<br>0: No authentication, No protection for logs<br>1: No authentication, Protected logs (only an administrator can see the logs) |

⇒

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **5894** | **[External Charge Unit Setting]** Used with the external key counter/coin counter using the optional 20 Interface Unit Type A 20 pin connection. | |
| 001 | Switch Charge Mode | [0 to 2 / **0** / 1step] |
| | **Pattern 0** (SP5-894-001=0: Default setting) Default pattern which allows separate counter for print, FAX (reception), B/W copy, and Full-color copy.<br>**Pattern 1** (SP5-894-001=1) Separate counter for B/W and color is available under this pattern. However, it is not possible to distinguish between Copier and Printer outputs.<br>**Pattern 2** (SP5-894-001=2) With this setting, it is possible to distinguish between B/W and color outputs for both the Copier and Printer. However, it is not possible to manage FAX reception documents. | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5907 | Plug & Play Maker/Model Name | |
| | Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective, these names should be registered again.<br>After selecting, press the "Original Type" key and "#" key at the same time. When the setting is completed, the beeper sounds five times. | |
| 5913 | Switchover Permission Time | |
| 2 | Print Application Timer | |
| | Sets the length of time to elapse before allowing another application to take control of the display when the application currently controlling the display is not operating because a key has not been pressed.<br>[3 to 30/1 s] | |
| 102 | Print Application Set No information is available at this time. [0 to 1/1/1] | |
| | | |
| 5959 | Paper Size | |
| | Tray 1 (tandem tray) and the LCT do not have automatic paper size detection. Use these SP codes to set the paper size for Tray 1 and the optional LCT. | |
| 1 | Tray 1 | |
| | The following paper sizes can be set. If the A3 DLT kit is not installed, you can only use settings 0 and 1 | |
| | 0: A4 | 6: 8.5 x 14 SEF |
| | 1: 8.5 x 11 | 7: 8.5 x 11 SEF |
| | 2: A3 SEF | 8: B5 |
| | 3: B4 SEF | 9: B5 SEF |
| | 4: A4 SEF | 10: Custom |
| | 5: 11 x 17 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | LCT | |
| | The LCT accepts three paper sizes. Enter the correct number of the size of the paper loaded in the LCT: | |
| 2 | 0: A4 | 4: 8.5 x 11 SEF |
| | 1: 8.5 x 11 | 5: B4 SEF |
| | 2: B5 | 6: 8.5 x 14 SEF |
| | 3: A4 SEF | 7: Custom Size |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Copy Server: Set Function |
| 5967 | Enables and disables the document server. This is a security measure that prevents image data from being left in the temporary area of the HDD. After changing this setting, you must switch the main switch off and on to enable the new setting.<br>[0 to 1/1]<br>0: ON<br>1: OFF |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Cherry Server |
| 5974 | Selects which version of the Scan Router application program, "Light" or "Full (Professional)", is installed.<br>[0 to 1 / 0 / 1 /step]<br>0: Light version (supplied with this machine)<br>1: Full version (optional) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5985 | Device Setting |
| | The NIC and USB support features are built into the GW controller. Use this SP to enable and disable these features. In order to use the NIC and USB functions built into the controller board, these SP codes must be set to "1". |
| 1 | On Board NIC |
| ⇒ | [0 to 2 / **1** / 1 /step]<br>0: Disable, 1: Enable, 2: Function limitation<br>When the "Function limitation" is set, "On board NIC" is limited for use with only NRS or LDAP/NT authentication.<br>Note:<br>▪ Other network applications such as WebImageMonitor, @Remote, or LDAP/NT authentication are not available when this SP is set to "2".<br>▪ Even if you can change the initial settings of those network applications, the settings will not work |
| 2 | On Board USB |
| | [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step]<br>0: Disable, 1: Enable |

| | |
|---|---|
| 5990 | SP Print Mode (SMC Print) |
| | In the SP mode, press Copy Window to move to the copy screen, select the paper size, then press Start. Select A4/LT (Sideways) or larger to ensure that all the information prints. Press SP Window to return to the SP mode, select the desired print, and press Execute. |
| 1 | All (Data List) |
| 2 | SP (Mode Data List) |
| 3 | User Program Data |
| 4 | Logging Data |
| 5 | Diagnostic Report |

Group 5000

| | |
|---|---|
| 6 | Non-Default (Prints only SPs set to values other than defaults.) |
| 7 | NIB Summary |
| 8 | Capture Log |
| 021 | Copier User Program |
| 022 | Scanner SP |
| 023 | Scanner User Program |

# 5.7 GROUP 6000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6006 | ADF Reg Adj | |
| | ADF Registration Adjustment | |
| 1 | ADF Main Reg Ad: Front | Adjusts the side-to-side registration for the front/back in ADF mode.<br>[–3 to +3/0.1 mm] |
| 2 | ADF Main Reg Ad: Back | |
| 3 | ADF Sub Reg Adj | Adjusts the vertical registration for the front/back in ADF mode.<br>[–29 to +29/0.17 mm]<br>-29 = -4.93 mm<br>+29 = +4.93 mm |
| 5 | ADF Buck Adj:Front | Adjusts the roller timing at the skew correction sensor/entrance roller. A higher setting causes more buckling.<br>[–10.0 to +20/0.25 mm]<br>-20 = -5.0 mm<br>+20 = +5.0 mm |
| 6 | ADF Buck Adj:Back | Adjusts the roller timing at the interval sensor/scanning roller. A higher setting causes more buckling.<br>[–16.0 to +23/0.13 mm]<br>-16 = -2 mm<br>+23 = +3 mm |
| 7 | ADF TEdge EMargin | These settings adjust the erase margin for the trailing edges for the front/back.<br>[–20 to +20/0.5 mm]<br>-20 = -10 mm<br>+20 = +10 mm |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6007 | ADF Input Chk | |
| | Displays signals received from sensors and switches in the ADF. The signals are reflected in an 8-bit array:<br>(7) 0000 0000 (0)<br>where 0 and 1 are used to define the state of each sensor<br>▪ 0: No detect<br>▪ 1: Detect | |
| 1 | ADF Group 1 | |
| | **Bit** | **Sensor** |
| | 7 | Registration Sensor |
| | 6 | Interval Sensor |
| | 5 | Skew Correction Sensor |
| | 4 | Separation Sensor |
| | 3 | Original Set Sensor |
| | 2 | B5 Detection Sensor |
| | 1 | A4 Detection Sensor |
| | 0 | LG Detection Sensor |
| 2 | ADF Group 2 | |
| | **Bit** | **Sensor** |
| | 7 | APS Start Sensor |
| | 6 | ARDF Position Sensor |
| | 5 | Exit Sensor |
| | 4 | Paper Width Sensor 5 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | 3 | Paper Width Sensor 4 |
| | 2 | Paper Width Sensor 3 |
| | 1 | Paper Width Sensor 2 |
| | 0 | Paper Width Sensor 1 |
| 3 | ADF Group 3 | |
| | **Bit** | **Sensor** |
| | 7 | Not used |
| | 6 | Not used |
| | 5 | Lower Inverter Sensor |
| | 4 | Inverter Switchback Sensor |
| | 3 | Bottom Plate Position Sensor |
| | 2 to 0 | Not used |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6008 | ADF Output Chk | |
| | Turns on the ADF electrical components individually for testing. | |
| 1 | ADF Feed M:Fwd | |
| 2 | ADF Feed M:Rev | |
| 3 | ADF Trans M:Fwd | |
| 4 | ADF Ext M:Fwd | |
| 5 | ADF Top Inv M:Fwd | |
| 6 | ADF Top Inv M:Rev | |
| 7 | ADF Bot Inv M:Fwd | |
| 8 | ADF Bot Inv M:Rev | |
| 9 | ADF Pickup M:Fwd | |

Group 6000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 10 | ADF BotPlt M:Rev | |
| 11 | ADF Top Inv SOL | |
| 12 | ADF Bot Inv SOL | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6009 | ADF Free Run | |
| | This SP does an ADF free run in duplex original mode. | |
| 1 | Simplex | |
| 2 | Duplex | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6016 | ADF OrgSizePrior |
| | ADF Original Size Detection Priority. Allows selection of alternate settings for automatic original size detection.<br>(7) 0000 0000 (1) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6017 | ADF Mag Adj | |
| | ADF Magnification Adjustment | |
| | This changes the magnification by adjusting the speed of scanning.<br>[–50(–5%) to +50(+5%)/0.1%] | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6020 | Buckle Operation |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | This SP switches on stopping the scanning entrance roller for all paper sizes. Normally, the scanning entrance roller stops briefly to correct skew of small paper sizes in the ADF paper path and for the 2nd side scanning of originals during duplexing. Setting this SP to "1" sets the ADF to stop the scanning entrance roller for all paper sizes to correct for skew a second time. | |
| 1 | ADF Buckle Op Set | [0 to 1/1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6090 | LCT Output Chk | A4/LT LCT (MAUI) B473 |
| | Use these SPs to do the output check for the optional LCT. | |
| 1 | LCT Feed M | |
| 2 | LCT Pickup SOL | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6091 | LCT Input Chk | LCIT RT4000 D350 |
| | Use these SPs to do the input check for the optional LCIT. | |
| 1 | Wide LCT Feed Sn | |
| 2 | Wide LCT Trans Sn | |
| 3 | Wide LCT Exit Sn | |
| 4 | Wide LCT Door Switch | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6092 | LCT Output Chk | LCIT RT4000 D350 |
| | Use these SPs to do the output check for the optional LCIT. | |
| 1 | Wide LCT Feed M Lo1 | |
| 2 | Wide LCT Feed M Lo2 | |
| 3 | Wide LCT Feed M Hi1 | |

Group 6000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | Wide LCT Feed M Hi2 | |
| 5 | Wide LCT Trans M Lo1 | |
| 6 | Wide LCT Trans M Lo2 | |
| 7 | Wide LCT Trans M Hi1 | |
| 8 | Wide LCT Trans M Hi2 | |
| 9 | Wide LCT Exit M Lo1 | |
| 10 | Wide LCT Exit M Lo2 | |
| 11 | Wide LCT Exit M Hi1 | |
| 12 | Wide LCT Exit M Hi2 | |
| 13 | Wide LCT Pickup SOL | |
| 14 | Wide LCT Fan F | |
| 15 | Wide LCT Fan R | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6101 | Adj Punch Pos 2 | Punch B702 for Finishers D373/D374 |
| | Punch Position Adjustment<br>Adjusts the punch hole positions in the direction of paper feed.<br>▪ NA: North America<br>▪ DOM: Japan<br>▪ EU: Europe<br>▪ SCAN: Scandinavia | |
| 1 | 2-Hole:DOM | [-75 to +75/0.5 mm]<br>+ Value: Shifts punch unit in the direction of feed.<br>- Value: Shifts punch unit against direction of feed. |
| 2 | 3-Hole:NA | |
| 3 | 4-Hole:EU | |
| 4 | 4-Hole:SCAN | |
| 5 | 2-Hole:NA | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6102 | Punch Hole Reg 1 | Punch B702 for Finishers D373/D374 |
| | This SP corrects punch hole alignment by correcting the skew of each by adjusting the amount of time the finisher entrance roller remains off while the exit roller of the machine remains on. This buckles the leading edge of the sheet slightly against the finisher entrance roller while it remains off. | |
| 1 | A3 SEF | [-5~+5/0.25 mm]<br>▪ + Value:Increases time finisher entrance roller remains off.<br>▪ - Value: Descreases time finisher entrance roller remains off. |
| 2 | B4 SEF | |
| 3 | A4 SEF | |
| 4 | A4 LEF | |
| 5 | B5 SEF | |
| 6 | B5 LEF | |
| 7 | DLT SEF | |
| 8 | LG SEF | |
| 9 | LT SEF | |
| 10 | LT LEF | |
| 11 | 12"x18" | |
| 12 | Custom | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6103 | Punch Hole Reg 2 | Punch B702 for Finishers D373/D374 |
| | This SP determines whether the finisher entrance roller stops to correct skew when paper enters the finisher. | |
| 1 | A3 SEF | [0 to 1/1/1]<br>0: Paper stops for skew correction<br>1: Paper does not stop |
| 2 | B4 SEF | |
| 3 | A4 SEF | |

Group 6000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | A4 LEF | |
| 5 | B5 SEF | |
| 6 | B5 LEF | |
| 7 | DLT SEF | |
| 8 | LG SEF | |
| 9 | LT SEF | |
| 10 | LT LEF | |
| 11 | 12"x18" | |
| 12 | Custom | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6104 | Fine Adj Staple:Fin1 | 2000/3000-Sheet Finishers D373/D374 |
| | This SP corrects the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack on the finisher stapling tray. | |
| 1 | A3 SEF | [-15~+1.5/0.5 mm]<br>▪ + Value: ncreases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack.<br>▪ - Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack. |
| 2 | B4 SEF | |
| 3 | A4 SEF | |
| 4 | A4 LEF | |
| 5 | B5 SEF | |
| 6 | B5 LEF | |
| 7 | DLT SEF | |
| 8 | LG SEF | |
| 9 | LT SEF | |
| 10 | LT LEF | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 11 | 12"x18" | |
| 12 | Custom | |

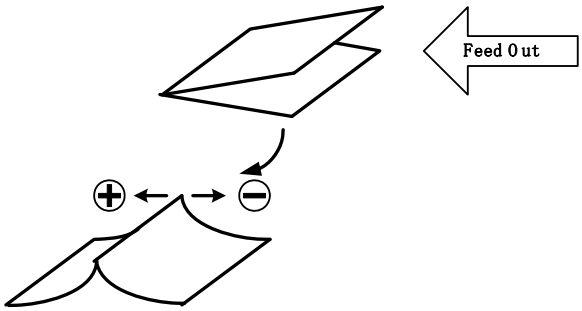
| 6105 | Adj Staple Pos:Fin1 | 2000/3000-Sheet Finishers D373/D374 |
|---|---|---|
| | This SP corrects the stapling position of the corner stapler. | |
| 1 | A3 SEF | [-3.5~+3.5/0.5 mm]<br>▪ - Value: Moves stapling position toward the rear of the machine.<br>▪ + Value: Shifts the stapling position toward the front of the machine. |
| 2 | B4 SEF | |
| 3 | A4 SEF | |
| 4 | A4 LEF | |
| 5 | B5 SEF | |
| 6 | B5 LEF | |
| 7 | DLT SEF | |
| 8 | LG SEF | |
| 9 | LT SEF | |
| 10 | LT LEF | |
| 11 | 12"x18" | |
| 12 | Custom | |

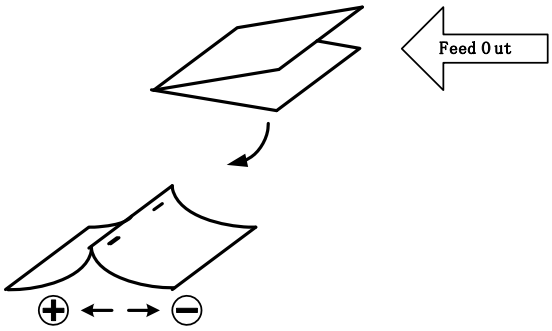
| 6107 | Fine Adj Jog Fences:Fin1 | 2000/3000-Sheet Finishers D373/D374 |
|---|---|---|
| | This SP corrects the distance between the output jogger fences and the sides of the stack when the output jogger unit attached to the side of the machine jogs sheets as they exit the finisher. | |
| 1 | A3 SEF | [-15. to +1.5/0/0.5 mm]<br>▪ + Value: Increases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack.<br>▪ - Value: Decreases the distance between the |
| 2 | B4 SEF | |
| 3 | A4 SEF | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | A4 LEF | jogger fences and the sides of the stack. |
| 5 | B5 LEF | |
| 6 | A5 LEF | |
| 7 | DLT SEF | |
| 8 | LG SEF | |
| 9 | LT SEF | |
| 10 | LT LEF | |
| 11 | HLT LEF | |
| 12 | Other | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6108 | Adj Prestack Shts:Fin1 | |
| | This SP sets the number of sheets sent to the pre-stack tray. With this SP set to the default (3):<br>▪ 3 sheets are sent to the pre-stack tray.<br>▪ When the 4th sheet feeds, the 4th sheet and 3 sheets from the pre-stack tray are sent to the stapling tray together.<br>**Note**: You may need to adjust this setting or switch it off when feeding thick or slick paper. | |
| 1 | A4 LEF | [0 to 4/3/1 sheet]<br>0: None<br>1: 1 sheet<br>2: 2 sheets<br>3: 3 sheets<br>4: 4 sheets |
| 2 | LT LEF | |
| 3 | B5 LEF | |
| 4 | 10.5"x7.25" LEF | |
| 5 | A4 SEF | |
| 6 | LT SEF | |
| 7 | B5 SEF | |
| 8 | 10.5"x7.25" SEF | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 9 | Other | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ⇒ | **6109** | **Book Fold Adj** | Adjust Booklet Fold Position |
| | | This SP corrects the folding position when paper is stapled and folded. | |
| | 001 | A3 SEF | [-3~+3/0.2 mm] |
| | 002 | B4 SEF | + Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease. |
| | 003 | A4 SEf | - Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease. |
| | 004 | B5 SEF |  B132S924.WMF |
| | 005 | DLT SEF | |
| | 006 | LG SEF | |
| | 007 | LT SEF | |
| | 008 | 12"x18" | |
| | 009 | Custom Size | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ⇒ | **6110** | **Book Staple Adj** | Adjust Booklet Stapling Position |
| | | This SP corrects the stapling position of the booklet stapler when paper is stapled and folded. | |
| | 001 | A3 SEF | [-3~+3/0.2 mm ] |
| | 002 | B4 SEF | + Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease. |
| | 003 | A4 SEF | - Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease. |
| | 004 | B5 SEF |  B132S923.WMF |
| | 005 | DLT SEF | |
| | 006 | LG SEF | |
| | 007 | LT SEF | |
| | 008 | 12” x 18” | |
| | 009 | Custom | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6111 | Booklet Fold Repeat | 2000-Sheet Finisher D373 |
| | This SP sets the number of times the folding rollers are driven forward and reverse to sharpen the crease of a folded booket before it exits the folding unit.<br>When set at the default (0):<br>▪ The folding blade pushes the center of the stack into the nip of the folding roller.<br>▪ The folding rollers rotated ccw to crease the booklet, reverse cw, then rotate ccw again crease the booklet fold twice before feeding to the folding unit exit rollers. | |
| 1 | A3 SEF | [0 to 6/0/1]<br>0: No repeated fold<br>1: 2<br>2: 5<br>3: 10<br>4: 15<br>5: 25<br>6: 30 |
| 2 | B4 SEF | |
| 3 | A4 SEF | |
| 4 | B5 SEF | |
| 5 | DLT SEF | |
| 6 | LG SEF | |
| 7 | LT SEF | |
| 8 | 12"x18" | |
| 9 | Other | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6114 | Free Run **DFU** | 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 |
| | These SPs set the switch the following free run modes for Finisher 2 (B830). Touch [ON] to switch on, [OFF] to switch off. | |
| 1 | Free Run 1 | System Free Run |
| 2 | Free Run 1 | Free Run (Endurance Testing) |
| 3 | Free Run 3 | Free Run |
| 4 | Free Run 4 | Shift, Free Run |

| 6115 | Input Check:Fin1 | 2000/3000-Sheet Finishers D373/D374 |
|---|---|---|
| | Use these SP codes to perform the input checks for either the 2000-Sheet Finisher D373 or 3000-Sheet Finisher D374.<br>The following abbreviations are used below:<br>▪ Sn: Sensor<br>▪ HP: Home Position<br>▪ Stp: Staple<br>▪ BStapler: Booklet Stapler (D373 only) | |
| 1 | Entrance Sn | |
| 2 | Proof Exit Sn | |
| 3 | Proof Full Sn | |
| 4 | Up Tray Exit Sn | |
| 5 | Staple Exit Sn | |
| 6 | Shift Roll HP Sn | |
| 7 | Exit Sn | |
| 8 | Exit Guide HP Sn | |
| 9 | Low Tray Hgt Sn | |
| 10 | Up Tray Hgt Sn | |
| 11 | Up Tray Full Sn | |
| 12 | Stack Roll HP Sn | |
| 13 | Jogger HP Sn | |
| 14 | Feed Out HP Sn | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 15 | Stp Tray Ppr Sn | |
| 16 | Stp Tray HP Sn | |
| 17 | Stp Rotate HP Sn | |
| 18 | Up Tray LimitSW | |
| 19 | Door Switch | |
| 20 | Corner Stp Oper | |
| 21 | Corner Stp In | |
| 22 | Corner Staples | |
| 23 | Punch HP Sn | |
| 24 | Punch Unit Hp Sn | |
| 25 | Punch Ppr HP Sn | |
| 26 | Punch Full Sn | |
| 27 | Punch HP Sn | |
| 28 | Punch DIP SW1 | |
| 29 | Punch DIP SW2 | |
| 30 | Stack Junc HP Sn | |
| 31 | Stack Present Sn | |
| 32 | Clamp Roll HP Sn | |
| 33 | Fold Entrance Sn | |
| 34 | Bot Fence HP Sn | |
| 35 | Fold Cam HP Sn | |
| 36 | Fold Plate HP Sn | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 37 | Fold Exit Sn | |
| 38 | Book Full Sn 1 | |
| 39 | Book Full Sn 2 | |
| 40 | BStapler 1 Op | |
| 41 | BStapler 1 In | |
| 42 | BStaples 1 In | |
| 43 | BStapler 2 Op | |
| 44 | BStapler 2 In | |
| 45 | BStaples 2 In | |
| 46 | Up TrayFull:3000 | |
| 47 | Out Jog HP Sn 1 | |
| 48 | Out Jog HP Sn 2 | |
| 49 | OutJog RetractSn | |
| 6116 | Output Check:Fin1 | 2000/3000-Sheet Finishers D373/D374 |
| | Use these SP codes to perform the output checks for either the 2000-Sheet Finisher D373 or 3000-Sheet Finisher D374.<br>The following abbreviations are used below:<br>▪ M: Motor<br>▪ JG: Junction Gate<br>▪ SOL: Solenoid<br>▪ Stp: Staple<br>▪ Bot: Bottom | |
| 1 | Entrance M | |
| 2 | Up Trans M | |
| 3 | Low Trans M | |
| 4 | Exit M | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Pos Roll M | |
| 6 | Shift M | |
| 7 | Exit Guide M | |
| 8 | Tray Lift M | |
| 9 | Stack Roller M | |
| 10 | Jogger M | |
| 11 | Feed Out M | |
| 12 | Stp Shift M | |
| 13 | Stp Rot M | |
| 14 | Corner Stp M | |
| 15 | Up JG SOL | |
| 16 | Dn JG SOL | |
| 17 | Pos Roll SOL | |
| 18 | Stp Edge Plate SOL | |
| 19 | Book Press SOL | |
| 20 | Stack JG M | |
| 21 | Fold Bot Fence M | |
| 22 | Book Stp M:Front | |
| 23 | Book Stp M:Back | |
| 24 | Fold Plate M | |
| 25 | Fold Roll M | |
| 26 | Clamp Roll M | |
| 27 | Punch M | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 28 | Punch Move M | |
| 29 | Punch Reg M | |
| 30 | OutJog M:Front | |
| 31 | OutJog M:Rear | |
| 32 | OutJog Retract M | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6150 | Fine Adj Staple:Fin2 | 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 |
| | This SP corrects the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack on the finisher stapling tray. | |
| 1 | A3 SEF | [-15~+1.5/-2/0.5 mm]<br>▪ + Value: ncreases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack.<br>▪ - Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack. |
| 2 | B4 SEF | |
| 3 | A4 SEF | |
| 4 | A4 LEF | |
| 5 | B5 SEF | |
| 6 | B5 LEF | |
| 7 | DLT SEF | |
| 8 | LG SEF | |
| 9 | LT SEF | |
| 10 | LT LEF | |
| 11 | Custom | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6151 | Adj Staple Pos:Fin2 | 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 |
| | This SP corrects the stapling position of the corner stapler. | |
| 1 | A3 SEF | [-2~+2/0/0.5 mm] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | B4 SEF | ▪ - Value: Moves stapling position toward the rear of the machine.<br>▪ + Value: Shifts the stapling position toward the front of the machine. |
| 3 | A4 SEF | |
| 4 | A4 LEF | |
| 5 | B5 SEF | |
| 6 | B5 LEF | |
| 7 | DLT SEF | |
| 8 | LG SEF | |
| 9 | LT SEF | |
| 10 | LT LEF | |
| 11 | Other | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6152 | Fine Adj Out Jog:Fin2 | 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 |
| | This SP corrects the distance between the output jogger fences and the sides of the stack when the output jogger unit attached to the side of the machine jogs sheets as they exit the finisher. | |
| 1 | A3 SEF | [-3 to +3/0/0.01 mm]<br>▪ + Value: Increases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack.<br>▪ - Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack. |
| 2 | B4 SEF | |
| 3 | A4 SEF | |
| 4 | A4 LEF | |
| 5 | B5 SEF | |
| 6 | B5 LEF | |
| 7 | A5 SEF | |
| 8 | A5 LEF | |
| 9 | DLT SEF | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 10 | LG SEF | |
| 11 | LT SEF | |
| 12 | LT LEF | |
| 13 | HLT SEF | |
| 14 | HLT LEF | |
| 15 | Custom | |
| 6153 | Adj Prestack Shts:Fin2 | 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 |
| | This SP sets the number of sheets sent to the pre-stack tray. With this SP set to the default (3):<br>▪ 3 sheets are sent to the pre-stack tray.<br>▪ When the 4th sheet feeds, the 4th sheet and 3 sheets from the pre-stack tray are sent to the stapling tray together.<br>**Note**: You may need to adjust this setting or switch it off when feeding thick or slick paper. | |
| 1 | A4 LEF | [0 to 2/2/1 sheet]<br>0: None<br>1: 1 sheet<br>2: 2 sheets |
| 2 | B5 LEF | |
| 3 | LT LEF | |
| 4 | Other | |
| 6154 | Adj Top Fence Pos | 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 |
| | Use this SP to adjust the timing of the top fence motor that positions the top fence.<br>**Note:** After all the pages of a stack have been fed onto the stapling tray, the top fence jogs the stack vertically to align the leading edge of the stack for stapling. | |
| 1 | A4 LEF | [-5 to 10/0/0.1 mm] |
| 2 | B5 LEF | [-5 to 2/0/0.1 mm] |
| 3 | LT LEF | [-5 to 10/0/0.1 mm] |

Group 6000

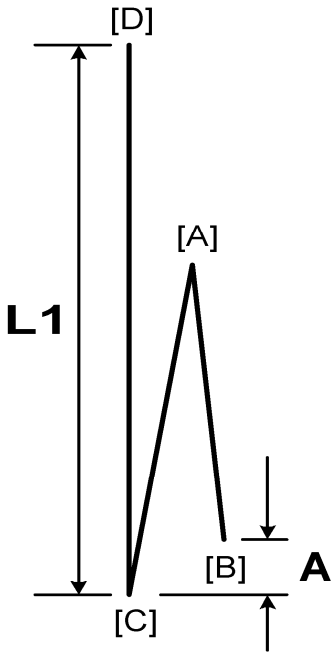
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | Other | **Rev. 08/2008** |
| 155 | Staple Stack Jogging | |
| | Touch [1:+1 Time] to have the jogger fences press against the sides of the stack on the staple tray one more time to align the stack for corner stapling.<br>[*0:Default] [1:+1 Time] | |
| 6156 | Input Check:Fin2 | 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 |
| | Use these SP codes to perform the input checks for either the 3000-Sheet Finisher B830. The following abbreviations are used below:<br>▪ Sn: Sensor<br>▪ Hgt: Height<br>▪ HP: Home Position<br>▪ Stp: Staple<br>▪ BStapler: Booklet Stapler (D373 only) | |
| 1 | Entrance Sn | |
| 2 | Proof Exit Sn | |
| 3 | Shift Exit Sn 1 | |
| 4 | Stp Exit Sn | |
| 5 | Tray Bot Plt Sn | |
| 6 | Tray Near Bot Sn | |
| 7 | Release HP Sn | |
| 8 | Jogger HP Sn | |
| 9 | Shift HP Sn 1 | |
| 10 | Stapler Side HP Sn | |
| 11 | Stapler HP Sn | |
| 12 | Stapler Sn | |
| 13 | Stapler Tray Sn | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 14 | Door Open Sn | |
| 15 | Punch Sn | |
| 16 | Punch HP Sn 1 | |
| 17 | Punchout Full Sn | |
| 18 | Paper Hgt Sn:Stp | |
| 19 | Paper Hgt Sn:Shift | |
| 20 | Paper Jam Sensor | |
| 21 | Proof Full Sn | |
| 22 | Stapler Rotation Sn 1 | |
| 23 | S Hopper Full Sn | |
| 24 | Prestack Sn | |
| 25 | Stack Plate HP Sn | |
| 26 | Exit Guide HP Sn | |
| 27 | Stapler Rotation Sn 2 | |
| 28 | Stapler Ready Sn | |
| 29 | StackPlate HP Sn 1 | |
| 30 | StackPlate HP Sn 2 | |
| 31 | Stp Hammer HP Sn | |
| 32 | Return Drv HP Sn | |
| 33 | Paper Hgh Sn | |
| 34 | Tray Limit SW | |
| 35 | Punch HP Sn 2 | |
| 36 | Shift Jog Sn | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 37 | Shift Jog HP Sn | |
| 38 | OutJog RetractSn | |
| 39 | Emergency Stop SW | |
| 40 | Top Fence HP Sensor | |
| 41 | Bottom Fence HP Sensor | |
| 42 | Shift Tray Full Sn:Z-Fold | |
| 43 | Shift Tray Exit Sensor 2 | |
| 44 | Upper Tray JG HP Sensor | |
| 45 | Stapler JG HP Sensor | |
| 46 | Prestack JG HP Sensor | |
| 47 | Stop Prestack Sensor | |
| 48 | Prestack Stopper HP Sensor | |
| 49 | Shift Tray HP Sensor 2 | |
| 50 | Staple Trim Hopper Set Sn | |
| 6157 | Output Check:Fin2 | 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 |
| | Use these SP codes to perform the output checks for either the 3000-Sheet Finisher B830. The following abbreviations are used below:<br>▪ Mtr: Motor<br>▪ M: Motor<br>▪ JG: Junction Gate<br>▪ SOL: Solenoid<br>▪ Stp: Staple<br>▪ Bot: Bottom | |
| 1 | Upper Transport Motor | |
| 2 | Shift Exit M:Cont | |
| 3 | Upper Tray JG Mtr:Cont | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | Tray Lift M:1 Op | |
| 5 | Jogger M:1 Op | |
| 6 | Stp M:1 Op Horiz | |
| 7 | Stp M:1 Op | |
| 8 | Punch M:1 Op | |
| 9 | Stapler JG Mtr:Cont | |
| 10 | Stp Hammer M:1 Op | |
| 11 | Feed Out M:1 Op | |
| 12 | Shift M:1 Op | |
| 13 | Stapler Rot Mtr:Cont | |
| 14 | Stp Exit M:Cont | |
| 15 | Open Exit M:1 Op | |
| 16 | Fold Plate M:1 Op | |
| 17 | Prestack JG Mtr:1 Op | |
| 18 | Prestack Stop Mtr:1 Op | |
| 19 | Fold M:Front:1 Op | |
| 20 | Fold M:Back:1 Op | |
| 21 | Return Drv M:1 Op | |
| 22 | Return TransM:Cont | |
| 23 | Shift Jog M:1 Op | |
| 24 | ShiftJogShuntM:1 Op | |
| 25 | Top Fence Motor:1 Op | |
| 26 | Bottom Fence Motor:1 Op | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 27 | Lower Transport Mtr:Cont | |
| 28 | Upper Tray Exit Mtr:Cont | |
| 29 | Positioning Roller Mtr:Cont | |
| 30 | Prestack Trans Mtr:Cont | |
| 31 | Staple Trim Chute SOL:1 Op | |
| 6250 | Input Check:Fin3 | |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) | |
| 6251 | Output Check:Fin3 | |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) | |
| 6301 | Fine Adj 1st, 2nd Z-Fold | |
| | Use these SP codes to adjust the positions of the Z-folds done with the Z-Fold Unit B660. The 1st and 2nd folds can be adjusted separately. | |




d014s902

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1st Fold:A3 SEF | [-4 ~ +4/0/ 0.2 mm]<br>Refer to the illustration above.<br>Adjusts the position of the first fold [A] to decrease or increase the distance **A** between the leading edge [B] and the crease of the 2nd fold [C]. |
| 2 | 1st Fold:B4 SEF | |
| 3 | 1st Fold:A4 SEF | |
| 4 | 1st Fold:DLT SEF | |
| 5 | 1st Fold:LG SEF | |
| 6 | 1st Fold:LT SEF | |
| 7 | 1st Fold:12"x18" | |
| 8 | 1st Fold:Other | |
| 9 | 2nd Fold:A3 SEF | [-4 ~ +4/0/ 0.2 mm]<br>Refer to the illustration above.<br>Adjusts the position of the 2nd fold [C] to decrease or increase the length **L1** of the sheet between the trailing edge [D] and the 2nd fold. |
| 10 | 2nd Fold:B4 SEF | |
| 11 | 2nd Fold:A4 SEF | |
| 12 | 2nd Fold:DLT SEF | |
| 13 | 2nd Fold:LG SEF | |
| 14 | 2nd Fold:LT SEF | |
| 15 | 2nd Fold:12"x18" | |
| 16 | 2nd Fold:Other | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6350 | Input Check:Mail Box | 9-Bin Mailbox B762 |
| | Use these SP codes to perform the input checks for sensors and switches in the mailbox. | |
| 1 | Paper Detect Sn 1 | |
| 2 | Vert Transport Sn:Bin1 | |
| 3 | Paper Overflow Sn 1 | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | Paper Detect Sn 2 | |
| 5 | Vert Transport Sn2:Bin3 | |
| 6 | Paper Overflow Sn 2 | |
| 7 | Paper Detect Sn 3 | |
| 8 | Paper Overflow Sn 3 | |
| 9 | Paper Detect Sn 4 | |
| 10 | Vert Transport Sn3:Bin5 | |
| 11 | Paper Overflow Sn 4 | |
| 12 | Paper Detect Sn 5 | |
| 13 | Paper Overflow Sn 5 | |
| 14 | Paper Detect Sn 6 | |
| 15 | Vert Transport Sn4:Bin7 | |
| 16 | Paper Overflow Sn 6 | |
| 17 | Paper Detect Sn 7 | |
| 18 | Paper Overflow Sn 7 | |
| 19 | Paper Detect Sn 8 | |
| 20 | Vert Transport Sn 5:Bin9 | |
| 21 | Paper Overflow Sn 8 | |
| 22 | Paper Detect Sn 9 | |
| 23 | Paper Overflow Sn 9 | |
| 24 | Door Open Switch | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6351 | Output Check:Mail Box | 9-Bin Mailbox B762 |
| | Use these SP codes to perform the output checks of the motor and solenoids in | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | the mailbox. | |
| 1 | Vert Transport Motor | |
| 2 | Junction Gate SOL1 | |
| 3 | Turn Gate SOL1 | |
| 4 | Turn Gate SOL2 | |
| 5 | Turn Gate SOL3 | |
| 6 | Turn Gate SOL4 | |
| 7 | Turn Gate SOL5 | |
| 8 | Turn Gate SOL6 | |
| 9 | Turn Gate SOL7 | |
| 10 | Turn Gate SOL8 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6352 | Free Run:Mail Box |
| | Press [ON] and [OFF] to switch on/off the mailbox for free run testing. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 6400 | Input Check: 2-Tray CIT | | Cover Interposer Tray B835 |
| | Use these SP codes to perform the sensor and switch input checks for the Cover Interposer Tray B835. | | |
| 1 | Feed Sn1 | | |
| 2 | Feed Sn2 | | |
| 3 | Pullout Sn1 | | |
| 4 | Pullout Sn2 | | |
| 5 | Trans Sn1 | | |
| 6 | Trans Sn2 | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | Trans Exit Sn | | |
| 8 | Entrance Sn | | |
| 9 | Exit Sn | | |
| 10 | Pickup HP Sn1 | | |
| 11 | Pickup HP Sn2 | | |
| 12 | Limit Sn1 | | |
| 13 | Limit Sn2 | | |
| 14 | Bot Sn1 | | |
| 15 | Bot Sn2 | | |
| 16 | Near End Sn1 | | |
| 17 | Near End Sn2 | | |
| 18 | Paper End Sn1 | | |
| 19 | Paper End Sn2 | | |
| 20 | Length Sn1 | | |
| 21 | Length Sn2 | | |
| 22 | Tray1 Size Sn1 | | |
| 23 | Tray1 Size Sn2 | | |
| 24 | Tray1 Size Sn3 | | |
| 25 | Tray1 Size Sn4 | | |
| 26 | Tray1 Size Sn5 | | |
| 27 | Tray2 Size Sn1 | | |
| 28 | Tray2 Size Sn2 | | |
| 29 | Tray2 Size Sn3 | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 30 | Tray2 Size Sn4 | | |
| 31 | Tray2 Size Sn5 | | |
| 32 | Feed Door Sn1 | | |
| 33 | Feed Door Sn2 | | |
| 34 | Trans Door SW | | |
| 35 | Front Door SW | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 6401 | Output Check:2-Tray CIT | | Cover Interposer Tray B835 |
| | Use these SP codes to perform the output checks for the motors of the Cover Interposer Tray B835. | | |
| 1 | Stop | | |
| 2 | Pickup M1 | | |
| 3 | Pickup M2 | | |
| 4 | Feed M1 | | |
| 5 | Feed M2 | | |
| 6 | Pullout M1 | | |
| 7 | Pullout M2 | | |
| 8 | Trans M | | |
| 9 | Horizontal Trans M | | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6450 | Interposer Size | |
| | Controls the paper size for the cover interposer tray. Select a paper size and push [Execute] | |
| 1 | A3SEF/12"*18" | [0~1/1]<br>0: A3 SEF, 1: 12" x 18" |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | EU/China | [0~2/1]<br>0: 8½" x 13", 1: 8" x 13", 2: 8¼ " x 13" |
| 3 | NA 1 | [0~1/1]<br>0: 8½" x 14", 1: 8½" x 13" |
| 4 | NA 2 | [0~1/1]<br>0: LT LEF, 1: 10½" x 7¼" |
| 5 | NA 3 | [0~1/1]<br>0: LT SEF, 1: 8" x 10" |
| 6 | EU/Taiwan 1 | [0~1/1]<br>0: 8-Kai, 1: DLT |
| 7 | EU/Taiwan 2 | [0~1/1]<br>0: 16-Kai SEF, 1: LT |
| 8 | EU/Taiwan 3 | [0~1/1]<br>0: 16-Kai SEF, 1: LT SEF |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6451 | Input Check:1-Tray CIT | Cover Interposer B704 |
| | Use these SP codes to perform the input checks for the sensors of the Cover Interposer Tray B704. | |
| 1 | Paper Feed Cover Sensor | |
| 2 | Bottom Plate HP Sensor | |
| 3 | Paper Near End Sensor | |
| 4 | Paper Set Sensor | |
| 5 | Bottom Plate HP Sensor | |
| 6 | Grip Sensor | |
| 7 | Guide Plate Set Sensor | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8 | Exit Sensor | |
| 9 | Paper Set Sensor | |
| 10 | Width Sensor 1 | |
| 11 | Width Sensor 2 | |
| 12 | Width Sensor 3 | |
| 13 | Length Sensor 1 | |
| 14 | Length Sensor 2 | |
| 15 | Length Sensor 3 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6500 | Punch Adjustment |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6501 | Paddle Pos Adjustment |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6502 | Adj Binding Position 1 |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) |
| 6503 | Adj Binding Position 2 |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) |
| 6504 | Adj Punch Jog:Punching |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) |
| 6505 | Adj Punch Jog Value |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6506 | Adj Jog:Binding 1 |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) |
| 6508 | Input Check:Fin4 |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) |
| 6509 | Output Check:Fin4 |
| | For future use. (Oct. 2007) |
| 6800 | Sheet Conversion (Thick Paper) |
| | Permits punching, including tab sheets.<br>Note: Do not change this setting.<br>[1 to 3/3/1 sheet]<br>1: 1 Sheet<br>2: 2 Sheets<br>3: 3 Sheets |
| 6890 | Punch Function Enabled (Z-Fold) |
| | Switch Z-folding off and on. Default: 0 (Off)<br>0:No 1:Yes |
| 6900 | ADF Bottom Lift |
| | This SP setting determines whether the bottom plate lift motor of the of the ARDF switches on:<br>▪ When the original is set in the ARDF original tray<br>-or-<br>▪ When the [Start] key is pressed.<br>The ARDF bottom plate lift motor raises the bottom plate that pushes up the original tray and raises it to the optimum feed position.<br>[0~1/1]<br>0: Bottom plate lifts immediately after originals are set (Default)<br>1: Bottom plate does not lift until [Start] key is pushed. |

# 5.8 GROUP 7000

| | |
|---|---|
| 7401 | Total SC Counter |
| | Displays the total number of SCs logged. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7403 | SC History | |
| | Displays the latest 10 SC codes. | |
| 1 | Latest | |
| --- | --- | |
| 010 | Latest 9th | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7502 | Total Paper Jam Counter |
| | Displays the total number of copy jams. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7503 | Total Original Jam Counter |
| | Displays the total number of copy jams. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 7504 | Paper Jam Loc | D014/D015/D078/D079 Copier |
| | | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred in the copier. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | | **Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| | 1 | At Power On | |
| ⇒ | 3 | Tray 1: No Feed | SP7504-003 indicates the jam counter occurred at the **Tray 1**. |
| ⇒ | 4 | NA | SP7504-004 is not used on D014/D015/D078 /D079 copier and the value is always “0”. |
| ⇒ | 5 | Tray 2: No Feed | SP7504-005 indicates the jam counter occurred at the **Tray 2.** |
| ⇒ | 6 | Tray 3: No Feed | SP7504-006 indicates the jam counter occurred at the **Tray 3**. |
| | 7 | LCT: No Feed | |
| | 8 | Trans 1 Sn:Late | 1st Vertical Transport Sensor |
| | 9 | Trans 2 Sn:Late | 2nd Vertical Transport Sensor |
| | 10 | Trans 3 Sn:Late | 3rd Vertical Transport Sensor |
| | 11 | Trans 4 Sn:Late | 4th Vertical Transport Sensor |
| | 12 | Relay Sn: Late | Relay Sensor |
| | 13 | Reg Sn:Late | Registration Sensor |
| | 14 | Fusing Ex Sn:Late | Fusing Exit Sensor |
| | 16 | Main Ex Sn:Late | Paper Exit Sensor |
| | 19 | Dup Ent Sn:Late | Duplex Entrance Sensor |
| | 20 | Dup Trans Sn1:Late | Duplex Transport Sensor 1 |
| | 21 | Dup Trans Sn2:Late | Duplex Transport Sensor 2 |
| | 22 | Dup Trans Sn3:Late | Duplex Transport Sensor 3 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 23 | Dup Ent Sn:Late | Duplex Entrance Sensor |
| 24 | LCT Relay | LCT Relay Sensor:Late |
| 25 | LCT Exit Sensor | |
| 34 | Bypass PE Sn:Off | Bypass Paper End Sensor |
| 53 | 1st Feed Sn:Lag | 1st Paper Feed Sensor:Lag |
| 54 | 2nd Feed Sn:Lag | 2nd Paper Feed Sensor:Lag |
| 55 | 3rd Feed Sn:Lag | 3rd Paper Feed Sensor:Lag |
| 56 | 4th Feed Sn:Lag | 4th Paper Feed Sensor:Lag |
| 57 | LCT Feed Sn:Lag | LCT Paper Feed Sensor |
| 58 | Trans 1 Sn:Lag | 1st Vertical Transport Sensor:Lag |
| 59 | Trans 2 Sn:Lag | 2nd Vertical Transport Sensor:Lag |
| 60 | Trans 3 Sn:Lag | 3rd Vertical Transport Sensor:Lag |
| 61 | Trans 4 Sn:Lag | 4th Vertical Transport Sensor:Lag |
| 62 | Relay Sn:Lag | Relay Sensor:Lag |
| 63 | Reg Sn:Lag | Registration Sensor |
| 64 | Fusing Ex Sn:Lag | Fusing Exit Sensor:Lag |
| 66 | Main Ex Sn:Lag | Main Exit Sensor |
| 69 | Dup Ent Sn:Lag | Duplex Entrance Sensor |
| 71 | Dup Trans Sn2:Lag | Duplex Transport Sensor 1 |
| 72 | Dup Trans Sn3:Lag | Duplex Transport Sensor 2 |
| 74 | LCT Relay Sn:Lag | LCT Relay Sensor:Lag |
| 75 | LCT Exit Sn | |
| 84 | Bypass Feed Sn | Bypass Paper Feed Sensor |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 98 | Paper Type | Paper Type |
| 99 | Bypass Paper Feed Sn | Bypass Paper Feed Sensor |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc | 2000-Sheet Finishers D373 |
| | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | **On Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| 121 | Entrance Jam | Entrance Sensor |
| 122 | Proof Tray Exit | Proof Tray Exit Sensor |
| 123 | Shift Tray Exit | Shift Tray Exit Sensor |
| 124 | Stapler Exit | Stapler Exit Sensor |
| 125 | Exit After Jogging | Exit Sensor After Jogging |
| 126 | Corner Stapling | Corner Stapling: Stapler Unit 1 |
| 127 | Saddle Stapling | Saddle-Stitch Stapler Unit |
| 128 | Paper Folding | Paper Folding |
| 129 | Shift Tray Motor | Shift Tray Motor |
| 130 | Jog Fence Motor | Jogger Fence Motor |
| 131 | Shift Roller Motor | Shift Roller Motor |
| 132 | Stapler Shift M | Stapler Shift Motor |
| 133 | Stapler M | Stapler Motor: Unit 2 |
| 134 | Folder Plate M | Folder Plate Motor |
| 135 | Feed Out Belt M | Feed Out Belt Motor |
| 136 | Paper Punch Motor | Paper Punch Motor |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 137 | Z-Folding | Z-Fold Jam |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc (Fin2) | 3000-Sheet Feeder B830 |
| | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | **On Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| 141 | Entrance Sn | Entrance Sensor |
| 142 | Proof Tray Exit Sn | Proof Tray Exit Sn |
| 143 | Shift Exit Sn | Shift Exit Sn |
| 144 | Stapler Exit | Stapler Exit Sensor |
| 145 | Feed Out | Feed Out |
| 148 | Upper Trans M | Upper Transport Motor |
| 149 | Shift Tray Motor | Shift Tray Motor |
| 150 | Jogger Fence Motor | Jogger Fence Motor |
| 151 | Shift Roller Motor | Shift Roller Motor |
| 153 | Stapling Motor | Stapling Motor |
| 154 | Pre-Stack Jam | |
| 155 | Feed Out Belt Motor | Feed Out Belt Motor |
| 156 | Paper Punch Motor | Paper Punch Motor |
| 157 | Z-Fold Motor Jam | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc | 9-Bin Mailbox B762 |
| | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | **On Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| 161 | Vert Trans Sn 1 | Vertical Transport Sensor 1 |
| 162 | Vert Trans Sn 2 | Vertical Transport Sensor 2 |
| 163 | Vert Trans Sn 3 | Vertical Transport Sensor 3 |
| 164 | Vert Trans Sn 4 | Vertical Transport Sensor 4 |
| 165 | Vert Trans Sn 5 | Vertical Transport Sensor 5 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc | Cover Interposer Tray B704 |
| | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | **On Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| 166 | Paper Feed Sn | Paper Feed Sensor |
| 167 | Vert Transport Path | Vertical Transport Path |
| 168 | BotPlt Pos Sn | Bottom Plate Position Sensor |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc | 3000-Sheet Finisher D374 |
| | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | **On Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| 171 | Entrance Trans | Entrance Sensor |
| 172 | Proof Tray Exit Sn | Proof Tray Exit Sn |
| 173 | Shift Exit Sn | Shift Exit Sensor |
| 174 | Stapler Exit Sn | Stapler Exit Sensor |
| 175 | Belt Feed Out | Belt Feed Out |
| 179 | Shift Tray Motor | Shift Tray Motor |
| 180 | Jogger Fence Motor | Jogger Fence Motor |
| 181 | Shift Roller Motor | Shift Roller Motor |
| 182 | Stapler Shift M | Stapler Shift Motor |
| 183 | Stapling Motor | Stapling Motor |
| 185 | Feed Out Belt Motor | Feed Out Belt Motor |
| 186 | Paper Punch Motor | Paper Punch Motor |
| 187 | Insufficient Data | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc | 3000-Sheet Finisher D374 |
| | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | **On Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| 191 | Entrance Sn | Entrance Sensor |
| 192 | Stapler Exit | Stapler Exit Sensor |
| 193 | Shift Exit Sn | Shift Exit Sensor |
| 194 | Stapler Exit | Stapler Exit Sensor |
| 195 | Belt Feed Out | Belt Feed Out |
| 198 | Paper Folding | Paper Folding |
| 199 | Shift Tray Motor | Shift Tray Motor |
| 200 | Jogger Fence Motor | Jogger Fence Motor |
| 201 | Shift Roller Motor | Shift Roller Motor |
| 202 | Stapler Shift M | Stapler Shift Motor |
| 203 | Stapling Motor | Stapling Motor |
| 204 | Paper Folding | Paper Folding |
| 205 | Feed Out Belt Motor | Feed Out Belt Motor |
| 206 | Paper Punch Motor | Paper Punch Motor |
| 207 | Insufficient Data | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc (Z-Folder) | Z-Folding Unit B660 |
| | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | **On Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| 211 | Paper Feed:Late | Paper Feed Sensor: Late |
| 212 | Paper Feed:Lag | Paper Feed Sensor: Lag |
| 213 | Fold Timing Sn:Late | Fold Timing Sensor: Late |
| 214 | Fold Timing Sn:Lag | Fold Timing Sensor: Lag |
| 215 | Lead Edge Sn:Late | Leading Edge Sensoor:Late |
| 216 | Lead Edge Sn:Lag | Leading Edge Sensor:Lag |
| 217 | Up Stopper Sn:Late | Upper Stopper Path Sensor:Late |
| 218 | Up Stopper Sn:Lag | Upper Stopper Path Sensor:Lag |
| 219 | Lower Ex Sn:Late | Lower Exit Sensor:Late |
| 220 | Lower Ex Sn1:Lag | Lower Exit Sensor:Lag |
| 223 | Up Ex Sn:Late | Upper Exit Sensor:Late |
| 224 | Up Ex Sn:Lag | Upper Exit Sensor:Lag |
| 225 | Paper Fold M | Paper Fold Motor |
| 226 | Lower Stopper M | Lower Stopper Motor Lock |
| 227 | Upper Stopper M | Upper Stopper Motor Lock |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7504 | Paper Jam Loc | Cover Interposer Tray B835 |
| | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | **On Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| 230 | Tray 1: No Feed | |
| 231 | Tray 2: No Feed | |
| 232 | Tray 1: Grip Sn | |
| 233 | Tray 2: Grip Sn | |
| 234 | Tray 1: Trans Jam | |
| 235 | Tray 2: Trans Jam | |
| 236 | Exit Jam | |
| 237 | Entrance Sn Jam | |
| 238 | Exit Sn Jam | |
| 239 | Tray 1: Lift Motor | |
| 240 | Tray 2: Lift Motor | |
| 241 | Tray 1: Pickup Motor | |
| 242 | Tray 2: Pickup Motor | |

| 7505 | Original Jam Det (ARDF) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Displays the list of possible locations where a jam could have occurred. Press the appropriate key to display the jam count for that location. These jams are caused by the failure of a sensor to activate. | |
| | **On Operation Panel** | **Actual Component Name** |
| 1 | At Power On | At Power On |
| 3 | Separation Sn:Late | Separation Sensor:Late |
| 4 | Skew Cor Sn:Late | Skew Correction Sensor:Late |
| 5 | Interval Sn:Late | Interval Sensor:Late |
| 6 | Reg Sn:Late | Registration Sensor:Late |
| 7 | Exit Sn:Late | Exit Sensor:Late |
| 8 | Inv Switch Sn:Late | Inverter Switchback Sensor:Late |
| 9 | Low Inv Sn:Late | Lower Inverter Sensor:Late |
| 53 | Separation Sn:Lag | SeparationsSensor:Lag |
| 54 | Skew Cor Sn:Lag | Skew Correction Sensor:Lag |
| 55 | Interval Sn:Lag | Interval Sensor:Lag |
| 56 | Reg Sn:Lag | Registration Sensor:Lag |
| 57 | Exit Sn:Lag | Exit Sensor:Lag |
| 58 | Inv Switch Sn:Lag | Inverter Switchback Sensor:Lag |
| 59 | Low Inv Sn:Lag | Lower Inverter Sensor:Lag |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7506 | Jam Count by Paper Size | |
| | Displays the total number of jams by paper size. | |
| 5 | A4 LEF | Displays the total number of jams by paper size. |
| 6 | A5 LEF | |
| 14 | B5 LEF | |
| 38 | LT LEF | |
| 44 | HLT LEF | |
| 132 | A3 | |
| 133 | A4 SEF | |
| 134 | A5 SEF | |
| 141 | B4 SEF | |
| 142 | B5 SEF | |
| 160 | DLT SEF | |
| 164 | LG SEF | |
| 166 | LT SEF | |
| 172 | HLT SEF | |
| 255 | Others | |

| 7507 | Plotter Jam History | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Latest | Displays the following items for the last 10 copy paper jams: 1) Jam code, 2) Paper size, 3) Total count when jam occurred, 4) Date of jam.<br>The "jam codes" are listed in the SMC report under SP7504. |
| 2 | Latest 1 | |
| 3 | Latest 2 | |
| 4 | Latest 3 | |
| 5 | Latest 4 | |
| 6 | Latest 5 | |
| 7 | Latest 6 | |
| 8 | Latest 7 | |
| 9 | Latest 8 | |
| 10 | Latest 9 | |

| 7508 | Original Jam History | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Original Latest | Displays the following items for the Latest 10 original jams: 1) Jam code, 2) Paper size, 3) Total count when jam occurred, 4) Date of jam.<br>The "jam codes" are listed in the SMC report under SP7504. |
| 2 | Latest 1 | |
| 3 | Latest 2 | |
| 4 | Latest 3 | |
| 5 | Latest 4 | |
| 6 | Latest 5 | |
| 7 | Latest 6 | |
| 8 | Latest 7 | |
| 9 | Latest 8 | |
| 10 | Latest 9 | |

| 7617 | Parts PM Counter Display | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Normal | **Japan Only** |
| 2 | DF | **Japan Only** |

| 7618 | PM Parts Counter Reset (Japan Only) | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Normal | Push [Execute] to clear the parts replacement alarm counter for the main machine. |
| 2 | DF | Push [Execute] to clear the parts replacement alarm counter for the ADF. |

| 7621 | Current Value |
|---|---|
| 7622 | Reset |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7623 | Standard Value | |
| 7624 | Operational Value | |
| 1 | K PCU# | |
| 2 | K PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 3 | K PCU Lube Bar | |
| 4 | K PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 5 | K PCU Developer | |
| 6 | K PCU Drum | |
| 7 | K PCU Charge Grid Unit | |
| 8 | K PCU Charge Grid Wire | |
| 9 | K PCU Idle Gear | |
| 10 | K PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 11 | K PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | **Not Used** |
| 12 | K PCU Joint | |
| 13 | M PCU# | |
| 14 | M PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 15 | M PCU Lube Bar | |
| 16 | M PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 17 | M PCU Developer | |
| 18 | M PCU Drum | |
| 19 | M PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 20 | M PCU Idle Gear | |
| 21 | M PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |

Group 7000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 22 | M PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | **Not Used** |
| 23 | M PCU Joint | |
| 24 | C PCU# | |
| 25 | C PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 26 | C PCU Lube Bar | |
| 27 | C PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 28 | C PCU Developer | |
| 29 | C PCU Drum | |
| 30 | C PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 31 | C PCU Idle Gear | |
| 32 | C PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 33 | C PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | **Not Used** |
| 34 | C PCU Joint | |
| 35 | Y PCU# | |
| 36 | Y PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 37 | Y PCU Lube Bar | |
| 38 | Y PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 39 | Y PCU Developer | |
| 40 | Y PCU Drum | |
| 41 | Y PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 42 | Y PCU Idle Gear | |
| 43 | Y PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 44 | Y PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | **Not Used** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 45 | Y PCU Joint | |
| 46 | ITB # | |
| 47 | ITB Cleaning Unit # | |
| 48 | ITB Cleaning Blade | |
| 49 | ITB Lube Bar | |
| 50 | Lube Application Blade | |
| 51 | PTR Unit # | |
| 52 | PTR Blade | |
| 53 | PTR | |
| 54 | Discharge Roller | |
| 55 | PTR Lube Bar | |
| 56 | Fusing Unit # | |
| 57 | Fusing Belt | |
| 58 | Hot Roller | |
| 59 | Pressure Roller | |
| 60 | Lube Roller:Press Roller | |
| 61 | Clng Roller:Press Roller | |
| 62 | Shaft Bearings:Press Roll | |
| 63 | Used Toner Bottle # | |
| 64 | ADF Pickup Roller # | |
| 65 | ADF Feed Belt # | |
| 66 | ADF Reverse Roller # | |
| 67 | ADF Transport Belt | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 68 | ADF Dust Filter # | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7625 | Pg Count History:Latest 1 | |
| 7626 | Pg Count History:Latest 2 | |
| 7627 | Pg Count History:Latest 3 | |
| 1 | K PCU# | |
| 2 | K PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 3 | K PCU Lube Bar | |
| 4 | K PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 5 | K PCU Developer | |
| 6 | K PCU Drum | |
| 7 | K PCU Charge Grid Unit | |
| 8 | K PCU Charge Grid Wire | |
| 9 | K PCU Idle Gear | |
| 10 | K PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 11 | K PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | |
| 12 | K PCU Joint | |
| 13 | M PCU# | |
| 14 | M PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 15 | M PCU Lube Bar | |
| 16 | M PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 17 | M PCU Developer | |
| 18 | M PCU Drum | |
| 19 | M PCU Charge Roller Unit | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 20 | M PCU Idle Gear | |
| 21 | M PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 22 | M PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | |
| 23 | M PCU Joint | |
| 24 | C PCU# | |
| 25 | C PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 26 | C PCU Lube Bar | |
| 27 | C PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 28 | C PCU Developer | |
| 29 | C PCU Drum | |
| 30 | C PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 31 | C PCU Idle Gear | |
| 32 | C PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 33 | C PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | |
| 34 | C PCU Joint | |
| 35 | Y PCU# | |
| 36 | Y PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 37 | Y PCU Lube Bar | |
| 38 | Y PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 39 | Y PCU Developer | |
| 40 | Y PCU Drum | |
| 41 | Y PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 42 | Y PCU Idle Gear | |

Group 7000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 43 | Y PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 44 | Y PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | |
| 45 | Y PCU Joint | |
| 46 | ITB # | |
| 47 | ITB Cleaning Unit # | |
| 48 | ITB Cleaning Blade | |
| 49 | ITB Lube Bar | |
| 50 | Lube Application Blade | |
| 51 | PTR Unit # | |
| 52 | PTR Blade | |
| 53 | PTR | |
| 54 | Discharge Roller | |
| 55 | PTR Lube Bar | |
| 56 | Fusing Unit # | |
| 57 | Fusing Belt | |
| 58 | Hot Roller | |
| 59 | Pressure Roller | |
| 60 | Lube Roller:Press Roller | |
| 61 | Clng Roller:Press Roller | |
| 62 | Shaft Bearings:Press Roll | |
| 63 | Used Toner Bottle # | |
| 64 | ADF Pickup Roller # | |
| 65 | ADF Feed Belt # | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 66 | ADF Reverse Roller # | |
| 67 | ADF Transport Belt | |
| 68 | ADF Dust Filter # | |

| 7628 | Clear PM Counter | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Clear Exceeded Counts | Do this SP to clear all PM counts that have exceeded their limits. |
| 2 | Reset All Counts | Do this SP to clear all PM counts, including those that have not exceeded their limits. |

| 7801 | No./Firmware Version (ROM) |
|---|---|
| | Displays the ROM version numbers of the main machine and connected peripheral devices. |

| 7803 | PM Counter Display |
|---|---|
| | Displays the PM count since the last PM. |

| 7804 | PM Counter Reset |
|---|---|
| | Resets the PM count. |

| 7807 | SC/Jam Counter Reset |
|---|---|
| | Push [Start] to reset the SC and jam counters. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7826 | MF Error Counter (**Japan Only**) | |
| | Displays the number of counts requested of the card/key counter. | |
| 1 | Error Total | A request for the count total failed at power on. This error will occur if the device is installed but disconnected. |
| 2 | Error Staple | The request for a staple count failed at power on. This error will occur if the device is installed but disconnected. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7827 | MF Error Counter Clear (**Japan Only)** |
| | Press Execute to reset to 0 the values of SP7826. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7832 | Self-Diagnostic Result Display |
| | Push [#] to display a list of error codes. Nothing is displayed if no errors have occurred. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7835 | ACC Counter |
| | No information is available at this time. |
| 1 | Copy ACC |
| 2 | Printer ACC |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7836 | Total Memory Size |
| | Displays the contents of the memory on the controller board. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7852 | ADF Scan Glass | |
| | Displays the count for the number of times the machine has detected dust on the ARDF scanning glass at the beginning of copy jobs. This SP operates only after SP4020 001 has been turned on. | |
| 1 | Dust Counter | |
| 2 | Clear Counter | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7901 | Assert Info.**DFU** | |
| 1 | Filename | Used for debugging. |
| 2 | Line No. | |
| 3 | Value | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7931 | Toner Bottle Bk | Toner Information: Black |
| 7932 | Toner Bottle M | Toner Information: Magenta |
| 7933 | Toner Bottle C | Toner Information: Cyan |
| 7934 | Toner Bottle Y | Toner Information: Yellow |
| | Displays detailed information about the toner used in the machine. | |
| 1 | Model ID | |
| 2 | Cartridge Ver | |
| 3 | Brand ID | |
| 4 | Area ID | |
| 5 | Production ID | |
| 6 | Color ID | |

Group 7000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | Maintenance ID | |
| 8 | New | |
| 9 | Recycle Count | |
| 10 | Product Date | |
| 11 | Serial No | |
| 12 | EDP Code | |
| 13 | Toner Remaining | |
| 14 | Toner End | |
| 15 | Toner Refill | |
| 16 | Total Count Start | |
| 17 | Color Count:Start | |
| 18 | Total Count End | |
| 19 | Color Count:End | |
| 20 | Set Date | |
| 21 | End Date | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7935 | Toner Bottle Log 1: Bk | |
| 7936 | Toner Bottle Log 1: M | |
| 7937 | Toner Bottle Log 1: C | |
| 7938 | Toner Bottle Log 1: Y | |
| 1 | Serial No | |
| 2 | Set Date | |
| 3 | Total Count Start | |
| 4 | Serial No | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Set Date | |
| 6 | Total Count Start | |
| 7 | Serial No | |
| 8 | Set Date | |
| 9 | Total Count Start | |
| 10 | Serial No | |
| 11 | Set Date | |
| 12 | Total Count Start | |
| 13 | Serial No | |
| 14 | Set Date | |
| 15 | Total Count Start | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7940 | PM MotdrvdistanceDisp | |
| 7942 | Motdrvdistance%Disp | |
| 7944 | Motor Drv Distance | |
| 1 | PCU:K | |
| 2 | PCU:M | |
| 3 | PCU:C | |
| 4 | PCU:Y | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7945 | Pg Count | |
| 7951 | Pg Count: End Std Value | |
| 2 | K PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 3 | K PCU Lube Bar | |

Group 7000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | K PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 5 | K PCU Developer | |
| 6 | K PCU Drum | |
| 7 | K PCU Charge Grid Unit | |
| 8 | K PCU Charge Grid Wire | |
| 9 | K PCU Idle Gear | |
| 10 | K PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 11 | K PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | **Not Used** |
| 12 | K PCU Joint | |
| 13 | M PCU# | |
| 14 | M PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 15 | M PCU Lube Bar | |
| 16 | M PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 17 | M PCU Developer | |
| 18 | M PCU Drum | |
| 19 | M PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 20 | M PCU Idle Gear | |
| 21 | M PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 22 | M PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | **Not Used** |
| 23 | M PCU Joint | |
| 24 | C PCU# | |
| 25 | C PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 26 | C PCU Lube Bar | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 27 | C PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 28 | C PCU Developer | |
| 29 | C PCU Drum | |
| 30 | C PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 31 | C PCU Idle Gear | |
| 32 | C PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 33 | C PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | **Not Used** |
| 34 | C PCU Joint | |
| 35 | Y PCU# | |
| 36 | Y PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 37 | Y PCU Lube Bar | |
| 38 | Y PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 39 | Y PCU Developer | |
| 40 | Y PCU Drum | |
| 41 | Y PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 42 | Y PCU Idle Gear | |
| 43 | Y PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 44 | Y PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | **Not Used** |
| 45 | Y PCU Joint | |
| 46 | ITB # | |
| 47 | ITB Cleaning Unit # | |
| 48 | ITB Cleaning Blade | |
| 49 | ITB Lube Bar | |

Group 7000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 50 | Lube Application Blade | |
| 51 | PTR Unit # | |
| 52 | PTR Blade | |
| 53 | PTR | |
| 54 | Discharge Roller | |
| 55 | PTR Lube Bar | |
| 56 | Fusing Unit # | |
| 57 | Fusing Belt | |
| 58 | Hot Roller | |
| 59 | Pressure Roller | |
| 60 | Lube Roller:Press Roller | |
| 61 | Clng Roller:Press Roller | |
| 62 | Shaft Bearings:Press Roll | |
| 63 | Used Toner Bottle # | |
| 64 | ADF Pickup Roller # | |
| 65 | ADF Feed Belt # | |
| 66 | ADF Reverse Roller # | |
| 67 | ADF Transport Belt | |
| 68 | ADF Dust Filter # | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7954 | Pg Count %Display |
| | This SP displays the current usage (listed as percent of usage) of the components listed below:<br>Current Usage/Standard Usage Service Life x 100 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | K PCU# | |
| 2 | K PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 3 | K PCU Lube Bar | |
| 4 | K PCU App/Clng Blade | |
| 5 | K PCU Developer | |
| 6 | K PCU Drum | |
| 7 | K PCU Charge Grid Unit | |
| 8 | K PCU Charge Grid Wire | |
| 9 | K PCU Idle Gear | |
| 10 | K PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 11 | K PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | |
| 12 | K PCU Joint | |
| 13 | M PCU# | |
| 14 | M PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 15 | M PCU Lube Bar | |
| 16 | M PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 17 | M PCU Developer | |
| 18 | M PCU Drum | |
| 19 | M PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 20 | M PCU Idle Gear | |
| 21 | M PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 22 | M PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | |
| 23 | M PCU Joint | |

Group 7000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 24 | C PCU# | |
| 25 | C PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 26 | C PCU Lube Bar | |
| 27 | C PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 28 | C PCU Developer | |
| 29 | C PCU Drum | |
| 30 | C PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 31 | C PCU Idle Gear | |
| 32 | C PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 33 | C PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | |
| 34 | C PCU Joint | |
| 35 | Y PCU# | |
| 36 | Y PCU Cleaning Blade | |
| 37 | Y PCU Lube Bar | |
| 38 | Y PCU Lube App/Clng Blade | |
| 39 | Y PCU Developer | |
| 40 | Y PCU Drum | |
| 41 | Y PCU Charge Roller Unit | |
| 42 | Y PCU Idle Gear | |
| 43 | Y PCU Lube App/Clng Brush | |
| 44 | Y PCU Toner Cleaning Brush | |
| 45 | Y PCU Joint | |
| 46 | ITB# | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 47 | ITB Cleaning Unit | |
| 48 | ITB Cleaning Blade | |
| 49 | ITB Lube Bar | |
| 50 | Lube Application Blade | |
| 51 | PTR Unit# | |
| 52 | PTR Blade | |
| 53 | PTR Roller | |
| 54 | Discharge Roller | |
| 55 | PTR Lube Bar | |
| 56 | Fusing Unit # | |
| 57 | Fusing Belt | |
| 58 | Hot Roller | |
| 59 | Pressure Roller | |
| 60 | Lube Roller: Press Roller | |
| 61 | Press Roller | |
| 62 | Shaft Bearings: Press Roll | |
| 63 | Used Toner Bottle# | |
| 64 | ADF Pickup Roller# | |
| 65 | ADF Feed Belt# | |
| 66 | ADF Reverse Roller# | |
| 67 | ADF Transport Belt | |
| 68 | Dust Filter# | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7958 | Display Mtr Drv Distance |

Group 7000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Drum Motor:K | |
| 2 | Drum Motor:M | |
| 3 | Drum Motor:C | |
| 4 | Drum Motor:Y | |
| 5 | Cleaning Motor:K | |
| 6 | Cleaning Motor:M | |
| 7 | Cleaning Motor:C | |
| 8 | Cleaning Motor:Y | |
| 9 | Development Motor:K | |
| 10 | Development Motor:M | |
| 11 | Development Motor:C | |
| 12 | Development Motor:Y | |
| 13 | ITB Drive Motor | |
| 14 | PTR Motor | |
| 15 | Fusing Motor | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7959 | Motor Drv Total |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7960 | Motor Drv Distance Reset | |
| 1 | Drum Motor:K | |
| 2 | Drum Motor:M | |
| 3 | Drum Motor:C | |
| 4 | Drum Motor:Y | |
| 5 | Cleaning Motor:K | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6 | Cleaning Motor:M | |
| 7 | Cleaning Motor:C | |
| 8 | Cleaning Motor:Y | |
| 9 | Development Motor:K | |
| 10 | Development Motor:M | |
| 11 | Development Motor:C | |
| 12 | Development Motor:Y | |
| 13 | ITB Drive Motor | |
| 14 | PTR Motor | |
| 15 | Fusing Motor | |

# 5.9 GROUP 8000

These new SP counters are provided for MFP, LP, and Wide Format machines that employ GW Architecture. These SP codes have been created in response to requests by customers, sales personnel and customer engineers, and R&D staff for a standardized set of counters that can be used to log more detailed information about machine operation. These SPs are absolutely essential to provide more detailed counters and job logs to match similar features that are being developed by competitors.

**Current Status of the SP8xxx Counters**

Many of these counters are provided for features that are currently not available, such as sending color faxes, and so on. However, here are some Group 8 codes that when used in combination with others, can provide useful information.

| SP Numbers | What They Do |
|---|---|
| SP8211~SP8216 | The number of pages scanned to the document server. |
| SP8401~SP8406 | The number of pages printed from the document server |
| SP8691~SP8696 | The number of pages sent from the document server |

Specifically, the following questions can be answered:

- How is the document server actually being used?
- What application is using the document server most frequently?
- What data in the document server is being reused?

**Group 8 Service Table Keys**

Many of the SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation (the mode of operation is referred to as an 'application'). Before reading the Group 8 Service Table, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

| Prefixes | Meaning | |
|---|---|---|
| T: | Total: (Grand Total). | Grand total of items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.). |
| C: | Copy application. | Totals (pages, jobs, etc.) executed for each |

| Prefixes | Meaning | |
|---|---|---|
| F: | Fax application | application when the job was not stored on the document server. |
| P: | Print application. | |
| S: | Scan application. | |
| L: | Local storage (document server) | Totals (jobs, pages, etc.) for the document server. The L: counters work differently case by case. Sometimes, they count jobs/pages stored on the document server; this can be in document server mode (from the document server window), or from another mode, such as from a printer driver or by pressing the Store File button in the Copy mode window. Sometimes, they include occasions when the user uses a file that is already on the document server. Each counter will be discussed case by case. |
| O: | Other applications (external network applications, for example) | Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) will also be counted with this group in the future. |



The Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs. Read over the list of abbreviations below and refer to it again if you see the name of an SP that you do not understand.

| Abbreviation | What It Means |
|---|---|
| / | "By", e.g. "T:Jobs/Apl" = Total Jobs "by" Application |
| > | More (2> "2 or more", 4> "4 or more" |
| AddBook | Address Book |
| Apl | Application |

Group 8000

| Abbreviation | What It Means |
|---|---|
| B/W | Black & White |
| Bk | Black |
| C | Cyan |
| ColCr | Color Create |
| ColMode | Color Mode |
| Comb | Combine |
| Comp | Compression |
| Deliv | Delivery |
| DesApl | Designated Application. The application (Copy, Fax, Scan, Print) used to store the job on the document server, for example. |
| Dev Counter | Development Count, no. of pages developed. |
| Dup, Duplex | Duplex, printing on both sides |
| Emul | Emulation |
| FC | Full Color |
| FIN | Post-print processing, i.e. finishing (punching, stapling, etc.) |
| Full Bleed | No Margins |
| GenCopy | Generation Copy Mode |
| GPC | Get Print Counter. For jobs 10 pages or less, this counter does not count up. For jobs larger than 10 pages, this counter counts up by the number that is in excess of 10 (e.g., for an 11-page job, the counter counts up 11-10 =1) |
| IFax | Internet Fax |
| ImgEdt | Image Edit performed on the original with the copier GUI, e.g. border removal, adding stamps, page numbers, etc. |

| Abbreviation | What It Means |
|---|---|
| K | Black (YMCK) |
| LS | Local Storage. Refers to the document server. |
| LSize | Large (paper) Size |
| Mag | Magnification |
| MC | One color (monochrome) |
| NRS | New Remote Service, which allows a service center to monitor machines remotely. "NRS" is used overseas, "CSS" is used in Japan. |
| Org | Original for scanning |
| OrgJam | Original Jam |
| Palm 2 | Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor: A pair of utilities that allows print jobs to be distributed evenly among the printers on the network, and allows files to moved around, combined, and converted to different formats. |
| PC | Personal Computer |
| PGS | Pages. A page is the total scanned surface of the original. Duplex pages count as two pages, and A3 simplex count as two pages if the A3/DLT counter SP is switched ON. |
| PJob | Print Jobs |
| Ppr | Paper |
| PrtJam | Printer (plotter) Jam |
| PrtPGS | Print Pages |
| R | Red (Toner Remaining). Applies to the wide format model A2 only. This machine is under development and currently not available. |
| Rez | Resolution |

Group 8000

| Abbreviation | What It Means |
|---|---|
| SC | Service Code (Error SC code displayed) |
| Scn | Scan |
| Sim, Simplex | Simplex, printing on 1 side. |
| S-to-Email | Scan-to-E-mail |
| SMC | SMC report printed with SP5990. All of the Group 8 counters are recorded in the SMC report. |
| Svr | Server |
| TonEnd | Toner End |
| TonSave | Toner Save |
| TXJob | Send, Transmission |
| YMC | Yellow, Magenta, Cyan |
| YMCK | Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, BlacK |

**Note**: All of the Group 8 SPs are reset with SP5801 1 Memory All Clear, or the Counter Reset SP7808.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8001 | T:Total Jobs | These SPs count the number of times each application is used to do a job.<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>Note: The L: counter is the total number of times the other applications are used to send a job to the document server, plus the number of times a file already on the document server is used. |
| 8002 | C:Total Jobs | |
| 8003 | F: Total Jobs | |
| 8004 | P:Total Jobs | |
| 8005 | S:Total Jobs | |
| 8006 | L:Total Jobs | |

These SPs reveal the number of times an application is used, not the number of pages processed.

- When an application is opened for image input or output, this counts as one job.

- Interrupted jobs (paper jams, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- Only jobs executed by the customer are counted. Jobs executed by the customer engineer using the SP modes are not counted.
- When using secure printing (when a password is required to start the print job), the job is counted at the time when either "Delete Data" or "Specify Output" is specified.
- A job is counted as a fax job when the job is stored for sending.
- When a fax is received to fax memory, the F: counter increments but the L: counter does not (the document server is not used).
- A fax broadcast counts as one job for the F: counter (the fax destinations in the broadcast are not counted separately).
- A fax broadcast is counted only after all the faxes have been sent to their destinations. If one transmission generates an error, then the broadcast will not be counted until the transmission has been completed.
- A printed fax report counts as one job for the F: counter.
- The F: counter does not distinguish between fax sending or receiving.
- When a copy job on the document server is printed, SP8022 also increments, and when a print job stored on the document server is printed, SP8024 also increments.
- When an original is both copied and stored on the document server, the C: and L: counters both increment.
- When a print job is stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user presses the Document Server button to store the job on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user enters document server mode and prints data stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When an image received from Palm 2 is received and stored, the L: counter increments.



| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8011 | T:Jobs/LS | These SPs count the number of jobs stored to the document server by each application, to reveal how local storage is being used for input.<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. |
| 8012 | C:Jobs/LS | |
| 8013 | F:Jobs/LS | |
| 8014 | P:Jobs/LS | |
| 8015 | S:Jobs/LS | |
| 8016 | L:Jobs/LS | |

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8017 | O:Jobs/LS | |

- When a scan job is sent to the document server, the S: counter increments. When you enter document server mode and then scan an original, the L: counter increments.
- When a print job is sent to the document server, the P: counter increments.
- When a network application sends data to the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When an image from Palm 2 is stored on the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When a fax is sent to the document server, the F: counter increments.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8021 | T:Pjob/LS | These SPs reveal how files printed from the document server were stored on the document server originally.<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. |
| 8022 | C:Pjob/LS | |
| 8023 | F:Pjob/LS | |
| 8024 | P:Pjob/LS | |
| 8025 | S:Pjob/LS | |
| 8026 | L:Pjob/LS | |
| 8027 | O:Pjob/LS | |

- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the C: counter increments.
- When an application like DeskTopBinder merges a copy job that was stored on the document server with a print job that was stored on the document server, the C: and P: counters both increment.
- When a job already on the document server is printed with another application, the L: counter increments.
- When a scanner job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the S: counter increments. If the original was scanned from within document server mode, then the L: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application (including Palm 2), are printed with another application, the O: counter increments.
- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with a network application

(Web Image Monitor, for example), the C: counter increments.

- When a fax on the document server is printed, the F: counter increments.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8031 | T:Pjob/DesApl | These SPs reveal what applications were used to output documents from the document server.<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>The L: counter counts the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. |
| 8032 | C:Pjob/DesApl | |
| 8033 | F:Pjob/DesApl | |
| 8034 | P:Pjob/DesApl | |
| 8035 | S:Pjob/DesApl | |
| 8036 | L:Pjob/DesApl | |
| 8037 | O:Pjob/DesApl | |

- When documents already stored on the document server are printed, the count for the application that started the print job is incremented.
- When the print job is started from a network application (Desk Top Binder, Web Image Monitor, etc.) the L: counter increments.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8041 | T:TX Jobs/LS | These SPs count the applications that stored files on the document server that were later accessed for transmission over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax).<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>Note: Jobs merged for sending are counted separately.<br>The L: counter counts the number of jobs scanned from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. |
| 8042 | C:TX Jobs/LS | |
| 8043 | C:TX Jobs/LS | |
| 8044 | P:TX Jobs/LS | |
| 8045 | S:TX Jobs/LS | |
| 8046 | L:TX Jobs/LS | |
| 8047 | O:TX Jobs/LS | |

- When a stored copy job is sent from the document server, the C: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application or Palm2 are sent as an e-mail, the O: counter increments.

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8051 | T:TX Jobs/DesApl | These SPs count the applications used to send files from the document server over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax). Jobs merged for sending are counted separately.<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>The L: counter counts the number of jobs sent from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. |
| 8052 | C:TX Jobs/DesApl | |
| 8053 | F:TX Jobs/DesApl | |
| 8054 | P:TX Jobs/DesApl | |
| 8055 | S:TX Jobs/DesApl | |
| 8056 | L:TX Jobs/DesApl | |
| 8057 | O:TX Jobs/DesApl | |

- If the send is started from Desk Top Binder or Web Image Monitor, for example, then the O: counter increments.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8061 | T:FIN Jobs | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs total the finishing methods. The finishing method is specified by the application. | |
| 8062 | C:FIN Jobs | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs total finishing methods for copy jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. | |
| 8063 | F:FIN Jobs | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs total finishing methods for fax jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. | |
| 8064 | P:FIN Jobs | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs total finishing methods for print jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. | |
| 8065 | S:FIN Jobs | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs total finishing methods for scan jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.<br>Note: Finishing features for scan jobs are not available at this time. | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8066 | L:FIN Jobs | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs total finishing methods for jobs output from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. The finishing method is specified from the print window within document server mode. | |
| 8067 | O:FIN Jobs | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs total finishing methods for jobs executed by an external application, over the network. The finishing method is specified by the application. | |
| 806x 1 | Sort | Number of jobs started in Sort mode. When a stored copy job is set for Sort and then stored on the document server, the L: counter increments. (See SP8066 1) |
| 806x 2 | Stack | Number of jobs started out of Sort mode. |
| 806x 3 | Staple | Number of jobs started in Staple mode. |
| 806x 4 | Booklet | Number of jobs started in Booklet mode. If the machine is in staple mode, the Staple counter also increments. |
| 806x 5 | Z-Fold | Number of jobs started In any mode other than the Booklet mode and set for folding (Z-fold). |
| 806x 6 | Punch | Number of jobs started in Punch mode. When Punch is set for a print job, the P: counter increments. (See SP8064 6.) |
| 806x 7 | Other | Reserved. Not used. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8071 | T:Jobs/PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of jobs broken down by the number of pages in the job, regardless of which application was used. | |
| 8072 | C:Jobs/PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count and calculate the number of copy jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job. | |

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8073 | F:Jobs/PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count and calculate the number of copy jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job. | |
| 8074 | P:Jobs/PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count and calculate the number of print jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job. | |
| 8075 | S:Jobs/PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count and calculate the number of scan jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job. | |
| 8076 | L:Jobs/PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count and calculate the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel, by the number of pages in the job. | |
| 8077 | O:Jobs/PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count and calculate the number of "Other" application jobs (Web Image Monitor, Palm 2, etc.) by size based on the number of pages in the job. | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 807x 1 | 1 Page | 807x 8 | 21~50 Pages |
| 807x 2 | 2 Pages | 807x 9 | 51~100 Pages |
| 807x 3 | 3 Pages | 807x 10 | 101~300 Pages |
| 807x 4 | 4 Pages | 807x 11 | 301~500 Pages |
| 807x 5 | 5 Pages | 807x 12 | 501~700 Pages |
| 807x 6 | 6~10 Pages | 807x 13 | 701~1000 Pages |
| 807x 7 | 11~20 Pages | 807x 14 | 1001~ Pages |

- For example: When a copy job stored on the document server is printed in document server mode, the appropriate L: counter (SP8076 0xx) increments.
- Printing a fax report counts as a job and increments the F: counter (SP 8073).

- Interrupted jobs (paper jam, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- If a job is paused and re-started, it counts as one job.
- If the finisher runs out of staples during a print and staple job, then the job is counted at the time the error occurs.
- For copy jobs (SP 8072) and scan jobs (SP 8075), the total is calculated by multiplying the number of sets of copies by the number of pages scanned. (One duplex page counts as 2.)
- The first test print and subsequent test prints to adjust settings are added to the number of pages of the copy job (SP 8072).
- When printing the first page of a job from within the document server screen, the page is counted.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8111 | T:FAX TX Jobs | [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, on a telephone line.<br>Note: Color fax sending is not available at this time. | |
| 8113 | F:FAX TX Jobs | [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax directly on a telephone line.<br>Note: Color fax sending is not available at this time. | |



- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- This SP counts fax jobs sent over a telephone line with a fax application, including documents stored on the document server.
- If the mode is changed during the job, the job will count with the mode set when the job started.
- If the same document is faxed to both a public fax line and an I-Fax at a destination where both are available, then this counter increments, and the I-Fax counter (812x) also increments.
- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8121 | T:IFAX TX Jobs | [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] |

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, as fax images using I-Fax.<br>Note: Color fax sending is not available at this time. | |
| 8123 | F:IFAX TX Jobs | [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent (not stored on the document server), as fax images using I-Fax.<br>Note: Color fax sending is not available at this time. | |

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The counters for color are provided for future use; the color fax feature is not available at this time.
- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8131 | T:S-to-Email Jobs | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and attached to an e-mail, regardless of whether the document server was used or not. | |
| 1 | B/W | Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white. |
| 2 | Color | Count for the number of jobs with color. |
| 3 | ACS | Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode. |
| 8135 | S:S-to-Email Jobs | |
| | These SPs count the number of jobs scanned and attached to an e-mail, without storing the original on the document server. | |
| 1 | B/W | Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white. |
| 2 | Color | Count for the number of jobs with color. |
| 3 | ACS | Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode. |

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is stored on the document server, after the job is stored it is determined to be

color or black-and-white then counted.

- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- If several jobs are combined for sending to the Scan Router, Scan-to-Email, or Scan-to-PC, or if one job is sent to more than one destination. each send is counted separately. For example, if the same document is sent by Scan-to-Email as well as Scan-to-PC, then it is counted twice (once for Scan-to-Email and once for Scan-to-PC).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8141 | T:Deliv Jobs/Svr | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and sent to a Scan Router server. | |
| 1 | B/W | Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white. |
| 2 | Color | Count for the number of jobs with color. |
| 3 | ACS | Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode. |
| 3 | ACS | Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode. |
| 8145 | S:Deliv Jobs/Svr | |
| | These SPs count the number of jobs scanned in scanner mode and sent to a Scan Router server. | |
| 1 | B/W | Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white. |
| 2 | Color | Count for the number of jobs with color. |
| 3 | ACS | Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode. |

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The jobs are counted even though the arrival and reception of the jobs at the Scan Router server cannot be confirmed.
- If even one color image is mixed with black-and-white images, then the job is counted as a "Color" job.

Group 8000

- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be delivered, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8151 | T:Deliv Jobs/PC | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC).<br>Note: At the present time, 8151 and 8155 perform identical counts. | | |
| 1 | B/W | Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white. | |
| 2 | Color | Count for the number of jobs with color. | |
| 3 | ACS | Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode. | |
| 8155 | S:Deliv Jobs/PC | | |
| | These SPs count the total number of jobs scanned and sent with Scan-to-PC. | | |
| 1 | B/W | Count for the number of jobs with black-and-white. | |
| 2 | Color | Count for the number of jobs with color. | |
| 3 | ACS | Count for the number of jobs using ACS mode. | |

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, it is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled while it is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8191 | T:Total Scan PGS | These SPs count the pages scanned by each application that uses the scanner to |
| 8192 | C:Total Scan PGS | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8193 | F:Total Scan PGS | scan images.<br>[0~9999999/ 1] |
| 8195 | S:Total Scan PGS | |
| 8196 | L:Total Scan PGS | |

- SP 8191 to 8196 count the number of scanned sides of pages, not the number of physical pages.
- These counters do not count reading user stamp data, or reading color charts to adjust color.
- Previews done with a scanner driver are not counted.
- A count is done only after all images of a job have been scanned.
- Scans made in SP mode are not counted.

**Examples**

- If 3 B5 pages and 1 A3 page are scanned with the scanner application but not stored, the S: count is 4.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server using the Store File button in the Copy mode window, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied but not stored, the C: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.



| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8201 | T:LSize Scan PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | This SP counts the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan and copy jobs.<br>Note: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display. | |
| 8203 | F:LSize Scan PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | This SP counts the total number of large pages input with the scanner for fax jobs only.<br>Note: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display. | |
| 8205 | S:LSize Scan PGS | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | This SP counts the total number of large pages input with the scanner for | |

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | scan jobs only<br>Note: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.. | |
| 820x 1 | A3/DLT, Larger | Counts A3/DLT and larger pages. |
| 820x 2 | A2, Larger | Counts A2 and larger pages. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8211 | T:Scan PGS/LS | These SPs count the number of pages scanned into the document server .<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen |
| 8212 | C:Scan PGS/LS | |
| 8213 | F:Scan PGS/LS | |
| 8215 | S:Scan PGS/LS | |
| 8216 | L:Scan PGS/LS | |

- Reading user stamp data is not counted.
- If a job is cancelled, the pages output as far as the cancellation are counted.
- If the scanner application scans and stores 3 B5 sheets and 1 A4 sheet, the S: count is 4.
- If pages are copied but not stored on the document server, these counters do not change.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8221 | ADF Org Feeds | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages fed through the ADF for front and back side scanning. | |
| 1 | Front | Number of front sides fed for scanning:<br>With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the number of pages fed for either simplex or duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | number of pages fed for duplex front side scanning. (The front side is determined by which side the user loads face up.) |
| 2 | Back | Number of rear sides fed for scanning. With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex rear-side scanning. |

- When 1 sheet is fed for duplex scanning the Front count is 1 and the Back count is 1.
- If a jam occurs during the job, recovery processing is not counted to avoid double counting. Also, the pages are not counted if the jam occurs before the first sheet is output.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8231 | Scan PGS/Mode | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages scanned by each ADF mode to determine the work load on the ADF. | |
| 1 | Large Volume | Selectable. Large copy jobs that cannot be loaded in the ADF at one time. |
| 2 | SADF | Selectable. Feeding pages one by one through the ADF. |
| 3 | Mixed Size | Selectable. Select "Mixed Sizes" on the operation panel. |
| 4 | Custom Size | Selectable. Originals of non-standard size. |
| 5 | Platen | Book mode. Raising the ADF and placing the original directly on the platen. |

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.
- The user cannot select mixed sizes or non-standard sizes with the fax application so if the original's page sizes are mixed or non-standard, these are not counted.
- If the user selects "Mixed Sizes" for copying in the platen mode, the Mixed Size count

is enabled.

- In the SADF mode if the user copies 1 page in platen mode and then copies 2 pages with SADF, the Platen count is 1 and the SADF count is 3.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8241 | T:Scan PGS/Org | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of scanned pages by original type for all jobs, regardless of which application was used. | |
| 8242 | C:Scan PGS/Org | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Copy jobs. | |
| 8243 | F:Scan PGS/Org | [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Fax jobs. | |
| 8245 | S:Scan PGS/Org | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Scan jobs. | |
| 8246 | L:Scan PGS/Org | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen | |

| | 8241 | | 8242 | 8245 | 8246 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 824x 1: Text | | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| 824x 2: Text/Photo | | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| 824x 3: Photo | | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| 824x 4: GenCopy, Pale | | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| 824x 5: Map | | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| 824x 6: Normal/Detail | | Yes | No | No | No |
| 824x 7: Fine/Super Fine | | Yes | No | No | No |
| 824x 8: Binary | | Yes | No | Yes | No |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 824x 9: Grayscale | Yes | No | Yes | No |
| 824x 10: Color | Yes | No | Yes | No |

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8251 | T:Scan PGS/ImgEdt | These SPs show how many times Image Edit features have been selected at the operation panel for each application. Some examples of these editing features are:<br>Erase> Border<br>Erase> Center<br>Image Repeat<br>Centering<br>Positive/Negative<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>Note: The count totals the number of times the edit features have been used. A detailed breakdown of exactly which features have been used is not given. |
| 8252 | C:Scan PGS/ImgEdt | |
| 8255 | P:Scan PGS/ImgEdt | |
| 8256 | L:Scan PGS/ImgEdt | |
| 8257 | O:Scan PGS/ImgEdt | |

- The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8261 | T:Scn PGS/ColCr | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of scanned pages by the color processing mode used. | |
| 8261 1 | Color Conversion | |
| 8261 2 | Color Erase | |
| 8261 3 | Background | |

Group 8000

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8261 4 | Other | | |
| 8262 | C:Scn PGS/ColCr | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages by the color processing mode used for Copy jobs only. | | |
| 8262 1 | Color Conversion | | |
| 8262 2 | Color Erase | | |
| 8262 3 | Background | | |
| 8262 4 | Other | | |

- These counters are enabled only for MFP machines that support color. The wide format machines do not support the "Background" or "Other" counters.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8265 | S: Scn PGS/ColCr | |
| 8266 | L: Scn PGS/TWAIN | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8281 | T:Scan PGS/TWAIN | These SPs count the number of pages scanned using a TWAIN driver. These counters reveal how the TWAIN driver is used for delivery functions.<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>Note: At the present time, these counters perform identical counts. |
| 8285 | S:Scan PGS/TWAIN | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8291 | T:Scan PGS/Stamp | These SPs count the number of pages stamped with the stamp in the ADF unit.<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen |
| 8293 | F:Scan PGS/Stamp | |
| 8295 | S:Scan PGS/Stamp | |
| 8296 | L:Scan PGS/Stamp | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8301 | T:Scan PGS/Size | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by all applications. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-441]. | |
| 8302 | C:Scan PGS/Size | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Copy application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-442]. | |
| 8303 | F:Scan PGS/Size | [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Fax application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-443]. | |
| 8305 | S:Scan PGS/Size | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Scan application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-445]. | |
| 8306 | L:Scan PGS/Size | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-446]. | |
| 830x 1 | A3 | |
| 830x 2 | A4 | |
| 830x 3 | A5 | |
| 830x 4 | B4 | |
| 830x 5 | B5 | |
| 830x 6 | DLT | |

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 830x 7 | LG | |
| 830x 8 | LT | |
| 830x 9 | HLT | |
| 830x 10 | Full Bleed | |
| 830x 100 | A2 | Not supported. |
| 830x 101 | B3 | Not supported. |
| 830x 254 | Other (Standard) | |
| 830x 255 | Other (Custom) | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8311 | T:Scan PGS/Rez | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings. | | |
| 8315 | S:Scan PGS/Rez | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings.<br>Note: At the present time, 8311 and 8315 perform identical counts. | | |
| 831x 1 | 1200dpi ~ | | |
| 831x 2 | 600dpi~1199dpi | | |
| 831x 3 | 400dpi~599dpi | | |
| 831x 4 | 200dpi~399dpi | | |
| 831x 5 | ~199dpi | | |

- Copy resolution settings are fixed so they are not counted.
- The Fax application does not allow finely-adjusted resolution settings so no count is done for the Fax application.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8381 | T:Total PrtPGS | These SPs count the number of pages printed by the customer. The counter for the application used for storing the pages increments.<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter. |
| 8382 | C:Total PrtPGS | |
| 8383 | F:Total PrtPGS | |
| 8384 | P:Total PrtPGS | |
| 8385 | S:Total PrtPGS | |
| 8386 | L:Total PrtPGS | |
| 8387 | O:Total PrtPGS | |

- When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.
- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the following pages are not counted as printed pages:
- Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
- Blank pages inserted as document covers, chapter title sheets, and slip sheets.
- Reports printed to confirm counts.
- All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
- Test prints for machine image adjustment.
- Error notification reports.
- Partially printed pages as the result of a copier jam.



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8391 | LSize PrtPGS | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger.<br>Note: In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine. | | |
| 8391 1 | A3/DLT, Larger | | |
| 8391 2 | A2, Larger | Not supported with this printer. | |

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8401 | T:PrtPGS/LS | These SPs count the number of pages printed from the document server. The counter for the application used to print the pages is incremented.<br>The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.<br>[0~9999999/ 1] |
| 8402 | C:PrtPGS/LS | |
| 8403 | F:PrtPGS/LS | |
| 8404 | P:PrtPGS/LS | |
| 8405 | S:PrtPGS/LS | |
| 8406 | L:PrtPGS/LS | |

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the L: count.
- Fax jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the F: count.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8411 | Prints/Duplex | This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted.<br>[0~9999999/ 1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8421 | T:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing. This is the total for all applications. | |
| 8422 | C:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the copier application. | |
| 8423 | F:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | [0~9999999/ **0** / 1] |
| | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the fax application. | |
| 8424 | P:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | [0~9999999/ 1] |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the printer application. | | |
| 8425 | S:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the scanner application. | | |
| 8426 | L:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing from within the document server mode window at the operation panel. | | |
| 8427 | O:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by Other applications | | |
| 842x 1 | Simplex> Duplex | | |
| 842x 2 | Duplex> Duplex | | |
| 842x 3 | Book> Duplex | | |
| 842x 4 | Simplex Combine | | |
| 842x 5 | Duplex Combine | | |
| 842x 6 | 2> | 2 pages on 1 side (2-Up) | |
| 842x 7 | 4> | 4 pages on 1 side (4-Up) | |
| 842x 8 | 6> | 6 pages on 1 side (6-Up) | |
| 842x 9 | 8> | 8 pages on 1 side (8-Up) | |
| 842x 10 | 9> | 9 pages on 1 side (9-Up) | |
| 842x 11 | 16> | 16 pages on 1 side (16-Up) | |
| 842x 12 | Booklet | | |
| 842x 13 | Magazine | | |

Group 8000

- These counts (SP8421 to SP8427) are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.
- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.
- Here is a summary of how the counters work for Booklet and Magazine modes:

| Booklet | | | Magazine | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Original Pages** | **Count** | | **Original Pages** | **Count** |
| 1 | 1 | | 1 | 1 |
| 2 | 2 | | 2 | 2 |
| 3 | 2 | | 3 | 2 |
| 4 | 2 | | 4 | 2 |
| 5 | 3 | | 5 | 4 |
| 6 | 4 | | 6 | 4 |
| 7 | 4 | | 7 | 4 |
| 8 | 4 | | 8 | 4 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8431 | T:PrtPGS/ImgEdt | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below, regardless of which application was used. | |
| 8432 | C:PrtPGS/ImgEdt | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the copy application. | |
| 8434 | P:PrtPGS/ImgEdt | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the print application. | |
| 8436 | L:PrtPGS/ImgEdt | [0~9999999/ 1] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs count the total number of pages output from within the document server mode window t the operation panel with the three features below. | |
| 8437 | O:PrtPGS/ImgEdt | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with Other applications. | |
| 843x 1 | Cover/Slip Sheet | Total number of covers or slip sheets inserted. The count for a cover printed on both sides counts 2. |
| 843x 2 | Series/Book | The number of pages printed in series (one side) or printed as a book with booklet right/left pagination. |
| 843x 3 | User Stamp | The number of pages printed where stamps were applied, including page numbering and date stamping. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8441 | T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by all applications. | |
| 8442 | C:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the copy application. | |
| 8443 | F:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the fax application. | |
| 8444 | P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the printer application. | |
| 8445 | S:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | [0~9999999/ 1] |

Group 8000

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the scanner application. | | |
| 8446 | L:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel. | | |
| 8447 | O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by Other applications. | | |
| 844x 1 | A3 | | |
| 844x 2 | A4 | | |
| 844x 3 | A5 | | |
| 844x 4 | B4 | | |
| 844x 5 | B5 | | |
| 844x 6 | DLT | | |
| 844x 7 | LG | | |
| 844x 8 | LT | | |
| 844x 9 | HLT | | |
| 844x 10 | Full Bleed | | |
| 844x 100 | A2 | Not supported with this printer. | |
| 844x 101 | B3 | Not supported with this printer. | |
| 844x 254 | Other (Standard) | | |
| 844x 255 | Other (Custom) | | |

- These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8451 | PrtPGS/Ppr Tray | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station. | |
| 1 | Bypass | Bypass Tray |
| 2 | Tray 1 | Copier |
| 3 | Tray 2 | Copier |
| 4 | Tray 3 | Paper Tray Unit (Option) |
| 5 | Tray 4 | Paper Tray Unit (Option) |
| 6 | Tray 5 | LCT (Option) |
| 7 | Tray 6 | Currently not used. |
| 8 | Tray 7 | Currently not used. |
| 9 | Tray 8 | Currently not used. |
| 10 | Tray 9 | Currently not used. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8461 | T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all applications.<br>These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. However, these counts are based on output timing.<br>Blank sheets (covers, chapter covers, slip sheets) are also counted.<br>During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1. | |
| 8462 | C:PrtPGS/Ppr Type | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the copy application. | |
| 8463 | F:PrtPGS/Ppr Type | [0~9999999/ 0 / 1] |

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the fax application. | |
| 8464 | P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the printer application. | |
| 8466 | L:PrtPGS/Ppr Type | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel. | |
| 846x 1 | Normal | |
| 846x 2 | Recycled | |
| 846x 3 | Special | |
| 846x 4 | Thick | |
| 846x 5 | Normal (Back) | |
| 846x 6 | Thick (Back) | |
| 846x 7 | OHP | |
| 846x 8 | Other | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8471 | PrtPGS/Mag | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by magnification rate the number of pages printed. | |
| 1 | ~49% | |
| 2 | 50%~99% | |
| 3 | 100% | |
| 4 | 101%~200% | |
| 5 | 201% ~ | |

- Counts are done for magnification adjusted for pages, not only on the operation panel

but performed remotely with an external network application capable of performing magnification adjustment as well.

- Magnification adjustments done with printer drivers with PC applications such as Excel are also counted.
- Magnification adjustments done for adjustments after they have been stored on the document server are not counted.
- Magnification adjustments performed automatically during Auto Reduce/Enlarge copying are counted.
- The magnification rates of blank cover sheets, slip sheets, etc. are automatically assigned a rate of 100%.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8481 | T:PrtPGS/TonSave | These SPs count the number of pages printed with the Toner Save feature switched on.<br>Note: These SPs return the same results as this SP is limited to the Print application.<br>[0~9999999/ 1] |
| 8484 | P:PrtPGS/TonSave | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8491 | T:PrtPGS/Col Mode | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages output by the Copy, document server, and Fax applications. | |
| 8492 | C:PrtPGS/Col Mode | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total output by the Copy application only | |
| 8492 | C:PrtPGS/Col Mode | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total output by the Copy application only | |
| 8493 | F:PrtPGS/Col Mode | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total output by the Fax application only | |
| 8496 | L:PrtPGS/Col Mode | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total output from within the document server mode window at the operation panel. | |
| 849x 1 | B/W | |

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 849x 2 | Single Color | Color MFP/2-color MFP machines only. |
| 849x 3 | Two Color | Color MFP/2-color MFP machines only. |
| 849x 4 | Full Color | Color MFP machines only |

**Notes for SP8491 to SP8496**

- These SPs apply to the Copy, document server, and Fax applications only. They do not apply to the Print application.
- When the ACS feature is used to select the color settings automatically, the results of the ACS execute is used to increment the appropriate counter.
- If a color stamp is selected for printing on a monochrome document, the count is for B/W.
- If the output is black and white even if color print mode was selected, the pages count as Full Color.
- The color mode selected for a document stored on the document server is counted. (The color selection cannot be changed once the document is stored on the document server.)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8501 | T:PrtPGS/Col Mode | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages printed. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Single Color | Color MFP and 2-Color MFP machines only. | |
| 3 | Full Color | Color MFP and Color LP machines only. | |
| 8504 | P:PrtPGS/Col Mode | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the number of pages printed with the Print application. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Single Color | Color MFP and 2-Color MFP machines only. | |
| 3 | Full Color | Color MFP and Color LP machines only. | |
| 8507 | O:PrtPGS/Col Mode | | [0~9999999/ 1] |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | These SPs count by color mode the number of pages printed with the other applications. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Single Color | Color MFP and 2-Color MFP machines only. | |
| 3 | Full Color | Color MFP and Color LP machines only. | |

- At the present time, 8501 and 8504 perform identical counts, because they are both limited to the Print application.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8511 | T:PrtPGS/Emul | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed. | | |
| 8514 | P:PrtPGS/Emul | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed. | | |
| 851x 1 | RPCS | | |
| 851x 2 | RPDL | | |
| 851x 3 | PS3 | | |
| 851x 4 | R98 | | |
| 851x 5 | R16 | | |
| 851x 6 | GL/GL2 | | |
| 851x 7 | R55 | | |
| 851x 8 | RTIFF | | |
| 851x 9 | PDF | | |
| 851x 10 | PCL5e/5c | | |
| 851x 11 | PCL XL | | |

Group 8000

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 851x 12 | IPDL-C | | |
| 851x 13 | BM-Links | Japan Only | |
| 851x 14 | Other | | |

- SP8511 and SP8514 return the same results as they are both limited to the Print application.
- Print jobs output to the document server are not counted.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8521 | T:PrtPGS/FIN | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by all applications. | |
| 8522 | C:PrtPGS/FIN | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Copy application. | |
| 8523 | F:PrtPGS/FIN | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Fax application. | |
| 8524 | P:PrtPGS/FIN | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Print application. | |
| 8525 | S:PrtPGS/FIN | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Scanner application. | |
| 8526 | L:PrtPGS/FIN | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel. | |
| 852x 1 | Sort | |

| | |
|---|---|
| 852x 2 | Stack |
| 852x 3 | Staple |
| 852x 4 | Booklet |
| 852x 5 | Z-Fold |
| 852x 6 | Punch |
| 852x 7 | Other |

**Note**:

- If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
- The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8531 | Staples | This SP counts the amount of staples used by the machine.<br>[0~9999999/ 1] |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8581 | T:Counter | [0~9999999/ 1] | | |
| | These SPs count the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.<br>Note: These SPs are supported by color MFP and LP machines only. | | | |
| | | **MFP Color** | **LP Color** | **Replaced:** |
| 1 | Total | Yes | Yes | SP73 1 |
| 2 | Total: Full Color | Yes | Yes | SP7003 020 |
| 3 | B&W/Single Color | Yes | Yes | SP7003 021 |
| 4 | Development: CMY | Yes | Yes | SP7003 10 |
| 5 | Development: K | Yes | Yes | SP7003 11 |

Group 8000

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6 | Copy: Color | Yes | No | SP7003 026 |
| 7 | Copy: B/W | Yes | No | SP7003 027 |
| 8 | Print: Color | Yes | Yes | SP7003 028 |
| 9 | Print: B/W | Yes | Yes | SP7003 029 |
| 10 | Total: Color | Yes | Yes | SP7003 030 |
| 11 | Total: B/W | Yes | Yes | SP7003 023 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8582 | C:Counter | | [0~9999999/ 1] | |
| | These SPs count the total output broken down by color output for the Copy application only.<br>Note: These SPs are supported by color copy MFP machines only.<br>These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display on the copy machine. | | | |
| | | | | |
| 1 | B/W | | | |
| 2 | Single Color | | | |
| 3 | Two Color | | | |
| 4 | Full Color | | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8583 | F:Counter | [0~9999999/ 1] | |
| | These SPs count the total output broken down by color output for the Fax application only.<br>These SPs is supported by color copy MFP machines only.<br>These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display on the copy machine. | | |
| | | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | Single Color | | |
| 3 | Two Color | | |
| 4 | Full Color | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8584 | P:Counter | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total output broken down by color output for the Print application only. These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display on the copy machine.<br>Note: These SPs are supported by color MFP and LP machines only. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Single Color | | |
| 3 | Full Color | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8586 | L:Counter | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the total output broken down by color for output from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display on the copy machine.<br>Note: These SPs are supported only by color copy MFP machines only with the fax application installed. | | |
| | | **MFP Color** | **Replaced:** |
| 1 | B/W | Yes | --- |
| 2 | Single Color | Yes | --- |
| 3 | Two Color | Yes | --- |
| 4 | Single Color | Yes | --- |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8591 | O:Counter | [0~9999999/ 1] |

Group 8000

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper use, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only. | | |
| 1 | A3/DLT | | |
| 2 | Duplex | | |
| 3 | Staple | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8601 | Coverage Counter | | |
| | | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | B/W Printing Pages | | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8631 | T:FAX TX PGS | [0 to 9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number. | |
| 8633 | F:FAX TX PGS | [0 to 9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number. | |

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8631 and SP8633 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8641 | T:FAX TX PGS | [0 to 9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to as fax images using I-Fax. | |
| 8643 | F:FAX TX PGS | [0 to 9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by Fax as fax images using I-Fax. | |

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8641 and SP8643 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8651 | T:S-to-Email PGS | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for both the Scan and document server applications. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Color | Supported by Color MFP machines only. | |
| 8655 | S:S-to-Email PGS | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for the Scan application only. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Color | Supported by Color MFP machines only. | |

**Notes**

Group 8000

- The count for B/W and Color pages is done after the document is stored on the HDD. If the job is cancelled before it is stored, the pages are not counted.
- If Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to 5 addresses, the count is 10 (the pages are sent to the same SMTP server together).
- If Scan-to-PC is used to send a 10-page document to 5 folders, the count is 50 (the document is sent to each destination of the SMB/FTP server).
- Due to restrictions on some devices, if Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to a large number of destinations, the count may be divided and counted separately. For example, if a 10-page document is sent to 200 addresses, the count is 10 for the first 100 destinations and the count is also 10 for the second 100 destinations, for a total of 20.).

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8661 | T:Deliv PGS/Svr | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by both Scan and LS applications. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Color | Supported by Color MFP machines only. | |
| 8665 | S:Deliv PGS/Svr | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by the Scan application. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Color | Supported by Color MFP machines only. | |

**Notes**

- The B/W and Color counts are done after the document is stored on the HDD of the Scan Router server.
- If the job is canceled before storage on the Scan Router server finishes, the counts are not done.
- The count is executed even if regardless of confirmation of the arrival at the Scan Router server.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8671 | T:Deliv PGS/PC | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC) with the Scan and LS applications. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Color | Supported by Color MFP machines only. | |
| 8675 | S:Deliv PGS/PC | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent with Scan-to-PC with the Scan application. | | |
| 1 | B/W | | |
| 2 | Color | Supported by Color MFP machines only. | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8681 | T:PCFAX TXPGS | These SPs count the number of pages sent by PC Fax. These SPs are provided for the Fax application only, so the counts for SP8681 and SP8683 are the same.<br>[0 to 9999999/ 0 / 1] |
| 8683 | F:PCFAX TXPGS | |

- This counts pages sent from a PC using a PC fax application, from the PC through the copier to the destination.
- When sending the same message to more than one place using broadcasting, the pages are only counted once. (For example, a 10-page fax is sent to location A and location B. The counter goes up by 10, not 20.)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8691 | T:TX PGS/LS | These SPs count the number of pages sent from the document server. The counter for the application that was used to store the pages is incremented.<br>[0~9999999/ 1]<br>The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File |
| 8692 | C:TX PGS/LS | |
| 8693 | F:TX PGS/LS | |
| 8694 | P:TX PGS/LS | |
| 8695 | S:TX PGS/LS | |

Group 8000

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8696 | L:TX PGS/LS | button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter. |

**Notes**

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the count.
- If several documents are merged for sending, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them
- When several documents are sent by a Fax broadcast, the F: count is done for the number of pages sent to each destination.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8701 | TX PGS/Port | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages sent by the physical port used to send them. For example, if a 3-page original is sent to 4 destinations via ISDN G4, the count for ISDN (G3, G4) is 12. | | |
| 1 | PSTN-1 | | |
| 2 | PSTN-2 | | |
| 3 | PSTN-3 | | |
| 4 | ISDN (G3,G4) | | |
| 5 | Network | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8711 | T:Scan PGS/Comp | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of compressed pages scanned into the document server, counted by the formats slisted below. | | |
| 1 | JPEG/JPEG2000 | | |
| 2 | TIFF (Multi/Single) | | |
| 3 | PDF | | |
| 4 | Other | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8715 | S:Scan PGS/Comp | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of compressed pages scanned by the scan application, counted by the formats slisted below. | | |
| 1 | JPEG/JPEG2000 | | |
| 2 | TIFF (Multi/Single) | | |
| 3 | PDF | | |
| 4 | Other | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8741 | RX PGS/Port | | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages received by the physical port used to receive them. | | |
| 1 | PSTN-1 | | |
| 2 | PSTN-2 | | |
| 3 | PSTN-3 | | |
| 4 | ISDN (G3,G4) | | |
| 5 | Network | | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8771 | Dev Counter | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the frequency of use (number of rotations of the development rollers) for black and other color toners.<br>**Note:** For machines that do not support color, the Black toner count is the same as the Total count. | |
| 1 | Total | All toners (YMCK) |
| 2 | K | Black toner |
| 3 | Y | Yellow toner |
| 4 | M | Magenta toner |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | C | Cyan toner |
| 6 | R | Red toner (Wide Format A2 machines only) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8781 | Toner Use Count: Color | [0~65 535] |
| | These SPs count the frequency of use (number of rotations of the development rollers) for black and other color toners. | |
| 1 | K | Black toner |
| 2 | M | Magenta toner |
| 3 | C | Cyan toner |
| 4 | Y | Yellow toner |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8791 1 | LS Memory Remain | This SP displays the percent of space available on the document server for storing documents.<br>[0~100/ 1] |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8801 | Toner Remain | | [0~100/ 1] |
| | This SP displays the percent of toner remaining for each color. This SP allows the user to check the toner supply at any time.<br>Note: This precise method of measuring remaining toner supply (1% steps) is better than other machines in the market that can only measure in increments of 10 (10% steps). | | |
| 1 | K | Black. | Supported by B/W, Color, Wide Format A2, Wide Format Roll machines. |
| 2 | Y | Yellow | Color machines only. |
| 3 | M | Magenta | |
| 4 | C | Cyan | |
| 5 | R | R | Wide Format A2 machines only. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8851 | Toner Coverage 0-10% | | [0~65 535] |
| | These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners. | | |
| 1 | K | Black toner | |
| 2 | M | Magenta toner | |
| 3 | C | Cyan toner | |
| 4 | Y | Yellow toner | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8861 | Toner Coverage 11-20% | | [0~65 535] |
| | These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners. | | |
| 1 | K | Black toner | |
| 2 | M | Magenta toner | |
| 3 | C | Cyan toner | |
| 4 | Y | Yellow toner | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8871 | Toner Coverage 21-30% | | [0~65 535] |
| | These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners. | | |
| 1 | K | Black toner | |
| 2 | M | Magenta toner | |
| 3 | C | Cyan toner | |
| 4 | Y | Yellow toner | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8881 | Toner Coverage 31 -% | [0~65 535] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for black other color toners. | |
| 1 | K | Black toner |
| 2 | M | Magenta toner |
| 3 | C | Cyan toner |
| 4 | Y | Yellow toner |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8891 | Pages: Current Toner | [0~65 535] |
| | These SPs count the number of pages for the current set toner. | |
| 1 | K | Black toner |
| 2 | M | Magenta toner |
| 3 | C | Cyan toner |
| 4 | Y | Yellow toner |

| | |
|---|---|
| 8901 | Page/Toner_Prev1 **DFU** |
| 8911 | Page/Toner_Prev2 **DFU** |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8921 | Cvr Cnt/Total | | |
| | | | |
| 1 | Coverage (%) BK | | |
| 11 | Cover/Page (%): BK | | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8941 | Machine Status | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| | These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode. These SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for improvement in their compliance with | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | ISO Standards. | |
| 1 | Operation Time | Engine operation time. Does not include time while controller is saving data to HDD (while engine is not operating). |
| 2 | Standby Time | Engine not operating. Includes time while controller saves data to HDD. Does not include time spent in Energy Save, Low Power, or Off modes. |
| 3 | Energy Save Time | Includes time while the machine is performing background printing. |
| 4 | Low Power Time | Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engine on. Includes time while machine is performing background printing. |
| 5 | Off Mode Time | Includes time while machine is performing background printing. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches. |
| 6 | Down Time/SC | Total down time due to SC errors. |
| 7 | Down Time/PrtJam | Total down time due to paper jams during printing. |
| 8 | Down Time/OrgJam | Total down time due to original jams during scanning. |
| 9 | Down Time/TonEnd | Total down time due to toner end. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8951 | AddBook Register | | |
| | These SPs count the number of events when the machine manages data registration. | | |
| 1 | User Code | User code registrations. | [0~9999999/ 1] |
| 2 | Mail Address | Mail address registrations. | |
| 3 | Fax Destination | Fax destination registrations. | |

Group 8000

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | Group | Group destination registrations. | |
| 5 | Transfer Request | Fax relay destination registrations for relay TX. | |
| 6 | F-Code | F-Code box registrations. | |
| 7 | Copy Program | Copy application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature. | [0~255 / 255] |
| 8 | Fax Program | Fax application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature. | |
| 9 | Printer Program | Printer application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature. | |
| 10 | Scanner Program | Scanner application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature. | |

# 5.10 PRINTER SERVICE MODE

## 5.10.1 SP1-XXX (SERVICE MODE)

| 1001 | Bit Switch | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 001 | Bit Switch 1 | | 0 | 1 | Default |
| | bit 0 | DFU (Design or Factory Use) | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 2 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 3 | **No I/O Timeout** | Disabled | Enabled | 0 |
| | | Enables/Disables MFP I/O Timeouts. If enabled, the MFP I/O Timeout setting will have no affect. I/O Timeouts will never occur. | | | |
| | bit 4 | **SD Card Save Mode** | Disabled | Enabled | 0 |
| | | If this bit switch is enabled, print jobs will be saved to the GW SD slot and not output to paper. | | | |
| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 7 | **[RPCS,PCL]: Printable area frame border** | Disabled | Enabled | 0 |
| | | Prints all RPCS and PCL jobs with a border around the printable area. | | | |

| 1001 | Bit Switch | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 002 | Bit Switch 2 | | 0 | 1 | Default |
| | bit 0 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 2 | **Applying a collate Type** | Shift Collate | Normal Collate | 0 |
| | | A collate type (shift or normal) will be applied to all jobs that do not explicitly define a collate type. **Note**: If #5-0 is enabled, this Bit Switch has no effect. | | | |
| | bit 3 | **[PCL5e/c,PS]: PDL Auto Switching** | Enabled | Disabled | 0 |
| | | Enables/Disables the MFPs ability to change the PDL processor mid-job. Some host systems submit jobs that contain both PS and PCL5e/c. If Auto PDL switching is disabled, these jobs will not be printed properly. | | | |
| | bit 4 | DFU | - | - | 0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 6 | **Switch dither** | Use normal dither | Use alternative dither | 0 |
| | bit 7 | DFU | - | - | 0 |

⇒

| **1001** | **Bit Switch** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 003 | Bit Switch 3 | | 0 | 1 | Default |
| | bit 0 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 2 | **[PCL5e/c]: Legacy HP compatibility** | Disabled | Enabled | 0 |
| | | Uses the same left margin as older HP models such as HP4000/HP8000. In other words, the left margin defined in the job (usually "<ESC>*r0A") will be changed to "<ESC>*r1A". | | | |
| | bit 3 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 4 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 7 | DFU | - | - | 0 |

⇒

| **1001** | **Bit Switch** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 004 | Bit Switch 4 | | 0 | 1 | Default |
| | bit 0 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 2 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 3 | DFU | - | - | 0 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | bit 4 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 7 | DFU | - | - | 0 |

⇒

| **1001** | **Bit Switch** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 005 | Bit Switch 5 | | 0 | 1 | Default |
| | bit 0 | **Show "Collate Type", "Staple Type" and "Punch Type" buttons on the operation panel.** | Disabled | Enabled | 0 |
| | | If enabled, users will be able to configure a Collate Type, Staple Type, and Punch Type from the operation panel. The available Types will depend on the device and configured options. After enabling this Bit Switch the settings will appear under: "User Tools > Printer Features > System" | | | |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 2 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 3 | **[PS]:PS Criteria** | Pattern3 | Pattern1 | 0 |
| | | Change the number of PS criterion used by the PS interpreter to determine whether a job is PS data or not. | | | |
| | bit 4 | **Increase max number of the stored jobs to 1000 jobs.** | Disabled (100) | Enabled (1000) | 0 |
| | | Changes the maximum number of jobs that can be stored on the HDD (via Job Type setting) to 1000. The default is 100. | | | |
| | bit 5 | **Face-up output** | Disabled | Enabled (Face-up) | 0 |
| | | All print jobs will be output face-up in the destination tray. | | | |
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | bit 7 | DFU | - | - | 0 |

| ⇒ | **1001** | **Bit Switch** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 006 | Bit Switch 6 | 0 | 1 | Default |
| | | bit 0 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 1 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 2 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 3 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 4 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 5 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 6 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 7 DFU | - | - | 0 |

| ⇒ | **1001** | **Bit Switch** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 007 | Bit Switch 7 | 0 | 1 | Default |
| | | bit 0 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 1 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 2 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 3 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 4 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 5 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 6 DFU | - | - | 0 |
| | | bit 7 DFU | - | - | 0 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1003** | [Clear Setting] | |
| 1003 1 | Initialize Printer System | |
| | Initializes settings in the “System” menu of the user mode. | |
| 1003 3 | Delete Program | This SP is for Japan only. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **1004** | [Print Summary] |
| 1004 1 | Print Summary |
| | Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings). |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1005** | [Display Version] | |
| 1005 1 | Disp. Version | |
| | Displays the version of the printer application. | |
| **1006** | [Sample/Locked Print] | **0**: Linked, 1: On |
| 1006 1 | Enables and disables the document server. When you select “0,” the document server is enabled or disabled in accordance with Copy Service Mode SP5-967. When you select “1,” the document server is enabled regardless of Copy Service Mode SP5-967. | |
| **1101** | [Data Recall] | |
| | Recalls a set of gamma settings. This can be either a) the factory setting, b) the previous setting, or c) the current setting. | |
| 1101 1 | Factory | |
| 1101 2 | Previous | |
| 1101 3 | Current | |
| 1101 4 | ACC | |

| | |
|---|---|
| **1102** | [Resolution Setting] |
| | Selects the printing mode (resolution) for the printer gamma adjustment. |
| 1102 1 | **2400x600 Photo**, 1800x600 Photo, 600 x 600 Photo, 2400x600 Text, 1800x600, Text, 600x600 Text |
| **1103** | [Test Page] |
| | Prints the test page to check the color balance before and after the gamma adjustment. |
| 1103 1 | Color Gray Scale |
| 1103 2 | Color Pattern |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1104** | [Gamma Adjustment] | |
| | Adjusts the printer gamma for the mode selected in the “Mode Selection” menu. | |
| 1104 1 | Black: Highlight | [0 to 30 / **15** / 1/step ] |
| 1104 2 | Black: Shadow | |
| 1104 3 | Black: Middle | |
| 1104 4 | Black: IDmax | |
| 1104 21 | Cyan: Highlight | |
| 1104 22 | Cyan: Shadow | |
| 1104 23 | Cyan: Middle | |
| 1104 24 | Cyan: IDmax | |
| 1104 41 | Magenta: Highlight | |
| 1104 42 | Magenta: Shadow | |
| 1104 43 | Magenta: Middle | |

| | |
|---|---|
| **1102** | [Resolution Setting] |
| | Selects the printing mode (resolution) for the printer gamma adjustment. |
| 1102 1 | **2400x600 Photo**, 1800x600 Photo, 600 x 600 Photo, 2400x600 Text, 1800x600, Text, 600x600 Text |
| **1103** | [Test Page] |
| | Prints the test page to check the color balance before and after the gamma adjustment. |
| 1103 1 | Color Gray Scale |
| 1103 2 | Color Pattern |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1104** | [Gamma Adjustment] | |
| | Adjusts the printer gamma for the mode selected in the “Mode Selection” menu. | |
| 1104 1 | Black: Highlight | [0 to 30 / **15** / 1/step ] |
| 1104 2 | Black: Shadow | |
| 1104 3 | Black: Middle | |
| 1104 4 | Black: IDmax | |
| 1104 21 | Cyan: Highlight | |
| 1104 22 | Cyan: Shadow | |
| 1104 23 | Cyan: Middle | |
| 1104 24 | Cyan: IDmax | |
| 1104 41 | Magenta: Highlight | |
| 1104 42 | Magenta: Shadow | |
| 1104 43 | Magenta: Middle | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1104 44 | Magenta: IDmax | |
| 1104 61 | Yellow: Highlight | |
| 1104 62 | Yellow: Shadow | |
| 1104 63 | Yellow: Middle | |
| 1104 64 | Yellow: IDmax | |

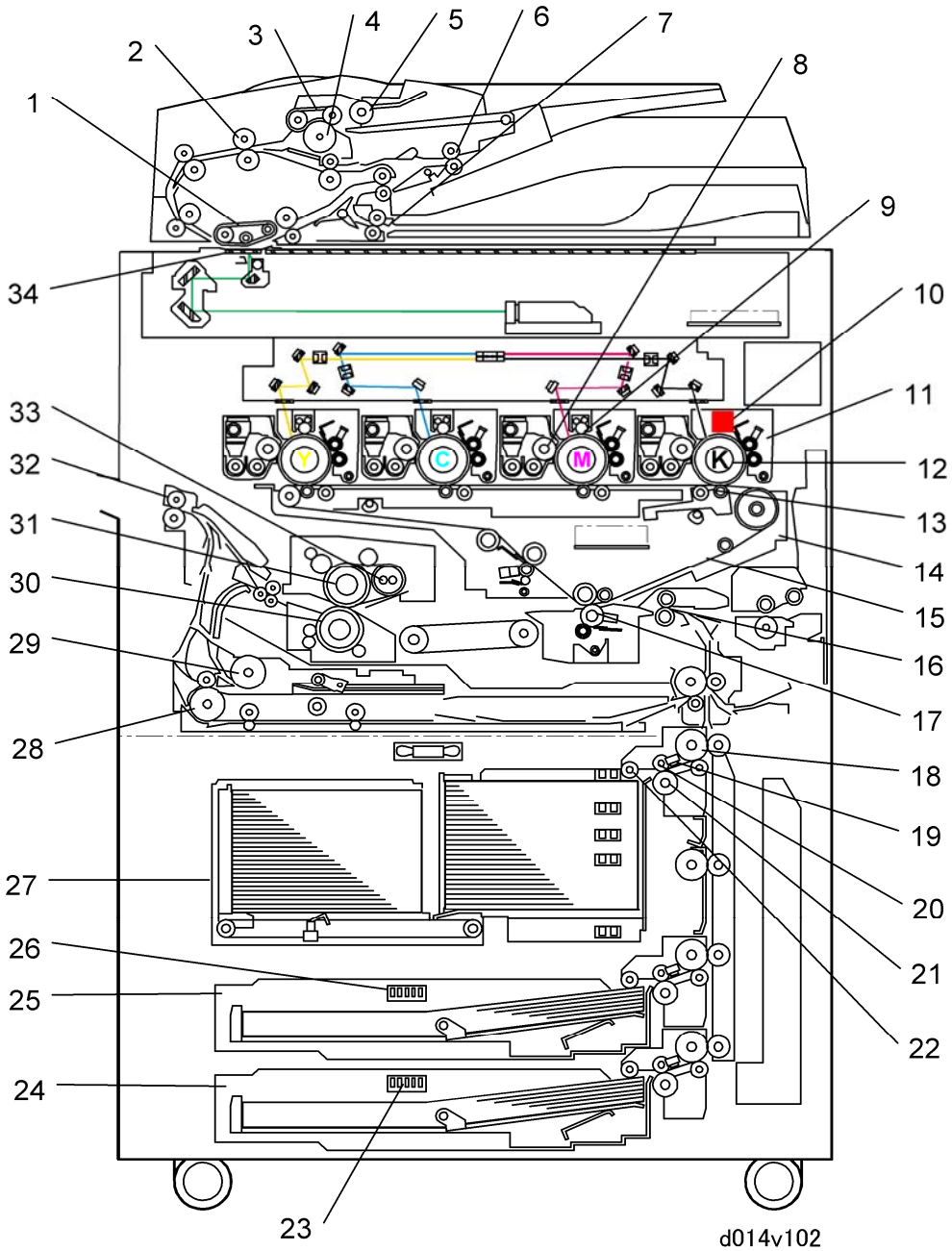
# DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

| REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| 68 ~ 69 | 03/05/2008 | Image Transfer |
| 87 | 03/05/2008 | Fusing Unit |

# 6. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

## 6.1 GENERAL OVERVIEW

### 6.1.1 MAIN MACHINE



1. Transport Belt (ARDF)
2. Grip Roller (ARDF)
3. Feed Belt (ARDF)
4. Separation Roller (ARDF)
5. Pick-up Roller (ARDF)
6. Upper Inverter Roller (ARDF)
7. Lower Inverter Roller (ARDF)
8. Development Roller
9. Charge Roller
10. Charge Corona Unit
11. PCU
12. OPC Drum
13. Image Transfer Roller
14. ITB Unit
15. Transfer Belt
16. Registration Roller
17. PTR Roller
18. Grip Roller
19. Feed Sensor (Paper Tray)
20. Feed Roller (Paper Tray)
21. Separation Roller (Paper Tray)
22. Pick-up Roller (Paper Tray)
23. Paper Size Switch (Tray 3)
24. Universal Tray (Tray 3)
25. Universal Tray (Tray 2)
26. Paper Size Switch (Tray 2)
27. Tandem Tray (Tray 1)
28. Inverter Exit Roller
29. Inverter Entrance Roller
30. Pressure Roller
31. Hot Roller
32. Exit Roller
33. Heating Roller
34. Exposure Glass (ARDF)

The color PCU units (Y,M,C) use a charge roller to charge the surface of the OPC drum.
The K PCU uses a charge corona unit (Scorotron type) to charge the surface of the drum.

# 6.2 LASER UNIT

There is an LD unit for each color, and each LD unit uses a two-beam system. A photodiode (PD) in each LD unit detects the light emitted from the LD unit. The output of the PD is fed back to the LD control board. The LD control board uses this information to control the amount of light to make sure that it remains at the correct level.

## 6.2.1 DUAL BEAM WRITING

In each LD unit, two beams move across the drum in the main scan direction.
The use of two beams:

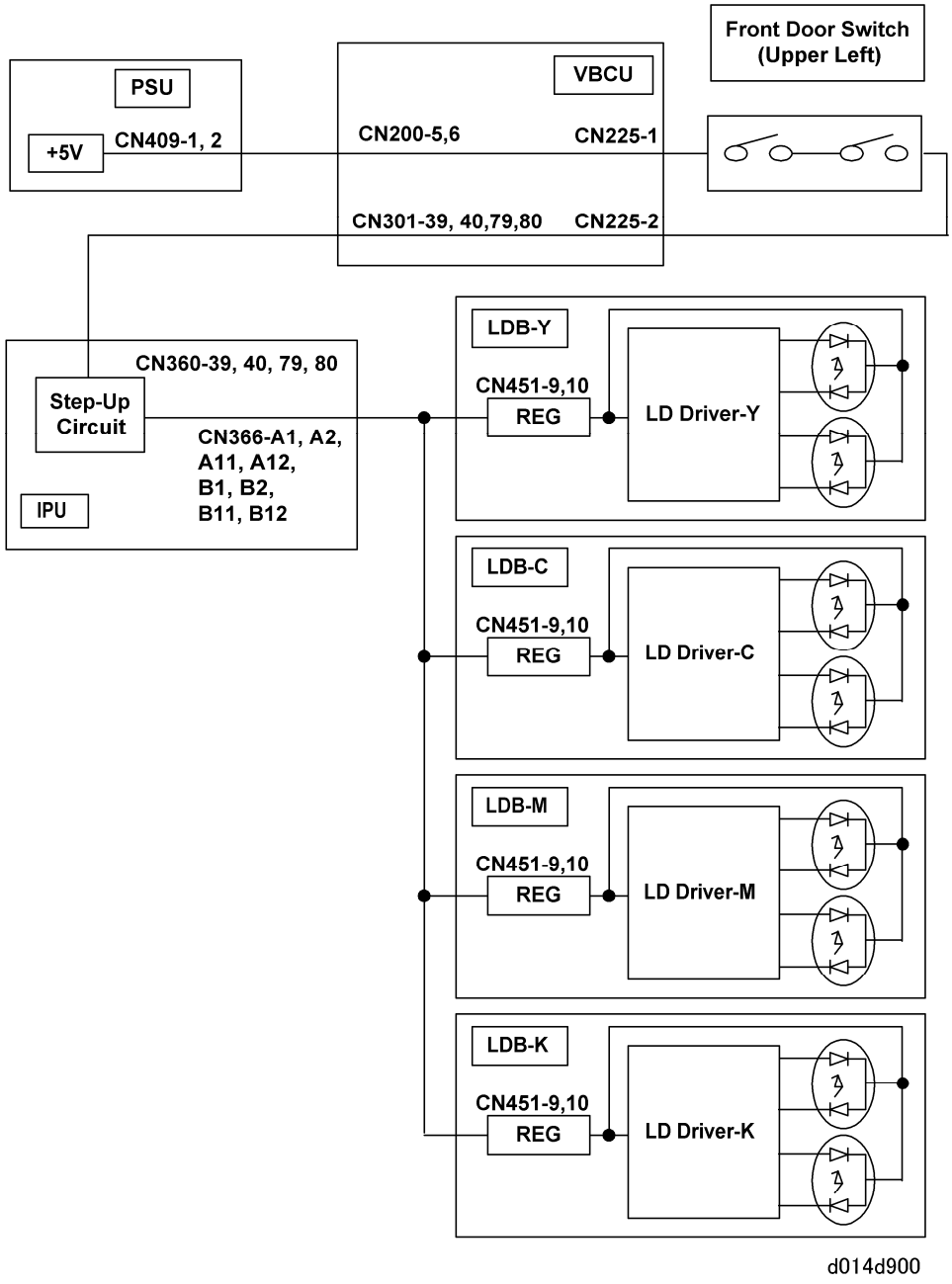
- Makes the machine print faster.
- Reduces the number of turns of the polygon mirror for a page to prolong the service life of the motor.
- Reduces the amount motor noise.

The beam pitch is fixed at 600 dpi and is not adjustable.

## 6.2.2 LD SAFETY SWITCHES

To ensure the safety of customers and customer engineers, two switches inside the cover prevent the laser beams from switching on accidentally. When the front cover is open, the +5V line connecting each LD driver on the LD control board is disconnected.

Laser Unit


Front Door Switch
(Upper Left)
PSU
VBCU
+5V
CN409-1, 2
CN200-5,6
CN225-1
CN301-39, 40,79,80
CN225-2
CN360-39, 40, 79, 80
Step-Up
Circuit
CN366-A1, A2,
A11, A12,
B1, B2,
B11, B12
IPU
LDB-Y
CN451-9,10
REG
LD Driver-Y
LDB-C
CN451-9,10
REG
LD Driver-C
LDB-M
CN451-9,10
REG
LD Driver-M
LDB-K
CN451-9,10
REG
LD Driver-K
d014d900

# 6.3 BOARDS

## 6.3.1 OVERVIEW OF IMPORTANT COMPONENTS

**VBCU (Base Engine and Image Control Unit)**

The VBCU is the main control board. It combines the functions of the BCU and IOB.

The VBCU controls these BCU (Base Control Unit) functions:

- Engine sequence control (all sensors, motors, fusing temperature control circuits)
- Image processing control (on the IPU)
- Scanning control
- GW controller interface
- Peripheral timing control

The VBCU also controls these IOB (I/O Control Board) functions:

- Input and output ports for all sensors, motors, solenoids
- All drivers
- High voltage power supply
- Analog input signals. Converts analog data to 10-bit digital data. The CPU on the VBCU reads this data.

**Controller**

The GW controller board controls all the optional applications. It contains the GW architecture ASICs, and connects to the VBCU and PCI interface. The controller board also has two SD card sockets. The SD card slots are use for:

- Installing holding optional applications (Printer/Scanner, PostScript3 and other options)
- Engine and operational panel firmware updates
- Moving an application from one SD card to another with SP5873-1.

**SBU (Sensor Board Unit)**

The SBU:

- Receives analog signals from the CCD and converts them to digital signals.
- Sends serial data to the VBCU.
- Sends signals from the main CPU to the SIOB, to control the scanner components.
- Sends digital data to the IPU.

**SIOB (Scanner I/O Board)**

This board controls the scanner motor and all the sensors in the scanner unit. The CPU controls this board.

**LDB (Laser Diode Drive Board)**

This board contains the driver for the laser diodes.

Boards

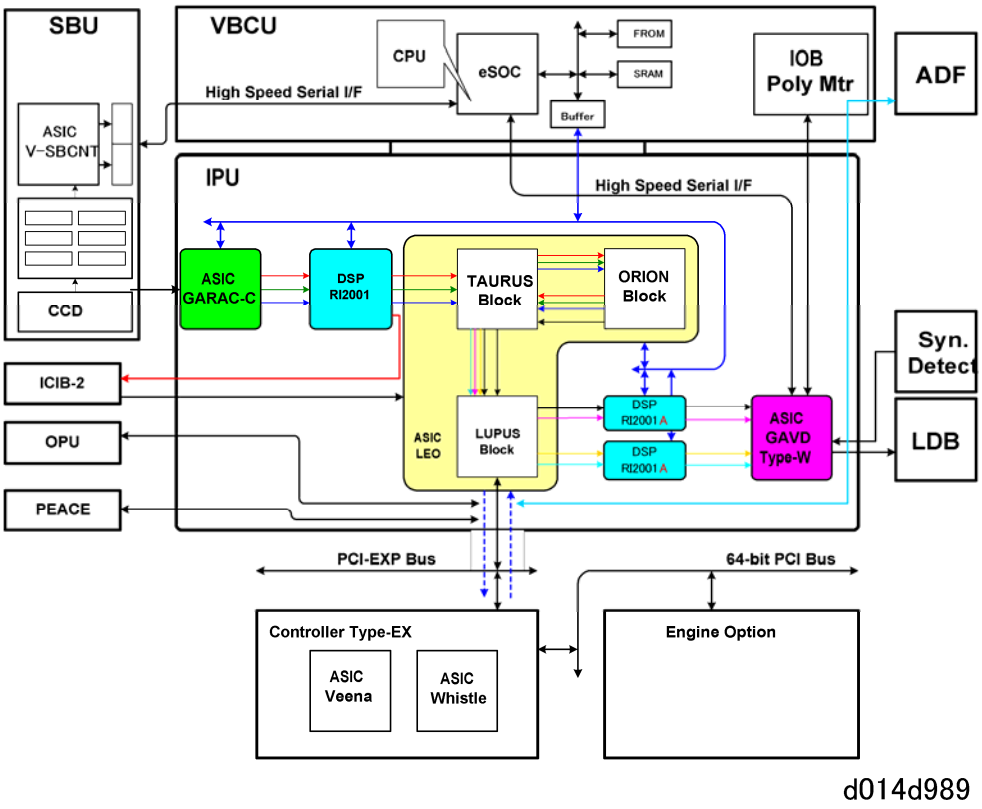
**HDD (Hard Disk Drives)**

This board stores all the temporary files for job processing and all permanent files for the document server.

**PSU (Power Supply Unit)**

Supplies DC to the machine, and contains the AC supply that controls the power to the fusing lamps.

## 6.3.2 IPU




### *SBU (Sensor Board Unit)*

**SBU**

The SBU does the following functions:

- Black level correction
- White level correction
- Color balance calibration
- Creating the SBU test pattern

**Operation Summary**

The signals from the 3-line CCD, one line for each color (R, G, B) and 4 analog signals per line (F_ODD, F_EVEN, L_ODD, L_EVEN), are sampled by the ASIC and converted to digital signals in the 10-bit A/D converter. This is the first phase of processing the data scanned from the original.

**Lens Block Replacement**

The controller stores the SBU settings. These values must be restored after the lens block is replaced:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SP4008 | Sub Scan Mag | Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment |
| SP4010 | Sub Scan Reg | Sub Scan Registration Adjustment |
| SP4011 | Main Scan Reg | Main Scan Registration Adjustment |

- Before lens block replacement, enter the SP mode and note the settings of SP4800 001 to 003 (ARDF density adjustments for R, G, B).
- After lens block replacement, do some copy samples with the ARDF, then check the copies.
- If the copies have background, change SP4800 001 to 003 to their previous settings, or adjust until the background is acceptable.

These SP codes are also used to adjust the ARDF scanning density, if the scanning densities of the ARDF and the platen mode are not the same.

**SBU Test Mode**

1. Use SP4907 (Set SBU Test Pattern) to select the pattern to print.
2. Touch "Copy Window" then press the Start key twice.

## *IPU (Image Processing Unit)*

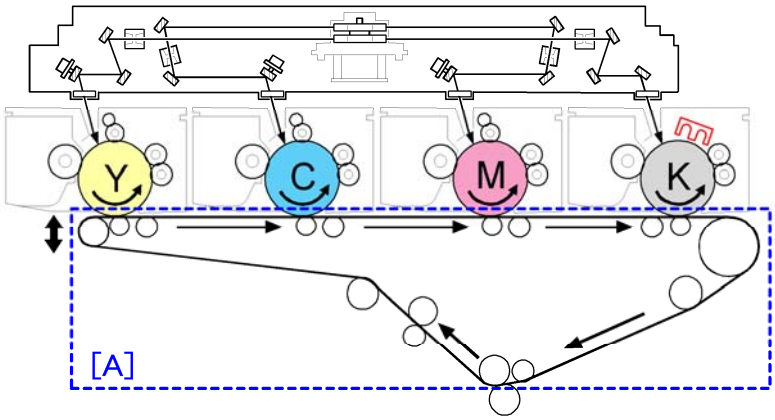
The IPU does the following:

- Controls the scanner
- Processes the image signals from the SBU and sends them over the PCI bus to the controller memory
- Receives the image processing signals sent over the PCI bus from the controller memory, processes them, then outputs them to the VGAVD.
- Outputs the control signals for the ARDF
- Controls the relay of power and signals

Image processing, ADS correction, and line width correction are done on the VBCU board for all the digital data sent from the SBU. Finally, the processed data is sent to the printer as digital signals (2 bits/pixel).

# 6.4 COPY PROCESS OVERVIEW

## 6.4.1 RAISING AND LOWERING OF THE ITB UNIT

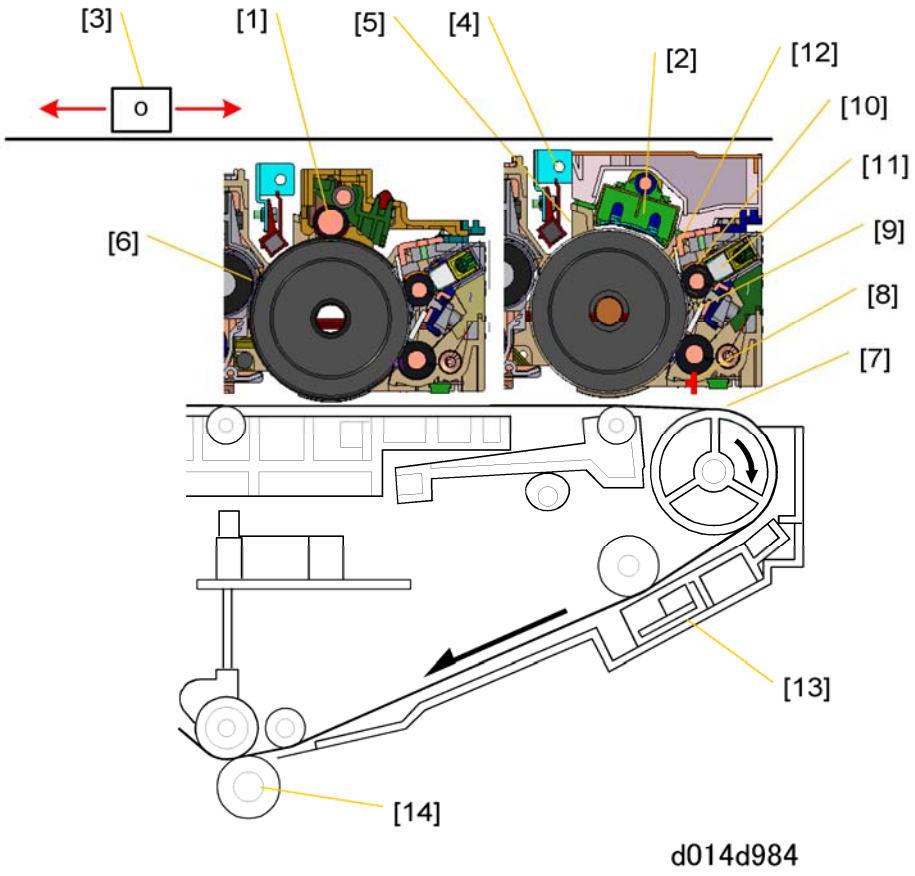



d014d001

This machine has four PCUs arranged in a straight line: Y, C, M, K above the ITB (Image Transfer Belt) unit [A]:

- The ITB lift motor raises and lowers the ITB unit.
- The ITB lift motor raises ITB unit for full-color copying. The drum of every PCU contacts the image transfer belt below.
- The ITB lift motor lowers the ITB for black-and-white copying. Only the black PCU (K) contacts the image transfer belt below.
- To reduce wear on moving parts of the color PCUs, the drums of the color PCUs (Y, M, C) do not rotate while they are separated from the image transfer belt during black-and-white copying.
- If a job contains black-and-white pages and full-color pages, the action of the ITB is controlled by SP3930-1.

## 6.4.2 THE COPY PROCESS




Here is a general description of the copy process.

**Drum Charge**

In darkness a charge roller [1] in the color PCUs (Y,C,M) and a charge corona unit in the black PCU (K) [2] give a negative charge to each drum. The charge stays on the surface of the drum because the OPC layer has a high electrical resistance in the dark.

**Exposure**

A xenon lamp [3] exposes the original as it scans over the exposure glass above. Light reflected from the original passes to the CCD, where it is converted into an analog data signal. This data is converted to a digital signal, processed, and stored in the memory. At the time of printing, the data is taken from the memory and sent to the laser diode. For multi-copy runs, the original is scanned once and stored in a temporary file on the hard disk.

**Laser Exposure**

The processed image data from the scanned original is taken from the hard disk and two laser beams [4] fire and write it as an electrostatic latent image on the drum surface. The amount of charge used to create the latent image on the drum depends on the intensity and duration electrical pulse that fires the laser beam pulse.

**Drum Potential Sensor**

There are four drum potential sensors [5], one mounted on the main machine above each PCU. These sensors detect and measure the electrical potential on the surface of each drum. This is necessary because frequent and temporary changes in temperature and humidity, as well as the changes in the surface of the drum as it ages, affect drum potential. The machine uses the readings of these sensors to set the voltage levels that are frequently adjusted during auto process control. This ensures optimum performance of copying and printing.

**Development**

The magnetic developer brush of the development roller [6] brushes over the latent image on the rotating drum surface. Toner particles are electrostatically pulled from the magnetic developer brush onto the drum surface where the laser reduced the negative charge on the drum. The attracted toner is applied over the latent image.

**Image Transfer**

The developed toner images are transferred from the drums to the image transfer belt (ITB) [7]. Rollers under the ITB apply a high positive charge to the reverse side of the ITB. This positive charge pulls the toner particles from the surface of the drum to the ITB. The toner pulled from the drum creates a duplicate of the image pattern on the surface of the belt.

**Quenching**

The light from the quenching lamp [8] neutralizes the charge that formed the image on the drum surface. After cleaning and quenching, the drum surface is ready for the next cycle.

**Drum Cleaning**

The opposing cleaning blade [9] removes toner remaining on the drum after transfer of the image. The soft lubricant brush roller [10] applies lubricant (ZnSt from the lubricant bar [11]) to the area cleaned by the cleaning blade. Finally, the lubricant blade [12] smoothes and levels the lubricant applied to the OPC.

**ID Sensors, Music Sensors**

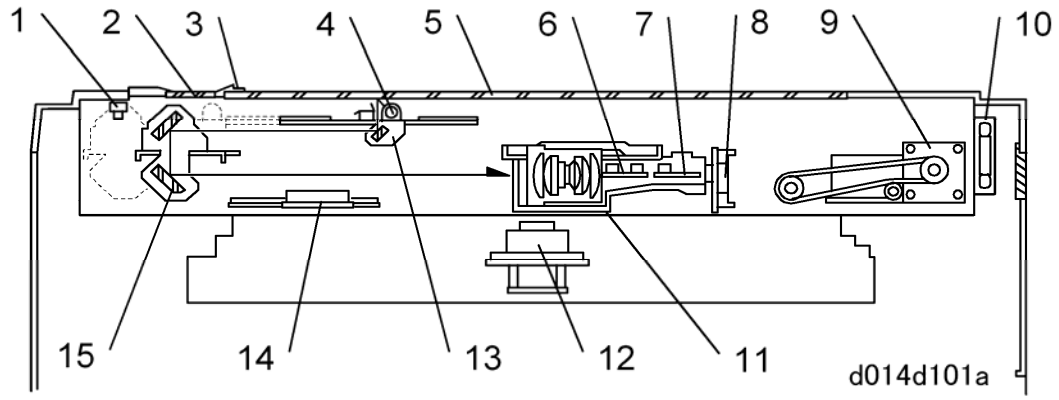
An ID sensor and three MUSIC sensors [13] are mounted over the surface of the image transfer belt. The laser in each PCU writes an ID sensor pattern on each drum surface (Y, M, C, K) at prescribed intervals then these patterns are transferred to the image transfer belt. The ID sensor above the patterns on the ITB measures the light reflected from each of the four patterns and sends this data (Vsp) to the CPU. These Vsp readings are used for toner supply control. The MUSIC sensors read a different set of patterns. These readings are used to 1) adjust the start timing for laser firing, 2) adjust the angle of the 3rd mirror, and 3) set the drum rotation speeds. The MUSIC sensor readings are used to ensure that the alignment of the images on the ITB is always correct.

**Paper Transfer and Separation**

A strong negative charge applied to the PTR idle roller [14] repels and pushes the image from the image transfer belt onto the paper. Immediately after this is done, a paper discharge plate neutralizes the charge on the paper and image transfer belt. The curvature of the feed path makes the paper to separate from the image transfer belt.

# 6.5 SCANNER UNIT

## 6.5.1 OVERVIEW



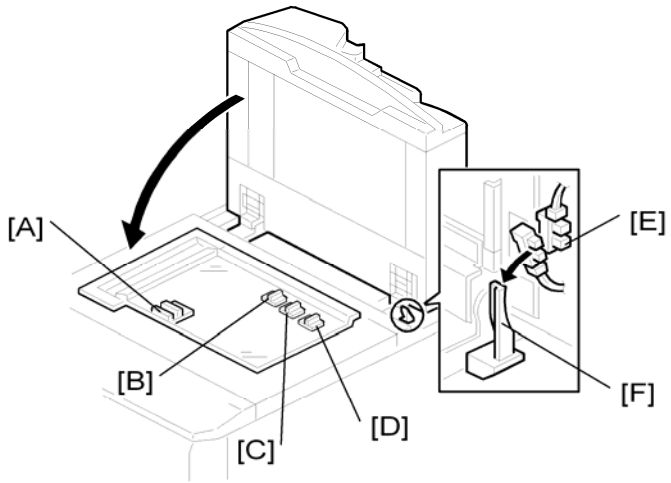

1. Scanner HP Sensor
2. ARDF Exposure Glass
3. White Plate
4. Exposure Lamp (Xenon)
5. Exposure Glass
6. APS2 (Org. Length Sensors 1, 2)
7. APS3 (Org. Length Sensor 3)
8. SBU (CCD: 600 dpi)
9. Scanner Motor
10. Scanner Fan Motor
11. Lens Block
12. Polygon Mirror Motor
13. 1st Scanner
14. APS1 (Org. Width Sensors 1, 2)
15. 2nd Scanner

The light reflected from the original is sent to the CCD:
1st Mirror> 2nd Mirror> 3rd Mirror> Lens Block> CCD
The lens block consists of the scanner lens and SBU (CCD). The CCD converts the light that was reflected from the original and converts it to three color analog signals (R, G, B). The SBU converts the analog signals to digital signals, then sends the digital signals to the IPU.

Important

- The lens block is always replaced as a unit and requires no adjustment in the field.

## 6.5.2 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION




d014d102

The machine uses five sensors on three APS boards to detect the size of the original on the exposure glass.

[A]: APS1. (W1 and W2) detects original width

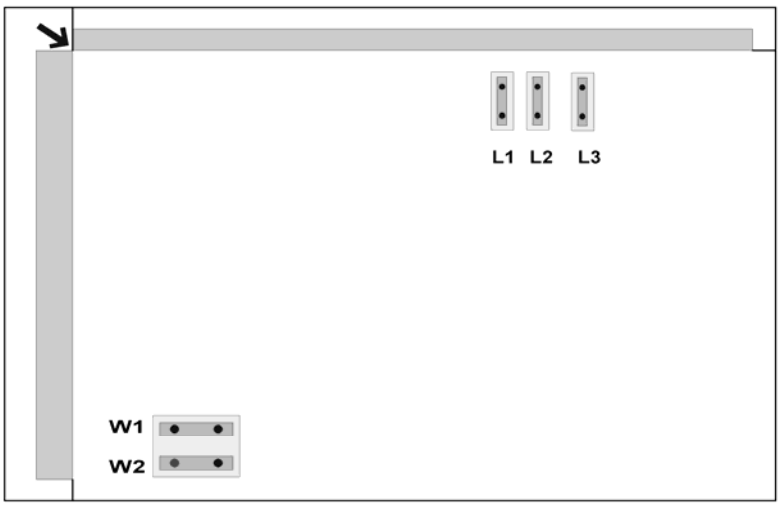
[B]: APS2. (L1) detects original length

[C]: APS3 (L2) detects original length

[D]: APS4. (L3) detects original length

[E]: ARDF position sensor. Detects whether the ARDF is open or closed.

[F]: APS start sensor. Triggers automatic paper size detection.




d014d973

The table shows the sensor output for each paper size.

If an original is on the exposure glass, you can check the sensor output with SP4301 (APS Confirm).

| A4/A3 | LT/DLT | L3 | L2 | L1 | W1 | W2 | SP4301 Display |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3 | 11" x 17" | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 000 11111 |
| B4 | — | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 000 11110 |
| A4 SEF | 8½" x 11" | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 000 01100 |
| | 8½ x 14" | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 000 11100 |
| A4 LEF | 11" x 8½" | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 000 00011 |
| B5 SEF | — | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 000 00100 |
| B5 LEF | — | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 000 00010 |
| A5 SEF | 5½" x 8½" | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 000 00000 |
| A5 LEF | 8½" x 5½" | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 000 00000 |

1: On (Paper Detected), 0: Off (Paper Not Detected)

**Note**: If the original is small (such as A5-LEF), all sensors are off and the machine shows that the original size cannot be detected. However, you can force the machine to detect A5/HLT in this case if you adjust SP4303 (there are settings for A5/HLT SEF and A5/HLT LEF).

**Detection Timing**

The APS sensors are always active when the machine is powered on, but the CPU checks their signals only after the platen has been lowered.

**Book Mode**

When the ARDF is open in the Book mode, the CPU checks the APS sensors and determines the original size after the [Start] key has been pressed.

**ARDF Mode**

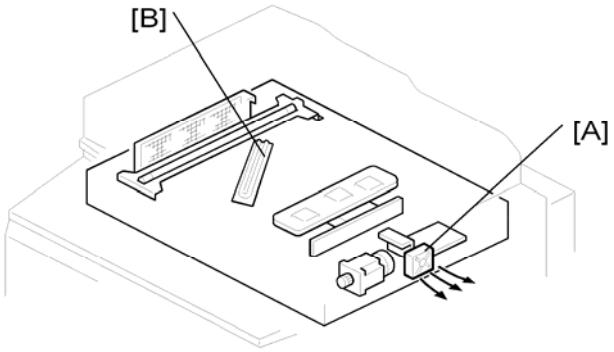
The CPU checks the APS sensors after the platen has been lowered.

**By-pass Mode**

The APS sensors are ignored when copy paper is fed from the by-pass tray, but the by-pass tray can handle a variety of sizes and orientations. To accomplish this:

- The machine always assumes short-edge feed for paper on the by-pass tray.
- Width is measured by a sensor inside the by-pass tray.
- The bypass tray cannot measure length, so the registration sensor determines the length of the paper using clock pulses.

## 6.5.3 SCANNER UNIT FAN AND ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER




d014d104

Condensation on the mirrors can cause:

- Running, smearing and image borders
- Printing completely black or gray pages

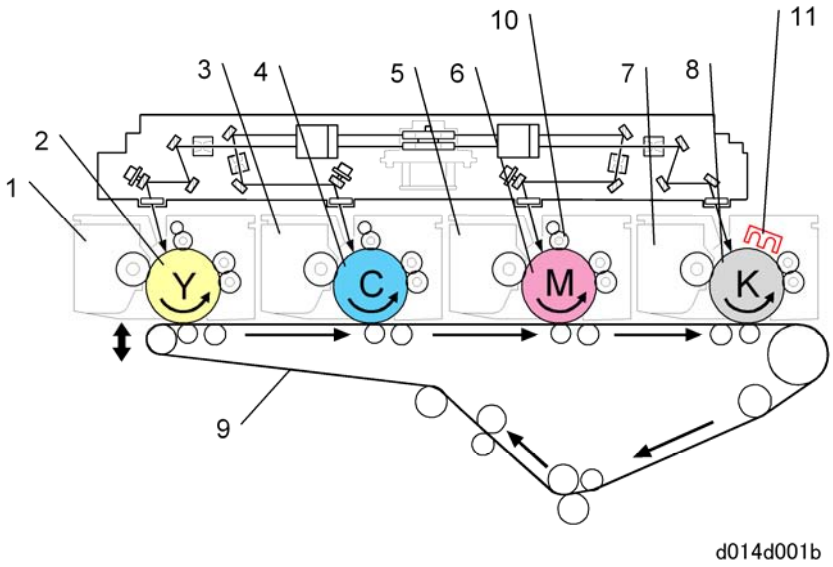
The scanner unit is provided with a cooling fan [A] and anti-condensation heater [B] to keep the unit cool and dry. The fan pulls the heater air from around the PCBs and blows it out of the scanner unit.

The anti-condensation heater turns on when:

- The main power switch is turned off.
- The operation switch is turned off.
- The machine enters the auto off mode.

# 6.6 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNITS (PCU)

## 6.6.1 OVERVIEW




1. Development Unit (Y)
2. Drum (Y)
3. Development Unit (C)
4. Drum (C)
5. Development Unit (M)
6. Drum (M)
7. Development Unit (K)
8. Drum (K)
9. Image Transfer Belt (ITB)
10. Charge Roller
11. Charge Corona Unit

Four PCU units (Y, C, M, K) are arranged in tandem from left to right. There is one PCU for each color. Each PCU consists of a development unit and drum unit pair (1)(2), (3)(4), (5)(6), (7)(8). The image that is developed on each drum transfers to the image transfer belt (9). Each color transfers onto the image transfer belt, one after the other (Y,C,M,K) during one pass of the ITB under the PCUs.

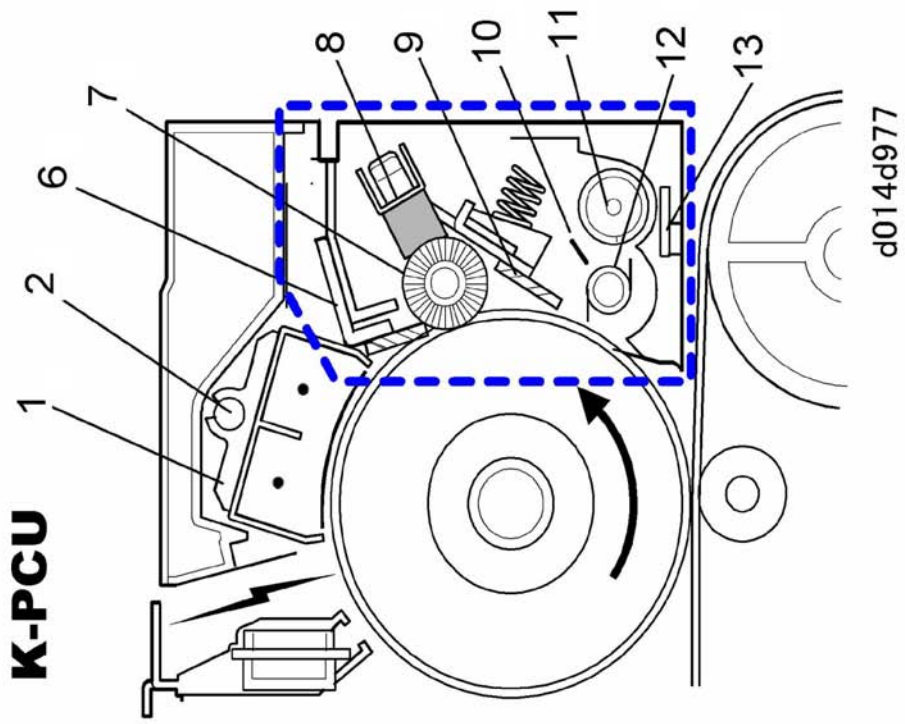
- The Y, C, and M PCUs all use a charge roller, for example (10) in the M_PCU, to charge the drum surface.
- The K_PCU, however, uses a charge corona unit to charge its drum.

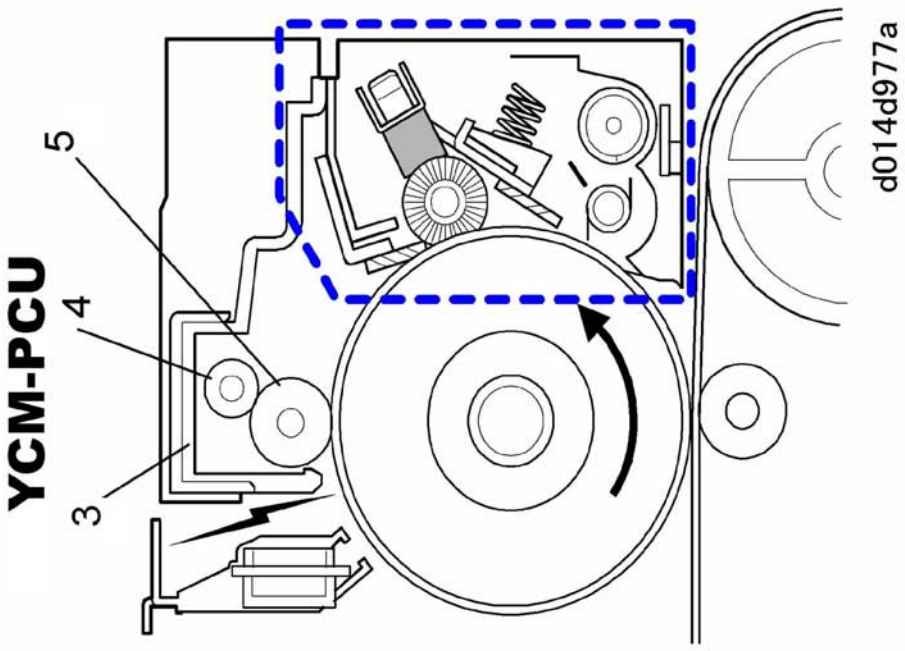
- Also, only the K_PCU has a temperature sensor that is used to correct process control parameters (charge voltage, for example) during process control.

All other parts of the PCU units (cleaning and development components) are identical. Only the methods of charge differ.

## 6.6.2 AROUND THE DRUM

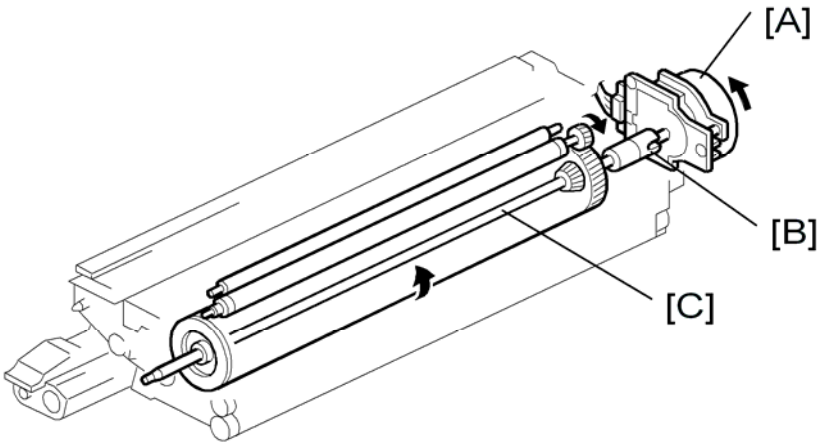
In this machine, the K PCU employs a change corona unit and the other PCUs (Y, C, M) use charge rollers.



| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Charge Corona Unit (Scorotron type) | Only the K PCU uses a charge corona unit. |
| 2 | Charge Corona Wire Cleaner | |
| 3 | Charge Roller Unit | The Y, M, C PCUs use charge rollers. |
| 4 | Charge Roller Cleaning Roller | |
| 5 | Charge Roller | |
| 6 | Lubricant Blade | These items comprise the PCU cleaning system. The same parts and system are used in all of the four PCU units. |
| 7 | Lubricant Brush Roller | |
| 8 | Lubricant Bar | |
| 9 | Cleaning Blade | |
| 10 | Cleaning Brush Roller Flicker | |
| 11 | Toner Collection Coil | |
| 12 | Collection Coil | |
| 13 | Quenching LED | |

## 6.6.3 DRUM DRIVE




d014d204

[A]: Drum motor

[B]: Drum motor coupling

[C]: Drum shaft

Each PCU (Y, C, M, K) has an independent drum motor.

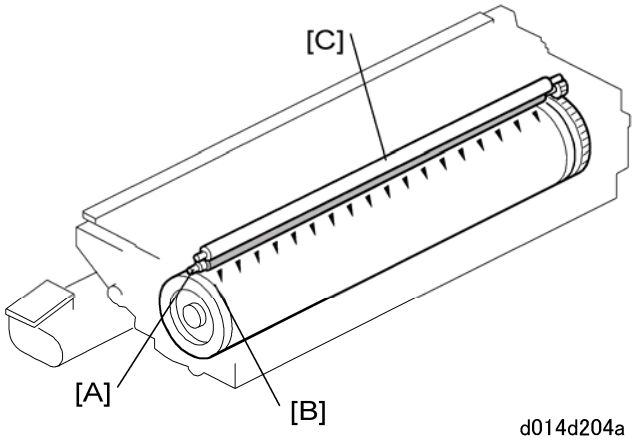
The drum motor [A] turns the drum motor coupling [B] that rotates the drum motor shaft [C].

During black-and-white copying and printing, only the black drum (K) rotates. The other color drums (Y, M, C) do not rotate.

## 6.6.4 DRUM CHARGE

The Y,C,M PCU units employ a charge roller to charge the drum. The K_PCU uses a charge corona wire.

### *YCM PCUs*




[A]: Charge roller

[B]: Drum

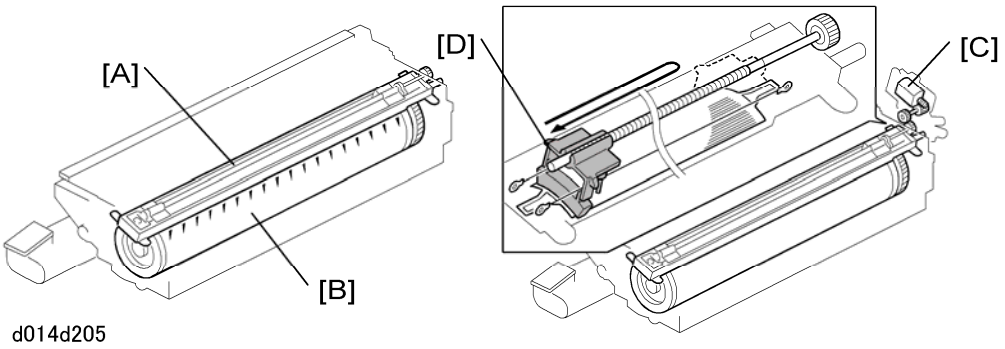
[C]: Charge roller cleaning roller

The charger roller [A] above the drum [B] charges the drum.

The charge roller cleaning roller [C] touches the charge roller and cleans it as the charge roller and cleaning roller rotate in opposite directions. The gap between drum and charge roller is 0.05 mm.

- The charge roller is the same length as the drum to ensure an even charge along the entire length of the drum.
- The charge roller receives its charge from the charge roller power pack. The power pack is connected at a terminal attached to the end of the charge roller shaft.

## *K PCU*

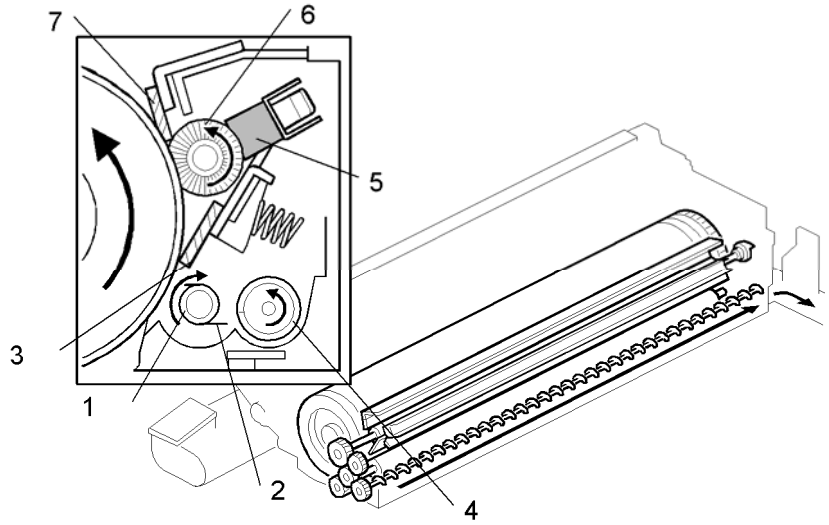



The CGB power pack (a constant dc power pack) applies a high electrostatic charge to a pair of corona wires [A] suspended above the OPC drum [B]. The corona of this wire charges the surface of the drum below.

The amount of ozone generated during drum charging is much more than the amount generated with the charge roller system used in the YMC PCUs. For this reason, the ozone filter of this machine has been enlarged and more fans have been installed around the ozone filter.

The charge wire cleaning motor [C] switches on at the time set with SP2220-1 to move the charge wire cleaning pad [D] one stroke forward and one stroke back to clean the wires. This keeps the wires free of dirt and ensures a uniform charge corona.

## 6.6.5 DRUM CLEANING AND LUBRICATION



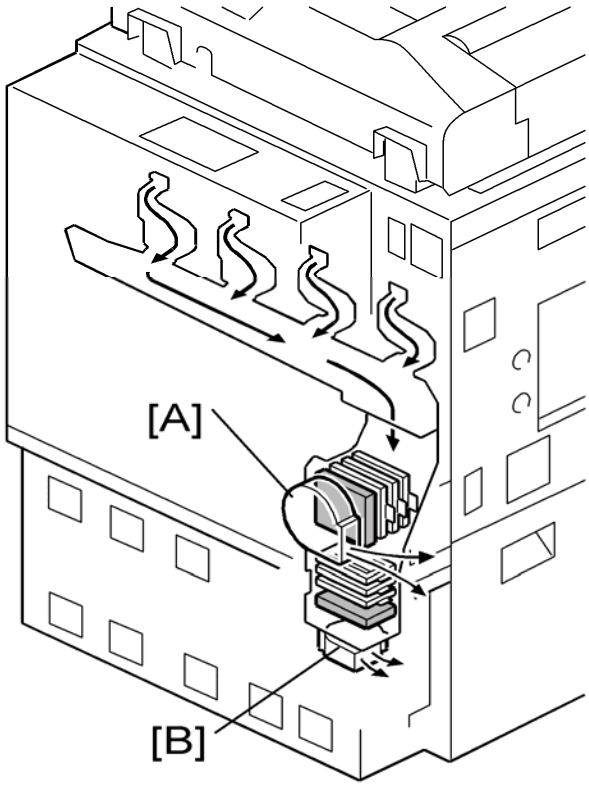

To improve the efficiency of cleaning, the drum is lubricated with ZnSt (Zinc Stearate).

This cleaning sequence is the same in each PCU:

- The cleaning brush roller [1] brushes residual toner and other matter from the surface of the drum.
- The cleaning roller flicker [2] combs the cleaning brush roller to remove toner from the brush.
- The cleaning blade [3] (a counter blade) scrapes toner from the drum.
- All collected toner falls down into the toner collection coil [4]. This revolving coil moves the used toner to the used toner port at the back of the PCU.
- The lubricant bar [5] supplies lubricant (ZnSt) to the lubricant brush roller [6], and the lubricant brush roller applies the lubricant to the drum.
- Finally, the lubricant blade [7] smoothes the powder lubricant applied to the surface of the drum by the lubricant brush roller.

## 6.6.6 PCU VENTILATION

### *Ozone Ventilation*



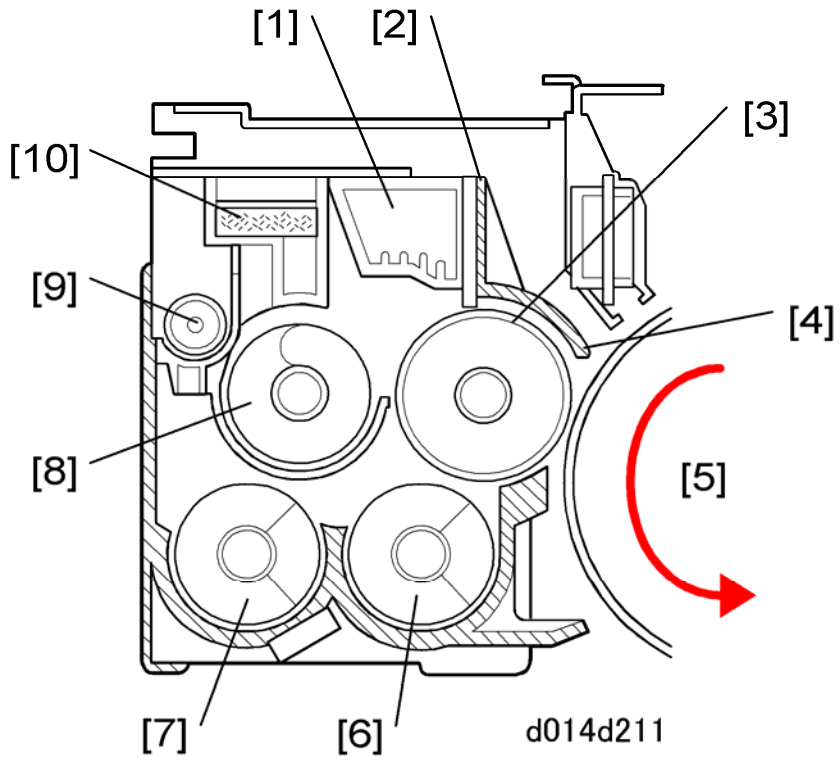

d014d962

Ozone exhaust fan [A] pulls air from the machine through the first air filter/ozone filter unit and expels it from the machine.

Ozone exhaust fan [B] pulls air through the second air filter/ozone filter unit and expels it from the machine.

## 6.6.7 DEVELOPMENT UNIT

### *Overview*

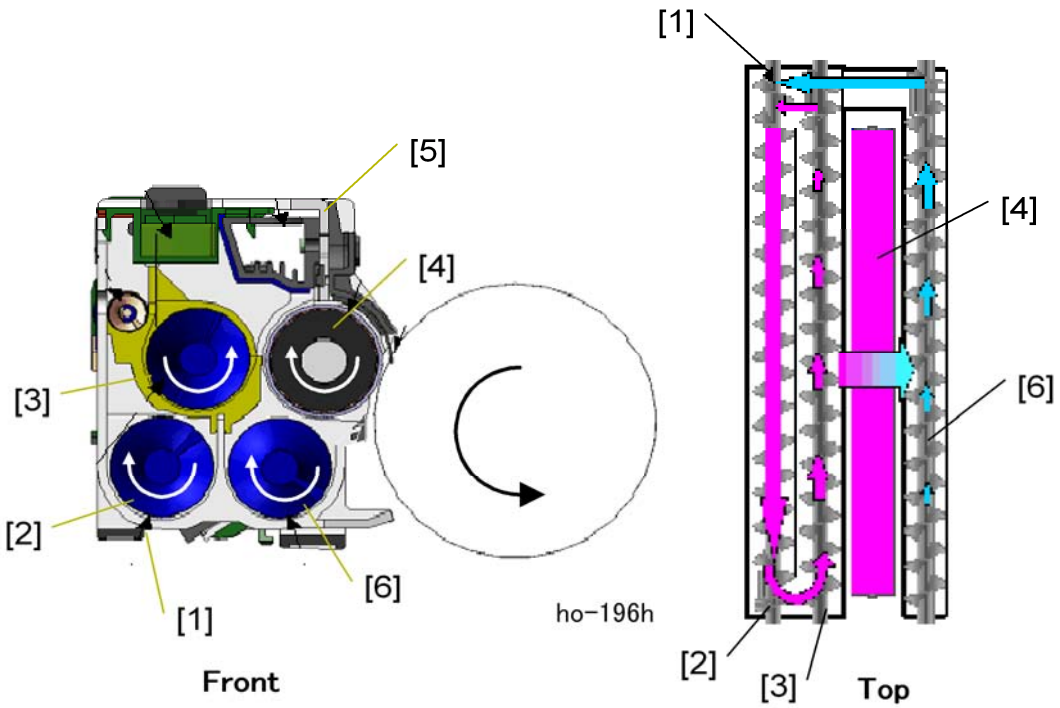



| | |
|---|---|
| 1. | Heat Sink |
| 2. | Doctor Blade (t=2.0) |
| 3. | Development Roller |
| 4. | Entrance Seal |
| 5. | Drum (dia. 60) |
| 6. | Toner Collection Auger (dia. 25) |
| 7. | Development Auger (dia. 22) |
| 8. | Supply Auger (dia. 22) |
| 9. | Excess Toner Auger |
| 10. | Filter |

Photoconductor Units (PCU)

| | |
|---|---|
| Development method: | Dual-component development |
| Agitation: | Two augers |
| Development unit drive: | Development motor, one for each development unit (Y, C, M, K) |
| Development bias: | Development bias power pack |

## *Development Unit Operation*




When the development unit is filled with new developer from the developer bottle, all the developer falls into the unit across its full length. Toner is supplied through a small port at the front of the development unit.

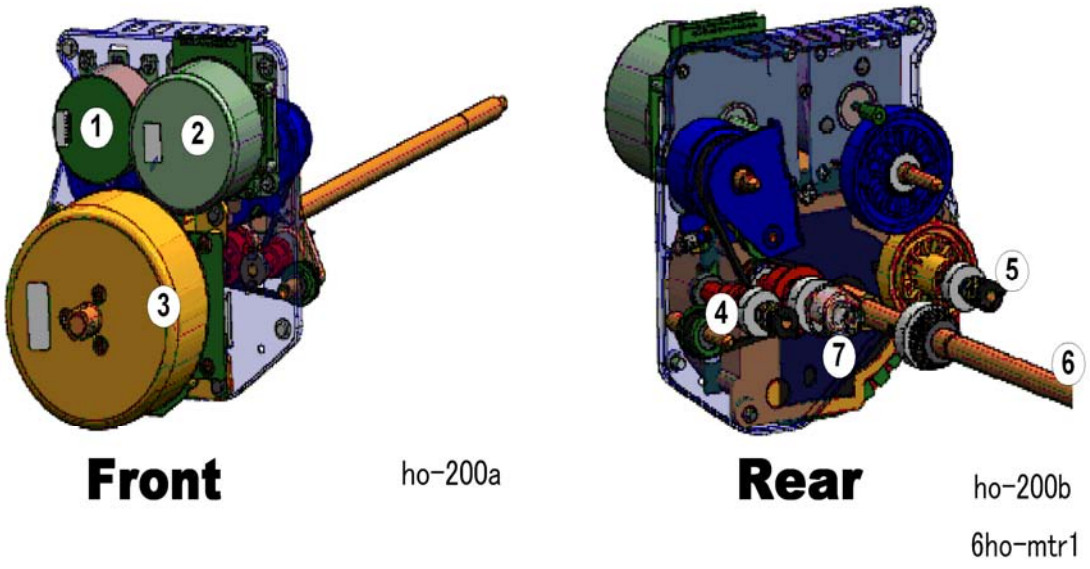
The toner enters the toner supply port [1].

The development auger [2] cross-mixes the developer and toner sent from the STC, and then sends this mixture to the supply auger [3] next to the development roller [4]. The magnetic development roller pulls the developer-toner mixture onto its surface as it rotates.

Near the top of the development unit, the doctor blade [5] cuts and smoothes the developer/toner mixture to the correct thickness. The development bias power pack (not

shown) applies the bias to the development bias terminal that is attached to the shaft of the development roller. Excess toner removed by the doctor blade drops into the toner collection auger [6].

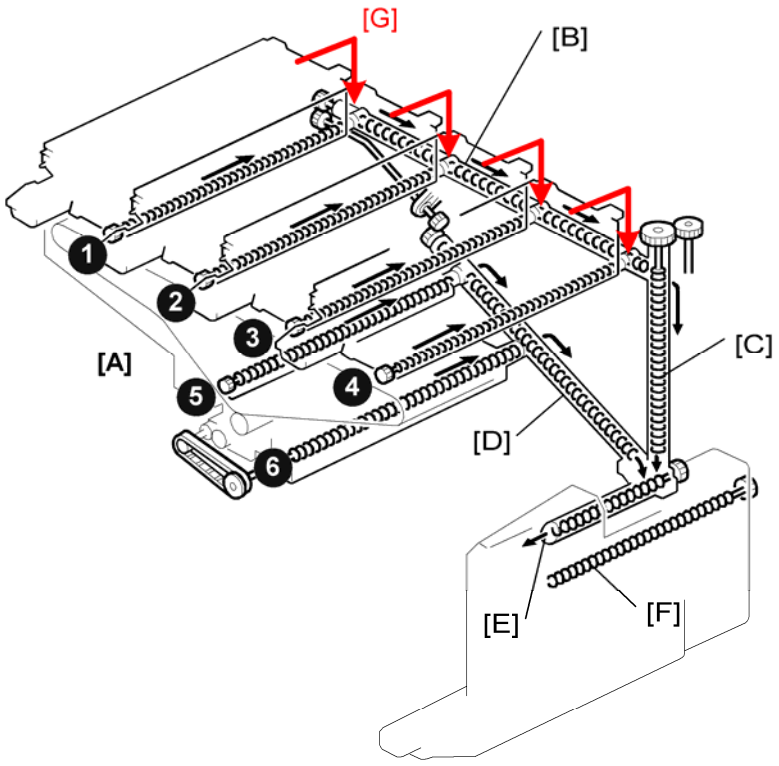
### *Development, PCU Unit Drive*




| | |
|---|---|
| 1. | Drum Cleaning Motors x4 |
| 2. | Development Motors x4 |
| 3. | Drum Motors x4 |
| 4. | Development Auger Shaft |
| 5. | Drum Cleaning Motor Shaft |
| 6. | Drum Motor Shaft |
| 7. | Development Roller Shaft |

# 6.7 USED TONER COLLECTION

## 6.7.1 USED TONER PATH




d014d215

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [A] | Used Toner Collection Coils | | [B] | Horizontal Used Toner Transport Coil |
| | ① | PCU (Y) | [C] | Vertical Used Toner Transport Coil |
| | ② | PCU (C) | [D] | Diagonal Used Toner Transport Coil |
| | ③ | PCU (M) | [E] | Used Toner Bottle Transport Coil |
| | ④ | PCU (K) | [F] | Used Toner Distribution Coil |
| | ⑤ | ITB Unit | [G] | Excess Toner Ports |
| | ⑥ | PTR Unit | | |

Excess toner from the OPC drums drops from the new excess toner collection coils onto the horizontal used toner transport coil. (Please refer to the next section below.)

**[A]: Used Toner Collection Coils**

Six used toner collection coils (1 for each PCU and 1 each for the ITB and transfer roller) transport used toner away from these components after cleaning. The PCU motors drive coils ① to ④. The PTR motor drives coils ⑤ and ⑥.

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | PCU (Y) |
| ② | PCU (C) |
| ③ | PCU (M) |
| ④ | PCU (K) |
| ⑤ | ITB Unit |
| ⑥ | PTR Unit |

**[B]: Horizontal Used Toner Transport Coil**

Driven by the PTR motor, this transports used toner from the PCU used toner collection coils to the vertical used toner transport coil.

**[C]: Vertical Used Toner Transport Coil**

Driven by a parallel vertical shaft connected to the used toner bottle transport motor, this transports used toner from the horizontal used toner collection coil to the central collection point above the used toner bottle.

**[D]: Diagonal Used Toner Transport Coil**

Driven by the PTR motor, this transports used toner from the ITB unit and PTR unit used toner collection coils to the central collection point above the used toner bottle.

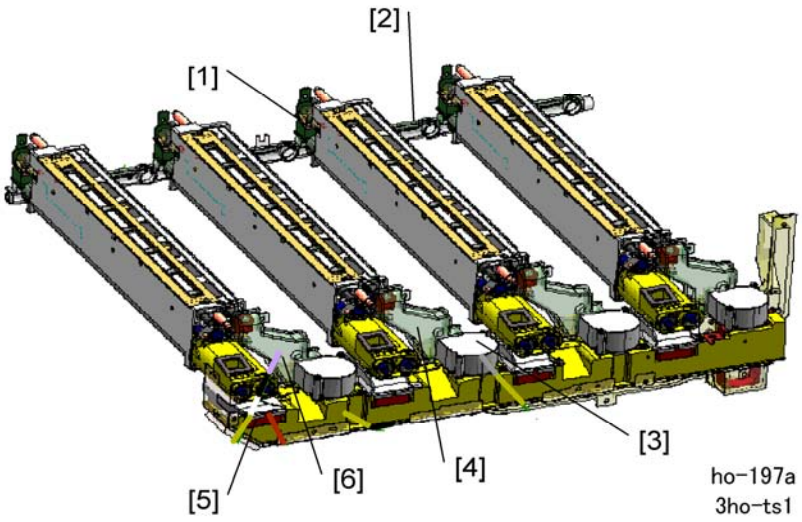
**[E]: Used Toner Bottle Transport Coil**

Driven by the used toner bottle transport motor, this transports used toner from the central collection point to entrance of the used toner bottle.

**[F]: Used Toner Bottle Distribution Coil**

This coil at the top of the used toner bottle is driven by the used toner bottle near full motor. The coil distributes the used toner evenly across the length of the used toner bottle.

## 6.7.2 EXCESS TONER COLLECTION COILS




| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Excess Developer Coil*1 |
| 2 | Horizontal Used Toner Transport Coil |
| 3 | Cooling Fan 2 (Doctor Blade)*1 |
| 4 | Cooling Duct 2 (Development Doctor Blade)*1 |
| 5 | Cooling Fan 1 (Below Development Unit) |
| 6 | Cooling Duct 1 (Below Development Unit) |
| | *1 These are new items. |

An excess developer coil has been added to each PCU in order to transport excess toner from the development unit.

# 6.8 PROCESS CONTROL

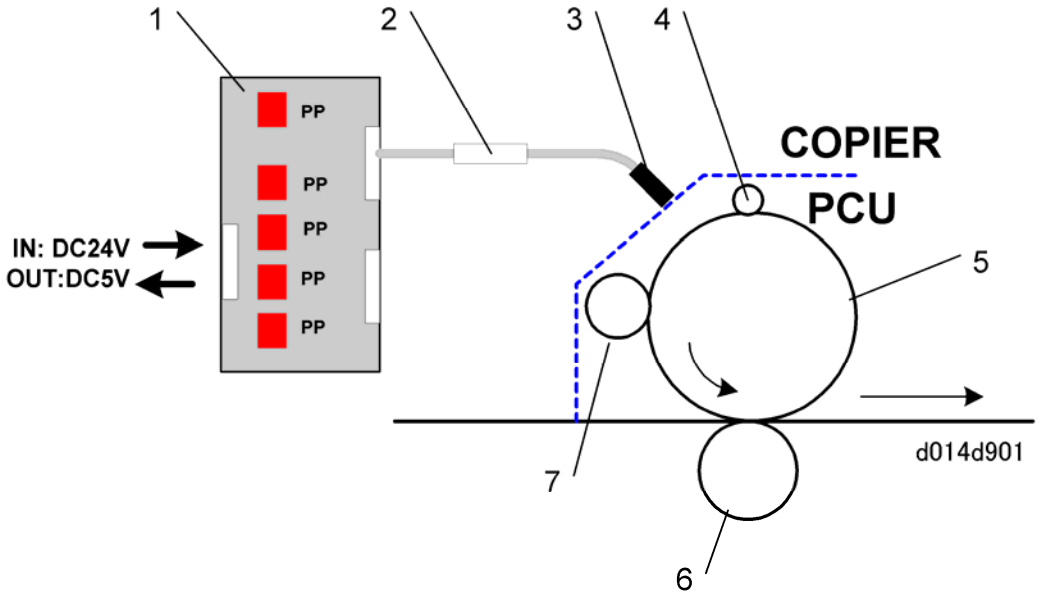
## 6.8.1 OVERVIEW OF PROCESS CONTROL

In this machine, there are three phases in process control:

- **Potential control**. Adjusts the image creation process (charge, development bias, and LD power) to achieve the target toner coverage. During potential control, several series of patterns are created at prescribed times. The potential sensor and ID sensor read these patterns. The readings of these sensors are used to determine the development capacity (development gamma), and then adjust the conditions around the drum to reproduce the best possible images. Potential control also puts the machine in the best possible condition to begin toner supply control.
- **MUSIC**. MUSIC (Mirror Unit Skew Interval Correction) corrects the horizontal and vertical skewing of the print images on the ITB
- **Toner supply control**. Detects the amount of toner applied to ID sensor patterns between pages and adjusts the amount of toner supplied to the development unit to maintain consistency in the amount of toner.

## 6.8.2 COMPONENTS USED DURING PROCESS CONTROL

### *Potential Sensor*




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Potential Sensor PP | Max. output: -1000V |
| 2 | Drawer Connector | Connection point for PCU |
| 3 | Potential Sensor Probe | Mounted in the copier (not in PCU) |
| 4 | Charge Roller | Y,M,C PCU. K PCU has a corona unit. |
| 5 | OPC Drum | Surface potential: -900V max. |
| 6 | Transfer Roller | 1.5kV (normal use), 5kV (transfer) |
| 7 | Development Roller | Range: -350 to -800V dc |

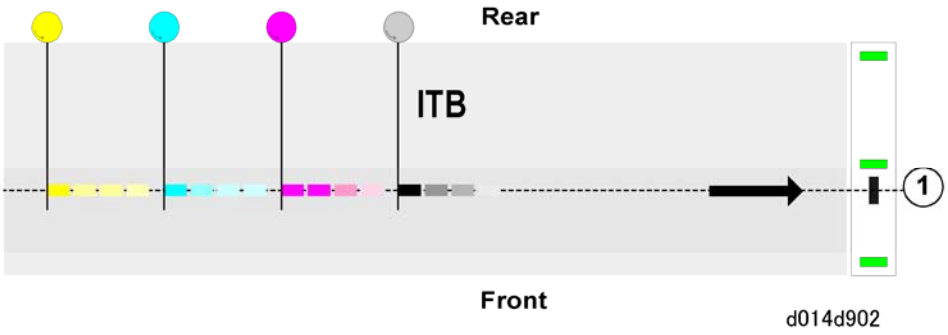
There is a potential sensor mounted in the copier above the surface of the drum in each PCU. Each potential sensor consists of a probe and small power pack. A drawer connector connects the probe and the power pack as shown above.

The potential sensor measures the potential of the drum immediately after it is charged by the charge rollers in the Y,M,C PCUs and charge corona unit in the K PCU. It also measures a series of patterns (undeveloped latent images) exposed on the drum by the

laser diodes:

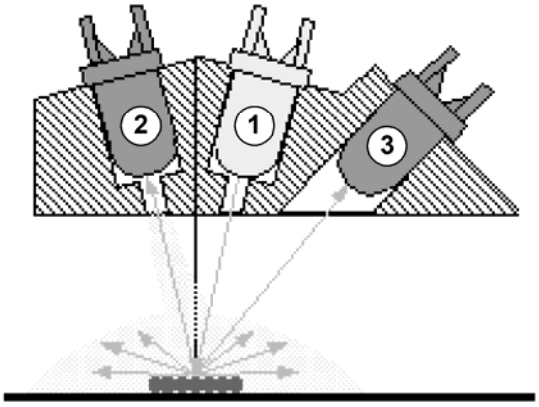
- A detector in the center of a very small window measures the strength of the electrostatic charge on the drum surface. The strengths of the charges vary, depending on the surface potential of the drum.
- A feedback circuit applies voltage to the probe until the strength of this charge equals (offsets) the strength of the charge on the drum.

### *ID Sensor*



Process Control

One ID sensor above the image transfer belt reads the K, M, C, and Y patterns on the belt.



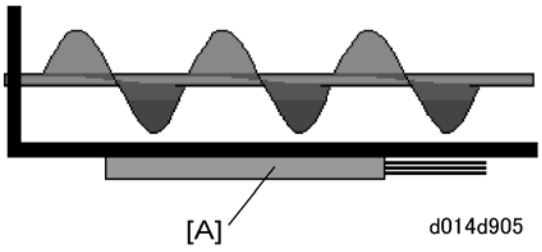

d014d904

Three diodes comprise the ID sensor:

- **(1) Emitter**. Emits light on the patterns.
- **(2) Direct reflector sensor**. Gathers light reflected directly from the patterns.
- **(3) Diffused reflector**. Gathers diffuse light from the sides of the patterns to achieve more accurate readings especially for Y, M, C.

During process control, the creation of the patterns is timed so the Magenta, Cyan and Yellow patterns are transferred to the ITB at approximately the same time. The ID sensor reads the patterns in the order K, M, C, Y.

## *TD Sensor*




d014d905

A TD sensor [A] is attached to the bottom of the development unit in each PCU.

The TD sensor directly measures the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture.

Unlike previous machines, this TD sensor is not in direct contact with the developer/toner mixture.

Vt is the output voltage of the TD sensor. When Vt goes high, toner is added to the developer to bring Vt back to the Vtref value.

### *Temperature/Humidity Sensors*

Two temperature/humidity sensors are used for process control. One is near the drum potential sensor above the M PCU, and one is below the used toner bottle.

**K PCU Temperature/Humidity Sensor**

The output of this sensor is used to:

- Set the level of the ac charge applied to each PCU
- Set the length of time the agitator in the development unit rotates to mix the developer and toner.

**Used Toner Bottle Temperature/humidity sensor**

The output of this sensor is used to control the amount of current applied to the image transfer belt and paper transfer roller. It is also used to correct fusing idling temperature during fusing temperature control.

## 6.8.3 LIST OF PROCESS CONTROL ACRONYMS

The potential control phase of process control involves many adjustments. Here is list of acronyms used in the descriptions of process control adjustments.

| Acronym | Description |
|---|---|
| Cdc | Charge dc bias |
| Vb | Development charge bias |
| Vb*1 | Development charge bias after Vr (residual potential) adjustment |
| Vd | Drum potential after the drum is charged by the charge roller. |
| Vd*1 | Drum potential after Vr (residual potential) adjustment |
| Vdhome | The electrical potential of the drum after a fixed dc bias (dc –700V) is applied by the drum charge roller. |
| Vdp | Development potential (Vb – Vpl). This is the ability to attract toner to the drum. |
| Vk | Development start voltage (checks the developer at the beginning of process control to determine whether it has deteriorated) |
| Vl | Light potential. Development potential of areas on the drum exposed by the laser diodes. Maximum laser power has been applied to the diodes. |
| Vpl | Electrical potential after laser exposure, with 24/63 of maximum laser power (power is controlled with PWM). |
| Vpl*[1] | Electrical potential (Vpl) after Vr (residual potential) adjustment |
| Vpp | Charge ac bias. |
| Vr | Residual potential |
| Vsg_dif | Vsg after checking the bare surface of the ITB by the diffused reflection sensor. |
| Vsg | ID sensor output after reading bare surface of the ITB |

| Acronym | Description |
|---|---|
| Vsg_reg | Vsg after checking the bare surface of the ITB by the direct reflection ID sensor. |
| Vsp | ID sensor output from the most recent ID sensor pattern. |
| Vt | TD sensor output at the present time. |
| Vtcnt | Gain value calculated during TD sensor initialization. This is used to adjust the Vt (TD sensor output). A large gain increases Vt, and a small gain decreases it. The result of this calculation is also used to calibrate Vt during TD sensor initialization. |
| Vtref | Target output of the TD sensor. The machine always tries to adjust the toner WT% in the developer to bring Vt closer to Vtref. |

*[1] Adjustment done for each color Y, M, C, K

## 6.8.4 IMPORTANT SP CODES RELATED TO PROCESS CONTROL

This table lists the SP codes that are associated with the most important elements of process control. For more, please refer to "Service Tables".

| | | SP3501 001 Potential Control Type Selection | | Target Effect in Process Control |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0: Auto | 1: Fixed | | | |
| **Charge** | | | | |
| Charge dc bias | Cdc | SP3576 | SP2201 | Potential control |
| Charge ac bias | Vpp | SP3577 | SP2202 | Prevention of abnormal images |
| **Exposure** | | | | |
| PM (LD power) | Ldp | SP3581 | SP2211 | Potential control |
| **Development** | | | | |
| Development bias | Vb | SP3575 | SP2212 | Potential control |

## 6.8.5 POTENTIAL CONTROL

### *When is Potential Control Done?*

**1. Initial Process Control Self-Check**

The process control self-check is always done automatically after the machine is turned on. If one or more of the following conditions existed before the machine is switched off, this will also trigger the process control self-check:

- The machine remained idle longer than the time specified with SP3554-1.
- The temperature change since the previous time that the machine power was cycled off/on was greater than the setting specified with SP3554-2.
- The change in the relative humidity since the previous time that the machine power was cycled off/on was greater than the value specified for SP3554-3.
- The change in the absolute humidity since the previous time that the machine power was cycled off/on was greater than the value specified for SP3554-4.

**Note**: The initial process control self-check is not done when the machine is turned on with the front door open.

**2. During a Job**.

SP3552 determines when a process control self-check is done while the machine is printing, receiving data for the next job, or while jobs are queued for printing. This occurs when:

- The current page count for black-and white (SP3552-3) > SP3552-1
- The current page count for color (SP3552-4) > SP3552-2

If SP3552-1, -2 are set to "0", the self-check is done at the following intervals, which depend on the development gamma from the most recent process control self-check.

- If the development gamma reading is much larger than the target value of development gamma, the process control self-check is done every 250 pages.
- If the development gamma reading is only slightly different from the target value of development gamma, the process control self-check is done every 500 pages.

**3. At Job End**

There are separate counters for black-and-white and color pages. SP3551 sets the number of pages that will trigger a process control self-check at the end of a job. SP3552 sets the number of pages that will trigger a process control self-check during a job and not wait for job end.

- Black and White: If the current page count (SP3551-3) > SP3551-1, process control will be done at the end of the job, if end-of-job process control has not been done for 250 pages
- Color: If the current page count (SP3551-4) > SP3551-2, process control will be done at the end of the job, if end-of-job process control has not been done for 250 pages

SP3551-3 or SP3551-4 can be set to "0" to disable this feature.

**4. After a Specified Idle Time.**

The machine will execute the process control self-check if the machine remains idle for the length of time specified by SP3555. After the time set with SP3540-2 has elapsed, the current temperature and humidity are compared with the temperature and humidity the last time the drum stopped. If the difference is greater than the threshold values set with this SP3555, initial process control executes. Specifically, this means this SP will trigger the self-check under the following conditions:

- The machine has not been used within a specified length of time since the last process control self-check (SP3555-1).
- Change in ambient temperature (SP3555-2).
- Change in relative humidity (SP3555-3)
- Change in absolute humidity (SP3555-4)

**5. Before ACC (Automatic Color Calibration)**

The process control self-check is done after touching [Execute] on the operation panel to start ACC and just before the ACC pattern prints. However, this operation can be changed with SP3501 004:

| | |
|---|---|
| 0 | Process control self-check is not done before the ACC pattern prints. |
| 1 | A partial self-check (only potential control) is done before the ACC pattern prints. This takes about 10 seconds. |
| 2 | The full process control self-check (potential control and toner density control) is done before the ACC pattern prints (default). This takes between 10 seconds and 180 seconds. |

**6. Immediately after TD sensor Initialization.**

The process control self-check is done automatically every time a TD sensor is initialized.

- Done after SP3801 001-006 is executed (after replacing the developer).
- Done after SP3811 is executed (at machine installation, or after replacing developer).

**7. Potential control process control self-check**

This is done manually by the service technician or designer with SP3820-1.

**8. Potential control/toner density adjustment process control self-check.**

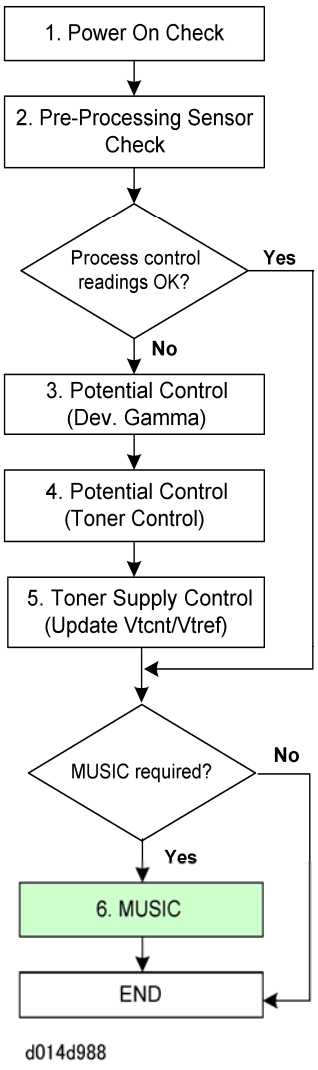
This is done with SP3820-2. This SP must be done manually when only the drum is replaced (but not developer).

## *What is Done During Potential Control?*

The process described below is done in each of the four PCUs. For simplicity, however, the discussions are limited to what occurs in one PCU. The illustration below shows the sequence of events during process control and MUSIC adjustment.

Note that the sensor readings used by both potential control and MUSIC adjustments are always checked at Step 1 and 2 before MUSIC executes. For example, if only MUSIC is to be updated:

- The readings are checked at Step 2.
- If the process control readings are within range, MUSIC executes.
- If the process control readings are not within range, Steps 3, 5, 6 are done then the process loops back to Step 1.
- After the new readings are done at Step 2, then MUSIC is done.



**1. Check after Power On**

This check is performed only after the machine is powered on.

- AC Current Adjustment.

  The machine selects the current for optimum AC charge (Vpp). The optimum charge depends on the ambient temperature and humidity. The optimum charge for each temperature and humidity range is set with SP2204 (ACC Charge Correction). Insufficient charge can cause white spotting, and too much charge can cause toner film on the surface of the drum. This check ensures that the average value of Vpp after 20 samplings is Vpp > 2.8 kV.
- Toner Agitation
- Vsg detection. The ID sensor detects Vsg (reflectivity of the bare drum surface)
- Transfer current adjustment.

**2. Check Sensor Readings**

The processes and analyzes the results of the sensor readings in the previous step.

- Detect Vdhome

  A charge of –700V is applied to the drum. The potential sensor detects the potential of the drum and checks if the potential sensor, drum, and charge roller/corona unit are functioning normally. If the charge is within the range –800V to –500V, the drum is functioning normally.

  **Possible Errors at Potential Sensor Calibration**

| SC Codes | For More Details: |
|---|---|
| SC436~SC439 | See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in "4. Troubleshooting" in the Venus-C1 (B132/B200) Service Manual. |
| SP3821 | 15, 16, 17 |

Process Control

- Vsg adjustment

  Before the gradated patterns are read, the strength of the ID sensor output (LED PWM) is adjusted to bring the value of Vsg_reg to the specified value.

  An abnormal condition is detected when:

  - Before Vsg adjustment begins, Vsg_reg < 0.5V
  - After Vsg adjustment, Vsg_reg cannot be adjusted to 4.0±0.2V

  **Possible Errors at Vsg Adjustment**

| SC Codes | For More Details: |
|---|---|
| SC400, SC418 | See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in "4. Troubleshooting" in the Venus-C1 (B132/B200) Service Manual. |
| SP3821 | 21, 22, 23 |

- Transfer current adjustment error

  **Possible Errors with Transfer Current Adjustment**

| SC Codes | For More Details: |
|---|---|
| SC465 to SC472 | See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in "4. Troubleshooting" in the B132/B200 Service Manual. |

**3. Potential Control (Development Gamma Measurement)**

The laser diodes write the 4-grade potential sensor patterns on each drum. To make the different densities, the machine changes the PWM duty of the laser diodes.

- Potential sensor reads the 4-grade patterns on the image transfer belt. The required potentials are calculated.
- ID sensor reads the patterns 4-grade patterns on the image transfer belt to calculate the amount of toner coverage required.
- The combined readings of the potential sensor and ID sensor are used to retrieve from a lookup table the optimum values for:
  1) Vd (charge potential)
  2) Vb (development bias)
  3) Vpl (drum potential after exposure)

  The development gamma must be in the range 0.3 to 6.0 V. Development start voltage (Vk) must be in the range –150 to 150 V. This development start voltage is used to indicate whether the developer has deteriorated. However, this is only a rough measurement that can be affected by ambient conditions and the condition of other electrical components.

  **Possible Errors at ID Sensor Pattern Detection**

| SC Codes | For More Details: |
|---|---|
| SC410~SC413 | See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in "4. Troubleshooting" in the Venus-C1 (B132/B200) Service Manual. |
| SC414~SC417 | |
| SP3821 | 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60 |

**4. MUSIC**

The MUSIC adjustments are done only if the process control readings are within the prescribed ranges.

**5. Potential Control (Toner Application Control)**

- Adjustment is done for residual potential. The laser unit fires at full power to compensate for a possible high residual potential on the drum. Next, the amount of residual potential is detected, and the charge is adjusted to achieve the target potential. The detected Vr must be less than –200V.
- Using the values retrieved from the lookup table in Step 3 above, Vd, Vb, and Vpl are updated to Vd*, Vb*, and Vpl*

  1) Vb*: Targeted development Bias after Vr correction

  2) Vd*: Target drum potential after Vr correction

  3) Vpl*: Target electrical potential after Vr correction

  **Possible Errors at Vr (Residual Potential) Adjustment**

| SC Codes | For More Details: |
|---|---|
| SC432~SC435 | See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in "4. Troubleshooting" in the Venus-C1 (B132/B200) Service Manual. |
| SP3821 | 62 |

**Possible Errors at Vd (Development Bias) Adjustment**

| SC Codes | For More Details: |
|---|---|
| SC420~SC423 | See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in "4. Troubleshooting" in the Venus-C1 (B132/B200) Service Manual. |
| SP3821 | 63 |

**Possible Errors at Vpl (LD Power) Adjustment**

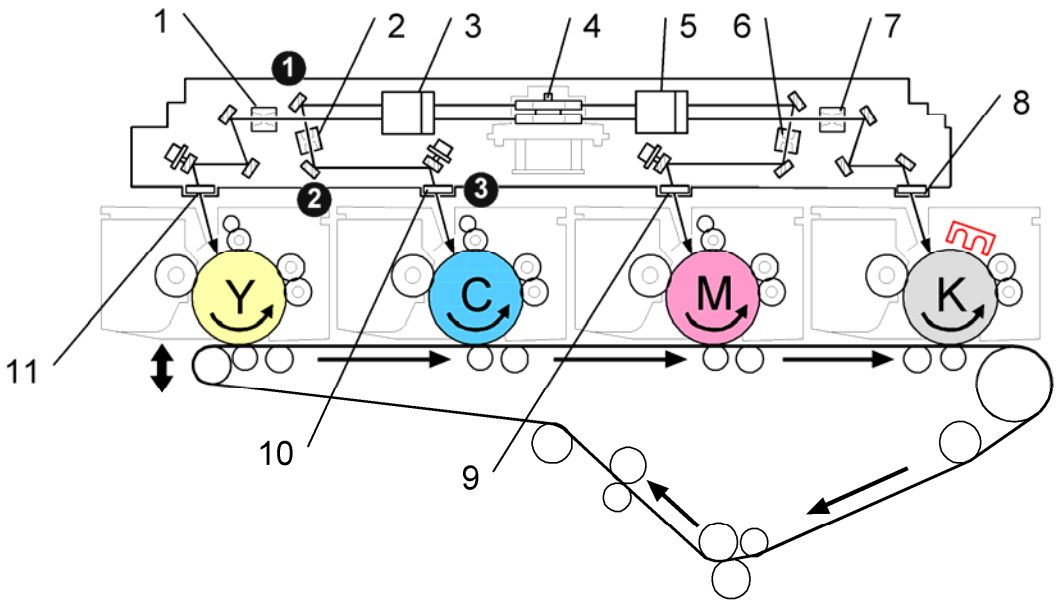
| SC Codes | For More Details: |
|---|---|
| SC424~SC427 | See "Process Control Troubleshooting" in "4. Troubleshooting" in the Venus-C1 (B132/B200) Service Manual. |
| SP3821 | 64 |

**6. Toner Supply Control (Update Vtcnt/Vtref)**

Now the machine can use the values calculated during process control to calibrate Vtref and Vtcnt in order to supply the correct amount of toner. There are no checks for abnormal conditions at this step.

## 6.8.6 MUSIC (MIRROR UNIT FOR SKEW AND INTERVAL CORRECTION)

### *The Optical Path*




d014d001b

1. WTL Lens (Y)
2. WTL Lens (C)
3. Dual-layer f-theta Lens (C, Y)
4. Polygon Mirror Motor
5. Dual-layer f-theta Lens (M, K)
6. WTL Lens (M)
7. WTL Lens (K)
8. Dust-shield Glass
9. Dust-shield Glass
10. Dust-shield Glass
11. Dust-shield Glass

**Optical Path**

All four latent images (C, M, Y, K) are written at approximately the same time. The laser diode turn-on times for each color are timed with drum rotation and paper feed. Refer to the illustration on the previous page. The optical path for each color is as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| Cylindrical lens (laser beam correction in each LD unit) | (Not shown) |
| ↓ | |
| Polygon mirror (main scanning line) | 4 |
| ↓ | |
| Fθ lens (dot position correction) | 3 |
| ↓ | |
| 1st Mirror | 1 |
| ↓ | |
| WTL lens (surface distortion correction) | 2 |
| ↓ | |
| 2nd Mirror | 2 |
| ↓ | |
| 3rd Mirror | 3 |
| ↓ | |
| Dust-shield Glass | 10 |
| ↓ | |
| Drum | |

Each f-theta lens has two layers. Because of this, it can correct both beams from the LD units. Each WTL lens corrects for image distortion.

The polygon mirror turns at high speed. The laser beams are reflected from the polygon mirror to a pair of mirrors (upper and lower), then to one more mirror and out to the drum through the dust-shield glass. The polygon mirror has six faces.

The polygon mirror motor rotates at 33,307 (V-C2a) or 41,669 (V-C2b) rpm for full-color and for black-and-white copying.

Important

- Because of its high rotation speed, the mirror continues to turn for about 3 minutes after the machine is turned off. Allow enough time for the mirror to stop before you start to remove the polygon motor.

### *What does MUSIC do?*

MUSIC is the Mirror Unit for Skew and Interval Correction. Three MUSIC sensors above the ITB read three MUSIC sensor patterns made by the machine on the ITB.

The machine uses the results to adjust:

- The machine adjusts the start timing for the laser at the start of the main scan. This adjusts the main scan. If skew is detected in the main scan direction, the machine adjusts the laser timing and the angles of the 3rd mirrors (Y, M, and C only).
- The speed of the drum motors to correct the intervals between the patterns. This adjusts the sub scan.

If the vertical alignment of the patterns is not correct, or if the intervals are not correct, this causes color registration errors.

The MUSIC adjustment is done for each color (Y, M, C, K).

### *When is MUSIC done?*

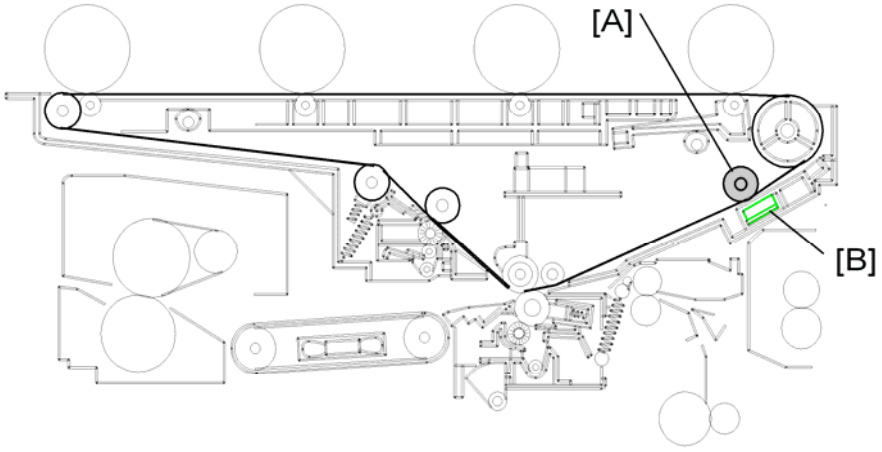
Normally, MUSIC executes automatically:

- Immediately after the machine is turned on or returns from an energy save mode.
- At the start of a job, if the temperature in the laser exposure unit changed since the end of the job by the amount set with SP2153 020 (Default: 1.5°C)
- After process control (enable/disable with SP2153 002).
- Every 100 pages during a long color job (you can change the interval with SP2153 024) if the temperature in the laser exposure unit has changed since the end of the most recent MUSIC adjustment by the amount set with SP2153 020 (Default: 1.5$^{o}$C)
- Forced MUSIC (manually by the user or a technician)
  1) User Tools> Maintenance> Color Registration
  2) SP 2111 001

Here are some important points to remember about MUSIC:

- Immediately after the machine is turned on, MUSIC requires time to complete processing. But you can do a black-and-white job immediately.
- If a job is started before the MUSIC process has completed, a message ("Now Self Checking") will appear on the operation panel display.
- The job will not be done until the MUSIC process is finished. Wait for MUSIC to complete.

## *Location of the MUSIC Sensors*

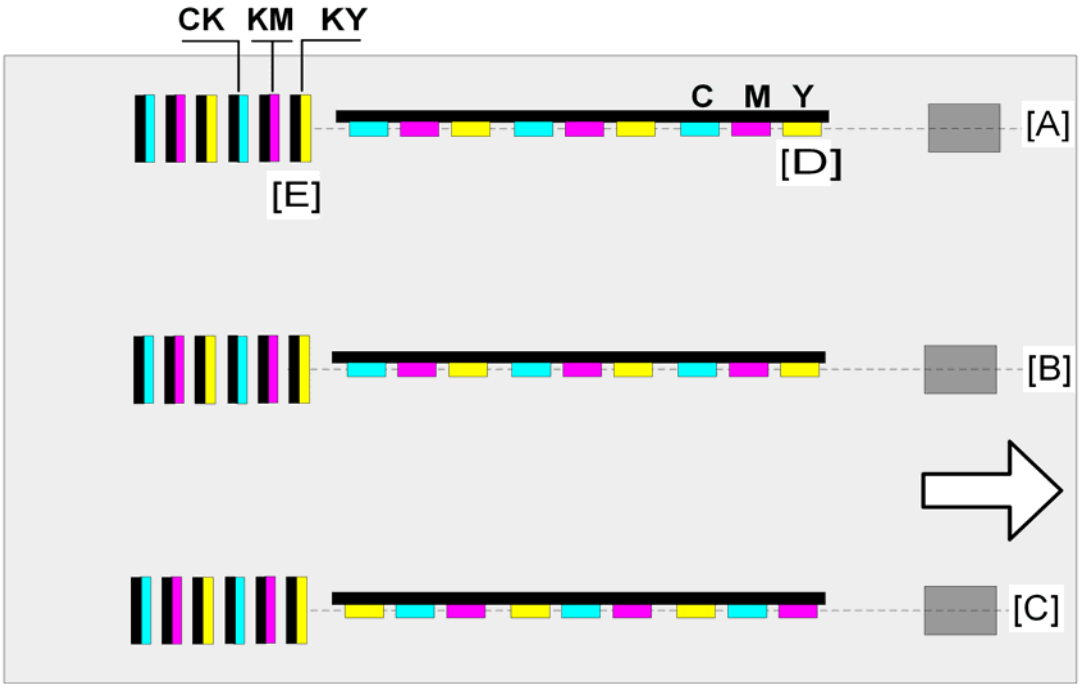



d014d301

The three MUSIC sensors [A] are arranged in a straight line below the ITB.

A roller [B] opposite the sensors pushes the transfer belt against these sensors. This ensures that the sensors read the patterns accurately.

### *How is MUSIC Done?*




[A]: Rear MUSIC sensor

[B]: Center MUSIC sensor

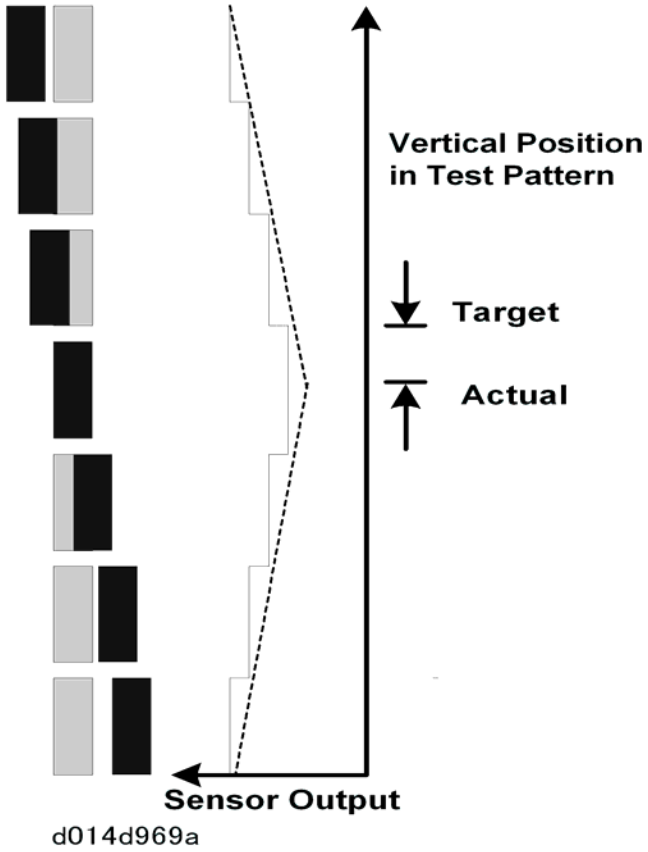
[C]: Front MUSIC sensor

[D]: Main scan MUSIC patterns

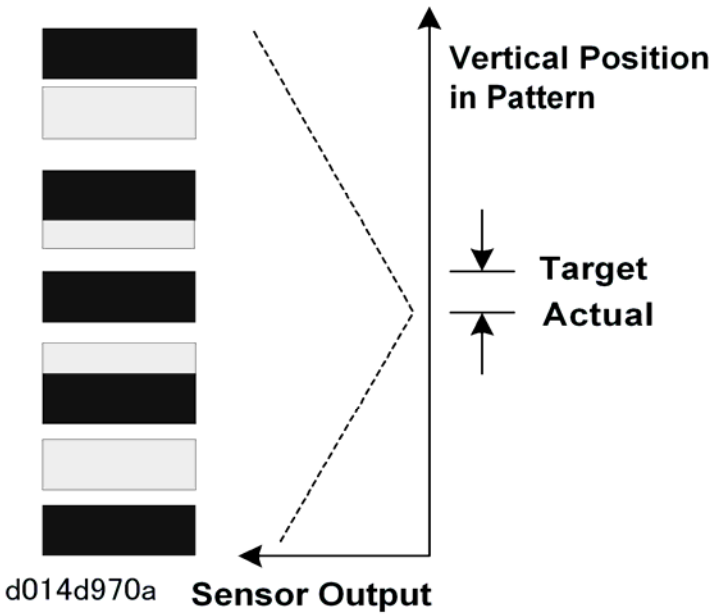
[E]: Sub scan MUSIC patterns

The MUSIC sensors [A], [B], and [C] read the MUSIC patterns from the ITB.

The main scan MUSIC sensor pattern [D] consists of patches for each color (M, C, Y) beside the black (K) color patch. The sub scan MUSIC sensor pattern [E] consists of patches for each color (M, C, Y) above a black (K) patch.

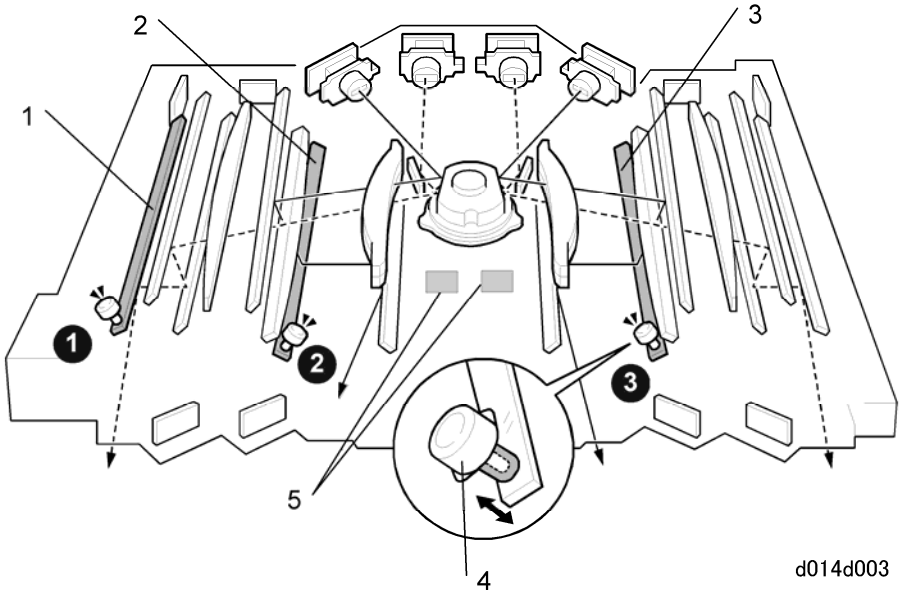



This diagram shows a close-up view of the main-scan test pattern.
K is the reference, and the positions of CMY are adjusted with reference to the K pattern. The CMY patterns are vertical (shown in grey in the diagram), but the K pattern overlaps the CMY patterns as shown.
The MUSIC sensor response is measured. The output is the lowest when the K pattern fully overlaps the color pattern (the dotted lines in the diagram cross at this point). This is the "Actual" position as shown in the diagram. But there is a "Target" value in the machine software (an example is shown in the diagram; this is not the real target, it is just an example to explain the process). The machine compares the "Actual" and "Target" values, and adjusts the laser timing in response to the results of this comparison.
Skew is also measured in the main scan direction using the patterns at the left and right of the ITB. If skew is detected, the machine adjusts the angle of the 3rd mirrors.




This diagram shows a close-up view of the sub-scan test pattern.
K is the reference, and the positions of CMY are adjusted with reference to the K pattern.
The CMY patterns are at constant intervals, but the K pattern overlaps the CMY patterns as shown.
The MUSIC sensor response is measured.
The output is lowest when the K pattern fully overlaps the color pattern (the dotted lines in the diagram cross at this point). This is the "Actual" position as shown in the diagram. But there is a "Target" value in the machine software (an example is shown on the diagram; this is not the real target, it is just an example to explain the process). The machine compares the "Actual" and "Target" values, and adjusts the speeds of the drum motors (Y, M, C) according to the results of this comparison.

## *3rd Mirror Position Adjustment*




| |
|---|
| 1. 3rd Mirror (Y) |
| 2. 3rd Mirror (C) |
| 3. 3rd Mirror (M) |
| 4. Mirror Adjustment Motors ①②③ |
| 5. Temperature Sensors |

Each color Yellow [1], Cyan [2], Magenta [3] has a mirror. The machine uses the mirror motors (①②③) to adjust the position of each mirror to correct color registration errors on the ITB in the main scan direction. Color registration errors occur if all four color-toner images do not cover each other exactly on the ITB.

The 3rd mirror for black (K) does not have an adjustment motor. (The position of black toner on the ITB is used as a reference point to adjust the positions of the other colors.)

### *Exposure Unit Temperature Sensors*

There are temperature sensors [5] near the f-theta lenses to monitor the temperature inside the exposure unit.

The f-theta lenses are made of plastic. The magnification ratio of plastic lenses may vary slightly with temperature. The CPU uses the feedback from these temperature sensors to adjust the mirror positions during MUSIC calibration. This corrects color registration errors on the ITB.

## 6.8.7 TONER SUPPLY CONTROL

### *Overview*

The toner supply method can be selected with SP3301-1 to 4.

- 0: Fixed supply mode (used for testing only; do not use this mode except during some troubleshooting procedures as described in section 4)
- 1: PID (Proportional Integral Differentiation) control mode (default)

This section describes only PID control because only PID control is used in the field. PID control uses inputs from pixel count, and from the TD and ID sensors. If the TD or ID sensor is broken, the machine uses PID control with inputs from pixel count only.

The following three functions comprise toner supply control for this machine.

**1. At the end of every job (at the same time as potential control)**

This is done if the number of pages since the previous toner supply control is more than the number that is set with SP 3551.

| | |
|---|---|
| Black-and-white | After 250 pages (adjustable with SP3551 001) |
| Full color | After 250 pages (adjustable with SP3551 002) |

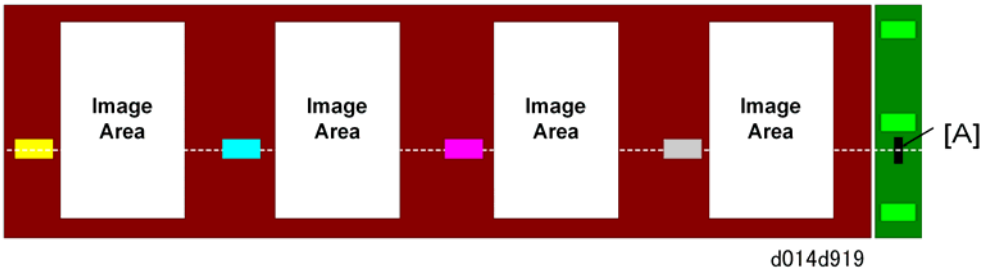
Using the development gamma that was calculated during potential control, the machine determines the target amount of toner (M/A):

- Low development gamma: Raises the target image density of the sensor pattern and increases the toner concentration.
- High development gamma: Lowers the target image density of the sensor pattern and decreases the toner concentration.

**2. Page interval process control (Vsp detection between pages)**

This function operates only when SP3042 001 (Vtref correction) is set to "ON" (default).

The Vsp ID sensor pattern is created between the page images on the ITB (Default: Every 10 pages). This interval can be adjusted with SP3102.

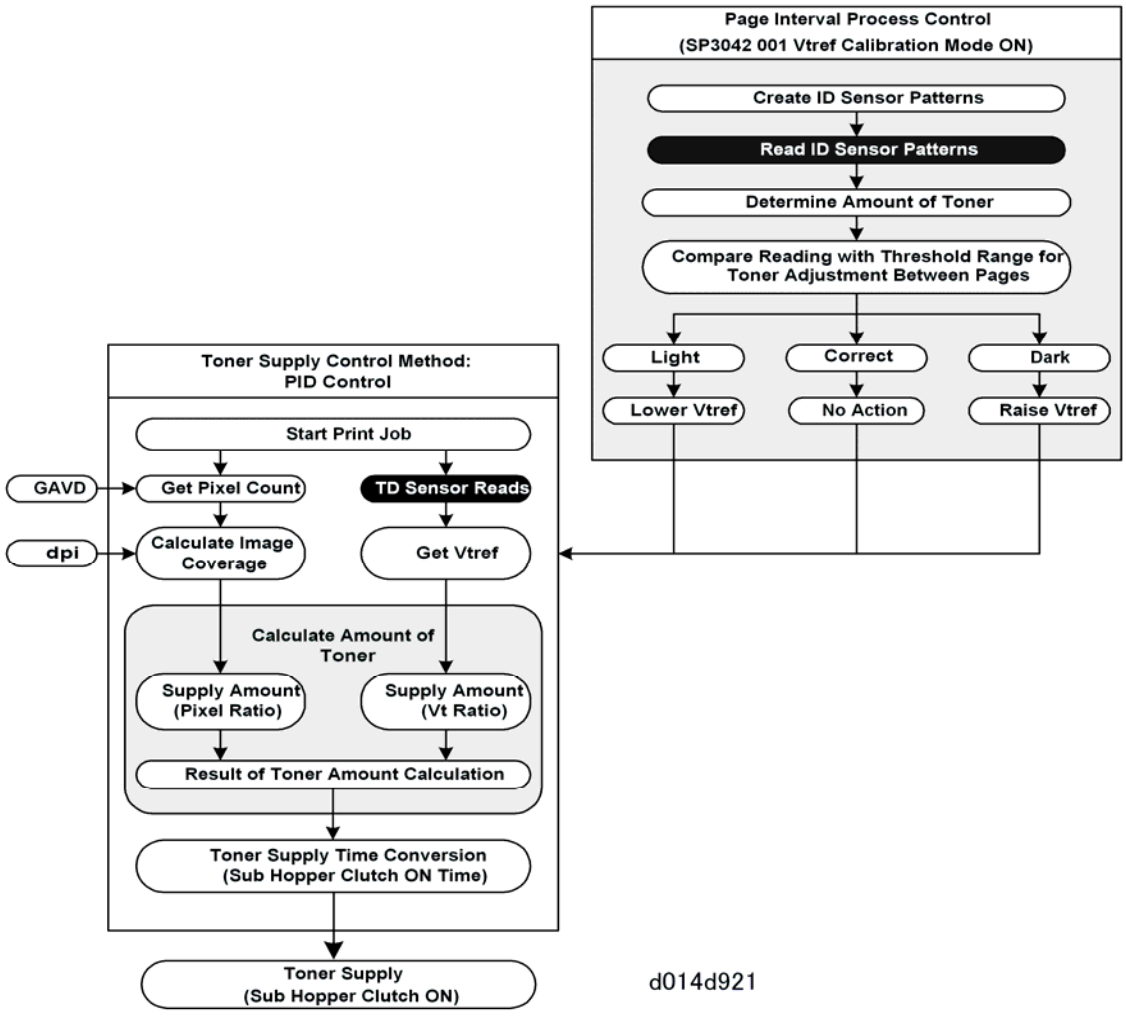



The toner M/A is calculated from readings of the ID sensor patterns by the ID sensor after every 10th page. The maximum coverage (Target M/A) that can be achieved by the process control self-check is controlled by SP3531-1, 2, 3, 4.

Toner supply is based on Vt - Vtref

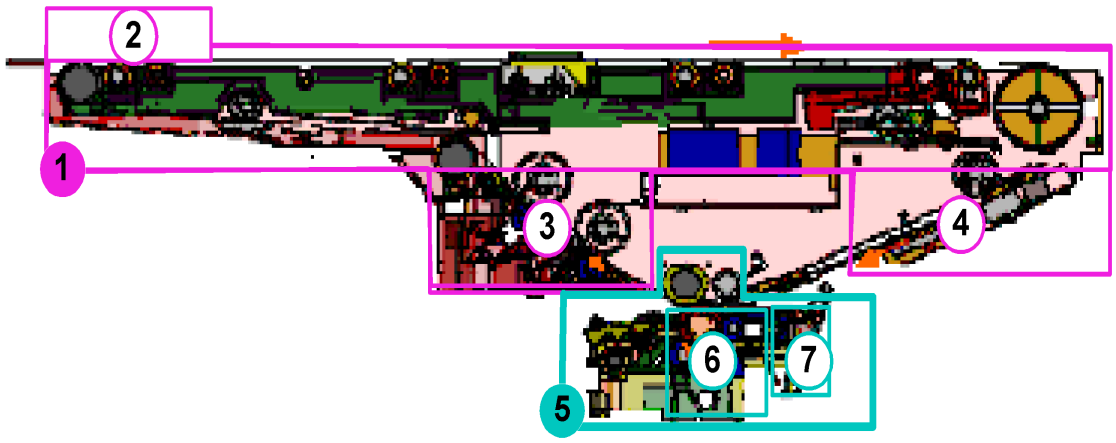
- If the pattern is too dark (too much toner):
  > Vtref is increased > Toner supply amount decreases
- If the pattern is too light (not enough toner):
  > Vtref is reduced > Toner supply amount increases
- TD sensor detection is also done for every page:
  If Vt < Vtref, the toner supply amount is lowered.
  If Vt > Vtref, the toner supply amount is raised.

## *Toner Supply Operation Flow*



# 6.9 IMAGE TRANSFER

## 6.9.1 IMAGE TRANSFER OVERVIEW




temp_itu

The image transfer unit performs two important functions: transferring the image from the OPC drum to the ITB (Image Transfer Belt) and transferring the image from the ITB to paper.

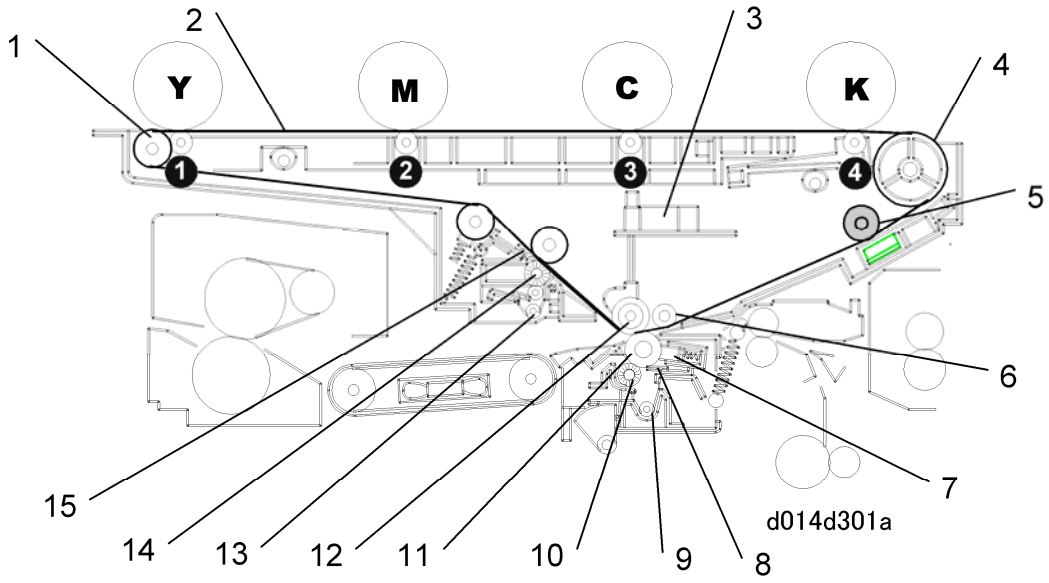
The image drum-to-belt transfer is done in the ITB unit ① at the top. The belt-to-paper transfer is done in the PTR (Paper Transfer Roller) unit ⑤ at the bottom.

The ITB unit ① contains a lift mechanism ②, a cleaning unit ③, and a MUSIC sensor unit ④. The ITB lift mechanism raises the ITB against the bottoms of the color drums above during full-color printing and lowers the ITB for black printing and when the machine is idle. The cleaning unit cleans the ITB. The MUSIC unit contains sensors that read the MUSIC and ID sensor patterns on the belt.

The PTR unit ⑤ contains a cleaning mechanism ⑥ and a lift mechanism ⑦. The cleaning mechanism cleans the PTR. The lift mechanism raises the PTR against the belt, paper, and the opposing roller above when the image is transferred from belt to paper and lowers the roller when the machine is idle.

These mechanisms are described in more detail below.

Image Transfer




1. Image Transfer Rollers (①, ②, ③, ④)
2. Image Transfer Belt (ITB)
3. Transfer Power Pack
4. ITB Drive Roller
5. ID/MUSIC Sensor Roller
6. Belt Pressure Roller
7. PTR Lubricant Bar
8. PTR Cleaning Blade
9. PTR Toner Collection Coil
10. PTR Cleaning Brush
11. PTR (Paper Transfer Roller)
12. ITB Bias Roller
13. ITB Toner Collection Coil
14. ITB Cleaning Brush Roller
15. ITB Cleaning Blade

**1. Image Transfer Rollers (①, ②, ③, ④)**

The positive charge applied by the transfer power pack to these sponge rollers (one for each PCU) pulls the developed images from the drums down onto the ITB.

**2. ITB**

Receives the toner images from the four drums and holds them until they are transferred to paper. During a full-color job, all the drums (Y, C, M, K) are in contact with the ITB. During a black-and-white job where only black is used, the ITB is lowered and the Y, C, M drums separate from the ITB, and only the black (K) drum contacts the ITB.

**3. Transfer Power Pack**

Applies the positive bias to the image transfer rollers that pull the developed toner images off the OPC drums and onto the ITB. This power pack also applies to the ITB bias roller the negative bias that pushes the images off the ITB and onto the paper.

**4. ITB Drive Roller**

Driven by the ITB drive motor, the ITB drive roller turns the ITB belt.

**5. ID/MUSIC Sensor Roller**

This idle roller opposes the ID sensor and three MUSIC sensors. It ensures that the belt is positioned close enough to the sensors for accurate readings of the ID sensor patterns and MUSIC patterns on the ITB.

**6. Belt Pressure Roller**

Presses down on the ITB and paper to hold them in place as the belt and paper enter the nip between the PTR and PTR idle roller where the images are transferred from the ITB to paper.

**7. PTR Lubricant Bar**

Lubricates the PTR to facilitate cleaning.

**8. PTR Cleaning Blade**

Removes any residual toner from the PTR after the PTR cleaning brush roller has cleaned the PTR.

**9. PTR Toner Collection Coil**

Used toner removed from the PTR by the PTR cleaning brush roller and PTR cleaning blade falls into the rotating coils. This toner is then moved to the transverse used toner collection coil and finally to the used toner bottle.

Image Transfer

**10. PTR Cleaning Brush**

Removes residual toner from the PTR after the image is transferred from the ITB to paper.

**11. PTR (Paper Transfer Roller)**

Located below the ITB bias roller, the PTR applies pressure to the belt and paper when the image is transferred from belt to paper.

**12. ITB Bias Roller**

The transfer power pack applies a negative charge to ITB bias roller to push the negatively-charged toner image off the ITB onto the paper.

**13. ITB Toner Collection Coil**

Used toner removed from the ITB by the cleaning brush roller and ITB cleaning blade falls into the rotating coils. It is then moved to the transverse used toner collection coil and finally to the used toner bottle.

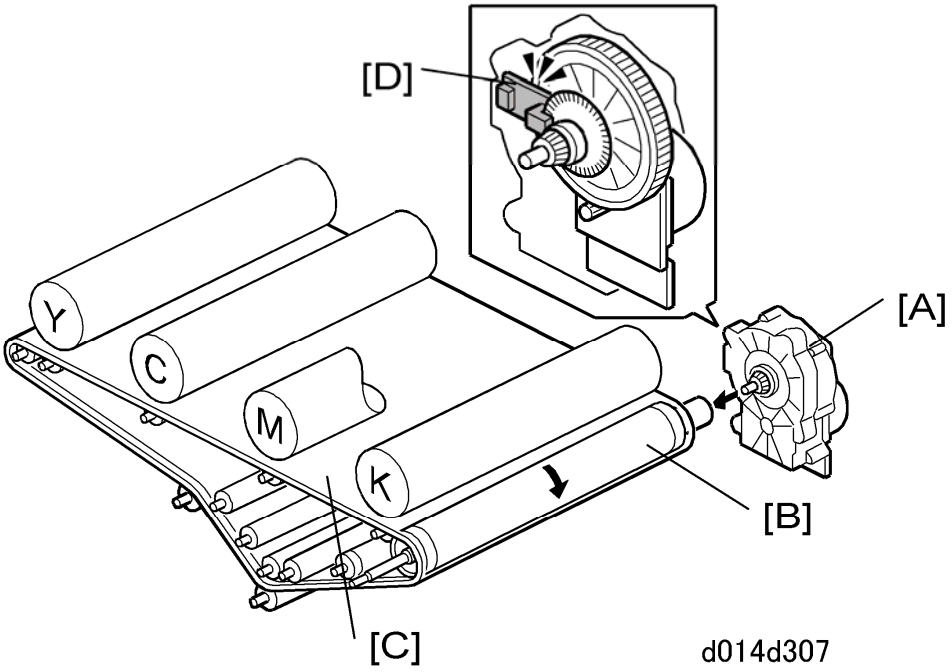
**14. ITB Cleaning Brush Roller**

Removes residual toner from the ITB after the image is transferred from the ITB to paper.

**15. ITB Cleaning Blade**

Removes residual toner from the belt after the ITB cleaning brush roller cleans the belt.

## 6.9.2 ITB DRIVE

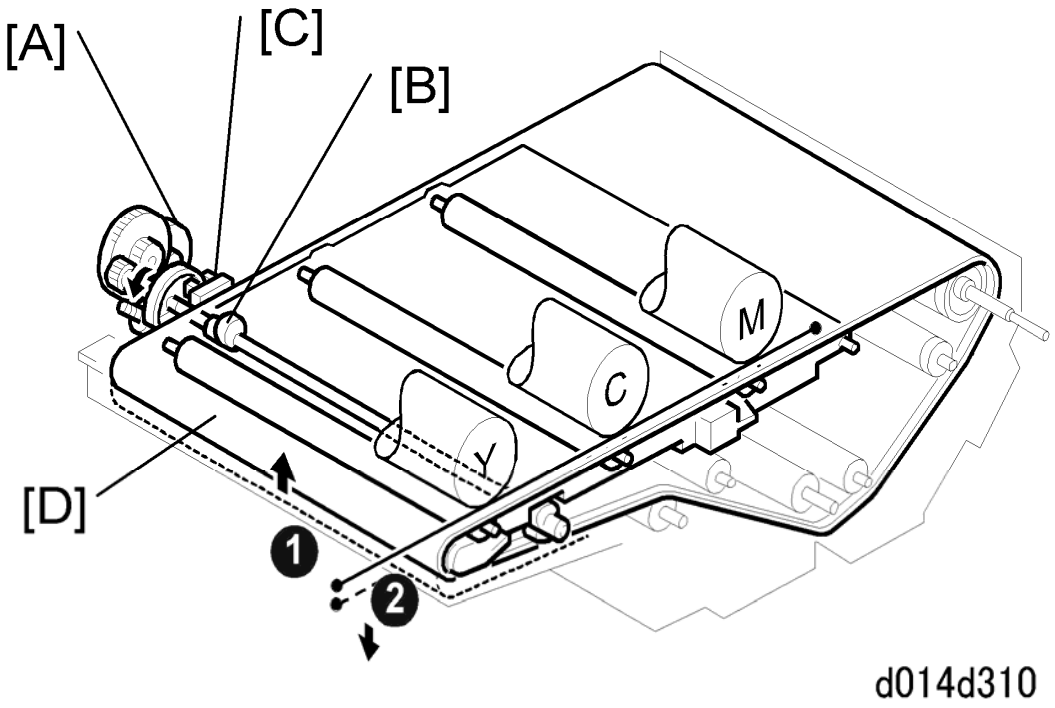



| |
|---|
| [A]: ITB drive motor |
| [B]: ITB drive roller |
| [C]: ITB |
| [D]: ITB Motor Encoder |

The ITB drive motor [A] drives the ITB drive roller [B]. The ITB drive roller rotates the ITB [C]. Other rollers inside the ITB are idle rollers.

The ITB motor encoder [D] (inside the ITB motor unit) controls the operation of the ITB motor.

## 6.9.3 ITB LIFT




| | |
|---|---|
| [A] | ITB lift motor |
| [B] | ITB lift cam |
| [C] | ITB lift sensor |
| [D] | ITB |
| ① | FC (Full Color) position (up) |
| ② | K (Black only) position (down) |

The ITB lift motor [A] (a stepper motor) turns the ITB lift cam [B]. This cam lifts and lowers the ITB [C]. The operation of the ITB lift motor is controlled by the ITB lift sensor [D]. When
⟹ the machine is turned on, the ITB stays at position ②. The Y, C, M drums are separated from the ITB.

When Full Color Mode is Selected:

- The motor turns the cam until the actuator goes into the ITB lift sensor.
- The motor stops.

⇒ ▪ The raised cam holds the ITB at position ①. All drums (Y, C, M, K) contact the ITB.
- The machine automatically adjusts the paper feed timing for full color copying with all the drums.
- While the Y, M, C drums are separated from the ITB, they do not turn. This reduces wear on these drums while they are not being used.

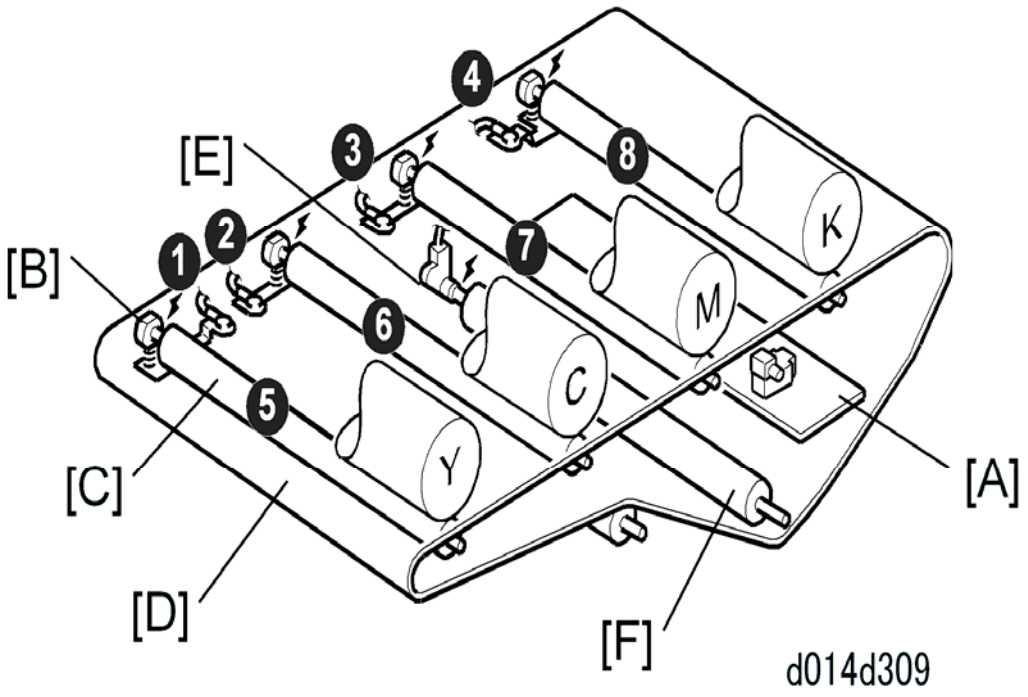
When Black-and-White Mode is Selected:

- The motor turns the cam until the actuator goes out of the ITB lift sensor.
- The motor stops.
- With the left side of the ITB down, only the black (K) drum contacts the ITB.
- The machine automatically adjusts paper feed timing for black-and-white copying with only one drum.
- The ITB stays down until the next full-color job starts

When ACS Mode is Selected:

⇒ ▪ If the job has color pages and black-and-white pages, the ITB operation is controlled by SP 3930.
- The default is 0 (low productivity). In this mode, the ITB changes position each time the page type changes. This makes printing slower, but decreases wear on the color PCUs.
- If you set the SP to 1, then the machine will not move away from the color PCUs if a black-and-white page is next. This makes printing faster, but increases wear on the color PCUs.

## 6.9.4 TRANSFER POWER PACK




| | |
|---|---|
| [A] | Transfer power pack |
| [B] | ITB transfer roller terminals ①, ②, ③, ④ |
| [C] | Image transfer rollers ⑤, ⑥, ⑦, ⑧ |
| [D] | ITB |
| [E] | ITB bias roller terminal |
| [F] | ITB bias roller |

To transfer the images from drum to ITB:

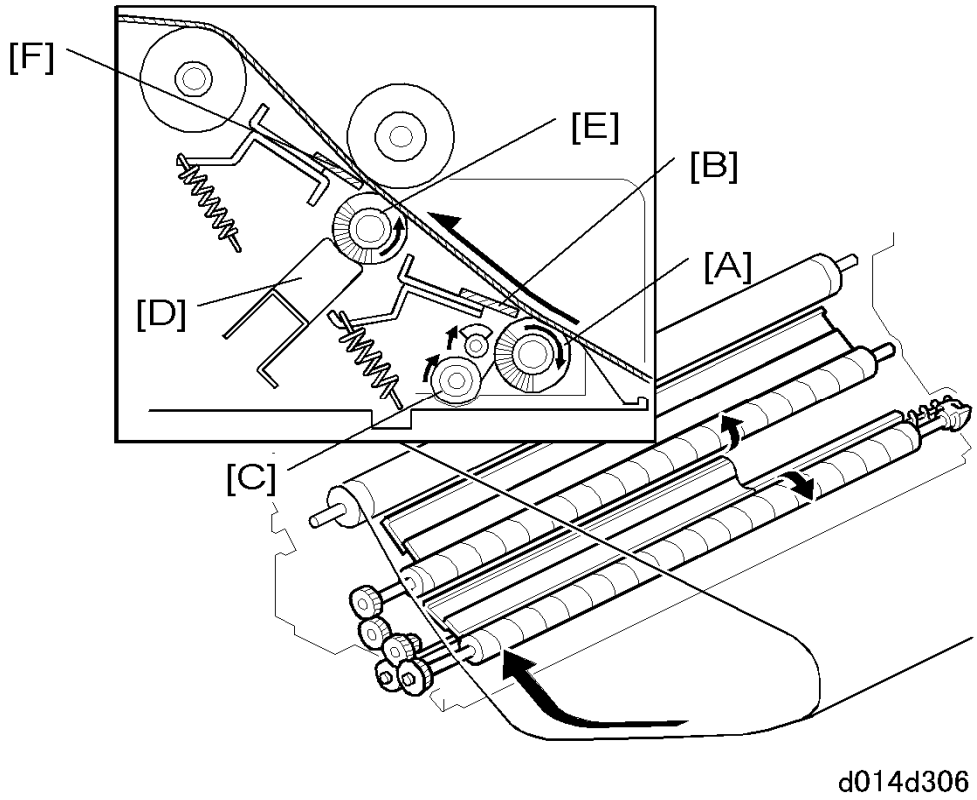
- The transfer power pack [A] supplies a positive charge (1 kV 24 to 30 muA) to the image transfer roller terminals [B] ①, ②, ③, ④
- The four terminals charge the image transfer rollers [C] ⑤, ⑥, ⑦, ⑧ which transfer the charge to the back of the ITB [D].
- The positively charged ITB pulls the negatively charged toner off the drums and onto the ITB.

To transfer the images from ITB to paper:

- The transfer power pack [A] supplies a negative charge to the ITB bias roller terminal [E].
- The terminal applies the negative charge to the ITB bias roller [F].
- The high negative charge of the ITB bias roller is applied to the back of the ITB. This repulses the low negative charge of the toner, forcing the images onto the paper.

The transfer power pack supplies the positive charge for image transfer to the ITB and the negative charge for image transfer from the ITB to paper. A temperature/humidity sensor under the used toner bottle motor controls the amount of the charge applied to the image transfer and ITB bias rollers.

## 6.9.5 ITB CLEANING




| | |
|---|---|
| [A] | ITB brush cleaning roller |
| [B] | ITB cleaning blade |
| [C] | Toner collection coil |
| [D] | Lubrication Bar |
| [E] | Lubricant Brush Roller |
| [F] | Lubricant Blade |

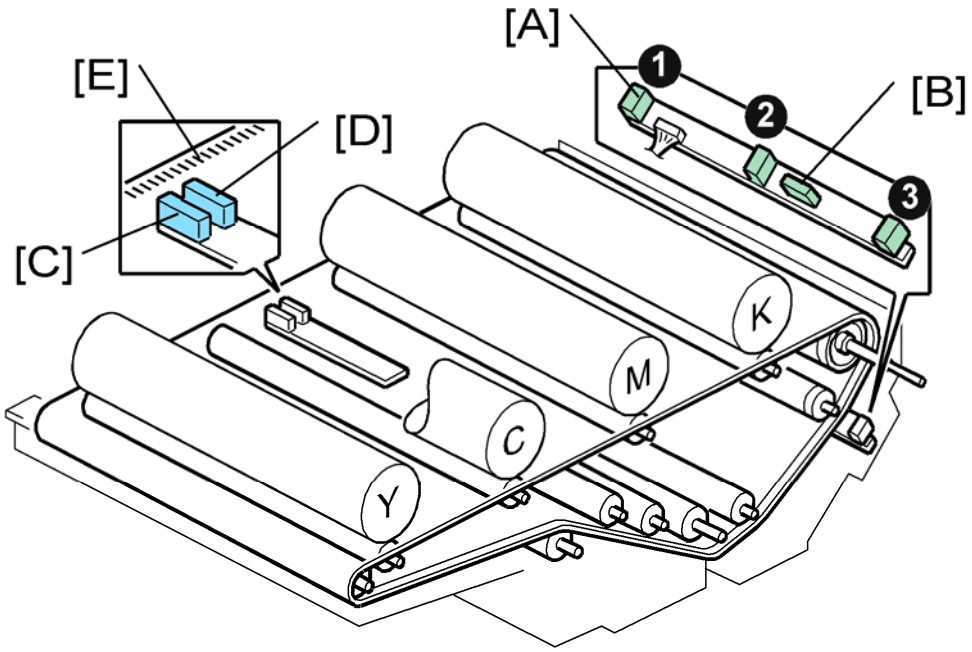
The PTR motor rotates the ITB brush cleaning roller [A] against the bottom of the ITB as it passes above. The ITB cleaning blade [B] scrapes off any toner remaining on the belt after brush roller cleaning.

Toner removed by the brush cleaning roller and cleaning blade falls into the toner collection coil [C] that sends the used toner to the transverse toner collection coil at the back of the machine.

The lubrication bar [D] (ZnSt) lubricates the brush roller [E]. The lubricant brush roller lubricates the ITB to prevent scratching or scouring of the belt surface.

Finally, the lubricant blade [F] (ZnSt) removes any toner remaining on the lubricant brush roller.

## 6.9.6 ITB SPEED CONTROL




d014d308

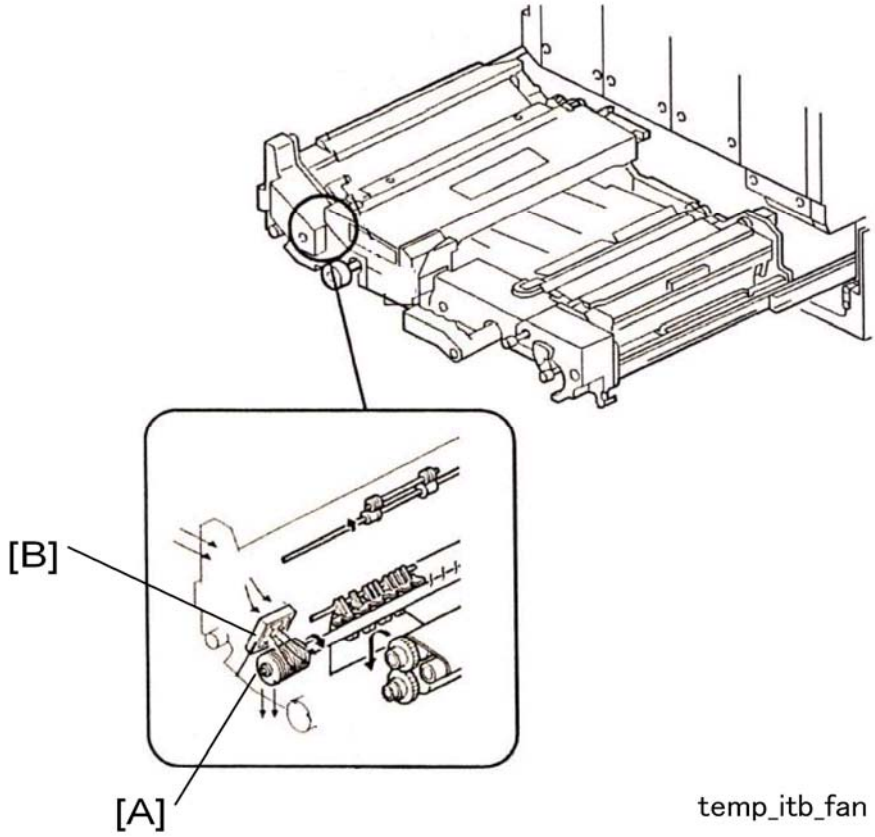
| | |
|---|---|
| [A] | MUSIC sensors ①, ②, ③ |
| [B] | ID Sensor |
| [C] | ITB position sensor 2 (Sub) |
| [D] | ITB position sensor 1 (Main) |
| [E] | ITB encoder strip |

The feedback of three MUSIC sensors [A] control the speed of the drum motor to prevent color registration errors during full color printing.

There are two ITB position sensors Sensor 1 [C] and Sensor 2 [D] above the encoder strip scale [E] on the rear edge of the ITB.

- ITB position sensor 1 monitors the belt speed. The CPU uses this information to adjust the speed of the belt to account for eccentricity of the image transfer roller, differences in the thickness of the belt, belt slippage, and the load placed on the ITB by friction between the rollers at paper transfer.
- ITB position sensor 2, located a short distance from sensor 1, ensures that the number of gradations on the edge of the ITB in the gap between the sensors remains constant. This detects stretching or shrinking of the belt, and the ITB drive motor speed is adjusted to compensate for this occurrence.

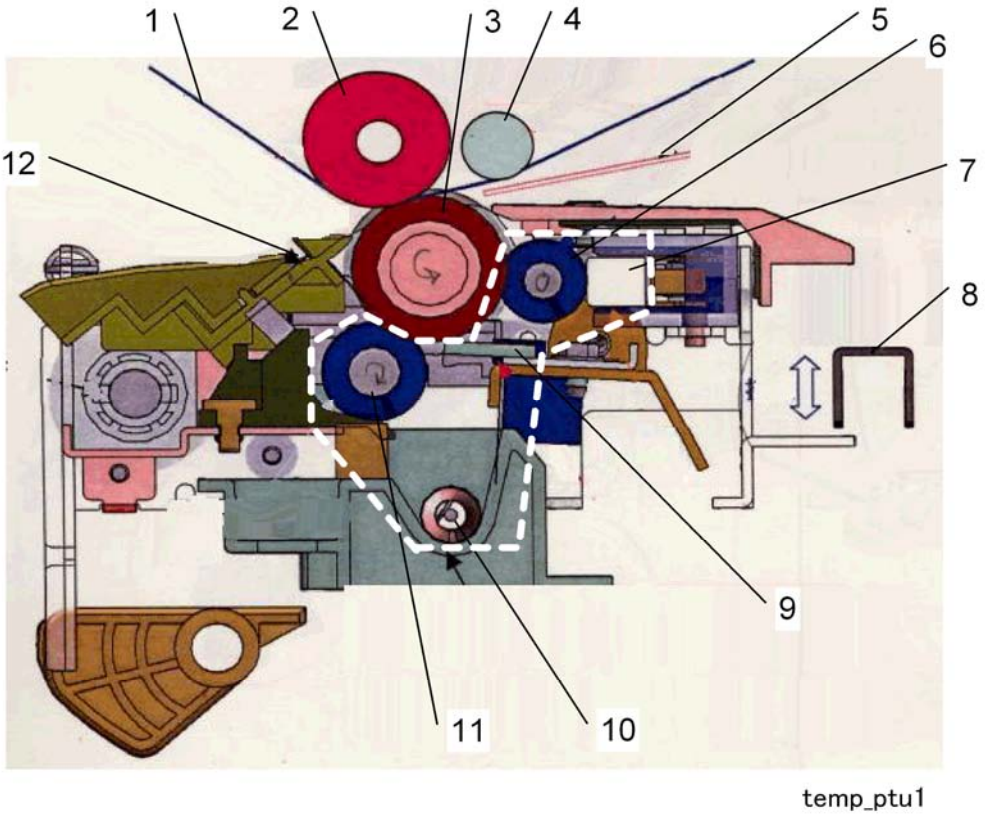
## 6.9.7 ITB VENTILATION




Baffled fins [A] collect heat conducted from inside the ITB unit by the heat sink. The image transfer fan [B] draws in cool air and blows air through the fins to dissipate the heat and send it out of the ITB unit.

## 6.9.8 PAPER TRANSFER

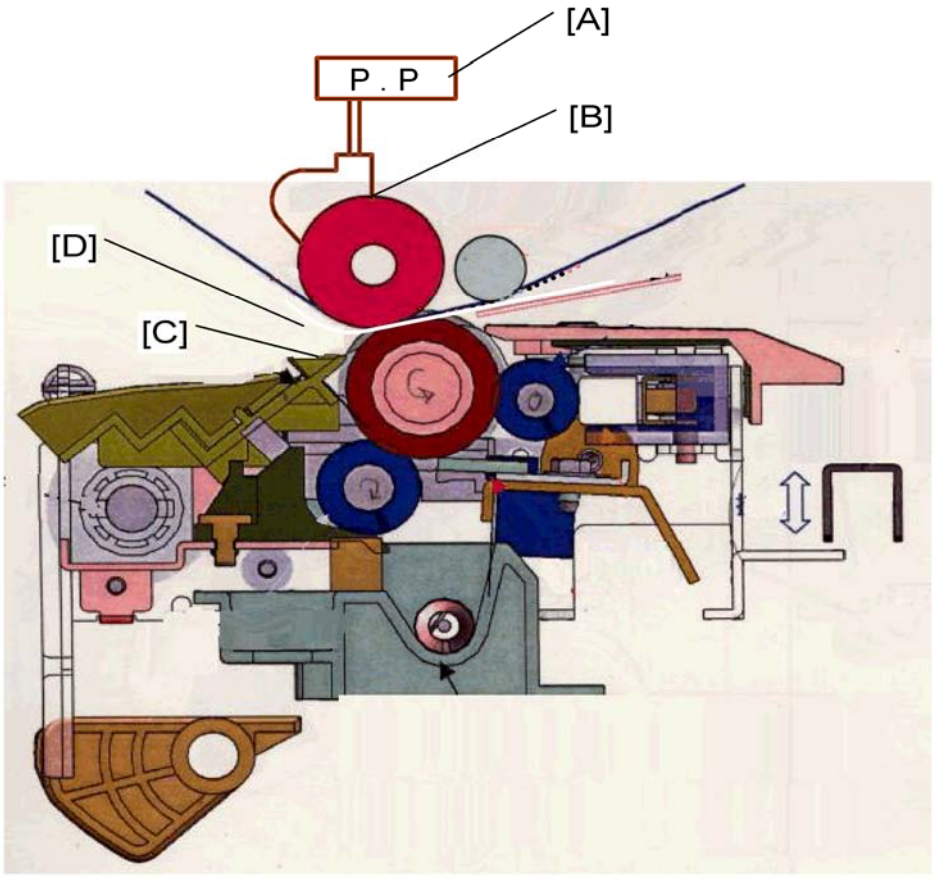
### *Paper Transfer Unit Overview*




1. ITB (Image Transfer Belt)
2. ITB Bias Roller
3. PTR (Paper Transfer Roller)
4. Tension Roller
5. Entrance Guide
6. Lubrication Brush Roller
7. Lubrication Bar
8. Lift Bracket
9. Cleaning Blade
10. Toner Collection Coil
11. Paper Dust Brush
12. Paper Discharge Plate

**Note**: Items 6, 7, 9, 10, 11 comprise the PTR cleaning unit.

## *Image Transfer and Separation*




temp_ptu1b

This machine employs a repulsion-force bias system for belt-to-paper image transfer.

The transfer power pack [A] applies a negative bias to the ITB bias roller [B].

The negative bias applied to the back side of the ITB forces the toner from the surface of the belt onto the paper.

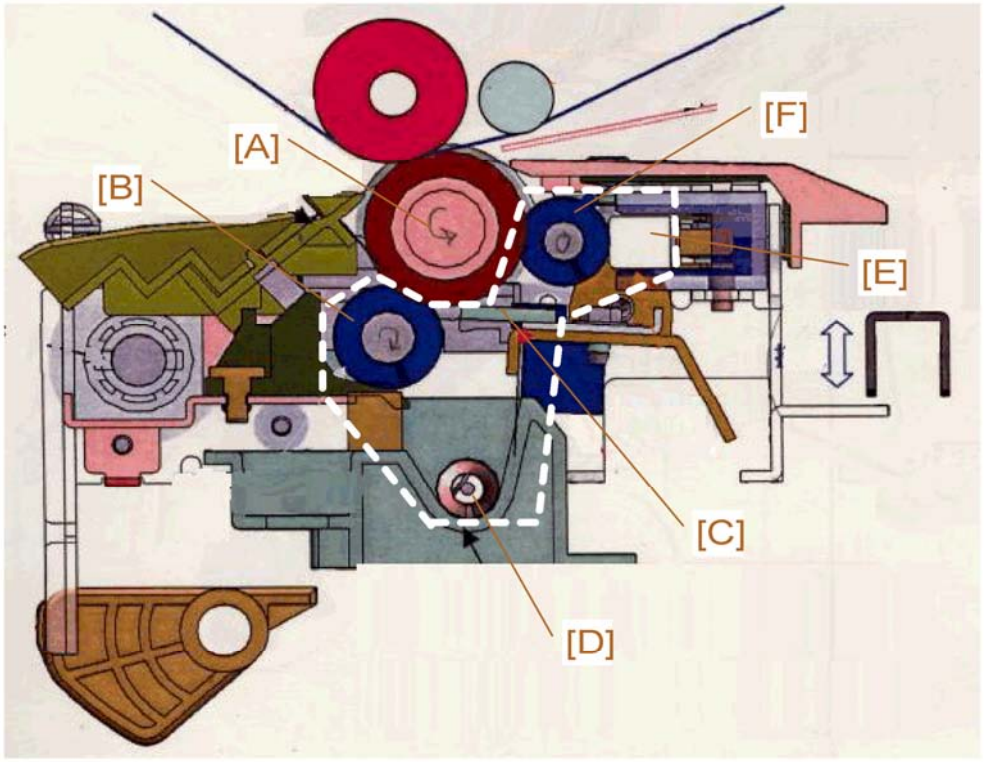
This system has two advantages:

- The negative bias has no effect on the moisture in the paper.
- Because the bias is applied from the front side of the paper, the bias can be applied more effectively, regardless of the level of humidity around the paper.

After the image has been transferred to the paper:

- The paper discharge plate [C] (connected to the separation power pack) applies an ac charge to neutralize the charges on the paper and the ITB.
- Next, curvature separation at [D] separates the paper from the belt when the ITB makes its abrupt turn toward the top of the machine for the next copy cycle.

### *PTR Cleaning*




temp_ptu1a

| | |
|---|---|
| [A] | PTR |
| [B] | PTR brush cleaning roller |
| [C] | PTR cleaning blade |
| [D] | PTR toner collection coil |
| [E] | Lubricant bar (ZnSt) |
| [F] | PTR lubricant brush roller |

Image Transfer

The PTR [A] turns counter-clockwise.

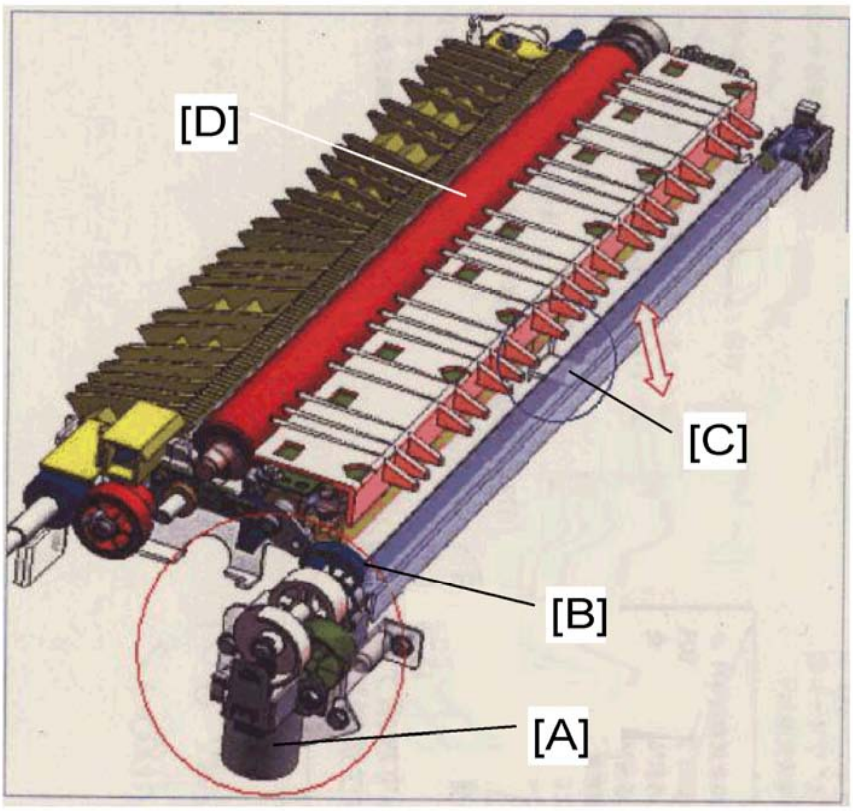
The brush cleaning roller [B] (driven by the PTR motor), removes toner from the PTR. The PTR cleaning blade [C] removes any toner remaining on the surface of the PTR after brush cleaning. Toner removed by the brush cleaning roller and cleaning blade falls into the PTR toner collection coil [D]. This rotating coil moves the toner to the transverse used toner collection coil at the back of the machine where it is sent to the used toner bottle.

The PTR lubrication bar [E] lubricates the PTR lubricated brush roller [F]. This lubricated roller lubricates the surface of the PTR to prevent scratching or scouring of the roller surface.

### *PTR Lift*

The PTR lift mechanism raises and lowers the PTR unit.

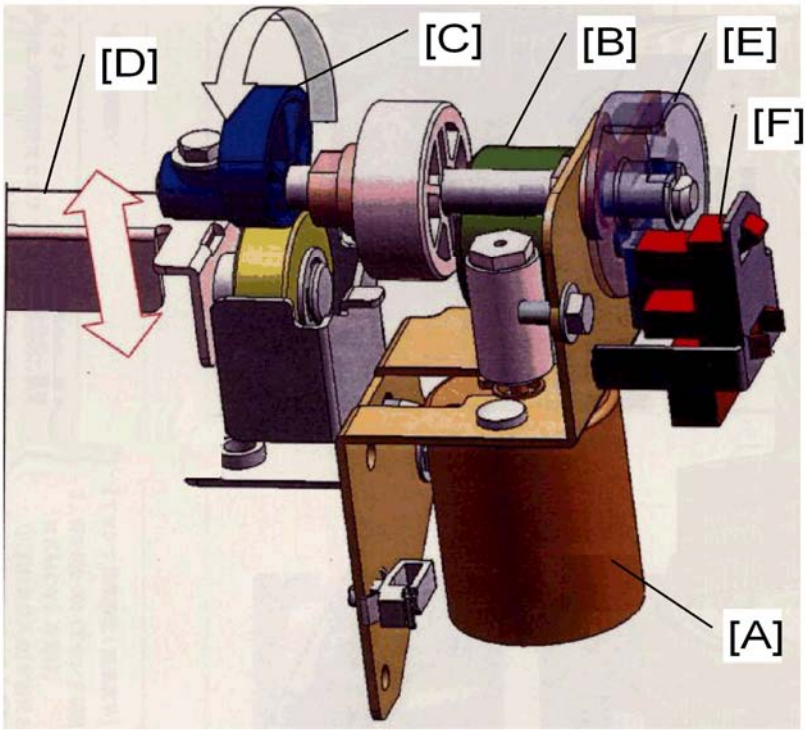
- The lift mechanism raises the PTR against the ITB for belt-to-paper image transfer.
- The lift mechanism lowers the PTR and pulls it away from the ITB when the machine is not printing.




temp_ptu2

The PTR lift motor [A] rotates cam [B]. The rotation of the cam raises and lowers the lift plate [C] which in turn raises and lowers the PTR [D].

Image Transfer




temp_ptu3

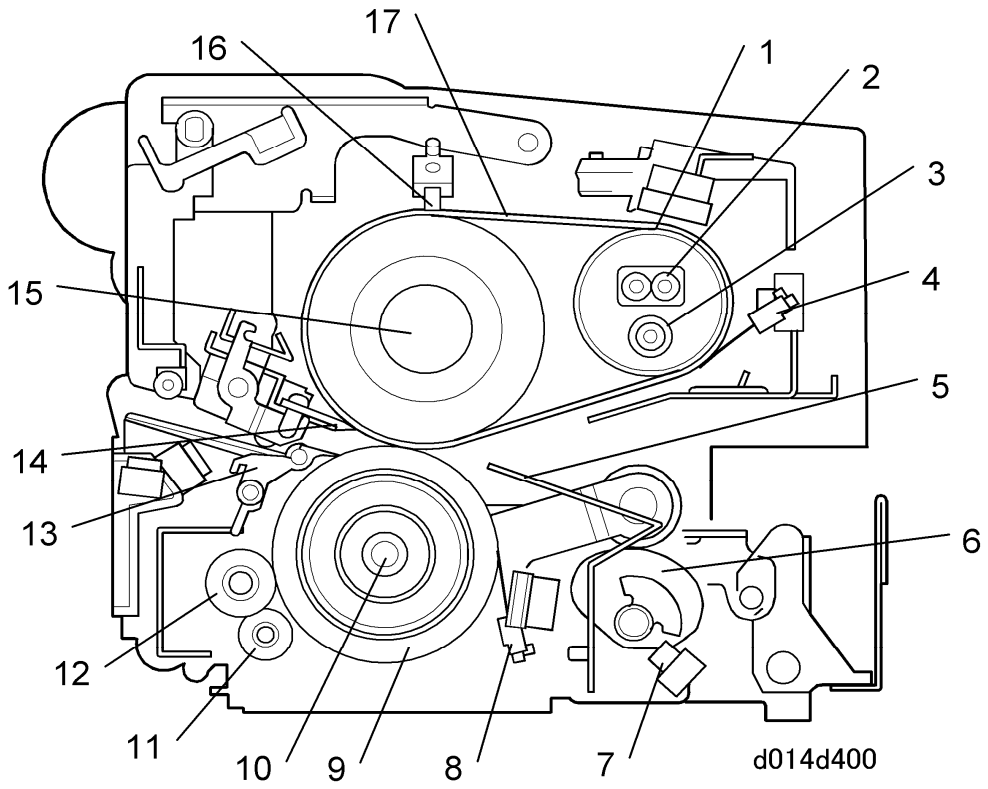
The PTR lift motor [A] operates the drive train [B] that rotates the cam [C]. The rotation of the cam raises and lowers the lift plate [D].

A circular actuator [E] attached to the shaft of the cam shaft passes through the gap in the PTR lift sensor [F]. The interaction of this actuator and sensor tells the machine when to stop raising and lowering the PTR.

# 6.10 FUSING UNIT

## 6.10.1 OVERVIEW

### *Fusing Unit Components*



Fusing Unit

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Heating Roller | 10. | Pressure Roller Fusing Lamp |
| 2. | Heating Roller Fusing Lamps x2 | 11. | Cleaning Roller |
| 3. | Heating Roller Fusing Lamp x1 | 12. | Oil Supply Roller |
| 4. | Heating Roller Thermistor | 13. | Pressure Roller Strippers |
| 5. | Entrance Guide | 14. | Fusing Belt Strippers |
| 6. | Pressure Roller Lift Mechanism | 15. | Hot Roller |
| 7. | Pressure Roller Lift Sensor | 16. | Fusing Belt Thermistor |
| 8. | Pressure Roller Thermistor | 17. | Fusing Belt |
| 9. | Pressure Roller | | |

A fusing belt and three rollers comprise the fusing unit. The rollers are:

- Heating roller (fusing lamps x3)
- Pressure roller (fusing lamp x1)
- Hot roller (no fusing lamps).

The hot roller is composed of a new, softer sponge material that applies more even pressure during fusing. Because the hot roller is very soft, a mechanism is provided to retract the pressure roller from the hot roller and fusing belt when the machine is not operating.

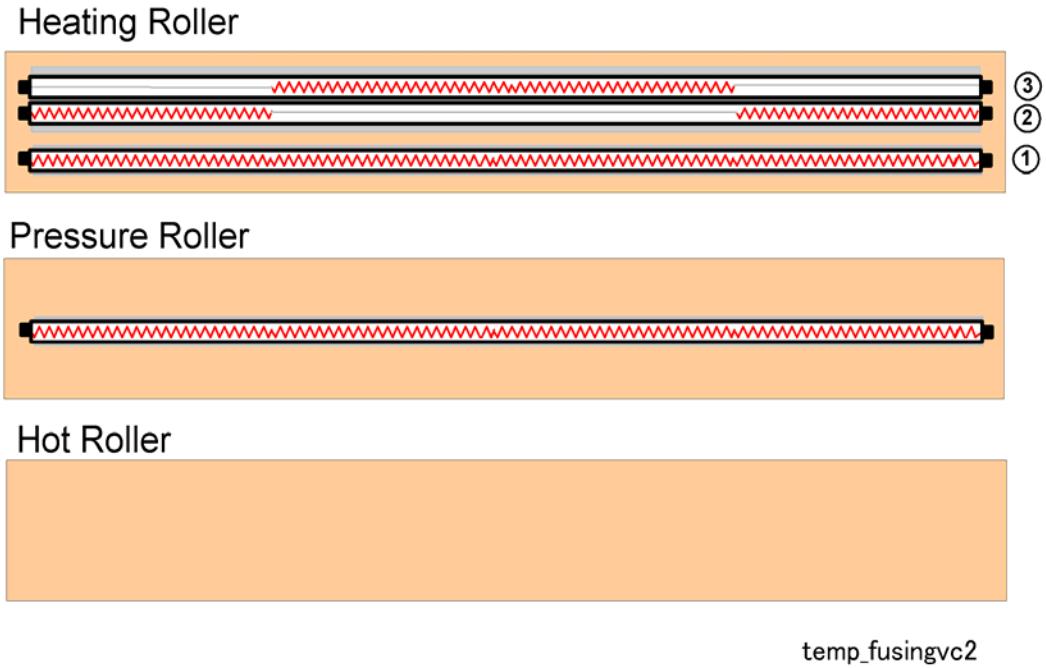
## *Fusing Unit Specifications*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Fusing Method | Fusing Belt System | |
| Fusing Lamps | Heating Roller (3 halogen fusing lamps) | |
| | Pressure Roller (1 halogen fusing lamp) | |
| Roller Diameters | Heating Roller: 35 mm<br>Hot Roller: 52 mm<br>Pressure Roller: 50 mm | |
| Roller Thickness | Heating Roller: 0.6 mm<br>Hot Roller: 10 mm<br>Pressure Roller: 1.5 mm | |
| Heat Detection | Thermostats x3 | Heating Roller Center x1<br>Heating Roller End x1<br>Pressure Roller x1 |
| | Thermistors x5 | Heating Roller x3<br>Pressure Roller x1<br>Hot Roller x1 |
| Fusing Unit Drive | Fusing/Exit Motor (Paper Transport)<br>Pressure Roller Lift Motor (Raises/lowers pressure roller) | |

Fusing Unit

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Warm-up Time | EU/AP | Less than 75 s | | < 300 s |
| | NA | D014/D078 | Less than 90 s | |
| | D015/D079 | Less than 75 s | | |
| First Copy | FC | D014/D078 | 7.5 s | 7.5 s |
| | D015/D079 | 6.4 s | | |
| | B&W | D014/D078 | 5.7 s | 6.5 s |
| | D015/D079 | 4.9 s | | |

## *Fusing Lamp Ratings*




temp_fusingvc2

| | | NA | EU |
|---|---|---|---|
| Heating Roller | ① | 117V 250W | 227V 400W |
| | ② | 117V 700W | 227V 700W |
| | ③ | 117V 700W | 227V 700W |
| Pressure Roller | | 117V 400W | 227V 600W |

Fusing Unit

The fusing belt system applies heat to the belt at two points: the heating roller and the pressure roller. This conserves space and allows these rollers to be smaller (less pressure is required for fusing so less torque is required).

- The fusing belt applies heat directly to fuse the toner to the paper.
- The heating roller has three fusing lamps. It applies heat to the fusing belt after the fusing belt passes the hot roller. The heating roller also keeps the fusing belt hot while the machine is in standby mode.
- The pressure roller has a metal core to provide rigidity, and is covered with Teflon to prevent toner from adhering to its surface. It applies heat with one fusing lamp to maintain the temperature of the fusing belt while the machine is in standby mode.
- The fusing exit sensor detects jams at the fusing exit by confirming that paper arrives at the fusing exit at the correct time.
- The hot roller is a sponge roller designed for a higher line speed and better grip at the nip. A pressure roller lift mechanism keeps the pressure roller separated from the hot roller while the machine is idle, to protect the hot roller from warping.

The fusing/exit motor speed depends on the type of paper selected for the job. Refer to the table below.

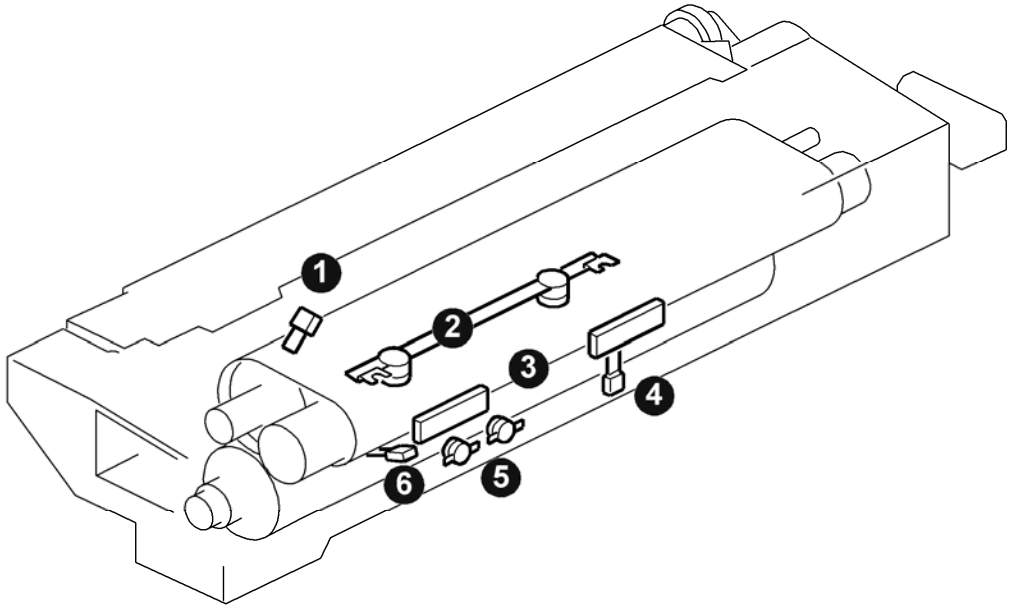
**D014/D078**

| Paper Thickness Mode | Paper Wgt (g/m2) | Speed (mm/s) |
|---|---|---|
| Normal | 52.3 to 65 (including 58 W) | 282 |
| Normal 1 | 66 to 100 | 282 |
| Normal 2 | 81 to 100 | 282 |
| Medium | 101 to 127 | 282 |
| Thick 1 | 128 to 163 | 176.4 |
| Thick 2 | 164 to 249 | 176.4 |
| Thick 3/OHP | 250 to 300 | 141 |

**D015/D079**

| Paper Thickness Mode | Paper Wgt (g/m2) | Speed (mm/s) |
|---|---|---|
| Normal | 52.3 to 65 (including 58 W) | 352.8 |
| Normal 1 | 66 to 100 | 352.8 |
| Normal 2 | 81 to 100 | 352.8 |
| Medium | 101 to 127 | 282 |
| Thick 1 | 128 to 163 | 176.4 |
| Thick 2 | 164 to 249 | 176.4 |
| Thick 3/OHP | 250 to 300 | 141 |

## 6.10.2 THERMISTORS, THERMOSTATS



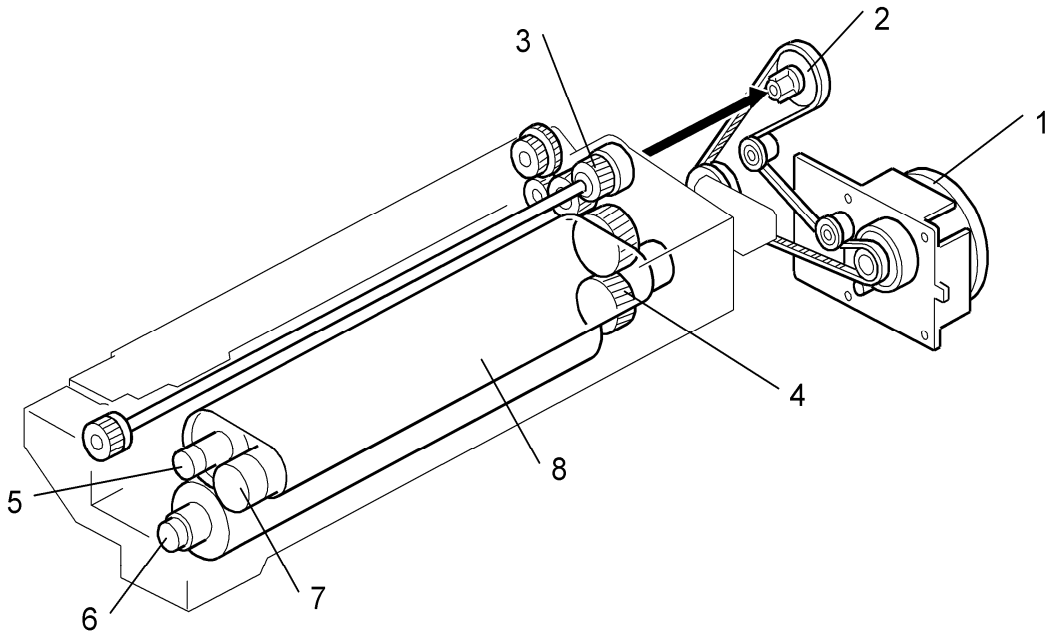

d014d401

1. Hot Roller Thermistor
2. Heating Roller Thermostats
3. Heating Roller Thermistors
4. Pressure Roller Thermistor
5. Pressure Roller Thermostats
6. Heating Roller Thermistors

The heating roller has one thermistor and two thermostats. An additional two thermistors (non-contact) are provided at the center and ends of the heating roller.

- Thermistors take heat readings that the machine uses for fusing temperature control.
- Thermostats are trip devices with hysterisis elements that will trip if a component overheats in their vicinity. When the thermostat trips, this shuts down the fusing unit.

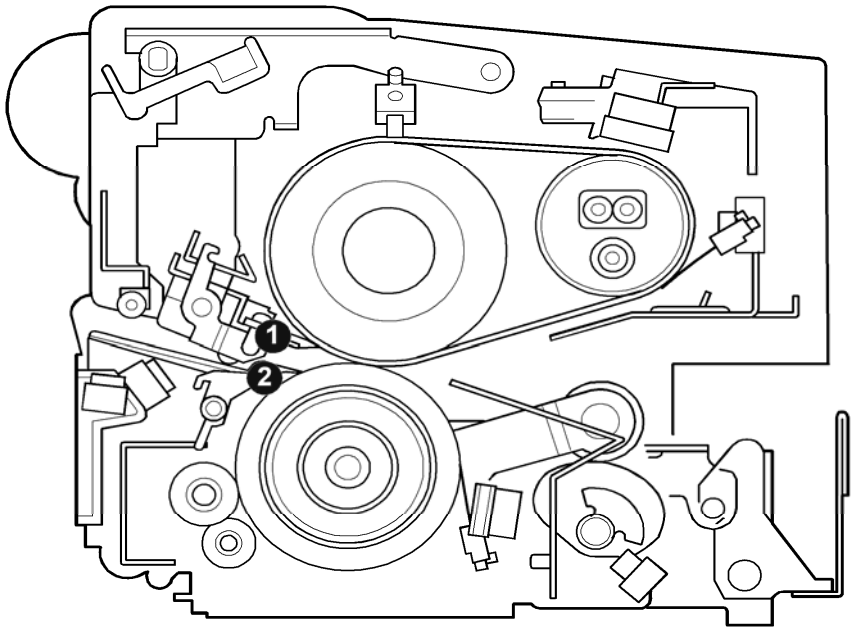
## 6.10.3 FUSING UNIT DRIVE




1. Fusing/exit motor
2. Coupling, Timing Belt
3. Drive Roller
4. Idle Rollers
5. Hot Roller
6. Pressure Roller
7. Heating Roller
8. Fusing Belt

The fusing/exit motor [1] drives the coupling [2] and main drive shaft [3] via a timing belt. The idle rollers [4] rotated by the main drive shaft, turn the hot roller [5], pressure roller [6], and heating roller [7]. These rollers drive the fusing belt [8] tightly wrapped around these rollers.

## 6.10.4 STRIPPERS

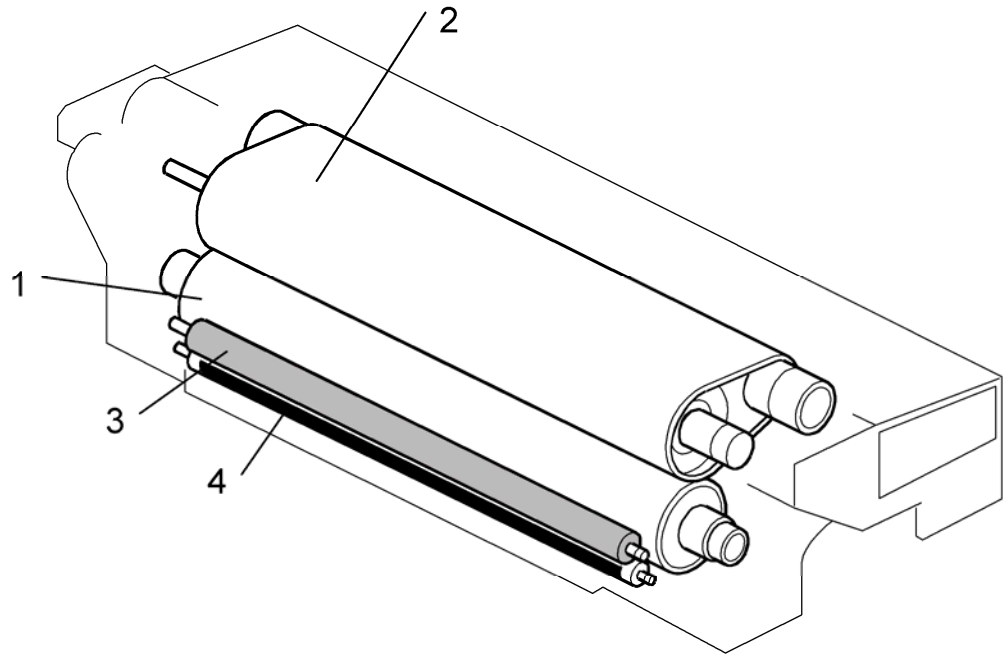



d014d400a

Stripper plates ① touching the fusing belt remove any paper that may accidentally stick to the belt after fusing. These are smooth plates, not sharp pointed pawls.

Unlike the fusing belt stripper plate mechanism, the pressure roller strippers ② are sharply pointed. They touch the fusing belt above the pressure roller to remove any paper that may accidentally stick to the belt after fusing.

## 6.10.5 FUSING BELT LUBRICATION AND CLEANING




d014rd403

1. Pressure Roller
2. Fusing Belt
3. Oil Supply Roller
4. Oil Supply Roller Cleaning Roller

The pressure roller [1] pushes up against the fusing belt [2] and hot roller.

The oil supply roller [3] applies lubricant to the pressure roller.

The oil supply roller cleaning roller [4] cleans the oil supply roller.

## 6.10.6 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL

### *Basic Temperature Control*

The fusing unit has four fusing lamps:

- Three in the heating roller
- One in the pressure roller
- The heating roller with its three lamps is the main source of heat for fusing.
- The hot roller has no fusing lamp so it applies no heat.
- The pressure roller maintains the temperature of the fusing belt while the machine is in standby mode.

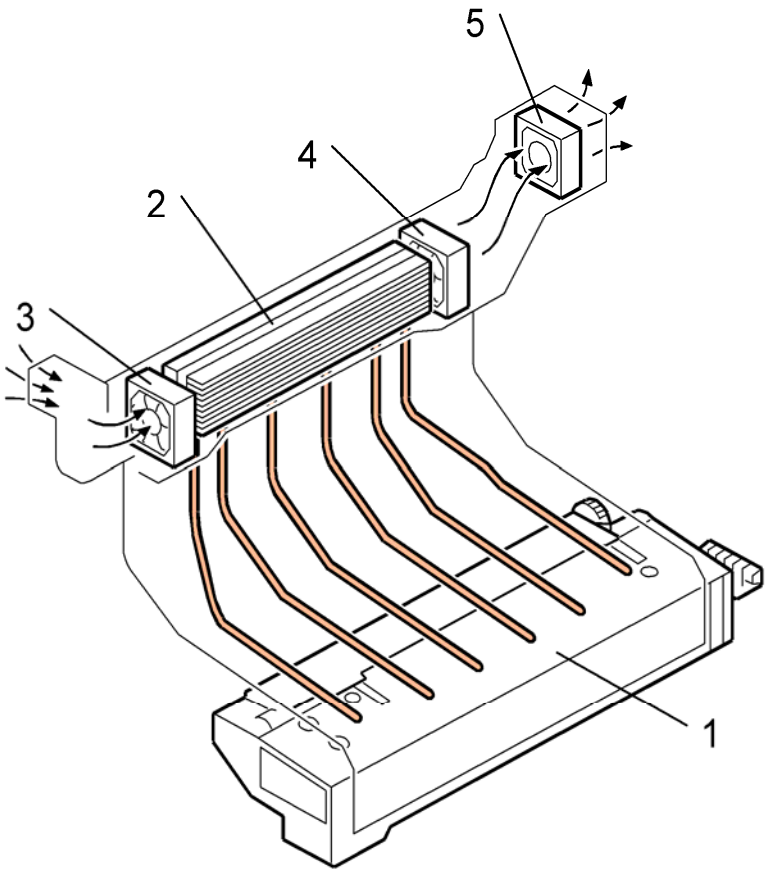
Feedback from the thermistors assigned to each roller is used by the machine CPU to control fusing temperature.

### *Temperature Adjustments*

The temperature inside the machine is measured with the temperature sensor located near the used toner bottle. These temperature readings are used to make adjustments based on the internal temperature of the machine:

- If the temperature inside the machine is less than 20°C, all target fusing temperatures are increased by 5°C.
- If the temperature inside the machine is more than 20°C, the standby temperature is decreased by 5°C.

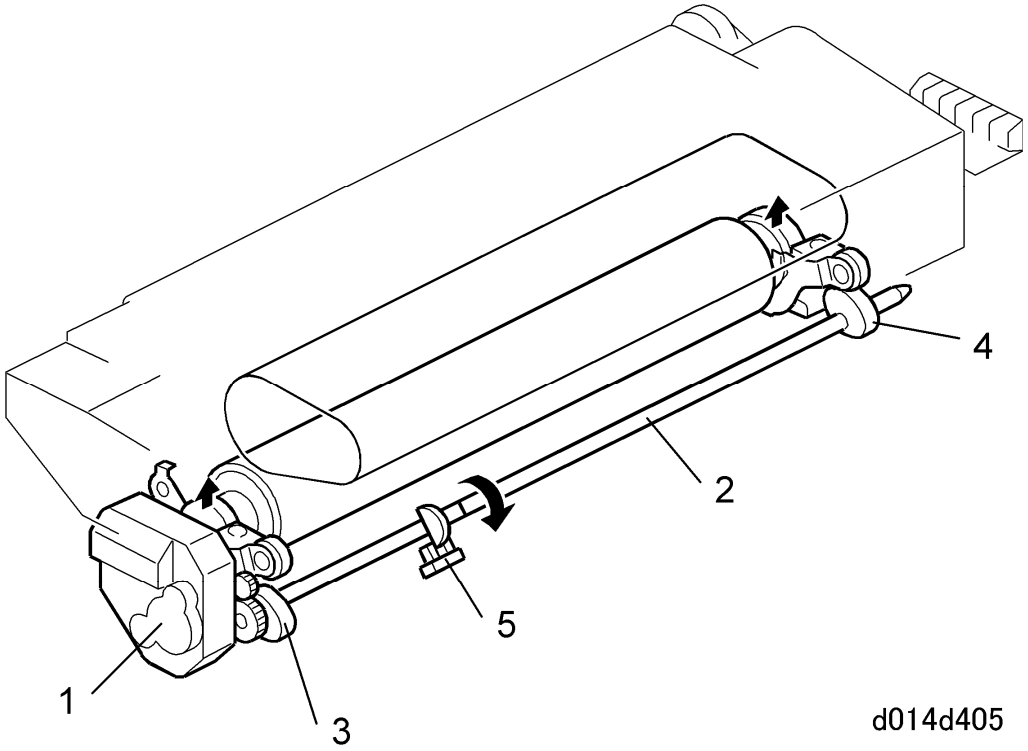
## 6.10.7 FUSING UNIT VENTILATION




1. Fusing Unit
2. Heat Sink
3. Intake Fan
4. Exhaust Fan 1
5. Exhaust Fan 2

Heat from the fusing unit [1] is drawn off by the pipes and collects in the heat sink [2]. The fusing unit intake fan [3] draws in cool air and blows it through the laminations of the heat sink. The first exhaust fan [4] draws the heated air out of the heat sink. The second exhaust fan [5] takes the hot air and blows it out of the machine.

## 6.10.8 PRESSURE ROLLER LIFT MECHANISM




A pressure roller lift mechanism raises the pressure roller against the hot roller and fusing unit above and then lowers at the end of the job.

- When a job starts, the pressure roller lift motor [1] switches on rotates the cam shaft [2].
- The cams [3] and [4] raise the pressure roller against the hot roller and fusing belt.
- The motor (a stepper motor) stops when the actuator activates the pressure roller lift sensor [5] and the pressure roller remains up.
- At the end of the job, the motor reverses and lowers the pressure roller away from the hot roller.

The hot roller and pressure roller remain separated while the machine is idle. This prevents the pressure roller and hot roller from warping and thus prolongs their service lives.

# SPECIFICATIONS

| REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| 4 | 02/29/2008 | Specifications |
| 10 | 07/29/2009 | Specifications – LCT 4000 (D350) |
| 19 | 08/26/2009 | Specifications – 2000 Sheet Finisher (D373) |
| 31 ~ 60 | 04/03/2008 | Specifications |

# 7. SPECIFICATIONS

## 7.1 SPECIFICATIONS

### 7.1.1 MAIN FRAME D014/D015/D078/D079

***Copying***

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Configuration | Console | |
| Dimensions (w x d x h) | | |
| No ARDF | 750 x 850 x 1050 mm (29.5 x 33.5 x 41.3 in.) | |
| With ARDF | 750 x 850 x 1230 mm (29.5 x 33.5 x 48.4 in.) | |
| Weight (with ARDF) | Less than 298 kg (655.6 lb) | |
| Original Scanning | Flatbed with moving 3-line CCD array, image scanning | |
| Copy Process | 4-drum dry electrostatic transfer system with internal transfer belt | |
| ARDF | Standard | |
| Development | Dry dual-component magnetic brush development | |
| Fusing | Oil-less belt fusing system | |
| Engine speed | D014/D078 | FC 55 cpm, BK 60 cpm |
| | D015/D079 | FC 70 cpm BK 75 cpm |
| Warm-up time | EU/AP | Less than 75 sec. |
| | NA | D014/D078: Less than 90 sec.<br>D015/D079: Less than 75 sec. |
| First copy time | FC | D014/D015/D078/D079: Less than 7.5/6.4 sec. |

Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | BK | D014/D015/D078/D079: Less than 5.7/4.9 sec. |
| Original types | Sheet, book, object | |
| Max. original size | A3, 11" x 17" | |
| Resolution | Copy | 600 dpi 4-bit |
| | Print | 600 dpi 4-bit |
| | Scan (Send) | 600 dpi 8-bit |
| Image Size | Default | 297 (+4) x 457 mm (Note 1) |
| | Max. | 297 (+4) x 600 mm (Note 2) |

**Note 1**: Size depends on the D014/D015/D078/D079 application "+4" not guaranteed.

**Note 2**:

- Size depends on the D014/D015/D078/D079 application "+4" not guaranteed.
- Setting with SP mode is required.
- The max. setting cannot be selected if the SR5000 is installed.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Magnification | NA | 7 Reduction, 5 Enlargement: 93%, 85%, 78%, 73%, 65%, 50%, 25%,121%, 129%, 155%, 200%, 400% | |
| | EU/AP | 7 Reduction, 5 Enlargement: 93%, 82%, 75%, 71%, 65%, 50%, 25%, 115%, 122%, 141%, 200%, 400% | |
| Zoom | 25% to 400% | | |
| Paper capacity (Number of sheets calculated with 80 g/m$^2$ 20 lb bond paper) | Tray 1 | 1,100 x2 | 2,200 |
| | Tray 2 | 550 | 550 |
| | Tray 3 | 550 | 550 |
| | Bypass | 100 | 100 |
| | Copier Capacity | | **3,400** |
| | With LCIT | 4,000 | **7,400** |
| Original size detection: exposure glass | NA | 11" x 17", 8½" x 14" SEF,<br>8½" x 11" LEF/SEF | |
| | EU/AP | A3/A4 SEF, B4 SEF, A4/B5 LEF/SEF,<br>8½ " x 13" SEF (8K, 16K available with SP mode) | |
| Original size detection (ARDF) | NA | 11" x 17", 10" x 14", 8½ x 14" SEF<br>8½" x 11", 5½" x 8½" SEF/LEF<br>7¼" x 10½", A3 SEF<br>A4 SEF/LEF | |
| | EU, Asia | A3, B4 SEF<br>A4, B5, A5, B6 SEF/LEF<br>8½" x 13", 8K SEF<br>16K SEF | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Paper weight | Tray 1 | | 52.3 – 216 g/m$^2$<br>14 Bond– 80 lb Cover |
| | Tray 2 | | 52.3 – 216 g/m$^2$<br>14 Bond– 80 lb Cover |
| | Tray 3 | | 52.3 – 216 g/m$^2$<br>14 Bond– 80 lb Cover |
| | Bypass | | 52.3 – 300 g/m$^2$<br>14 lb Bond– 110 lb Cover |
| | Duplex mode | | 64 – 163 g/m2<br>17 lb Bond – 90 lb Index |
| Output capacity | 500 sheet (A4, 8½" x 11") (with copy tray) | | |
| Power | NA | | D014/D078: 120V 60 Hz 20A<br>D015/D079: 208 to 240V 50 60 Hz 12A |
| ⇒ | EU/AP | | D014/D078: 220V to 240V 50-60 Hz 12A |
| Max. power consumption | NA | | Less than 1920 W |
| | EU/AP | | Less than 2400 W |
| Counter | NA | | Electric counter, mechanical counter x2 |
| | EU/AP | | Electric counter, mechanical counter x1 |
| Counterfeit prevention | Bill recognition, invisible marking function | | |

## *Printing*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| CPU | | Intel Pentium – M 1.46 GHz | |
| RAM | | 1536 MB (shared with copying, scanning) | |
| HDD | | 320 GB (160 GB x 2) | |
| PDL | | RPCS, PCL5c, PCL6 | |
| Print Resolution (max.) | | 600 x 600 dpi (4-bit) | |
| Fonts | | Standard | 48 PCL fonts |
| | | Option | With PS3, 136 Adobe PostScript Type 1 fonts |
| Connectivity | | | |
| | Host interface | Standard | Ethernet RJ-45, 10-BaseT, 100BaseTX, USB 2.0 |
| | | Options*1 | IEEE1284 ECP, IEEE1394 (FireWire), IEEE802.11b (Wireless LAN), Bluetooth |
| | Network Protocol | | TCP IP, IPX/SPX, SMB (NetBEUI*2, NetBIOS over TCP/IP), AppleTalk (auto switching) |
| | MIB support | Private MIB | Ricoh original |
| | | Standard MIB | MIB-II (RFC1213), HostResource (RFC1514), PrinterMib (RFC1759) |
| | Network, operating systems | | Windows 95, 98SE, NT 4.0, 2000, Me, XP, Server 2003<br>NetWare 3.12, 3.2, 4.1, 4.11, 5.0, 5.1, 6<br>Unix, Sun Solaris, HP-UX, SCO Open Server, Red Hat Linux, IBM AIX, Mac OS 8.6 to 9.2x, OS X 10.1 or later |

*1: Only 1 option can be installed at a time.

*2: Smart Device Monitor for Client is necessary for NetBEUI.

## *Scanning*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Optical resolution | 100, 150, 200 (default), 300, 400, 600 dpi | | |
| Scanning speed | TBA | | |
| Max. scan area | 297 x 432 mm (11.7" x 17") | | |
| Auto scan size detection | Exposure glass | Supported (conforms with copier specifications) | |
| | ARDF | Supported (conforms with copier specifications) | |
| Original size | Standard | A3, A4 SEF, A4 LEF, A5 SEF/LEF, B4, B5 SEF, B5 LEF, 11" x 17" SEF, 8½" x 14" SEF, 8½" x 13" SEF, 8½" x 11" SEF/LEF, 5½ " x 8½" SEF/LEF | |
| | Customized | Min. | 10 x 10 mm (0.04" x 0.04") |
| | | Max. | 297 x 432 mm (11.7" x 17") |
| Compression Method | BW Binary: TIFF MH, MR, MMR<br>Grayscale/Full Color: JPEG | | |
| Interface support | 10/100BaseTX, IEEE802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1394 (FireWire) | | |
| Scan mod | Default | BW Text | |
| | Supported | BW OCR, BW Text-Photo, BW Photo, Grayscale, FC Photo, FC Text Photo | |
| | Options*1 | Auto Color Selection, sRGB Photo, sRGB Text Photo | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Image Density | Auto Density Selection, Manual Setting (7 levels) |
| Image Rotation | TBA |
| SADF/Batch mode | Supported |
| Mixed size originals | Supported |

*1: File Format Converter D377 is necessary.

## *Original Feed: ARDF B652*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Dimensions (w x d x h) | 680 x 560 x 180 mm (26.8 x 22 x 7.1 in.) | |
| Weight | Less than 19.5 kg (42.9 lb) | |
| Power consumption | Less than 59 W | |
| Noise | Less than 71 db | |
| Stack capacity | 100 sheets | |
| Original size | Simplex | A3, A4, A5, B5, B6<br>5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11", 8½" x 14", 11" x 17" |
| | Duplex | A3, A4, A5, B4, B5<br>5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11", 8½" x 14", 11" x 17" |
| Original weight | Simplex | 40 – 128 g/m2<br>11 – 34 lb bond |
| | Duplex | 52 – 128 g/m2<br>14 – 34 lb bond |
| Auto Original Size Detection | NA | 11" x 17", 10" x 14", 8½ x 14" SEF<br>8½" x 11", 5½" x 8½" SEF/LEF<br>7¼" x 10½", A3 SEF<br>A4 SEF/LEF |
| | EU, Asia | A3, B4 SEF<br>A4, B5, A5, B6 SEF/LEF<br>8½" x 13", 8K SEF<br>16K SEF |
| Original set position | Face-up, left-rear corner | |
| Special original setting | Batch, mixed sizes | |
| Feeding speed | Full color | 60 cpm |
| | Black | 75 cpm |
| Power source | From copier | |

## 7.1.2 OPTIONAL PERIPHERALS

### *LCT B473*

Installation of the LCT Adapter B699 is required to adjust the height of LCT B473.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Dimension (w x d x h) | Stand-alone | 314 x 458 x 659 mm (12.4 x 18 x 25.9 in.) |
| | With LG/B4 Option | 462 x 458 x 659 mm (18.2 x 18 x 25.9 in.) |
| Weight | Standalone | Less than 20 kg (44 lb) |
| | With LG/B4 Option | Less than 27 kg (59.4 lb) |
| Power Consumption | | Less than 50 W |
| Noise | | Less than 74dB |
| Paper Size | | A4, B5, 11"x 8½" LEF |
| Paper Weight | | 52 - 128g/$m^2$<br>14 lb – 34 lb Bond |
| Paper Capacity (80 g/$m^2$ or 20 lb bond) | | 4,000 sheets**<br>2,500 sheets* |

## *LCT 4000 D350*

| | |
|---|---|
| Expected Service Life | 5 Years or 9,000K |
| Paper Feed System: | FRR-CF |
| Paper Capacity | 2,000 sheets (Paper thickness: 0.11 mm) |
| Remaining Paper Detection (Accuracy: ±30 sheets) | 5-Step including Near-End |
| Paper Weight | 52 to 300 g/$m^2$ |
| Paper Size | A5 to A3, HLT to 12 x 19.2 in.<br>Postcards (100 mm wide)<br>Custom Size: Length: 139.7 to 487.6 mm<br>Custom Size: Width: 100 mm to 305.0 mm<br>(Small Size: 100 to 139.2 mm) |
| Paper Size Switching | Side fence, end fence adjustment. |
| Paper Size Detection | Automatic |
| Anti-Condensation Heater | Available as option |
| Dimensions (w x d h) | 865 x 730 x 746 mm (34 x 28.7 x 29.4 in.) |
| Weight | Less than 86 kg (190 lb) |
| Power Source | DC 24 V ±10% (from copier) |
| Power Consumption: | Less than 120 W |
| I/F | Serial |
| Tab Sheet: | Requires installation of tab sheet fence. **NOTE**: Only A4 LEF, 8½" x 11" LEF tab sheets can be fed. |

### *8½ x 14" Paper Size Tray B474*

This option converts LCT B473 so it can hold and feed LG size paper.

| | |
|---|---|
| Paper Size | 8 1/2"x14", 8½"x11", A4, B4 SEF |
| Paper Weight | 52 - 128g/$m^2$ 14 lb – 34 lb Bond |

### *9-Bin Mailbox B762*

- The mailbox can be installed on top of the 2000-Sheet Finisher D373 or the 3000-Sheet Finisher D374 (not 3000-Sheet Finisher B830).
- The mail box must be removed to install Cover Interposer Tray B704. The mail box and cover interposer tray cannot be installed at the same time.

| | |
|---|---|
| Dimension (w x d x h) | 540 x 600 x 660 mm (21.3 x 23.6 x 26 in.) |
| Weight | Less than 15 kg (33 lb) |
| Power Consumption | Less than 48 W |
| Noise | Less than 74 dB |
| Number of Bins | 9 bins |
| Stack Capacity of each Bin | 100 sheets* |
| Paper Size | A5. A4, A3<br>5½" x 8½", 8½" x11", 8½" x14", 11"x17" |
| Paper Weight | 52 - 128g/$m^2$<br>14 lb – 34 lb Bond |

## *Cover Interposer Tray B704*

- Cover Interposer Tray B704 can be used with the 2000-Sheet Finisher D373 or 3000-Sheet Finisher D374 between the mainframe and finisher. The interposer tray and the Mailbox B762 cannot be installed together.
- This tray cannot be installed on the 3000-Sheet Finisher B830.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Dimension (w x d x h) | | 500 x 600 x 600 mm (19.7 x 23.6 x 23.6 in.) |
| Weight | | Less than 12 Kg (26.4 lb) |
| Power Consumption | | Less than 43 W |
| Noise | | Less than 65 db |
| Stack Capability* | | 200 Sheets |
| Paper Size | | A5-A3, 5½" x 8½" - 11" x 17" |
| Paper Weight | | 64 g/$m^2$-216 g/$m^2$<br>17 lb Bond- 58 lb Index, 80 lb Cover |
| Original Set Position | | Center |
| Original Set | Normal Feed | Face-up |
| | Booklet Feed | Face-down |

### *Cover Interposer Tray B835*

Cover Interposer Tray B835 can be used only with the 3000-Sheet Finisher B830. It cannot be installed on the 2000/3000-Sheet Finishers D373/D374.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Speed | B234 (90 cpm) | 432 mm/s | |
| | B235 (110 cpm) | 515 mm/s | |
| | B236 (135 cpm) | 649 mm/s | |
| Paper Separation | FRR System with Feed Belt | | |
| Paper Sizes | Width: A5 SEF/5 1/2"x8½" SEF - 13"<br>Length: A5 LEF/5 1/2"x8½" LEF - 19" | | |
| Paper Weight | 64 - 216 g/m$^2$ | | |
| Capacity | 400 sheets (80 g/m$^2$) (2 trays 200 sheets each) | | |
| Paper Size Detection | Yes | | |
| Paper Size Switching | Operator adjustable side fences | | |
| Side Registration | Yes | | |
| Power Supply | 24 V ± 5% (from mainframe) | | |
| Power Consumption | Less than 50 W | | |
| Dimensions (w x d x h) | Less than 540 x 730 x 1200 mm<br>21.2" x 28.7" x 47.2" | | |
| Weight | Less than 45 kg (99 lb) | | |

## *3000-Sheet Finisher B830*

This machine requires installation of the Finisher Adapter D375 in this finisher.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Finisher | | | |
| Dimension (w x d x h) | | 800 x 730 x 980 mm (31.5 x 28.7 x 38.6 in.) | |
| Weight | | Less than 65 kg (143 lb) | |
| Power Consumption | | Less than 100W | |
| Noise | | Less than 75 dB | |
| Configuration | | Console type attached base-unit with Finisher Adapter | |
| Power Source | | From base-unit | |
| Proof Tray | Stack Capacity* | 500 sheets | A4, 8½" x 11" or smaller |
| | | 250 sheets | B4, 8½" x 14" or larger |
| | Paper Size | A6 SEF-A3 SEF<br>5½ " x8½ " - 11"x17" | |
| | Paper Weight | 52 g/m²-216 g/m²<br>14 lb Bond- 68 lb Bond / 140 lb Index / 90 lb Cover | |
| Shift Tray | Stack Capacity* | 3000 sheets | A4 LEF, B5 LEF, 8½"x11" LEF |
| | | 1500 sheets | A3, A4, B4, B5 SEF<br>11"x17", 8½"x14", 8½" x 11" SEF |
| | | 500 sheets | A5 LEF, 5½"x8½" LEF |
| | | 100 sheets | A5 SEF, 5½"x8½" SEF |
| | Paper Size | A5 - A3 SEF<br>5½"x8½", 11"x17", 12"x18", 13"x19" | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Paper Weight | 52 g/m²-300 g/m²<br>14 lb Bond- 68 lb Bond / 140 lb Index / 90 lb Cover |

| | |
|---|---|
| Staples | |
| Paper Size | B5-A3, 8 1/2"x11"-11"x17" |
| Paper Weight | 64 g/m²-84 g/m², 17 lb Bond-20 lb Bond |
| Staple Position | Top, Bottom, 2 Staple, Top-slant |
| Staple Replenishment | Cartridge exchange / 5000 pins per cartridge |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Stack Capacity with Stapler | | | | | | |
| | | Paper Size | Pages/Set | Sets | | |
| | | A4, B5<br>8½"x11" | 10-100 pages | 200-30 sets | | |
| | | | 2-9 pages | 150 sets | | |
| | | A3, B4, 11" x 17",<br>8½" x 14" | 10-50 pages | 150-30 sets | | |
| | | | 2-9 pages | 150 sets | | |

## *Punch Unit B831*

This punch unit is for the 3000-Sheet Finisher B830.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Punch Unit Types | | NA | 2/3 holes |
| | | EU | 2/4 holes |
| | | Scandinavia | 4 holes |
| Punch Waste Hopper Capacity | | NA 2/3 hole | 10,000 sheets |
| | | EU 2/4 hole | 15,000 sheets |
| Paper Weight | | 52 g/m²-127.9 g/m²<br>14 lb Bond –34 lb Bond | |
| Paper Size | NA 2-holes | SEF | A6 - A3, 5½" x 8½" - 8½"x11" |
| | | LEF | A5 - A4, 5½" x 8½", 8½"x11" |
| | NA 3-holes | SEF | A3, B4, 11"x17" |
| | | LEF | A4, B5, 8½"x 11" |
| | EU 2-holes | SEF | A6 - A3, 5½"x8½" - 11"x17" |
| | | LEF | A5 - A4, 5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11" |
| | EU 4-holes | SEF | A3, B4, 11" x 17" |
| | | LEF | A4, B5, 8½" x 11" |
| | Scandinavia 4-holes | SEF | B6 - A3, 5½" x 8½" - 11" x 17" |
| | | LEF | A5 - A4, 5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11" |

### *2000-Sheet Finisher D373*

This finisher provides booklet as well as corner stapling. Equipped with two trays, the upper tray holds stapled and shifted copies, and the lower tray holds booklet stapled and folded copies.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Dimensions w x d x h | | 657 x 613 x 960 mm (25.9 x 24.1 x 37.8") | |
| Weight | | Less than 63 kg (138.6 lb) (no punch unit)<br>Less than 65 kg (143 lb) (with punch unit) | |
| Power Consumption | | Less than 96 W | |
| Noise | | Less than 75 db | |
| Configuration | | Console type attached base-unit | |
| Power Source | | From base-unit | |
| Proof Tray | Stack Capacity* | 250 sheets A4, 8 1/2"x11" or smaller<br>50 sheets B4, 8 1/2"x14 or larger | |
| | Paper Size | A5-A3 SEF, A6 SEF, A6 LEF<br>5½" x8½" to11" x 17" SEF, 12"x18" SEF | |
| | Paper Weight | 52 g/m²-163 g/m²<br>14 lb Bond- 43 lb Bond / 90 lb Index / 60 lb Cover | |
| Shift Tray | Stack Capacity* | 2,000 sheets | A4 LEF, 8 1/2"x11" LEF |
| | | 1,000 sheets | A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5<br>11"x17" SEF, 8½" x14" SEF, 8½" x 11" SEF,<br>12"x18" SEF |
| | | 500 sheets | A5 LEF |
| | | 100 sheets | A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5½" x8½" SEF |

Specifications

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Paper Size | A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, B6 SEF<br>5½" x8½" to 11" x 17" SEF, 12" x 18" SEF | | |
| | Paper Weight | 52 g/m²-256 g/m²<br>14 lb Bond- 68 lb Bond / 140 lb Index / 90 lb Cover | | |
| Staple | | | | |
| Paper Size | | B5-A3, 8 1/2"x11"-11"x17", 12"x18" | | |
| Paper Weight | | 64 g/m²-90 g/m², 17 lb Bond-28 lb Bond | | |
| Staple Position | | Top, Bottom, 2 Staple, Top-slant | | |
| Staples Capacity* | Same Paper Size | 50 sheets | A4, 8½" x 11" or smaller | |
| | | 30 sheets | B4, 8½" x 14" or larger | |
| | Mixed Paper Size | 30 sheets | A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8½"x11" LEF & 11" x17" SEF | |
| | Booklet Stapling | 15 sheets | A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF, 8 1/2"x11" SEF, 8 1/2"x14" SEF, 11"x17" SEF, 12"x18" SEF | |
| Staple Replenishment | | Corner staple | 5,000 staples per cartridge | |
| | | Booklet staple | 2,000 staples per cartridge | |
| Corner Staple Capacity | Same Size | A4 LEF, 8 1/2"x11" LEF | 13-50 pages | |
| | | | 2-12 pages | |
| | | A4 SEF, B5, 8 /12"x11" SEF | 10-50 pages | |
| | | | 2-9 pages | |
| | | Others | 10-30 pages | |
| | | | 2-9 pages | |
| | Mixed Size | A4 LEF + A3 SEF<br>B5 LEF + B4 SEF<br>8 1/2"x11" LEF + 11" x17" | 2-30 pages | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | SEF | | |
| ⇒ | | Paper Size | Number of Sheets/Booklet | Number of Booklets/Stack (Lower Tray) |
| | Booklet Staple Capacity | A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF<br>8 1/2"x11" SEF, 8 1/2"x14" SEF,<br>11"x17" SEF<br>12"x18" SEF | 2-5 pages | 30 |
| | | | 6-10 pages | 15 |
| | | | 11-15 pages | 10 |

## D373/D374 Paper Specifications

| Paper Size | Plain Paper | | | Paper Type | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Copier PPC | Used Paper | Recycled Paper | Colored Paper | Translucent Blueprint |
| A3 SEF | ● | — | ● | ● | ▲ |
| B4 SEF | ● | ▲ | ● | ● | ▲ |
| A4 SEF | ● | ▲ | ● | ● | ▲ |
| A4 LEF | ✇ | ▲ | ✇ | ✇ | ▲ |
| B5 SEF | ● | ▲ | ● | ● | ▲ |
| B5 LEF | ✇ | ▲ | ✇ | ✇ | ▲ |
| A5 SEF | ❍ | — | — | — | — |
| A5 LEF | ❍ | — | — | — | — |
| B6 SEF | ▲ | — | — | — | — |
| B6 LEF | ▲ | — | — | — | — |
| 12" x 18" SEF | ● | — | ● | ● | — |
| 11" x 17" SEF | ● | — | ● | ● | ▲ |
| 8½" x 14" | ● | — | ● | ● | ▲ |
| 8½" x 11" SEF | ● | — | ● | ● | ▲ |
| 8½" x 11" LEF | ✇ | — | ✇ | ✇ | ▲ |
| 5½" x 8½" | ❍ | — | — | ❍ | — |
| 5½" x 8½" | ❍ | — | — | ❍ | — |

| | |
|---|---|
| ✇ | Corner stapling, Shift, YES |
| ● | Booklet stapling/folding, Shift, YES |
| ❍ | Shift ONLY |
| ▲ | Shift NO |
| — | Not available |

## *3000-Sheet Finisher D374*

This finisher provides corner stapling only.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Finisher | | | |
| Dimension (w x d x h) | | 657 x 613 x 960 mm | |
| Weight | | Less than 54 kg<br>Less than 56 kg with Punch Unit | |
| Power Consumption | | Less than 96 W | |
| Noise | | Less than 75 db | |
| Configuration | | Console type attached base-unit | |
| Power Source | | From base-unit | |
| Proof Tray | Stack Capacity* | 250 sheets A4, 8 1/2"x11" or smaller<br>50 sheets B4, 8 1/2"x14 or larger | |
| | Paper Size | A5-A3 SEF, A6 SEF, A6 SEF<br>5 1/2"x8 1/2"-11"x17"SEF, 12"x18" SEF | |
| | Paper Weight | 52 g/m²-163 g/m²<br>14 lb Bond- 43 lb Bond / 90 lb Index / 60 lb Cover | |
| Shift Tray | Stack Capacity* | 3,000 sheets | A4 LEF, ½" x11" LEF " |
| | | 1,500 sheets | A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5, 11"x17" SEF, 8½" x14" SEF, 8½" x 11" SEF, 12"x18" SEF |
| | | 500 sheets | A5 LEF** |
| | | 100 sheets | A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5½" x 8½",SEF |
| | Paper Size | A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, B6 SEF, 5½" x 8½"- 11"x17" SEF, 12" x 18" SEF | |
| | Paper Weight | 52 g/m²-256 g/m² | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 14 lb Bond- 68 lb Bond / 140 lb Index / 90 lb Cover | | |
| Staples | | | | |
| Paper Size | | B5-A3<br>8 1/2"x11"-11"x17", 12"x18" | | |
| Paper Weight | | 64 g/m²-90 g/m²<br>17 lb Bond-28 lb Bond | | |
| Staple Position | | Top, Bottom, 2 Staple, Top-slant | | |
| Stapling Capacity | Same Paper Size | 50 sheets | A4, ½" x11" or smaller | |
| | | 30 sheets | B4, ½" x14" or larger | |
| | Mixed Paper Size | 30 sheets | A4 LEF + A3 SEF,<br>B5 LEF + B4 SEF,<br>8½" x11" LEF + 11" x17" SEF | |
| Staple Replenishment | | Cartridge exchange / 5000 pins per cartridge | | |
| Stapled Stack Capacity (same size) | | Paper Size | Pages/Set | Sets |
| | | A4 LEF, 8 1/2"x11" LEF | 20-50 pages | 150-60 sets |
| | | | 2-19 pages | 150 sets |
| | | A4 SEF, B5, 8 /12"x11" SEF | 15-50 pages | 100-30 sets |
| | | | 2-14 pages | 100 sets |
| | | Others | 15-30 pages | 100-33 sets |
| | | | 2-14 pages | 100 sets |
| Stapled Stack Capacity (mixed sizes) | | A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8 1/2"x11" LEF & 11" x17" SEF | 2-30 pages | 50 set |

## *Punch Unit B702*

This punch unit is designed for use with the 2000-Sheet Stapler D373 (both corner and booklet stapling) and 3000-Sheet Stapler D374 (corner stapling only).

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Available Punch Units | | NA | 2/3 hole switchable |
| | | EU | 2/4 holes switchable |
| | | Scandinavia | 4 holes |
| Punch Waste Replenishment | | NA 2-hole | Up to 5,000 sheets |
| | | NA 3-hole | Up to 5,000 sheets |
| | | EU 2-hole | Up to 14,000 sheets |
| | | EU 4-hole | Up to 7,000 sheets |
| | | Scandinavia 4-hole | Up to 7,000 sheets |
| Paper Weight | | 52 g/m²-163 g/m², 14 lb Bond –43 lb Bond / 90 lb Index / 60 lb Cover | |
| Paper Sizes | NA 2-hole | SEF | A5 to A3, 5½" x 8½" to 11"x17" |
| | | LEF | A5 - A4, 5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11" |
| | NA 3-hole | SEF | A3, B4, 11"x17" |
| | | LEF | A4, B5, 8½" x 11" |
| | EU 2-hole | SEF | A5 - A3, 5½" x 8½" to 11" x 17" |
| | | LEF | A5 to A4, 5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11" |
| | EU 4-hole | SEF | A3, B4, 11"x17" |
| | | LEF | A4, B5, 8½" x 11" |
| | Scandinavia 4-hole | SEF | A5 to A3, 5½" x 8½" to 11" x 17" |
| | | LEF | A5 - A4, 5½" x8½", 8½" x 11" |

### *Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 B660*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Paper Size | | |
| No Folding (52-300 g/m$^2$) | A3, A4, A5, A6 SEF, B4, B5, B6 SEF<br>11" x 17", 81/2"x14", 81/2"x11" SEF, 51/2"x81/2", 12" x 18" | |
| Folding (64-80 g/m$^2$) | A3, B4, A4 SEF<br>11" x 17", 81/2"x14", 81/2"x11" SEF, 12" x 18" | |
| Dimensions (w x d x h) | 177 x 620 x 960 mm<br>7 x 24.5 x 37.8 in. | |
| Weight | Less than 55 kg (121 lb) | |
| Power Consumption | 100 W max. | |
| Power Supply | North America | 120 V, 60 Hz, 1A |
| | Europe/Asia | 220-240 V, 50/60 Hz, 0.5A |

### *A3/11" x 17" Tray B331*

This option is installed in Tray 1 (tandem tray) of the copier so that Tray 1 can feed larger paper. Tray 1 normally feeds LT or A4 only.

| | |
|---|---|
| Dimension (w x d x h) | 495 x 215 x 535 mm (19.5 x 8.5 x 21.1 in.) |
| Weight | 11 kg (24.2 lb) |
| Paper Size | A3 SEF, B4 SEF, A4<br>11"x17" SEF, 8½" x 14" SEF, 8½" x 11" |
| Paper Capacity | 1,000 Sheets |

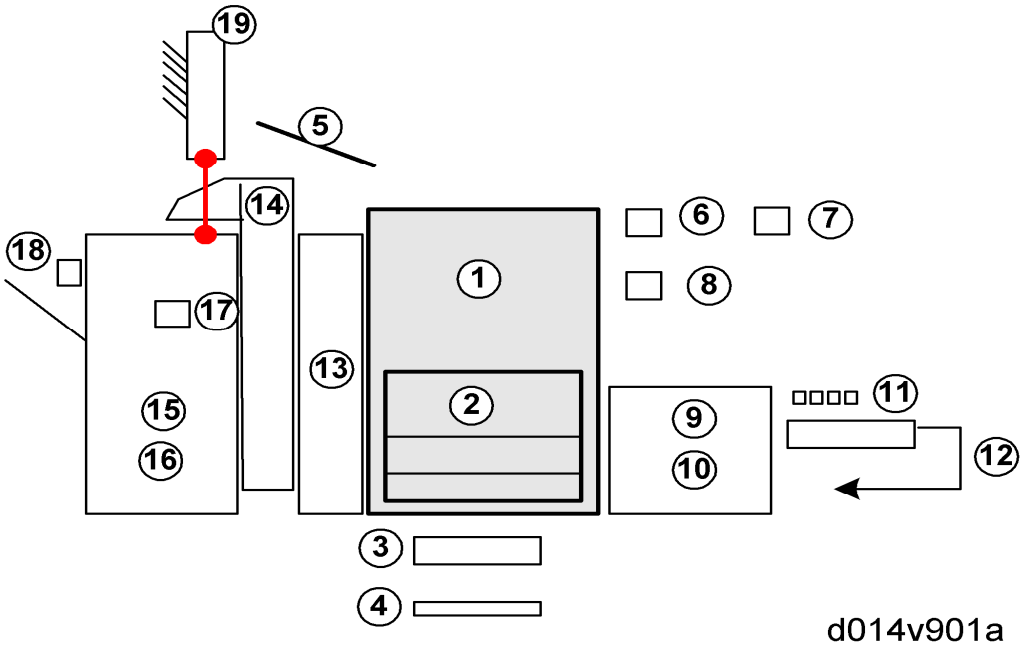
## *Copy Tray B476*

The copy tray is installed receive copies when the copier is used without a finisher.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Dimension (w x d x h) | 400 x 335 x 70 mm (15.8 x 13.2 x 2.8 in.) | |
| Weight | 640 g (1.4 lb) | |
| Paper Capacity | 500 Sheets | A4, 8½" x 11" |
| | 250 Sheets | A3, 11"x 17" |

## 7.1.3 MACHINE CONFIGURATION

### *Configuration 1 (with D373/D374 Finisher)*



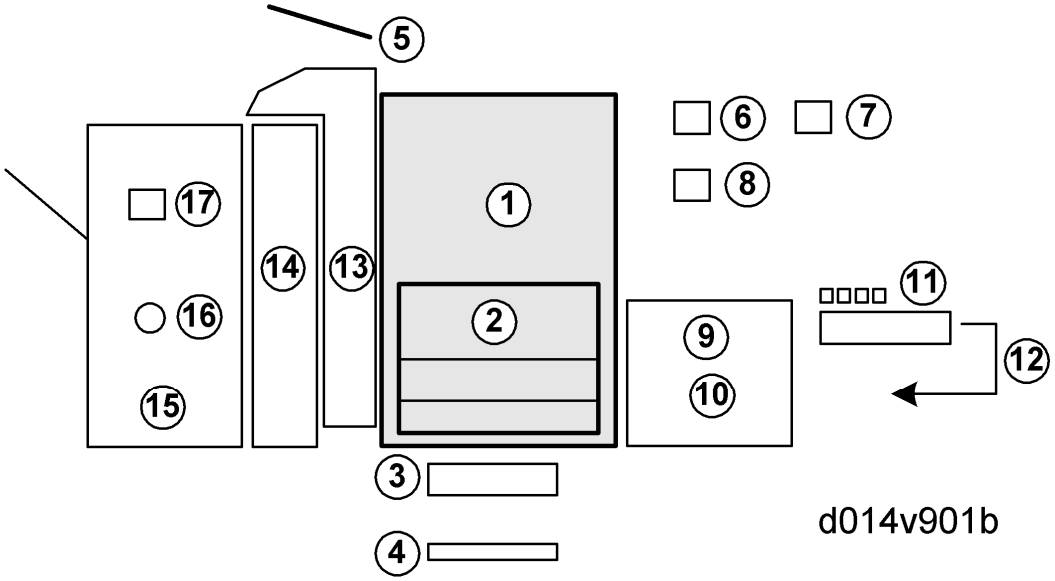

| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ① | D014/D015/D078/D079 | Main unit |
| ② | Tandem Tray | Built into main unit |
| ③ | A3/11"x17" Tray Type (B331) | Option for tandem tray |
| ④ | Tab Sheet Holder Type (B499) | Option for tandem tray |
| ⑤ | Copy Tray (B756) | For no finishers |
| ⑥ | Key Counter Bracket (B452) | Counter option |
| ⑦ | Key Counter Interface Unit Type (A) (B870) | Board required for key counter |
| ⑧ | Card Reader Bracket (B498) | Counter option |
| ⑨ | LCT 4000 (D350) *1 | Only one of these options can be installed. |
| ⑩ | A4/LT LCT (B473) | |

Specifications

| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ⑪ | LCT Adapter (B699) | Required for LCT B473 |
| ⑫ | LG Unit for A4/LT LCT (B474) | Option for LCT B473 |
| ⑬ | Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 (B660) *1 | |
| ⑭ | Cover Interposer Tray (B704) | For D373 (2000-sheet), D374 (3000-sheet) finishers only. Only 1 tray. Cannot be installed with Mail Box (B762). |
| ⑮ | Finisher SR4020 (D373) *1 | 2000-sheet finisher, 50 staple, Booklet folding and stapling |
| ⑯ | Finisher SR4010 (D374) *1 | 3000-sheet finisher, 50 staple, corner stapling only |
| ⑰ | Punch Unit (B702) | For either finisher D373 or D374 |
| ⑱ | Output Jogger Unit (B703) | For either finisher D373 or D374 |
| ⑲ | Mail Box CS391 (B762) | For D373 (2000-sheet), D374 (3000-sheet finishers only). Cannot be installed with Cover Interposer Tray (B704) |

*1 New options for this machine.

### *Configuration 2 (with B830 Finisher)*




| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ① | D014/D015/D078/D079 | Main unit |
| ② | Tandem Tray | Built into main unit |
| ③ | A3/11"x17" Tray Type (B331) | Option for tandem tray |
| ④ | Tab Sheet Holder Type (B499) | Option for tandem tray |
| ⑤ | Copy Tray (B756) | For no finishers |
| ⑥ | Key Counter Bracket (B452) | Counter option |
| ⑦ | Key Counter Interface Unit Type A (B870) | Board |
| ⑧ | Card Reader Bracket (B498) | Counter option |
| ⑨ | LCT 4000 (D350 | Only one can be installed. |
| ⑩ | A4/LT LCT (B473) | |
| ⑪ | LCT Adapter (B699) | Required for LCT B473 to adjust height. |
| ⑫ | LG Unit for A4/LT LCT (B474) | Option for LCT B473 |

Specifications

| No. | Item | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| ⑬ | Cover Interposer Tray CI 5000 (B835) | Two source trays. Can be installed with 3000-sheet finisher B830 only. |
| ⑭ | Z-Folding Unit ZF4000 (B660) | Can be installed with D373, D374, B830 finishers. |
| ⑮ | Finisher SR5000 (B830) | 3000-Sheet finisher, 100 staples, jogger standard. |
| ⑯ | Finisher Adapter (D375) | For Finisher B830 |
| ⑰ | Punch Unit PU 5000 (B831) | For 3000-sheet finisher B830 only. |

## 7.1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

### *Copier*

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| **COUNTERS** | | |
| TC1 | Total Counter: FC | The mechanical counter for full color printing. |
| TC2 | Total Counter: K | The mechanical counter for black-and-white printing. |
| **HEATERS** | | |
| H1 | Lower Tray Heater | Keeps paper dry. Provided with machine, connection is optional. |
| H2 | Anti-condensation Heater – Scanner (Option) | Prevents the formation of condensation in the scanner unit. |
| H3 | Anti-condensation Heater – Transfer | This options removes moisture from the air around the paper transfer unit. |
| H4 | Upper Tray Heater | Keeps paper dry. Provided with machine, connection is optional. |
| **HARD DISKS** | | |
| HDD1 | Hard Disk Drives | The HDDs hold temporary files spooled for processing and also store permanent files for the document server application. |
| ⇒ HDD2 | | 2nd HDD in a set of 2. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **LAMPS** | | |
| L1 | Exposure Lamp | Projects high intensity light on the original for exposure. |
| ⇒ L2 | Heating Roller Fusing Lamp 3 (Center) | Heats only the center of the heating roller.<br>(NA, EU: 700W) |
| ⇒ L3 | Heating Roller Fusing Lamp 2 (Ends) | Heats only the ends of the heating roller.<br>(NA, EU: 700W) |
| ⇒ L4 | Heating Roller Fusing Lamp 1 (Main) | Heats the entire heating roller from end to end.<br>(NA D014/D078: 250W)<br>(NA D015/D079, EU: 400W) |
| ⇒ L5 | Pressure Roller Fusing Lamp | Heats the pressure roller.<br>(NA, EU: 400W) |
| **MOTORS** | | |
| M1 | Scanner Motor | Drives the scanner unit |
| M2 | Lower Relay Motor | Drives the lower relay roller of the relay unit at the vertical transport section. |
| M3 | Paper Feed Motor: Tray 1 | Drives the paper feed roller and grip roller of tray 1 (tandem tray). |
| M4 | Paper Feed Motor: Tray 3 | Drives the paper feed roller and grip roller of tray 3 (bottom tray). |
| M5 | Paper Feed Motor: Tray 2 | Drives the paper feed roller and grip roller of tray 2 (middle tray). |
| M6 | Waste Toner Distribution Motor | Drives the coil that spans the top of the waste toner bottle. |
| M7 | Lift Motor - Tray 2 | Switches on and drives a shaft and coupling that raises a lift arm against the bottom plate under the paper stack in tray 2 |
| M8 | Lift Motor: Tray 3 | Drives a shaft and coupling that raises a lift arm against the bottom plate under the paper stack in tray 3. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| M9 | Lift Motor: Tray 1 | Drives pulleys and cables that lift the bottom plate of tray 1 (tandem tray) until the top of the paper stack reaches the correct height for feeding. |
| M10 | Rear Fence Motor - Tray 1 | Switches on when the right paper tray sensor of the tandem paper tray unit detects paper out and the left paper tray sensor detects paper present. |
| M11 | ITB Lift Motor | Rotates the cam that raises and lowers the ITB belt. |
| M12 | Ozone Fan Motor | Draws air from around the drums and through the ozone filter. |
| ⇒ M13 | Fusing Fan Motor: Lower | Cools the fusing unit. |
| M14 | Fusing Cooling Fan Motor | Draws cool air into the fusing unit through a vent and past a heat sink mounted above the fusing unit. |
| M15 | Fusing Exhaust Fan Motor | Draws the hot air away from the heat sink mounted above the fusing unit and expels the hot air through a vent |
| M16 | Fusing/Exit Motor | Drives the fusing unit and paper exit. |
| M17 | PTR Motor | Drives the paper transfer roller (PTR). |
| M18 | Bypass Feed Motor | Drives the upper relay roller that feeds each sheet to the registration roller. |
| M19 | Duplex Jogger Motor | Moves the jogger fences in the duplex unit. |
| M20 | Duplex Unit Fan Motor | Cools the duplex unit. |
| M21 | Duplex Transport Motor | Drives transport rollers 3, 4 in the duplex unit. |
| M22 | Duplex Inverter Motor | Feeds paper to the jogger section. |
| M23 | Registration Motor | Rotates the registration roller. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ⇒ M24 | Belt Cleaning Fan | Cools the upper area of the transfer unit where the PCUs contact the ITB. |
| M25 | Pipe Cooling Fan Motor | Pulls in air draws it over the fins attached to the front end of the heat pipe roller. |
| M26 | Paper Transport Fan Motor - Rear | 1 of 2 vacuum fans that produce suction to kepp paper on the transport belt. |
| M27 | Paper Transport Fan Motor - Front | 1 of 2 vacuum fans that produce suction to kepp paper on the transport belt. |
| M28 | Paper Exit Fan Motor | Draws hot air from around the paper exit area and expels it from the left side of the machine. |
| M29 | Front Duplex Fan Motor | Draws hot air out of the duplex unit. |
| M30 | Rear Duplex Fan Motor | Draws hot air out of the duplex unit. |
| ⇒ M31 | Potential Sensor Fan | Circulates air around the potential sensors inside the copier to keep them cool. |
| M32 | Cooling Fan Motor | Draws air and sends it through a duct to the four PCU cooling fans. |
| M33 | Circulation Fan Motor | Circulates air. |
| M34 | Laser Unit Cooling Fan Motor - Front | Draws cool air into the machine. |
| M35 | Laser Unit Cooing Fan Motor - Rear | Expels hot air from the machine on the left side. |
| ⇒ M36 | Development Motor: K | Drives the Y development unit. |
| ⇒ M37 | Development Motor: C | Drives the C development unit. |
| ⇒ M38 | Development Motor: M | Drives the M development unit. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| M39 | Development Motor: K | Drives the K development unit. |
| M40 | Controller Box Exhaust Fan Motor 2 | 1 of 2 fans that cool the printed circuit boards at the back of the machine. |
| M41 | Controller Box Exhaust Fan Motor 1 | 1 of 2 fans that cool the printed circuit boards at the back of the machine. |
| M42 | Drum Motor: Y | Drives the drum in the Yellow PCU. |
| M43 | Drum Motor: C | Drives the drum in the Cyan PCU. |
| M44 | Drum Motor: M | Drives the drum in the Magenta PCU. |
| M45 | Drum Motor: K | Drives the drum in the Black PCU. |
| M46 | ITB Drive Motor | Rotates the image transfer roller that drives the ITB. |
| M47 | 3rd Mirror Motor - M | Fine adjusts the position of the 3rd mirror of the optics for M (magenta) during MUSIC adjustment. |
| M48 | Polygon Mirror Motor | Rotates the polygon mirror in the laser optics unit |
| M49 | 3rd Mirror Motor - Y | Fine adjusts the position of the 3rd mirror of the optics for Y (Yellow) during MUSIC adjustment. |
| M50 | 3rd Mirror Motor - C | Fine adjusts the position of the 3rd mirror of the optics for C (Cyan) during MUSIC adjustment. |
| M51 | Toner Hopper Motor | Drives the toner pump clutch and sub hopper clutch of each PCU. |
| M52 | PCU Fan Motor: Y | Cools the Yellow PCU. |
| M53 | PCU Fan Motor: C | Cools the Cyan PCU. |
| M54 | PCU Fan Motor: M | Cools the Magenta PCU |

⇒

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| M55 | Scanner Unit Fan Motor - Rear Left | Cools the left, rear corner of the SIOB. |
| M56 | Scanner Unit Fan Motor - Rear Center | Cools the rear, center area of the SIOB. |
| M57 | Scanner Unit Fan Motor - Right | Exhausts warm air from the SIOB area. |
| M58 | Waste Toner Collection Bottle Motor | Drives the waste toner bottle transport coil that moves the toner from the central collection point into the waste toner bottle. |
| M59 | Development Intake Fan – K | Cools the K development unit. |
| M60 | Development Intake Fan – M | Cools the M development unit. |
| M61 | Development Intake Fan – C | Cools the C development unit. |
| M62 | Development Intake Fan – Y | Cools the Y development unit. |
| M63 | Drum Cleaning Motor (Y) | Drives the Y drum cleaning rollers |
| M64 | Drum Cleaning Motor (C) | Drives the C drum cleaning rollers |
| M65 | Drum Cleaning Motor (M) | Drives the M drum cleaning rollers |
| M66 | Drum Cleaning Motor (K) | Drives the K drum cleaning rollers. |

⇒

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| M67 | Charge Wire Cleaner Motor | Drives the corona wire cleaning pad to the front and back to clean the charge corona wire of the K_PCU. The wire cleaner motor switches on at power on and at the end of every job. |
| M68 | Ozone Removal Fan | Draws in air containing ozone. |
| M69 | Drive Ventilation Fan | Cools the drive area near the fusing unit. |
| M70 | Ozone Exhaust Fan | Draws air from around the drums and blows it through the ozone filter. |
| M71 | PTR Lift Motor | Raises the PTR so it is pressing against the bias roller above only during paper transfer and separation, and lowers the PTR when the machine is not operating. |
| M72 | Fusing Pressure Release Motor | Pulls and pushes the pressure roller to separate it from and press it against the hot roller. The pressure roller is a soft sponge roller that would warp out of shape if it were allowed to press against the hot roller while the machine is idle. |
| M73 | HDD Cooling Fan Motor | Cools the HDDs. |
| M74 | CPU Fan | Cools the CPU on the Controller Board. |

| MECHANICAL CLUTCHES | | |
|---|---|---|
| MC1 | Bypass Feed Clutch | Engages and operates the pick-up roller at the bypass feed tray. |
| MC2 | Toner Pump Clutch: M | Engages the and drives the Magenta toner pump to pull toner from the Magenta STC. |
| MC3 | Toner Supply Clutch: M | Engages the toner supply coils in the sub hopper of the Magenta PCU to send toner to the development unit below. |
| MC4 | Toner Pump Clutch : K | Engages the and drives the Black toner pump to pull toner from the Black STC. |
| MC5 | Toner Supply Clutch : K | Engages the toner supply coils in the sub hopper of the Black PCU to send toner to the development unit below. |
| MC6 | Toner Pump Clutch: Y | Engages the drive shaft and rotor of the Yellow toner pump to pull toner from the Yellow STC when more toner is needed. |
| MC7 | Toner Supply Clutch: Y | Engages the toner supply coils in the sub hopper of the Yellow PCU to send toner to the development unit below. |
| MC8 | Toner Pump Clutch: C | Engages the and drives the Cyan toner pump to pull toner from the Cyan STC. |
| MC9 | Toner Supply Clutch: C | Engages the toner supply coils in the sub hopper of the Cyan PCU to send toner to the development unit below. |

| PCBs | | |
|---|---|---|
| PCB1 | PFB (Paper Feed Board) | Controls paper trays and paper feed. |
| PCB2 | AC Drive Board | Controls the power supply to the fusing lamps, heaters, and PSU. |
| PCB3 | PSU (Power Supply Unit) | Supplies DC current to the machine and contains the AC drive that controls the fusing lamp power supply. |
| PCB4 | DRB (Drive Board) | Contains the circuits for the stepping motors that drive the printer engine, and distributes electrical power to all other PCBs. |
| PCB5 | Power Pack: Development Bias | Supplies the voltage for the bias applied to the developer in the PCUs by the development rollers. |
| PCB6 | Power Pack: Charge | Supplies the voltage for the charge applied to the OPC drums by the charge roller. |
| PCB7 | Power Pack: Transfer | Supplies charge to 1) the four image transfer rollers that pull the toner images from the four from the four drums (Y, M, C, K), and 2) to the paper transfer roller that pulls the image off the ITB onto paper. |
| PCB8 | Power Pack - Separation | Supplies the dc/ac charges for paper separation. |
| PCB9 | DTMB (Drum/Transfer Motor Board) | Controls the motors that drive the OPC drums and ITB. |
| PCB10 | IPU | Performs: 1) Image processing control, 2) GW controller interface, 3) peripheral timing control. |
| PCB11 | Potential Sensor Board | Processes data from the Y, M, C, K, potential sensors. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PCB12 | CNB (Connector Board) | Sorts and routes signals to electrical components. |
| PCB13 | IDCB: C1 | One of two ID control boards at the base of the Cyan STC. The CPU reads the board to confirm that the correct STC is inserted into the correct bin. |
| PCB14 | IDCB: M1 | One of two ID control boards at the base of the Magenta STC. The CPU reads the board to confirm that the correct STC is inserted into the correct bin. |
| PCB15 | IDCB: K1 | One of two ID control boards at the base of the Black STC. The CPU reads the board to confirm that the correct STC is inserted into the correct bin. |
| PCB16 | IDCB: Y1 | One of two ID control boards at the base of the Yellow STC. The CPU reads the board to confirm that the correct STC is inserted into the correct bin. |
| PCB17 | SBU (Sensor Board Unit) | Contains the CCD. Converts CCD analog signals to digital signals. |
| PCB18 | SIOB (Scanner Interface Board) | Controls all the sensors in the scanner unit and controls the carriage drive stepping motors. |
| PCB19 | Lamp Regulator | Converts the dc power input to a stable, high frequency ac output to the exposure lamp. |
| PCB20 | VBCU | VBCU: 1) Engine sequence control (all sensors, motors, fusing temperature monitoring circuits), 2) Scanning control, 3) Exposure control, 3) Image processing control, 4) GW controller I/F, 5) Peripheral timing control.<br>The I/O control board controls 1) Input/output ports for all sensors, motor, solenoids, 2) drivers, 3) high voltage power supply for PWM, and 4) analog input signals. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PCB21 | LD 1 (2/2) | Laser Diode 1, 2nd of a pair, 1 of 8. |
| | LD 1 (1/2) | Laser Diode 1, 1st of a pair, 1 of 8. |
| PCB22 | LD 2 (2/2) | Laser Diode 2, 2nd of a pair, 1 of 8. |
| | LD 2 (1/2) | Laser Diode 2, 1st of a pair, 1 of 8. |
| PCB23 | LD 3 (2/2) | Laser Diode 3, 2nd of a pair, 1 of 8. |
| | LD 3 (1/2) | Laser Diode 3, 1st of a pair, 1 of 8. |
| PCB24 | LD 4 (2/2) | Laser Diode 4, 2nd of a pair, 1 of 8. |
| | LD 4 (1/2) | Laser Diode 4, 1st of a pair, 1 of 8. |
| PCB25 | LSDB: K Front | Front Laser Synchronization Detector Board for Laser Diode 4. |
| PCB26 | LSDB: M Front | Front Laser Synchronization Detector Board for Laser Diode 3. |
| PCB27 | LSDB: C Front | Front Laser Synchronization Detector Board for Laser Diode 2. |
| PCB28 | LSDB: Y Front | Front Laser Synchronization Detector Board for Laser Diode 1. |
| PCB29 | LSDB: Y Rear | Rear Laser Synchronization Detector Board for Laser Diode 1. |
| PCB30 | LSDB: C Rear | Rear Laser Synchronization Detector Board for Laser Diode 2. |
| PCB31 | LSDB: M Rear | Rear Laser Synchronization Detector Board for Laser Diode 3. |
| PCB32 | LSDB: K Rear | Rear Laser Synchronization Detector Board for Laser Diode 4. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PCB33 | Controller Board | Incorporates the GW architecture, and connects to the BICU and PCI I/F. All the options for the printer are controlled by this board. |
| ⇒ PCB34 | SCNB | Scanner Connector Board. Harnesses from the SBU run into and out the SCNB, reducing the number of harnesses from 2 to 1. |
| ⇒ PCB35 | OPU (Operation Panel) | Controls the Operation Panel. |
| **QUENCHING LAMPS** | | |
| QL1 | Quenching Lamp : K | Eliminates electrical charge and neutralizes the surface of the drum in the Black PCU. |
| QL2 | Quenching Lamp: C | Eliminates electrical charge and neutralizes the surface of the drum in the Cyan PCU. |
| QL3 | Quenching Lamp: M | Eliminates electrical charge and neutralizes the surface of the drum in the Magenta PCU. |
| QL4 | Quenching Lamp: Y | Eliminates electrical charge and neutralizes the surface of the drum in the Yellow PCU. |

| SENSORS | | |
|---|---|---|
| S1 | ID Sensor: Black | Reads 1) light reflected from the bare surface of the ITB, and 2) reads light reflected from the black ID sensor patterns on the ITB. |
| S2 | ID Sensor: Color | Reads 1) light reflected from the bare surface of the ITB, and 2) reads light reflected from the color ID sensor patterns on the ITB. This sensor has one additional receptor to collect diffuse light reflected from color toner to improve calculation of the toner density. |
| ⇒ S3 | ITB Lift Sensor (Full Color) | This sensor switches the ITB lift motor off when the ITB comes into contact with the drums of the color PCUs. |
| S4 | MUSIC Sensor: Center | Reads the center MUSIC pattern. This feedback is used to control the MUSIC process to correct color registration errors. |
| S5 | MUSIC Sensor: Front | Reads the front MUSIC pattern. This feedback is used to control the MUSIC process to correct color registration errors. |
| S6 | MUSIC Sensor: Rear | Reads the Rear MUSIC pattern. This feedback is used to control the MUSIC process to correct color registration errors. |
| S7 | Paper Feed Sensor: Tray 2 | Detects the leading edge of each sheet of paper from the pick–up roller of tray (middle tray) and switches off the pick–up roller solenoid so the pick–up roller lifts. |
| S8 | Vertical Transport Sensor: Tray 2 | Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet fed from tray 2 and signals a jam if the edges do not pass at the prescribed time. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S9 | Paper End Sensor: Tray 2 | Receives light reflected from the paper until the last sheet is fed from tray 2 (middle tray), then signals paper end. |
| S10 | Lift Sensor: Tray 2 | Detects when the pick–up roller (pushed up by the top of the paper stack in the right side of the tandem tray) has reached the correct height for paper feed and then switches off the tray 2 (middle tray) lift motor. |
| S11 | Paper Feed Sensor: Tray 3 | Detects the leading edge of each sheet of paper from the pick–up roller of tray 3 (bottom tray) and switches off the pick–up roller solenoid so the pick–up roller lifts. |
| S12 | Vertical Transport Sensor: Tray 3 | Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet fed from tray 3 and signals a jam if the edges do not pass at the prescribed time. |
| S13 | Paper End Sensor: Tray 3 | Receives light reflected from the paper until the last sheet is fed from tray 3 (bottom tray), then signals paper end. |
| S14 | Lift Sensor: Tray 3 | Detects when the pick–up roller (pushed up by the top of the paper stack in the right side of the tandem tray) has reached the correct height for paper feed and then switches off the tray 3 (bottom tray) lift motor. |
| S15 | Bottom Temperature/Humidity Sensor | Near the waste toner bottle. Detects ambient temperature and humidity and then this output is used to control the amount of current applied to the paper transfer roller and ITB when the image is transferred to paper. Also used to correct the fusing temperature, and to extend the fusing unit idle time at low room temperatures. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S16 | Waste Toner Bottle Set Sensor | Detects the position of the waste toner bottle and confirms whether it is set correctly. |
| S17 | Waste Toner Bottle Near-Full Sensor | When the level of the waste toner rises high enough to move the actuator of this sensor out of its normal position, the sensor signals the machine that the waste toner bottle is nearly full. |
| S18 | Waste Toner Bottle Full Sensor | Signals an alert when the waste toner bottle is full. |
| S19 | Paper Feed Sensor - Tray 1 | Detects the leading edge of each sheet of paper from the pick–up roller of tray 1 (tandem tray) and switches off the pick–up roller solenoid so the pick–up roller lifts. |
| S20 | Vertical Transport Sensor - Tray 1 | Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet fed from tray 1, 2, and 3 and signals a jam if the edges do not pass at the prescribed time. |
| S21 | Paper End Sensor - Tray 1 | Detects when the last sheet is fed from tray 1. |
| S22 | Lift Sensor - Tray 1 | Detects when the pick–up roller (pushed up by the top of the paper stack in the right side of the tandem tray) has reached the correct height for paper feed and then switches off the tray 1 (tandem tray) lift motor. |
| S23 | Paper Near End Sensor - Tray 2 | Detects the near end condition for tray 2 (middle tray, a universal cassette). |
| S24 | Paper Near End Sensor: Tray 3 | Detects the near end condition for tray 3 (middle tray, a universal cassette). |
| S25 | Front Side Fence Open Sensor | Detects the actuator on the front side fence after it has reached the open position in the tandem tray. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S26 | Front Side Fence Closed Sensor | Detects the actuator on the front side fence after it has reached the closed position in the tandem tray. |
| S27 | Rear Side Fence Open Sensor | Detects the actuator on the rear side fence after it has reached the open position in the tandem tray. |
| S28 | Rear Side Fence Closed Sensor | Detects the actuator on the rear side fence after it has reached the closed position in the tandem tray. |
| S29 | Right Tray Down Sensor | Detects the bottom plate of the right tray and switches off the tray 1 lift motor and stops the bottom plate. |
| S30 | Paper Near End Sensor - Tray 1 | Signals 10% paper remaining when the actuator on the right rail of the right tray in the tandem tray passes. |
| S31 | Paper Height Sensor | Signals 100% paper remaining until activated. Signals 50% paper remaining when the actuator on the left rail of the right tray in the tandem tray passes. |
| S32 | Paper Height Sensor | Signals 30% paper remaining when the actuator on the left rail of the right tray in the tandem tray passes. |
| S33 | Paper Height Sensor | When near end sensor 1 on right rail of the right tray of the tandem tray is actuated, and paper height sensor 3 has detected the passing of the actuator on the left rail, then the near end sensor signals 10% paper remaining. |
| S34 | Right Tray Paper Sensor | Detects paper in the right side of the tandem paper tray. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S35 | Rear Fence HP Sensor | Detects the actuator on the rear fence in the tandem tray and switches off the rear fence motor. |
| S36 | Rear Fence Return Sensor | Detects the actuator on the rear fence in the tandem tray and reverses the rear fence motor. |
| S37 | Left Tray Paper Sensor | Detects the presence of paper in the left tray of the tandem tray. |
| ⇒ S38 | Internal Temperature Sensor | Located near the Y_PCU, this thermistor monitors the internal temperature of the machine. |
| S39 | Waste Toner Lock Sensor | Signals an alert if the waste toner collection coil locks and stops rotating. |
| S40 | Duplex Transport Sensor 1 | The feeler of this sensor detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet as it passes from the jogger unit above and into the horizontal feed path of the duplex unit below. Signals a jam if the paper does not arrive at or reach the sensor location at the prescribed time. |
| S41 | Duplex Inverter Sensor | Detects the leading edge of the paper at the inverter exit roller and signals to switch off the reverse trigger roller solenoid to signal a jam if the paper does not arrive at the prescribed time. |
| S42 | Duplex Entrance Sensor | Detects paper jams at the entrance of the duplex unit. |
| S43 | Duplex Transport Sensor 3 | Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet as it passes from the jogger unit above through the horizontal feed path of the duplex unit below. Signals a jam if the paper does not arrive at or reach the sensor location at the prescribed time. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S44 | Duplex Transport Sensor 2 | Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each sheet as it passes from the jogger unit above and into the horizontal feed path of the duplex unit below. Signals a jam if the paper does not arrive at or reach the sensor location at the prescribed time. |
| S45 | Duplex Jogger HP Sensor | At power on, detects the actuators on the jogger fences of the duplex unit, switches off the jogger motor and stops the fences at their home positions. |
| S46 | Double-Feed Detection Sensor | Receives the light emitted from the double–feed detection LED and reflected from the surface of each sheet in the paper path. Signals an error if the thickness of the paper is not the same as the previous sheet. |
| S47 | Guide Plate Position Sensor | Detects the position of guide plate when the jam occurs between the vertical transport rollers and registration roller. |
| S48 | Relay Sensor | Detects jams at the top of the vertical paper path. |
| S49 | Registration Sensor | Detects the leading edge of the paper and switches off the registration motor and stops the registration roller briefly but long enough to correct buckle the paper. |
| S50 | Paper Exit Sensor | Detects the leading and trailing edge of each sheet at the paper exit slot to check timing and detect jams. |
| S51 | Bypass Paper Sensor | Detects the presence of paper in the bypass tray. |
| S52 | Bypass Paper End Sensor | Signals paper out when the last sheet feeds from the bypass tray. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S53 | Bypass Paper Size Sensor | Reads the positions of the side fences (manually adjusted) to detect the width of the paper in the bypass tray. (Paper length is read with pulse counts from the registration sensor.) |
| S54 | Paper Exit Relay Sensor | Detects paper jams at the paper exit if the paper does not arrive or leave the machine at the prescribed time. |
| S55 | Copy Tray Full Sensor (Option) | Detects when the Copy Paper Tray B75 is full and temporarily pauses printing so the operator can remove the stack from the tray and continue. |
| S56 | TD Sensor: M | Monitors the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture in the development unit of the Magenta PCU. |
| S57 | TD Sensor: K | Monitors the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture in the development unit of the Black PCU. |
| S58 | Temperature/Humidity Sensor: PCU K | The temperature and humidity readings of this sensor are referenced to a lookup table stored in the ROM to 1) Correct the charge roller voltage , and 2) Set the length of time the agitators in the development unit rotate to mix the toner and developer. |
| S59 | TD Sensor: Y | Monitors the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture in the development unit of the Yellow PCU. |
| S60 | TD Sensor: C | Monitors the amount of toner in the developer/toner mixture in the development unit of the Cyan PCU. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ⇒ S61 | ITB Lift Sensor (BW) | This sensor switches the ITB lift motor off when the ITB comes into contact the drum of black PCU. |
| ⇒ S62 | Fusing Pressure Release Sensor | Pulls and pushes the pressure roller to separate it from and press it against the hot roller. The pressure roller is a soft sponge roller that would warp out of shape if it were allowed to press against the hot roller while the machine is idle. |
| S63 | Potential Sensor : K | Reads the potential sensor pattern from the surface of the drum in the black PCU. |
| S64 | Potential Sensor: M | Reads the potential sensor pattern from the surface of the drum in the magenta PCU. |
| S65 | Potential Sensor: C | Reads the potential sensor pattern from the surface of the drum in the cyan PCU. |
| S66 | Potential Sensor: Y | Reads the potential sensor pattern from the surface of the drum in the yellow PCU. |
| ⇒ S67/S68 | Laser Unit Temperature Sensor | Reads the temperature in the optics unit. The results are used in the MUSIC process. |
| S69 | Toner End Sensor: M | Detects toner end for magenta toner. |
| S70 | Toner End Sensor : K | Detects toner end for black toner. |
| S71 | Toner End Sensor: Y | Detects toner end for yellow toner. |
| S72 | Toner End Sensor: C | Detects toner end for cyan toner. |
| S73 | Scanner HP Sensor | Detects the home position of the scanner. |
| S74 | Original Width Sensors | APS1 (a board) holds two original width sensors under the exposure glass. The detection combinations of these sensors determine the width of the original on the exposure glass positioned for LEF. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S75 | Original Length Sensors - 1 | APS2 (a board) holds two original length sensors under the exposure glass. The detection combinations of these sensors determine the length of the original on the exposure glass positioned for SEF. |
| S76 | Original Length Sensor -2 | APS3 (a board) holds one original length sensor under the exposure glass. The detection combination of this sensor and other sensors determine the length of the original on the exposure glass positioned for SEF. |
| S77 | Accordion Jam Sensor | Detects jams at the fusing exit by confirming that paper arrives at the prescribed time. |
| S78 | Fusing Exit Sensor | Detects jams at the fusing exit by confirming that paper leaves at the prescribed time. |
| S79 | LCT Relay Sensor | Confirms whether the LCT is set correctly. |
| ⇒ S80 | Original Length Sensor -3 | APS4 holds one original length sensor under the exposure glass. The detection combination of this sensor and other sensors determines the length of the original on the exposure glass positioned for SEF. |
| ⇒ S81 | Encoder | Monitors the encoder wheel in the ITB drive motor unit. |
| ⇒ S82 | PTR Contact Sensor | Detects when the PTR is lifted or lowered. |
| ⇒ S83 | ITB Position Sensor | Monitors the speed of the ITB. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **LEDs** | | |
| LED1 | Double-Feed Detection LED | Emits light which is reflected from the paper to the double–feed detection sensor to test the translucence of each sheet for double-feed detection. |
| LED2 | Accordion Jam Sensor (LED) | Flashes to show the user which lever to release to remove a paper jam from the fusing rollers. |
| LED3 | Fusing Exit Sensor (LED) | Flashes to show the user which lever to release to remove a paper jam from the fusing unit. |
| **SOLENOIDS** | | |
| SOL1 | Pick–up Solenoid: Tray 2 | Switches on when the tray 2 (middle tray) lift motor switches on. This solenoid lowers the pick–up roller of tray 3. |
| SOL2 | Separation Roller Solenoid: Tray 2 | When tray 2 (middle tray) is selected as the paper source, this solenoid energizes and brings the separation roller in contact with the feed roller until the leading edge of the sheet feeds to the paper feed sensor. |
| SOL3 | Pick–up Solenoid: Tray 3 | Switches on when the tray 3 (bottom tray) lift motor switches on. This solenoid lowers the pick–up roller of tray 3. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SOL4 | Separation Roller Solenoid: Tray 3 | When tray 3 (bottom tray) is selected as the paper source, this solenoid energizes and brings the separation roller in contact with the feed roller until the leading edge of the sheet feeds to the paper feed sensor. |
| SOL5 | Pick–up Solenoid - Tray 1 | Switches on when the tray 1 (tandem tray) lift motor switches on. This solenoid lowers the pick–up roller of tray 1. |
| SOL6 | Separation Roller Solenoid - Tray 1 | When tray 1 (tandem tray) is selected as the paper source, this solenoid energizes and brings the separation roller in contact with the feed roller until the leading edge of the sheet feeds to the paper feed sensor. |
| SOL7 | Front Side Fence Solenoid -Tray 1 | When the right tray paper sensor in the tandem tray signals paper out, and the left tray paper sensor signals paper present, this energizes this solenoid which pulls open the front side fence until the front side fence open sensor detects the actuator of the front side fence and switches off the solenoid, leaving it locked in the open position, to allow the rear fence to push the paper stack from the left tray into the right tray. |
| SOL8 | Rear Side Fence Solenoid - Tray 1 | When the right tray paper sensor in the tandem tray signals paper out, and the left tray paper sensor signals paper present, this energizes this solenoid which pulls open the rear side fence until the rear side fence open sensor detects the actuator of the rear side fence and switches off the solenoid, leaving it locked in the open position, to allow rear fence to push the paper stack from the left tray into the right tray. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SOL9 | Right Tray Lock Solenoid - Tray 1 | Releases the lock lever when the left tray paper sensor in the tandem tray signals that there is no paper in the left tray. |
| SOL10 | Left Tray Lock Solenoid - Tray 1 | When the rear fence motor in the tandem tray switches on, this energizes the left tray lock solenoid. This locks the left tray so it does not move while the rear fence pushes the stack from the left tray to the right tray. |
| SOL11 | Duplex Junction Gate Solenoid | Controls the opening and closing of the duplex junction gate at the mouth of the inverter unit. |
| SOL12 | Reverse Trigger Roller Solenoid | After a sheet is detected by the duplex entrance sensor, this solenoid energizes and pushes down the reverse trigger roller. |
| SOL13 | Guide Plate Solenoid | Energizes when a jam occurs between the vertical transport rollers and registration roller to force the guide plate open and divert paper fed from below into the duplex tray. |
| SOL14 | Inverter Junction Gate Solenoid | Operates the inverter junction gate. The inverter injunction gate turns paper into the path to the inverter unit below where it is 1) inverted for face–down output or 2) inverted for 2nd side printing. |
| SOL15 | Bypass Pick–up Solenoid | Switches on and lowers the pick–up roller to the top of the stack in the bypass tray |
| ⟹ SOL16 | Charge Cleaning Solenoid: Y | Raises and lowers the Y charge roller cleaning roller. |
| ⟹ SOL17 | Charge Cleaning Solenoid: C | Raises and lowers the C charge roller cleaning roller. |
| ⟹ SOL18 | Charge Cleaning Solenoid: M | Raises and lowers the M charge roller cleaning roller. |
| ⟹ SOL19 | Duplex Inverter Solenoid | Operates the duplex inverter junction gate. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **SWITCHES** | | |
| | SW1 | Lower Front Door Switch | Detects whether the front door is open or closed. |
| | SW2 | Main Power Switch | Switches the machine off and on. |
| | SW3 | Upper Front Door Switches (x5) | Detect whether the front door is open or closed. |
| | SW4 | Paper Size Switch: Tray 2 | The switch detects the position of the dial (set manually), and signals the paper size with a simple 5–digit binary code. |
| | SW5 | Paper Size Switch: Tray 3 | The switch detects the position of the dial (set manually), and signals the paper size with a simple 5–digit binary code. |
| ⇒ | SW6 | Interlock SWs | Front door upper left. |
| | **THERMISTORS** | | |
| | TH1 | Heating Roller Thermistor | Monitors the end of the heating roller and breaks the circuit to the heating lamps if a lamp overheats. |
| | TH2 | Hot Roller Thermistor | Detects and monitors the temperature of the hot roller for fusing temperature control. |
| | TH3 | Pressure Roller Thermistor | Detects the temperature of the hot roller for fusing temperature control. |
| ⇒ | TH4 | Heating Roller Center Thermistor | Monitors the surface temperature of the heating roller center and breaks the circuits to the fusing lamps if the heating roller overheats. This is a non-contact themistor. |
| ⇒ | TH5 | Heating Roller End Thermistor | Monitors the surface temperature of the heating roller end and breaks the circuits to the fusing lamps if the heating roller overheats. This is a non-contact themistor. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **THERMOSTATS** | | |
| ⇒ | TS1/TS2 | Thermostats (Pressure Roller) | Monitors the temperature of the pressure roller and cuts the circuit if the pressure roller fusing lamp overheats. |
| ⇒ | TS3/TS4 | Thermostats (Fusing Belt) | Monitors the temperature of the fusing belt and cuts the circuit if the heating roller fusing lamp overheats. |
| | TS6 | Thermostat 4 | Monitors the temperature of the fusing belt nd cuts the circuit if the fusing unit overheats. |

## *ARDF*

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| **MOTORS** | | |
| M1 | Feed Motor | Drives the feed belt, and the separation, pick-up, and transport as far as the 1st transport roller. |
| M2 | Transport Motor | Controls the original scanning speed. |
| M3 | Exit Motor | Feeds paper out of the ARDF and onto the original exit table. |
| M4 | Upper Inverter Motor | Controls the rotation of the upper inverter roller that feeds the original in and out of the upper inverter path. |
| M5 | Lower Inverter Motor | Controls the rotation of the lower inverter roller that feeds the original in and out of the lower inverter path. |
| M6 | Pick-up Motor | Raises and lowers the pick-up roller. |
| M7 | Bottom Plate Lift Motor | Raises and lowers the bottom under the original stack. |
| **PCB** | | |
| PCB1 | ARDF Main Board | Controls the ARDF and communicates with the main copier boards. |

| SENSORS | | |
|---|---|---|
| S1 | Original Width Sensor 2 | Detects paper wider than 191.5 mm (7.5 in.) measured from the reference point. |
| S2 | Original Width Sensor 3 | Detects paper wider than 230 mm (9.1 in.) measured from the reference point. |
| S3 | Original Width Sensor 4 | Detects paper wider than 263.5 mm (10.4 in.) measured from the reference point. |
| S4 | Original Width Sensor 5 | Detects paper wider than 288 mm (11.3 in.) measured from the reference point. |
| S5 | Original Width Sensor 1 | Detects paper wider than 138 mm (5.4 in.) measured from the reference point. |
| S6 | Original Set Sensor | Detects whether an original is on the table. |
| S7 | Bottom Plate HP Sensor | Detects whether the bottom plate is in the down position or not. |
| S8 | Feed Cover Sensor | Detects whether the feed cover is open or not. |
| S9 | Bottom Plate Position Sensor | Detects when the original is at the correct position for feeding. |
| S10 | Upper Inverter Sensor | Detects leading and trailing edge of the paper as it enters and leaves the upper path of the inverter. |
| S11 | LG Detection Sensor | Detects paper longer than 318 mm (12.5 in.) on the original table. |
| S12 | A4 Detection Sensor | Detects paper longer than 291 mm (11.5 in.) on the original table. |
| S13 | B5 Detection Sensor | Detects paper longer than 240 mm (9.5 in.) on the original table. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S14 | Interval Sensor | Adjusts the timing of the original transport speed to the original scanning speed after the original feeds. During duplex scanning, or if original is small (B6, A5, or HLT) the interval sensor detects the leading edge of the original and delays the pre-scanning motor for the prescribed number of pulses to buckle the original and correct skew. |
| S15 | Skew Correction Sensor | After pick-up and separation, the skew correction sensor detects the leading edge of the original. This signal slows the rotation of the entrance roller for a prescribed number of pulses to buckle the original and correct skew. |
| S16 | Separation Sensor | Detects the separation of the original. |
| S17 | Exit Sensor | Detects the leading and trailing edges of paper feed out to the original table and detects misfeeds. Also signals when to stop the scanning belt. |
| S18 | Registration Sensor | Detects the leading edge and trailing edges of the original to detects jams and stops the original at the ADF exposure glass to correct buckle. |
| S19 | Pick-up Roller HP Sensor | Detects whether the pick-up roller is up or not. |
| S20 | Lower inverter sensor | Detects the original in the path of the lower inverter before it feeds to the inverter rollers for 2nd side scanning, or feeds to the exit rollers for exit. |
| S21 | ARDF Position Sensor | Detects whether the ARDF unit is up or down for scanning on the main exposure glass (book mode). |
| S22 | APS Start Sensor | Signals the CPU when the DF is opened and closed (for platen mode) so that the original size sensors in the copier can check the original size. |

| SOLENOIDS | | |
|---|---|---|
| SOL1 | Upper Inverter Solenoid | Opens and closes the upper junction gate at the entrance of the upper inverter path. During simplex scanning, closes the upper inverter path so the original exits straight to the exit tray. During duplex scanning, opens to allow the original to enter the upper inverter path and closes to direct it once again into the feed path for 2nd side scanning. |
| SOL2 | Lower Inverter Solenoid | Opens and closes the lower junction gate. During duplex scanning opens after the 2nd side is scanned to direct the original into the lower inverter path while the next sheet is fed to the upper inverter path above, then closes to direct the original out onto the original exit tray. |

# B331

# A3/DLT TRAY KIT

| B331 A3/DLT TRAY KIT REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| | | None |

# A3/DLT TRAY KIT B331

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

**1. INSTALLATION .....1**

**2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT.....2**

2.1 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT WIRE REPLACEMENT .....2

**3. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS .....4**

3.1 SECTIONAL DESCRIPTION.....4

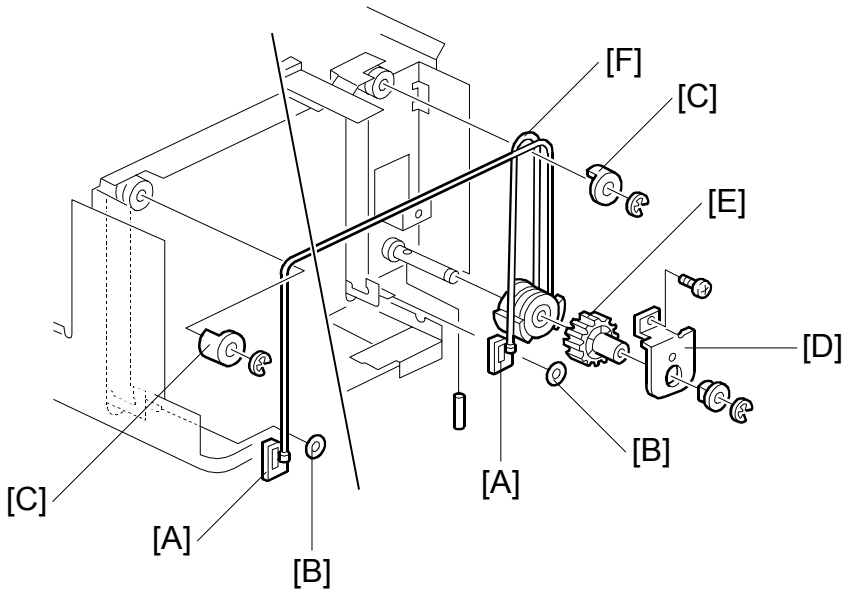
# 1. INSTALLATION

For details about installing the A3/DLT Kit B331, please refer to the instructions you received with the instructions or the “1. Installation” in the main machine service manual.

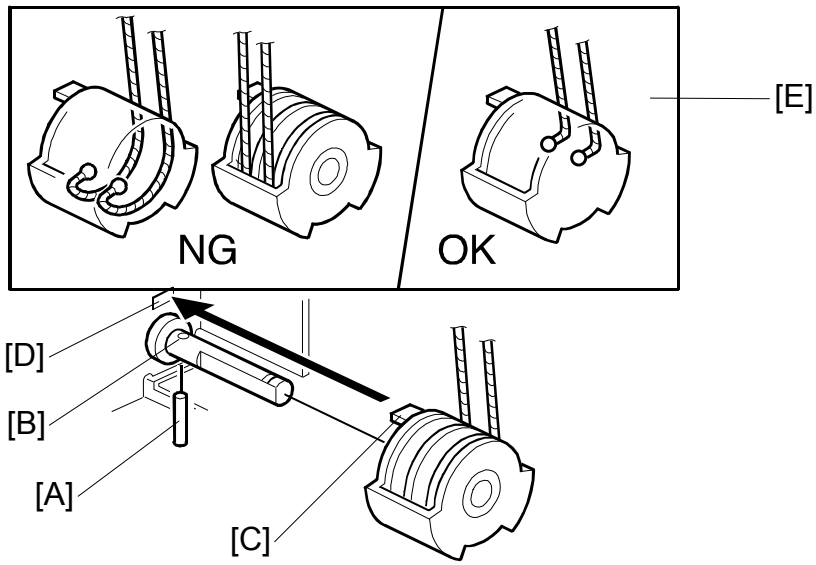
# 2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

## 2.1 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT WIRE REPLACEMENT

**NOTE:** Before replacing the rear bottom plate lift wire, remove the front bottom plate lift wire. The procedure for the two wires is the same.



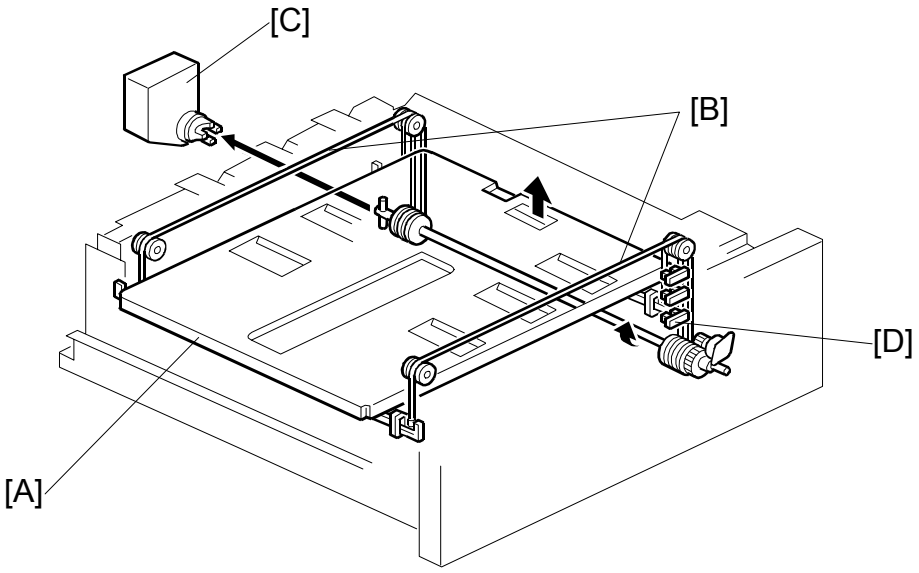

1. Remove the tray.
2. Remove the inner cover (2 screws).
3. Slightly lift the front bottom plate and unhook the wire stoppers [A] (2 stoppers [B]).
4. Remove the wire cover [C] (1 E-ring each).
5. Remove the bracket [D] (1 screw, 1 E-ring, and 1 bushing).
6. Remove the gear [E].
7. Replace the bottom plate lift wire [F].




**NOTE:** When re-installing the bottom plate lift wire:
1) Set the positioning pin [A] in the hole [B] and set the projection [C] in the hole [D].
2) Position the wire as shown [E].
3) Do not cross the wires.

# 3. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

## 3.1 SECTIONAL DESCRIPTION




This tray mechanism is basically same as the tandem LCT. This tray bottom plate [A] is lifted through the tray wires [B] by the lift motor [C] rotation. There is no remaining paper capacity detection.

The paper remaining sensors [D] trigger messages on the LCD to let the user know how much paper remains in the tray.

The operation panel LCD displays “full” whether there is paper in the tray. Except for the above matter, refer to the main copier tandem LCT section for details.

# Z-FOLDING UNIT ZF4000
# B660

| B660 Z-FOLDING UNIT ZF4000 REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| | | None |

# Z-FOLDING UNIT B660

## TABLE OF CONTENTS


**1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT ..... 1**

1.1 BEFORE YOU BEGIN ..... 1
1.2 COVERS ..... 2
1.3 FEED MOTOR ..... 3
1.4 UPPER EXIT SENSOR ..... 4
1.5 UPPER STOPPER MOTOR/HP SENSOR, FEED SENSOR ..... 5
1.6 FOLD TIMING SENSOR ..... 6
1.7 LOWER STOPPER MOTOR/HP SENSOR, RELAY BOARD ..... 7
1.8 LEADING EDGE SENSOR, LOWER EXIT SENSOR ..... 8
1.9 ANTI-STATIC BRUSH ..... 9
1.10 FOLD ROLLER MOTOR ..... 10
1.11 MAIN CONTROL BOARD ..... 11
1.12 PSU ..... 12
1.13 UNEVEN FOLDING ADJUSTMENT ..... 13
1.13.1 OVERVIEW ..... 13
1.13.2 Z-FOLD ADJUSTMENT SCREWS ..... 14
1.13.3 Z-FOLD ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE ..... 15
1st Fold Adjustment ..... 15
2nd Fold Adjustment ..... 16
1.13.4 Z-FOLD ADJUSTMENT REFERENCE TABLE ..... 17

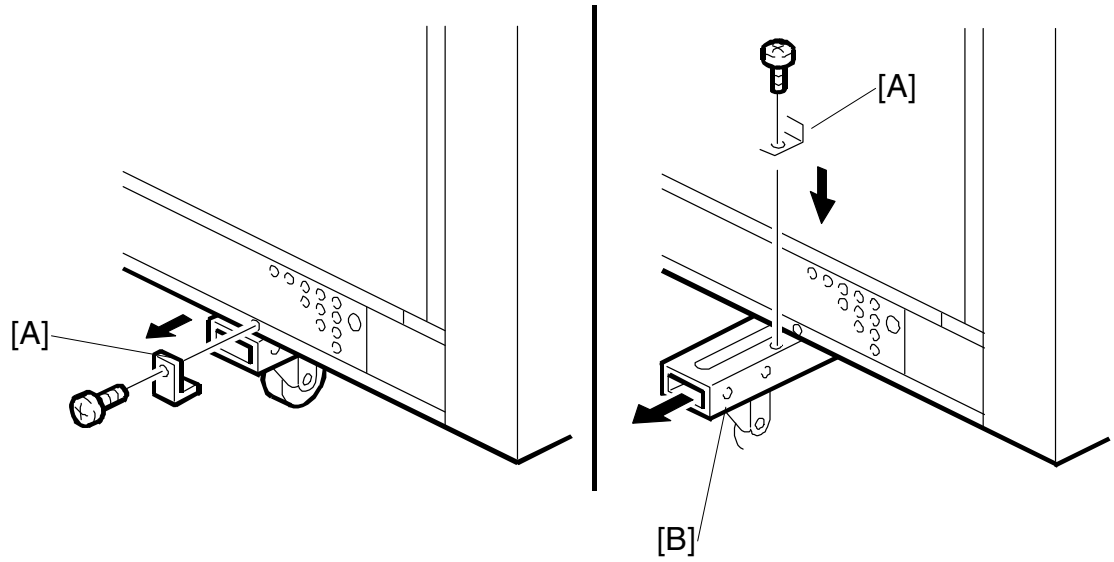
**2. SERVICE TABLES ..... 18**

**3. DETAILS ..... 19**

3.1 OVERVIEW ..... 19
3.2 Z-FOLDING UNIT PAPER PATH ..... 21
3.2.1 PAPER PATH WITH NO FOLDING ..... 21
3.2.2 PAPER PATH WITH Z-FOLDING ..... 22
3.3 DRIVE LAYOUT ..... 26
3.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ..... 27
3.4.1 OVERVIEW ..... 27
3.4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SUMMARY ..... 28

# 1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

## 1.1 BEFORE YOU BEGIN





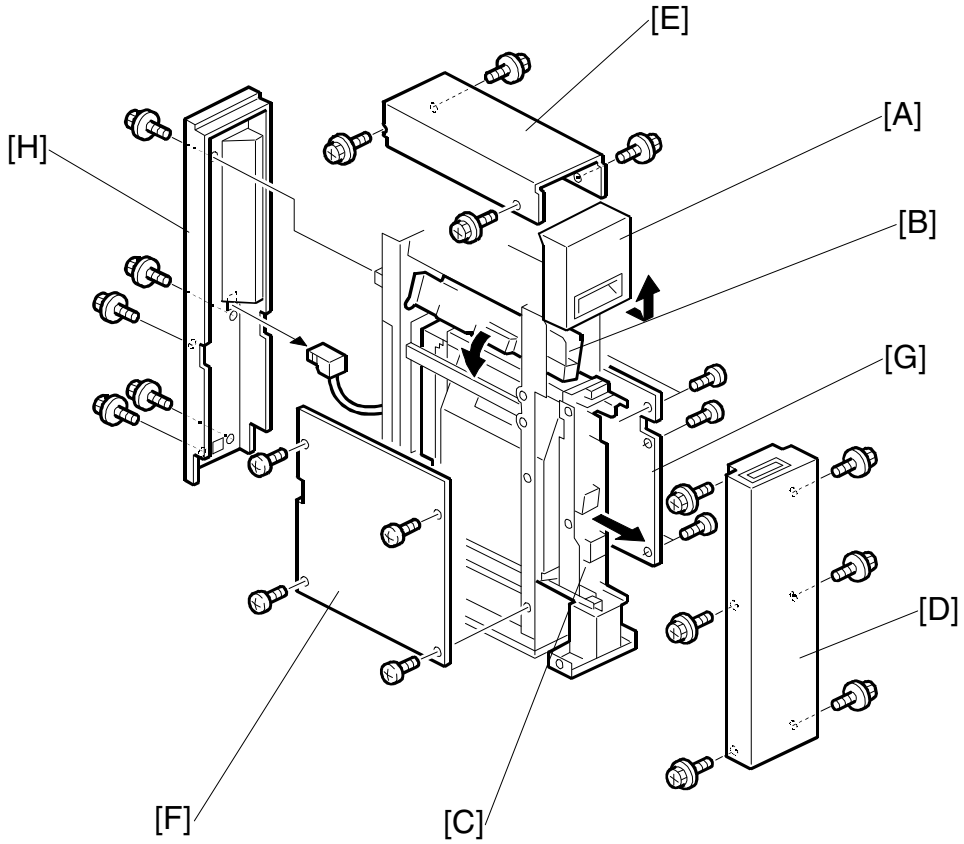

1. Disengage the Z-folding unit from the machine.
2. Disengage the Z-folding unit from the finisher (or cover sheet feeder).
3. At the bottom on the sides of the Z-folding unit:
   - Remove the lock bracket [A] (🔩 x 1).
   - Pull out the foot extension [B].
   - Re-attach the bracket [A] to lock the foot in the open position (🔩 x 1).

**Reinstallation**

Do this procedure in the opposite sequence to retract and lock the extensions below the Z-folding unit.

| ⚠CAUTION |
| --- |
| **The Z-folding unit is not stable, with or without the feet extended. Do your work carefully; do not tilt the unit.** |

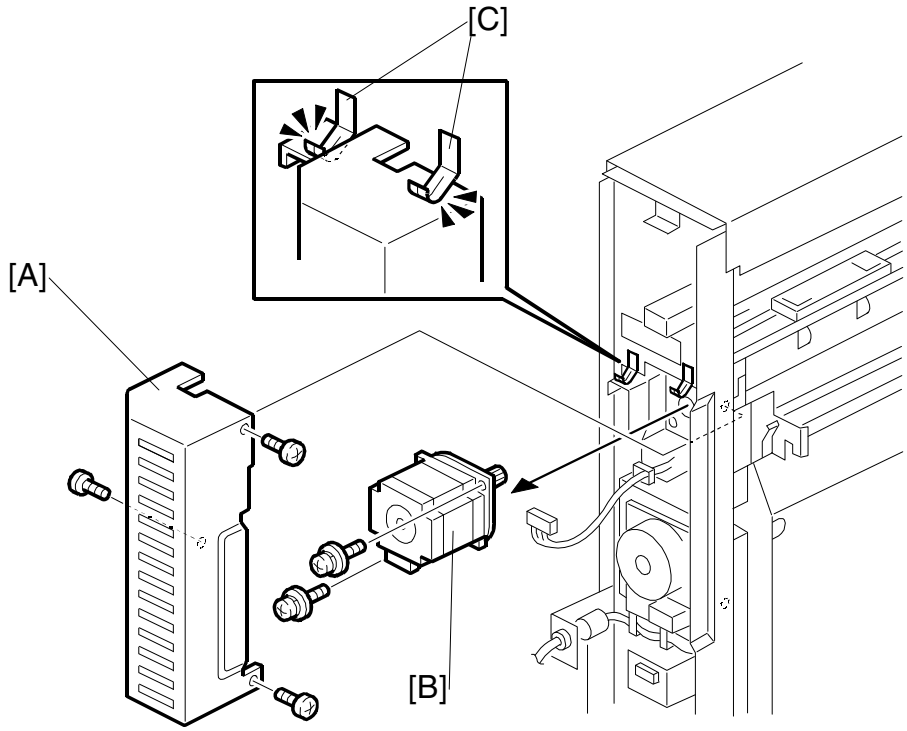
## 1.2 COVERS




- Open the front door [A].
- Lift the horizontal transport plate [B] to the left until it locks on the left side.
- Pull out the Z-fold mechanism [C].

[D] Front cover (x 6)
[E] Top cover (x 4)
[F] Left cover (x 4)
[G] Right cover (x 5)
[H] Rear cover (x 6)

## 1.3 FEED MOTOR





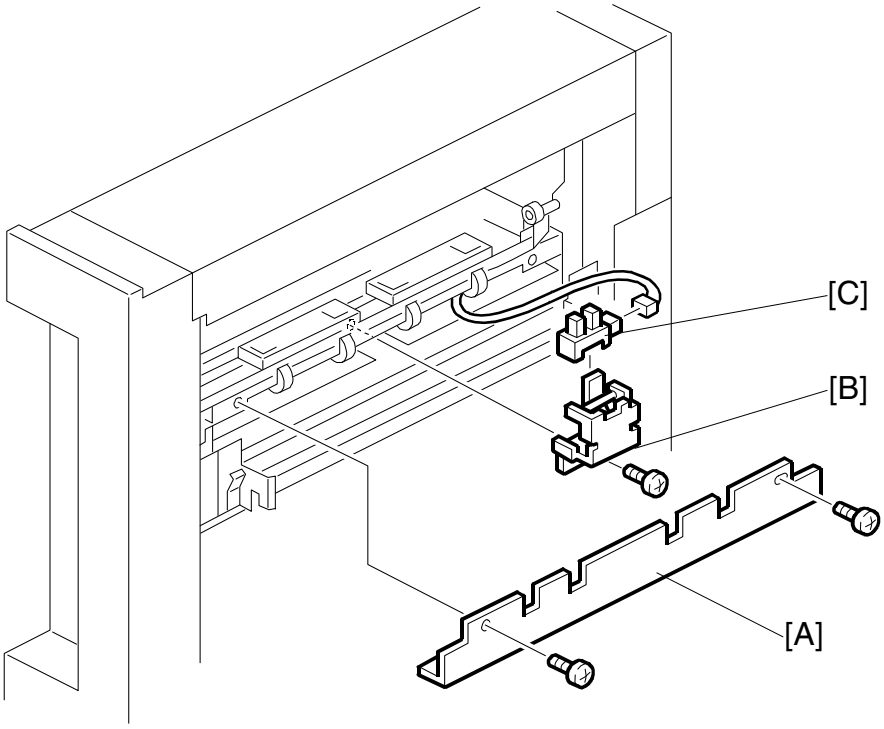

1. Pull the Z-folding mechanism out of the unit, but not fully.
2. Remove: (☛1.2)
   - Left cover
   - Right cover
   - Rear cover

[A]: Motor cover (🔩 x 3)
[B]: Feed Motor (🔩 x 2, 🖐 x 1, timing belt x 1)

**Reinstallation**

- Confirm that the motor cover is below the leaf springs at [C].

# 1.4 UPPER EXIT SENSOR



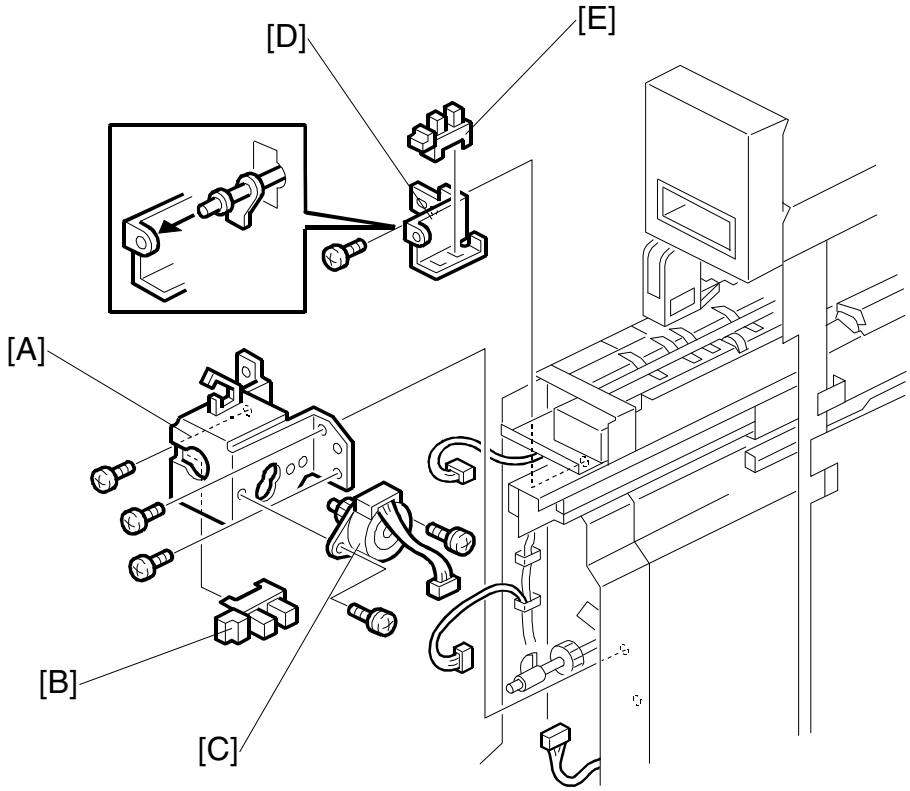

Left cover (☛1.2)

[A]: Bracket (🔩 x 2)

[B]: Upper exit sensor unit (🔩 x 1, ⇦ x 1, ✋ x 1)

[C]: Upper exit sensor

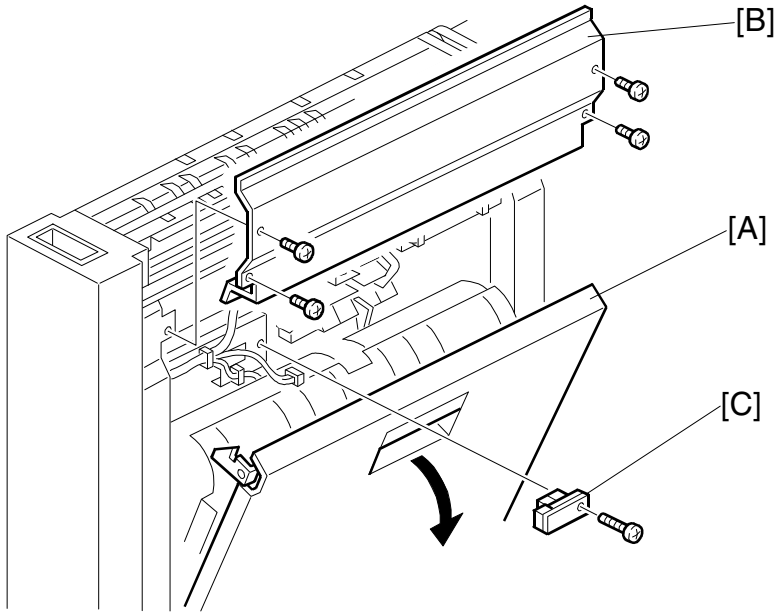
# 1.5 UPPER STOPPER MOTOR/HP SENSOR, FEED SENSOR




Front cover (☛1.2)

[A]: Upper stopper motor unit (x 3, x 2, x 2)
[B]: Upper stopper motor HP sensor
[C]: Upper stopper motor (x 2)
[D]: Feed sensor unit (x 1, x 1)
[E]: Feed sensor

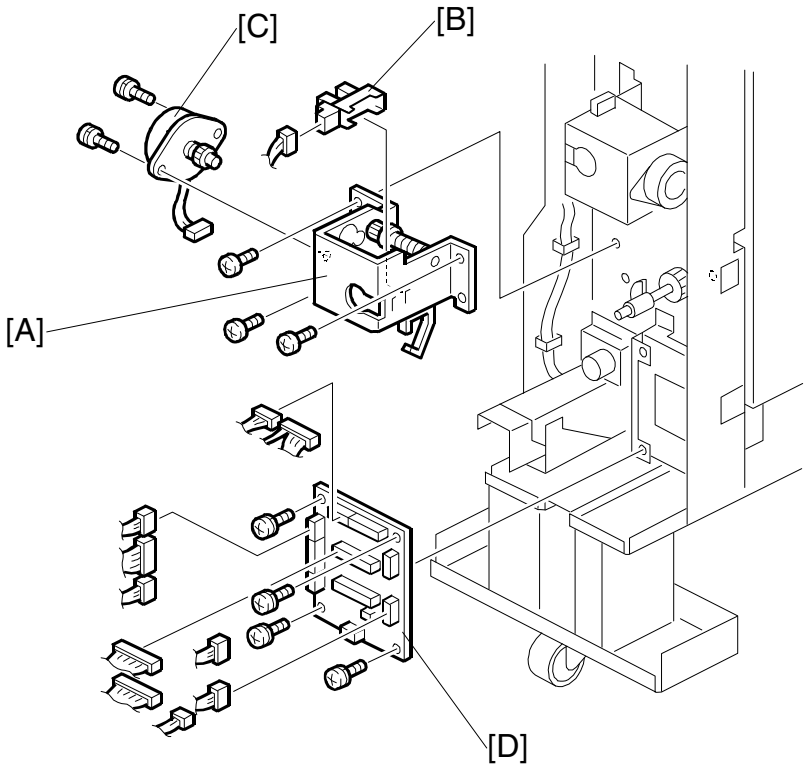
# 1.6 FOLD TIMING SENSOR




Pull the Z-fold mechanism out of the unit.

[A]: Open the right vertical transport unit cover.
[B]: Plate ( x 4)
[C]: Fold timing sensor ( x 1, x 1)

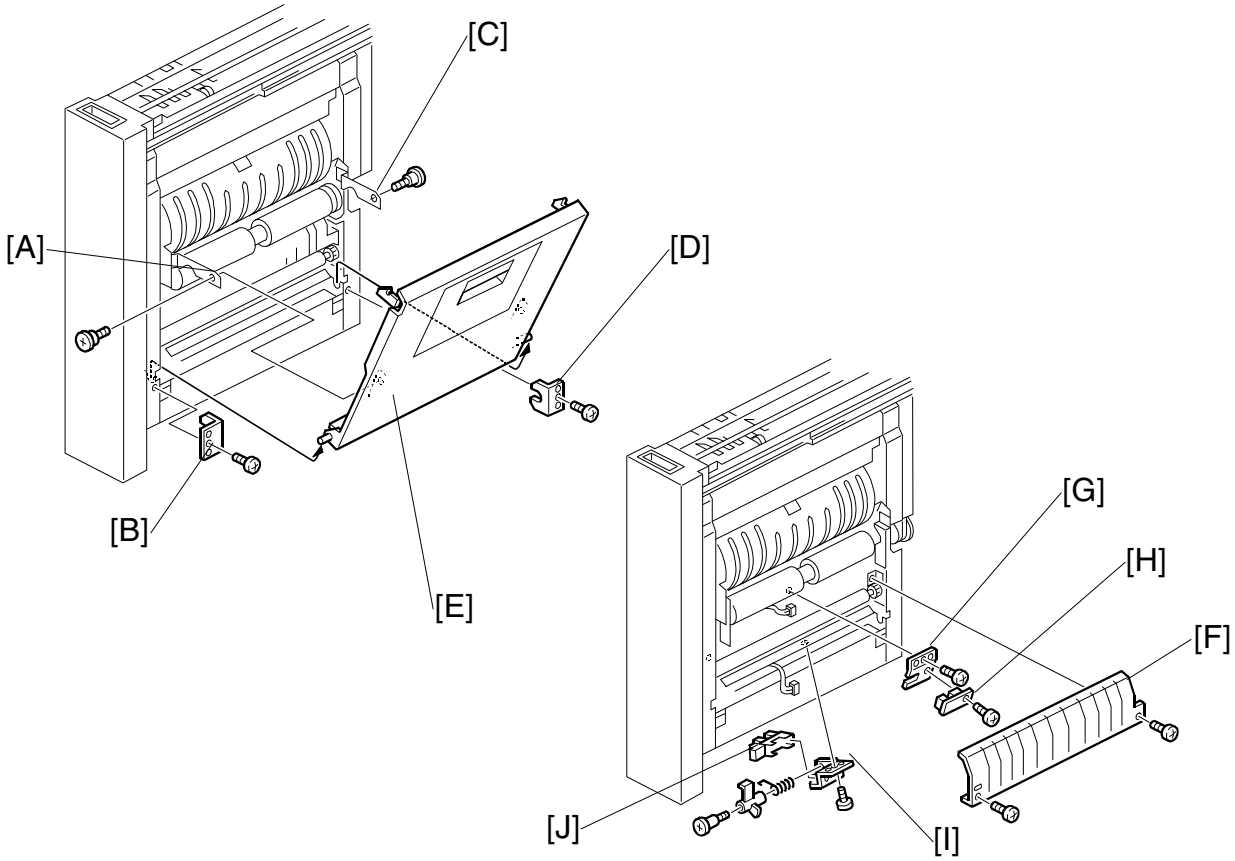
# 1.7 LOWER STOPPER MOTOR/HP SENSOR, RELAY BOARD




Front cover (☛1.2)

[A]: Lower stopper motor unit ( x 3, x 2, x 2),
[B]: Lower stopper HP sensor
[C]: Lower stopper motor ( x 2)
[D]: Relay board ( x 4, x 3, x 10)

# 1.8 LEADING EDGE SENSOR, LOWER EXIT SENSOR

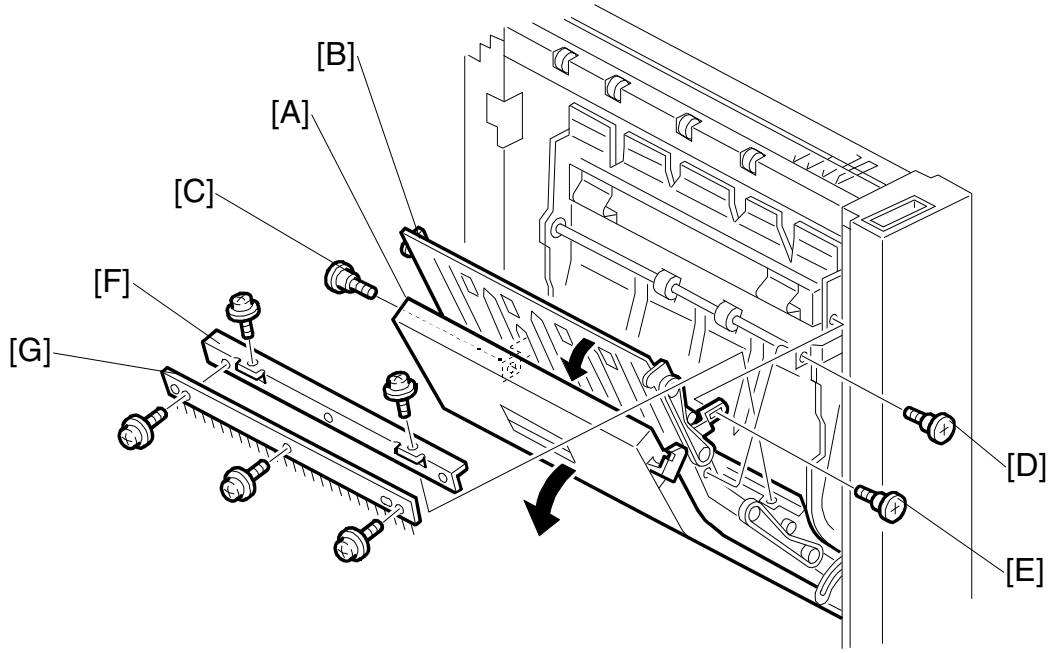



Pull out the Z-folding mechanism.

Open the right vertical transport cover [E].

[A]: Left link arm (☞ x 1)
[B]: Left corner bracket (☞ x 1)
[C]: Right link arm (☞ x 1)
[D]: Right corner bracket (☞ x 1)
[E]: Vertical transport cover.
[F]: Lower fold roller cover (☞ x 2)
[G]: Leading edge sensor unit (☞ x 1, ☞ x 1)
[H]: Leading edge sensor (☞ x 1)
[I]: Lower exit sensor unit (☞ x 1, ☞ x 1)
[J]: Lower exit sensor

# 1.9 ANTI-STATIC BRUSH



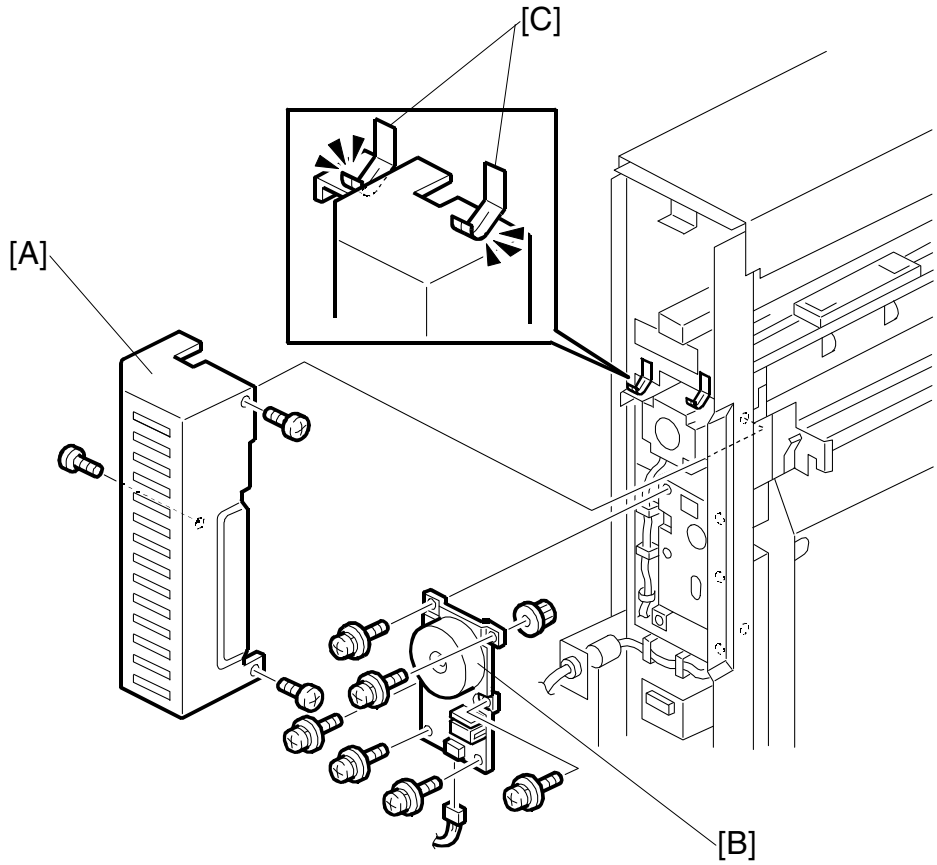



1. Pull out the Z-folding mechanism.
2. Open the left vertical transport cover [A].
3. Open the vertical transport assembly [B].

Remove:

[C] Left link screw
[D] Right link screw
[E] Link screw [E]
[F] Bracket
[G] Anti-static brush

# 1.10 FOLD ROLLER MOTOR



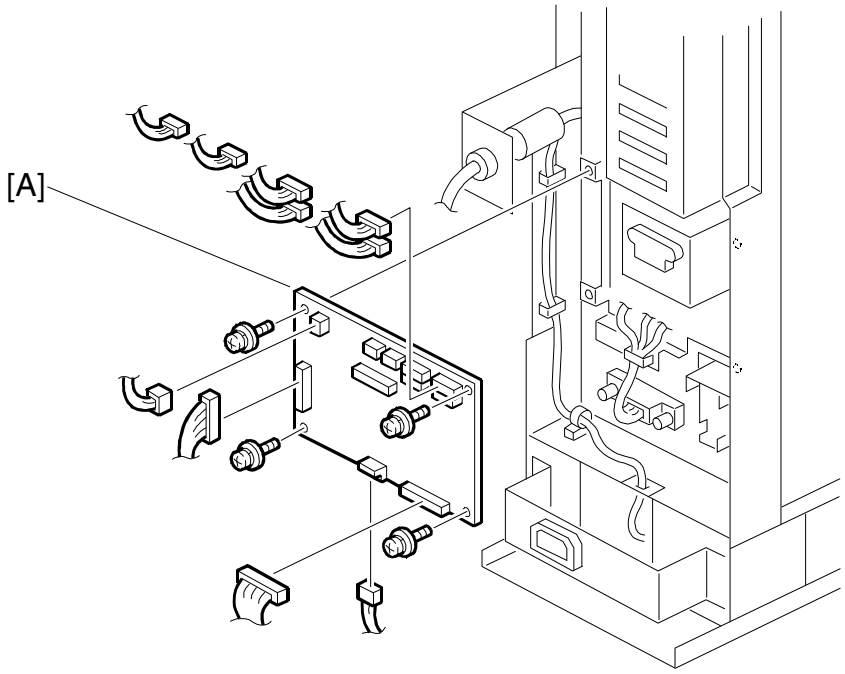

1. Pull the Z-folding mechanism out of the unit, but not fully.
2. Remove: (☛1.2)
   - Left cover
   - Right cover
   - Rear cover

[A]: Motor cover (x 3)
[B]: Fold roller motor (x 6, x 1, timing belt x 1)

### Reinstallation

Make sure that the motor cover is below the leaf springs [C].

# 1.11 MAIN CONTROL BOARD



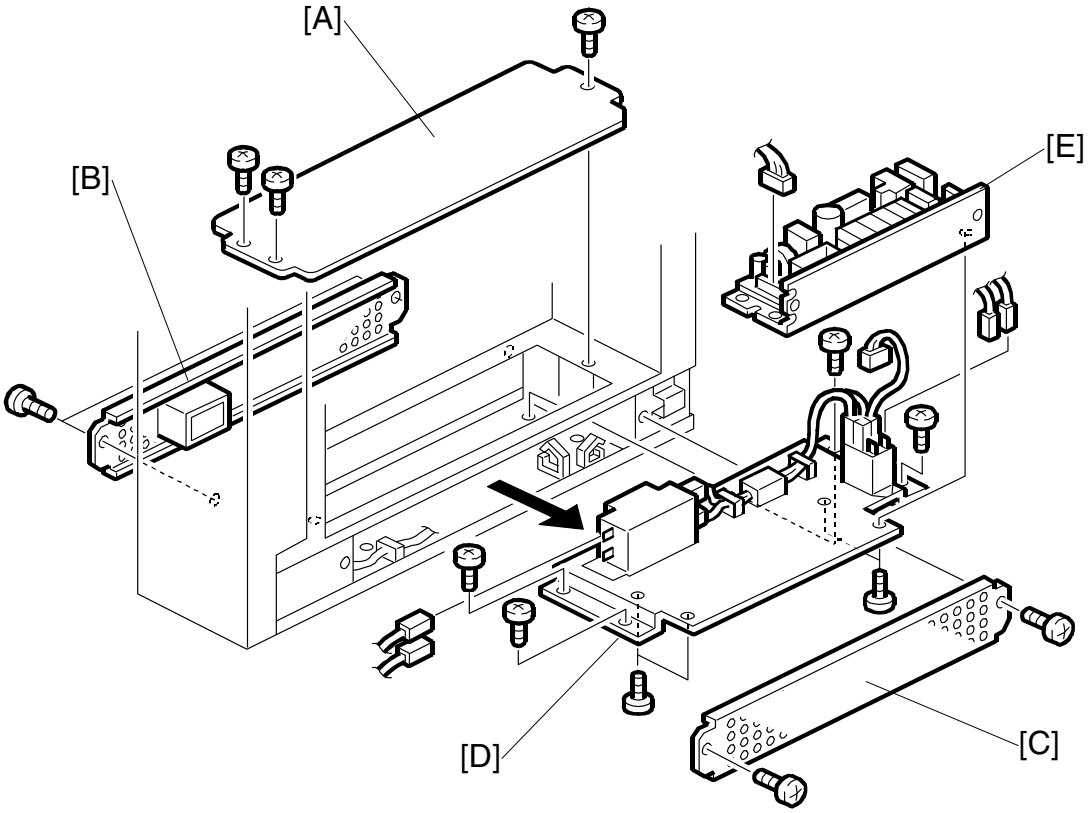



Remove:

- Rear cover. (☛1.2)

[A] Main control board [A] (🔩 x 4, 🔌 x 10)

## 1.12 PSU




- Open the front door.
- Pull the Z-fold mechanism out of the unit.

Remove:

- Left cover and right cover. (☛1.2)

[A] Base top cover (🔩 x 3).
[B] Base left cover (🔩 x 2).
[C] Base right cover (🔩 x 2).

- Make a mark at the positions of the connectors, then disconnect them.

**NOTE:** These connectors do not have different colors. To help you connect them again correctly, make marks on them.

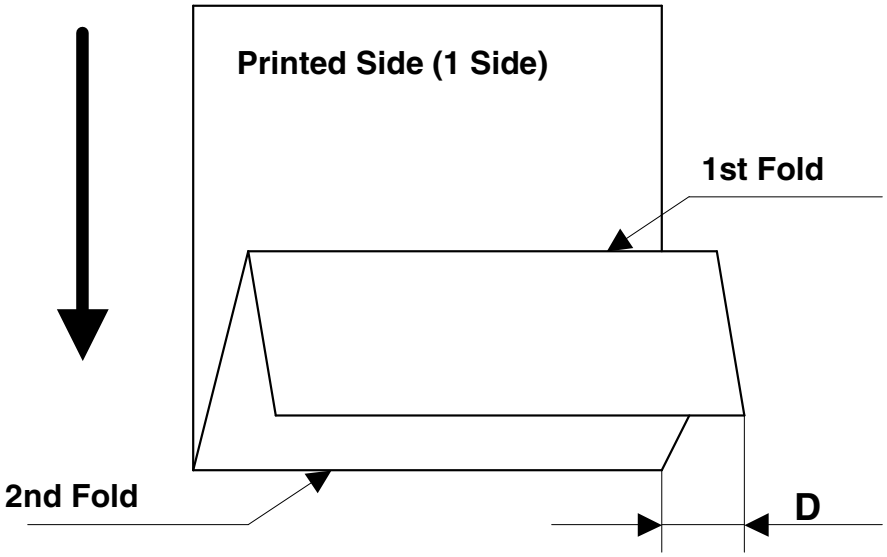
[D] Power supply unit (PSU) (🖐 x4, 🔩 x 4).

- Pull the PSU out of the right side of the bottom.

[E] Power supply board (🔩 x 4, 🖐 x 1).

# 1.13 UNEVEN FOLDING ADJUSTMENT

## 1.13.1 OVERVIEW






This procedure describes how to correct uneven folding (D) in paper folded with the Z-Fold unit. Before doing this procedure, please note the names and positions of the 1st and 2nd Fold.

Section 3.2.2 provides a full description of how Z-folding is done.

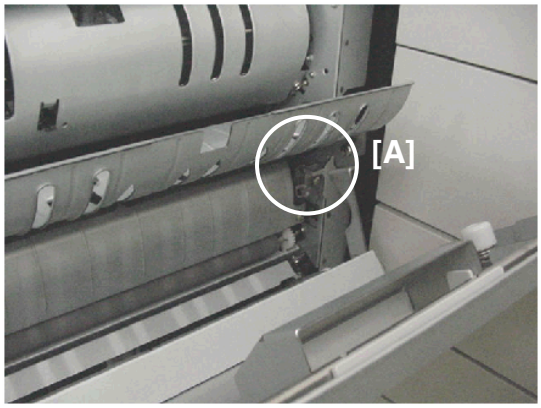
## 1.13.2 Z-FOLD ADJUSTMENT SCREWS

The adjustment of the 1st fold is done by turning an adjustment screw linked to the paper stopper.

Pull out the Z-fold mechanism.

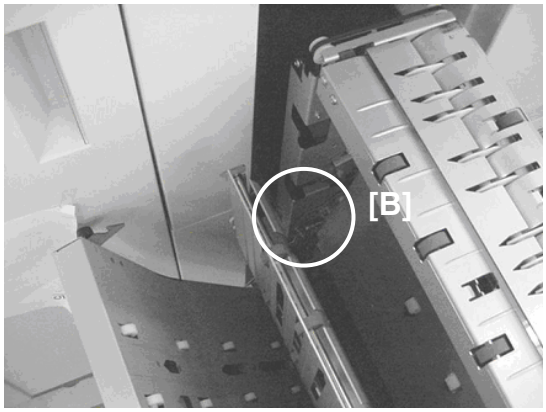
Open the right cover to see the adjustment screw located at [A].

This is the screw used to adjust the 1st fold.




Open the left cover to see the screw located at [B].

This is the screw used to adjust the 2nd fold.

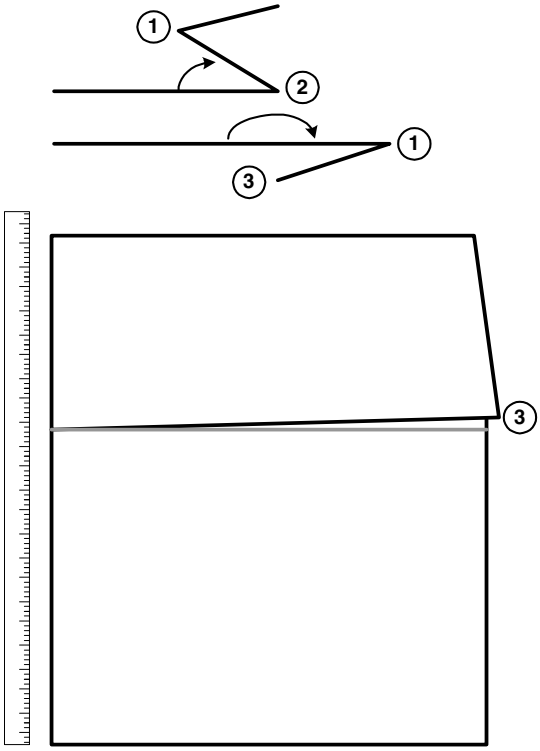


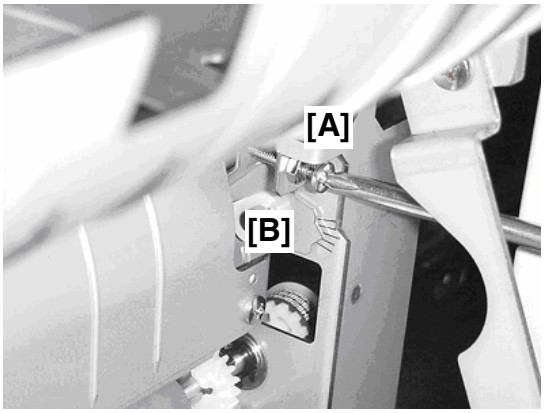
## 1.13.3 Z-FOLD ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

### *1st Fold Adjustment*

1. Print one A3 copy and send it through the Z-fold unit.
2. Open the 2nd fold ❷.
3. Turn the paper over so the edge ❸ is aligned with the crease of the 2nd fold.
4. Open the right door and locate the screw that adjusts the 1st fold (see previous page).
5. Use a plus screwdriver to turn the screw [A] to the left to loosen the nut.
   - If the corner is over the right edge, turn the screw to the right.
   - If the corner is over the left edge, turn the screw to the left.

   **NOTE**:
   - The illustration above shows the corner over the right edge.
   - You can see the pointer [B] change position on the notches of the adjustment scale as you turn the screw.
6. Close the Z-Fold unit.
7. Do another test print.
8. If the 1st fold is still misaligned, repeat this procedure until the alignment is correct.
9. After the adjustment is completed, use a screw driver to hold the screw in position, then retighten the nut you loosened in Step 2. Do not turn the screw.

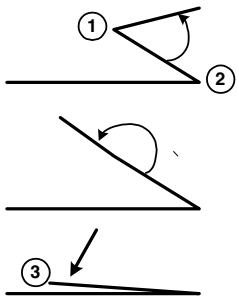


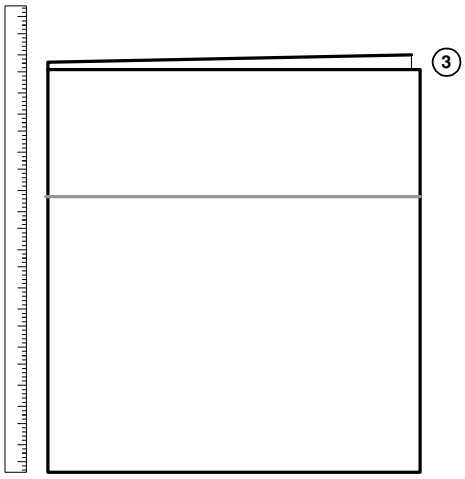



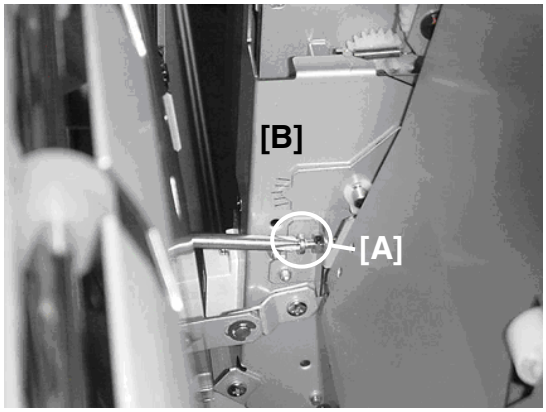
### *2nd Fold Adjustment*

1. Print one A3 copy and send it through the Z-fold unit.
2. Open the folded sheet at the 1st fold ❶ then lay it down flat.
3. Stand the sheet on its end so the edge ❸ is up and the crease of the 1st fold is facing out.
4. Open the left door and locate the screw that adjusts the 2nd fold (see previous page).
5. Use a plus screwdriver to turn the screw [A] to the left to loosen the nut.
   - If the corner is over the right edge, turn the screw to the right.
   - If the corner is over the left edge, turn the screw to the left.

   **NOTE**:
   - The illustration shows the corner over the right edge.
   - You can see the pointer [B] change position on the notches of the adjustment scale as you turn the screw.
6. Close the Z-Fold unit.
7. Do another test print.
8. If the 1st fold is still misaligned, repeat this procedure until the alignment is correct.
9. After the adjustment is completed, use a screw driver to hold the screw in position, then retighten the nut you loosened in Step 2. Do not turn the screw.

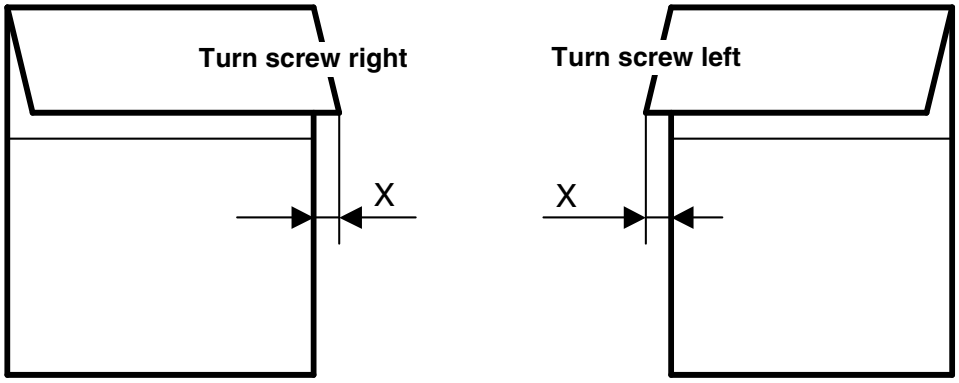


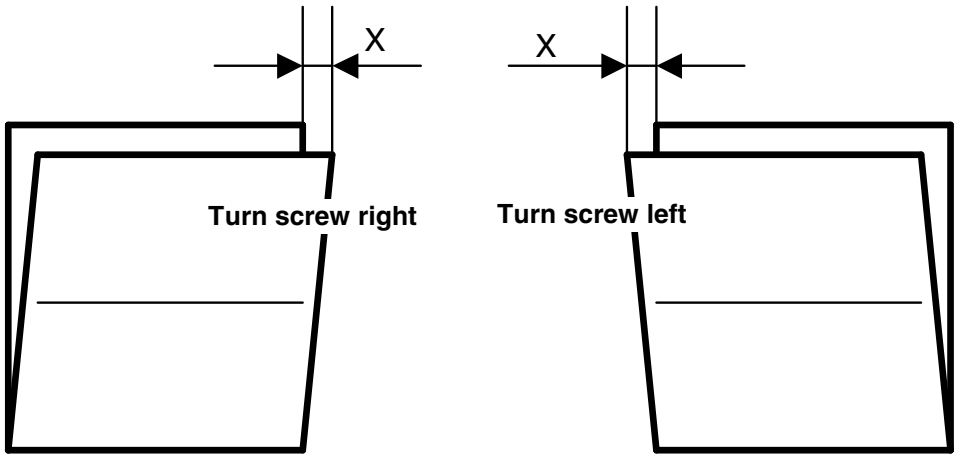



## 1.13.4 Z-FOLD ADJUSTMENT REFERENCE TABLE

### 1st Fold Adjustment




### 2nd Fold Adjustment

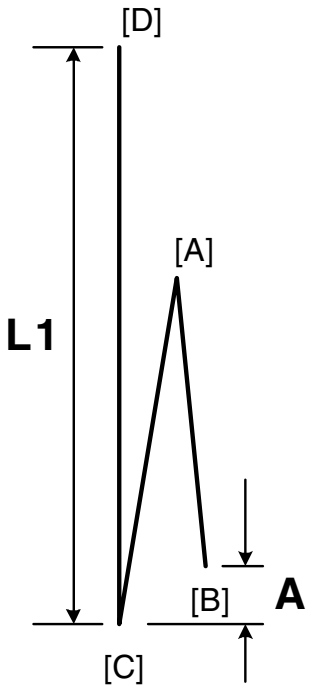





**NOTE**: A one-notch adjustment on the scale means the alignment is corrected by about 1 mm.

# 2. SERVICE TABLES

Two SP codes have been added for the Z-folding unit, to adjust the positions of the folds.



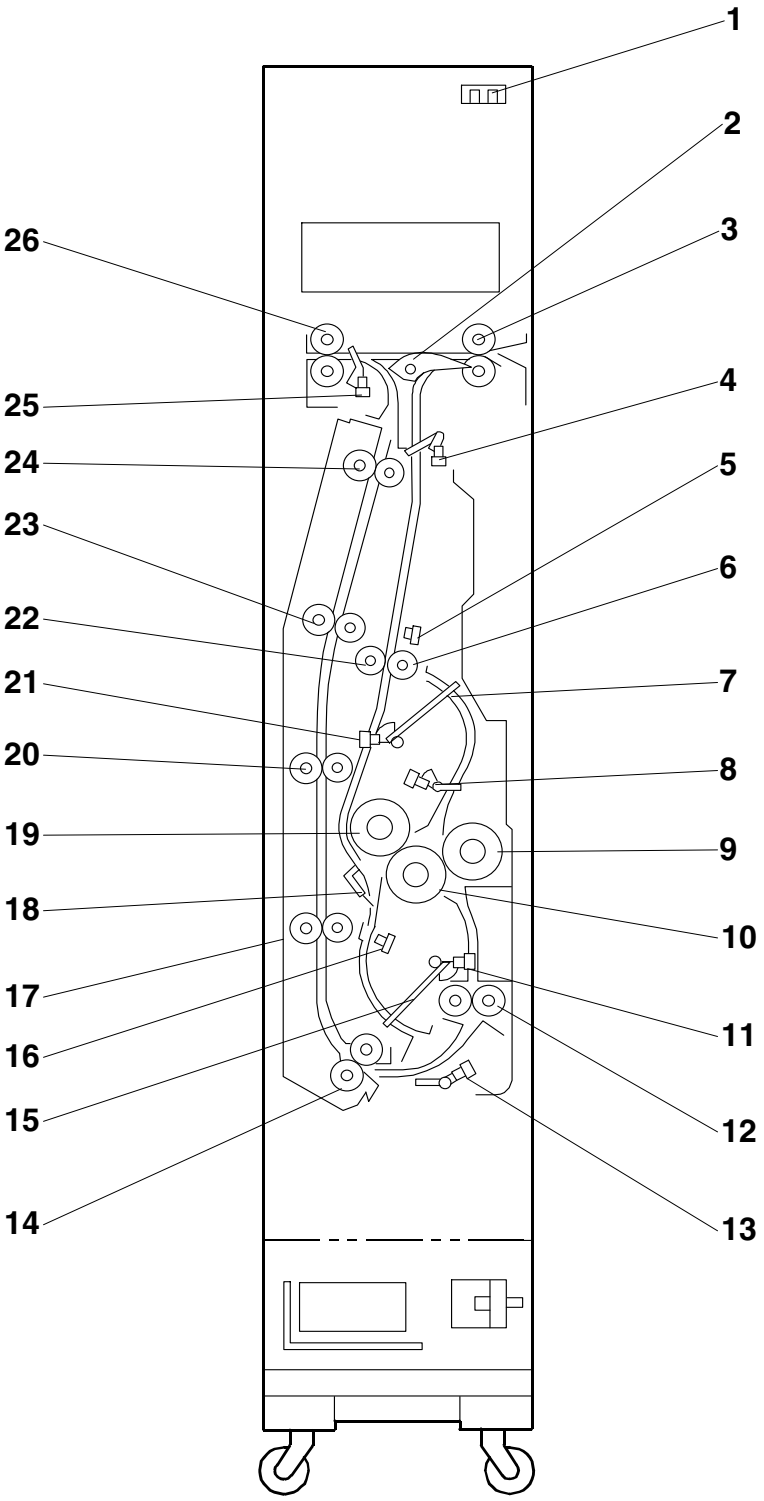

Use these SPs to adjust the locations of the first fold and the second fold.

The illustration shows the position of the sheet while it goes through the lower exit rollers after it has been folded.

| | |
|---|---|
| **SP6301 001 to 008** | Fine Adjustment – 1st Fold Position |
| | [-4 ~ +4/0/ 0.2 mm]<br>Adjusts the position of the first fold [A] to decrease or increase the distance (**A**) between the leading edge [B] and the crease of the 2nd fold [C]. |
| **SP6301 009 to 016** | Fine Adjustment – 2nd Fold Position |
| | [-4 ~ +4/0/ 0.2 mm]<br>Adjusts the position of the 2nd fold [C] to decrease or increase the length (**L1**) of the sheet between the trailing edge [D] and the 2nd fold. |

# 3. DETAILS

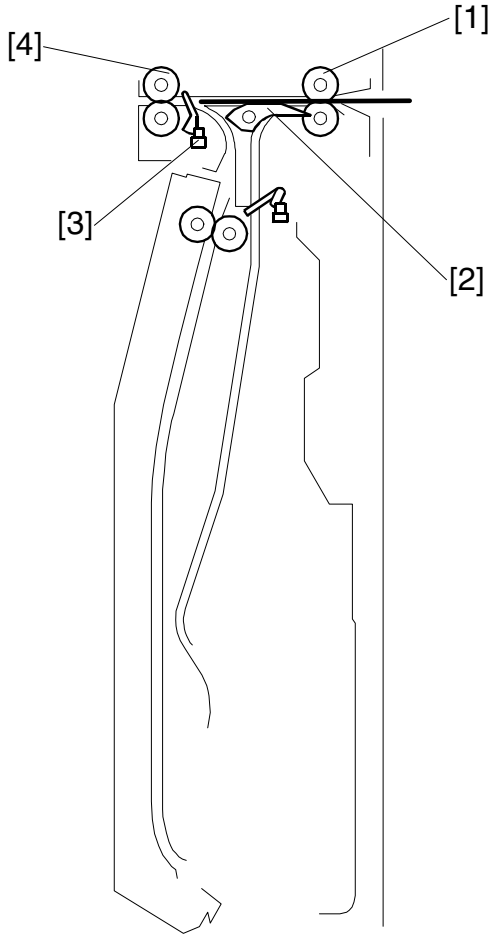
## 3.1 OVERVIEW



1. Front Door Sensor
2. Junction Gate
3. Feed Rollers
4. Feed Sensor
5. Fold Timing Sensor
6. Pinch Idle Roller
7. Upper Stopper
8. Upper Stopper Path Sensor
9. 3rd Fold Roller
10. 2nd Fold Roller
11. Lower Stopper HP Sensor
12. Lower Exit Rollers
13. Lower Exit Sensor
14. Grip Rollers
15. Lower Stopper
16. Leading Edge Sensor
17. Vertical Feed Rollers – 1
18. Anti-Static Brush
19. 1st Fold Roller
20. Vertical Feed Rollers – 2
21. Upper Stopper HP Sensor
22. Pinch Feed Roller
23. Vertical Feed Rollers – 3
24. Vertical Feed Rollers – 4
25. Upper Exit Sensor
26. Upper Exit Rollers

# 3.2 Z-FOLDING UNIT PAPER PATH

## 3.2.1 PAPER PATH WITH NO FOLDING



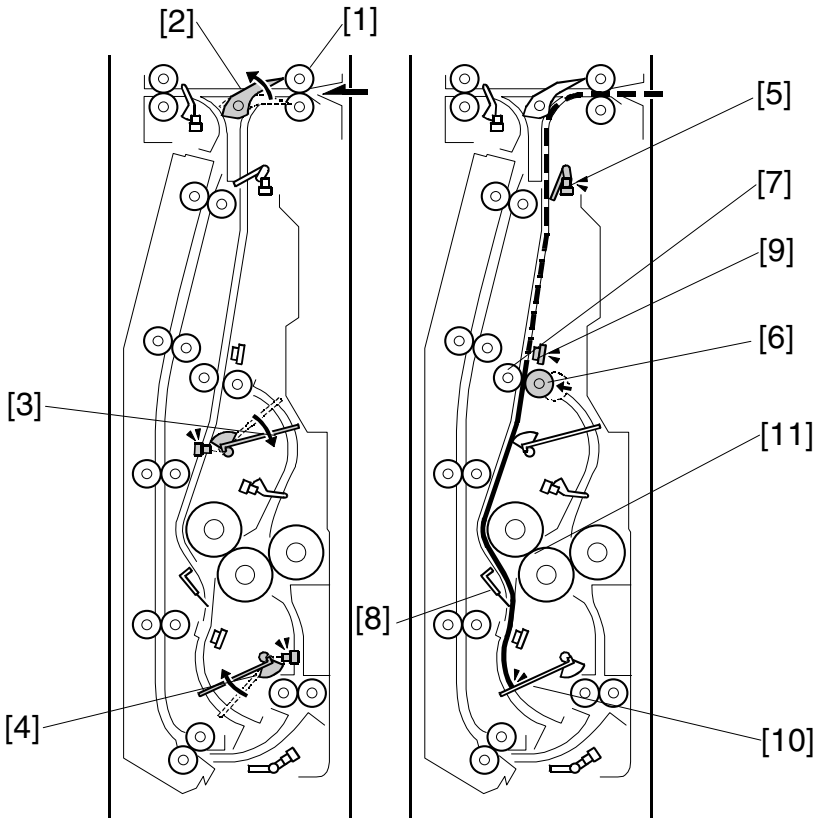

The feed rollers [1] feed the paper from the main machine into the Z-folding unit.

If Z-folding was not used for the job, the sheet feeds above the closed junction gate [2].

The upper exit sensor [3] detects the leading and trailing edge of the unfolded sheet.

The upper exit rollers [4] feed the unfolded sheet out of the Z-folding unit and into the finisher.

## 3.2.2 PAPER PATH WITH Z-FOLDING




The feed rollers [1] feed the paper from the main machine into the Z-folding unit.

The junction gate solenoid energizes and opens the junction gate [2]. The junction gate sends the sheet down into the Z-folding paper path.

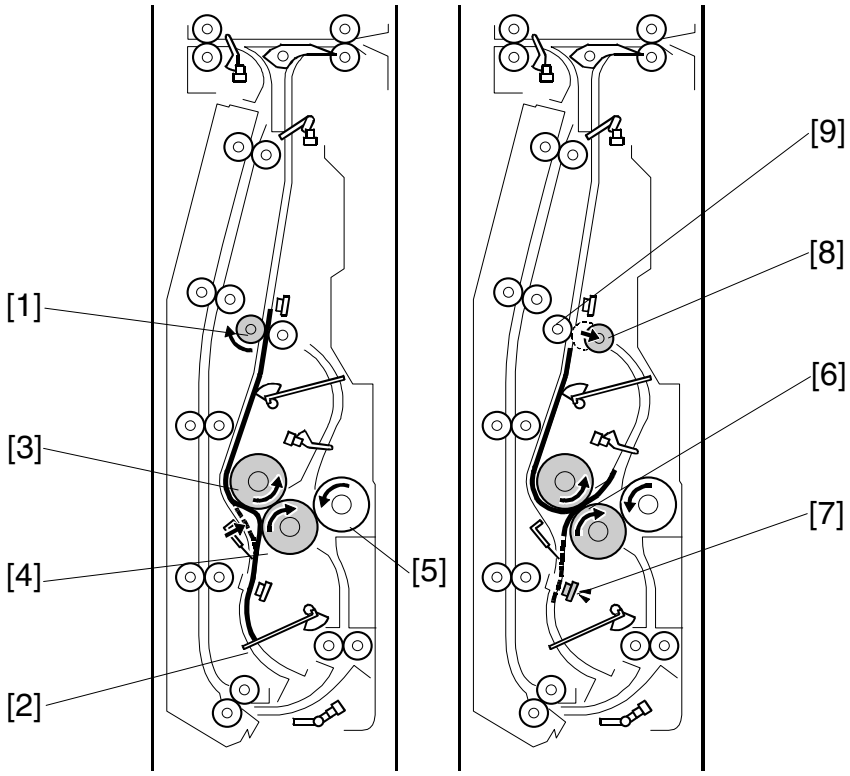
The upper and lower stopper motors move the upper stopper [3] and lower stopper [4] to the positions for the paper size that was used for the job.

The feed sensor [5] detects the leading edge and trailing edge of the sheet. The pinch idle roller solenoid (upper) pulls the pinch idle roller [6] away from the pinch feed roller [7] and the paper can fall between the pinch rollers.

The anti-static brush [8] removes static electricity from the sheet.

When the fold timing sensor [9] detects the trailing edge of the sheet, it energizes the pinch idle roller solenoid (lower). This pushes the pinch idle roller [6] against the opposite pinch feed roller [7].

The lower stopper [10] stops the sheet and buckles it slightly toward the nip [11] of the 1st and 2nd fold rollers.






The pinch feed roller [1] turns and feeds the sheet down against the lower stopper [2]

At the correct time, the fold roller motor switches on and turns the:

- 1st fold roller [3]
- 2nd fold roller [4]
- 3rd fold roller [5]

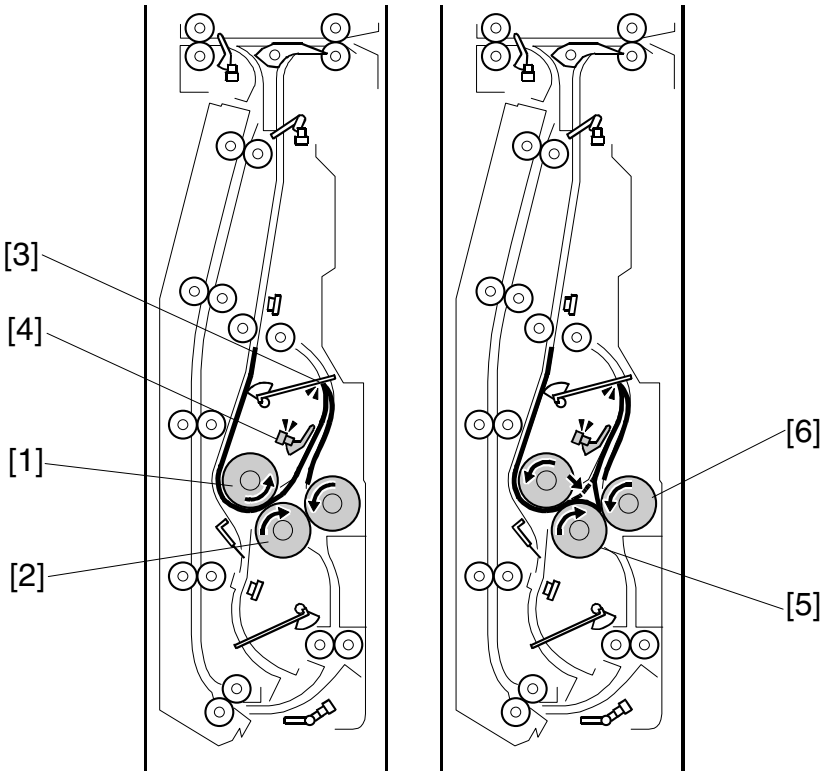
The sheet continues to buckle until it feeds into the nip [6] of the 1st and 2nd fold rollers. These two rollers fold the sheet.

The leading edge sensor [7] detects the leading edge of the sheet:

- When the leading edge goes by while the paper feeds down (to the lower stopper).
- When the leading edge goes by again while the paper feeds up into the nip of the 1st and 2nd fold rollers.

If the leading edge sensor does not detect the leading edge at the correct time, this sensor signals a jam.

At the correct time, the pinch idle roller [8] is pulled away from the pinch feed roller [9] by the pinch idle roller solenoid (upper).



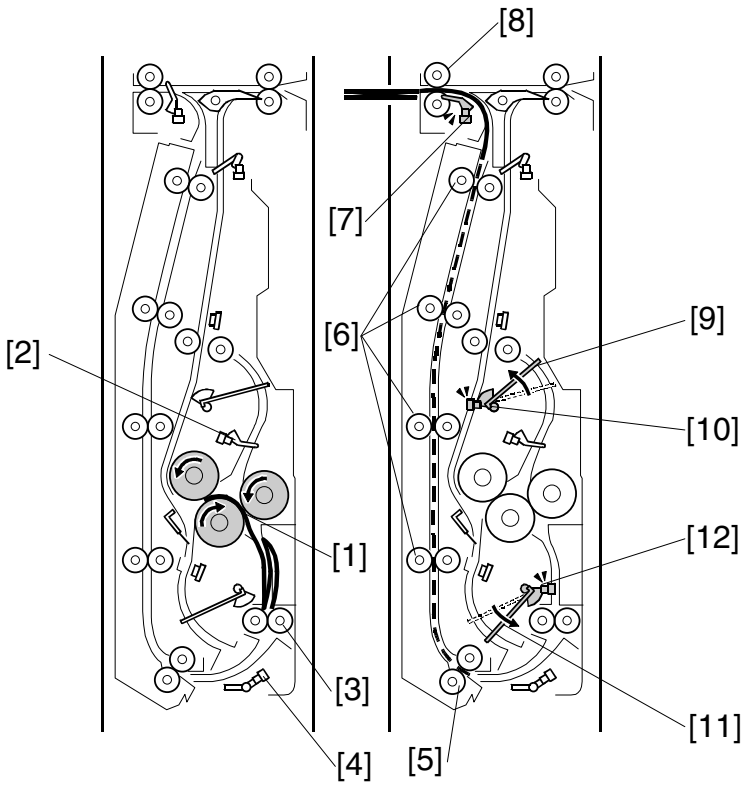

The 1st fold roller [1] and 2nd fold roller [2] continue to turn. This feeds the edge of the 1st fold up until it hits the upper stopper [3].

The sheet lifts the feeler of the upper stopper path sensor [4]. This sensor:

- Detects when the sheet comes to the upper stopper path.
- Detects when the sheet goes out of the upper stopper path.

The upper stopper sensor detects a jam if it does not detect that the sheet comes and goes at the correct times.

When the sheet feeds between the 1st and 2nd fold rollers, this pushes the first fold against the upper stopper. The sheet buckles down into the gap between the 2nd fold roller [5] and 3rd fold roller [6]. The second fold is made when the sheet feeds between the 2nd and 3rd feed rollers.






The 2nd and 3rd fold rollers [1] continue to turn and feed the sheet down.

The feeler of the upper stopper path sensor [2] falls and the sensor detects that the sheet is gone. The fold rollers feed the folded sheet to the lower exit rollers [3].

The lower exit sensor [4] detects the leading edge and trailing edge of the sheet. If the trailing edge is not detected during the correct time interval, the sensor detects a jam.

The grip rollers [5] feed the folded sheet to the four pairs of vertical feed rollers [6].

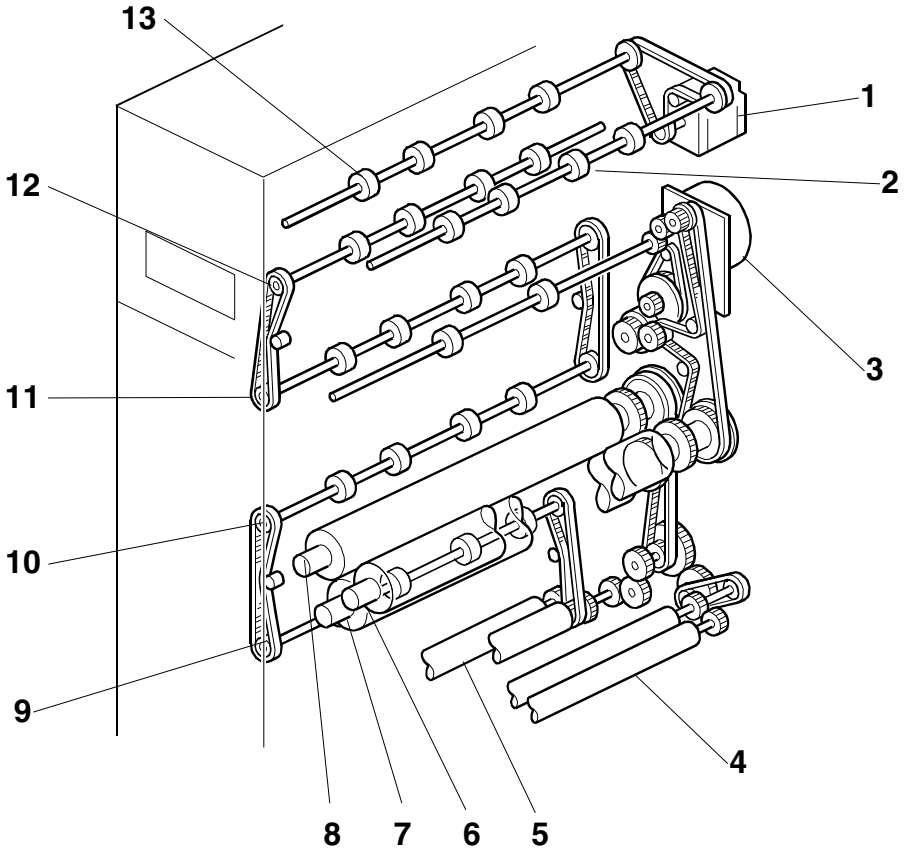
The upper exit sensor [7] detects the leading edge and trailing edge of each folded sheet. If the leading and trailing edge are not detected during the correct time interval, this sensor detects a jam.

The upper exit rollers [8] feed the folded sheet into the finisher.

At the correct time:

- The upper stopper motor lifts the upper stopper [9] until the upper stopper sensor [10] detects that the upper stopper is at its home position. This stops the motor.
- The lower stopper motor lowers the lower stopper [11] until the lower stopper sensor [12] detects that the lower stopper is at its home position. This stops the motor.

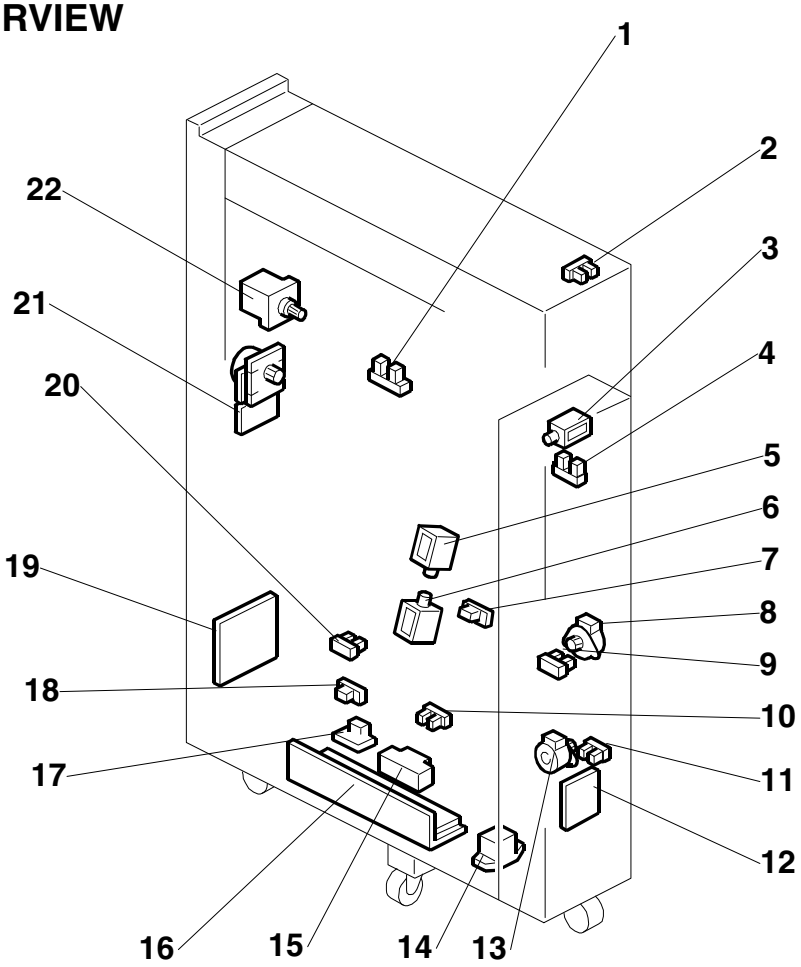
## 3.3 DRIVE LAYOUT




1. Feed Motor
2. Feed Rollers
3. Fold Roller Motor
4. Lower Exit Rollers
5. Grip Rollers
6. 3rd Fold Roller
7. 2nd Fold Roller
8. 1st Fold Roller
9. Vertical Feed Rollers – 1
10. Vertical Feed Rollers – 2
11. Vertical Feed Rollers – 3
12. Vertical Feed Rollers – 4
13. Upper Exit Rollers

# 3.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

## 3.4.1 OVERVIEW




1. Upper Exit Sensor
2. Front Door Sensor
3. Junction Gate Solenoid
4. Feed Sensor
5. Pinch Idle Roller Solenoid – Upper
6. Pinch Idle Roller Solenoid – Lower
7. Fold Timing Sensor
8. Upper Stopper Motor
9. Upper Stopper HP Sensor
10. Lower Exit Sensor
11. Lower Stopper HP Sensor
12. DC Relay Board
13. Lower Stopper Motor
14. Relay
15. Breaker
16. Power Supply Unit
17. Surge Protector Board
18. Leading Edge Sensor
19. Main Control Board
20. Upper Stopper Path Sensor
21. Fold Roller Motor
22. Feed Motor

## 3.4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SUMMARY

| Motors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| M1 | Feed Motor | Drives the feed rollers and exit rollers of the Z-folding unit. |
| M2 | Fold Roller Motor | Drives the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd fold rollers. |
| M3 | Lower Stopper Motor | Raises and lowers the lower stopper. It 1) Raises the upper stopper to the proper position for the size of the paper selected for the job, and 2) Lowers the lower stopper until the lower stopper sensor detects that the lower stopper is at its home position where it remains until the start of the next job. |
| M4 | Upper Stopper Motor | Lowers and raises the upper stopper. It 1) Lowers the upper stopper to the proper position for the size of the paper selected for the job, and 2) Raises the upper stopper until the upper stopper sensor detects that the upper stopper is at its home position where it remains until the start of the next job. |

| PCBs | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| PCB1 | Main Control Board | Controls the operation of the Z-folding unit. |
| PCB2 | PSU | Supplies the dc power for the Z-folding unit. |
| PCB3 | Surge Protector Board | AC input and breaker relay board. |
| PCB4 | DC Relay Board | PSU DC output and DC motors and sensor relay board. |

| Sensors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| S1 | Feed Sensor | Detects the leading edge and trailing edge of the sheet at the top of the paper path before Z-Folding. When the feed sensor detects the leading edge, it energizes the pinch idle roller solenoid. The solenoid pulls the pinch idle roller away from the pinch feed roller so the paper can fall below these opposing rollers. |
| S2 | Fold Timing Sensor | (1) Detects the leading edge of the sheet and energizes the pinch idle roller solenoid (upper) to pull the pinch idle roller away from the pinch feed roller so the sheet falls through the gap between these rollers. (2) Detects the trailing edge of the sheet and energizes the pinch idle roller solenoid (lower) to push the pinch idle roller against the pinch feed roller. |
| S3 | Front Door Sensor | Detects when the top cover of the Z-folding unit is closed and signals an alert that the cover is open. The unit cannot be used until this cover is closed. |
| S4 | Leading Edge Sensor | Mounted above the lower stopper. The leading edge sensor 1) detects the leading edge of the sheet when drops onto the lower stopper, 2) detects the leading edge again when the paper is pulled up into the nip of the 1st and 2nd fold rollers. If the leading edge sensor does not detect the edge at the prescribed times, it will signal an error. |
| S5 | Lower Exit Sensor | Mounted below the lower exit rollers. Detects the leading/trailing edges of the folded sheet as it passes below. If these edges do not pass at the times prescribed for the selected paper size, the sensor will signal a jam alert. |
| S6 | Lower Stopper HP Sensor | Detects the lower stopper when it reaches its home position and turns off the lower stopper motor. |
| S7 | Upper Exit Sensor | 1) Detects the leading/trailing edges of each sheet unfolded sheet after it passes over the closed junction gate, 2) Detects the leading/trailing edge of each folded sheet as it leaves the vertical feed path below. If the edges do not go by for the time prescribed for the paper size, the sensor will send a jam alert. |
| S8 | Upper Stopper HP | Detects the upper stopper when it reaches its home position and |

| Sensors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| | Sensor | turns off the upper stopper motor. |
| S9 | Upper Stopper Path Sensor | Mounted below the upper stopper. 1) When the feeler of the upper stopper path sensor detects the paper when the crease of the first fold stops at the upper stopper, it delays long enough so the 1st/2nd feed rollers can continue to rotate and buckle the trailing edge of the paper below at the nip of the 2nd/3rd feed rollers, then the sensor switches off the 1st/2nd feed rollers and switches on the 2nd/3rd feed roller pair. The 2nd/3rd feed rollers pull the buckle into the nip and create the 2nd crease. 2) Detects the paper when it leaves the upper stopper path and signals an error if the paper does not leave at the prescribed time. |

| Solenoids | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| SOL1 | Junction Gate Solenoid | Opens and closes the junction gate solenoid. When not energized, the junction gate remains closed and paper passes over the back of the closed junction gate and through the Z-folding unit. When energized it opens the junction gate which guides paper down and into the paper path of the Z-folding unit. |
| SOL2 | Pinch Idle Roller Solenoid (Lower) | Attached to the pinch idle roller, this solenoid pushes the pinch idle roller and closes the gap between the pinch idle/pinch feed rollers when the fold timing sensor at the above the pinch idle roller detects the trailing edge of the sheet so the rollers can pinch and stop the paper in the paper path. |
| SOL3 | Pinch Idle Roller Solenoid (Upper) | Attached to the pinch idle roller, this solenoid pulls the pinch idle roller away from the pinch feed roller when the feed sensor at the top of the Z-fold paper path detects the leading edge of the sheet so the paper can drop between these opposing rollers. |

| Switches | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| SW1 | Breaker | Opens and breaks the power circuit if the Z-folding unit overheats. |

| Relays | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| RA1 | Relay | Switch relay |

# B704

# COVER INTERPOSER TRAY

| B704 COVER INTERPOSER TYPE 3260 REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| | | None |

# COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B704

## TABLE OF CONTENTS


**1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT.....1**

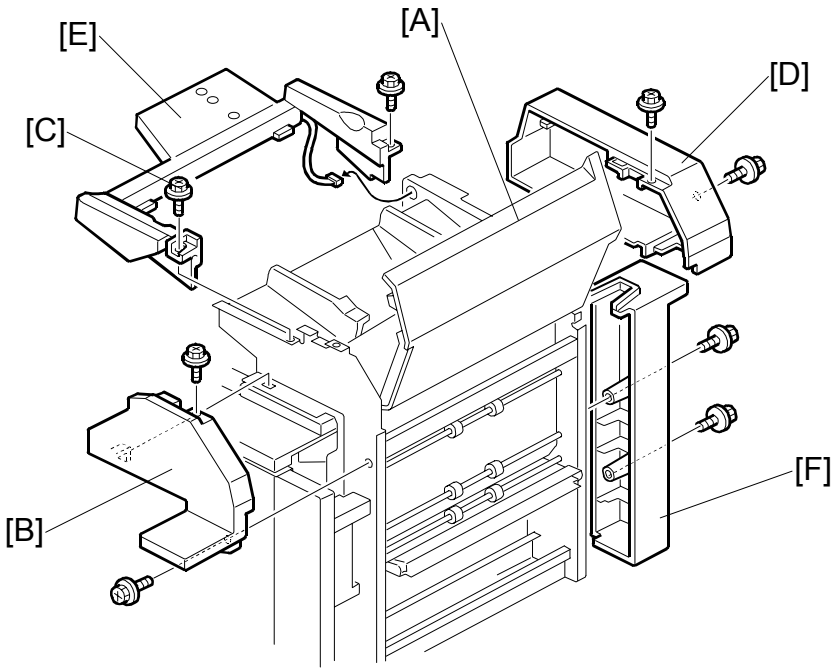
1.1 EXTERNAL COVERS .....1
1.2 FEED UNIT AND PICK-UP ROLLER .....2
1.3 FEED BELT .....3
1.4 GUIDE PLATE ADJUSTMENT .....4
1.5 MAIN BOARD .....5
1.6 MOTOR REPLACEMENT .....6
1.6.1 VERTICAL TRANSPORT MOTOR .....6
1.6.2 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT MOTOR .....6
1.6.3 FEED MOTOR, TRANSPORT MOTOR .....7

**2. DETAILS .....8**

2.1 OVERVIEW .....8
2.1.1 MAIN LAYOUT .....8
2.1.2 DRIVE LAYOUT .....9
2.1.3 PAPER SIZE DETECTION .....10
2.1.4 PAPER PATH .....13
2.2 PAPER FEED .....14
Power On .....14
Paper Separation and Feed .....14
Bottom Tray Lift .....14
Paper Near-end .....14
Paper End .....14

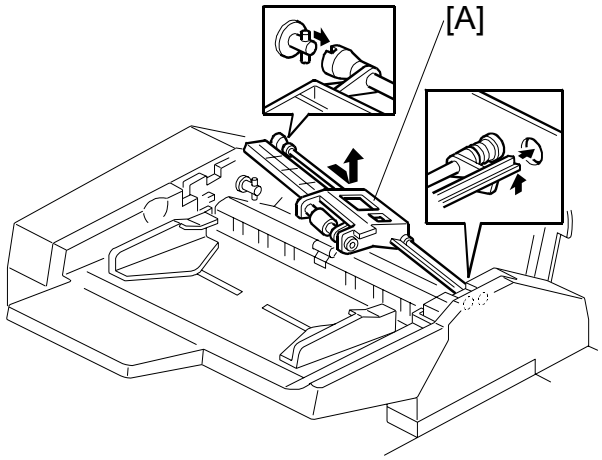
# 1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

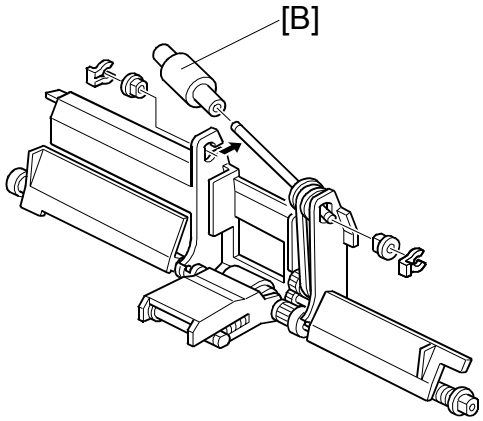
## 1.1 EXTERNAL COVERS




[A]: Open the feed cover.
[B]: Upper front cover (x 2)
**NOTE:** To remove the upper front cover, screw [C] must be removed.
[D]: Rear upper cover (x 2)
[E]: Slip sheet tray (x 2, x 1)
[F]: Rear middle cover (x 2)

# 1.2 FEED UNIT AND PICK-UP ROLLER



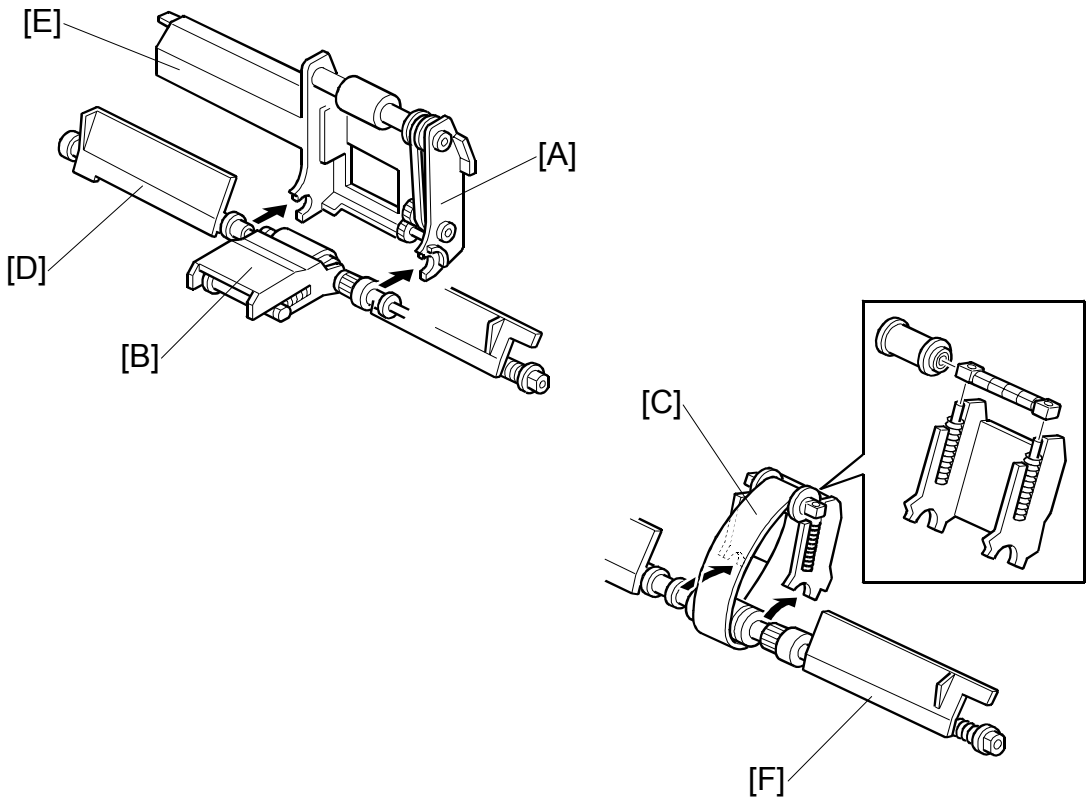

Open the feed cover.

[A]: Feed unit

- The unit is spring loaded. Push it to the right to release it, then lift it out.

[B]: Pick-up roller (x 2, bushings x 2)

# 1.3 FEED BELT




Feed unit (☛ 1.2)

[A]: Pick-up roller unit.
- Pull the unit away from the bushings in the direction of the arrow.

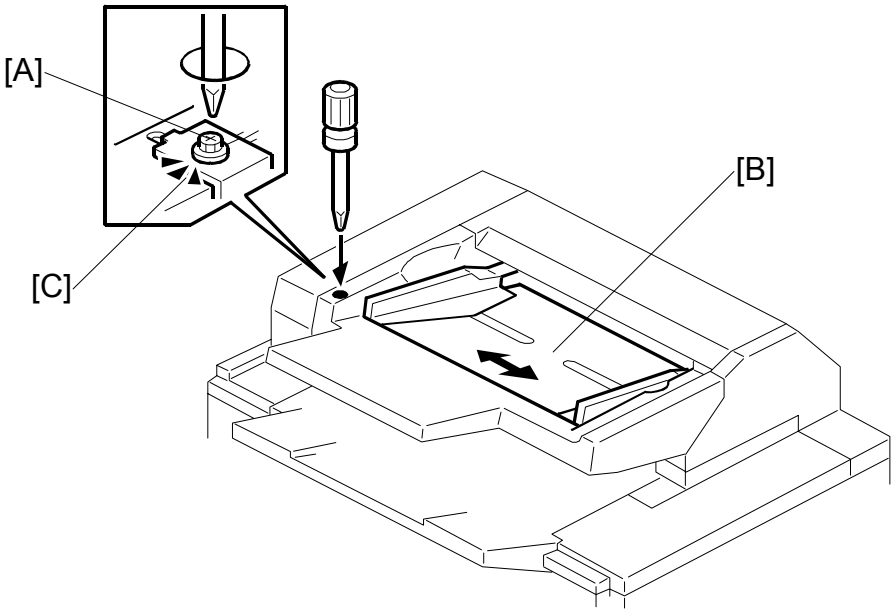
[B]: Feed belt holder
- Hold the feed belt holder by the sides, then lift up to separate from the holder.
- Pull slowly to avoid losing the springs.

[C]: Feed belt.

**Re-assembly**

1. Position the pick-up roller unit [A] and feed belt holder [B] as shown above.
2. On the rear side, slide out the bushing, and rotate [D] until its flat side is parallel with [E], then snap it on.
3. On the front side, rotate [F] until its flat side is parallel with [D], then snap it on. Viewed from the bottom, the plates must be aligned.

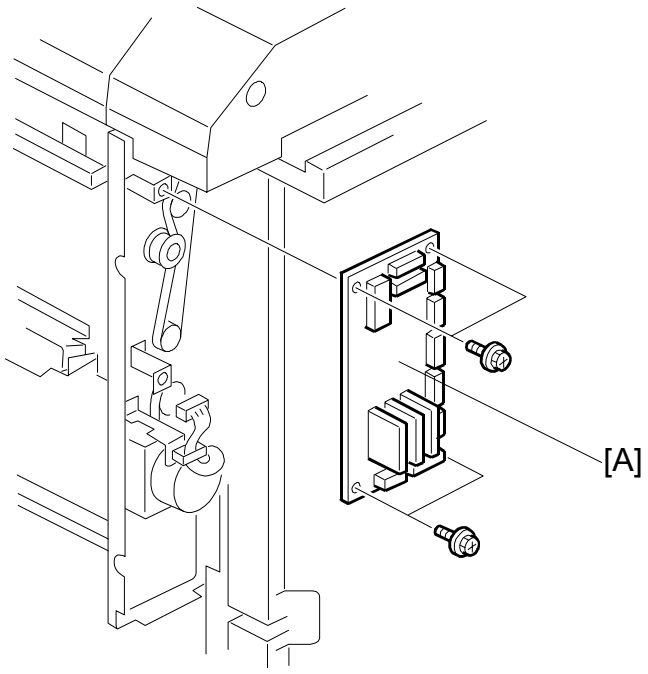
# 1.4 GUIDE PLATE ADJUSTMENT




Adjust the guide plate if the holes punched in the covers or slip sheets are not correctly aligned with holes punched in the other sheets.

1. Open the feed cover.
2. Loosen the screw [A].
3. Push the table [B] left or right to change its position, then tighten the screw.
   **NOTE:** If you want to see the scale [C], you must remove the rear cover and the support tray.

# 1.5 MAIN BOARD




Open the top cover.

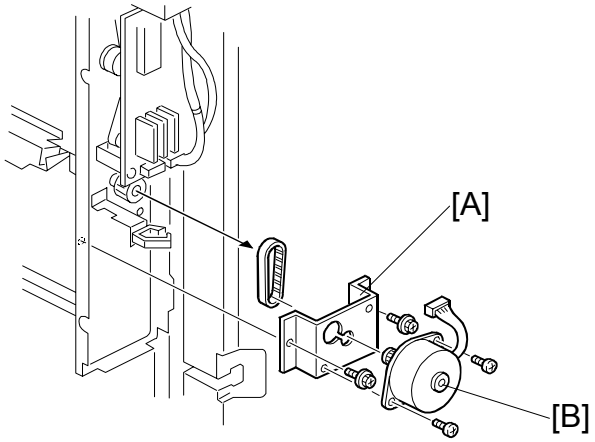
Rear cover (x 1)

[A]: Main board (x 9, x 4)

**NOTE:** All DIP switch settings on the main board of the cover sheet unit should be set to OFF.

# 1.6 MOTOR REPLACEMENT

## 1.6.1 VERTICAL TRANSPORT MOTOR



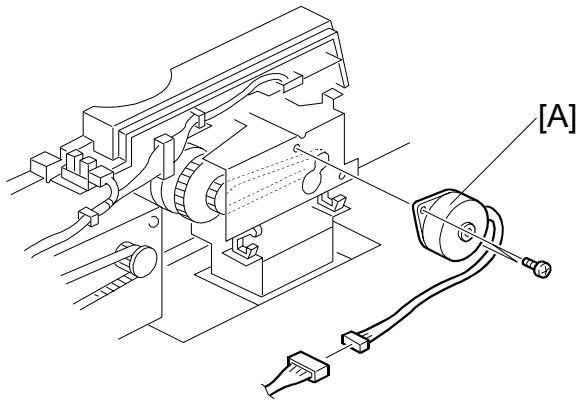

Open the top cover.

Rear middle cover (x 1) (☛ 1.1)

[A]: Motor bracket (x 1, harness x 1, x 2, timing belt x 1)

[B]: Motor (x 2)

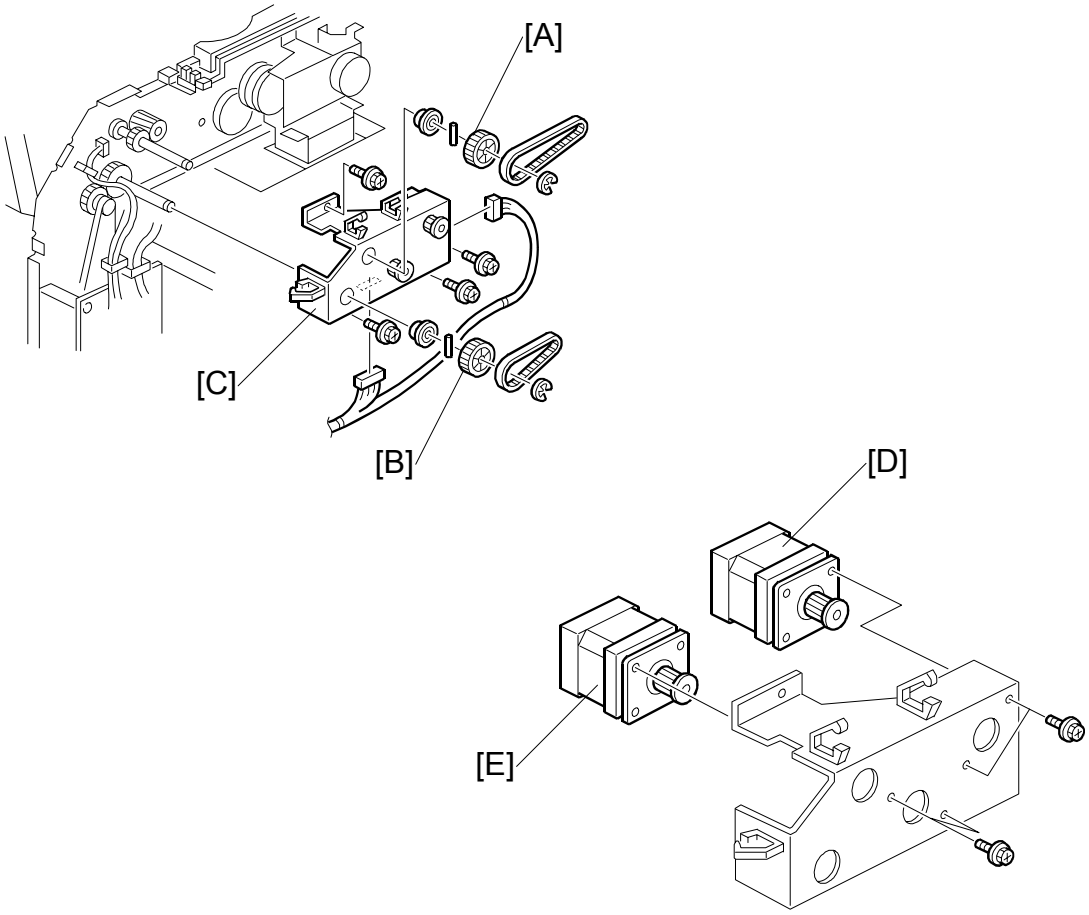
## 1.6.2 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT MOTOR




Rear upper cover (☛ 1.1)

[A]: Bottom plate lift motor (harness x 2, x 1, x 2)

## 1.6.3 FEED MOTOR, TRANSPORT MOTOR




Rear upper cover (☛ 1.1)

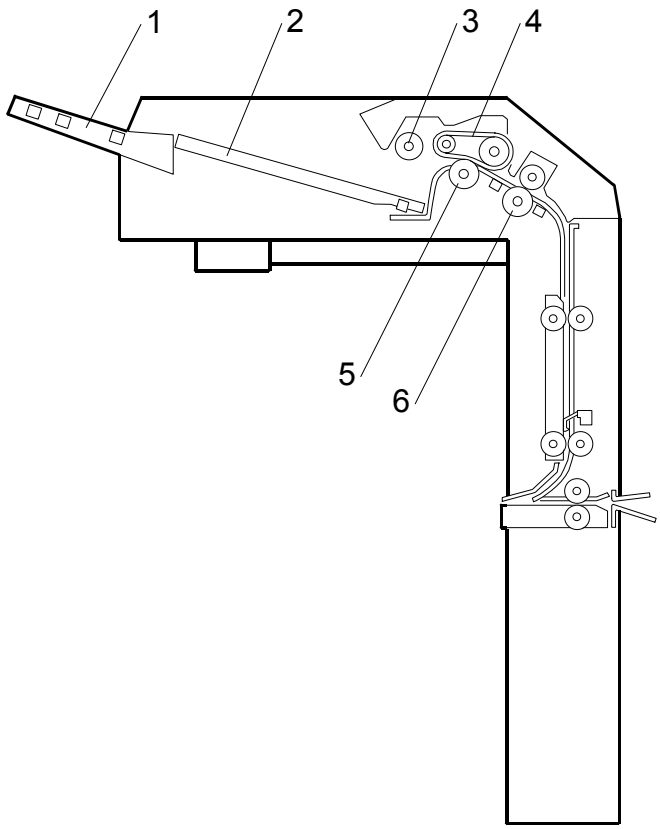
**NOTE:** When removing the feed gear and transport gear, hold one hand under the gear to catch the pin as it falls from the hole in the shaft.

[A]: Feed gear (ℂ x 1, pin x 1, timing belt x 1, bushing x 1)
[B]: Transport gear (ℂ x 1, pin x 1, timing belt x 1, bushing x 1)
[C]: Motor bracket (harness x 5, 𝒻 x 4)
[D]: Feed motor (🖳 x 1, 𝒻 x 2)
[E]: Transport motor (🖳 x 1, 𝒻 x 2)

# 2. DETAILS

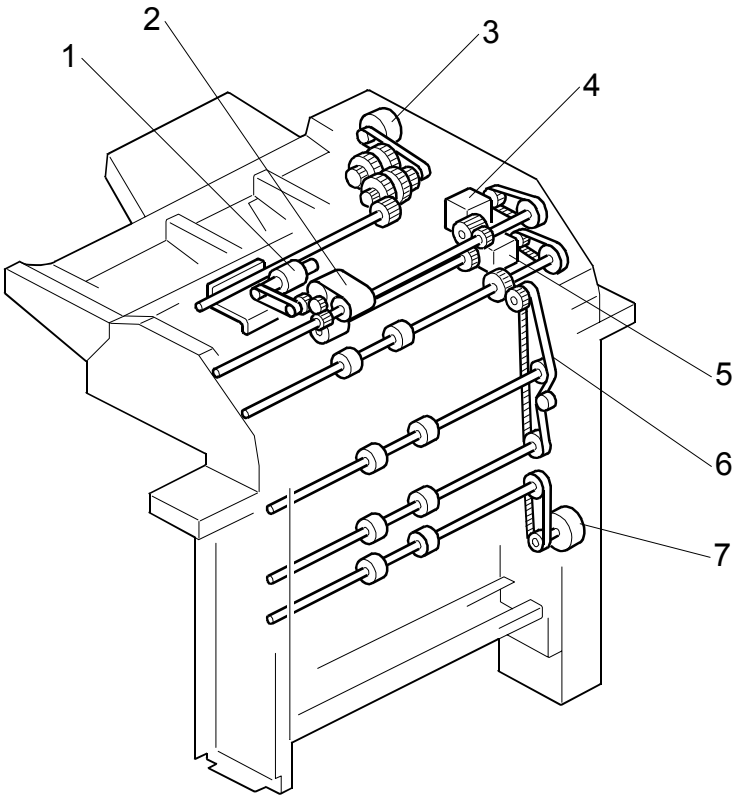
## 2.1 OVERVIEW

### 2.1.1 MAIN LAYOUT




1. Support tray
2. Slip sheet tray
3. Pick-up roller
4. Feed belt
5. Separation roller
6. Grip roller

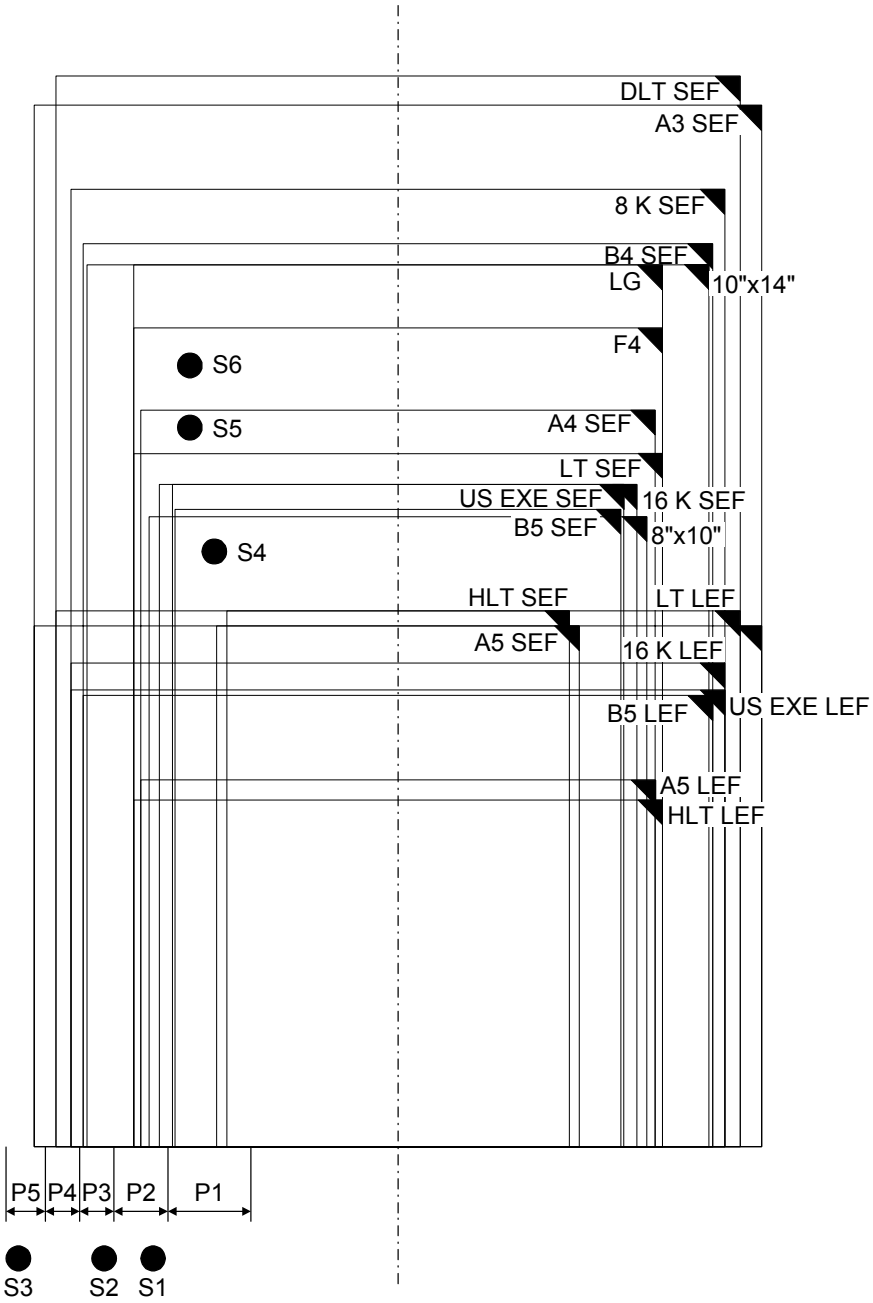
## 2.1.2 DRIVE LAYOUT




1. Pick-up Roller
2. Feed Belt
3. Bottom Plate Lift Motor
4. Feed Motor
5. Transport Motor
6. Timing Belt
7. Vertical Transport Motor

## 2.1.3 PAPER SIZE DETECTION

The width sensors [A] (S1, S2, S3) and length sensors [B] (S4, S5, S6) detect the width and length of the original on the interposer feed tray.



The table below lists the sensor output for each paper size.

| | S1 | S2 | S3 | S4 | S5 | S6 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| B4 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| A4 SEF | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| A4 LEF | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| B5 SEF | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| B5 LEF | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| A5 SEF | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| A5 LEF | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 11" x 17" | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 10" x 14" SEF | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 8 1/2" x 14" | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 8 1/2" x 13" | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 8 1/2" x 11" | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 11" x 8 1/2" | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 8" x 10" | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 5 1/2" x 8 1/2" | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 8 1/2" x 5 1/2" | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 7 1/2" x 10 1/2" (US Exec.) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 10 1/2" x 7 1/2" (US Exec.) | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 8 K | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 16 K SEF | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 16 K LEF | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

The cover interposer tray detects all the paper sizes listed above. However, there are some limitations on the display of the correct paper size.

| | | North America | Europe/Asia |
|---|---|---|---|
| B4 SEF | 257 x 364 mm | Displays 10"x14 *1 | |
| B5 SEF | 182 x 257 | Displays "US Exec." *1 | |
| A5 SEF | 148 x 210 | Displays "HLT SEF" *1 | |
| A5 LEF | 210 x 148 | Displays "HLT LEF" *1 | |
| DLT SEF | 11" x 17" | | Displays "8K LEF" *2 |
| LG SEF | 8 1/2" x 14" | | Displays "F4 SEF" *2 |
| LT SEF | 8 1/2" x 11" | | Displays "16 K SEF" *2 |
| LT LEF | 11" x 8 1/2" | | Displays "16 K LEF" *2 |

*1: Cannot be corrected.

*2: B064 series: Can be corrected with SP5959 006 (Paper Size – Cover Sheet).
B140 series: Can be corrected with SP5158

### B064 series: Paper Size Detection

### North America

Execute SP5959 006 and enter the correct number for the size of the paper loaded for feeding from the cover interposer tray.

| Loaded | Display (Default) | To Select for Display | Enter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8 1/2" x 13" | 8 1/2" x 14" | 8 1/2" x 13" | 165 |
| 10 1/2" x 7 1/2" | 8 1/2" x 11" | 10 1/2" x 7 1/2" | 173 |
| 8" x 10" | 8 1/2" x 11" | 8" x 10" | 171 |

### Europe/Asia

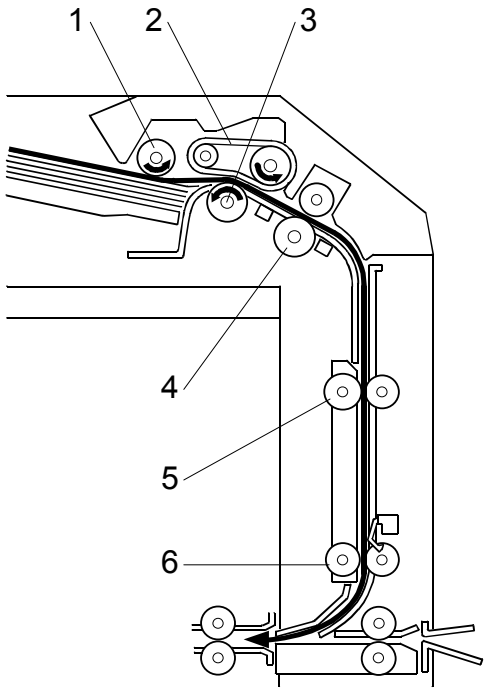
Execute SP5959 006 and enter the correct number for the size of the paper loaded for feeding from the cover interposer tray.

| Loaded | Display (Default) | To Select for Display | Enter |
|---|---|---|---|
| 11" x 17" | 8 K | 11" x 17" | 160 |
| 8 1/2" x 11" | 16 K SEF | 8 1/2" x 11" | 166 |
| 11" x 8 1/2" | 16 K LEF | 11" x 8 1/2" | 38 |
| 8 1/4" x 13" | 8 1/2" x 13" SEF | 8 1/4" x 13" | 168 |

### B070/B071, B140 series: Paper Size Detection

Some paper sizes are almost the same and cannot be detected as different sizes by the sensors. To select the sizes that are detected, use SP 5158.

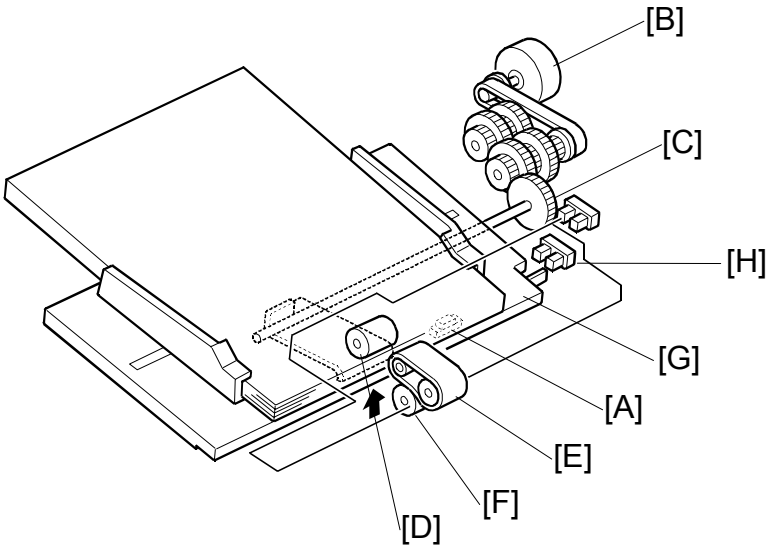
## 2.1.4 PAPER PATH




1. Pick-up Roller
2. Feed Belt
3. Separation Roller
4. Grip Roller
5. Transport Roller 1
6. Transport Roller 2

The paper feeds from the tray, to the feed belt, then to the grip roller and down into the paper path to the finisher below.

# 2.2 PAPER FEED




### *Power On*

When paper is placed on the tray, the paper set sensor [A] in the tray actuates and switches on the bottom plate lift motor [B]. The top of the stack raises the pick-up roller unit until the actuator on this unit actuates the pick-up roller position sensor [C] and switches the motor off.

### *Paper Separation and Feed*

The pick-up roller [D] picks up the original, and the feed belt [E] feeds the sheet to the grip roller. The separation roller [F] reverses if more than one sheet is fed

### *Bottom Tray Lift*

As sheets feed from the top of the stack:

- The pick-up roller unit descends until the actuator on the pick-up roller unit drops out of the pick-up roller position sensor [C].
- The bottom plate lift motor switches on to raise the stack until the actuator enters the pick-up roller unit position sensor again and switches the motor off.
- This repeats until the end of the job or until paper runs out.

### *Paper Near-end*

Near-end is detected when the actuator [G] on the bottom plate enters the near-end sensor [H].

### *Paper End*

After the last sheet feeds the paper set sensor [A] goes off and signals paper out.

# B475

# A3/DLT TRAY KIT

| B475 A3/DLT TRAY KIT REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| | | None |

# A3/DLT TRAY KIT B475

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

**1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT.....1**
1.1 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT WIRE REPLACEMENT .....1
1.1.1 REMOVING THE LIFT WIRE .....1
1.1.2 INSTALLING THE LIFT WIRE.....2

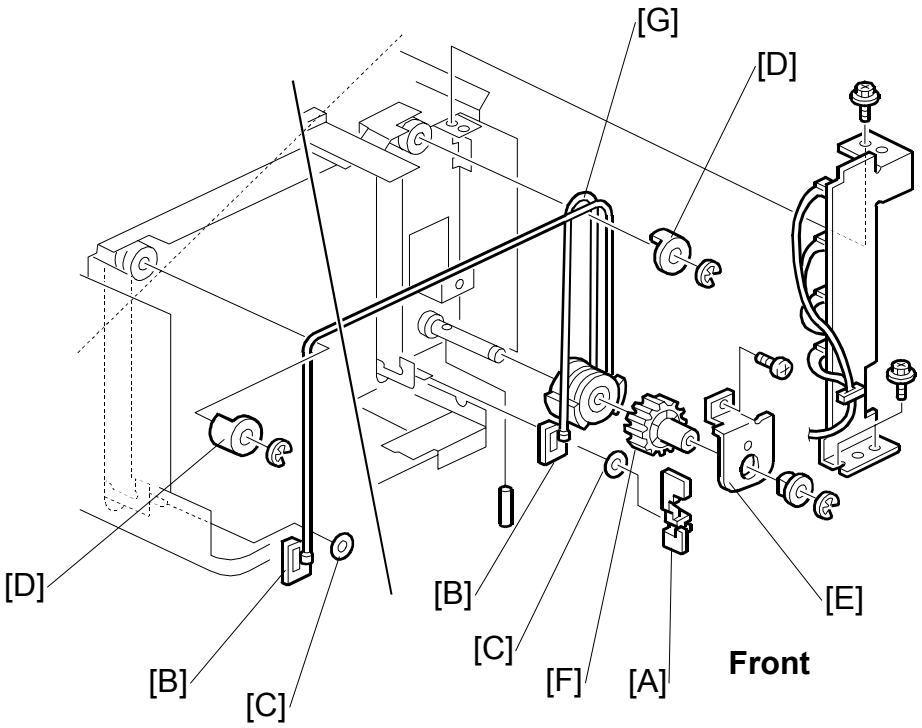
**2. DETAILS .....3**

# 1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

## 1.1 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT WIRE REPLACEMENT

### 1.1.1 REMOVING THE LIFT WIRE

**NOTE:** The procedures for front and rear wire removal are the same.

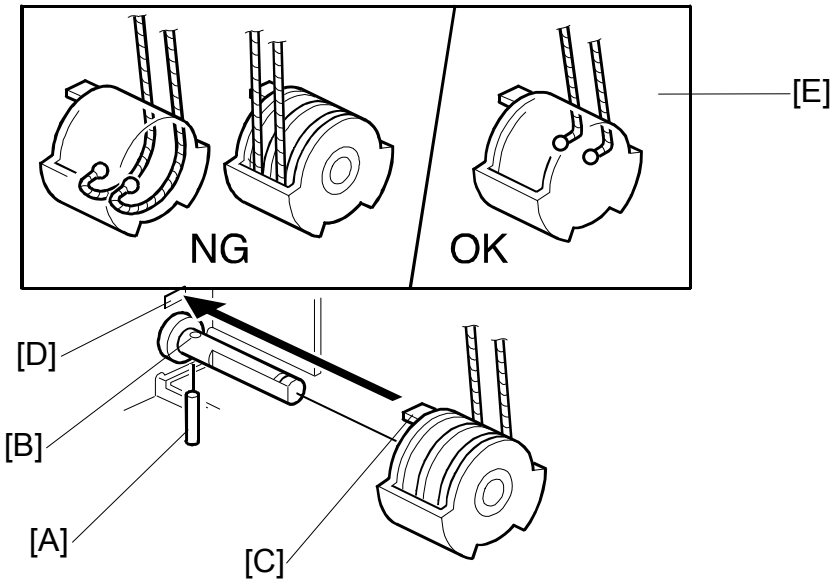



Remove the A3/DLT tray from the machine.

Inner cover (🖉 x 2)

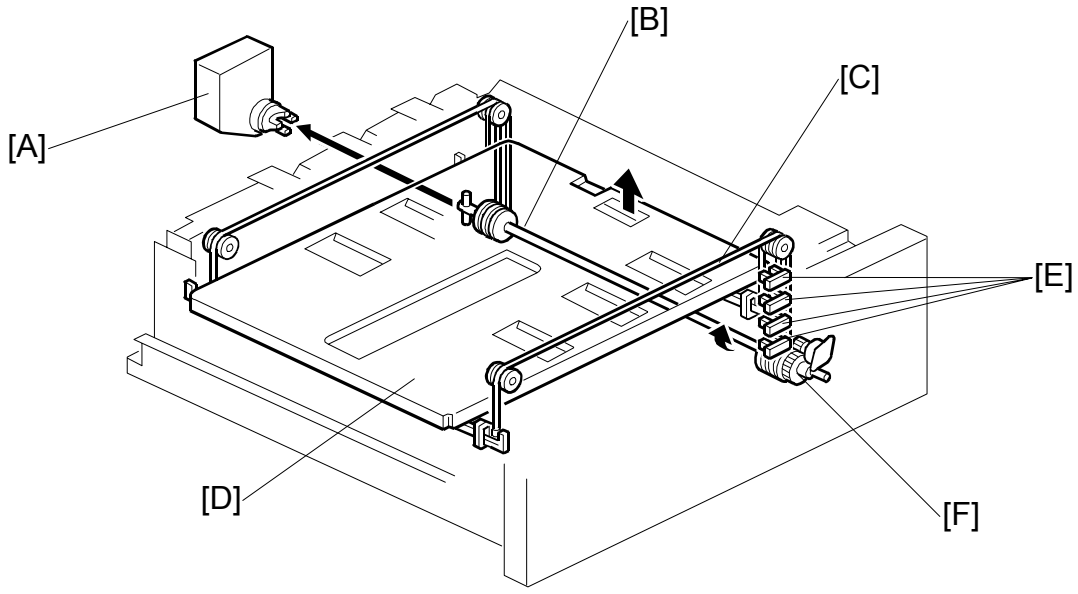
[A]: Sensor bracket (🖉 x 1)
[B]: Wire stoppers
[C]: Wire stopper rings
[D]: Wire covers x 2 (ℂ x 1 each)
[E]: Bracket (🖉 x 1, ℂ x 1, Bushing x 1)
[F]: Gear
[G]: Bottom plate lift wire

## 1.1.2 INSTALLING THE LIFT WIRE




1. Put the positioning pin [A] in hole [B]
2. Fit the projection [C] into slot [D].
3. Attach the wire as shown [E].
   **NOTE:** Make sure that the wires are not crossed.

# 2. DETAILS




With this option installed, only one stack of paper can be loaded.

Lift motor [A] → Shaft and pulleys [B] → Tray wires [C] → Tray bottom plate [D].

An array of four paper height sensors [E] provide paper supply detection. As each sensor is actuated, a message (percent of paper remaining) alerts the user about the remaining amount of paper. When the bottom sensor [F] of the four sensors is actuated, the paper end message is displayed.

# COVER INTERPOSER TRAY CI5000
# B835

| B835 COVER INTERPOSER TRAY CL5000 REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| | | None |

# COVER INTERPOSER TRAY B835

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

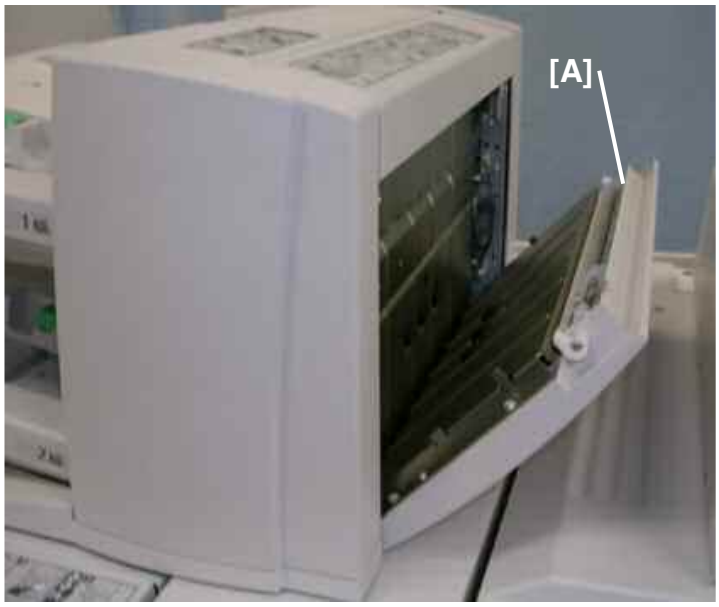

**1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT ..... 1**
- 1.1 COVERS ..... 1
- 1.2 1ST, 2ND TRAYS ..... 4
- 1.3 FEED UNITS ..... 5
- 1.4 BOARDS ..... 6
  - 1.4.1 TRAY UNIT CONTROL BOARD ..... 6
  - 1.4.2 MAIN CONTROL BOARD ..... 7
- 1.5 MOTORS ..... 8
  - 1.5.1 VERTICAL TRANSPORT MOTOR ..... 8
  - 1.5.2 HORIZONTAL TRANSPORT MOTOR ..... 9
  - 1.5.3 1ST, 2ND LIFT MOTORS ..... 10
  - 1.5.4 1ST, 2ND FEED MOTORS ..... 11
  - 1.5.5 1ST, 2ND TRANSPORT MOTORS ..... 12
  - 1.5.6 1ST, 2ND PICK-UP MOTORS ..... 13
- 1.6 SENSORS ..... 14
  - 1.6.1 PAPER WIDTH SWITCH, SET SENSORS, LENGTH SENSOR ..... 14
  - 1.6.2 TRAY COVER SENSORS ..... 16
  - 1.6.3 1ST TRANSPORT SENSOR ..... 17
  - 1.6.4 FEED UNIT SENSORS ..... 18
  - 1.6.5 2ND VERTICAL TRANSPORT, EXIT SENSORS ..... 19
  - 1.6.6 ENTRANCE SENSOR ..... 20
- 1.7 ROLLERS ..... 21
  - 1.7.1 SEPARATION ROLLER ..... 21
  - 1.7.2 FEED BELT UNIT AND PICK-UP ROLLER ..... 22
  - 1.7.3 FEED BELT ..... 23

**2. DETAILS ..... 24**
- 2.1 PAPER PATH ..... 24
- 2.2 PAPER FEED ..... 25
  - 2.2.1 FEED MECHANISM ..... 25
  - 2.2.2 PAPER NEAR END/PAPER END ..... 26
  - 2.2.3 PAPER SIZE DETECTION ..... 27

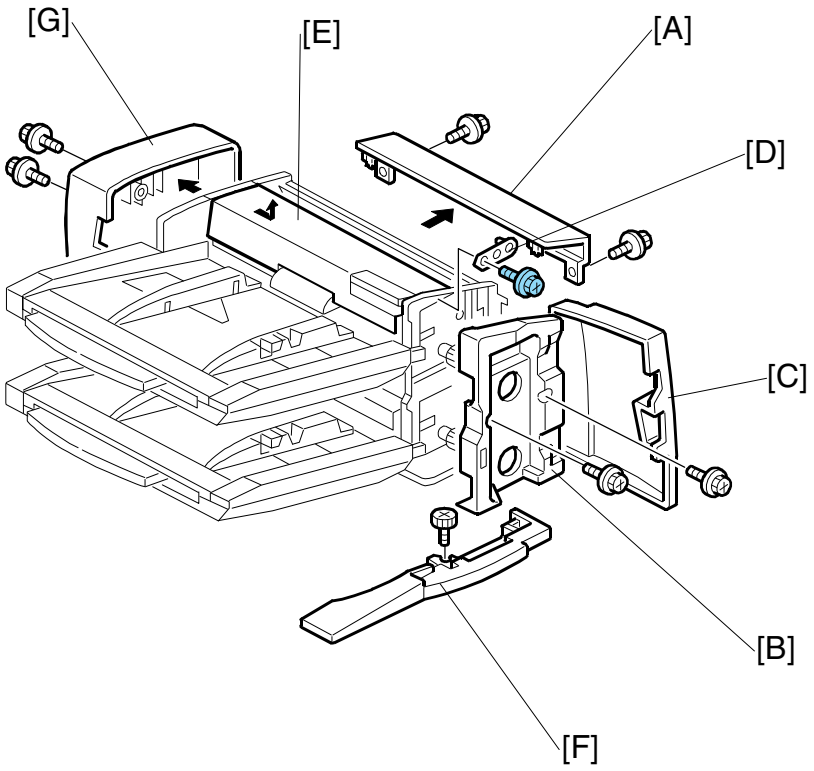
**3. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION ..... 29**
- 3.1 MAIN LAYOUT ..... 29
- 3.2 DRIVE LAYOUT ..... 30
- 3.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ..... 31
  - 3.3.1 FEED MOTORS, PCB ..... 31
  - 3.3.2 LIFT MOTORS, TRAY SENSORS ..... 32
  - 3.3.3 PAPER PATH SENSORS 1 ..... 33
  - 3.3.4 PAPER PATH SENSORS 2, PCB ..... 34
  - 3.3.5 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SUMMARY ..... 35

# 1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

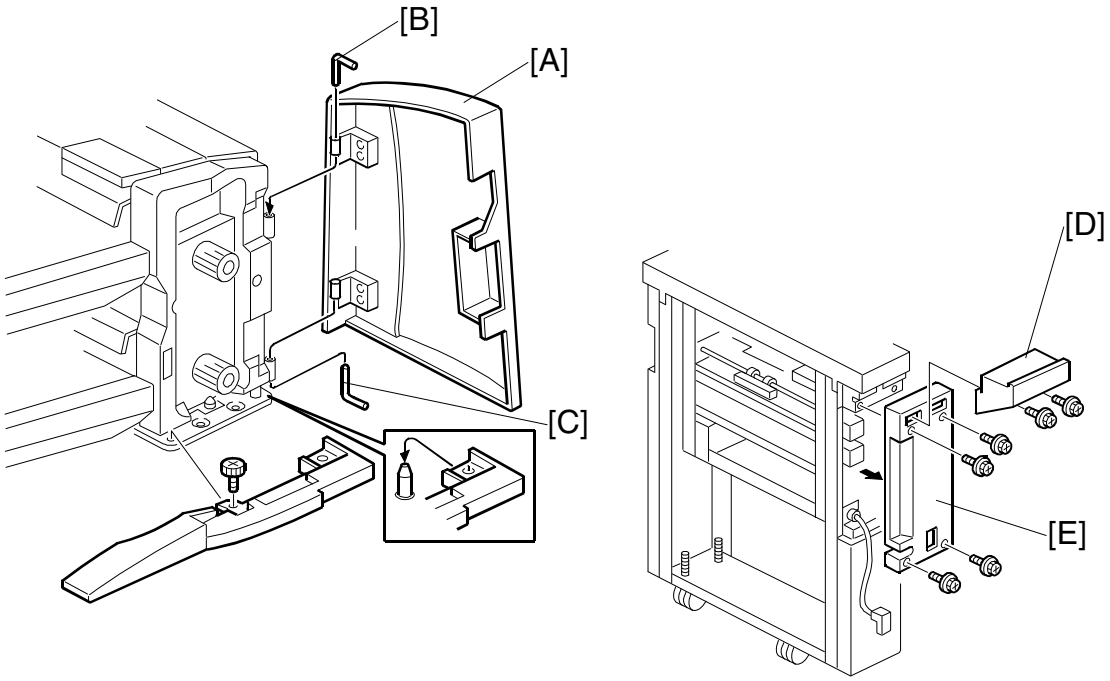
## 1.1 COVERS




1. Open the vertical feed cover [A].




2. Remove:
   [A] Top cover (☞ x2)
   [B] Inner cover with front door [C] (☞ x2)
   [D] 1st tray cover holder (☞ x1)
   [E] 1st tray cover. Slide the cover toward you to remove it from the inside pins.
   [F] Base cover (Knob ☞ x1)
   [G] Tray unit rear cover (☞ x2)




3. Remove:

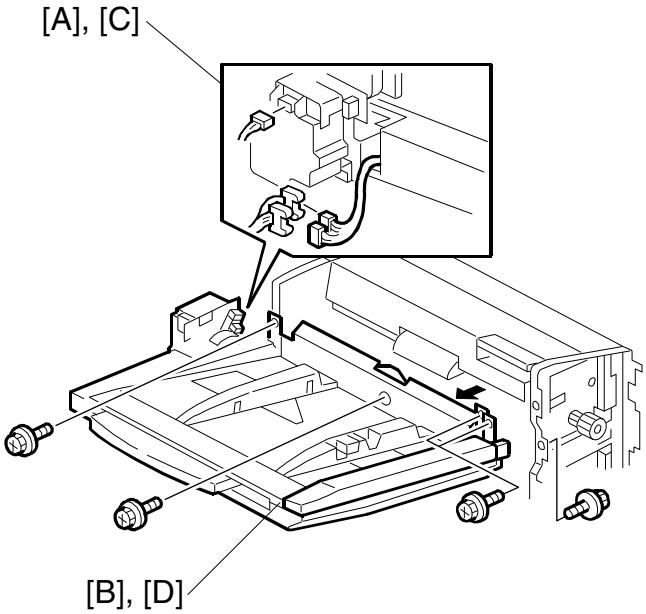
[A] Front door (L-pins x2)

- Swing the upper L-pin [B] out of its groove and pull it up.
- Swing the lower L-pin [C] out of its groove and pull it down.

[D] Rear top cover of the feed unit (🖉 x2)

[E] Feed unit rear upper cover (🖉 x4)

## 1.2 1ST, 2ND TRAYS




Remove:

- Inner cover with tray unit front door (☛1.1)
- Tray unit rear cover (☛1.1)

**1st Tray**

[A] Disconnect:

- 1st lift motor (1x, x1)
- White connectors ( x2)

[B] 1st tray ( x5)

**2nd Tray**

Remove:

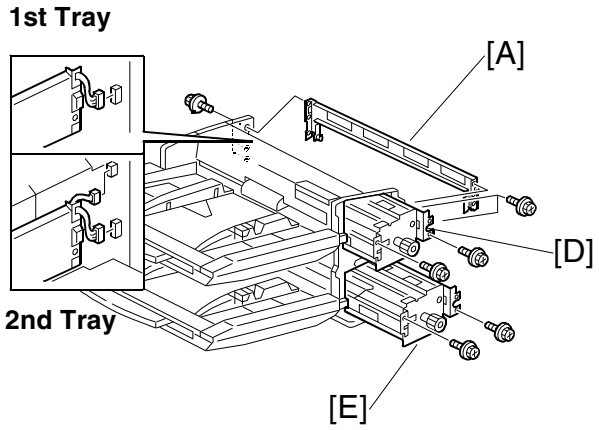
- Inner cover with tray unit front door (☛1.1)
- Tray unit rear cover (☛1.1)

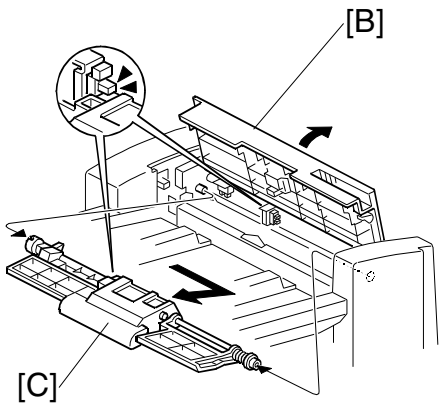
[C] Disconnect:

- 2nd lift motor (1x, x1)
- Red, blue connectors (x2)

[D] 2nd tray ( x5)

# 1.3 FEED UNITS




### 1st Feed Unit

Remove:

- Top cover (☛1.1)
- Inner cover with front door (☛1.1)
- Tray unit rear cover (☛1.1)

[A] Stay (🔩 x5)
[B] Open the 1st tray cover and hold it open
[C] 1st feed belt unit
[D] 1st feed unit (🔩 x, 🖐 x )

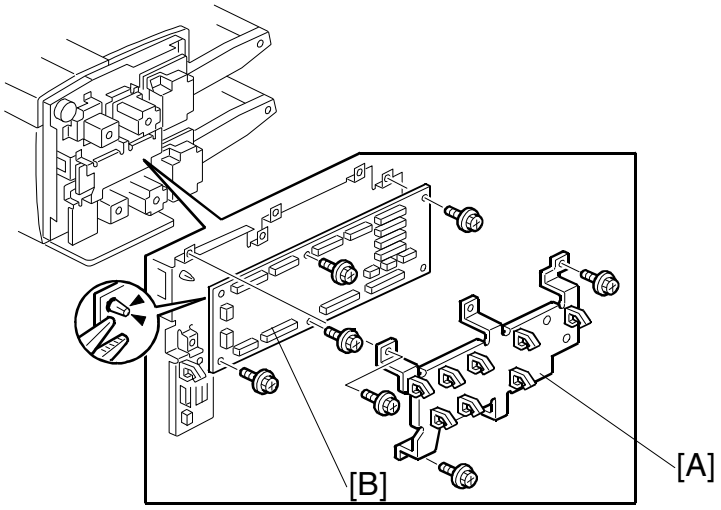
### 2nd Feed Unit

- Open the vertical feed cover (☛1.1)
- Remove inner cover with tray unit front door (☛1.1)
- 2nd feed belt unit (same as [C])

[E] 2nd feed unit (🔩 x2, 🖐 x2)

# 1.4 BOARDS

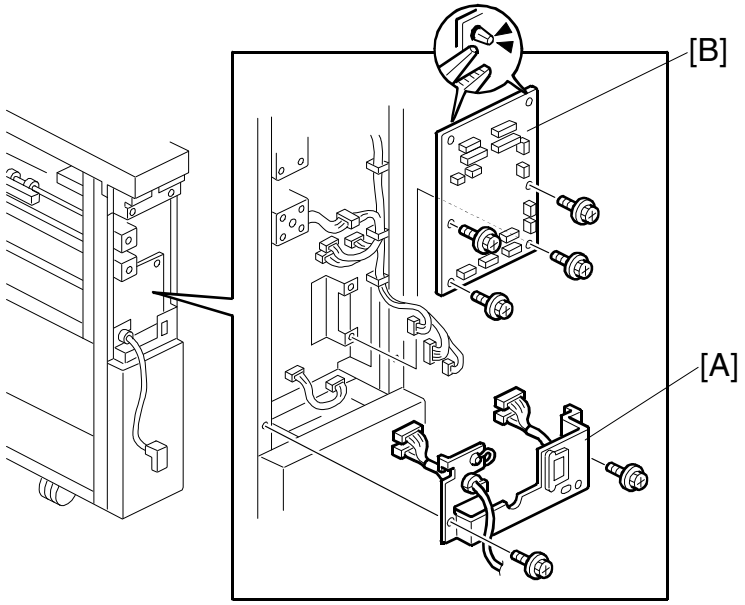
## 1.4.1 TRAY UNIT CONTROL BOARD




Remove:

- Tray unit rear cover (x2) (☛1.1)
  [A] Board cover (x3, x8)
  [B] Tray unit control board (x 17, x5, Standoff x1)

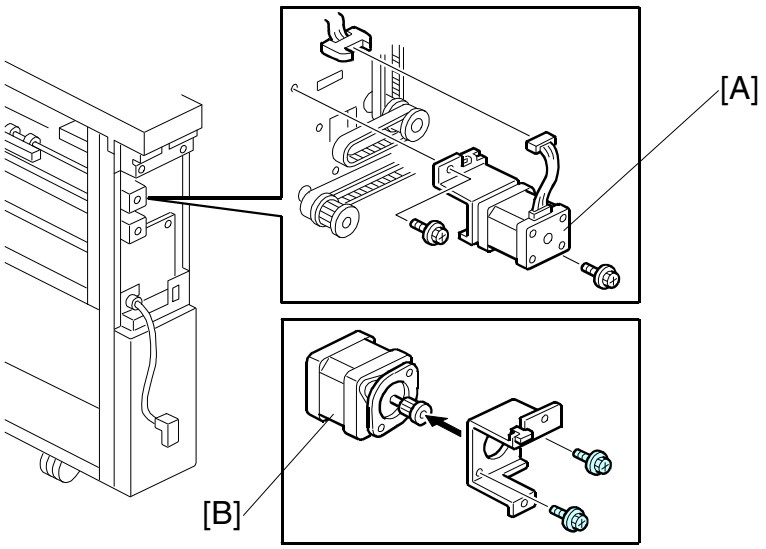
## 1.4.2 MAIN CONTROL BOARD




- Transport unit rear upper cover (☛1.1)
  [A] Connector bracket (☞ x2)
  [B] Main control board (☞ x4, ⇦x2, ☞ x14, Standoff x2)

# 1.5 MOTORS

## 1.5.1 VERTICAL TRANSPORT MOTOR

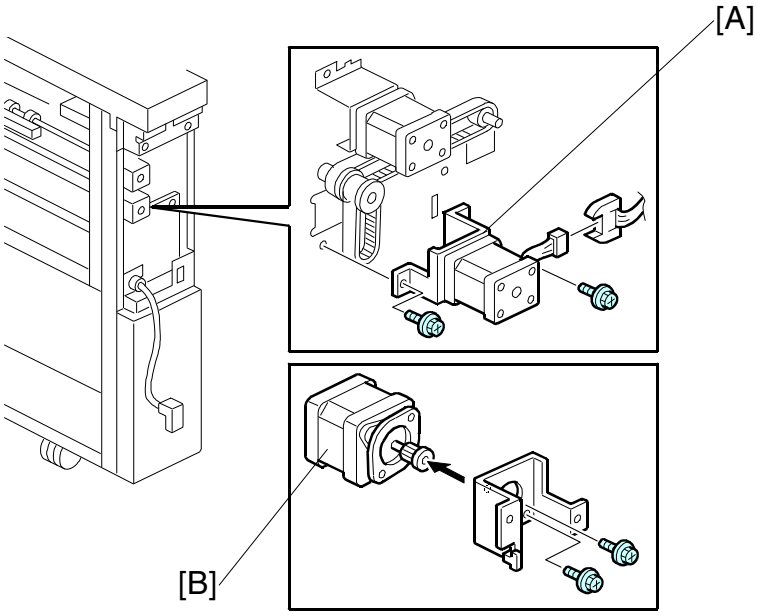



Remove:

- Transport unit rear cover (☛1.1)

[A] Motor unit (🔩 x2, 🖐 x1, Timing belt x1)
[B] Vertical transport motor (🔩 x2)

## 1.5.2 HORIZONTAL TRANSPORT MOTOR

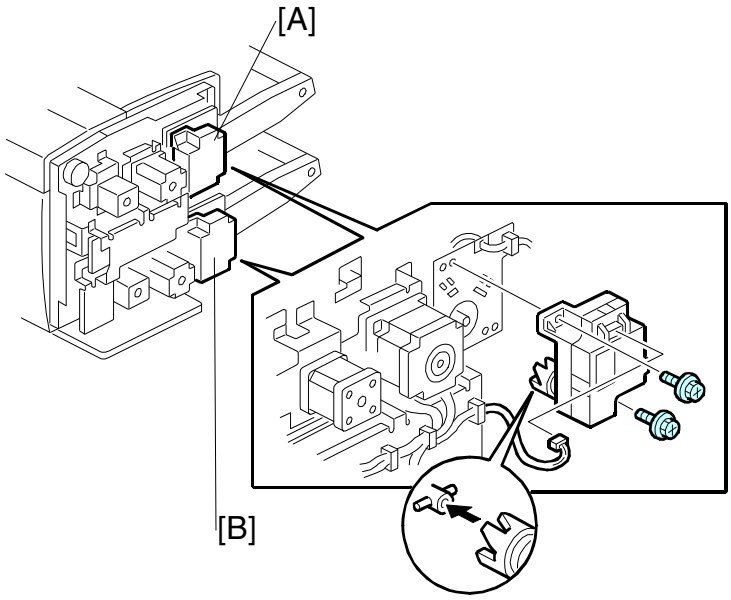



Remove:

- Transport unit rear cover (☛1.1)

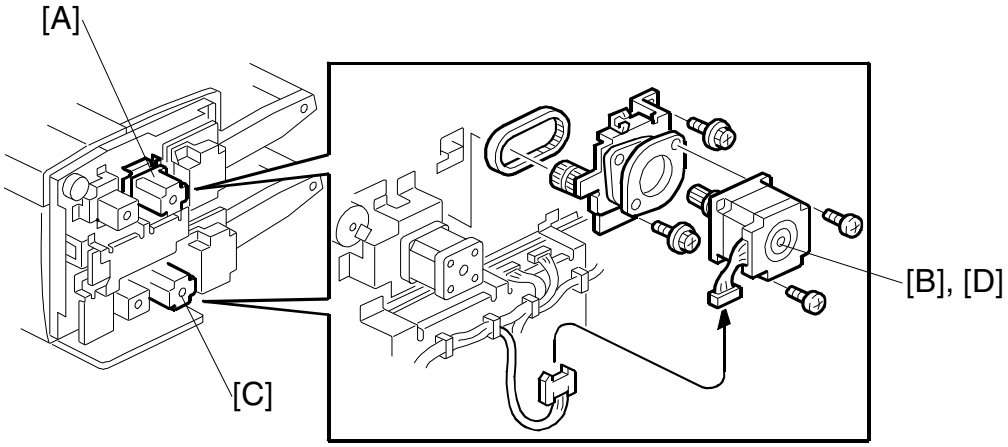
[A] Motor unit (🔩 x2, 🖐 x1, Timing belt x1)
[B] Horizontal transport motor (🔩 x2)

## 1.5.3 1ST, 2ND LIFT MOTORS



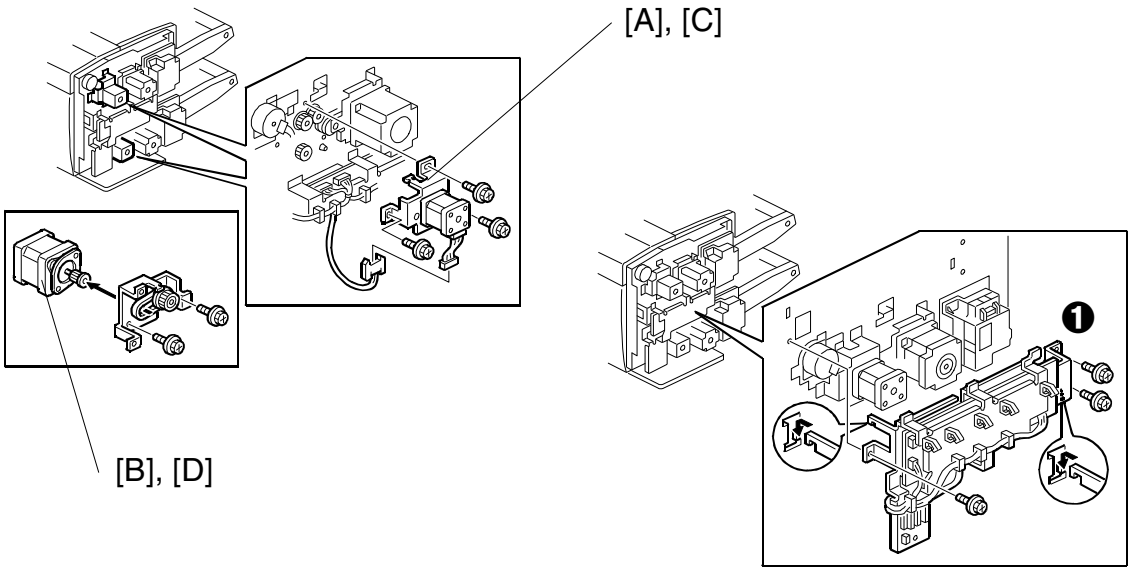

- Tray unit rear cover (☛1.1)
  [A] 1st lift motor (🔩 x2, ✋ x1)
  [B] 2nd lift motor (🔩 x2, ✋ x1)

## 1.5.4 1ST, 2ND FEED MOTORS




- Tray unit rear cover (☛1.1)
  [A] 1st feed motor unit (☞ x3, ⇦x2, ☞ x1)
  [B] 1st feed motor (☞ x2, Timing belt x1)
  [C] 2nd feed motor unit (☞ x3, ☞ x1)
  [D] 2nd feed motor unit (☞ x2, Timing belt x1)

## 1.5.5 1ST, 2ND TRANSPORT MOTORS




- Tray unit rear cover (☛1.1)

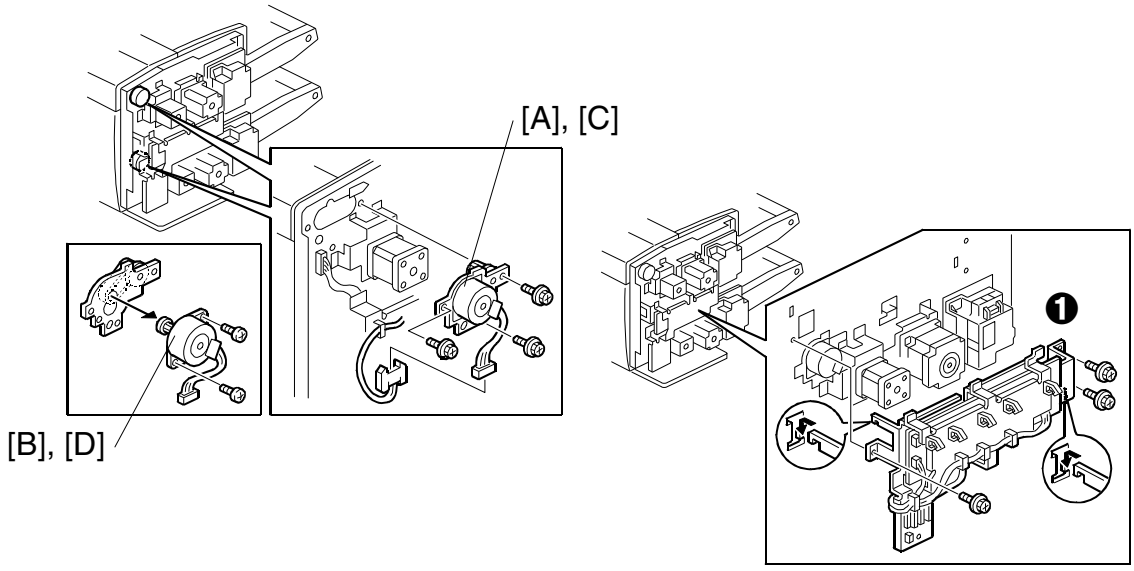
**1st Transport Motor**

[A] 1st transport motor unit (🔩 x3, 🔌 x1)
[B] 1st transport motor (🔩 x2, Timing belt x1)

**2nd Transport Motor**

❶ Tray unit control board unit (Hooks, 🔩 x3, 🔌 x9 (Motor x8, CN216))
[C] 2nd transport motor unit (🔩 x3)
[D] 2nd transport motor (🔩 x2, Timing belt x1)

## 1.5.6 1ST, 2ND PICK-UP MOTORS




- Tray unit rear cover (☛1.1)

**1st Pick-up Motor**

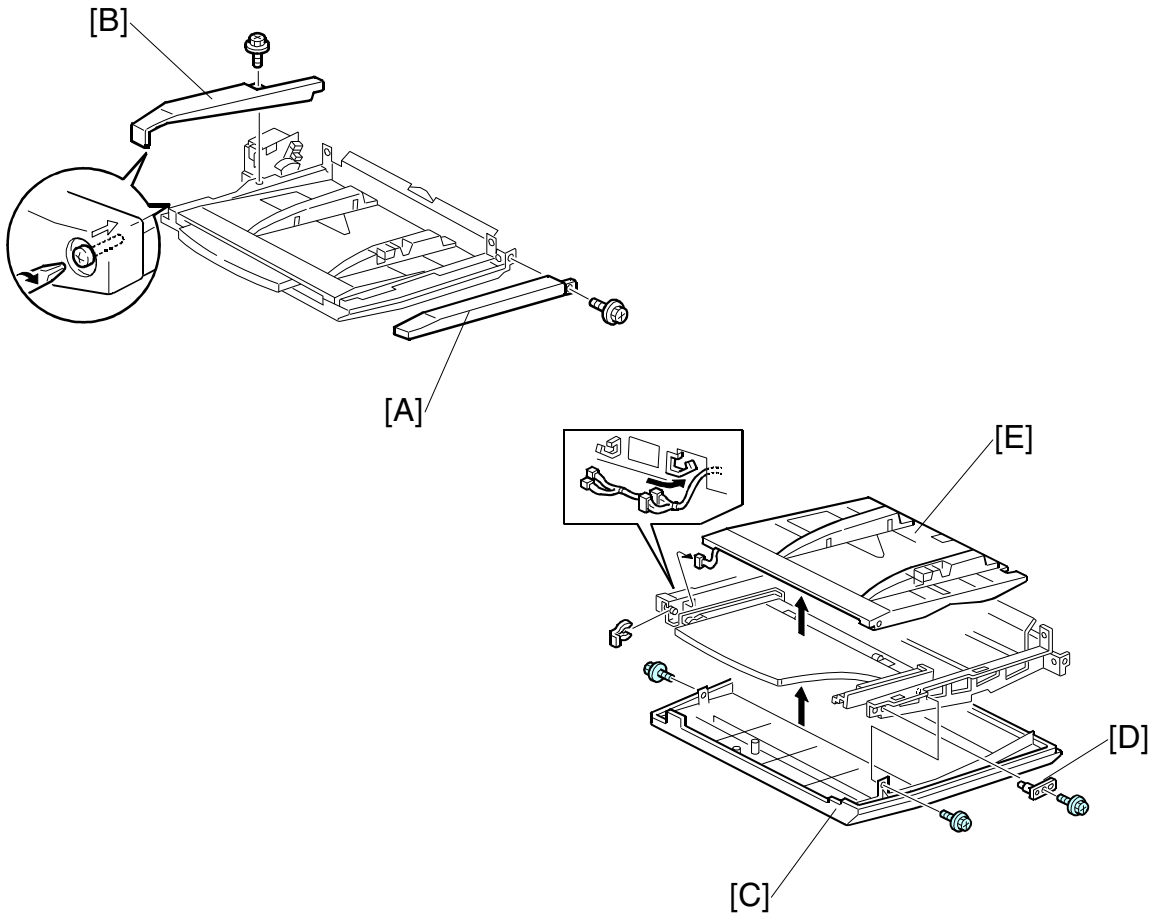
[A] 1st pick-up motor unit (🖐 x1, 🔩 x3)
[B] 1st pick-up motor (🔩 x2, Timing belt x1)

**2nd Pick-up Motor**

❶ Tray unit control board unit (Hooks, 🔩 x3, 🖐 x9 (Motor x8, CN216))
[C] 2nd pick-up motor unit (🖐 x1, 🔩 x3)
[D] 2nd pick-up motor (🔩 x2, Timing belt x1)

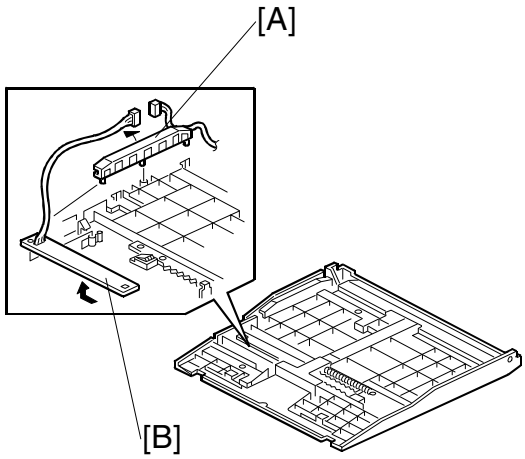
# 1.6 SENSORS

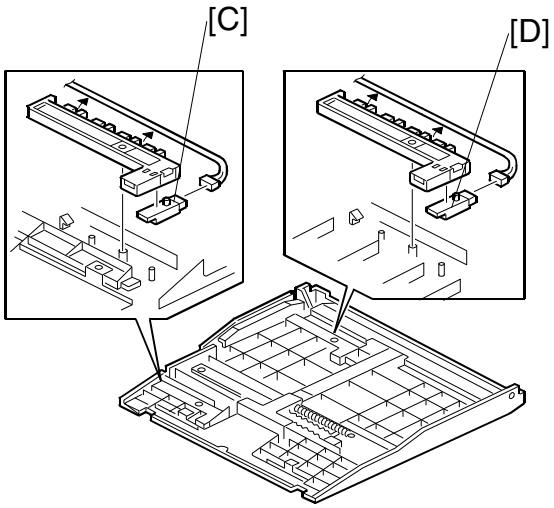
## 1.6.1 PAPER WIDTH SWITCH, SET SENSORS, LENGTH SENSOR




Remove:

- 1st or 2nd paper tray (☛1.2)
  [A] Front cover (☞ x1)
  [B] Rear cover (☞ x1)
  [C] Bottom cover (☞ x2)
  [D] Holder pin (☞x1, Spring x1)
  [E] Bottom plate (☞ x1)
- Turn over the bottom plate so it is facing up.

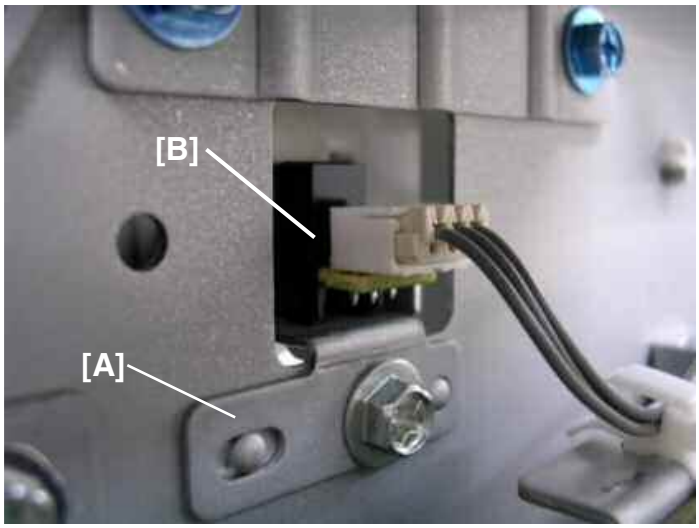



Remove:

[A] Harness cover (Hooks x2)
[B] Paper width switch (Hooks x2, ⇦x4, ☞ x1)
[C] Paper set sensor (Hook x1, ☞ x1)
[D] Paper length sensor (Hooks x1, ☞ x1)

## 1.6.2 TRAY COVER SENSORS




**1st Tray Cover Sensor**

- Remove the tray unit rear cover (☛1.1)
- Open the 1st tray cover

Remove:

[A] Sensor unit (x1, x1)
[B] Tray cover sensor (Pawls x2)

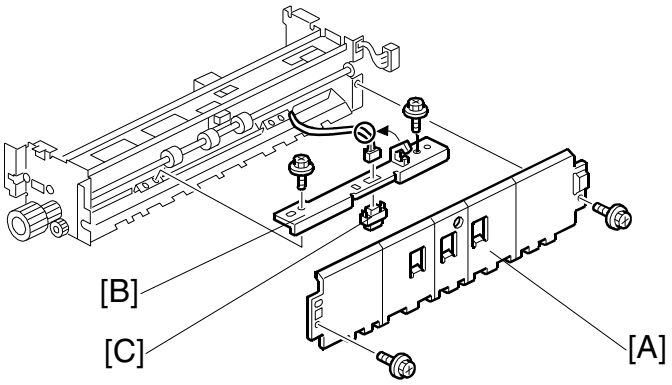
**2nd Tray Cover Sensor**

Remove the tray unit control board unit (☛1.5.5)

Remove:

[A] Sensor unit (x1, x1). Remove with the 2nd tray cover open.
[B] Tray cover sensor (Pawls x2)

## 1.6.3 1ST TRANSPORT SENSOR

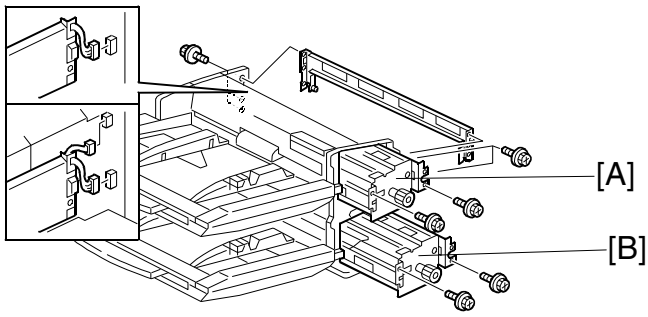


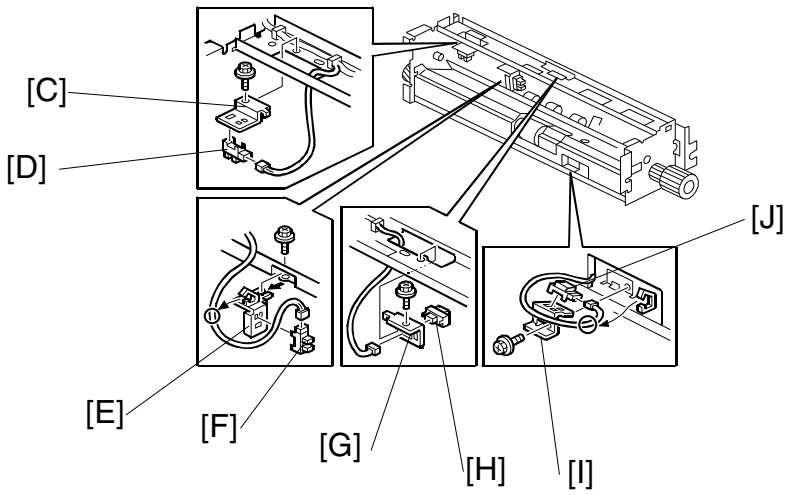

- Top cover
- Vertical feed cover
- Stay (☛1.5)

Remove:

[A] Upper paper guide (☞ x2)
[B] Sensor unit (☞ x2, ☜ x1, ⇦x1)
[C] 1st transport sensor (Pawls x2)

## 1.6.4 FEED UNIT SENSORS

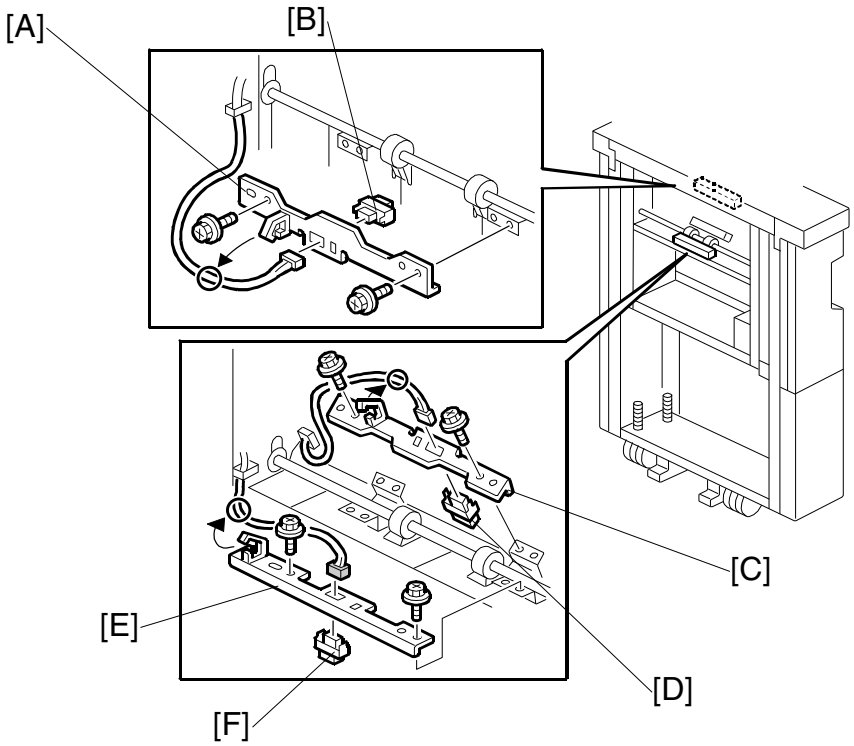



Remove:

[A] 1st feed unit (☛1.3)
[B] 2nd feed unit (☛1.3)
[C] Sensor bracket (x1, x1)
[D] Pick-up roller HP sensor (Pawls x2)
[E] Sensor bracket (x1, x1, 1x)
[F] Bottom plate position sensor (Pawls x2)
[G] Sensor bracket (x1, x1) (2nd feed unit only)
[H] 1st Vertical transport sensor (Pawls x2) (2nd feed unit only)
[I] Sensor bracket (x1, x1, x1)
[J] Paper Feed sensor (Pawls x2)

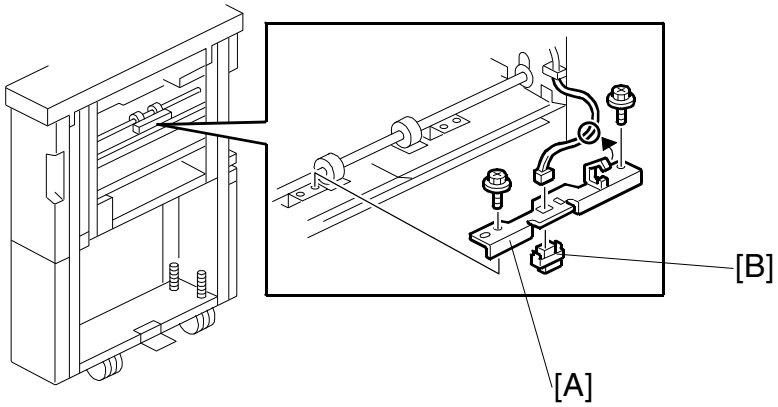
## 1.6.5 2ND VERTICAL TRANSPORT, EXIT SENSORS




Remove:

[A] Sensor unit (x1, x1, x1)
[B] 2nd vertical transport sensor (Pawls x2)
[C] Sensor unit (x2, x1, x1)
[D] Vertical exit sensor (Pawls x2)
[E] Sensor unit (x2, x1, x1)
[F] Exit sensor (Pawls x2)

## 1.6.6 ENTRANCE SENSOR

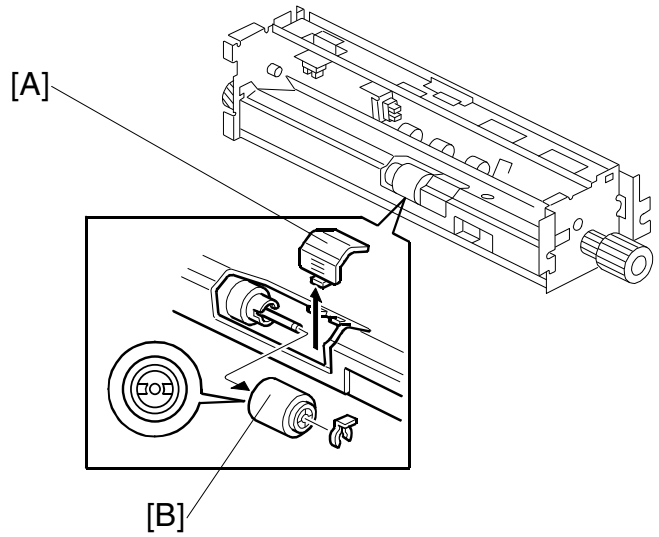



[A] Sensor unit ( x2, x1, x1)

[B] Entrance sensor (Pawls x2)

# 1.7 ROLLERS

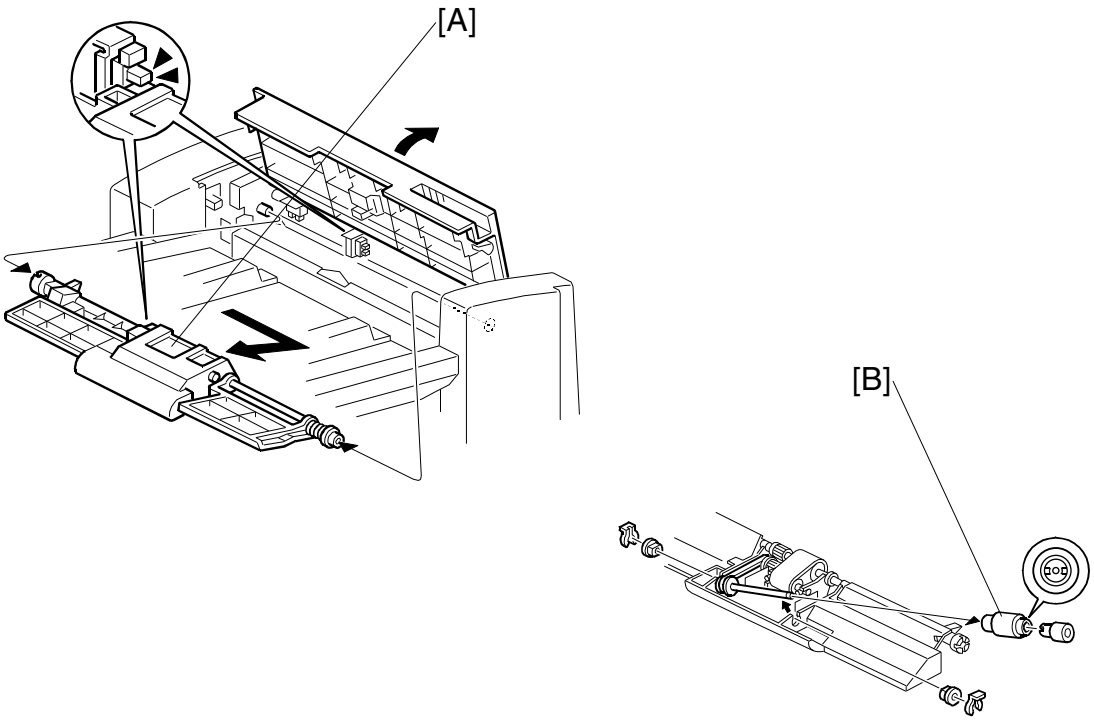
## 1.7.1 SEPARATION ROLLER




- 1st (or 2nd) feed unit (☛1.3)

[A] Cover
[B] Separation Roller (⟲ x1)

## 1.7.2 FEED BELT UNIT AND PICK-UP ROLLER

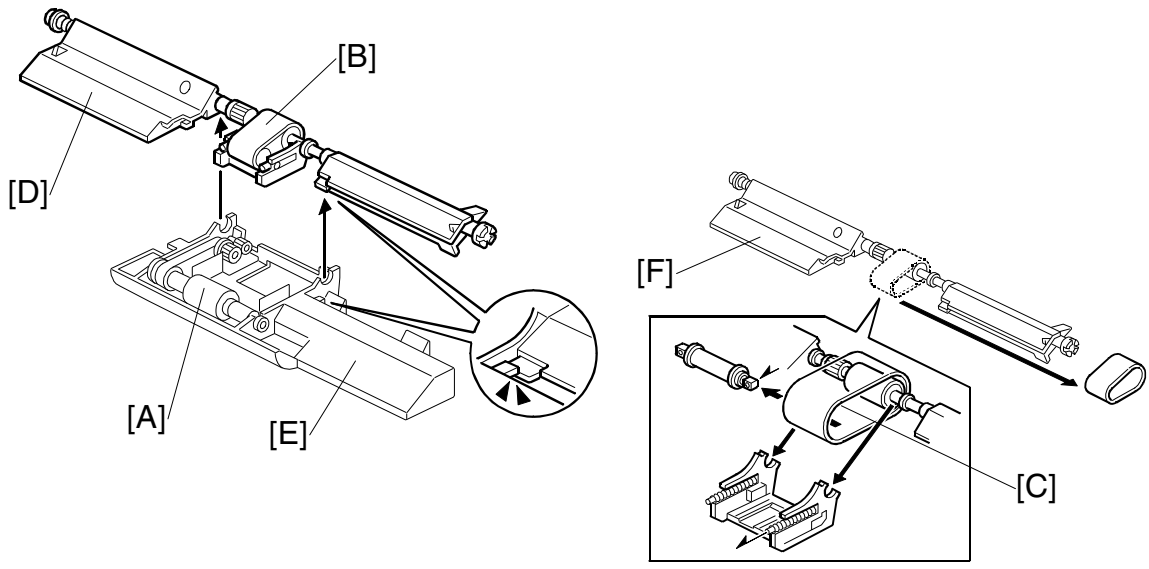



- Open the 1st tray cover.

[A]: Feed belt unit
- The unit is spring loaded. Push it to the right to release it, then lift it out.

[B]: Pick-up roller (x 2, bushings x 2)

## 1.7.3 FEED BELT




- Feed belt unit (☛1.7.2)

[A]: Pick-up roller unit.
- Pull the unit away from the bushings in the direction of the arrow.

[B]: Feed belt holder
- Hold the feed belt holder by the sides, then lift up to separate from the holder.
- Pull slowly to avoid losing the springs.

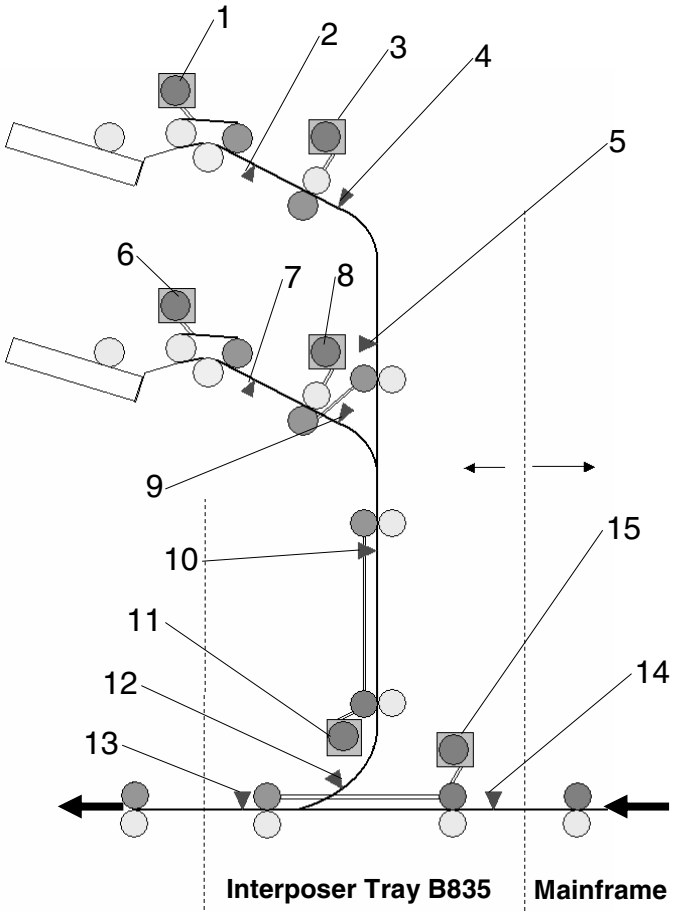
[C]: Feed belt.

**Re-assembly**

1. Position the pick-up roller unit [A] and feed belt holder [B] as shown above.
2. On the rear side, slide out the bushing, and rotate guide plate [D] until its stepped side attaches at [E] as shown above, then snap the guide plate on.
3. On the front side, rotate guide plate [F] until its flat side is parallel with [D], then snap it on. Viewed from the bottom, the plates must be aligned.

# 2. DETAILS

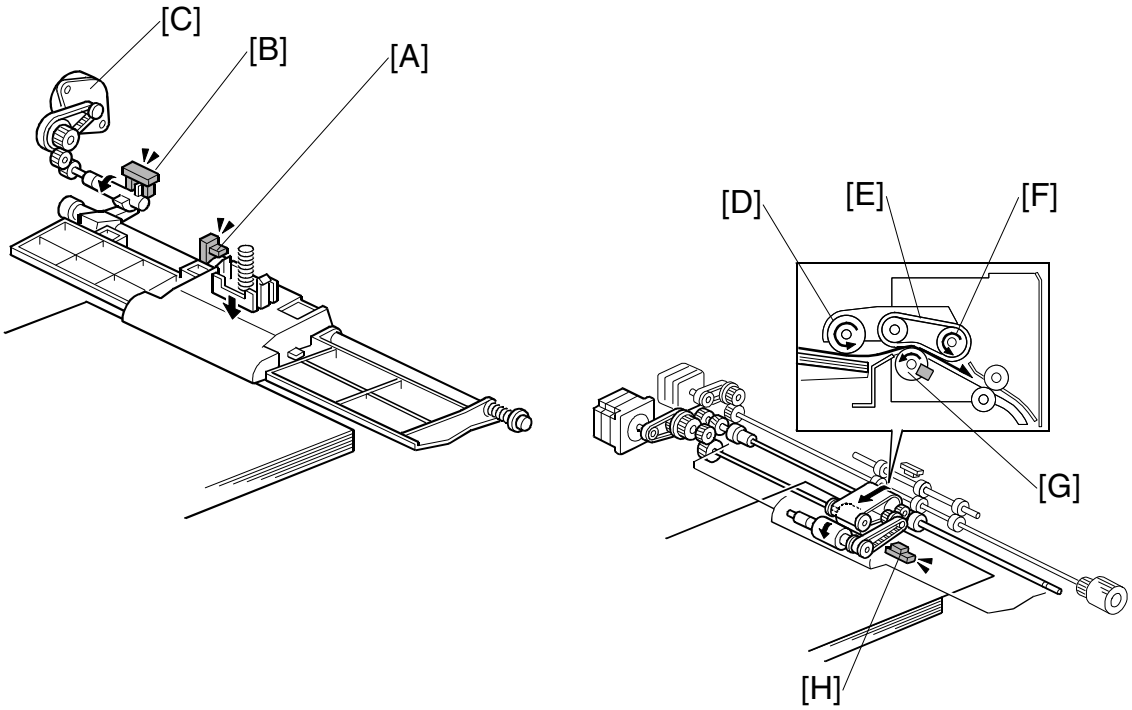
## 2.1 PAPER PATH




1. 1st Paper Feed Motor
2. 1st Paper Feed Sensor
3. 1st Transport Motor
4. 1st Transport Sensor
5. 1st Vertical Transport Sensor
6. 2nd Paper Feed Motor
7. 2nd Paper Feed Sensor
8. 2nd Transport Motor
9. 2nd Transport Sensor
10. 2nd Vertical Transport Sensor
11. Vertical Transport Motor
12. Vertical Exit Sensor
13. Interposer Exit Sensor
14. Interposer Entrance Sensor
15. Horizontal Transport Motor

# 2.2 PAPER FEED

## 2.2.1 FEED MECHANISM




When paper is placed on the tray, the 1st paper set sensor in the tray actuates and switches on the 1st tray lift motor. The pick-up roller unit drops and the top of the stack in the tray pushes up the pick-up roller unit until its actuator actuates the 1st bottom plate position sensor [A] and switches the motor 1st tray lift motor off.

The 1st pick-up roller HP sensor [B] controls the operation of the 1st pick-up motor [C]. The 1st pick-up motor is off when the actuator is up and there is no paper in the tray. This is the pick-up roller home position. When the actuator de-actuates the sensor after the tray lifts, this switches on the 1st pick-up roller motor. At the end of the job, the actuator descends with the bottom plate and switches the motor off.

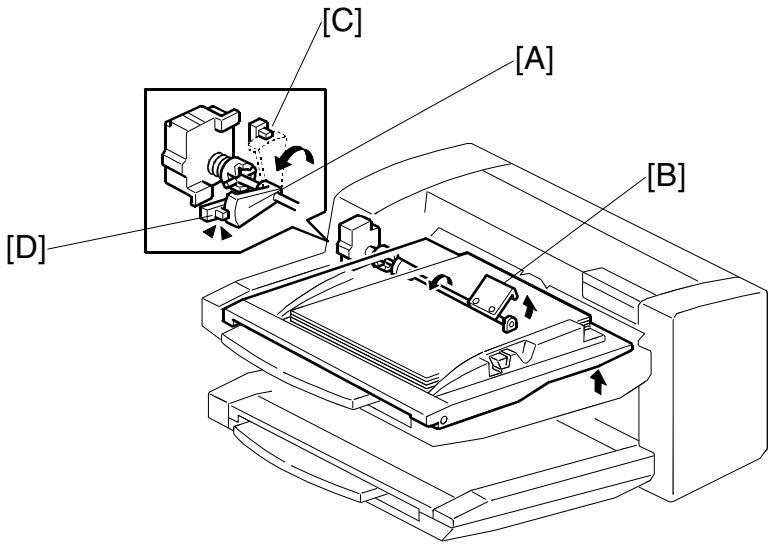
The pick-up roller [D] picks up the sheet, and the feed belt [E] feeds the sheet to the paper feed roller [F]. The separation roller [G] reverses if more than one sheet is fed. This is a standard FFR device.

The paper feed sensor [H] detects the timing of the feed and signals a jam if the paper does not arrive or if the paper stops.

As sheets feed from the top of the stack:

- The pick-up roller unit descends until the actuator on the pick-up roller unit drops out of the 1st bottom plate position sensor [A]. This activates the 1st tray lift motor.
- The 1st tray lift motor switches on to raise the stack until the actuator enters the pick-up roller unit position sensor again and switches the lift motor off.
- This cycle repeats until the end of the job or until paper runs out.

## 2.2.2 PAPER NEAR END/PAPER END

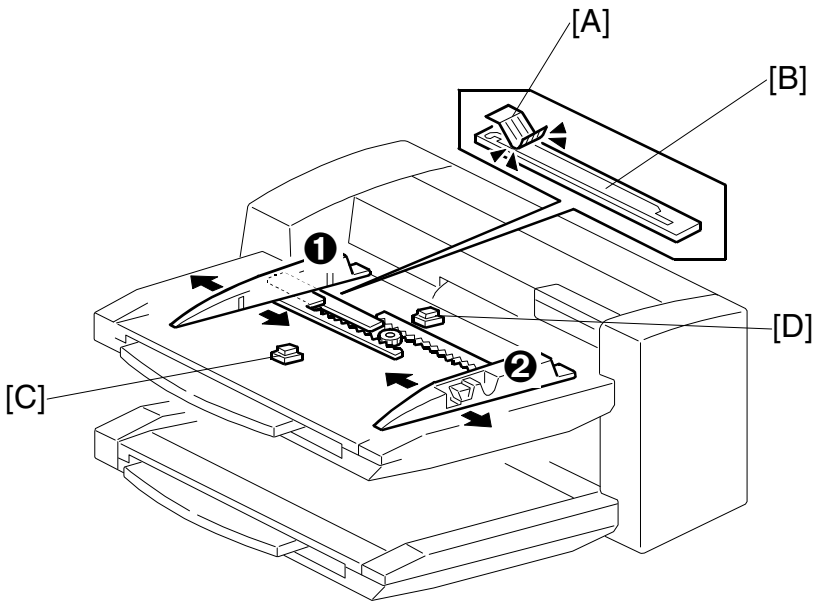



When feed starts with a full tray, the actuator [A] on the rotating shaft of the bottom plate lift arm [B] is at the 1st tray lower limit sensor [C].

As paper feeds and the stack grows smaller, the lift arm rises and the actuator descends until the actuator reaches the 1st tray upper limit sensor [D]. At this time the operation panel signals near-end for the 1st tray.

When the last sheet feeds, the paper feed sensor, a photosensor (not shown) signals that paper has run out.

## 2.2.3 PAPER SIZE DETECTION




The side fences ❶ and ❷ can be adjusted to standard and non-standard paper sizes.

When the side fences are moved to match the paper width, a feeler [A] slides along the wiring patterns on the paper width switch terminal plate [B].

The combination of the following two factors determines the paper size:

- The position where the feeler activates the terminal
- The status of the paper length sensor [C] (ON or OFF).

The paper end sensor [D] de-activates when the last sheet is fed and reports that the paper tray is empty.

The paper size is detected by six sensors whose combined readings are used to detect the following paper sizes.

| Paper Size Detection Bits | | | | | | | | Area | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Paper Size | | W1 | W2 | W3 | W4 | W5 | L1 | NA | EU |
| Large Size | 12×18 in. | H | H | H | H | L | L | YES | YES |
| Large Size | 13×19 in. | H | H | H | H | L | L | ✻ | ✻ |
| Large Size | 320×450 mm | H | H | H | H | L | L | ✻ | ✻ |
| A3 SEF | 297×420 mm | H | H | H | L | L | L | YES | YES |
| A4 LEF | 297×210 mm | H | H | H | L | L | H | YES | YES |
| DLT SEF | 11×17 in. | H | H | H | L | H | L | YES | YES |
| LT LEF | 11×8½ in. | H | H | H | L | H | H | YES | YES |
| B4 SEF | 257×364 mm | H | H | L | L | H | L | YES | YES |
| B5 LEF | 257×182 mm | H | H | L | L | H | H | YES | YES |
| A4 SEF | 210×297 mm | H | H | L | H | H | L | YES | YES |
| LT SEF | 8½×11 in. | H | H | L | H | H | L | YES | ✻ |
| A5 LEF | 210×148 mm | H | H | L | H | H | H | ✻ | YES |
| HLT LEF | 8½×5½ in. | H | H | L | H | H | H | YES | ✻ |
| B5 SEF | 182×257 mm | H | L | L | H | H | L | ✻ | ✻ |
| F SEF | 8×13 in. | H | L | L | H | H | L | YES | YES |
| A5 SEF | 148×210 mm | H | L | H | H | H | H | YES | YES |
| HLT SEF | 5½×8½ in. | L | L | H | H | H | H | YES | YES |

Yes： Width and length sensors can detect paper sizes automatically.

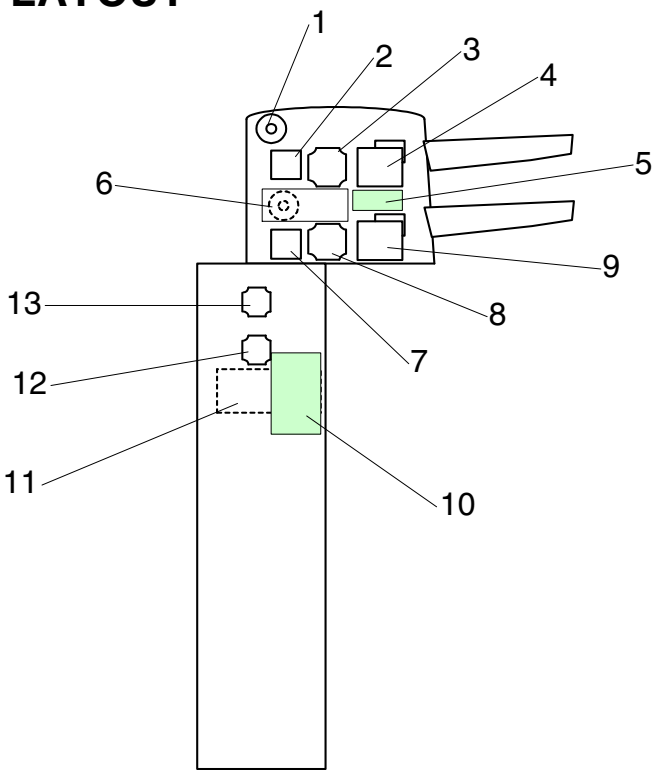
✻： Accurate paper size detection requires setting with the "Tray Paper Setting" key on the operation panel.

H: 5V

L: 0V

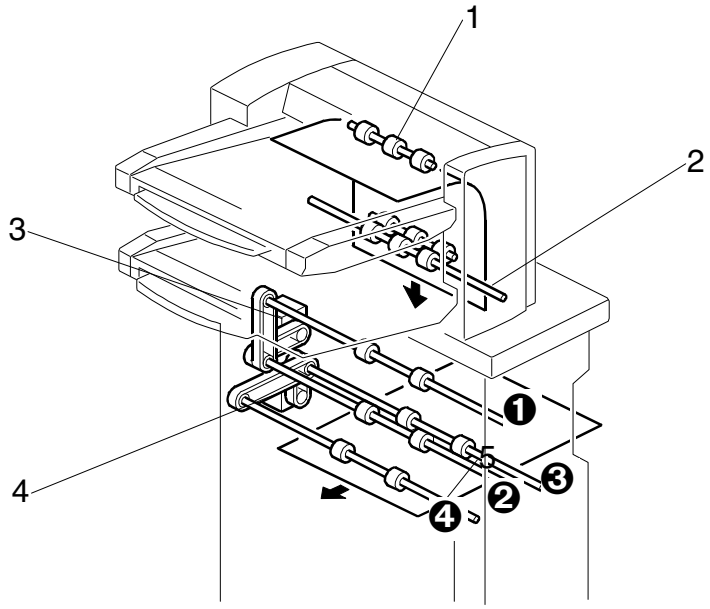
# 3. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

## 3.1 MAIN LAYOUT




1. 1st Pick-up Motor
2. 1st Transport Motor
3. 1st Paper Feed Motor
4. 1st Lift Motor
5. Driver Board
6. 2nd Pick-up Motor
7. 2nd Transport Motor
8. 2nd Paper Feed Motor
9. 2nd Lift Motor
10. Control Board
11. Door Open Switch (Interlock)
12. Horizontal Transport Motor
13. Vertical Transport Motor

## 3.2 DRIVE LAYOUT




1. 1st Transport roller
2. 2nd Transport roller
3. Vertical Transport Motor
4. Horizontal Transport Motor

The 1st transport roller [1] (driven by the 1st transport motor) pulls the paper from the 1st tray and feeds it into the vertical paper path.

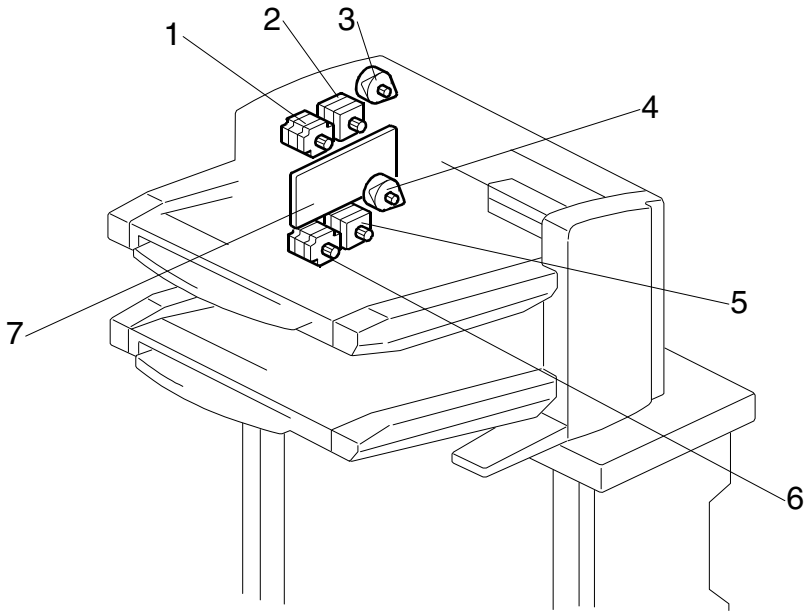
The 2nd transport roller [2] (driven by the 2nd transport motor) pulls the paper from the 2nd tray and feeds it into the vertical path.

The vertical transport motor [3] drives the vertical transport rollers ❶ and ❷ that feed the sheets into the horizontal feed path.

The horizontal transport motor [4] drives the horizontal transport rollers ❸ and ❹ that feed the covers (and paper passing straight through) out of the cover interposer tray.

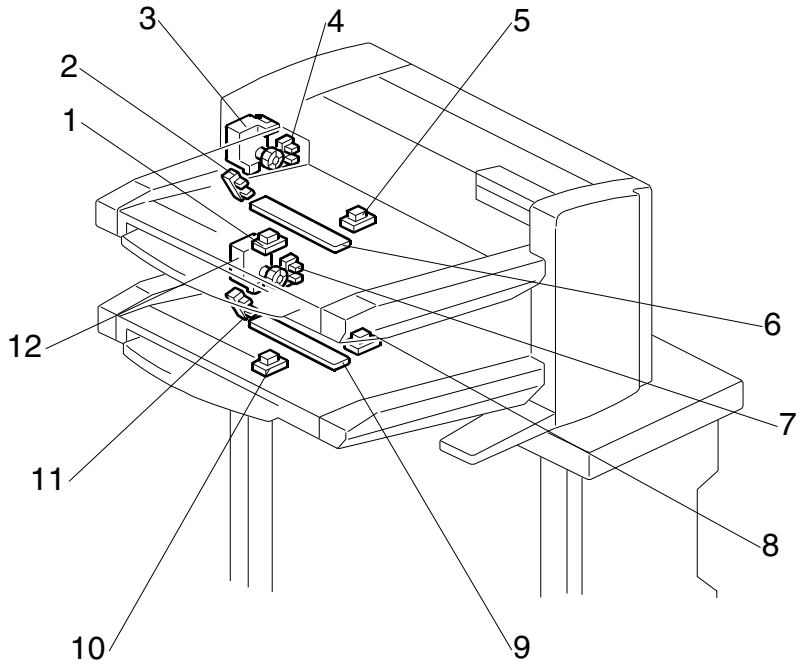
# 3.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

## 3.3.1 FEED MOTORS, PCB



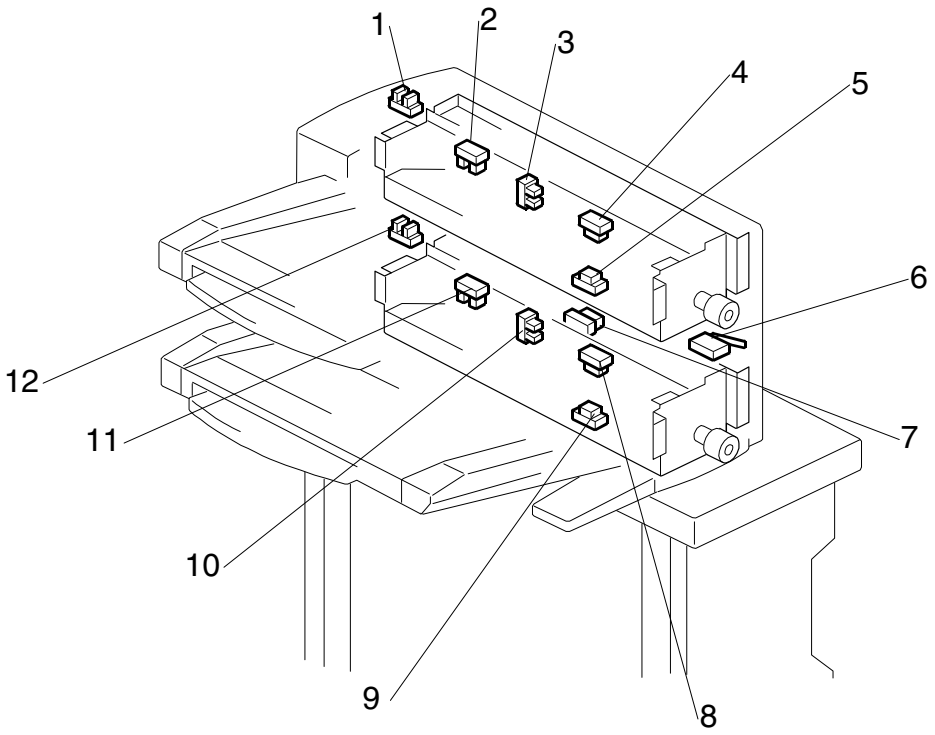

1. 1st Paper Feed Motor
2. 1st Transport motor
3. 1st Pick-Up Motor
4. 2nd Pick-Up Motor
5. 2nd Transport motor
6. 2nd Paper Feed Motor
7. Tray Unit Control Board

## 3.3.2 LIFT MOTORS, TRAY SENSORS



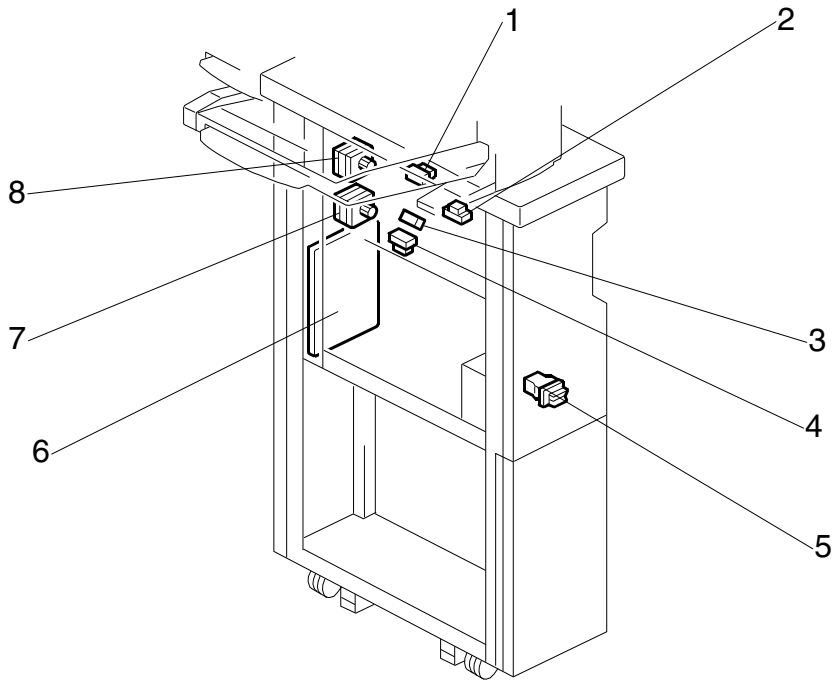

1. 1st Paper Length Sensor
2. 1st paper upper limit sensor
3. 1st Lift Motor
4. 1st Lower Limit Sensor
5. 1st paper set sensor
6. 1st Paper Width Sensor
7. 2nd Lower Limit Sensor
8. 2nd paper set sensor
9. 2nd Paper Width Sensor
10. 2nd Paper Length Sensor
11. 2nd paper upper limit sensor
12. 2nd Lift Motor

## 3.3.3 PAPER PATH SENSORS 1




1. 1st Tray Cover Sensor
2. 1st Pick-Up Roller HP Sensor
3. 1st bottom plate position sensor
4. 1st Transport Sensor
5. 1st Paper Feed Sensor
6. Vertical Feed Cover Switch
7. 1st Vertical Transport Sensor
8. 2nd Transport Sensor
9. 2nd Paper Feed Sensor
10. 2nd bottom plate position sensor
11. 2nd Pick-Up Roller HP Sensor
12. 2nd Tray Cover Sensor

## 3.3.4 PAPER PATH SENSORS 2, PCB




1. 2nd Vertical Transport Sensor
2. Entrance Sensor
3. Vertical Exit Sensor
4. Exit Sensor
5. Feed Unit Front Door Safety Switch
6. Main Control Board
7. Horizontal Transport Motor
8. Vertical Transport Motor

## 3.3.5 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SUMMARY

| Motors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| M1 | 1st Lift Motor | Drives the bottom plate of the 1st tray up and down. |
| M2 | 1st Paper Feed Motor | Rotates the feed rollers that feed paper from the 1st tray. |
| M3 | 1st Pick-up Motor | Moves the 1st pick-up roller up and down. |
| M4 | 1st Transport Motor | Drives the 1st Transport roller that takes the paper fed from the 1st feed roller and feeds it to the vertical path. |
| M5 | 2nd Feed Motor | Rotates the feed rollers that feed paper from the 2nd tray. |
| M6 | 2nd Lift Motor | Drives the bottom plate of the 2nd tray up and down. |
| M7 | 2nd Pick-up Motor | Moves the 2nd pick-up roller up and down. |
| M8 | 2nd Transport Motor | Drives the 2nd Transport roller that takes the paper fed from the 1st feed roller and feeds it to the vertical path. |
| M9 | Horizontal Transport Motor | Drives the rollers in the horizontal path that feed paper from the copier and covers from the vertical path out of the cover interposer tray. |
| M10 | Vertical Transport Motor | Drives the rollers in the vertical path that feed the covers down to the horizontal path. |

| PCBs | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| PCB1 | Driver Board | Controls operation of the unit. (All DIP SWs should be set to OFF.) |
| PCB2 | Main Control Board | |

| Sensors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| S1 | 1st Tray Cover Sensor | Detects when the 1st tray cover is open/closed. |
| S2 | 1st Lower Limit Sensor | Detects 1) whether the 1st tray is down or not when the tray is not operating, and 2) detects when the tray is full when the 1st tray is operating. |
| S3 | 1st paper set sensor | Detects paper end after the last sheet feeds from the 1st tray. |
| S4 | 1st Paper Feed Sensor | Detects paper placed on the tray and starts the 1st lift motor to raise the bottom plate. This sensor also detects a jam if the paper stops and does not leave the 1st tray |
| S5 | 1st Paper Length Sensors | Used in combination with 1st tray width sensors to determine the size of paper in the 1st tray. |
| S6 | 1st paper upper limit sensor | When an actuator falls into the gap of this sensor, this signals paper near end in the 1st tray. |
| S7 | 1st Pick-up Roller HP Sensor | Detects whether the 1st pick-up roller is up or not. |
| S8 | 1st Transport Sensor | Detects jams at the point where the 1st Transport roller pulls paper from the 1st tray. |
| S9 | 1st Transport Sensor | Detects jams in the path of the 1st tray. |

| Sensors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| S10 | 1st bottom plate position sensor | Detects the top of the paper stack in the 1st tray when it is at the proper height for feeding and stops the 1st lift motor. |
| S11 | 2nd Lower Limit Sensor | Detects 1) whether the 2nd tray is down or not when the tray is not operating, and 2) detects when the tray is full when the 2nd tray is operating. |
| S12 | 2nd tray cover sensor | Detects when the 2nd tray cover is open/closed. |
| S13 | 2nd paper set sensor | Detects paper placed on the tray and starts the 2nd lift motor to raise the bottom plate. This sensor also detects a jam if the paper stops and does not leave the 2nd tray |
| S14 | 2nd Paper Feed Sensor | Detects jams when the feed roller feeds paper from the 2nd tray. |
| S15 | 2nd Paper Length Sensor | Used in combination with 1st tray width sensors to determine the size of paper in the 1st tray. |
| S16 | 2nd paper upper limit sensor | When an actuator falls into the gap of this sensor, this signals paper near end in the 2nd tray. |
| S17 | 2nd Pick-up Roller HP Sensor | Detects whether the 2nd pick-up roller is up or not. |
| S18 | 2nd Transport Sensor | Detects jams at the point where the 2nd Transport roller pulls paper from the 1st tray. |
| S19 | 2nd bottom plate position sensor | Detects the top of the paper stack in the 2nd tray when it is at the proper height for feeding and stops the 2nd lift motor. |
| S20 | 2nd Vertical Transport Sensor | Detects jams in the vertical path after a sheet is fed from the 2nd tray. |
| S21 | Entrance Sensor | Detects paper jams where paper from the copier enters the unit in the horizontal feed path. |
| S22 | Exit Sensor | Detects jams where through-paper and covers exit the unit. |
| S23 | Vertical Exit Sensor | Detects jams where through-paper and covers exit the vertical feed path. |

| Switches | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| SW1 | Front Door Switch | Detects whether the front door is properly closed. The unit will not operate when the front door is open. |
| SW2 | Transport Cover Switch | This is the cover on the right side of the tray unit. Detects whether the cover is opened or closed. |
| SW3 | 1st Paper Width Switch | Used in combination with the length sensors to determine the size of paper in the 1st tray. |
| SW4 | 2nd Paper Width Switch | Used in combination with the length sensors to determine the size of paper in the 2nd tray. |

# B762

# 9-BIN MAILBOX

| B762 MAILBOX CS391 REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| | | None |

# 9-BIN MAILBOX B762

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

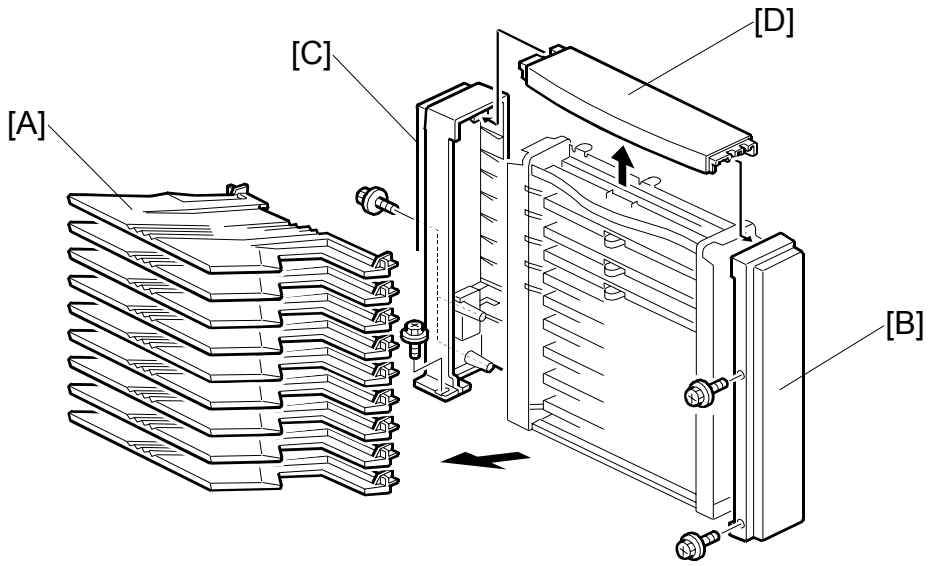

**1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT.....1**
1.1 COVERS AND TRAYS.....1
1.2 SENSORS.....2
1.3 MAIN MOTOR AND CONTROL BOARD.....3

**2. DETAILS.....4**
2.1 OVERVIEW.....4
2.1.1 MAIN COMPONENT LAYOUT.....4
2.1.2 DRIVE LAYOUT.....5
2.1.3 PAPER PATH.....6
2.2 BASIC OPERATION.....7
2.2.1 PAPER PATH.....7
2.3 OVERFLOW DETECTION.....8
2.3.1 OVERVIEW.....8
2.3.2 DETECTION TIMING.....9
2.4 PAPER MISFEED DETECTION TIMING.....10
2.4.1 A4 SIDEWAYS (LEF) → 1ST BIN TRAY.....10
2.4.2 A4 SIDEWAYS (LEF) → 2ND ~ 9TH BIN TRAY.....10

# 1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

**⚠CAUTION**
**Switch the machine off and unplug the machine before starting and procedure in this section.**

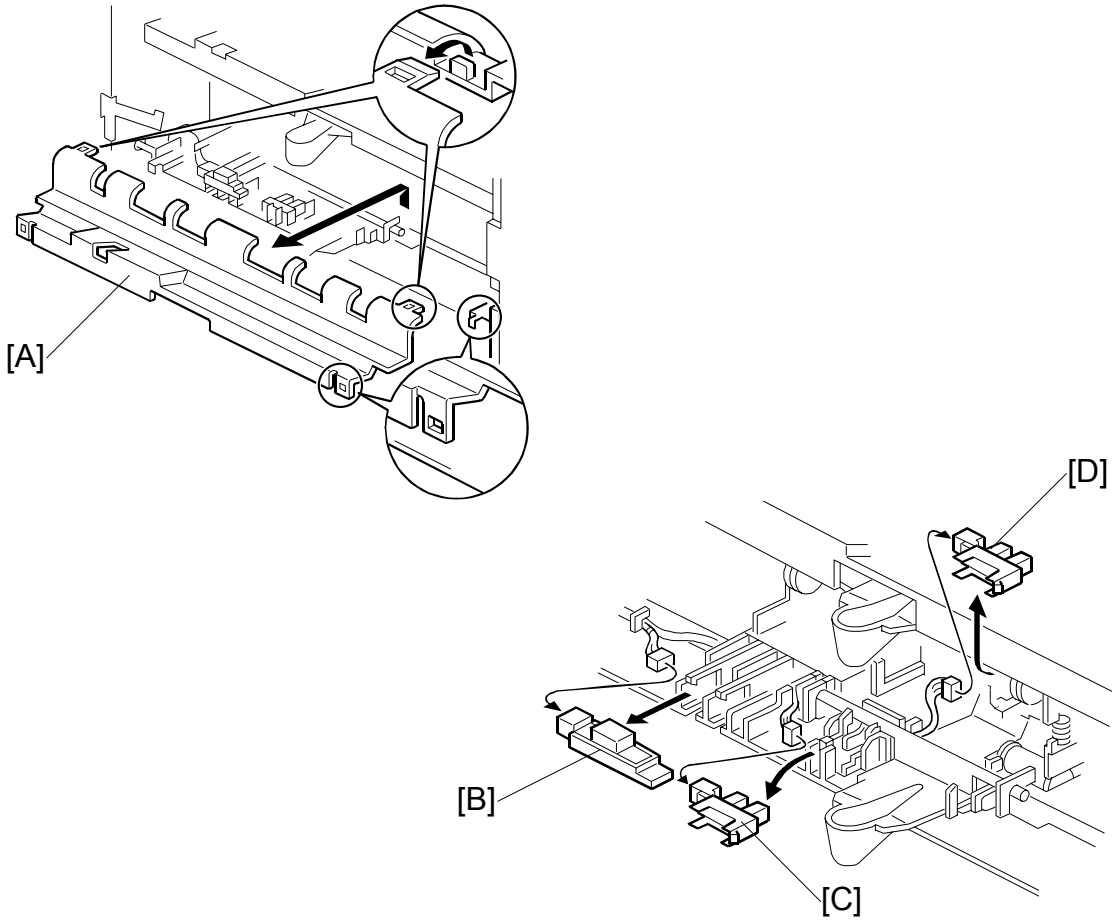
## 1.1 COVERS AND TRAYS




[A]: Trays
- Grip each tray by the front and lift out.

[B]: Front cover (🖉 x 2)
[C]: Rear cover (🖉 x 3)
[D]: Top cover

# 1.2 SENSORS




Remove the tray (☛ 1.1)

[A]: Bin cover

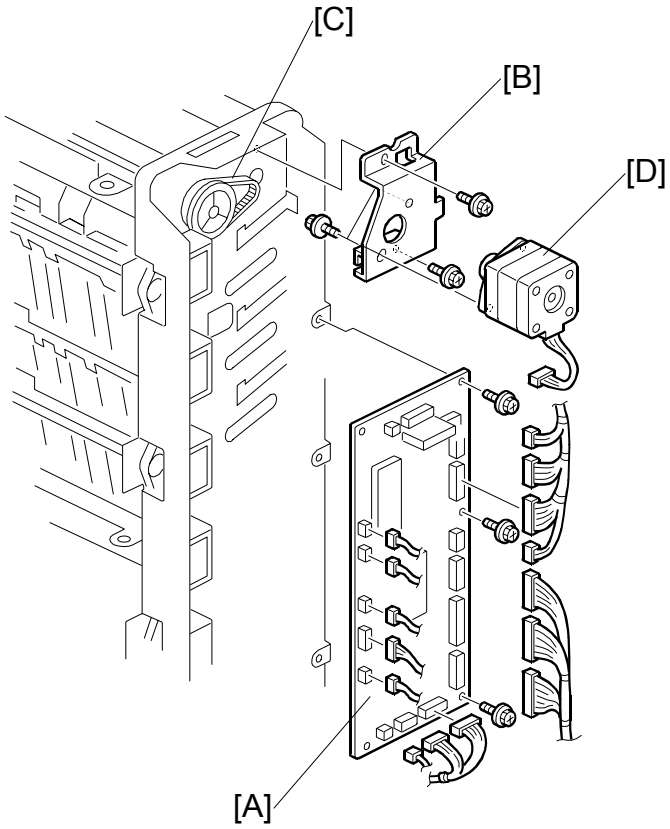
[B]: Tray sensor (✋ x 1)

[C]: Tray overflow sensor (✋ x 1)

[D]: Vertical transport sensor (✋ x 1)

- Raise the pawl, then grip the bottom of the sensor to remove.

# 1.3 MAIN MOTOR AND CONTROL BOARD



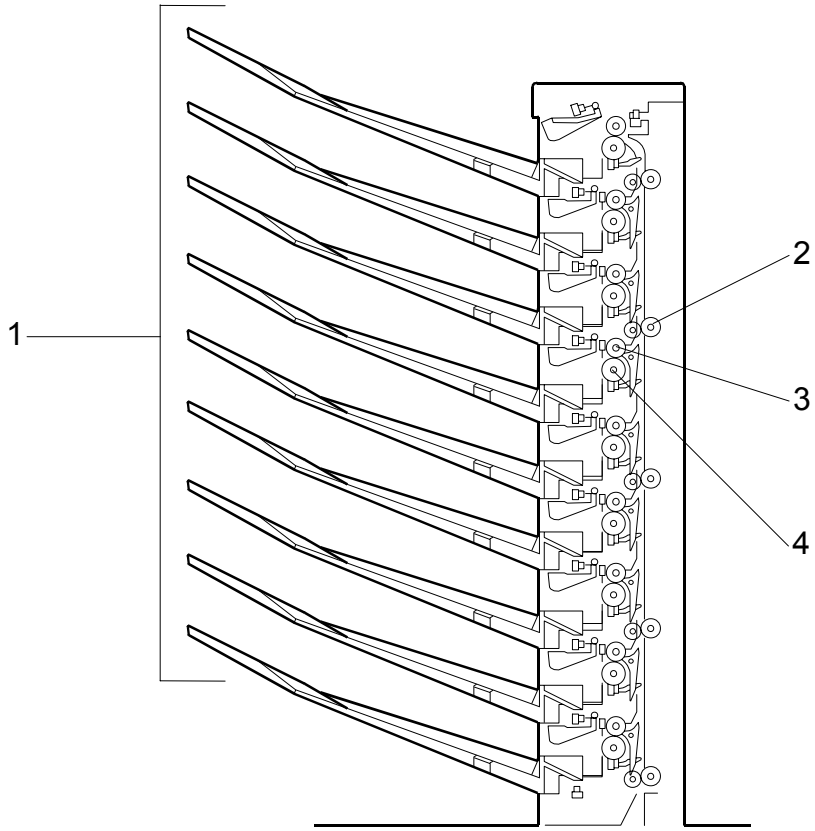

Rear cover (☛ 1.1)

[A]: Control board (🔩 x 3, 🖐 x 17)
[B]: Main motor bracket (main motor 🖐 x 1, 🔩 x 2)
[C]: Timing belt
[D]: Main motor (🔩 x 1)

# 2. DETAILS

## 2.1 OVERVIEW

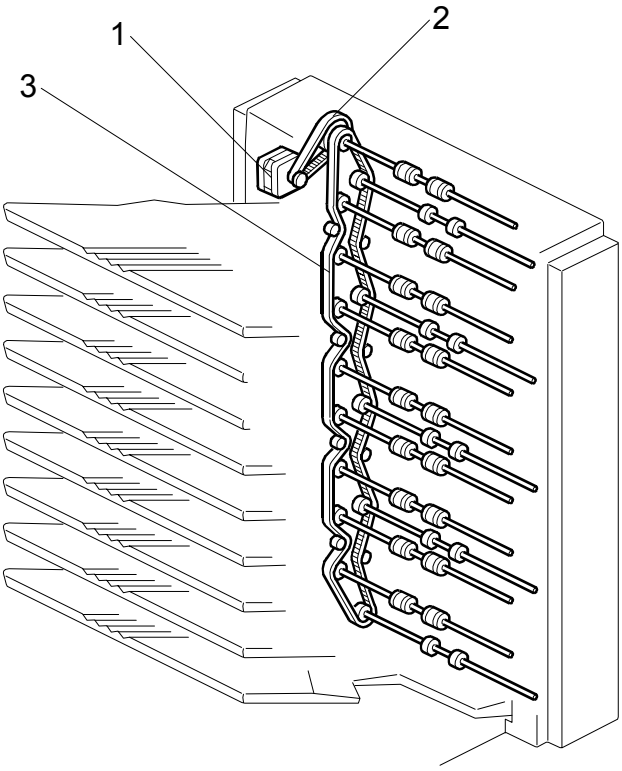
### 2.1.1 MAIN COMPONENT LAYOUT




1. Bins (x 9)
2. Vertical Transport Rollers (x 5)
3. Turn Gates (x 8)
4. Exit Rollers (x 9)

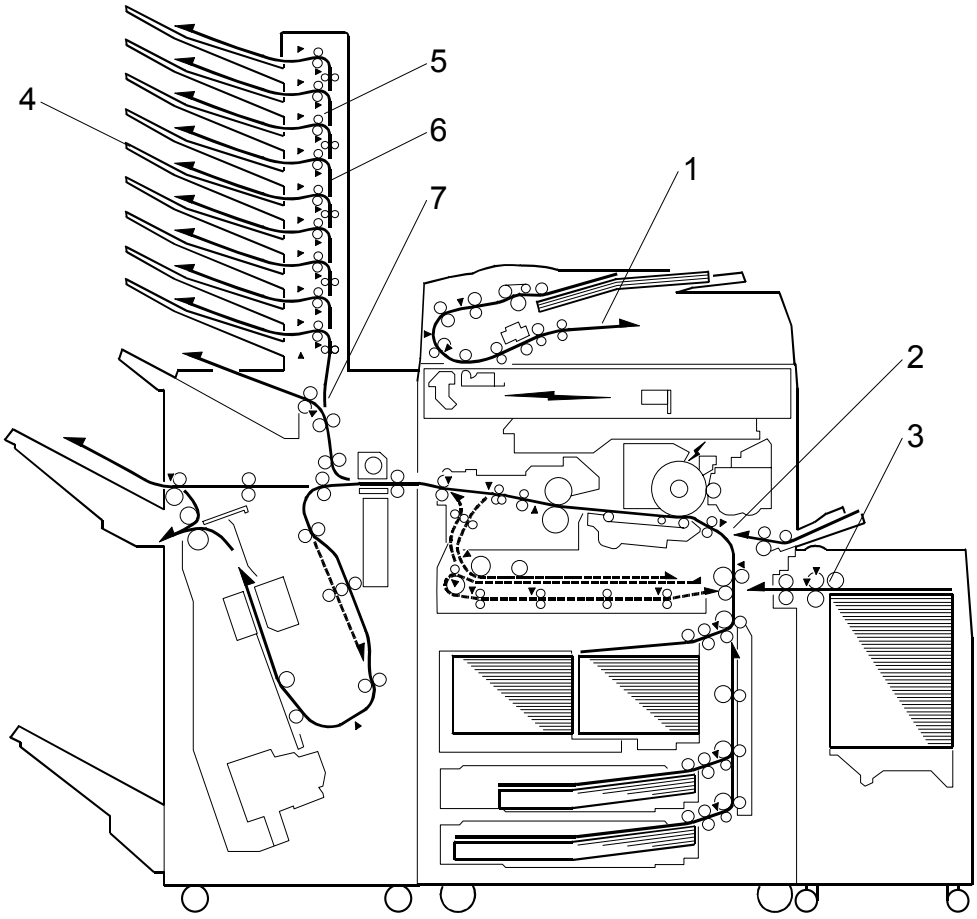
The trays are 1 to 9 (bottom to top). The numbers are clearly marked on the side of the unit. The top tray does not require a turn gate. When the top tray is selected for output, all turn gates remain closed, leaving only the top bin open.

## 2.1.2 DRIVE LAYOUT




1. Main Motor
2. Main Timing Belt
3. Timing Belt

## 2.1.3 PAPER PATH

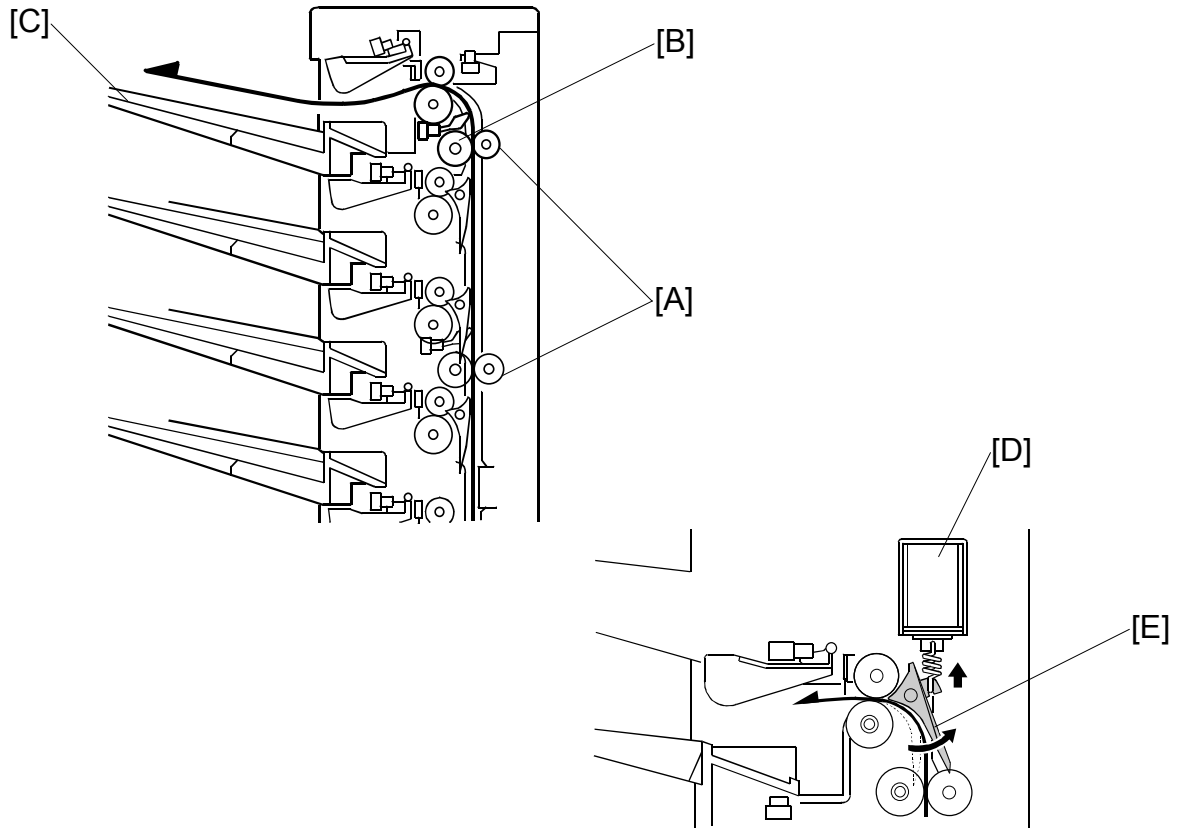



1. Original Paper Path
2. Vertical Transport Path
3. LCT Feed
4. Selected Trays
5. Turn Gates
6. Mailbox Paper Path
7. Junction Gate (paper goes either up to the mailbox or out to the finisher's proof tray)

The solenoid for the junction gate (7) is part of the mailbox.

# 2.2 BASIC OPERATION

## 2.2.1 PAPER PATH






The unit is mounted on top the finisher and connected to the finisher by a 14-pin connector. When the leading edge of the paper passes and activates the entrance sensor of the finisher, the mailbox main motor switches on and the mailbox vertical transport rollers [A] begin to turn. The exit roller [B] feeds the paper out to the selected tray [C].

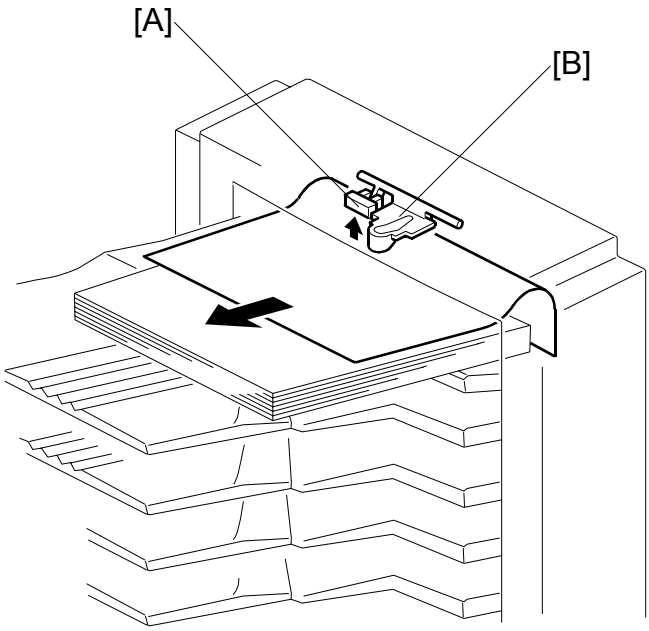
A solenoid [D] opens and closes the junction gate [E]. When a solenoid switches on, the gate opens and directs to the paper to the tray.

**NOTE:** When the top tray (bin 9) is selected, all solenoids are off and closed, allowing the paper to pass to the top tray (bin 9 does not require a solenoid).

When the last sheet is fed out, it switches off the vertical transport sensor, and both the mailbox main motor and the junction gate solenoid of the selected bin switch off. The mailbox normally feeds paper at 372 mm/s, about the same speed as the finisher. (The finisher speed is 370 mm/s.)

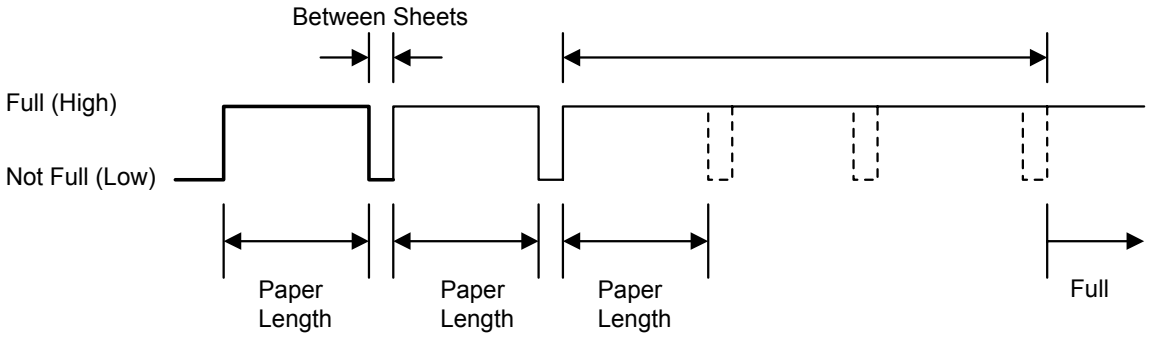
# 2.3 OVERFLOW DETECTION

## 2.3.1 OVERVIEW




An overflow sensor [A] and actuator [B] are above the exit of each paper tray. The actuator, mounted on a swivel arm, remains in contact with the top of the stack. The actuator rises as the stack becomes higher until it activates the sensor. Then, a tray full message appears on the operation panel and the job halts. If the paper is removed before the tray is full, the job continues.

## 2.3.2 DETECTION TIMING




When the mailbox exit sensor goes high for the prescribed time (T), the machine determines that the tray is full. The value of T is calculated, regardless of paper size, as follows:

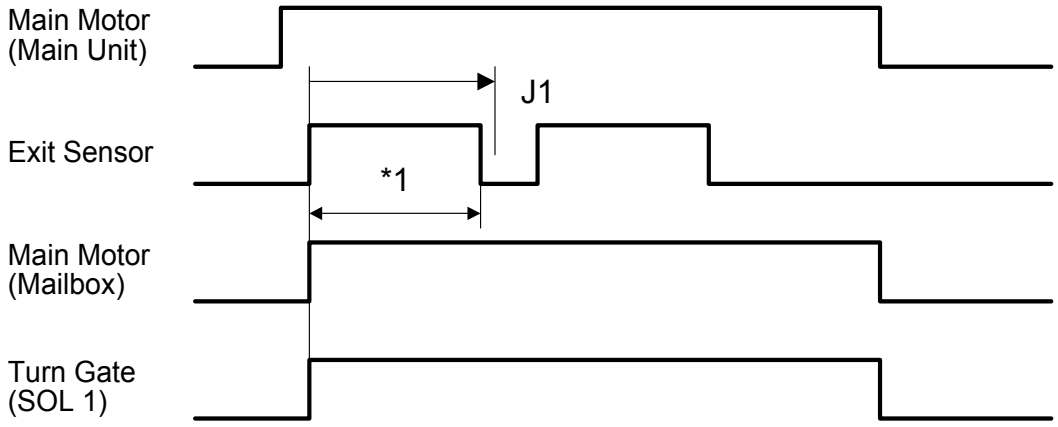
T (s) = (60/s x max. size ppm) x 3 s

After the tray full sensor switches on, if it remains on for the feeding of eight additional sheets, then this notifies the machine that the tray is full.

"T" is calculated as shown below. For example, for a minimum ppm of 12 prints (regardless of paper size), the value T is 15 s. Then, if the sensor detects paper for 15 s or more, the machine stops the copy job.

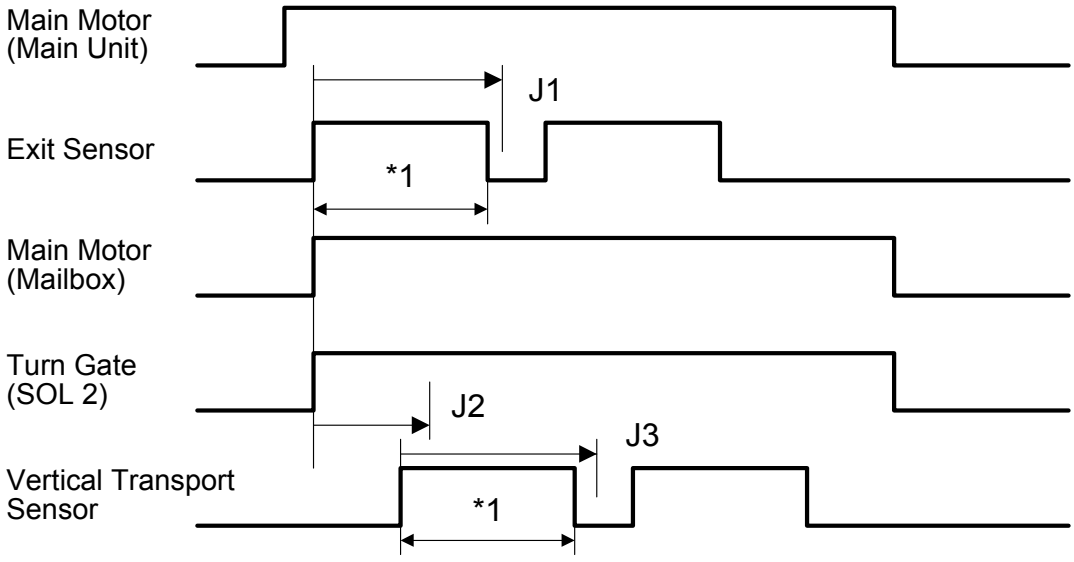
# 2.4 PAPER MISFEED DETECTION TIMING

## 2.4.1 A4 SIDEWAYS (LEF) → 1ST BIN TRAY




***1: Time required for A4 LEF**

## 2.4.2 A4 SIDEWAYS (LEF) → 2ND ~ 9TH BIN TRAY




***1: Time required for A4 Sideways (LEF)**
***2: Feed to 9th Tray: All SOLs OFF.**

**J1 Timing:** After the leading edge of the sheet activates the mailbox exit sensor, a misfeed is detected if the sensor does not switch off within:

X+0.5 s

Where X = The amount of time prescribed for the paper size to pass the sensor. (X = 1.74 s for A4 Sideways for example)

**J2 Timing:** After the mailbox paper exit sensor is activated, the machine determines that the paper has not yet fed and detects a misfeed if the vertical transport sensor does not activate within the time prescribed for the paper size (1.94 s for A4 paper, for example)

**J3 Timing:** After the vertical transport sensor is activated, a misfeed is detected if the vertical transport sensor does not turn off within:

X+0.52 s

Where X = The amount of time prescribed for the paper size to pass the sensor. (X = 2.26 s for A4 Sideways for example)

# BOOKLET FINISHER & FINISHER SR3020/SR3030/SR4010/SR4020 B804/B805/D373/D374

| D373/D374 SADDLE STITCH FINISHER SR4010/4020 REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| | | None |

# BOOKLET FINISHER & FINISHER SR3020/SR3030/SR4010/SR4020

## TABLE OF CONTENTS


**1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT ..... 1**

1.1 COVERS ..... 1
1.1.1 EXTERIOR COVERS ..... 1
1.1.2 UPPER TRAY, END FENCE ..... 2
1.2 MAIN UNIT ..... 3
1.2.1 UPPER TRAY LIMIT SENSOR, LIMIT SWITCH ..... 3
1.2.2 POSITIONING ROLLER ..... 4
1.2.3 PROOF TRAY EXIT SENSOR ..... 4
1.2.4 UPPER TRAY HEIGHT SENSORS 1, 2 ..... 5
1.2.5 EXIT GUIDE PLATE, UPPER TRAY EXIT SENSOR ..... 5
1.2.6 PROOF TRAY FULL SENSOR ..... 6
1.2.7 FINISHER ENTRANCE SENSOR ..... 7
1.2.8 PRE-STACK TRAY EXIT SENSOR ..... 7
1.3 STAPLER UNIT ..... 8
1.3.1 CORNER STAPLER ..... 8
1.3.2 POSITIONING ROLLER ..... 9
1.4 FOLD UNIT ..... 10
1.4.1 FOLD UNIT ..... 10
1.4.2 FOLD UNIT ENTRANCE SENSOR ..... 12
1.4.3 FOLD UNIT EXIT SENSOR ..... 12
1.4.4 STACK PRESENT SENSOR ..... 13
1.4.5 FOLDING HORIZONTAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY) 14
1.4.6 FOLD VERTICAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY) ..... 17
1.5 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT ..... 19
1.5.1 BOOKLET STAPLER ..... 19
1.5.2 BOOKLET STAPLER MOTOR ..... 19

**2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS ..... 22**

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT ..... 22

2.1.1 GENERAL LAYOUT ..... 22
2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ..... 24
2.1.3 SUMMARY OF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ..... 28
2.1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT ..... 38
2.2 JUNCTION GATES ..... 40
2.2.1 PROOF MODE ..... 40
2.2.2 SHIFT MODE ..... 40
2.2.3 STAPLE MODE ..... 41
2.3 PRE-STACKING ..... 42
2.4 TRAY MOVEMENT MECHANISM ..... 44
2.4.1 UPPER TRAY ..... 44
2.4.2 LOWER TRAY (B804 ONLY) ..... 46
2.5 CORNER STAPLING ..... 49
2.5.1 STACKING AND JOGGING ..... 49
2.5.2 STAPLER MOVEMENT ..... 50
2.5.3 CORNER STAPLING ..... 52
2.6 BOOKLET STAPLING (B804 ONLY) ..... 53
2.6.1 BOOKLET PRESSURE MECHANISM ..... 53
2.6.2 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING ..... 54
2.6.3 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING MECHANISMS ..... 60
2.7 UPPER TRAY OUTPUT ..... 63
2.7.1 FEED OUT ..... 63
2.7.2 FEED OUT STACKING ..... 64
2.8 PUNCH UNIT B702 (FOR B804/B805) ..... 65
2.8.1 OVERVIEW OF OPERATION ..... 65
2.8.2 PUNCH MECHANISMS ..... 67
2.8.3 PUNCH HOPPER MECHANISM ..... 70
2.9 FINISHER JAM DETECTION ..... 72

# Read This First

## Safety and Symbols

### Replacement Procedure Safety

**⚠CAUTION**

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

### Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

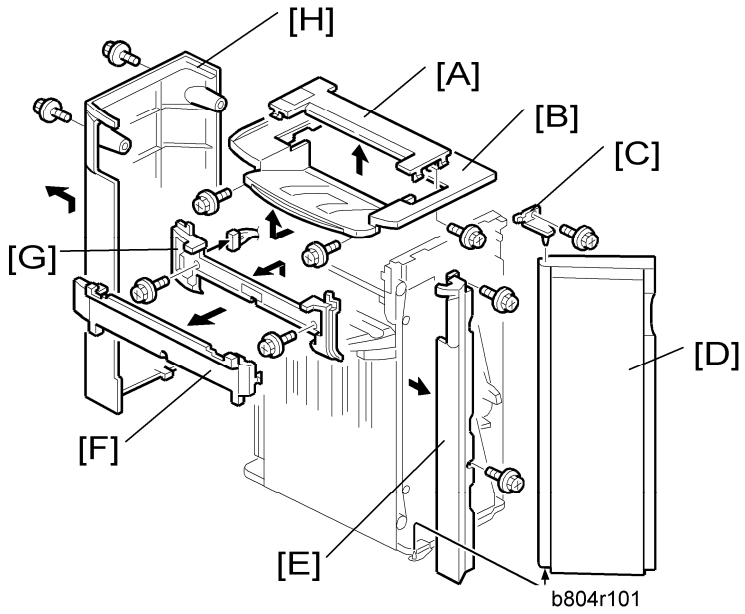
: Clip ring

: E-ring

# 1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

## 1.1 COVERS

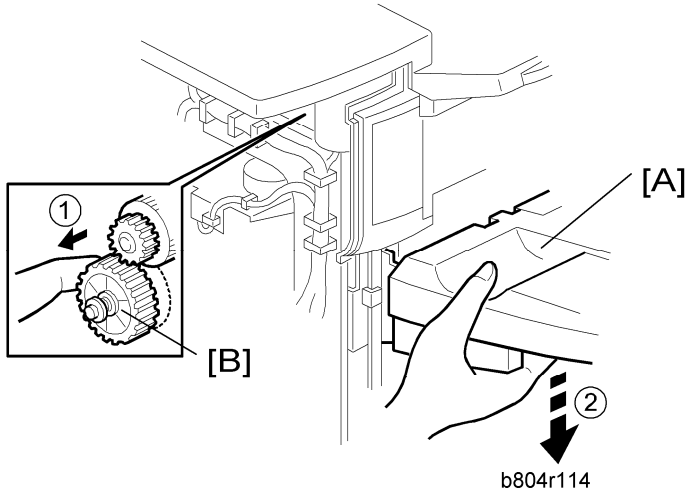
### 1.1.1 EXTERIOR COVERS



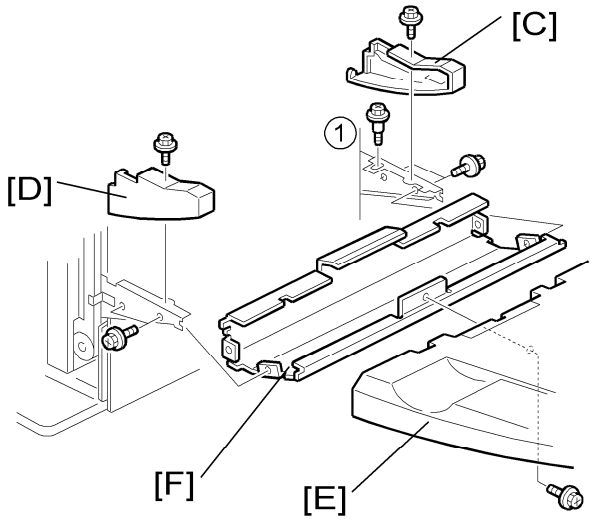

1. Open the front door [D].
2. Small upper cover [A] (x1)
3. Upper cover [B] (x2)
4. Front door bracket [C] (x1)
5. Front door [D]
6. Front left side cover [E] (x2)
7. Cover [F]
8. Paper exit cover [G] (x2)
9. Rear cover [H] (x2)

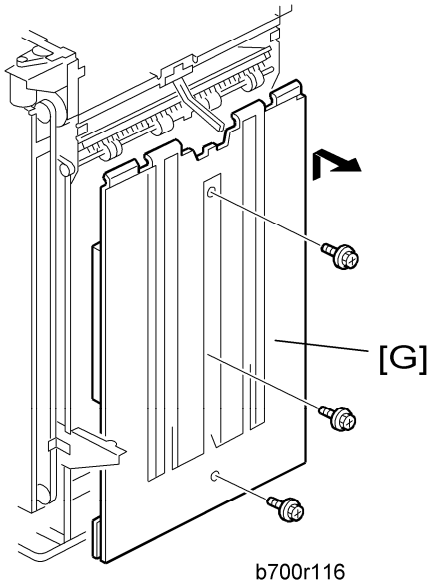
## 1.1.2 UPPER TRAY, END FENCE

1. Remove the rear cover. (* "Exterior Covers")




1. Support the tray [A] with your right hand.
2. Pull gear [B] toward you ① to release.
3. Slowly lower the tray ② until it stops.

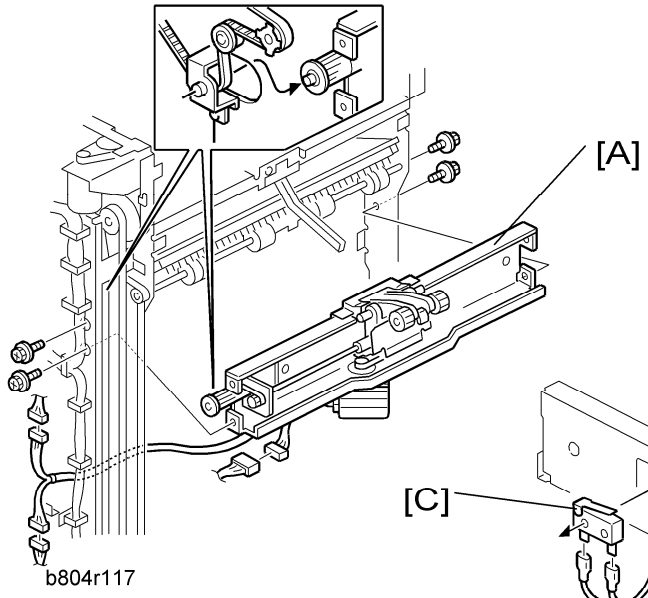


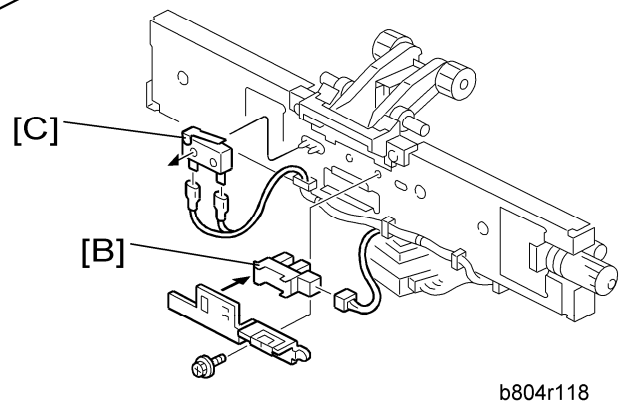




4. Front side cover [C] (x1)
5. Rear side cover [D] (x1)
6. Upper tray [E] (x1)
7. Tray bracket [F] (x4, x1 shoulder screw ①)
8. End Fence [G](x3)

# 1.2 MAIN UNIT

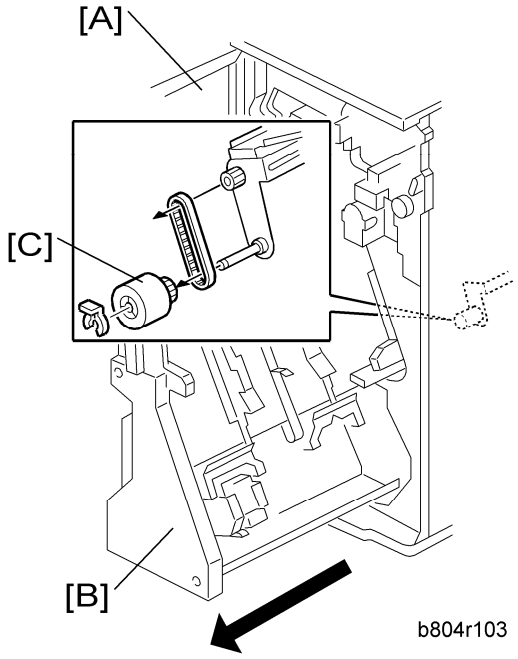
## 1.2.1 UPPER TRAY LIMIT SENSOR, LIMIT SWITCH



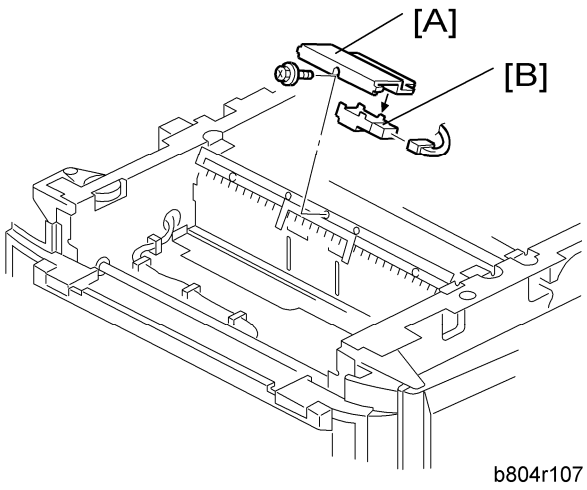

1. Front door, front left side cover, rear cover, upper cover (☛ "Exterior Cover")
2. End fence (☛1.1.2 "Upper Tray, End Fence")
3. Upper tray exit mechanism [A] (x4, x3)
4. Upper tray limit sensor [B] (x1, x1)
5. Upper tray limit switch [C] (x2)

## 1.2.2 POSITIONING ROLLER




1. Open the front door [A].
2. Pull out the stapling unit [B].
3. Positioning roller [C] (x1, timing belt x1)

## 1.2.3 PROOF TRAY EXIT SENSOR

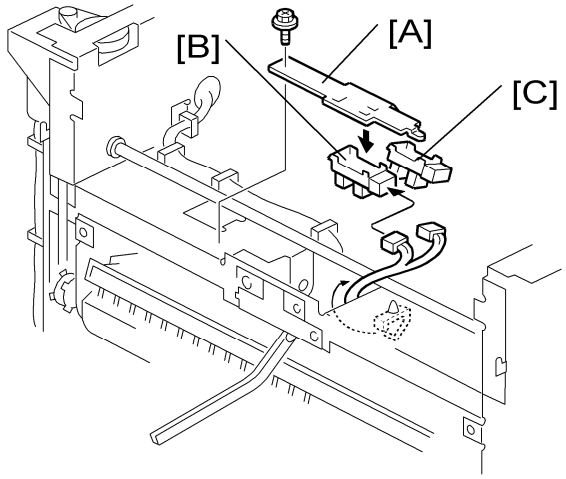



1. Small upper cover (1.1.1 "Exterior Cover")
2. Proof tray exit sensor bracket [A] (x1)

Main Unit

3. Proof tray exit sensor [B] (☞ x1)

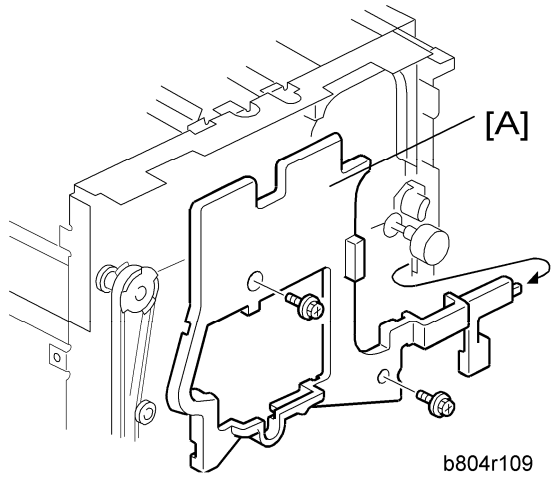
## 1.2.4 UPPER TRAY HEIGHT SENSORS 1, 2



b804r108

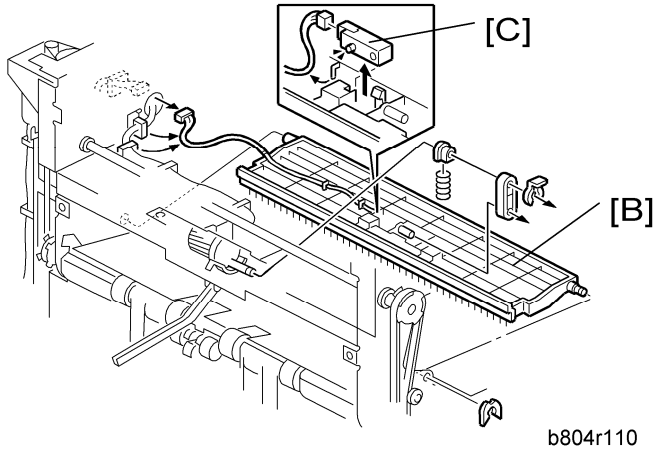
1. Small upper cover, upper cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Cover")
2. Upper tray paper height sensor bracket [A] (☞ x1)
3. Upper tray paper height sensor [B] – staple mode (S08) (☞ x1)
4. Upper tray paper height sensor [C] – non-staple mode (S09) (☞ x1)

## 1.2.5 EXIT GUIDE PLATE, UPPER TRAY EXIT SENSOR



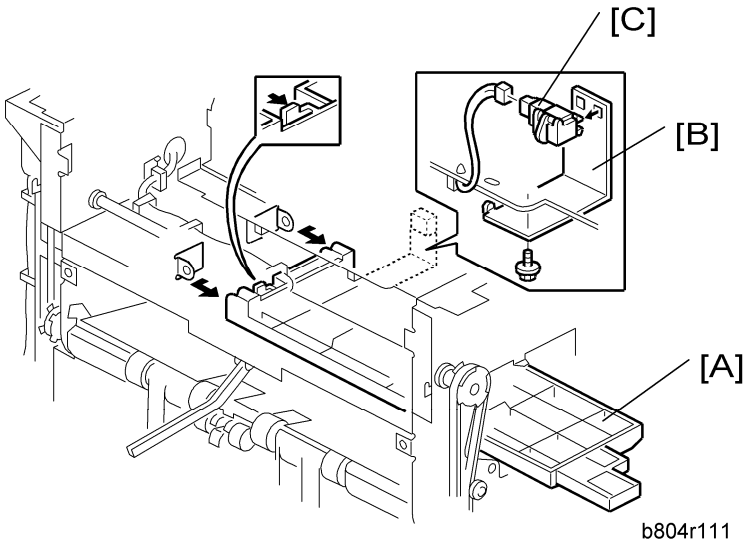
b804r109

1. Rear cover, Upper covers, Front door, Cover, Paper exit cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Cover")
2. Inner cover [A] (☞ x2)



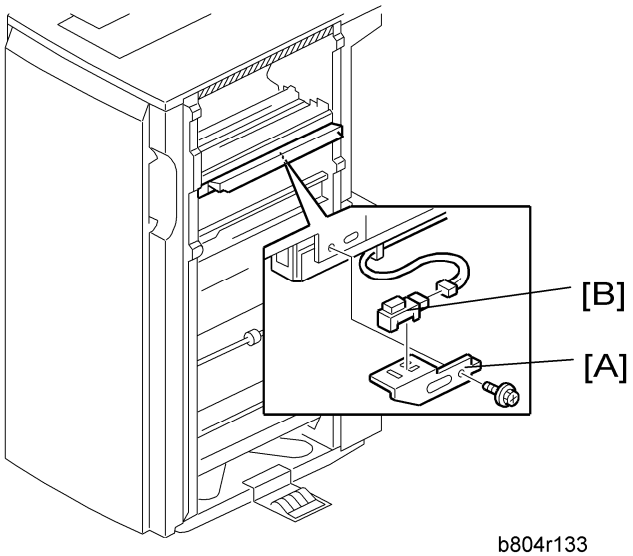

3. Exit guide plate [B] (x1, Link and spring, x1, x1)
4. Upper tray exit sensor [C] (S6) (x1)

## 1.2.6 PROOF TRAY FULL SENSOR




1. Exit guide plate. (1.2.5 "Exit Guide Plate, Upper Tray Exit Sensor")
2. Guide plate [A] (hook x 2)
3. Sensor bracket [B] (x1)
4. Proof tray full sensor [C] (S11) (x1)

## 1.2.7 FINISHER ENTRANCE SENSOR

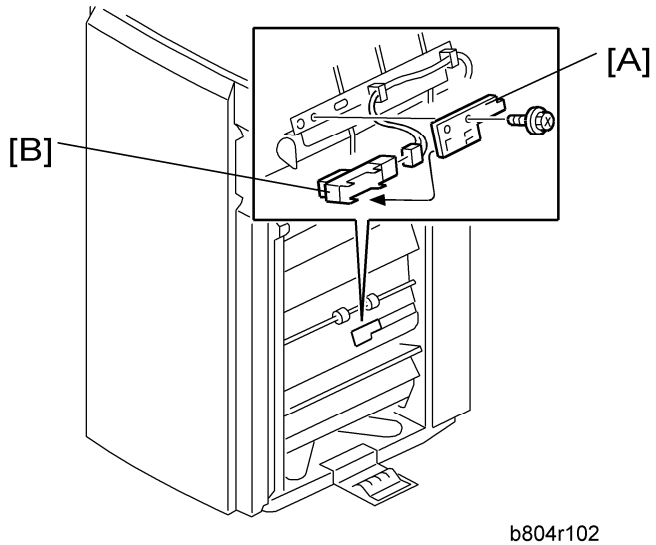



b804r133

1. Disconnect the finisher if it is connected to the copier.
2. Sensor bracket [A] (x1)
3. Finisher entrance sensor [B] (S1) (x1)



## 1.2.8 PRE-STACK TRAY EXIT SENSOR

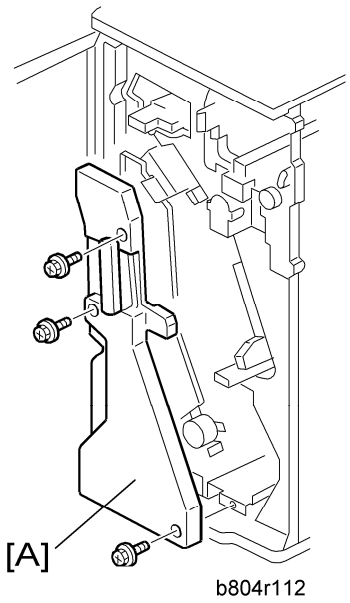



b804r102

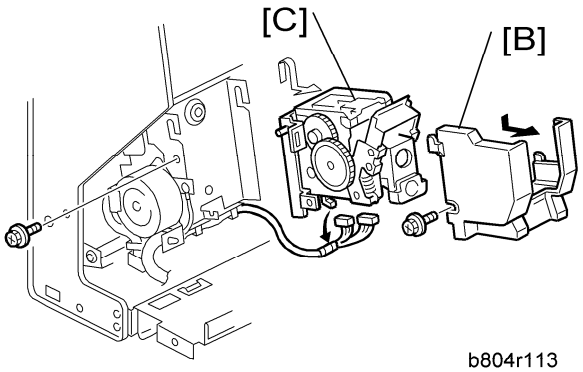
1. Disconnect the finisher if it is connected to the copier.
2. Sensor bracket [A]
3. Pre-stack tray exit sensor [B] (S2)

# 1.3 STAPLER UNIT

## 1.3.1 CORNER STAPLER



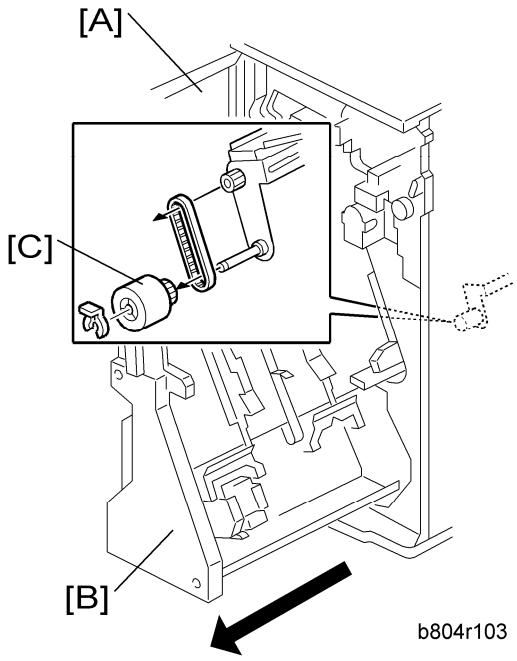

b804r112




b804r113

1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler unit.
3. Inner cover [A] (x3)
4. Stapler unit holder [B] (x1)
5. Corner stapler [C] (M20) (x1)

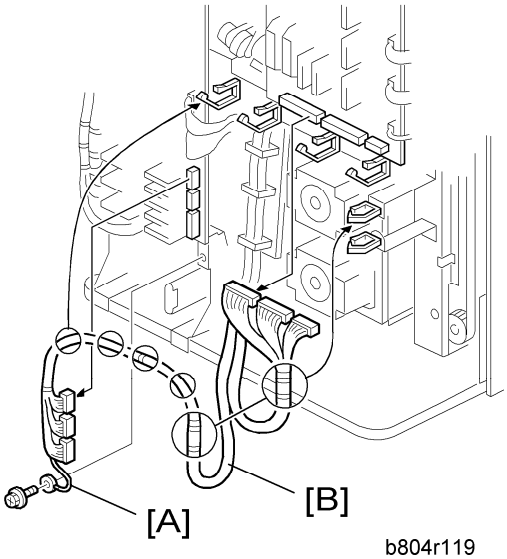
## 1.3.2 POSITIONING ROLLER



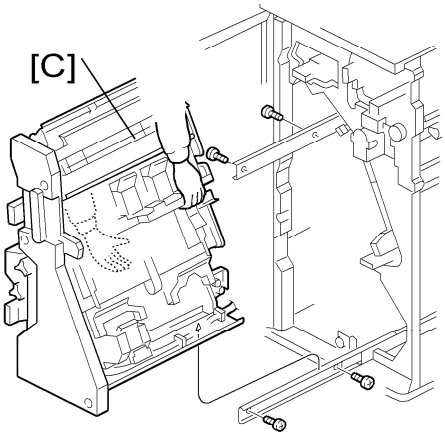

1. Open the front door [A].
2. Pull out the stapling unit [B].
3. Positioning roller [C] (⟲ x1, timing belt x1)

# 1.4 FOLD UNIT

## 1.4.1 FOLD UNIT




b804r119



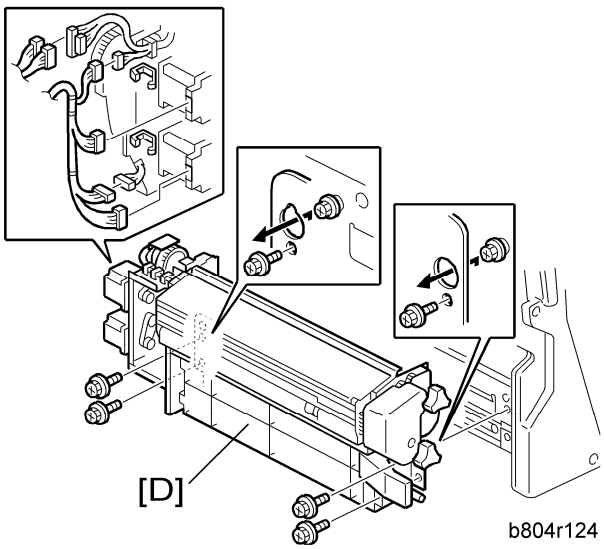

b804r801

1. Remove the back cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Covers").
2. Open the front door.

**⚠CAUTION**

- The stapler unit is heavy.

3. Ground cable [A] (☞ x1)
4. Harness [B] (☞ x6, ☞ x6)
5. Stapler unit [C] (☞ x4)




b804r124

Fold Unit

Important

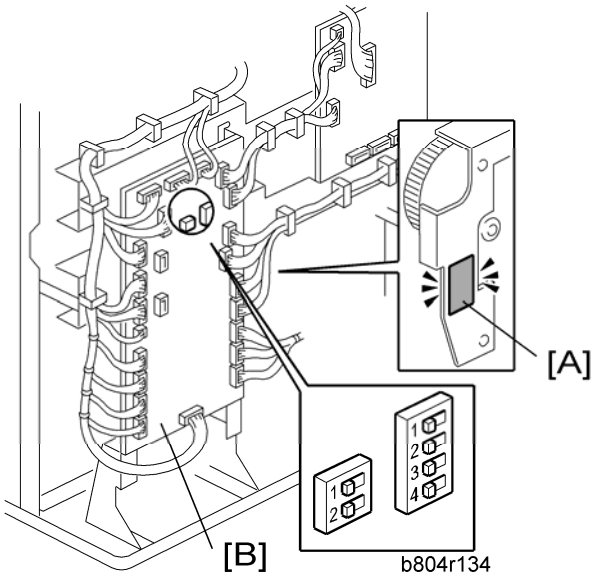
- Support the fold unit with your hand to prevent it from falling.

**CAUTION**

- The fold unit is heavy.

6. Folding unit [D] (x4, x2, x6)

**If you have replaced the folding unit:**

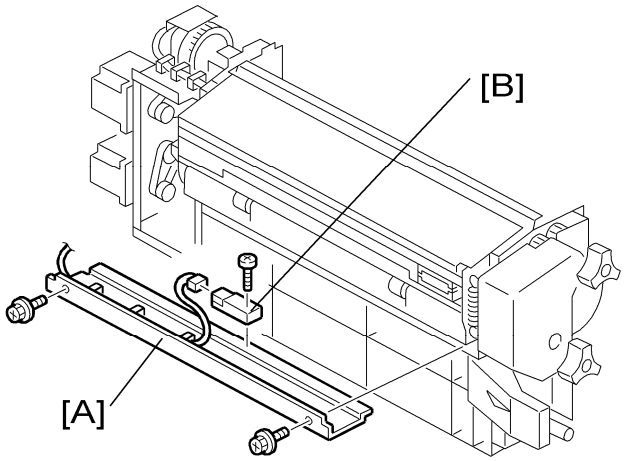



1. Read the DIP SW settings on the decal [A] attached to the back of the new folding unit.
2. Check the DIP SW settings on the main board [B] of the finisher.
3. If these settings are different, change these settings to match the settings printed on the decal attached to the folding unit.

Note

- Set DIP switches 1 to 4 (the switch set on the right). Do not touch the other DIP switches.

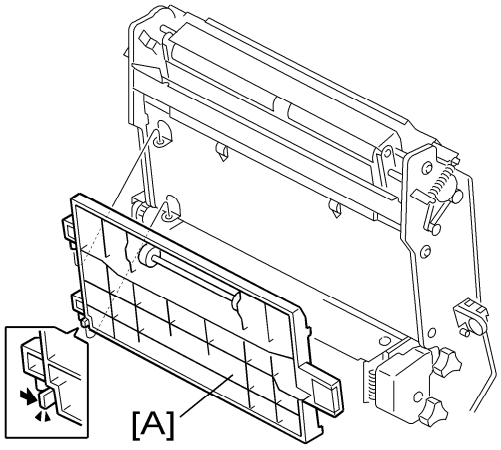
## 1.4.2 FOLD UNIT ENTRANCE SENSOR



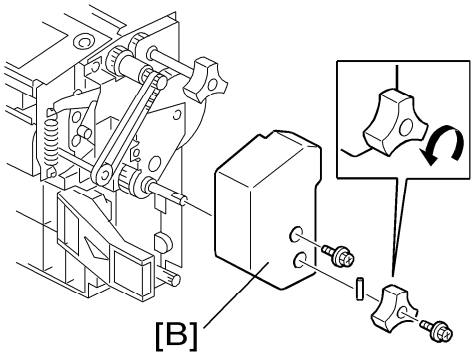

b804r132

1. Pull out the stapler unit (☛1.3.2 "Positioning Roller").
2. Fold unit entrance sensor bracket [A] (☞ x2)
3. Fold unit entrance sensor [B] (S26) (☞ x1, ☞ x1)

## 1.4.3 FOLD UNIT EXIT SENSOR



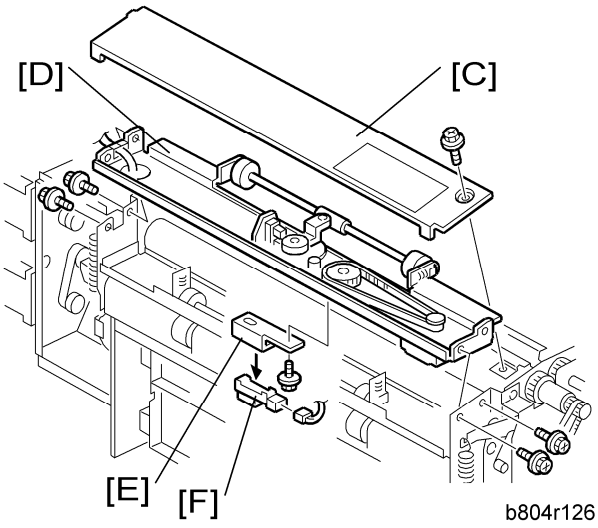

b804r121




b804r125

1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler unit (☛1.3.2 "Positioning Roller").
3. Fold unit vertical guide plate [A]
4. Fold unit inner cover [B] (☞ x2, Spring pin x1)

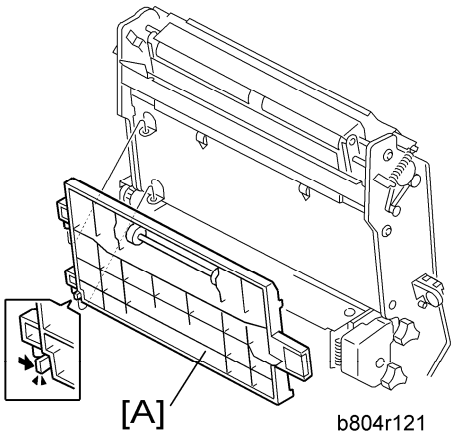
Fold Unit

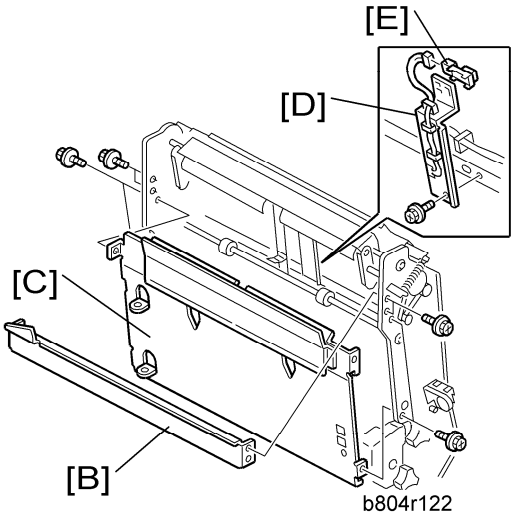



5. Fold unit upper cover [C] (x1)
6. Paper clamp mechanism [D] (x4)
7. Fold unit exit sensor bracket [E] (x1)
8. Fold unit exit sensor [F] (S31) (x1)



## 1.4.4 STACK PRESENT SENSOR



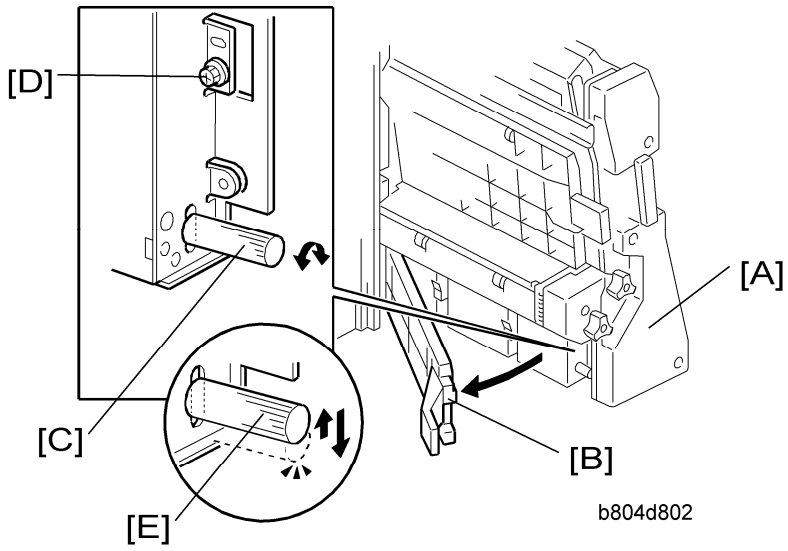

Important

- If you intend to correct the horizontal and vertical skew for the fold unit at the same time, do those adjustments first, then replace the sensor. (1.4.5 "Folding Horizontal Skew Adjustment" or "Fold Vertical Skew Adjustment")

1. Remove the stapler unit (1.4.1 "Fold Unit")

2. Guide plate [A].
3. Stay [B] (x4)
4. Left plate [C] (x4)
5. Sensor bracket [D] (x1)
6. Stack present sensor [E] (S32) (x1)

## 1.4.5 FOLDING HORIZONTAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY)




Important

- The fold unit is adjusted for optimum performance before the finisher is shipped from the factory. Do this adjustment only if the edges of folded booklets are not even.

1. Switch the copier on and enter the SP mode.
2. Europe, Asia: Use **SP6-134-001** (this is for A3 paper). North America: Use **SP6-134-005** (this is for DLT paper).

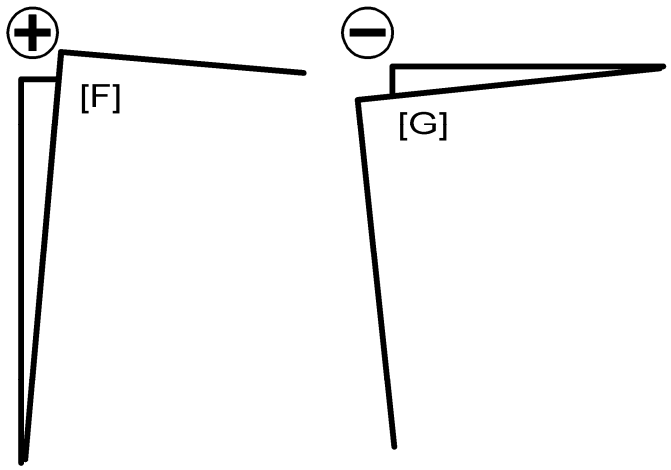
Note

- If the original setting of SP6-134-001 or -005 is not "0", then you must do the vertical skew adjustment (1.4.6 "Fold Vertical Skew Adjustment") after you finish this horizontal skew procedure.

3. Use the 10-key pad to input "-2" (mm) for the SP value. (Press ●/× to enter the minus sign.)
4. Press [#] then exit the SP mode.

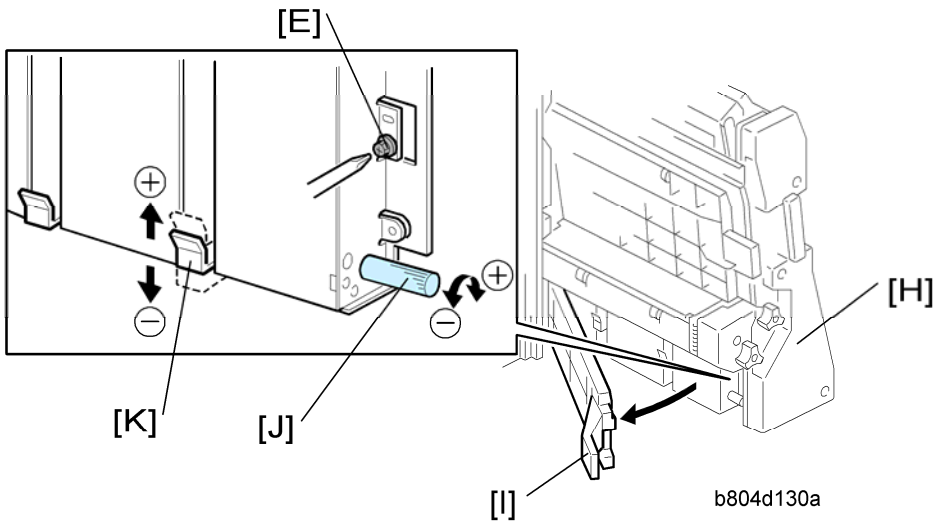
Fold Unit

5. Open the front door and pull the stapler unit [A] out of the finisher.
6. Open the guide plate [B].
7. Loosen the adjustment screw [C] and then tighten until it stops. (Do not over tighten.)
8. Remove the lock screw [D].
9. Raise the tip [E] of the adjustment screw very slightly and allow it to descend under its own weight.




b804r901

10. Push the stapler unit into the finisher and close the front door.
11. Do a folding test.
    - Switch the copier on.
    - Put one page of A3 or DLT paper in the ARDF.
    - On the copier operation panel, select booklet stapling.
    - Press [Start]. One sheet is folded.
12. Remove the sheet from the lower tray.
13. Hold the folded sheet with the creased side pointing down and face-up (the same way that it came out of the finisher).
14. Referring to the diagram, determine if the skew is + [F] or - [G].




15. Open the front door of the finisher and pull the stapler unit [H] out.
16. Open the guide plate [I].
17. Turn the adjustment screw [J] to correct the amount of skew you measured from the test sheet.
    - For + skew [F], turn the adjustment screw (clockwise).
    - For – skew [G], turn the adjustment screw to the left (counter-clockwise).
    - Every click in the +/– direction adjusts the fold position by 0.1 mm by moving the bottom fence [K].
18. Raise the tip of the adjustment screw [J] and allow it to lower under its own weight.
19. Attach and tighten the lock screw [L].
20. Push the stapler unit into the machine, close the front door, then turn the copier on.
21. Europe, Asia: Do **SP6-134-001** (this is for A3 paper). North America: **Do SP6-134-005** (this is for DLT paper).
22. Reset it to "0".
23. Do the test again.
24. If the result is satisfactory, this completes the adjustment. -or- If some skew remains, repeat this adjustment.

Note

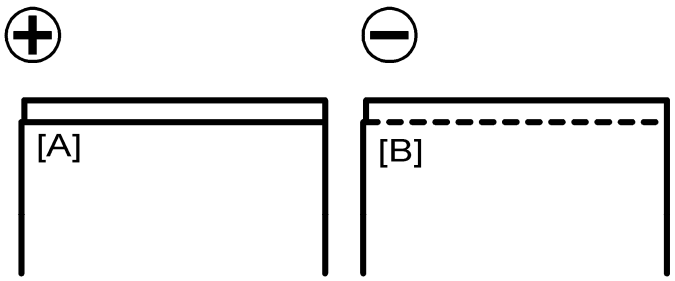
- After doing this adjustment, adjust for vertical skew, if necessary. (☛1.4.6 "Fold Vertical Skew Adjustment")

## 1.4.6 FOLD VERTICAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY)

Important

- The fold unit is adjusted for optimum performance before the finisher is shipped from the factory. Do this adjustment only if the edges of folded booklets are not even.

1. Switch the copier on.
2. Do a folding test.
   - Switch the copier on.
   - Put one page of A3 or DLT paper in the ARDF.
   - On the copier operation panel, select booklet stapling.
   - Press [Start]. One sheet is folded.
3. Hold the folded sheet with the creased side pointing down, and face-up (the same way that it came out of the finisher).



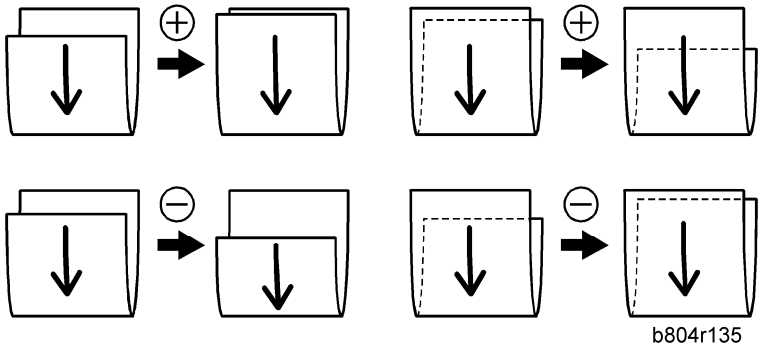

b804r902

4. Referring to the diagram, determine if the skew is positive [A] or negative [B].
5. Measure the amount of skew.
6. Enter the SP mode
   - Europe, Asia: Use **SP6-134-001** (this is for A3 paper).
   - North America: Use **SP6-134-005** (this is for DLT paper).
7. Enter one-half the measured amount of skew. Example: If the measure amount of skew is -1.2 mm, enter -0.6 mm

   Note

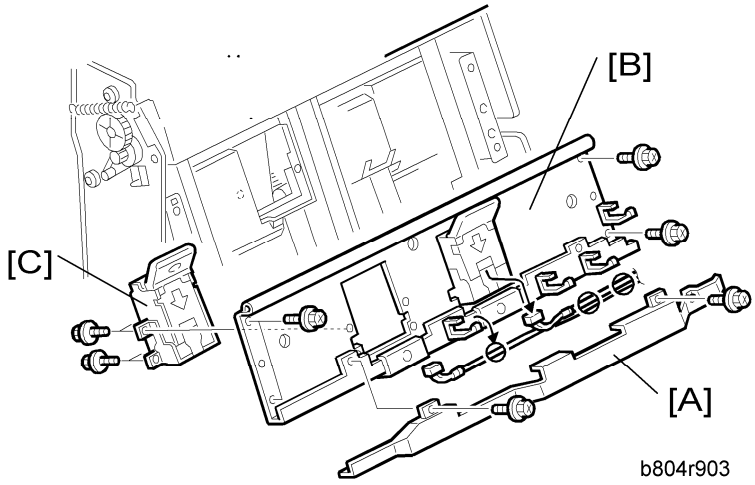
   - The range for measurement is –3.0 mm to +3.0 mm in 0.2 mm steps for every notch adjustment.
8. Exit the SP mode and do the test again (steps 2 to 5).
9. Repeat this procedure until the skew is corrected.

   The illustration below shows the effects of +/- adjustment with SP6113. (The vertical arrows show the direction of paper feed.)


b804r135

# 1.5 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT

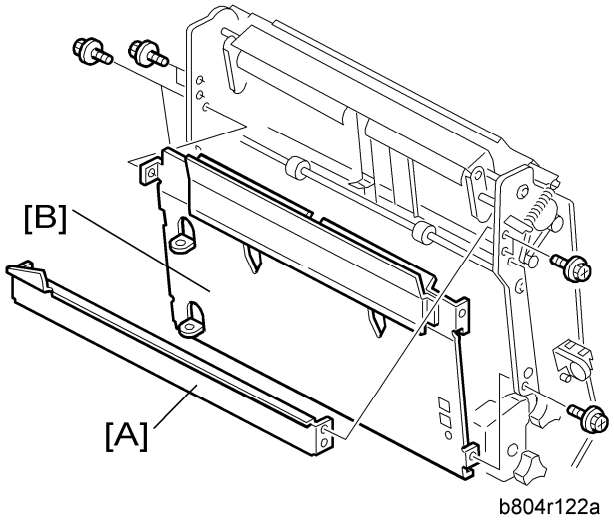
## 1.5.1 BOOKLET STAPLER




1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler unit (☛1.2.2 "Positioning Roller").
3. Harness cover [A] (x2)
4. Booklet stapler support stay [B] (x4, x2, x4)
5. Stapler [C] (x4)

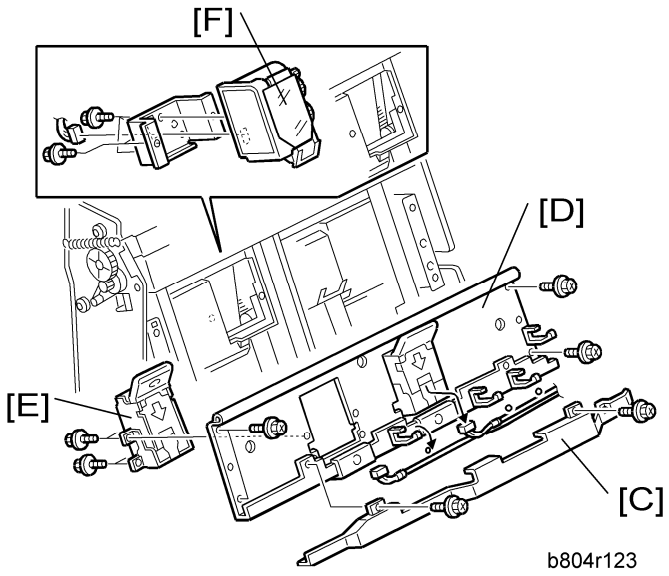
## 1.5.2 BOOKLET STAPLER MOTOR

1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the stapler unit. (☛1.4.1 "Fold Unit")



b804r122a

3. Stay [A] (x4).
4. Left plate [B] (x4)



b804r123

5. Harness cover [C] (x2)
6. Booklet stapler support stay [D] (x4, x2, x4)
7. Booklet stapler [E] (x4)
8. Booklet stapler motor [F] (x2, x1)

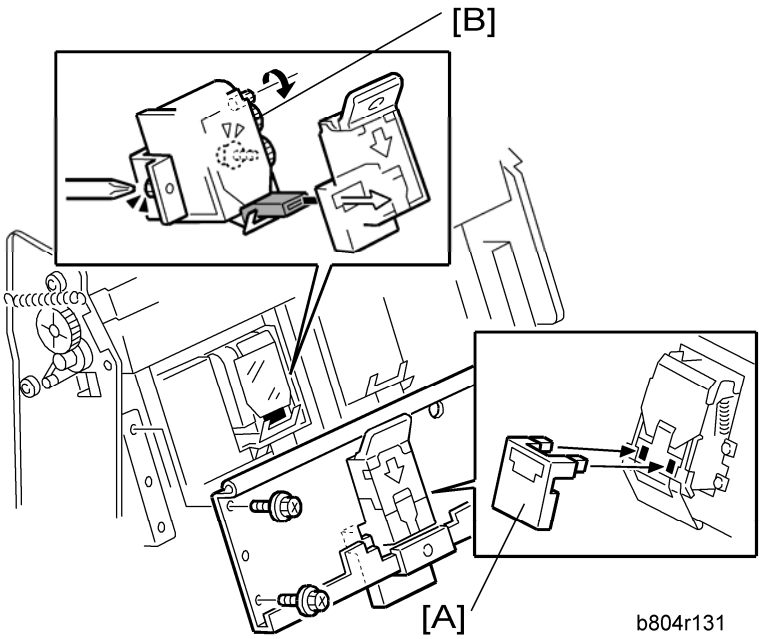
## *To Reattach the Booklet Stapler Motor*

1. Reattach the booklet stapler motor.

Important

- Do not tighten the screws.

Booklet Stapler Unit




2. Attach the special tool [A] and reattach the booklet stapler stay.

Note

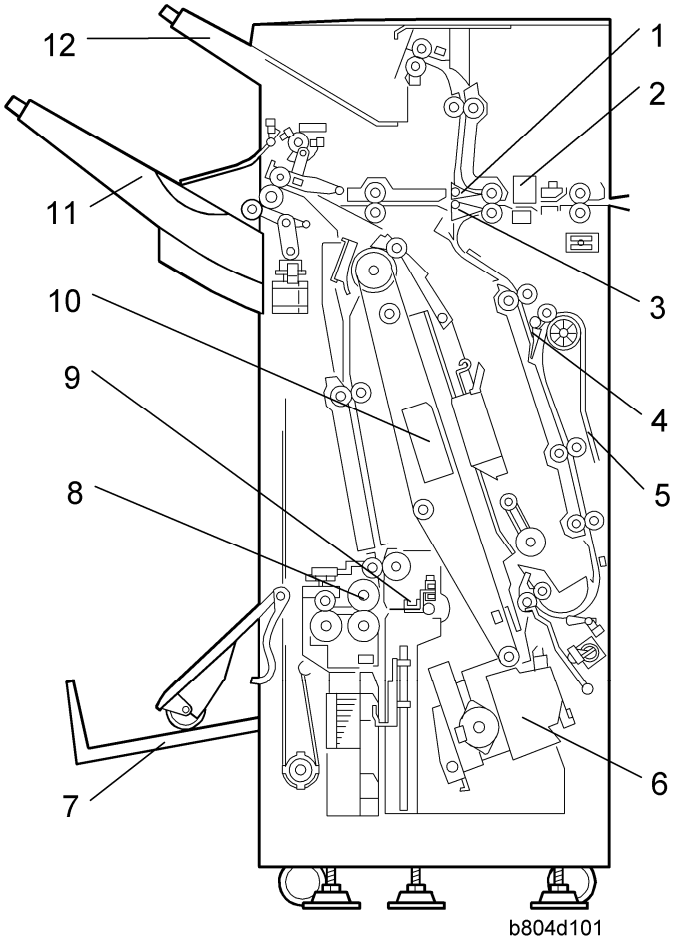
- This tool is included with the stapler spare part.

3. Turn the gear [B] with your finger until it stops.
4. Tighten the screws to attach to the booklet stapler motor.
5. Remove the stay again and remove the special tool.
6. Reattach the booklet stapler stay.
7. Push the stapler unit into the machine.

# 2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

## 2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT

### 2.1.1 GENERAL LAYOUT




| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Proof Tray Junction Gate | 7. Lower Tray (Booklet)*[1] |
| 2. Punch Unit | 8. Folder Rollers*[1] |
| 3. Stapler Junction Gate | 9. Folder Plate*[1] |
| 4. Pre-Stack Junction Gate | 10. Booklet Stapler*[1] |
| 5. Pre-Stack Tray | 11. Upper Tray (Shift) |
| 6. Corner Stapler (M20) | 12. Proof Tray |

Component Layout

*[1]: B804 Only

### *Paper direction*

The operation of the proof tray and stapler junction gates direct the flow of the paper once it enters the finisher:

| Proof Junction Gate | Stapler Junction Gate | Paper Feeds |
|---|---|---|
| Closed | Closed | Paper feeds straight through |
| **Open** | Closed | Paper feeds to the proof tray |
| Closed | **Open** | Paper feds to the staple tray |

### *Proof tray*

Copies are sent to the proof tray (12) when neither sorting nor stapling are selected for the job.

### *Upper tray*

The upper tray (11) receives copies that are sorted and shifted and also receives copies that have been corner stapled. Corner stapling is provided on both the B804 and the B805.

### *Pre-stack tray*

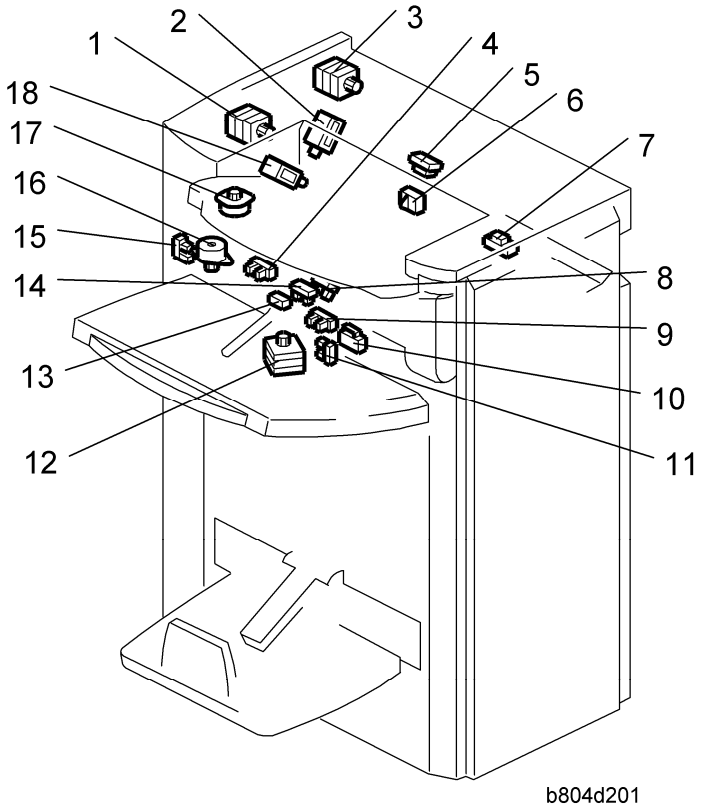
The pre-stack tray (5) has a switchback mechanism to increase the productivity of stapling. (☛2.3 "Pre-Stacking) Pre-stacking is done for corner stapling in the B804/B805 and for booklet stapling in the B804.

### *Lower tray*

The lower tray (7) receives copies that have been center folded and stapled (booklet stapling). Booklet stapling is not provided on the B805.

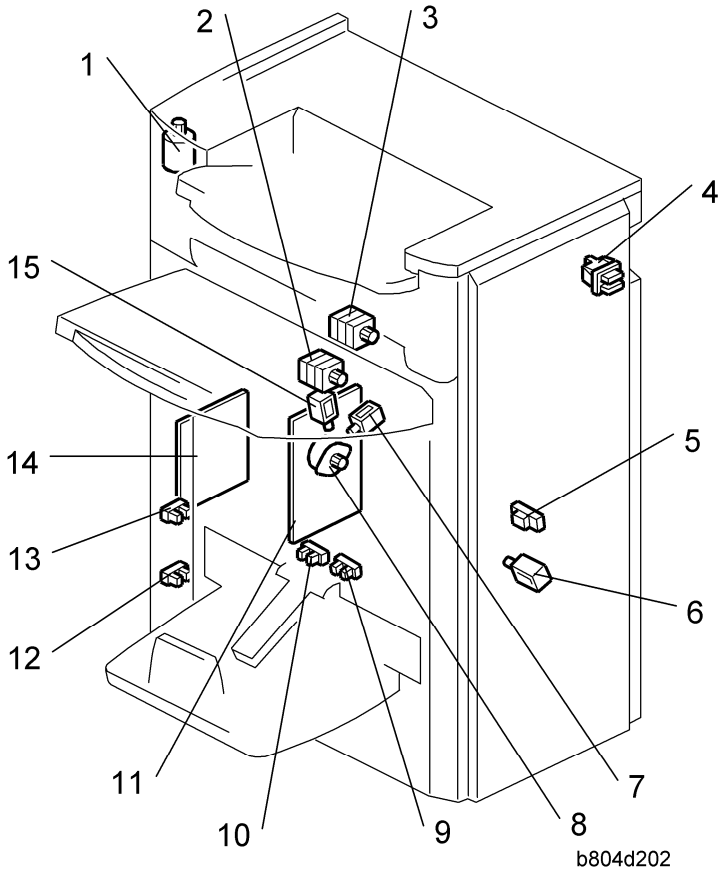
## 2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

### *Upper Area B804/B805*




| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Upper/Proof Exit Motor (M4)<br>2. Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid (SOL2)<br>3. Upper Transport Motor (M2)<br>4. Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor (S7)<br>5. Proof Tray Exit Sensor (S10)<br>6. Proof Tray Full Sensor (S11)<br>7. Finisher Entrance Sensor (S1)<br>8. Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (S9) (Non-Staple Mode)<br>9. Upper Tray Limit Sensor (S12) | 10. Upper Tray Limit Switch (SW2)<br>11. Stacking Roller HP Sensor (S13)<br>12. Stacking Sponge Roller Motor (M10)<br>13. Upper Tray Exit Sensor (S6)<br>14. Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (S8) (Staple Mode)<br>15. Shift Roller HP Sensor (S5)<br>16. Shift Roller Motor (M18)<br>17. Exit Guide Plate Motor (M19)<br>18. Proof Junction Gate Solenoid (SOL1) |

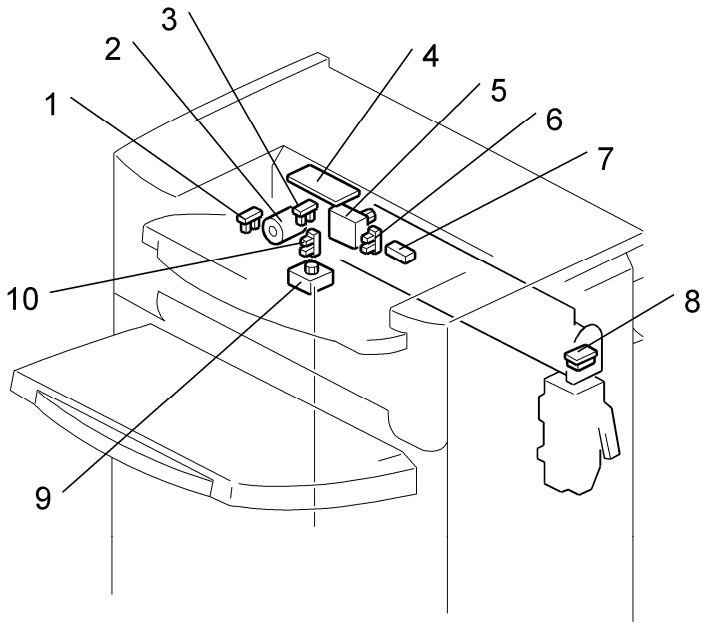
### *Lower Area B804/B805*




| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Upper Tray Lift Motor (M21)<br>2. Lower Transport Motor (M3)<br>3. Entrance Motor (M1)<br>4. Front Door Safety Switch (SW1)<br>5. Pre-Stack Tray Exit Sensor (S2)<br>6. Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid (SOL4)<br>7. Positioning Roller Solenoid (SOL3) | 8. Positioning Roller Motor (M14)<br>9. Lower Tray Full Sensor – Front (S34)*1<br>10. Lower Tray Full Sensor – Rear (S33)*1<br>11. Main Board (PCB1)<br>12. Upper Tray Full Sensor – (S20) *2<br>13. Upper Tray Full Sensor – (S19)<br>14. Booklet Stapler Board (PCB2)*1<br>15. Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid – (SOL5) *1 |

*1: B804 Only, *2: B805 Only

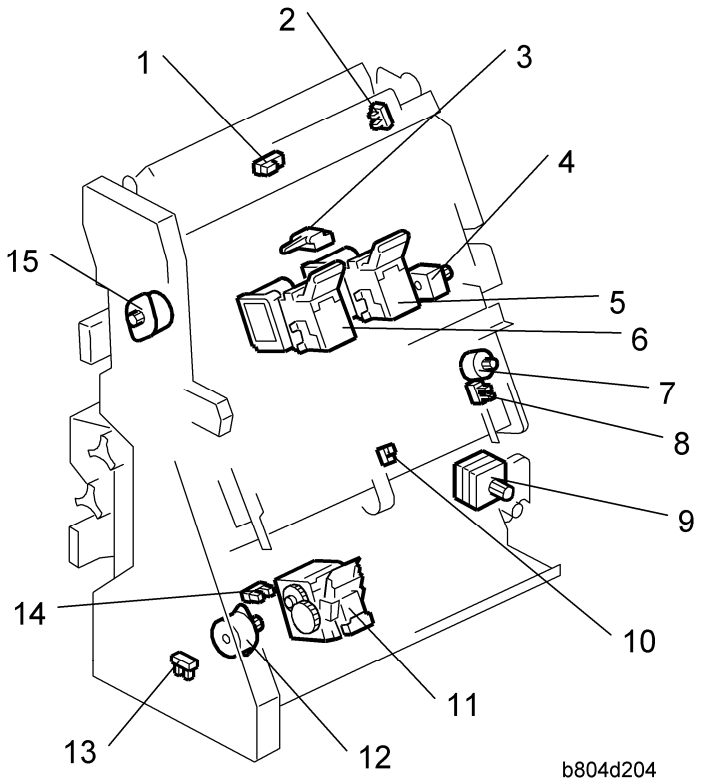
### *Punch Unit B702*




b804d203a

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Punch Encoder Sensor (S24)<br>2. Punch Drive Motor (M24)<br>3. Punch HP Sensor (S24)<br>4. Punch Unit Board (PCB3)<br>5. Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor (M7) | 6. Paper Position Slide HP Sensor (S22)<br>7. Paper Position Sensor (S3)<br>8. Punch Hopper Full Sensor (S4)<br>9. Punch Movement Motor (M9)<br>10. Punch Movement HP Sensor (S21) |

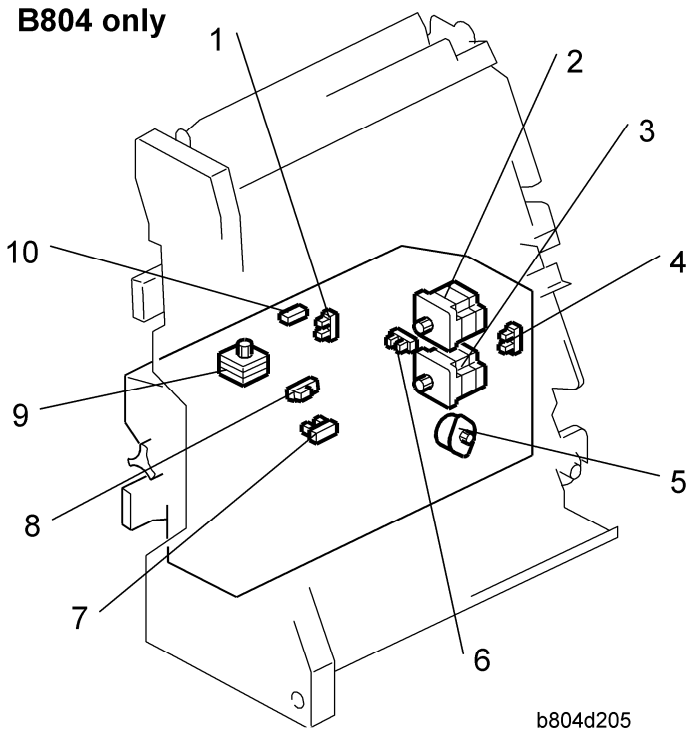
### *Stacker/Stapler - B804/B805*




| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Stack Present Sensor (S32)*1 | 7. Jogger Fence Motor (M15) |
| 2. Stack Junction Gate HP Sensor (S27)*1 | 8. Jogger Fence HP Sensor (S15) |
| 3. Stack Feed Out Belt HP Sensor (S16) | 9. Corner Stapler Movement Motor (M6) |
| 4. Feed Out Belt Motor (M5) | 10. Stapling Tray Paper Sensor (S14) |
| 5. Booklet Stapler EH185R – Rear (M23)*1 | 11. Corner Stapler EH530 (M20) |
| 6. Booklet Stapler EH185R – Front (M22)*1 | 12. Corner Stapler Rotation Motor (M13) |
| | 13. Corner Stapler HP Sensor (S17) |
| | 14. Stapler Rotation HP Sensor (S18) |
| | 15. Stack Junction Gate Motor (M17) *1 |

*1: B804 Only

### *B804 Fold unit*




| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Clamp Roller HP Sensor (S25) | 6. Fold Cam HP Sensor (S30) |
| 2. Fold Roller Motor (M12) | 7. Fold Bottom Fence HP Sensor (S28) |
| 3. Fold Plate Motor (M11) | 8. Fold Unit Entrance Sensor (S26) |
| 4. Fold Plate HP Sensor (S29) | 9. Clamp Roller Retraction Motor (M8) |
| 5. Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor (M16) | 10. Fold Unit Exit Sensor (S31) |

## 2.1.3 SUMMARY OF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

Here is a general summary of all the electrical components of the B804/B805 finishers.

Note

- In the table below a number that appears in bold text (**M8**, etc.) denotes a component that is on the 2000/3000 Sheet Finisher B804 only.

Component Layout

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| **Boards (PCB)** | | |
| PCB1 | Main Board | The main board that controls the finisher |
| PCB2 | Booklet Stapler Board | A separate board that controls booklet finishing. |
| PCB3 | Punch Unit Board | The board that controls the punch unit. |
| **Motors** | | |
| M1 | Finisher Entrance Motor | Drives 1) the finisher entrance rollers, 2) and the punch waste transport belt of the punch unit. |
| M2 | Upper Transport Motor | Drives the paper feed rollers that feed paper 1) to the proof tray, 2) straight-through to the upper tray, 3) the pre-stack tray entrance roller. |
| M3 | Lower Transport Motor | Drives paper feed rollers forward and reverse in the pre-stack tray for the switchback, and drives the other rollers in the lower transport area. |
| M4 | Upper/Proof Tray Exit Motor | Drives 1) proof tray exit rollers, 2) extension and retraction of the stacking sponge roller, 3) upper tray exit rollers. |
| M5 | Feed Out Belt Motor | Drives the feed out belt that moves the stapled stacks out of the stapling tray after stapling. |
| M6 | Corner Stapler Movement Motor | Moves the corner stapler horizontally on a steel rod to position the stapler at the stapling position at 1) the front, 2) the rear (straight stapling), 3) the rear (diagonal stapling), or 4) the front and rear for double stapling. |
| M7 | Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor | Drives the movement of the paper position slide that holds the paper position sensor (S3) that detects the position of the paper. |
| **M8** | Clamp Roller Retraction Motor | Drives a large cam that alternately clamps and unclamps the clamp retraction roller, the idle roller of the clamp roller pair. When these rollers are clamped, they |

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| | | are part of the paper feed path and feed the stack toward the bottom fence of the fold unit. When the idle roller is retracted, the stacks falls a very short distance (3 mm) onto the fold unit bottom fence below. These rollers remain unclamped while the bottom fence positions the stack for folding and while the stack is folded by the fold rollers. |
| M9 | Punch Movement Motor | Drives the front/back movement of the punch unit to position it correctly for stapling the paper below. |
| M10 | Stacking Sponge Roller Motor | Rotates the stacking roller that drags each sheet back against the end fence to jog the bottom of each sheet after feed out to the upper tray. |
| **M11** | Fold Plate Motor | Drives the fold plate that pushes the center of the stack into the nip of the fold rollers to start the fold. |
| **M12** | Fold Roller Motor | Rotates forward and drives the fold rollers that fold the stack and feed it out of the fold unit, reverses to feed the fold once more into the fold unit, and then rotates forward again to feed the fold out of the fold unit. |
| M13 | Corner Stapler Rotation Motor | Swivels the corner stapler and positions it so the staple fires at an oblique angle at the rear corner of the paper stack. |
| M14 | Positioning Roller Motor | Drives the positioning roller in the stapling tray. |
| M15 | Jogger Fence Motor | Drives the jogger fences in the stapling tray to jog both sides of the stack before stapling. |
| **M16** | Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor | Raises the bottom fence and stops when the center of the vertical stack is opposite the edge of the horizontal fold blade. The distance for raising the blade is prescribed as one-half the size of the paper selected for the job. For large paper, (A3, B4) the bottom fence first |

Component Layout

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| | | lowers the stack 10 mm below the fold position, and then raises it to the fold position. |
| **M17** | Stack Junction Gate Motor | Drives the large cam that operates the stack junction gate at the top of the stapling tray. When this gate is open, it directs the ascending stack to the upper tray if it has been corner stapled, or if it is closed the gate turns the booklet stapled stack down so it falls onto the bottom fence of the folding unit. |
| M18 | Shift Roller Motor | Drives the shift roller that operates in shift mode to stagger document sets as they feed out to the upper tray (making them easier to separate). |
| M19 | Exit Guide Plate Motor | Drives the mechanism that raises and lowers the exit guide plate. |
| M20 | Corner Stapler EH530 | This is the roving corner stapler, mounted on a steel rail that staples 1) at the front, 2) at the rear (straight staple), 3) at the rear (diagonal staple), and 4) font and rear (two staples). |
| M21 | Upper Tray Lift Motor | Raises and lowers the upper tray during feed out to keep the tray at the optimum height until it is full. |
| **M22** | Booklet Stapler EH185R: Front | Booklet stapler. Staples paper stacks in the center before they are folded. |
| **M23** | Booklet Stapler EH185R: Rear | Booklet stapler. Staples paper stacks in the center before they are folded. |
| M24 | Punch Drive Motor | Fires the punches that punch the holes in the paper. |
| **Sensors** | | |
| S1 | Finisher Entrance Sensor | Provides two functions: (1) Detects paper entering the finisher from the copier, and (2) Signals a jam if it detects paper at the entrance when the copier is switched on. |

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| S2 | Pre-stack Tray Exit Sensor | Detects 1) paper fed from the pre-stack tray to the stapling tray, and detects 2) paper in the pre-stack when the copier is switched on. (This sensor performs no timing function. The entire flow of paper through the pre-stacking mechanism is controlled by motor pulse counts.) |
| S3 | Paper Position Sensor | The photosensor that detects the edge of the paper and sends this information to the punch unit board where it is used to position the punch for punching the holes in the paper. |
| S4 | Punch Hopper Full Sensor | 1) A photosensor that detects and signals that the punch hopper is filled with punch waste and needs emptying, and 2) confirms the presence of the punch hopper and signals an error if it is missing or not installed completely. |
| S5 | Shift Roller HP Sensor | Located near the shift roller motor, controls the front-to-back movement of the shift roller as shifts paper during straight-through feed. |
| S6 | Upper Tray Exit Sensor | A flat, photo sensor located inside the guide plate, detects the leading edge and trailing edge of the paper as it feeds out to the upper tray during straight-through jobs (with and without stapling). When paper is fed to the upper tray, at the paper output slot this sensor signals an error when it detects (1) paper has failed to leave the paper exit (lag error), (2) detects paper has failed to arrive at the paper exit (late error), (3) detects paper is in the exit slot when the machine is turned on. |
| S7 | Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor | Controls the vertical movement of the control exit guide . The guide plate is in the home position when the guide plate is down and the actuator interrupts the sensor gap. |

Component Layout

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| S8 | Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (Staple Mode) | This is the upper sensor of the upper/lower paper height sensor pair that controls the lift of the upper tray. This sensor detects the paper height of the stack in the upper tray when the copier is operating in the staple mode. |
| S9 | Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (Non-Staple Mode) | This is the lower sensor of the upper/lower paper height sensor pair that controls the lift of the upper tray. When the machine is switched on, the upper tray rises until the actuator on the tray triggers this sensor to switch off the upper tray lift motor. |
| S10 | Proof Tray Exit Sensor | This sensor detects and times the feeding of paper to the proof tray. It also detects whether paper is present at the proof tray exit when the copier is switched on. |
| S11 | Proof Tray Full Sensor | The top of the stack in the proof tray increases until it nudges the feeler of this sensor. The sensor then signals that the proof tray is full and the job halts until some paper is removed from the proof tray. |
| S12 | Upper Tray Limit Sensor | This sensor controls the position of the upper tray 1) during straight-through feed out, 2) during shift feed out, 3) when the machine is turned on. The machine obeys the signal of whichever sensor is actuated first.<br>An actuator attached to an arm triggers this sensor. The tip of the same arm depresses the upper tray limit switch. If the sensor fails, the tip of the arm will activate the upper tray limit microswitch (SW2) and stop the lift of the upper tray.<br>**Note**: When the machine is turned on, the upper tray position is controlled by either this sensor or the upper tray paper height sensor (S9). |
| S13 | Stacking Roller HP Sensor | Controls the forward and back motion of the stacking roller (a sponge roller) located at the output slot of the upper tray. The sponge roller drags each ejected sheet |

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| | | back against the end fence of the upper tray to keep the bottom of the stack aligned. |
| S14 | Stapling Tray Paper Sensor | A photo sensor that detects whether paper is in the stapling tray. When this sensor detects paper, the bottom fence motor raises or lowers the bottom fence to position the selected paper size for booklet stapling. |
| S15 | Jogger Fence HP Sensor | Detects the home position of the jogger fences. When the actuator on the jogger fence interrupts this sensor, the jogger fence is in its home position and the jogger fence motor (M15) stops. |
| S16 | Stack Feed-Out Belt HP Sensor | Controls the position of the stack feed-out pawl on the stack feed-out belt. Once the actuator on the feed belt nudges the feeler of this sensor near the top of the stapling unit, the feed out belt motor (M5) remains on for the time prescribed to position the pawl at the home position to catch the next stack. |
| S17 | Corner Stapler HP Sensor | Located at the front the stapling tray and mounted above the steel rod where the corner stapler travels, this sensor detects the home position of the corner stapler. The corner stapler is in its home position when the actuator on the corner stapler unit interrupts this sensor. |
| S18 | Stapler Rotation HP Sensor | Controls the angle of the position of the corner stapler during oblique stapling. |
| S19 | Upper Tray Full Sensor (B804/B805) | **B804**: When the actuator on the side of the upper fence enters the gap of this sensor, the sensor signals that the upper tray is at its lowest position (full) and stops the job.<br>**B805**: One of two upper tray full sensors. This is the higher tray full sensor for A3 and other heavy paper. The other upper tray full sensor (20) is for lighter paper. |

Component Layout

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| S20 | Upper Tray Full Sensor (B805 only) | **B804**: This sensor is not used on the booklet finisher. There is only one upper tray full sensor (S18).<br>**B805**: One of two upper tray full sensors. This is the lower tray full sensor for A4 and smaller paper. The other upper tray full sensor (19) is for larger paper. |
| S21 | Punch Unit HP Sensor | Switches off the punch movement motor when the punch unit returns to its home position. Pulse counts determine where the punch unit pauses for punching and reversing. |
| S22 | Paper Position Side HP Sensor | Controls the movement of the paper position detection unit. Switches on when the horizontal detection unit is at the home position (HP is the reference point). |
| S23 | Punch HP Sensor | Detects the home position of the punch unit and controls the vertical movement of the punches when they fire. |
| S24 | Punch Encoder Sensor | When the punch mode is selected for the job (2-hole, 3-hole, etc.), the machine controls the operation of the punch drive (M24) motor which drives a small encoder shaped like a notched wheel. This wheel is rotated forward and reverse precisely to select which punches are moved up and down during the punch stroke. |
| **S25** | Clamp Roller HP Sensor | Controls the movement of the clamp retraction roller (the idle roller of the clamp roller pair). |
| **S26** | Fold Unit Entrance Sensor | Detects 1) the leading edge of the stack during booklet stapling, and 2) also used to signal an alarm if a paper is detected at the entrance of the fold unit when the copier is turned on. |
| **S27** | Stack Junction Gate HP Sensor | Controls the opening and closing of the stack junction gate. Switches on when the stack junction gate is open and at the home position. |

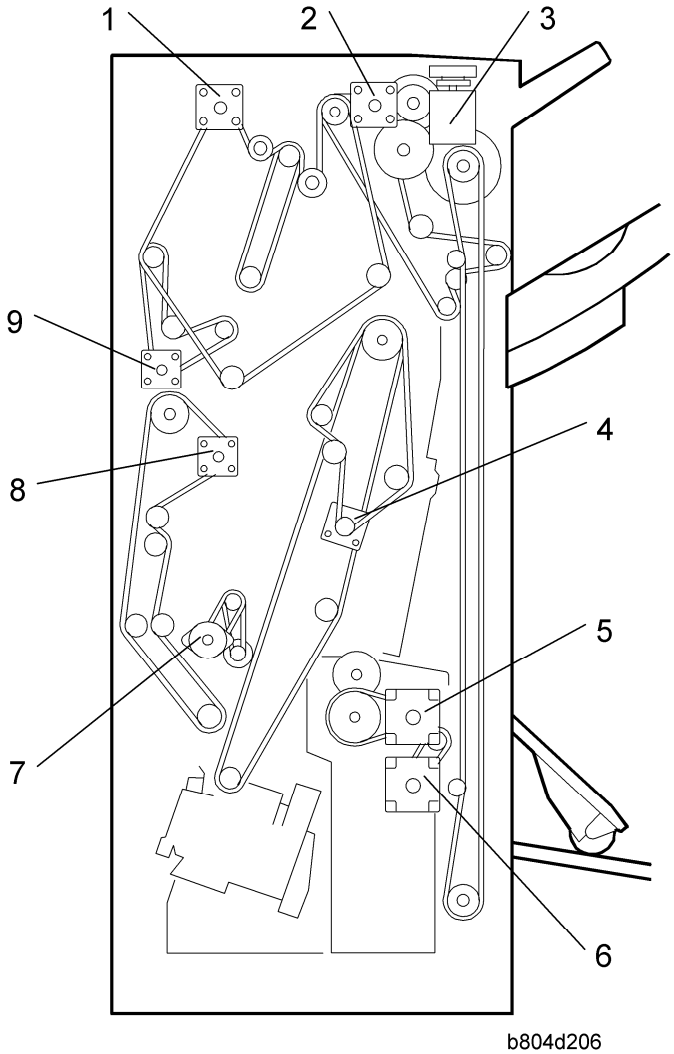
| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| **S28** | Fold Bottom Fence HP Sensor | Controls the movement of the bottom fence in the folding unit using pulse counts based on the size of the paper selected for the job to position the stack correctly for feeding. |
| **S29** | Fold Plate HP Sensor | Along with the fold plate cam HP sensor (S30) this sensor controls the movement of the fold plate . The fold plate has arrived at the home position when the edge of the plate enters the gap of this sensor. |
| **S30** | Fold Plate Cam HP Sensor | Along with the fold plate HP sensor (S29), this sensor controls the movement of the fold plate. The actuator mounted on the end of the roller that drives the folder plate forward and back makes three full rotations, i.e. the actuator passes the sensor gap twice and stops on the 3rd rotation and reverses. This accounts for the left and right movement of fold plate. |
| **S31** | Fold Unit Exit Sensor | 1) Detects the folded edge of the stack as it feeds out from the nip of the fold rollers, stops the rollers, and reverses them so the fold feeds back into the nip, 2) when the folded booklet finally emerges from the nip of the fold rollers, detects the leading and trailing edge of the booklet to make sure that it feeds out correctly. |
| **S32** | Stack Present Sensor | This sensor determines whether there is paper at the turn junction gate when the machine is turned on. If a stack is present, this triggers a jam alert. (This sensor performs no dynamic function such as pulse counting, etc. It only detects whether paper is at the top of the folding unit when power its turned on.) |
| **S33** | Lower Tray Full Sensor - Rear | This rear sensor is the lower sensor of the lower tray full sensor pair. Two actuators are attached to the actuator arm that touches the top of stapled and folded booklets as they feed out. The on/off combinations of the two |

Component Layout

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| | | sensors are used to detect when the tray is full and stop the job. (The lower tray is stationary. At tray full, the job halts until booklets are removed from the lower tray.) |
| **S34** | Lower Tray Full Sensor - Front | This front sensor is the higher sensor of the lower tray full sensor pair. Two actuators are attached to the actuator arm that touches the top of stapled and folded booklets as they feed out. The on/off combinations of the two sensors are used to detect when the tray is full and stop the job. (The lower tray is stationary. At tray full, the job halts until booklets are removed from the lower tray.) |
| **Solenoids** | | |
| SOL1 | Proof Junction Gate Solenoid | Opens and closes the proof tray junction gate. When the solenoid switches on, it opens the gate and paper is diverted to the proof tray. When this gate is closed, the paper goes straight to the upper tray. I |
| SOL2 | Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid | Directs paper to the stapling tray. When this solenoid is on, paper feeds straight through. When this solenoid is off, paper feeds to the stapler tray below. |
| SOL3 | Positioning Roller Solenoid | Engages the stapler transport motor and the positioning roller of the stapling tray. The positioning roller pushes each sheet down against the bottom fence to align the bottom the stack for stapling. (The jogger fences align the sides.) |
| SOL4 | Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid | Operates the pressure plate of the stapling unit. The pressure plate presses down the edge of stack in the stapling tray so it is tight for stapling. |
| **SOL5** | Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid | When the paper stack in the stapling tray feeds to the folding unit, this solenoid turns on and operates the roller that pushes on the surface of the stack to flatten it. |

| No. | Component | Function |
|---|---|---|
| **Switches** | | |
| SW1 | Front Door Safety Switch | The safety switch cuts the dc power when the front door is opened. |
| SW2 | Upper Tray Limit SW | A micro-switch cuts the power to the upper tray lift motor when the upper tray reaches its upper limit. This switch duplicates the function of the upper tray limit sensor (S12) and stops the upper tray if S12 fails. |

## 2.1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT




b804d206

Component Layout

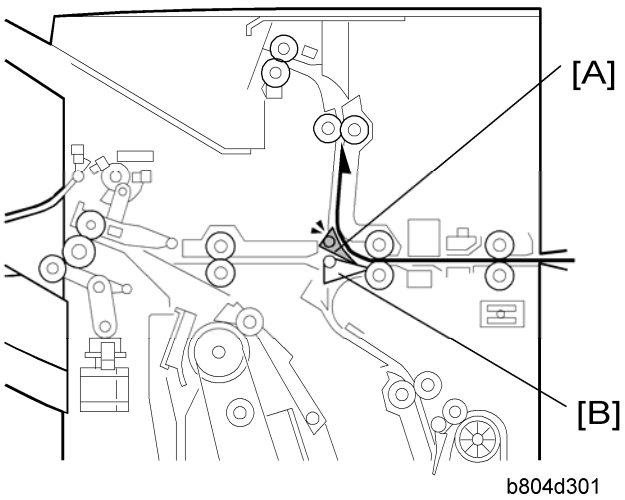
| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Upper Transport Motor (M2)<br>2. Upper/Proof Exit Motor (M4)<br>3. Upper Tray Lift Motor (M21)<br>4. Feed-Out Belt Motor (M5)<br>5. Fold Roller Motor*1 (M12) | 6. Folder Plate Motor*1 (M11)<br>7. Positioning Roller Motor (M14)<br>8. Lower Transport Motor (M3)<br>9. Entrance Motor (M1) |

*1: B804 Only

# 2.2 JUNCTION GATES

The positions of the proof tray and staple tray junction gates determine the direction of paper feed after paper enters the finisher.

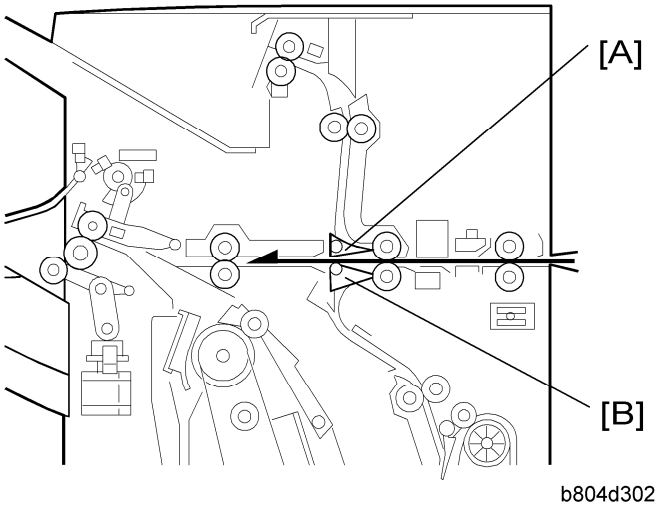
## 2.2.1 PROOF MODE




b804d301

Proof tray junction gate [A] opens. Staple tray junction gate [B] remains closed.
The proof tray junction gate directs paper to the proof tray above.

## 2.2.2 SHIFT MODE

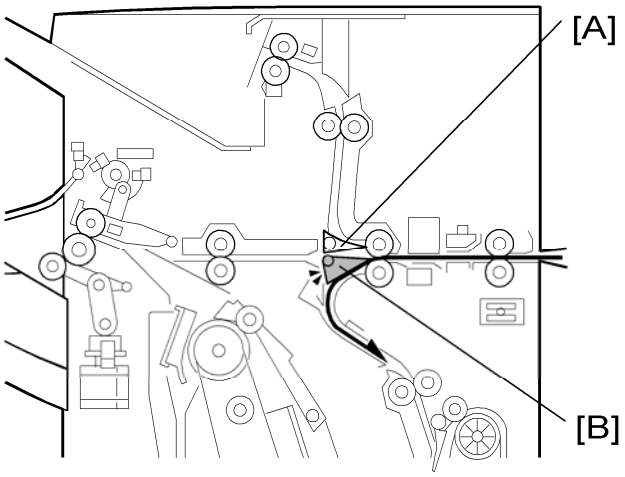



b804d302

Proof tray junction gate [A] remains closed. Staple tray junction gate [B] remains closed.
With both junction gates closed, the paper goes to the upper tray.

Junction Gates

## 2.2.3 STAPLE MODE

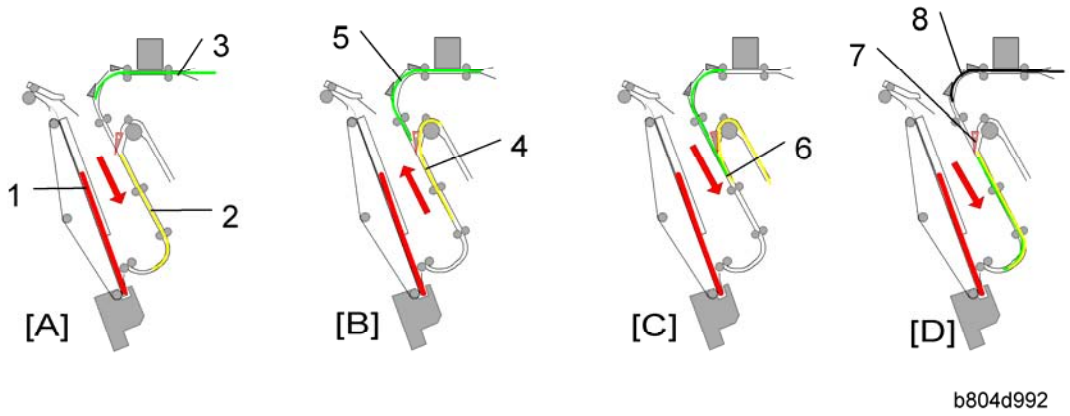



b804d303

Proof tray junction gate [A] remains closed. Staple tray junction gate [B] opens

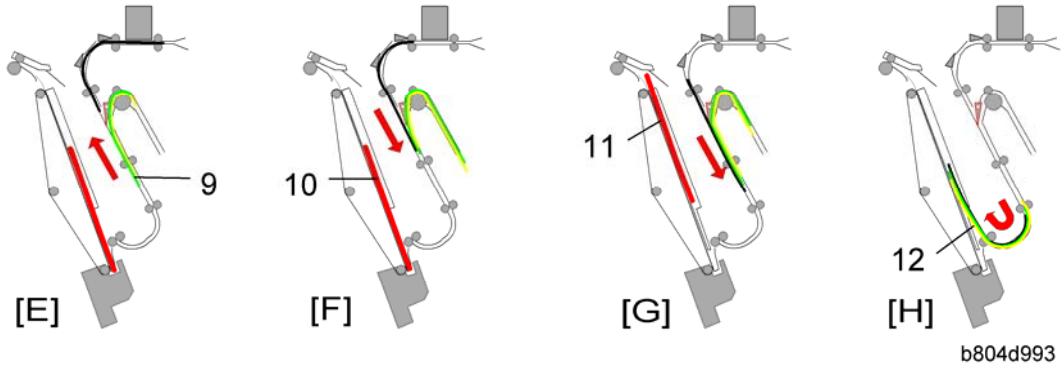
The staple tray junction gate directs the paper to the staple tray below for jogging and stapling.

## 2.3 PRE-STACKING




This example describes what happens to Set 2 during the feed and stapling cycle of sets that contain three pages.

- [A]: While the Set 1 is being stapled in the staple tray [1], the 1st sheet of Set 2 [2] feeds to the pre-stack tray, and the 2nd sheet of Set 2 [3] enters the finisher.
- [B]: The pre-stack junction gate opens and the 1st sheet of Set 2 [4] switches back to the top of the pre-stack tray as the 2nd sheet of Set 2 [5] starts to descend.
- [C]: As the 2nd sheet of Set 2 continues to descend, the 1st sheet of Set 2 is fed from the pre-stack tray. At this time the leading edges [6] of both sheets are even.
- [D]: The trailing edges of the 1st and 2nd sheets of Set 2 pass the junction gate [7] as the 3rd sheet of Set 2 [8] enters the finisher.




- [E]: The 1st and 2nd sheets of Set 2 [9] switch back together into the top of the pre-stack and wait for the 3rd of Set 2 sheet to arrive.
- [F]: The stapling of Set 1 in the staple tray [10] is completed.
- [G]: Set 1 [11] exits the staple tray.
- [H]: The three sheets of Set 2 [12] feed together into the stapler tray for stapling.

Pre-stacking is only done for A4, B5, and LT paper.

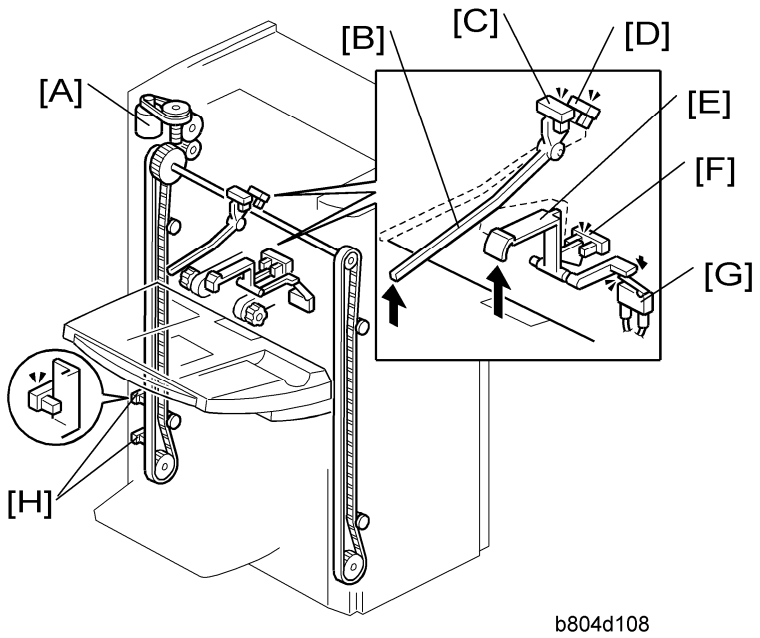
Pre-Stacking

In one-staple mode, one sheet goes to the pre-stacking tray. Then two sheets go to the stapler tray at the same time.

In two-staple mode and booklet mode, three sheets go to the pre-stacking tray. Then four sheets go to the stapler tray at the same time.

# 2.4 TRAY MOVEMENT MECHANISM

## 2.4.1 UPPER TRAY




[A]: Upper Tray Lift Motor
[B]: Upper Feeler
[C]: Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor 1 (Staple Mode)
[D]: Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor 2 (Non-Staple Mode)
[E]: Lower Feeler
[F]: Upper Tray Limit Sensor
[G]: Upper Tray Limit Switch
[H]: Upper Tray Full Sensors

Important

- The B804 (shown above) has only one upper tray full sensor (the higher sensor at [H]).
- The B805 has two upper tray full sensors (the upper and lower sensor at [H]). On the B805 the upper sensor detects tray full for heavier paper (A3, DLT, B4, LG, 12 x 18”), and the lower sensor detects tray full for lighter paper (A4, LT, etc.).
- The tray full capacity is 2,000 sheets (B804) for A4, LT and 3,000 sheets (B805) for

Tray Movement Mechanism

A4, LT.

Five sensors and one switch control the operation of the upper tray lift motor [A].

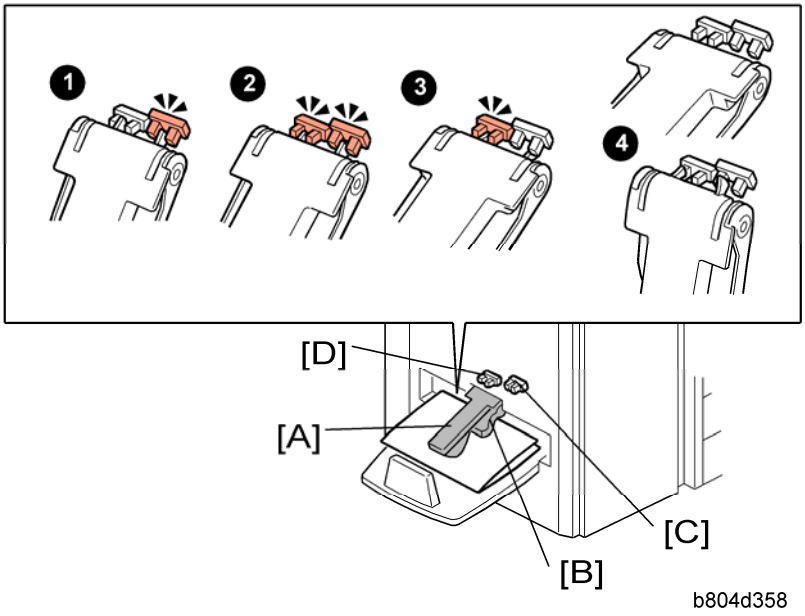
**Upper Tray Raising and Lowering**

| Operation Mode | Sensors, Switch | | | | Action |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | [C] | [D] | [F] | [G] | |
| Standby (Non-Staple Mode) | OFF | OFF | | | Stops the lift motor at the standby position when the actuator of the upper feeler deactivates sensor [C] (when it is between sensors [C] and [D]).<br>**Note:** Sensor [F] and switch [G] are used as backup if sensor [C] fails or if the upper tray is not attached. |
| Straight Through | | | ON | | **Non-staple mode operation:** During operation, tray lift is controlled only by sensor [F]. When the actuator leaves sensor [F], the tray lowers until the actuator reactivates sensor [F]. |
| Shift | | | ON | | |
| Standby (Staple Mode) | ON | | | | **Standby:** The upper tray stops and waits for the paper output when the actuator activates sensor [C]. [D] is not used for staple mode<br>**Staple Mode Operation:**<br>▪ The upper tray lowers the prescribed distance immediately after the stack exits.<br>▪ The upper tray rises until the actuator activates sensor [C] and stops the tray lift motor (and the tray) to wait for the next set.<br>▪ Sensor [F] and switch [G] are used as backup if sensor [C] fails. |

**Tray Full**

| | |
|---|---|
| B804 | When the actuator on the tray activates the upper tray full sensor [H] the tray lift motor [A] switches off. Operation resumes after some copies are removed from the tray. Upper Tray Capacity: 2,000 sheets (A4, LT) |
| B805 | The operation of the upper tray full sensor is the same as the B804. Capacity: 1,500 sheets for A3, B4 or other large paper.<br>An additional upper tray full sensor (below sensor [H]) allows more sheets to stack on the upper tray. Capacity: 3,000 sheets (A4, LT) |

## 2.4.2 LOWER TRAY (B804 ONLY)




The lower tray sensor actuator arm [A] rests on the top of the stack of stapled booklets as they are output to the lower tray. A flap depressor [B] keeps the open ends of the booklets down.

The front lower tray full sensor (S34) [C] and rear lower tray full sensor (S33) [D] detect when the lower tray is full of booklets.

Important

- The front lower tray full sensor is mounted higher than the rear lower tray full sensor.
- The lower tray is stationary. When it becomes full, the stapling and folding job stops until booklets are removed from the tray.

Tray Movement Mechanism

- If the lower tray is not installed (this is detected if the front and rear sensors remain OFF), the machine will not operate in the booklet staple and fold mode. When booklet mode is selected, the tray full message appears on the operation panel.

The combinations of the two actuators and two sensors as the actuator arm rises determines the number of booklets that the lower tray can hold before the job stops.
The tray full detection depends on the size of the paper and the number of sheets in one stapled and folded booklet.
In the table below, the conditions (❶ Ready ❷ Full 1, ❸ Full 2 ❹ Full 3: See the illustration on the previous page) refer to the states of the sensors described on the previous page.

| Condition | Front Sensor | Rear Sensor |
|---|---|---|
| Ready | ON | OFF |
| Full 1 | ON | ON |
| Full 2 | OFF | ON |
| Full 3 (or lower tray not installed) | OFF | OFF |



In the tables below:

- "Sht" denotes "sheets in a stack".
- "Cnt" denotes "Count" (see below for an explanation).

After a booklet is feed out, the fold roller motor stops the exit roller. The machine then monitors the tray full sensors every 100 ms. The machine checks for a certain condition, based on the size of the paper and the number of sheets in the booklet.
An example is shown below. Tell the operators that the number of sheets that the lower tray can hold will vary greatly.

**Lower Tray Full Condition Table**

**A3 (DLT)**

| | 1 Sht | 2 Sht | 3 Sht | 4 Sht | 5 Sht | 6 Sht | 7 Sth | 8 Sht | 9 Sht | … |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Full 1** | 3 Cnt | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | … |
| **Full 2** | — | 5 Cnt | 15 Cnt | — | — | — | — | — | — | … |
| **Full 3** | — | — | — | 7 Cnt | 13 Cnt | 4 Cnt | 2 Cnt | 2 Cnt | 2 Cnt | … |

**A4 (LT)**

| | 1 Sht | 2 Sht | 3 Sht | 4 Sht | 5 Sht | 6 Sht | 7 Sth | 8 Sht | 9 Sht | … |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Full1** | 16 Cnt | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | … |
| **Full 2** | — | 10 Cnt | 10 Cnt | 15 Cnt | 20 Cnt | 15 Cnt | 10 Cnt | 8 Cnt | 8 Cnt | … |
| **Full 3** | — | — | — | | | | | | | … |

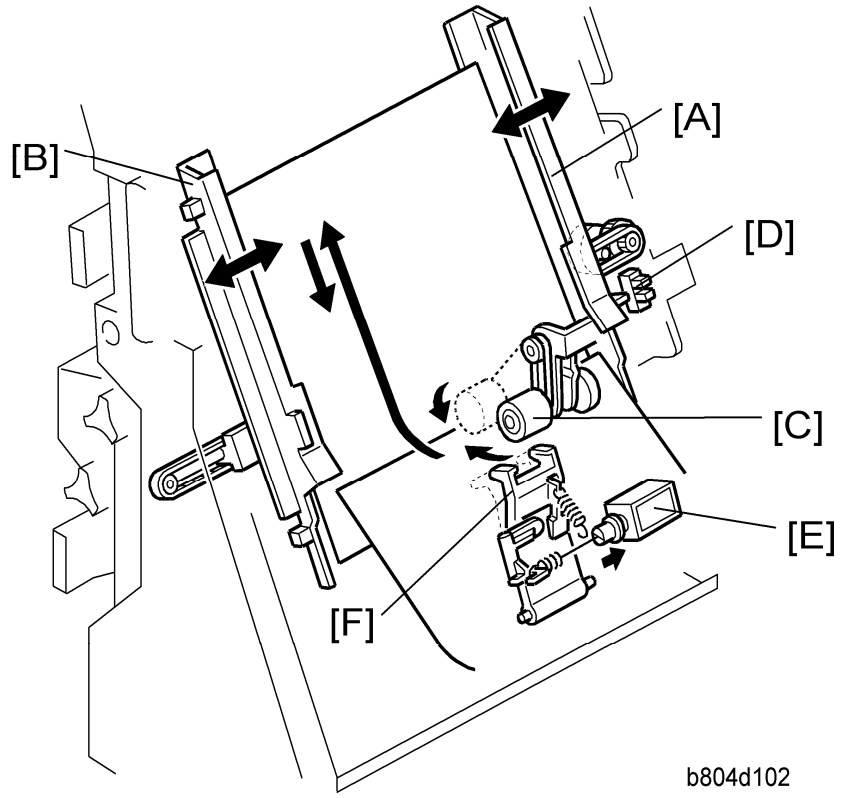
**Examples:**

After the copier makes a booklet with 1 sheet of A3/DLT paper, the machine checks every 100 ms for the ‘Full 1’ condition. If the Full 1 condition occurs 3 times, the machine detects that the tray is full.

After the copier makes a booklet with 5 sheets of A4/LT paper, the machine checks every 100 ms for the ‘Full 2’ condition. If the Full 2 condition occurs 20 times, the machine detects that the tray is full.

# 2.5 CORNER STAPLING

## 2.5.1 STACKING AND JOGGING




| |
|---|
| [A]: Jogger Fence Motor (M15) |
| [B]: Jogger Fences |
| [C]: Positioning Roller |
| [D]: Jogger Fence HP Sensor (S15) |
| [E]: Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid (SOL4) |
| [F]: Pressure Plate |

At the beginning of the job, the jogger fence motor (M15) [A] switches on and moves the jogger fences [B] to the standby position (7.5 mm from the sides of the selected paper size). When each sheet passes the pre-stack tray exit sensor (S2) and enters the stapling tray:

- The jogger fence motor switches on and moves the jogger fences to within 5.5 mm of the sides of the selected paper size.
- The positioning roller solenoid (SOL3) switches on for the time prescribed for the paper

size. This pushes the positioning roller [C] onto the sheet and pushes it down onto bottom fence. This aligns the edge of the stack.

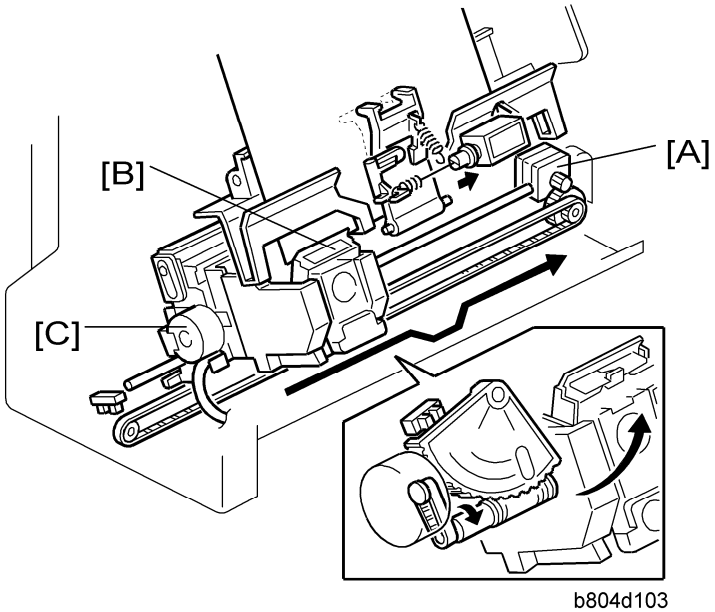
Next, the jogger fence motor:

- Switches on again and moves the jogger fences to within 2.6 mm of the sides of the stack to align the sides of the stack.
- Reverses and moves the fences to the standby position (7.5 mm away for the sides) and waits for the next sheet.
- The jogger fence HP sensor [D] switches off the jogger motor at the end of the job.

After the last sheet feeds:

- The stapling edge pressure plate solenoid [E] (SOL4) switches on and pushes the pressure plate [F] onto the stack to press down the edge for stapling.
- The corner stapler staples the stack.

## 2.5.2 STAPLER MOVEMENT




b804d103

[A]: Stapler Movement Motor
[B]: Stapler
[C]: Stapler Rotation Motor

Corner Stapling

The stapler performs horizontal and rotational movement in each of the four staple modes:

- Front 1 staple
- Rear 1 staple
- Rear diagonal staple
- Rear/Front 2 staples

The stapler movement motor [A] drives a timing belt that moves stapler [B] left and right on its stainless steel rail.

The stapler rotation motor [C] rotates the stapler into position for diagonal stapling at the rear.

- The stapler movement motor switches on and moves the stapler the standby stapling position. (This is the stapling position for the paper size selected for the job.)
- The stapler movement motor switches off and the stapler waits for the signal to fire (or swivel and for diagonal stapling).

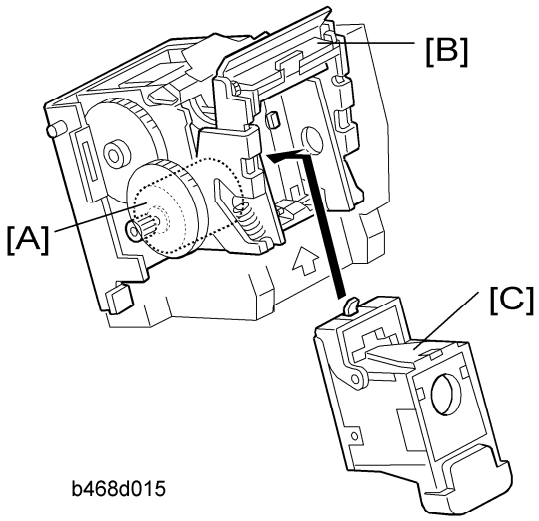
If the stack is to be stapled at two positions:

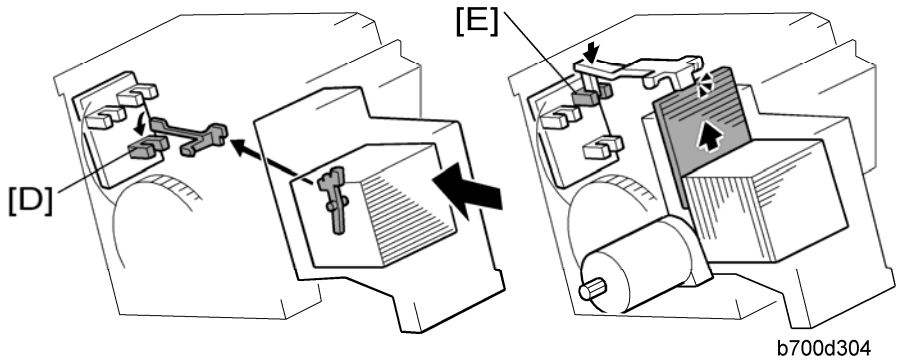
- The stapler movement motor moves the stapler to the front position and staples the front.
- The stapler movement motor moves the stapler to the rear and the stapler staples the rear.

If the stack is stapled at the rear with a diagonal staple, the staple moves to the rear. When it is time for stapling, the rotation motor rotates the stapler to the correct angle and holds the stapler in that position while the stapler fires.

The stapling positions can be fine adjusted with **SP6-133-001**.

## 2.5.3 CORNER STAPLING



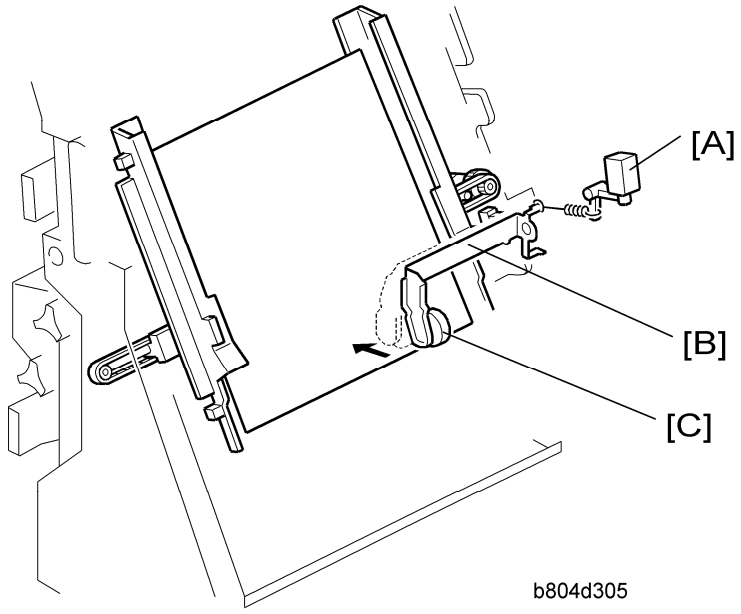

Staple firing is driven by the stapler motor [A] inside the stapler unit. The stapler hammer [B] fires the stapler [C].

The cartridge set sensor [D] detects the cartridge at the correct position.

The staple end sensor [E] detects the staple end condition.

# 2.6 BOOKLET STAPLING (B804 ONLY)

## 2.6.1 BOOKLET PRESSURE MECHANISM



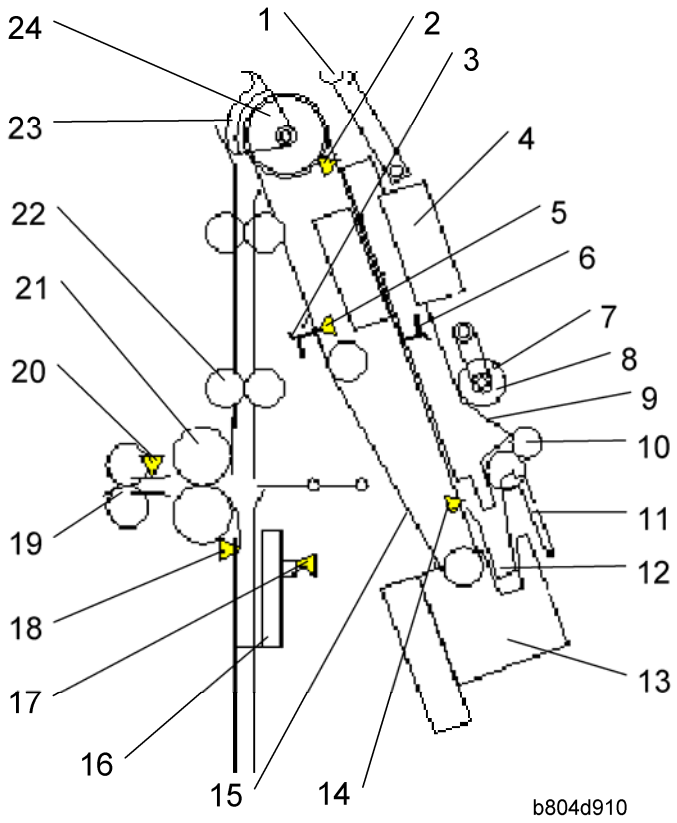

| |
|---|
| [A]: Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid (SOL5) |
| [B]: Booklet Pressure Roller Arm |
| [C]: Booklet Pressure Roller |

As soon as the edges are aligned by the positioning roller and the jogger fences, the stack feed out belt moves.

In booklet mode, immediately after the edges are aligned by the positioning roller and jogger fences, the booklet pressure solenoid switches on and the booklet pressure roller presses down on the stack until booklet stapling is finished. This prevents the stack from shifting during stapling.

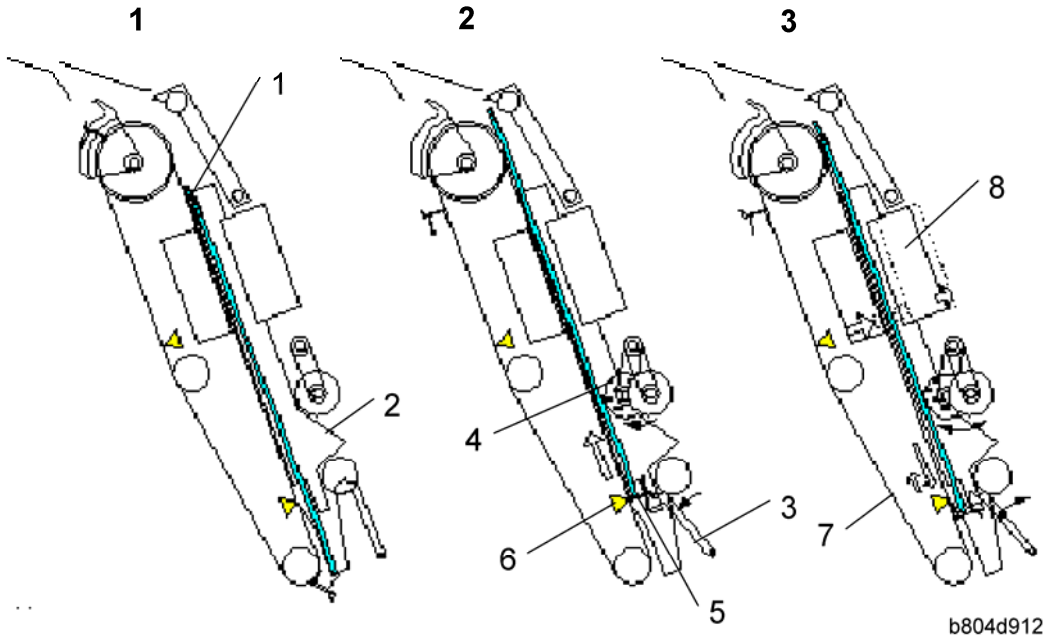
## 2.6.2 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING

### *Overview*




| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Leading Edge Pressure Roller | 13. Corner Stapler (M20) |
| 2. Stack Present Sensor (S32) | 14. Stapling Tray Paper Sensor (S14) |
| 3. Feed Out Belt Pawl 1 | 15. Feed Out Belt |
| 4. Booklet Staplers x2 (M22, M23) | 16. Fold Unit Bottom Fence |
| 5. Stack Feed Out Belt HP Sensor (S16) | 17. Fold Bottom Fence HP Sensor (S28) |
| 6. Feed Out Belt Pawl 2 | 18. Fold Unit Entrance Sensor (S26) |
| 7. Positioning Roller | 19. Fold Unit Exit Rollers x2 |
| 8. Booklet Pressure Roller (Rear) | 20. Fold Unit Exit Sensor (S31) |
| 9. Jogger Fences x2 | 21. Fold Rollers x2 |
| 10. Pre-Stack Exit Roller | 22. Clamp Rollers x2 |
| 11. Pressure Plate | 23. Stack Junction Gate |
| 12. Stapling Tray Bottom Fence | 24. Stack Transport Roller |

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)




**1:**

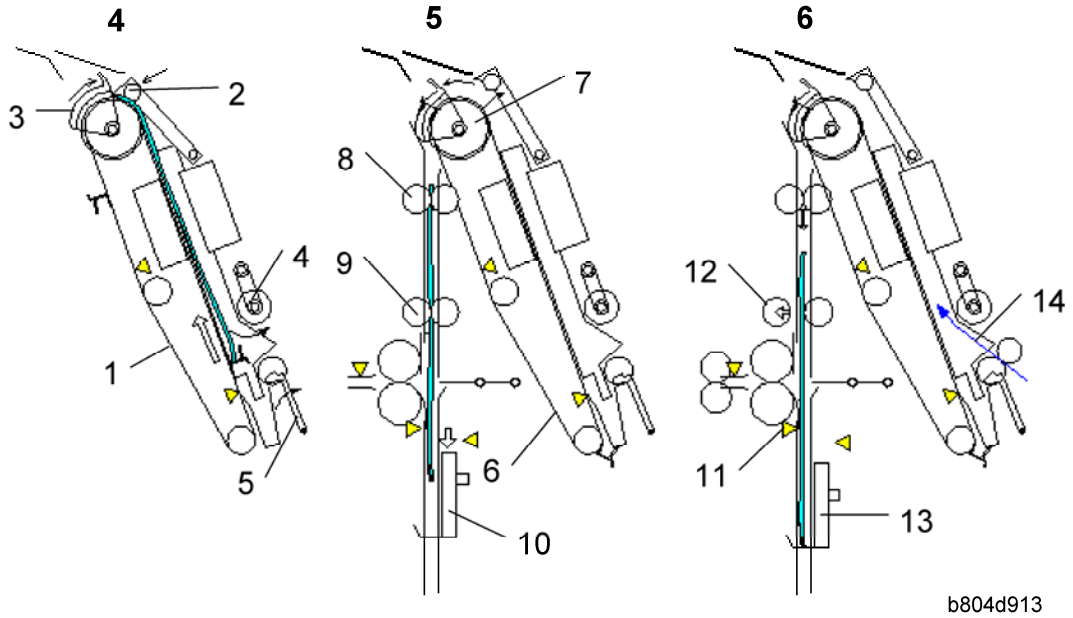
The last sheet of the stack [1] enters the stapling tray. The jogger fences [2] jog the last sheet into position (based on the width of the selected paper size) and then retract and stop 1 mm away from the sides of the stack.

**2:**

The pressure plate [3] and booklet pressure roller [4] press down on the sheet. The stack feed out belt switches on and the pawl [5] on the feed out belt catches the bottom of the stack and raises it. The stapling tray sensor [6] detects the trailing edge of the paper stack.

**3:**

The feed out belt [7] raises the stack to the prescribed stapling position and stops. The jogger fences move to the sides of the stack and the booklet staplers [8] staple the stack.




**4:**

The jogger fences remain 1 mm away from the sides of the stack. The feed out belt [1] raises the stack until the top of the stack is 10 mm past the leading edge pressure roller [2] and stops. The leading edge pressure roller descends and applies pressure to the top of the stack. The stack junction gate [3] (normally open) closes. The pressure roller [4] and pressure plate [5] retract.

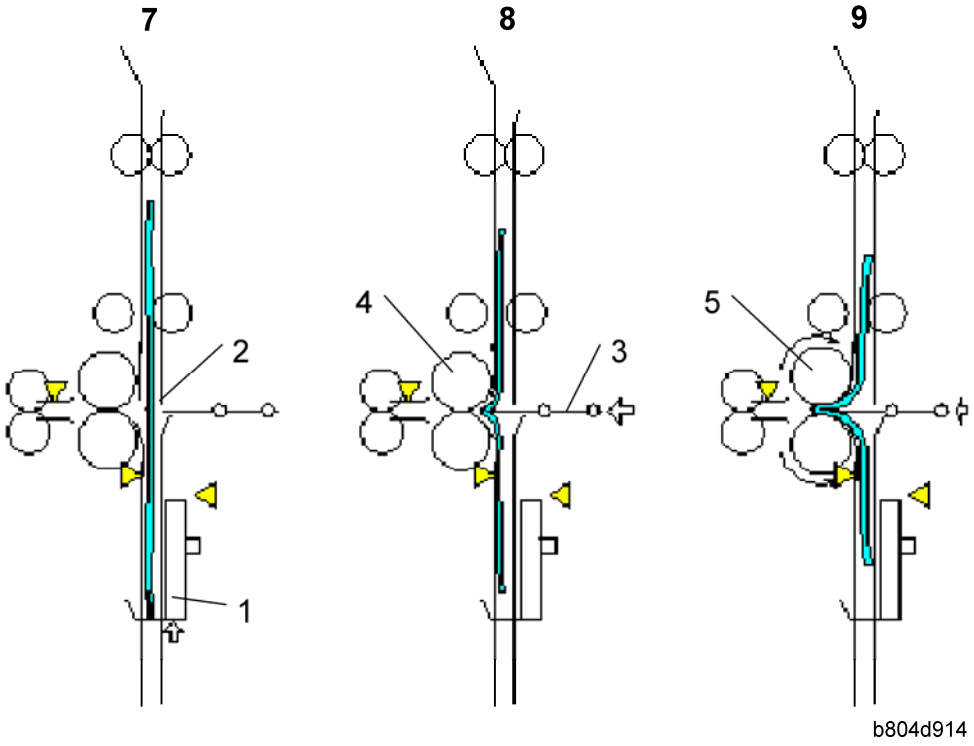
**5:**

The feed out belt [6], transport rollers [7], [8], and clamp rollers [9] rotate and feed the stack past the closed stack junction, over the top and down toward the bottom fence [10]. At the same time, the fold unit bottom fence descends from its home position and stops 10 mm below the fold position.

**6:**

The rollers feed the leading edge of the stack to within 3 mm of the stack stopper of the bottom fence [13]. The fold unit entrance sensor [11] detects the stack and opens the clamp rollers [12]. The stack drops 3 mm onto the fold unit bottom fence [13]. At this time, the first sheet [14] of the next stack feeds to the stapling tray.

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)




**7:**

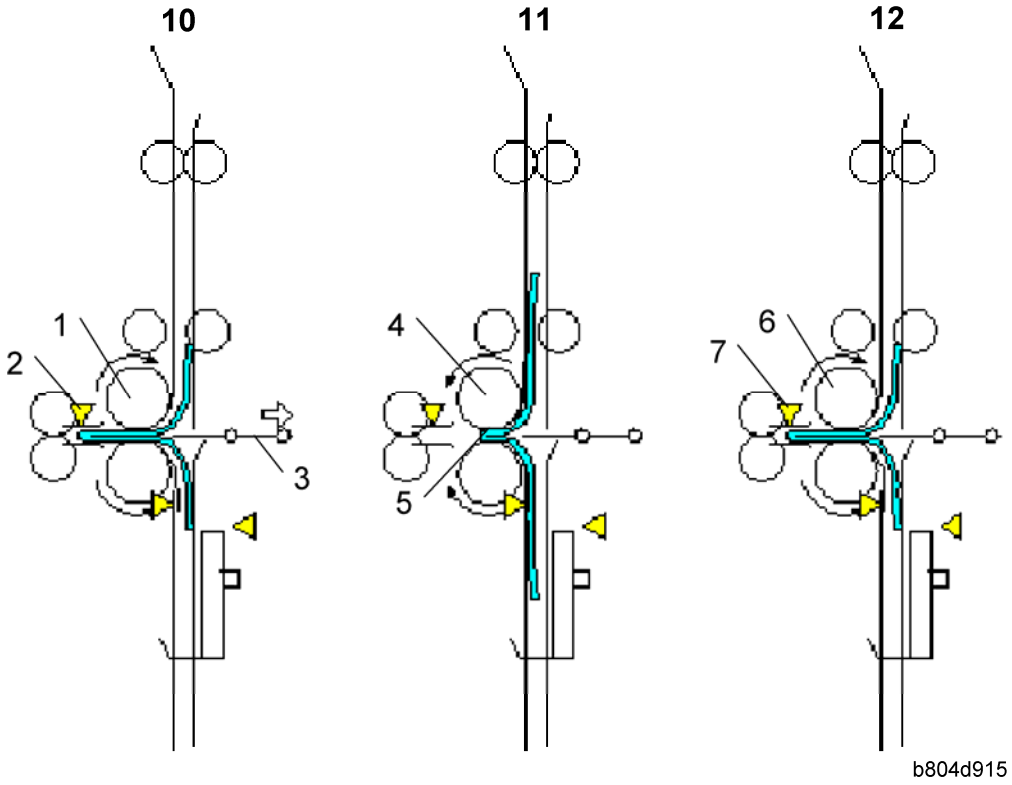
The bottom fence [1] raises the stack to the prescribed fold position [2].

**8:**

The fold plate [3] moves to the left and advances 1/3 its maximum horizontal stroke and exerts 20 kg (44 lb.) of pressure at the fold rollers [4].

**9:**

With the fold plate pushing the stack into nip of the fold rollers [5], the fold rollers begin to rotate and fold the stack as it feeds out.




**10:**

When the fold rollers [1] feed the stack 10 mm past the nip, the fold plate retracts until it no longer touches the stack. The fold unit exit sensor [2] detects the folded edge of the stack and stops the fold rollers.

**11:**

The rotation of the fold rollers [4] reverses and feeds the folded edge back until only 3 mm of the fold [5] remains at the nip.

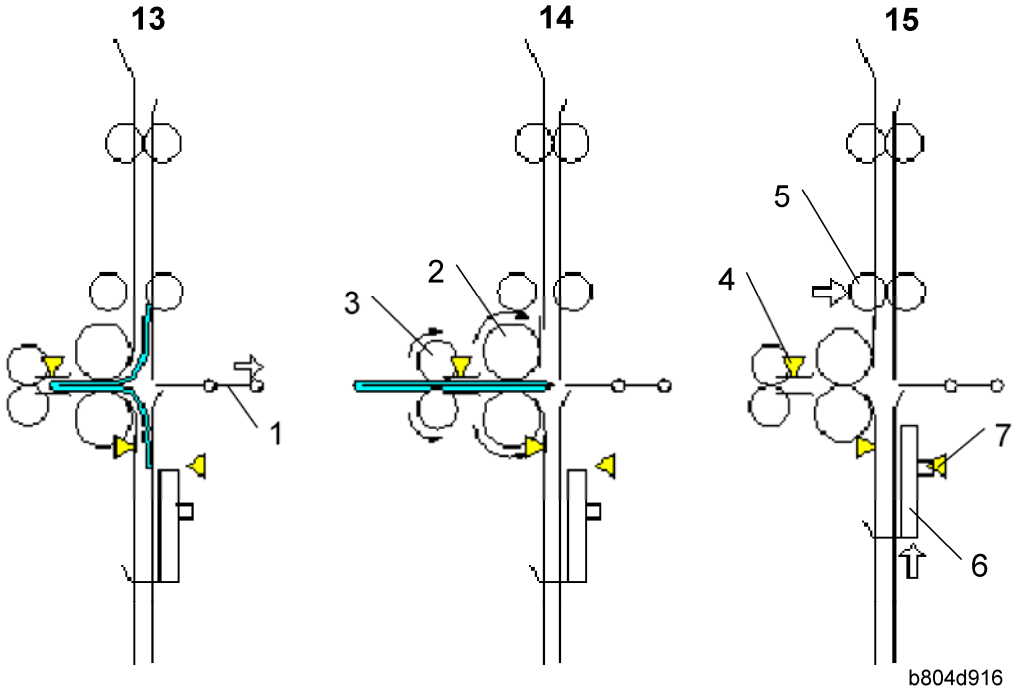
**12:**

The fold rollers [6] rotate forward once again feed out. The fold unit exit sensor [7] once again detects the edge of the fold.

Note

- You can do **SP6-136-001** to increase the sharpness of the fold. The number of forward and reverse feeds can be set in the range of 2 to 30. The machine repeats Steps 11 and 12. For more, please refer to Section "Service Tables".

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)




**13:**

With the feed of the stack halted, the fold plate [1] retracts. The fold plate HP sensor (not shown) detects the fold plate and stops it at its home position.

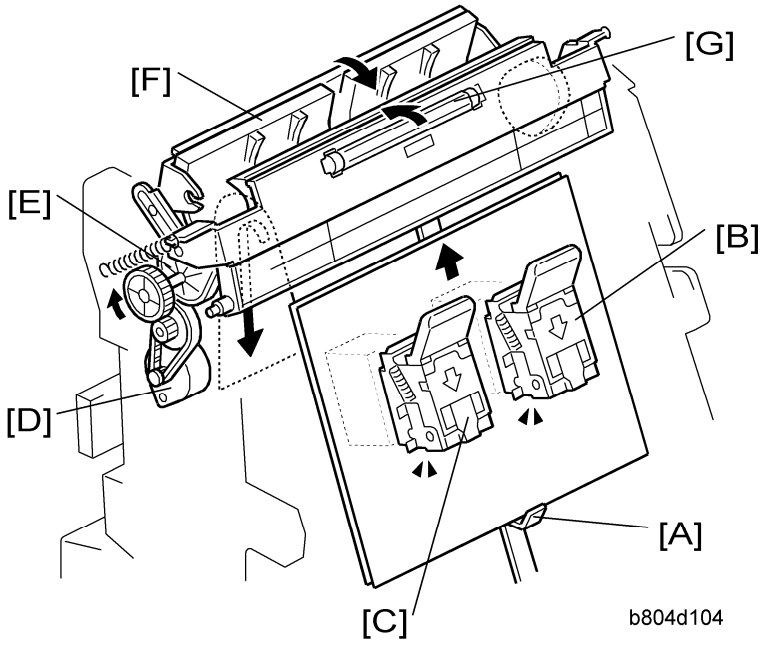
**14:**

The fold rollers [2] and fold unit exit rollers [3] begin to rotate together and feed out the folded booklet to the lower tray.

**15:**

Once the trailing edge of the stack passes the fold unit exit sensor [4], the clamp rollers [5] close to be ready to feed the next stack. The fold unit bottom fence [6] descends. The bottom fence HP sensor [7] stops the bottom fence when it detects the actuator on the bottom fence.

## 2.6.3 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING MECHANISMS




**Booklet Stapler**

[A]: Feed Out Belt Pawl. Raises the stack to stapling position.

[B]: Booklet Stapler EH185R – Rear

[C]: Booklet Stapler EH185R – Front

**Stack Junction Gate**

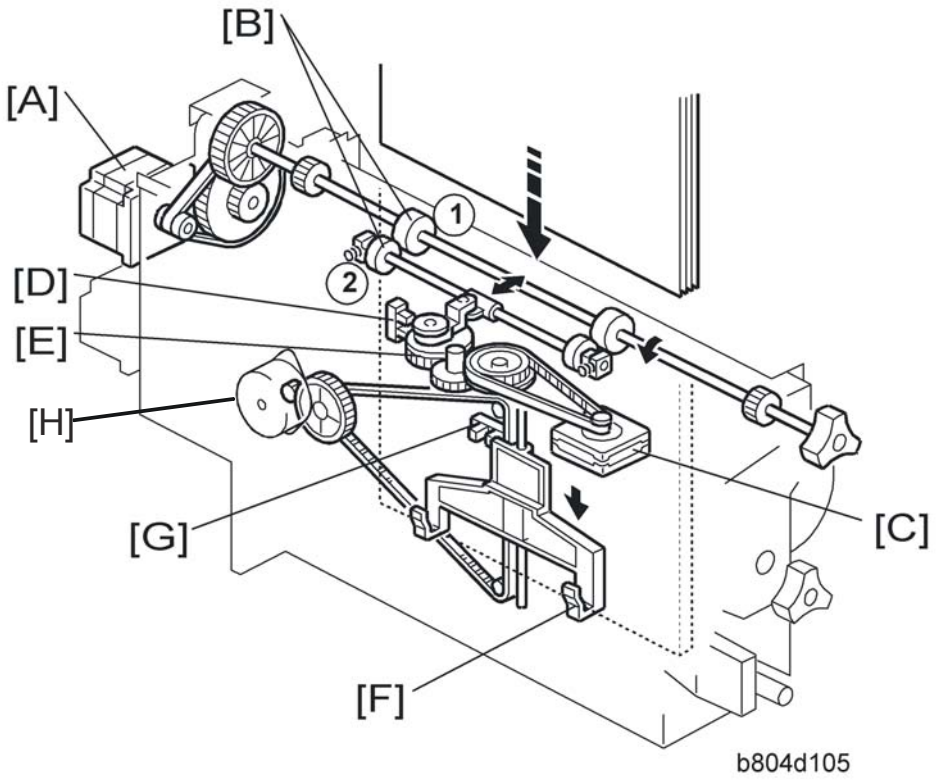
[D]: Stack Junction Gate Motor. Drives a timing belt and stack junction gate cam.

[E]: Stack Junction Gate Cam. Opens and closes the stack junction gate.

[F]: Stack Junction Gate. The stack junction gate motor and stack junction gate cam close the stack junction gate. The feed out belt pawl raises the stapled stack and sends it over the top and down to the fold unit.

[G]: Leading Edge Pressure Roller. Presses down on the leading edge of the stack after booklet stapling.

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)






**Clamp Roller**

[A]: Fold Roller Motor. Drives the stationary clamp drive roller ① as well as the fold rollers (see next page).

[B]: Clamp Rollers.

① Clamp Roller – Drive. Rotated by the fold roller motor, this stationary roller feeds the stack down with the retracting roller closed.

② Clamp Roller – Retracting. Opened and closed by the retraction motor [C].

[C]: Clamp Roller Retraction Motor. Operates the clamp roller cam that retracts the retracting clamp roller. The clamp rollers feed the stack to within 3 mm of the bottom fence when closed and then open to drop the stack onto the bottom fence.

[D]: Clamp Roller HP Sensor. Controls the rotation of the clamp roller retraction motor and cam that open and close the retracting clamp roller.

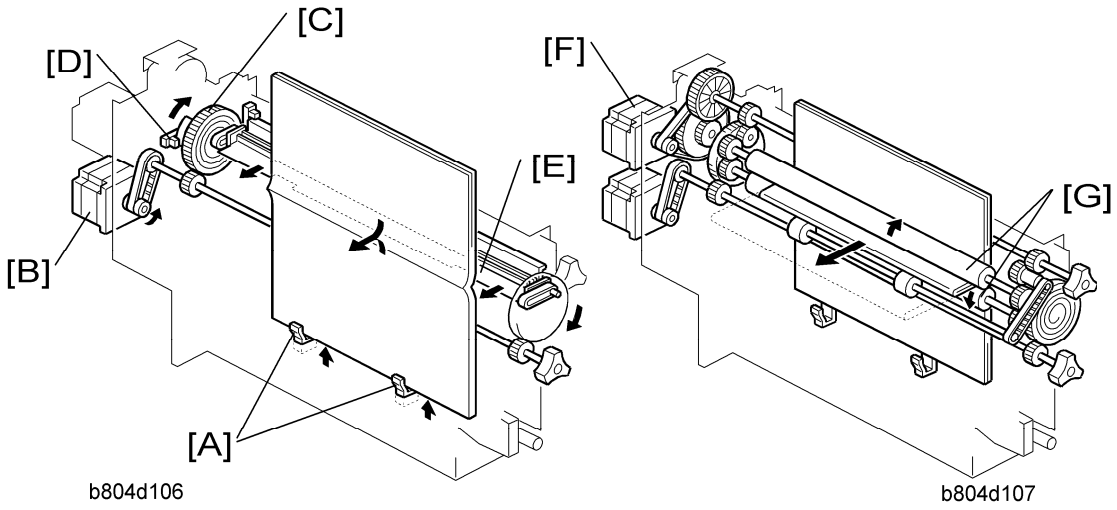
[E]: Clamp Roller Cam. Forces open the spring loaded retracting clamp roller.

**Bottom Fence**

[F]: Bottom Fence. Raises the booklet stapled stack to the fold position.

[G]: Bottom Fence HP Sensor. Detects the actuator on the bottom fence and stops it at the home position after folding.

[H]: Bottom Fence Lift Motor. Raises the bottom fence and stapled stack to the fold position prescribed for the paper size.




**Fold Plate**

[A]: Bottom Fence Stack Stoppers. Catches the stack after it is released by the clamp rollers.

[B]: Fold Plate Motor. Drives the timing belt and gears that move the fold plate.

[C]: Fold Plate Cam. Controls the movement of the fold plate to the left (into the nip of the fold rollers) and right (toward the fold plate home position).

[D]: Fold Plate HP Sensor. Controls operation of the fold plate motor.

[E]: Fold Plate. Moves left and pushes the stack into the nip of the fold rollers and then moves right to retract.

**Fold Rollers**

[F]: Fold Roller Motor. Drives forward to feed out the stack at the fold and then reverses to feed the fold in to sharpen the crease, and then drives forward again to feed out the folded stack. This reverse/forward cycle is done once.

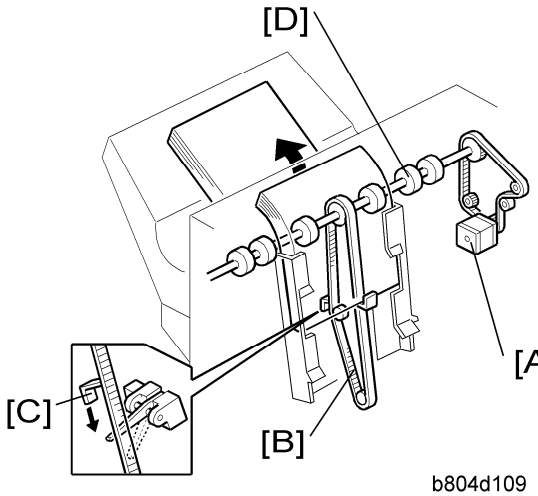
Note

- This cycle can be repeated by changing the setting of SP6114.

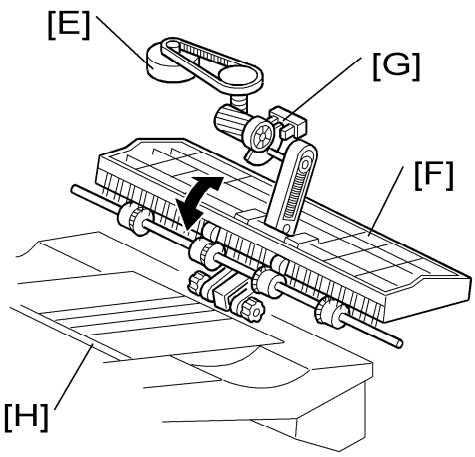
[G]: Fold Rollers. Driven by the fold roller motor, this roller pair feeds out the stack at its fold, reverses to feed in the stack to, and then feeds forward again (assisted by the fold unit exit rollers – not shown) to feed out the stack to the lower tray.

# 2.7 UPPER TRAY OUTPUT

## 2.7.1 FEED OUT




b804d109




b804d107



[A]: Feed Out Belt Motor
[B]: Stack Feed-Out Belt
[C]: Pawl
[D]: Exit Rollers
[E]: Exit Guide Plate Motor
[F]: Exit Guide Plate
[G]: Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor
[H]: Upper Tray

After the stack is stapled, the feed out belt motor [A] switches on and drives the feed out belt [B].

The pawl [C] attached to the feed out belt catches on the stack and lifts the stack toward the feed out slot.

The exit guide plate [F] remains open as the stack emerges at a prescribed distance away from the exit roller.

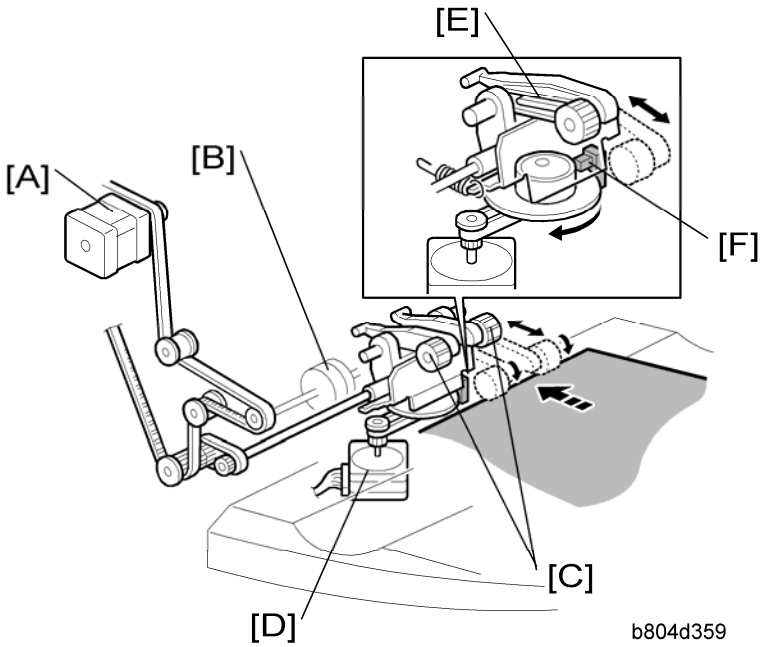
Next, the exit guide plate closes and the exit roller feeds the stack out.

The opening and closing of the exit guide plate is controlled by the rising and falling of a link driven by a rotating cam attached to the shaft of the exit guide plate motor [E].

The feed out belt motor stops 300 ms to prevent the stapled stack from rising too high. Next, the feed out belt motor switches on again, then the pawl actuates its home position sensor and switches off the motor.

There are two output pawls on the feed out belt to improve the productivity of the feed out operation.

## 2.7.2 FEED OUT STACKING




Upper/proof exit motor [A] drives feed roller [B] and stacking sponge roller [C].

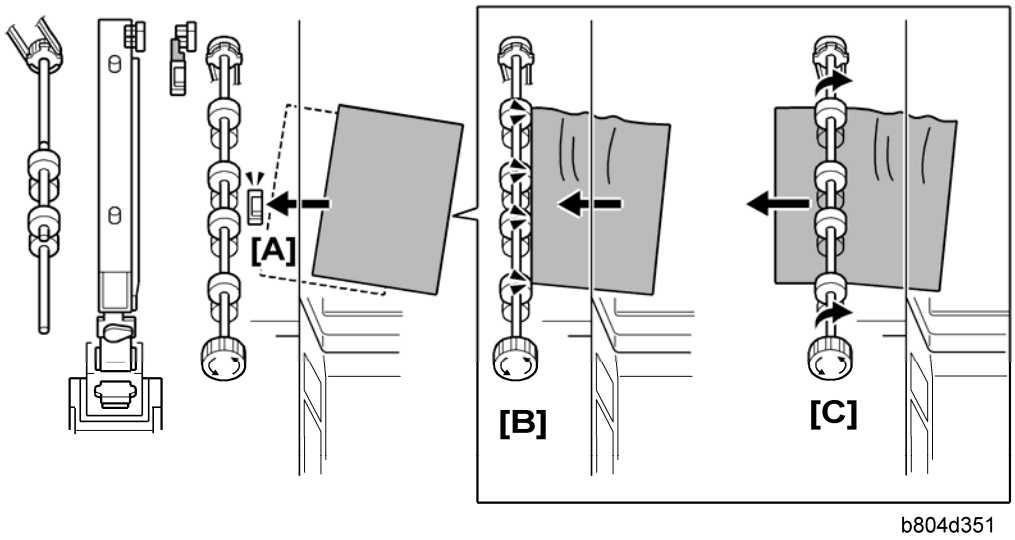
Stacking sponge roller motor [D] moves the sponge roller forward and back with link [E].

The position of the stacking sponge roller [C] is controlled by the stacking sponge roller motor which is switched on and off by the stacking roller HP sensor [F].

# 2.8 PUNCH UNIT B702 (FOR B804/B805)

## 2.8.1 OVERVIEW OF OPERATION

### *Skew Correction before Punching*




b804d351

This punch unit corrects for paper skew and then positions the punch unit to punch holes at the correct position. Each sheet is punched one at a time.

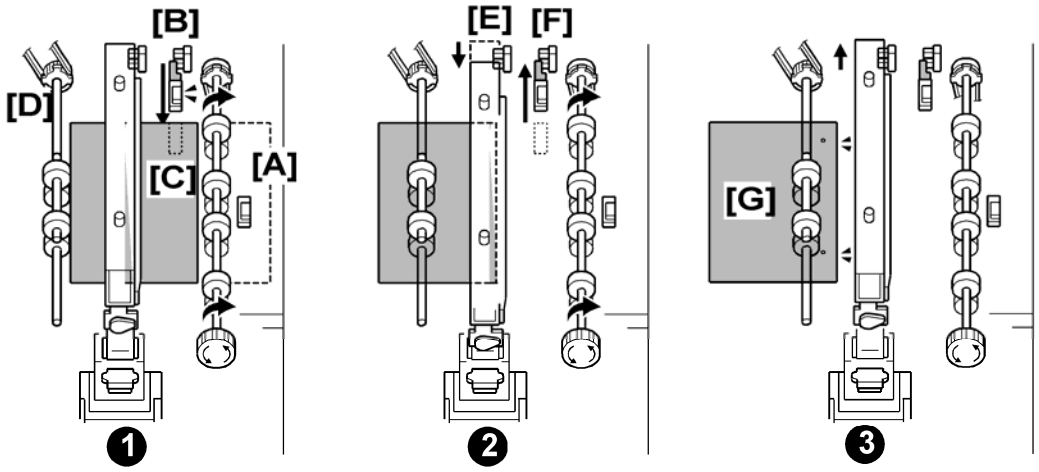
Paper feeds out of the copier. The finisher entrance sensor [A] detects the leading edge of the sheet.

The finisher entrance roller [B] stops rotating briefly while the copier exit rollers continue to rotate. This buckles the paper against the finisher entrance roller to correct skew. The finisher entrance roller [C] starts to rotate again and feeds the sheet into the finisher.

These SP codes adjust the skew operation in the punch unit:

- **SP6130**. This SP corrects the punch hole alignment. To do this, it corrects the skew of each sheet by adjusting the amount of time the finisher entrance roller remains off while the exit roller of the machine remains on. For more, see Section "Service Tables".
- **SP6131**. This SP determines whether the finisher entrance roller stops to correct skew when paper enters the finisher. You can use this SP to disable the skew correction. For more, see Section "Service Tables".

### *Punch Unit Position Correction*




b804d352

These operations (skew correction before punching, and punch unit position correction) increase the accuracy of the punch alignment.

❶:

The trailing edge of the sheet passes the finisher entrance sensor [A].

The paper position slide unit [B] moves the paper position sensor [C] forward to the edge of the paper.

The paper position sensor detects the position of the paper edge and sends this information to the punch unit board. The machine uses the detected position of the paper edge to calculate the correct position for punching.

The upper transport motor switches on and rotates the feed rollers [D] the prescribed distance to position the paper under the punch unit.

❷:

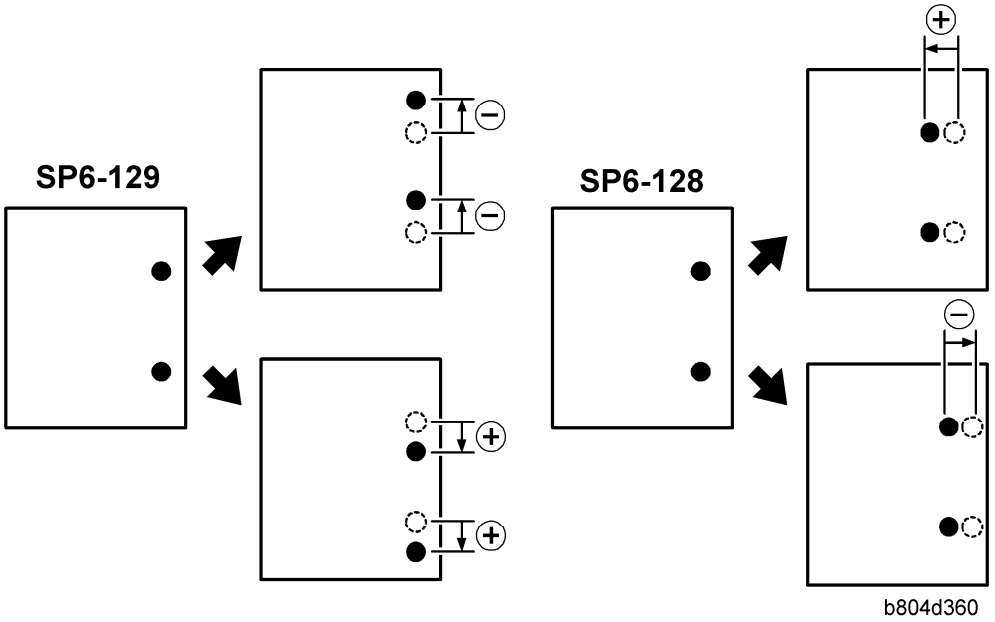
Using the result of the position calculation, the punch unit control board moves the punch unit [E] to the adjusted punch position.

The paper position slide unit and its paper sensor, move back to the paper position slide home position sensor [F], and the punch unit fires the punches to make the holes.

❸:

The feed rollers [G] feed the punched paper out of the punch unit and into the paper path.

Punch Unit B702 (For B804/B805)




These SP codes adjust the punch hole alignment:

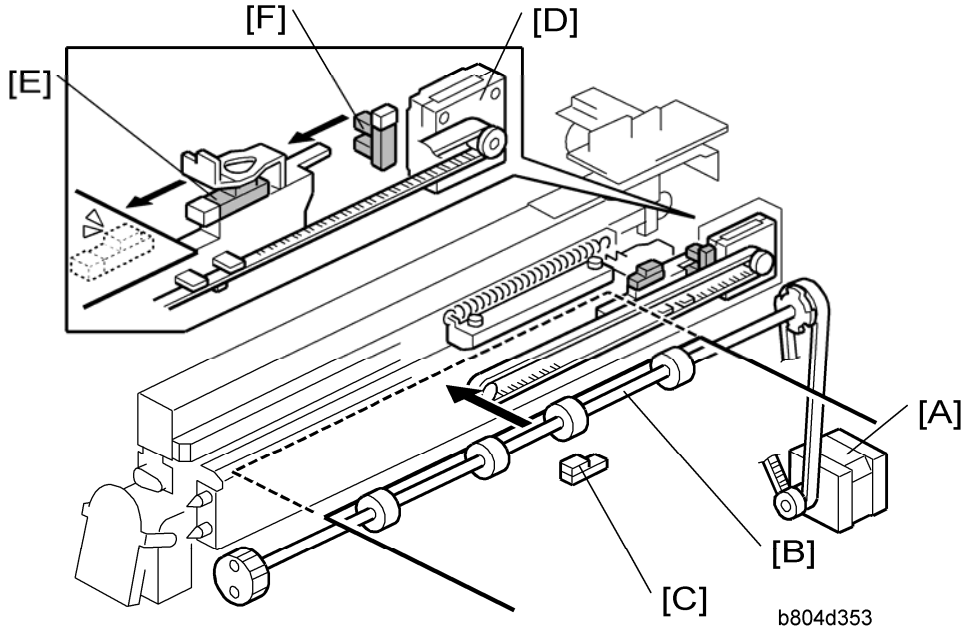
- **SP6-128** Adjusts the punch positions in the direction of paper feed.
- **SP6-129** Adjusts the punch position perpendicular to the direction of feed.

For more, see Section "Service Tables".



## 2.8.2 PUNCH MECHANISMS

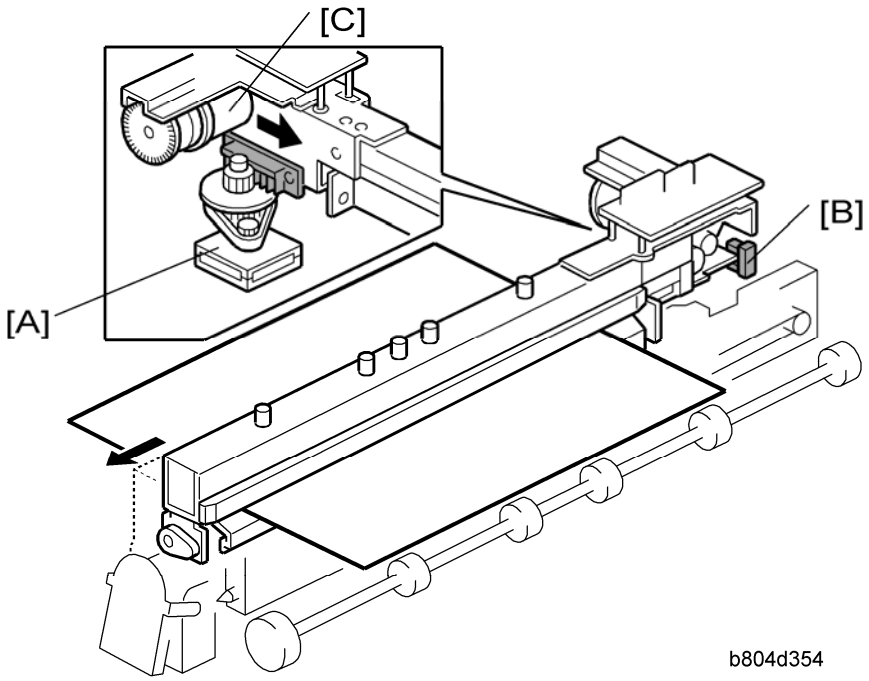
### *Paper Position Detection*



[A]: Finisher Entrance Motor (M1)
[B]: Finisher Entrance Roller
[C]: Finisher Entrance Sensor (S1)
[D]: Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor (M7)
[E]: Paper Position Sensor (S27)
[F]: Paper Position Sensor Slide HP Sensor (S22)

The finisher entrance motor (M1) [A] drives the finisher entrance rollers [B] that feed paper from the copier into the finisher. The finisher entrance sensor (S1) [C] detects paper when it enters the finisher, and detects paper jams.
The paper position slide sensor motor (M7) [D] extends and retracts the paper position slide that holds the paper position sensor (S27) [E]. The paper position sensor detects the position of the paper edge. The detected position of the paper is used to calculate and position the punch unit for punching.
The paper position slide HP sensor (S22) [F] detects the paper position slide when it retracts and stops the paper position slide motor so the slide stops at its home position.

### *Punch Unit Movement*

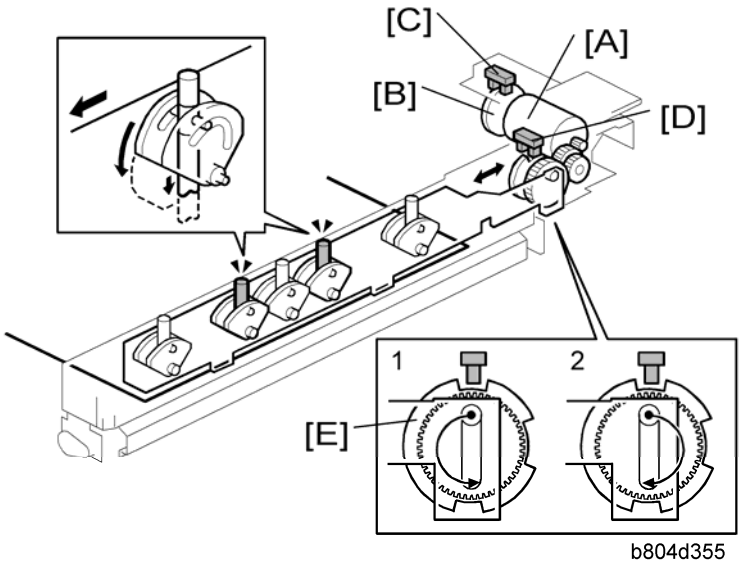


Punch Unit B702 (For B804/B805)

| |
|---|
| [A]: Punch Movement Motor (M9) |
| [B]: Punch Movement HP Sensor (S21) |
| [C]: Punch Drive Motor (M24) |

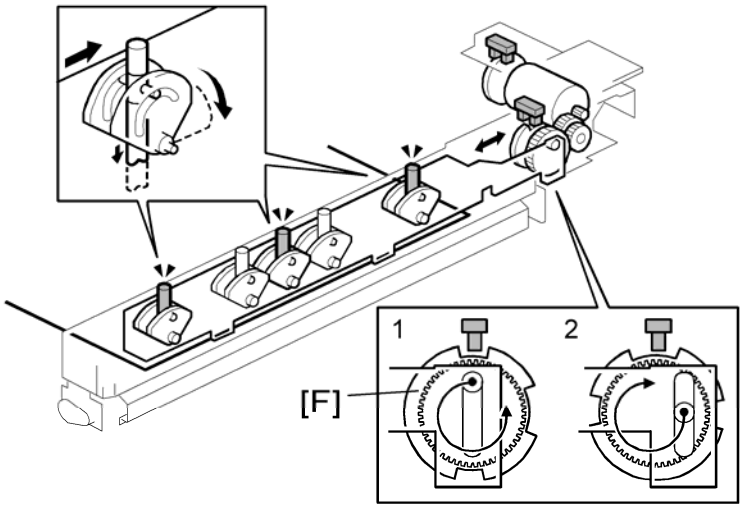
The punch movement motor (M9) [A] extends and retracts the punch unit to position it at the correct position for punching.
The punch movement HP sensor (S21) [B] detects the position when it retracts, switches off the punch position movement motor, and stops the punch unit at its home position.
The punch drive motor (M24) [C] fires the punches that punch holes in the paper below.

### *Punch Selection and Firing*




| |
|---|
| [A]: Punch Drive Motor (M24) |
| [B]: Punch Encoder Wheel |
| [C]: Punch Encoder Sensor (S24) |
| [D]: Punch HP Sensor (S23) |

The punch drive motor (M24) [A] turns the small, notched encoder wheel [B] through the gap in the punch encoder sensor [C] (S24). The sensor output is used to control the punch timing.




The timing for 2-hole punching [E] is different from 3-hole punching [F].

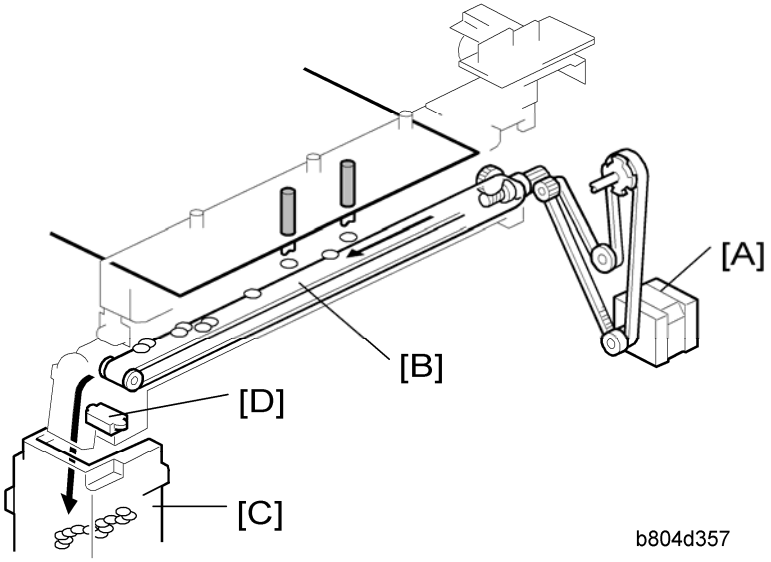
When the punch unit is at the punching position, the punch motor turns until the encoder detects the starting position for 2-hole or 3-hole punching.

- This is the '1' position in the diagrams (the top diagram is for 2-hole punching, and the bottom diagram is for 3-hole punching).

Then, the punch drive motor turns counter-clockwise to the '2' position. This movement punches the holes in the paper.

Then, the punch drive motor turns clockwise to the '1' position, to be ready for the next sheet of paper.

## 2.8.3 PUNCH HOPPER MECHANISM



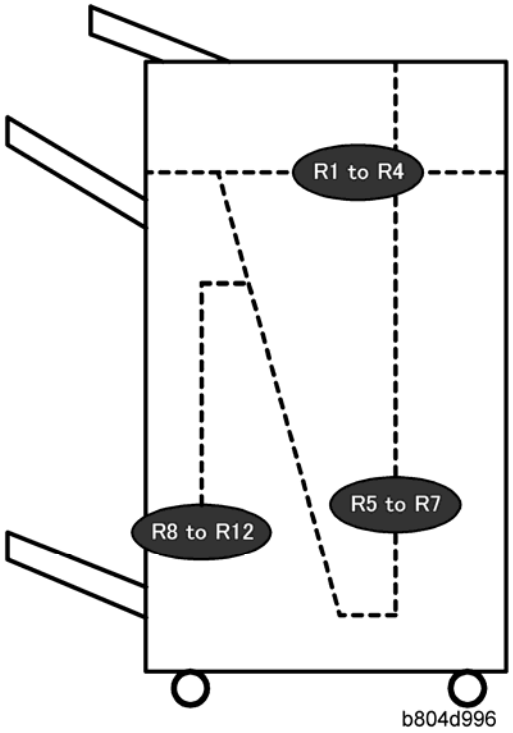
Punch Unit B702 (For B804/B805)

[A]: Finisher Entrance Motor (M1)
[B]: Punch Waste Belt
[C]: Punch Waste Hopper
[D]: Punch Hopper Full Sensor (S4)

The finisher entrance motor (M1) [A] drives the timing belt and gears that rotate the punch waste belt [B].
The punchouts fall from the punch unit onto the belt. The belt moves the punchouts to the front and dumps them in the punch waste hopper [C].
The punch hopper full sensor [D]:

- Signals that the hopper is full when it detects the top of the stack of punchouts that have collected in the hopper.
- It also detects when the punch hopper is set properly.

# 2.9 FINISHER JAM DETECTION




| Display | Mode | Jam | What It Means |
|---|---|---|---|
| R1 to R3 | Proof<br>Shift<br>Staple | Finisher entrance sensor late | After main machine exit sensor goes OFF, finisher entrance sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 450 mm. |
| | | Finisher entrance sensor lag | After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, it does not go OFF after enough time to feed a sheet 1.5 times its length has elapsed. |
| R3 | Proof | Proof exit sensor late | After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, proof exit sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 450 mm. |
| | | Proof exit sensor lag | After finisher entrance sensor goes OFF, proof exit sensor does not go OFF even after enough time to feed 450 mm. |

Finisher Jam Detection

| Display | Mode | Jam | What It Means |
|---|---|---|---|
| R4 | Shift | Upper tray exit sensor late | After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, upper tray exit sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 485 mm. |
| | | Upper tray exit sensor lag | After finisher entrance sensor goes OFF, upper tray exit sensor does not go OFF even after enough time to feed 650 mm. |
| R5 to R7 | Staple | Pre-stack tray exit sensor lag | After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, pre-stack tray exit sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 650 mm. |
| | | Pre-stack tray exit sensor late | After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, pre-stack tray exit sensor does not go OFF even after enough time to feed 1650 mm. |
| R8 to R12 | Booklet Staple (B700 Only) | Fold unit entrance sensor late (S26) | The fold unit entrance sensor goes not go ON after enough time has elapsed to feed 1.5 times the length of the stack after the leading edge of the stack reaches the stack present sensor (S32). |
| | | Fold unit exit sensor late (S31) | The fold unit exit sensor does not go ON after enough time has elapsed for the stack to feed 1.5 times its length from the fold position. |
| | | Fold unit exit sensor lag (S31) | After the fold unit exit sensor goes ON, it does not go OFF after enough time has elapsed to feed 442.9 mm. |

# FINISHER SR5000
# B830

| B830 Finisher SR5000 REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| | | None |

# FINISHER B830

## TABLE OF CONTENTS


**1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT ..... 1**

1.1 COVERS ..... 1
1.1.1 FRONT DOOR, INNER COVER ..... 1
Front Door ..... 1
Left Inner Cover ..... 1
Inner Cover ..... 1
1.1.2 SIDE TABLE AND UPPER TRAY ..... 2
1.1.3 LEFT COVERS, REAR COVER ..... 3
1.1.4 TOP COVER ..... 3
1.1.5 SHIFT TRAY ..... 3
1.1.6 JOGGER UNIT COVER ..... 4
1.2 ROLLERS ..... 5
1.2.1 DRAG ROLLER ..... 5
1.2.2 POSITIONING ROLLER ..... 6
1.2.3 ALIGNMENT BRUSH ROLLER ..... 7
1.3 JOGGER FENCE ..... 8
1.4 SENSORS ..... 9
1.4.1 PAPER HEIGHT SENSORS ..... 9
1.4.2 EXIT GUIDE HP SENSOR ..... 10
1.4.3 UPPER TRAY FULL AND EXIT SENSORS ..... 11
Upper Tray Full Sensor ..... 11
Upper Tray Exit Sensor ..... 11
1.4.4 SHIFT TRAY EXIT SENSOR ..... 12
1.4.5 ENTRANCE AND STAPLER TRAY ENTRANCE SENSORS ..... 13
Entrance Sensor ..... 13
Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor ..... 13
1.4.6 MAIN BOARD, PRE-STACK PAPER SENSOR ..... 14
1.4.7 STAPLE TRIMMINGS HOPPER FULL SENSOR ..... 16
1.4.8 STAPLER ROTATION HP AND STAPLER RETURN SENSORS ..... 17
1.5 STAPLER ..... 18
1.6 SHIFT TRAY ..... 19
1.6.1 SHIFT TRAY EXIT, SHIFT TRAY LIFT MOTOR ..... 19
Shift Tray Exit Motor ..... 19
Shift Tray Lift Motor ..... 20
1.6.2 DRAG ROLLER/DRAG DRIVE MOTORS, DRAG DRIVE HP SENSOR ..... 21
1.6.3 SHIFT MOTOR AND SENSORS ..... 24
1.6.4 JOGGER TOP FENCE MOTOR ..... 25
1.6.5 JOGGER UNIT ..... 26
1.6.6 JOGGER BOTTOM FENCE MOTOR ..... 27
1.7 PUNCH UNIT ..... 28
1.7.1 PUNCH POSITION ADJUSTMENT ..... 28

Front to Rear Adjustment ..... 28
Right to Left Adjustment ..... 28
1.8 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT ..... 29
1.8.1 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT ..... 29
1.8.2 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT PCB ..... 30
1.8.3 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT MOTORS ..... 31
1.9 MOTORS ..... 32
1.9.1 TRANSPORT MOTORS, EXIT GUIDE MOTOR ..... 32
Upper Tray Transport Motor ..... 32
Lower Transport Motor ..... 33
Exit Guide Motor ..... 33
1.9.2 UPPER TRAY MOTORS ..... 34
Upper Tray Exit Motor ..... 34
Upper Tray Junction Gate Motor ..... 35
1.9.3 PRE-STACK MOTORS ..... 36
Pre-Stack Transport Motor ..... 36
Pre-Stack Junction Gate Motor ..... 37
Pre-Stack Stopper Motor ..... 37
1.9.4 PUNCH MOTOR ..... 38
Punch Motor ..... 38
1.9.5 STAPLE MOTORS ..... 39
Staple Junction Gate Motor ..... 39
Stapler Exit Motor ..... 40

**2. SERVICE TABLES ..... 41**
2.1 DIP SWITCHES ..... 41
2.2 TEST POINTS ..... 41
2.3 FUSES ..... 41

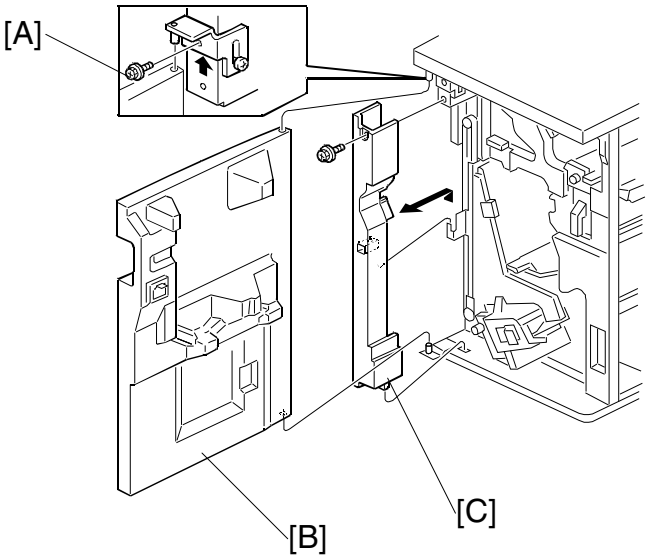
**3. DETAILS ..... 42**
3.1 UPPER TRAY AND STAPLER JUNCTION GATES ..... 42
3.2 PAPER PRE-STACKING ..... 43
3.3 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING ..... 44
3.4 STAPLING ..... 45
3.5 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT ..... 46
Side-to-Side ..... 46
Rotation (1) ..... 47
Rotation (2) ..... 47
3.6 STAPLER ..... 48
3.7 FEED-OUT ..... 50
3.8 PAPER EXIT STACKING ..... 51
3.9 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION ..... 52
3.9.1 OVERVIEW ..... 52
3.9.2 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION: STAND-BY MODE ..... 54
3.9.3 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION: SHIFT MODE ..... 55
3.9.4 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION: STAPLE MODE ..... 56
3.9.5 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION: Z-FOLDED PAPER ..... 57
3.9.6 SHIFT TRAY FULL AND NEAR-FULL DETECTION ..... 58
3.10 SHIFT TRAY SIDE-TO-SIDE MOVEMENT ..... 59

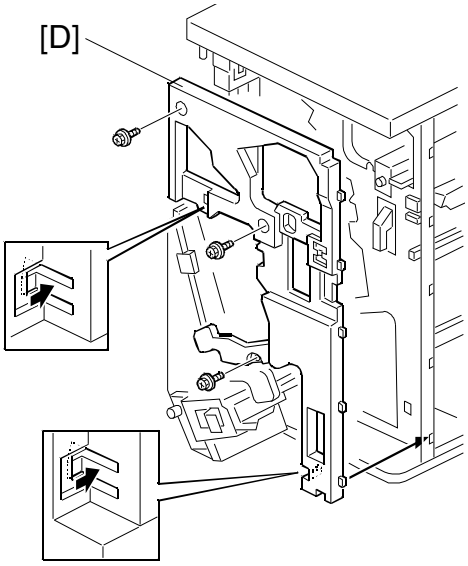
3.11 PUNCH UNIT....60
3.11.1 PUNCH UNIT DRIVE....60
3.11.2 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION....61
3.12 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT....62
3.12.1 JOGGER UNIT MECHANICAL LAYOUT....62
3.12.2 JOGGER UNIT DRIVE....63

**4. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION....64**
4.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT....64
4.2 DRIVE LAYOUT....65
4.2.1 MAIN DRIVE....65
4.2.2 STAPLING TRAY DRIVE....66
4.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS....67
4.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SUMMARY....70

# 1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

## 1.1 COVERS






### 1.1.1 FRONT DOOR, INNER COVER

#### *Front Door*

1. Remove the front door screw [A] (☞ x 1).
2. Remove the front door [B].

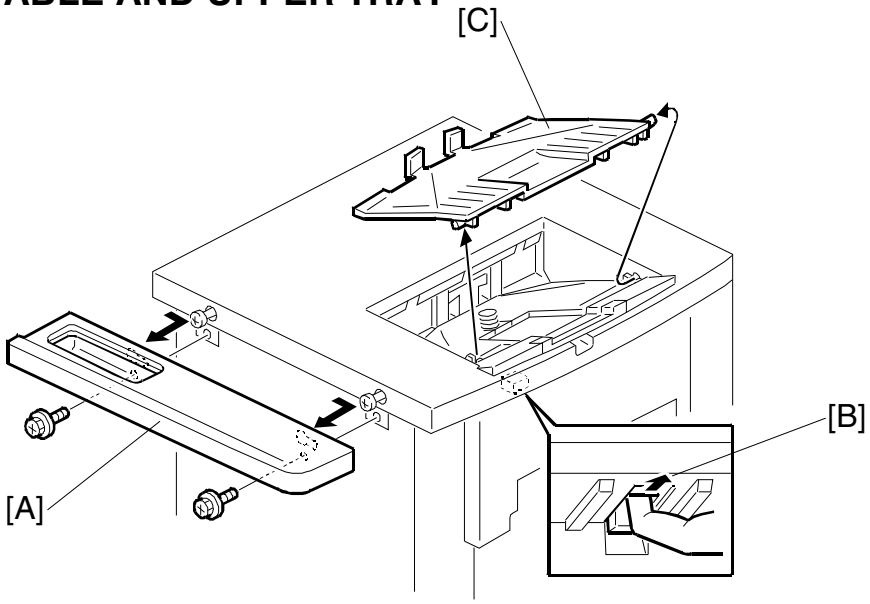
#### *Left Inner Cover*

1. Remove the front door.
2. Remove the left inner cover [C] (☞ x 1).

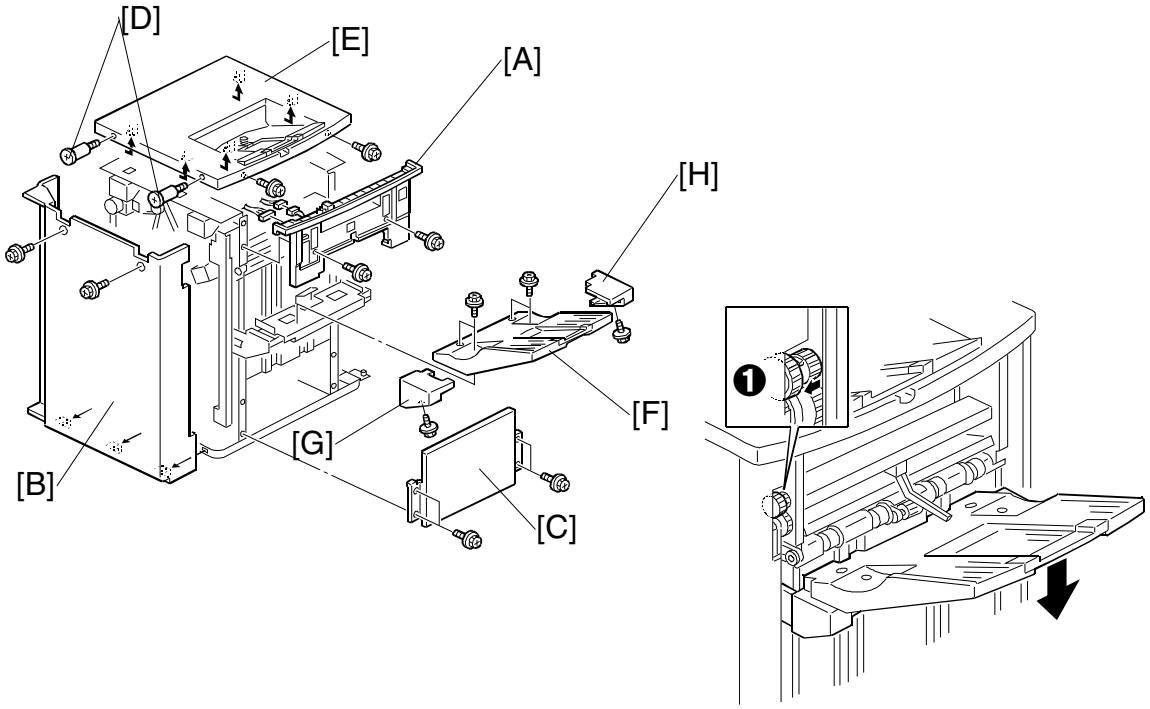
#### *Inner Cover*

1. Remove the inner cover [D] (☞ x 3).

## 1.1.2 SIDE TABLE AND UPPER TRAY




1. Remove the side table [A] (x 2). Slide to the right to remove it.
2. Click the release lever [B] and remove the upper tray [C].






## 1.1.3 LEFT COVERS, REAR COVER

Remove:

- Shift tray jogger unit (☛1.8.1)
- Remove the door and left inner cover. (☛1.1.1)

[A] Remove the left upper cover (🔩 x 2, 🖐 x 2).
[B] Remove the rear cover (🔩 x 2).
[C] Remove the left lower cover (🔩 x 4).

## 1.1.4 TOP COVER

Remove:

- Side table, upper tray (☛1.1.2)

[D] Step screws (🔩 x 2).
[E] Top cover (🔩 x 2). Slide to the right to remove.

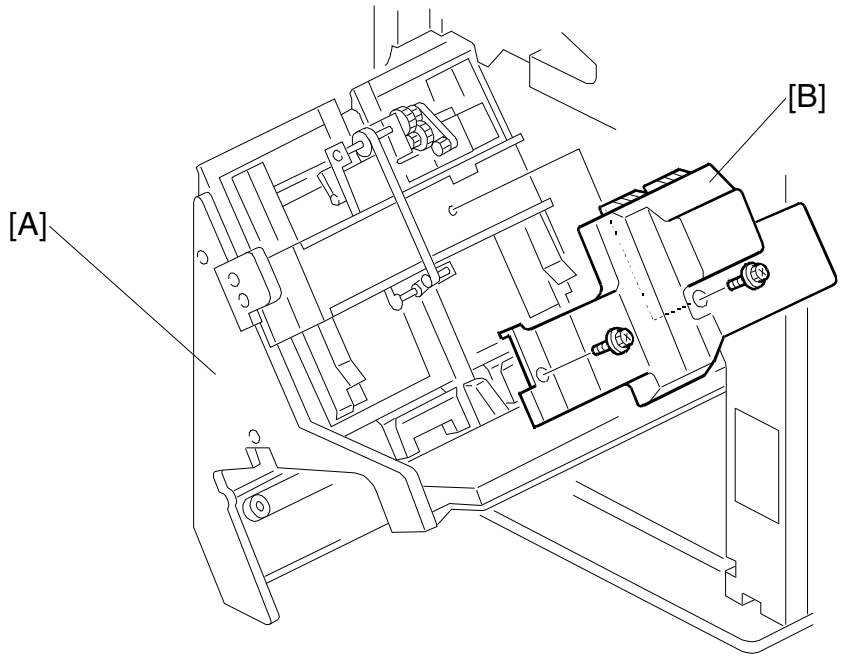
## 1.1.5 SHIFT TRAY

- If you need to lower the shift tray, support the bottom of the tray with your hand, then pull the gear toward you ❶ to release the tray and lower it.

Remove:

[F] Remove the shift tray (🔩 x 4).
[G] Shift tray rear cover (🔩 x 1)
[H] Shift tray front cover [H] (🔩 x 1).

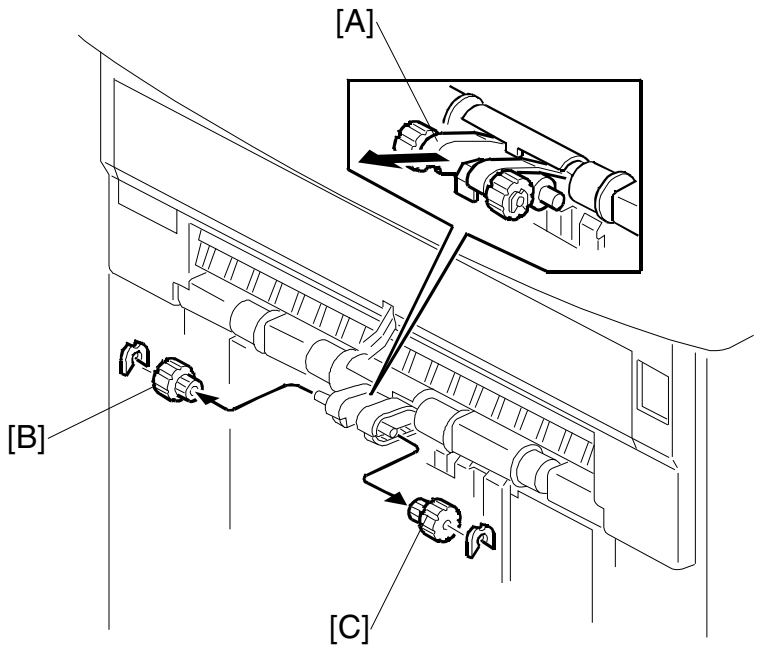
## 1.1.6 JOGGER UNIT COVER




1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler tray unit [A].
3. Remove the jogger unit cover [B] (x2)

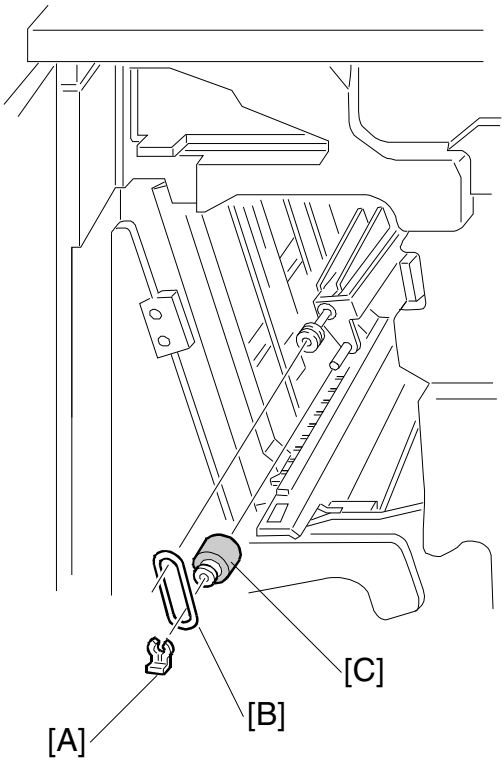
# 1.2 ROLLERS

## 1.2.1 DRAG ROLLER



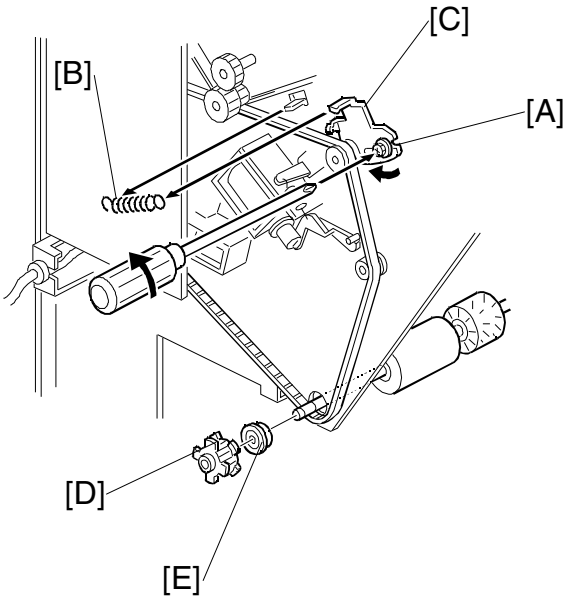

1. Above the shift tray, pull the roller mount [A] out.
2. Remove the rollers [B] and [C] (☆ x 1 each)

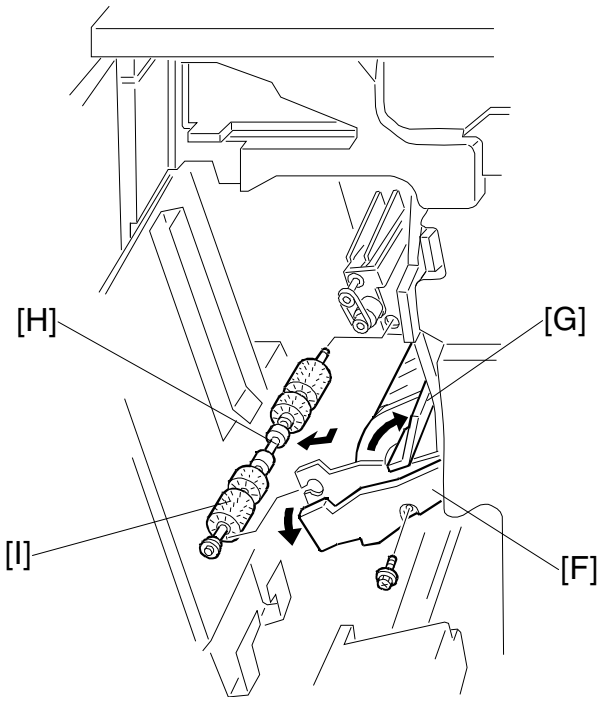
## 1.2.2 POSITIONING ROLLER




1. Remove the jogger unit cover (☛1.1.6)
2. Remove the snap ring [A].
3. Release the rubber belt [B].
4. Replace the positioning roller [C].

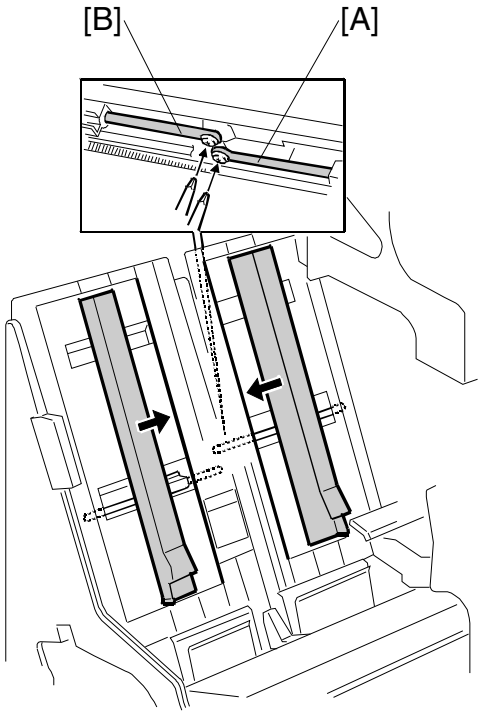
## 1.2.3 ALIGNMENT BRUSH ROLLER




1. Open the front door and pull out the staple unit.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Remove the main board bracket and all connectors ( x 8). (☛1.4.6)
4. Remove the screw [A] and tension spring [B] for the tension bracket [C], and release the tension of the timing belt.
5. Remove the pulley [D] and bearing [E].
6. Remove the inner cover [F] ( x 1).
7. Open the guide [G], then remove the alignment brush roller assembly [H].
8. Remove the alignment brush roller [I] ( x2, Bearing x 1 front/back, x1).

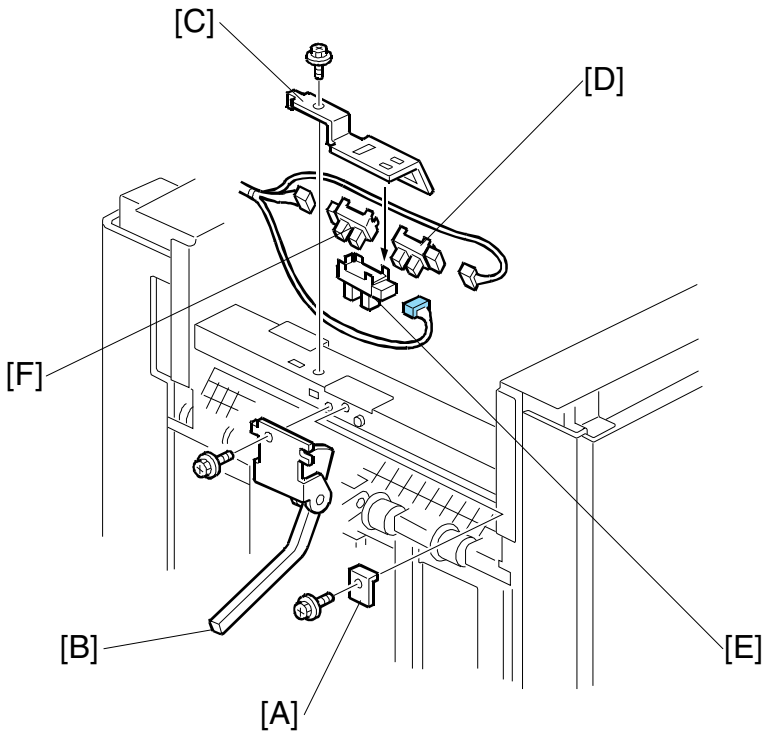
# 1.3 JOGGER FENCE




1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the jogger and stapler unit.
3. Push both fences to the center.
4. Remove the left jogger fence [A] (🔩 x 1)
5. Remove the right jogger fence [B] (🔩 x 1).
   **NOTE:** If the screws are difficult to remove or re-attach, remove the jogger fence belt and spring plate.

# 1.4 SENSORS

## 1.4.1 PAPER HEIGHT SENSORS



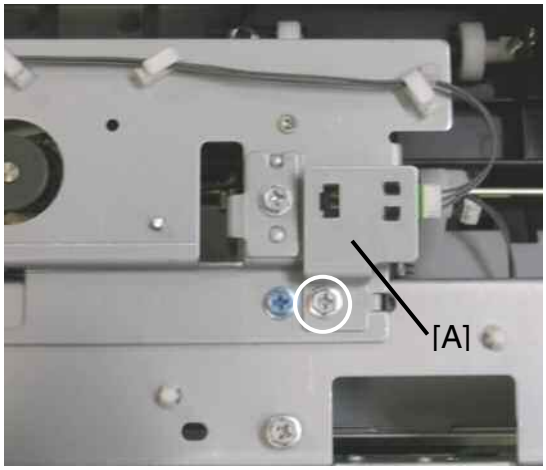

Remove:

- Top cover. (☛1.1.1)
- Left upper panel and left upper cover (☞ x 2, ☞ x 2) (☛1.1.3)

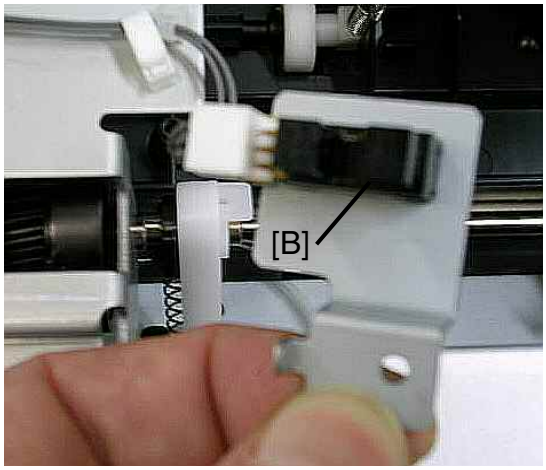
[A] Protector plate (☞ x 1).
[B] Feeler (☞ x 1).
[C] Sensor bracket (☞ x 1).
[D] Paper height sensor – staple mode (☞ x 1, Pawls x4)
[E] Paper height sensor – standby mode (☞ x 1, Pawls x4)
[F] Paper height sensor – shift/Z-Fold(☞ x 1, Pawls x4).

## 1.4.2 EXIT GUIDE HP SENSOR

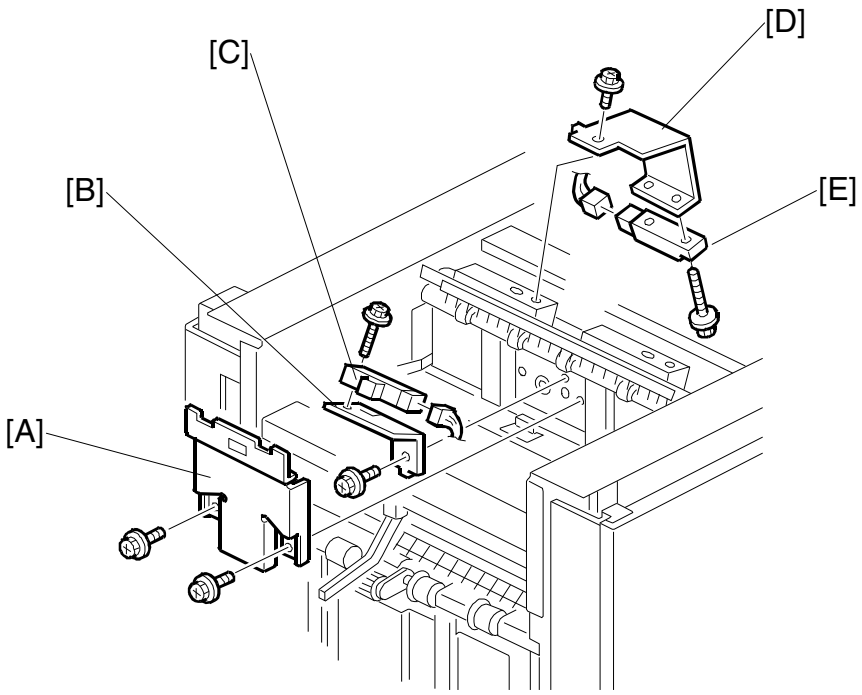
1. Remove the top cover. (☛1.1.1)
2. Remove the left upper panel and left upper cover (🔩 x 2, 🖐 x 2).
3. Remove:
   [A] Sensor bracket [A] (🔩 x 1).




   [B] Exit guide HP sensor (🖐 x 1, Pawls x3).



## 1.4.3 UPPER TRAY FULL AND EXIT SENSORS






### *Upper Tray Full Sensor*

1. Remove the top cover.
2. Remove the sensor cover [A] (x 2).
3. Remove the sensor bracket [B] (x 1).
4. Replace the upper tray full sensor [C] (x 1, x1).

### *Upper Tray Exit Sensor*

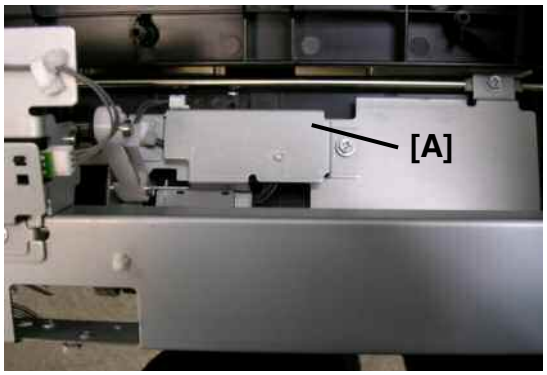
5. Remove the sensor bracket [D] (x 1).
6. Replace the upper tray exit sensor [E] (x 1, x 1).

## 1.4.4 SHIFT TRAY EXIT SENSOR

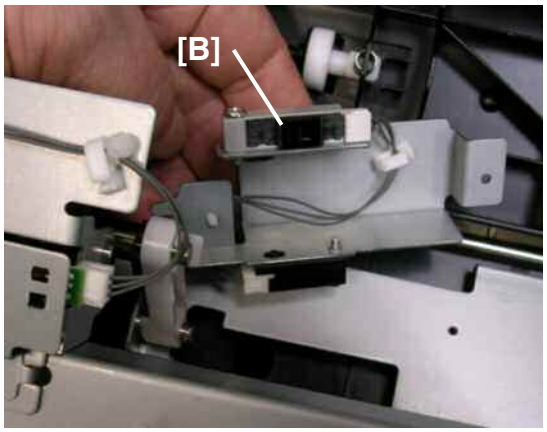
Remove the top cover (☛1.1.4)

Remove:

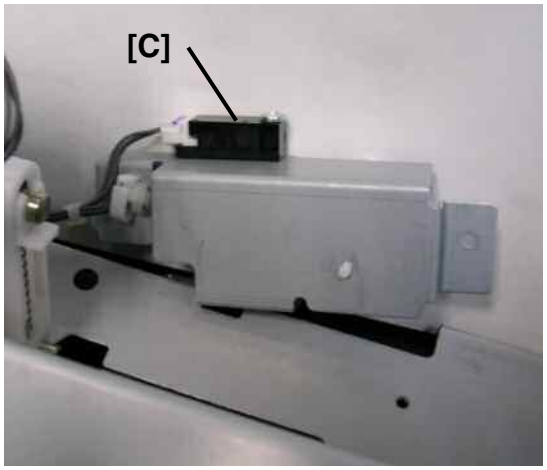
[A] Sensor bracket (x1)



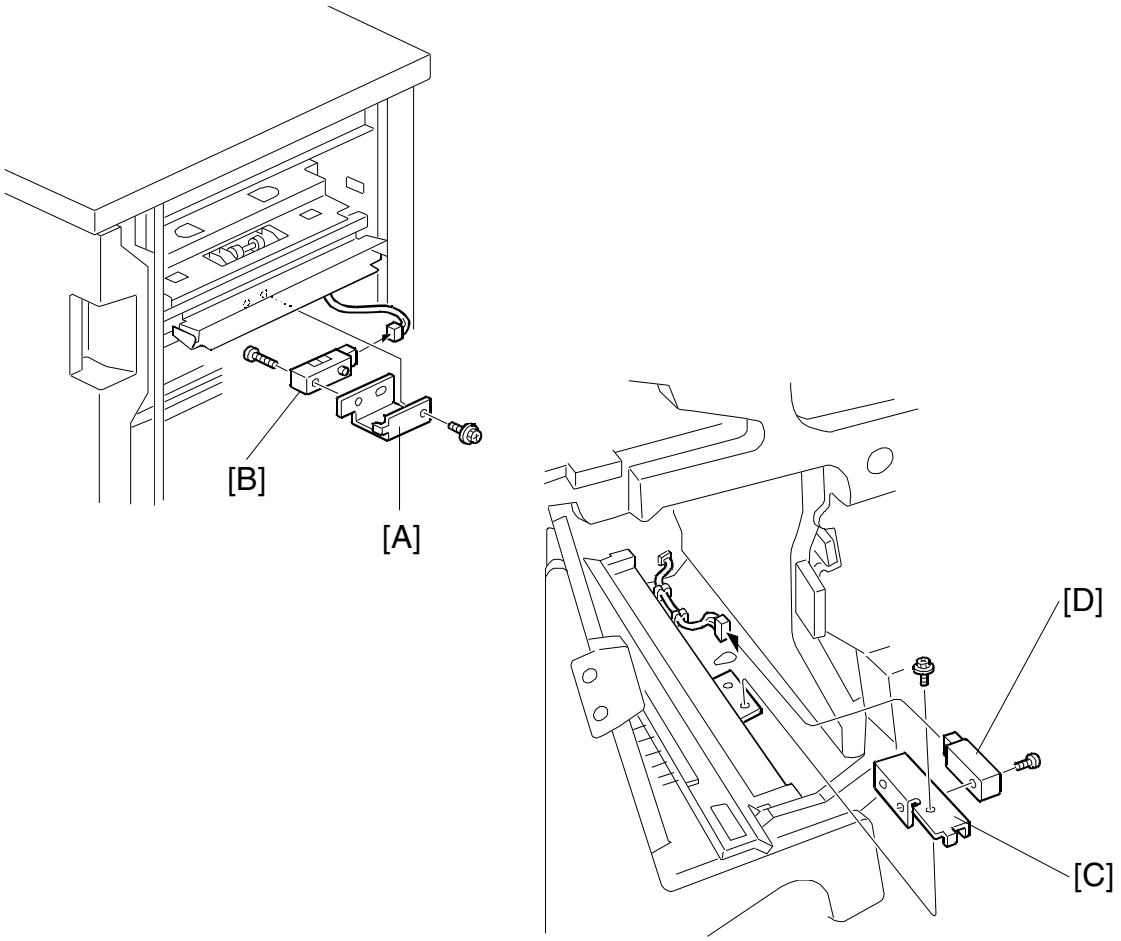

[B] Shift tray exit sensor 1 (x1, x1)




[C] Shift tray exit sensor 2 (x1, x1)



## 1.4.5 ENTRANCE AND STAPLER TRAY ENTRANCE SENSORS





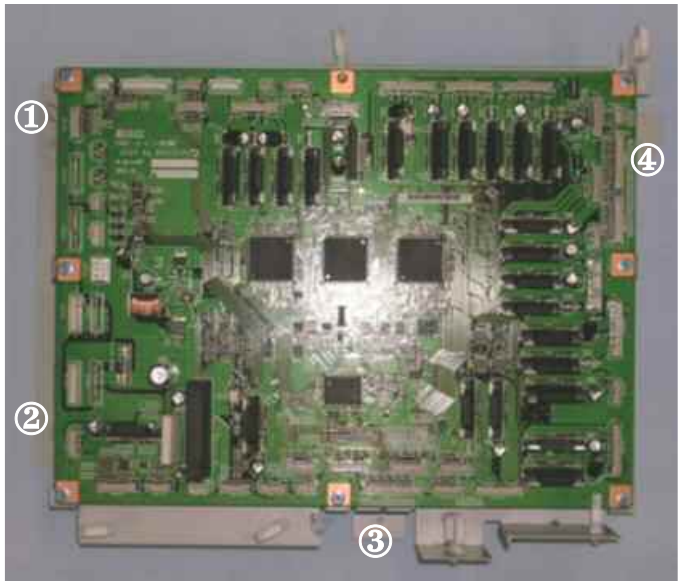

### *Entrance Sensor*

1. Disconnect the finisher from the copier.
2. Remove the sensor bracket [A] (☞ x 1).
3. Replace the entrance sensor [B] (☞ x 1) (✋ x 1).

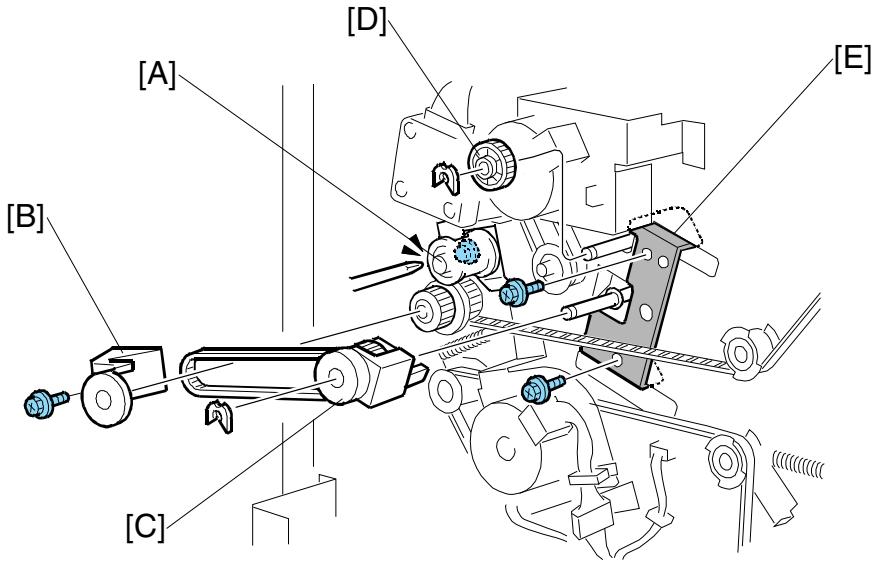
### *Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor*

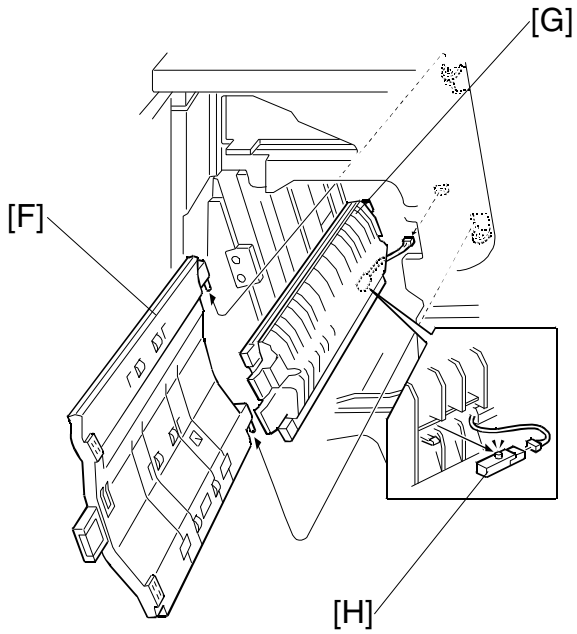
1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the sensor bracket [C] (☞ x 1).
3. Replace the stapler tray entrance sensor [D] (☞ x 1)(✋ x 1).

## 1.4.6 MAIN BOARD, PRE-STACK PAPER SENSOR




1. Remove the rear cover. (☛1.1.4)
2. Remove the main board bracket ( x 4, x8, x All).
3. Open the front door.



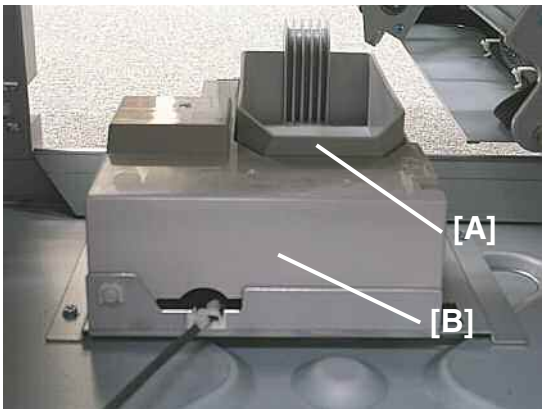



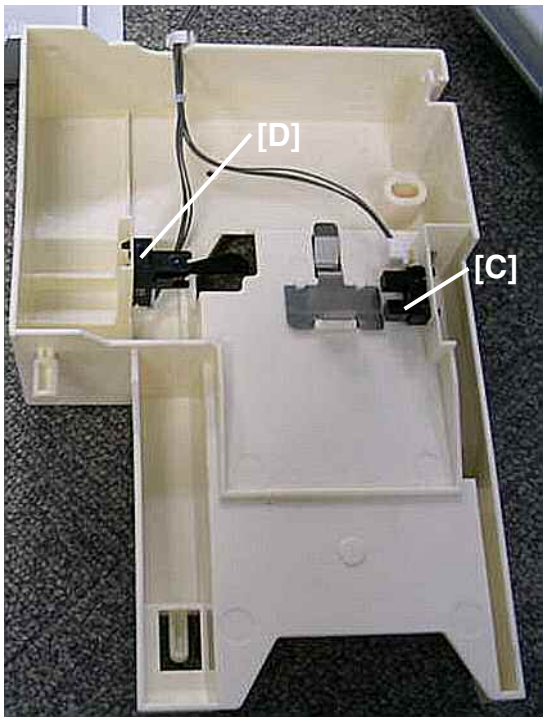

Loosen the screw [A] (x1)

Remove:

[B] Gear cover (x1)
[C] Gear (x1, Timing belt x1)
[D] Gear (x1)
[E] Plate (x2)
[F] Left vertical transport guide
[G] Middle vertical transport guide
[H] Pre-stack paper sensor (x1)

## 1.4.7 STAPLE TRIMMINGS HOPPER FULL SENSOR



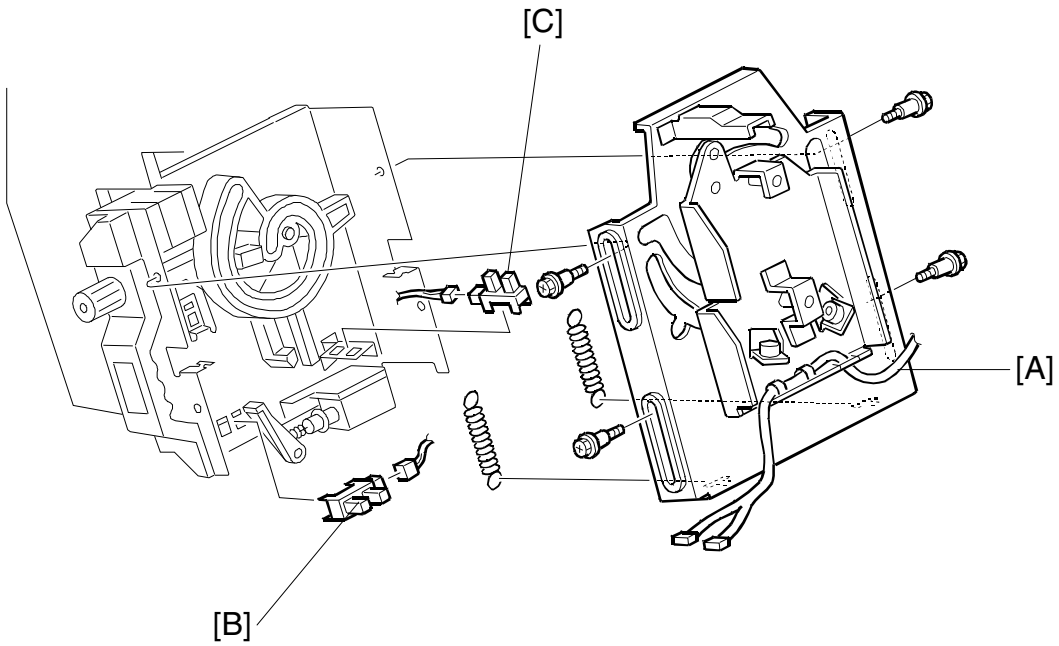




- Open the front door
- Pull out the stapler unit
- Remove the rear cover ( x 2).

Remove:

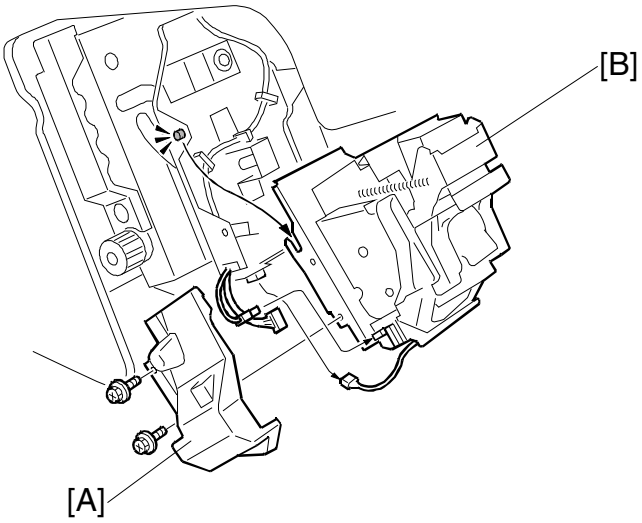
[A] Staple trimmings hopper
[B] Hopper holder ( x1, Hook x1, x1)
[C] Hopper full sensor ( x 1)
[D] Hopper set sensor ( x 1)

## 1.4.8 STAPLER ROTATION HP AND STAPLER RETURN SENSORS

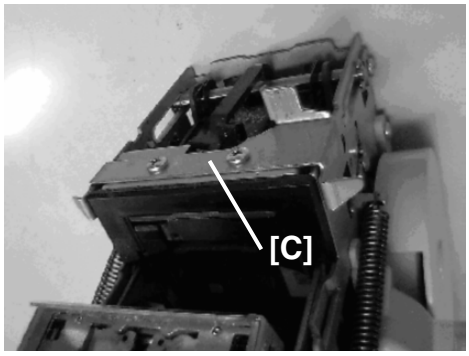



1. Remove the stapler unit. (See next page.)
2. Remove the stapler mount bracket [A] (x 4) (Springs x 2).
3. Replace the stapler rotation HP sensor [B] (x 1).
4. Replace the stapler return sensor [C] (x 1).

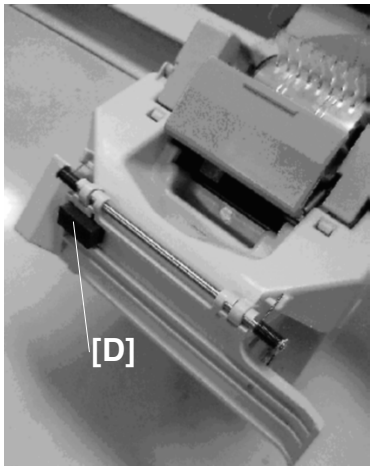
# 1.5 STAPLER




1. Open the front door and pull out the staple tray.
2. Remove the stapler unit harness cover [A] (x 2).
3. Lift the stapler [B] off of its pegs (x 2)
4. Remove plate [C] (x 2).
5. Attach this plate to the new stapler with the same screws (x 2)

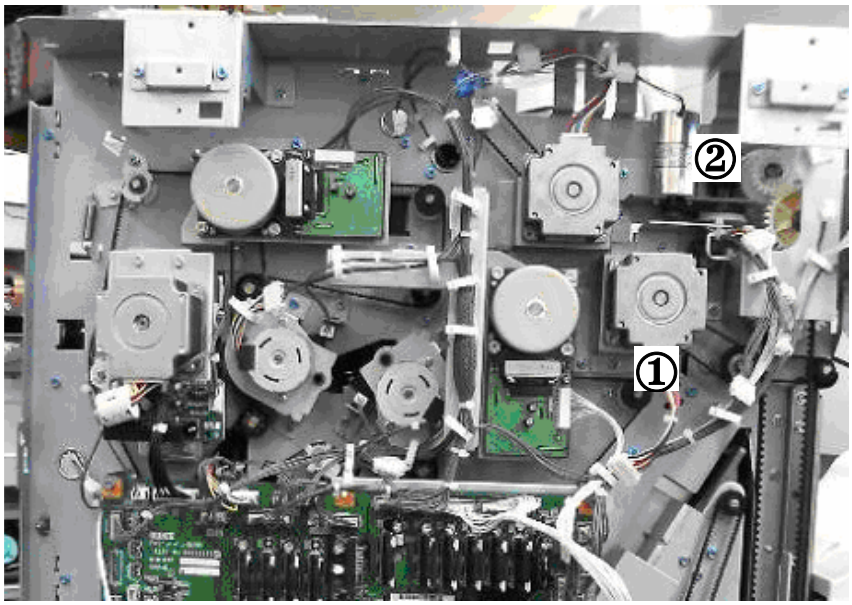



6. Replace the frame guard [D] with the one provided with the new stapler.



# 1.6 SHIFT TRAY

## 1.6.1 SHIFT TRAY EXIT, SHIFT TRAY LIFT MOTOR




① Shift Tray Exit Motor

② Shift Tray Lift Motor

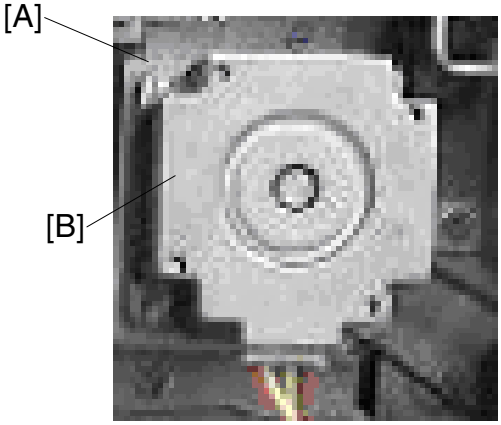


### *Shift Tray Exit Motor*

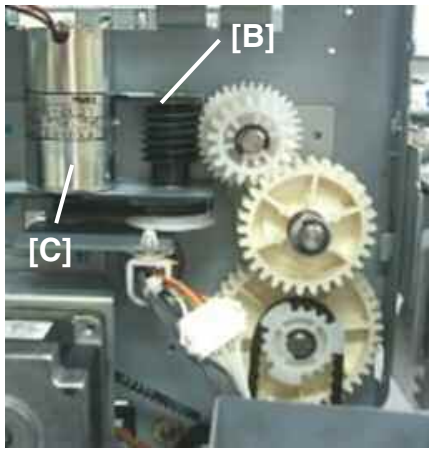
- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)

[A] Shift tray exit motor bracket (x2, x1, X1, Timing belt x1)

[B] Shift tray exit motor (x2)



### *Shift Tray Lift Motor*



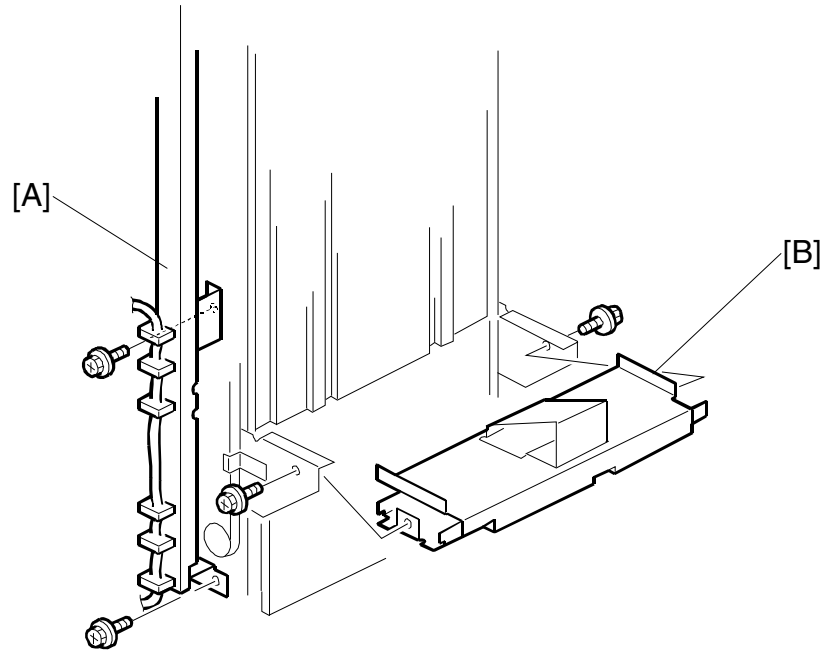

- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)

[A] Gear cover (🔩 x2)

[B] Shift tray lift motor bracket (🔩 x2)

[C] Shift tray lift motor (🔩 x,2 🤚 x1, Timing belt x1)

## 1.6.2 DRAG ROLLER/DRAG DRIVE MOTORS, DRAG DRIVE HP SENSOR

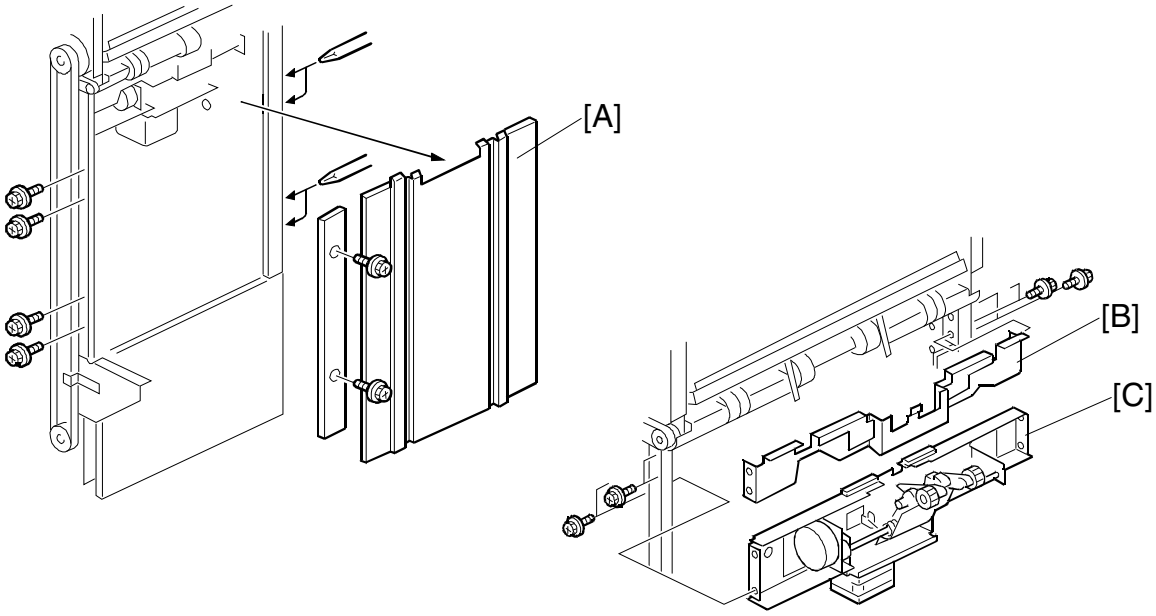




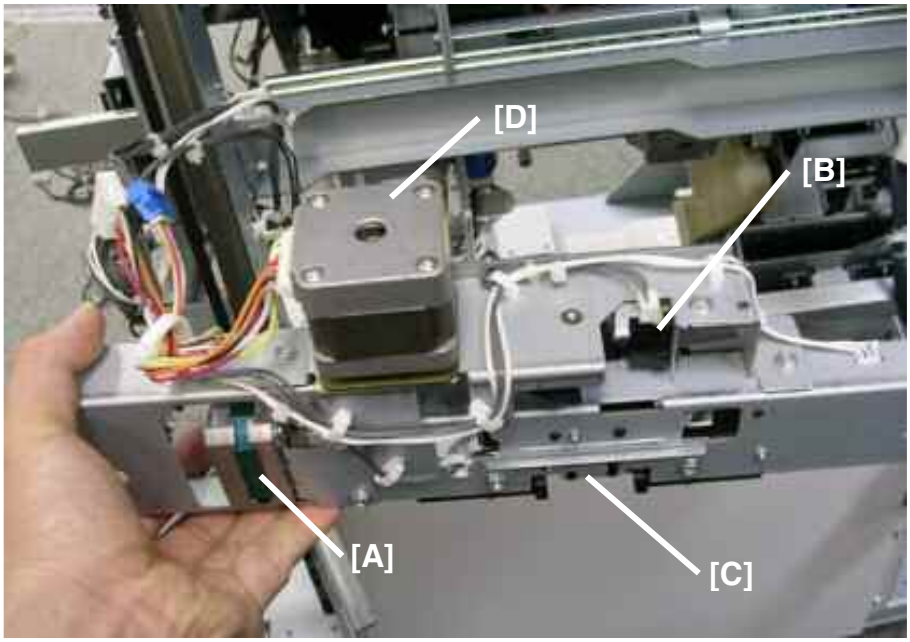

Remove:

- Front door and all covers, except the left lower cover, top cover (☛1.1)
  **NOTE:** Be sure to lower the shift tray by pulling the gear toward you. The shift tray must be down.

1. Remove the left stay [A] (x 2)
2. Remove the shift tray mounting plate [B] ( x 2).



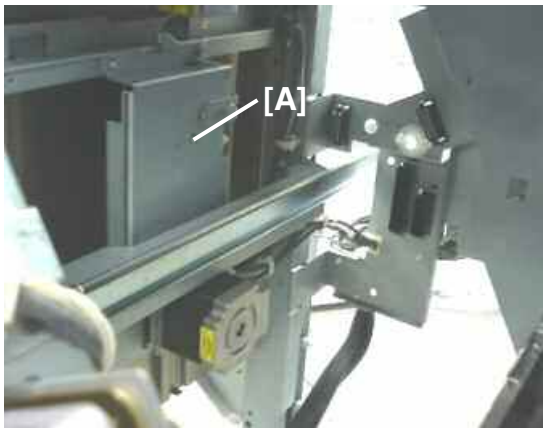

3. Remove the end fence [A] and plate (x8, x6, x2).
4. Remove cover [B] (x 4).
5. Remove the motor stay [C] (x4, x7, x4).
   **NOTE:** Make sure the motor and sensor connectors are disconnected before removing.

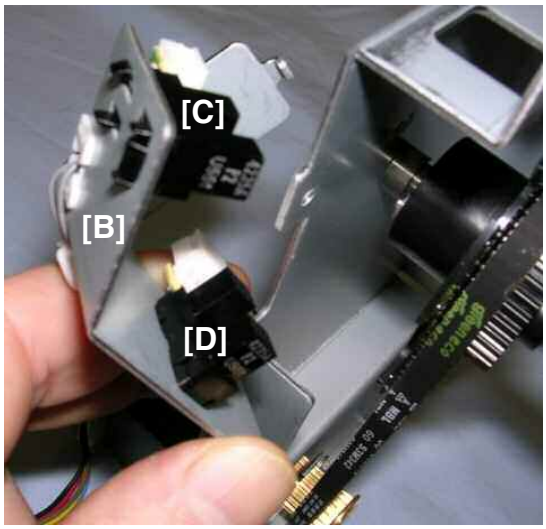





6. Remove the drag roller motor unit [A] (Bearing x1, x2, x1)
7. Remove the drag roller motor (x2)
8. Remove the drag roller HP sensor unit [B] (x1)
9. Remove the drag roller HP sensor (x1, Pawls x3)
10. Remove the paper height sensor – shift/Z-fold unit [C] (x2, x2)
11. Remove the paper height sensor shift/Z-fold (x1, Pawls x3)
12. Remove the drag drive motor unit (x4, x2)
13. Remove the drag drive motor (x2)

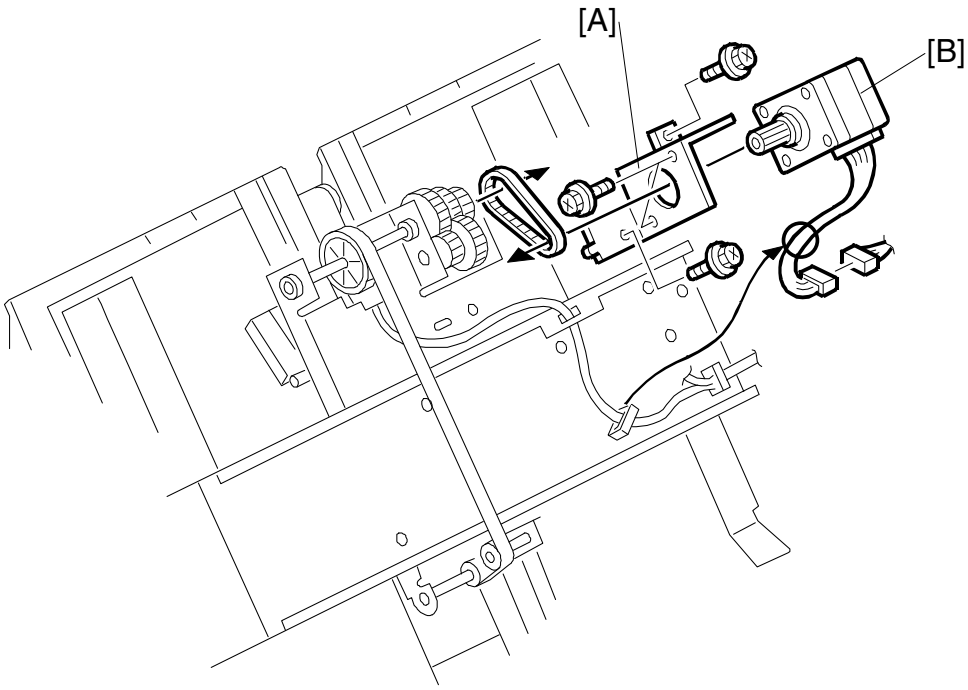
## 1.6.3 SHIFT MOTOR AND SENSORS




1. Remove the end fence (☛1.6.2)
2. Remove the shift motor bracket [A] (with motor) ( x 4, x1, x1)
3. Remove the shift motor ( x4)
4. Remove the half-turn sensor bracket [B] ( x 1)
5. Remove half-turn sensor 1 [C] ( x1, Pawls x3)
6. Remove half-turn sensor 2 [D] ( x1, Pawls x3)

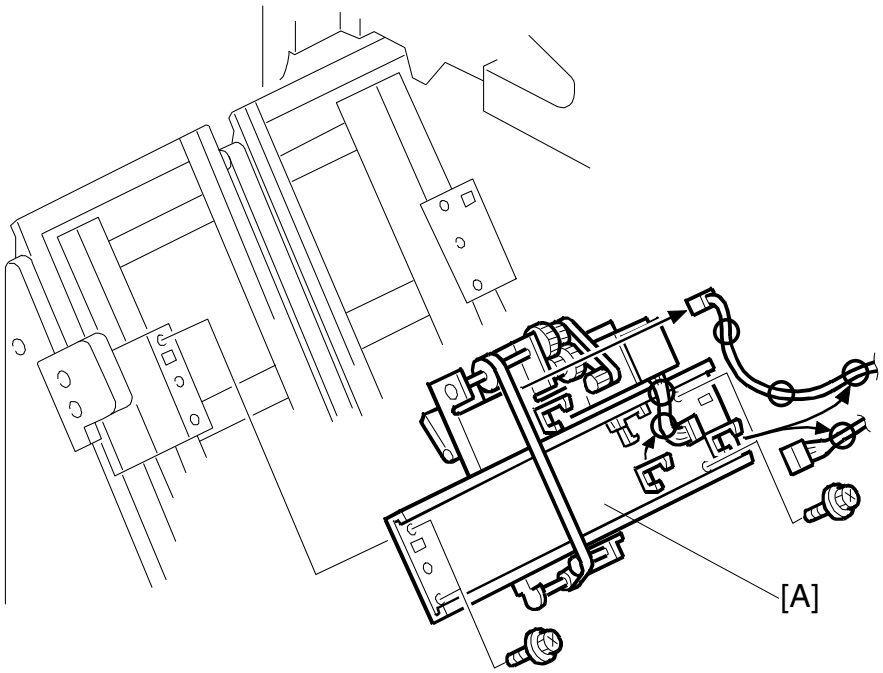
## 1.6.4 JOGGER TOP FENCE MOTOR





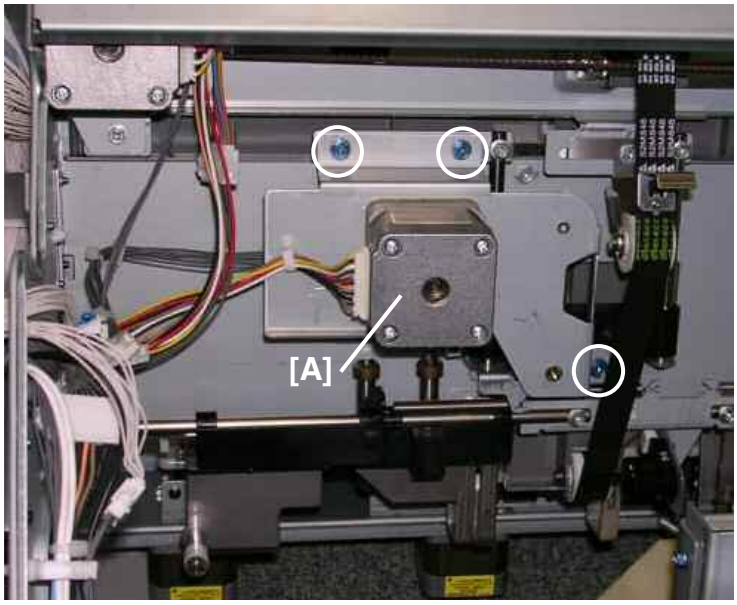

1. Open the front door and pull out the stapler tray unit. (☛1.1.6)
2. Remove the jogger unit cover (x2)
3. Remove the motor bracket [A] (x2, timing belt x1)
4. Remove the jogger top fence motor [B] (x2 x1 x1)

## 1.6.5 JOGGER UNIT




1. Open the front door and pull out the stapler tray unit.
2. Remove the jogger unit cover (x2)
3. Remove the jogger unit [A] (x4, x5, x5)

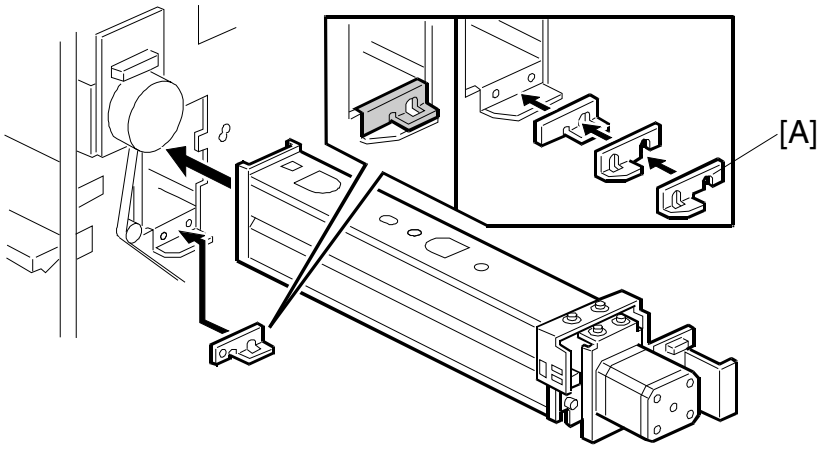
## 1.6.6 JOGGER BOTTOM FENCE MOTOR




1. Open the front door and pull out the stapler tray unit.
2. Remove the jogger bottom fence motor unit [A] ( x3, timing belt x1, x1, x1).

# 1.7 PUNCH UNIT

## 1.7.1 PUNCH POSITION ADJUSTMENT




The position of the punched holes can be adjusted in two ways.

### *Front to Rear Adjustment*

Three spacers [A] are provided with the punch unit for manual adjustment of the hole position in the main scan direction:

- 2 mm (x 1)
- 1 mm (x 2)

**NOTE:** One spacer was installed at installation and the remaining spacers were fastened with a screw to the rear frame of the finisher under the rear cover and slightly above the lock bar.

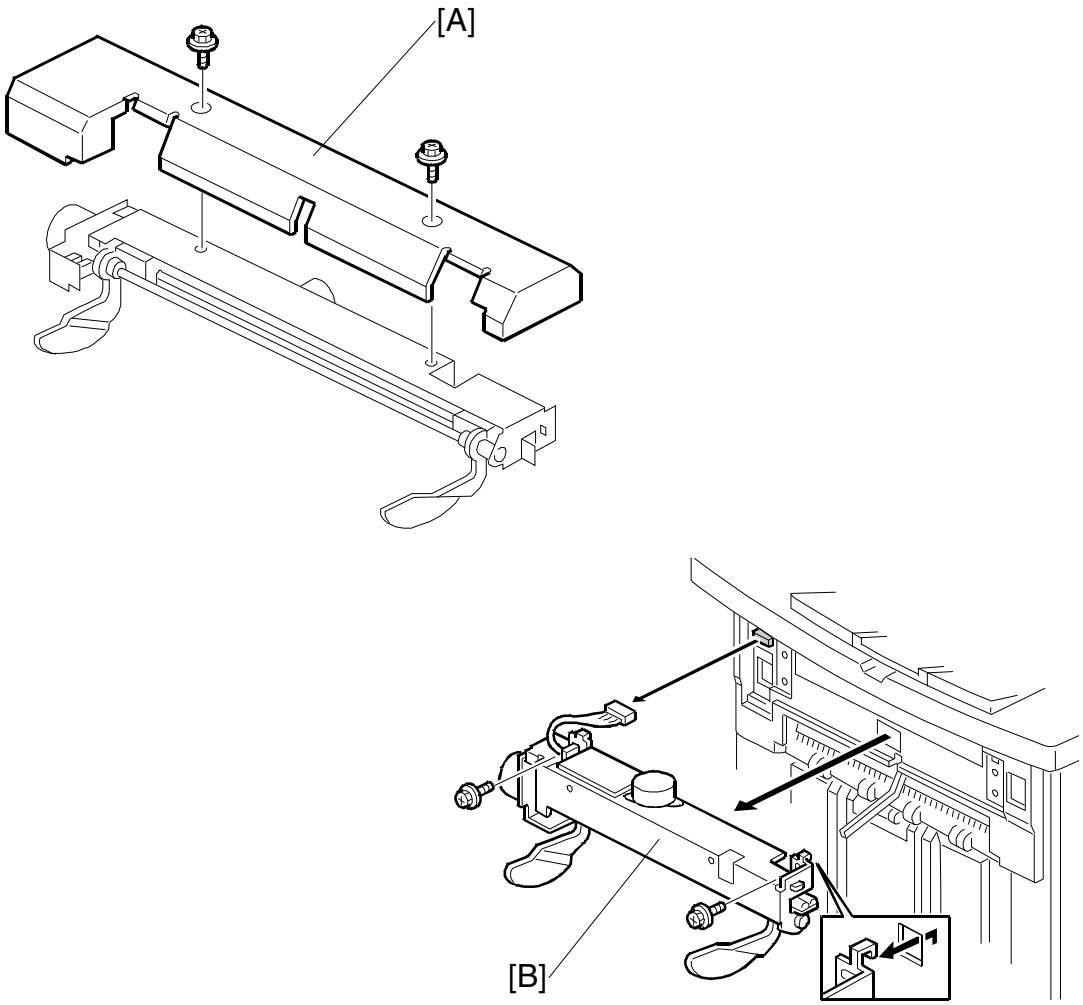
### *Right to Left Adjustment*

The position of the punched holes can be adjusted right to left in the sub scan direction with **SP6101** Punch Hole Position Adjustment. The position can be adjusted in the range ±7.5 mm in 0.5 mm steps. The default setting is 0.

Press the [•/×] key to toggle the ± selection. A +ve value shifts the punch holes left toward the edge of the paper, and a -ve value shifts the holes right away from the edge.

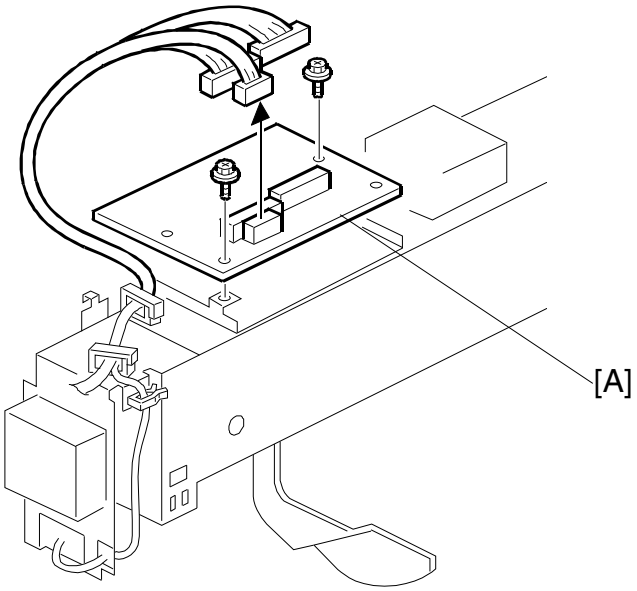
# 1.8 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT

## 1.8.1 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT



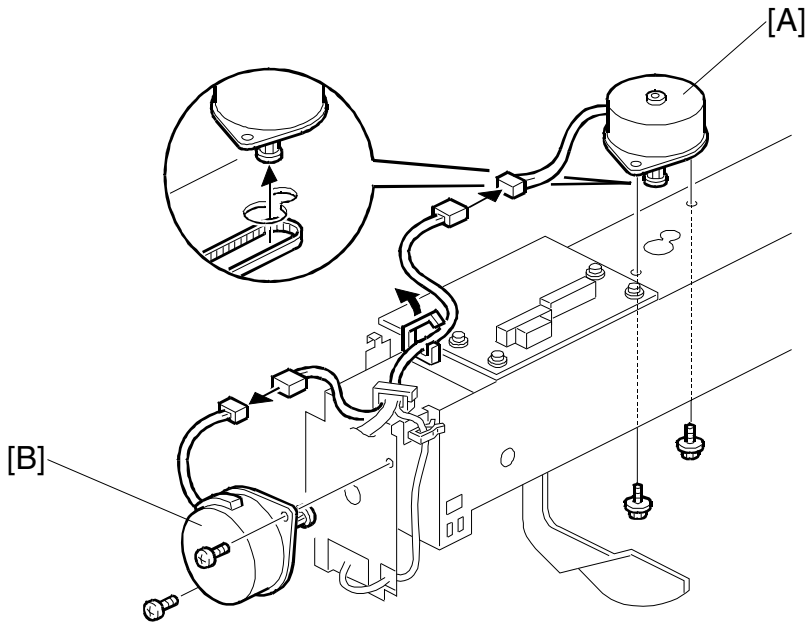

1. Remove the jogger unit cover [A] (x 2).
2. Remove the jogger unit [B] (x 2, x 1).

## 1.8.2 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT PCB




1. Remove the jogger unit from the finisher. (☛ 1.8.1)
2. Remove the jogger unit control PCB [A] (☞ x 2, ☞ x 3)

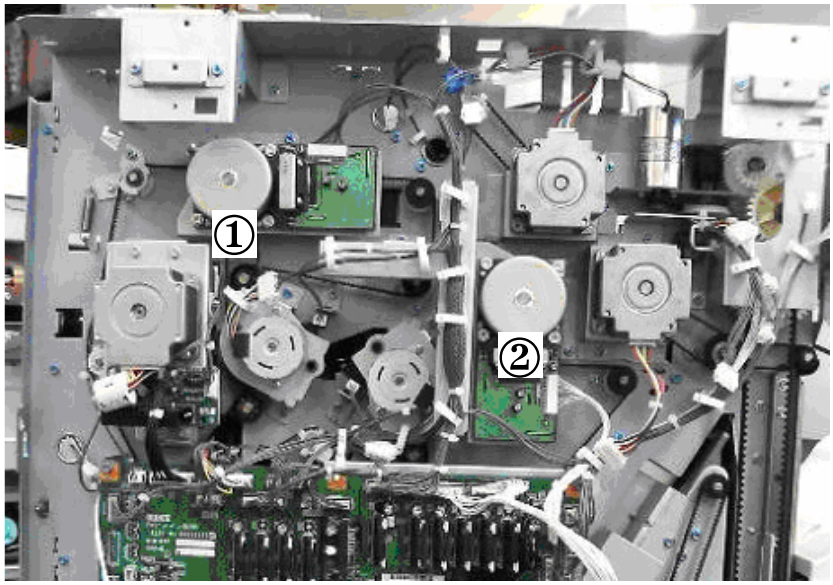
## 1.8.3 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT MOTORS




1. Remove the jogger unit from the finisher. (☛ 1.8.1)
2. Remove the shift tray jogger motor [A] (x 2, x 1).
3. Remove the shift tray jogger retraction motor [B] (x 2, x 1).

# 1.9 MOTORS

## 1.9.1 TRANSPORT MOTORS, EXIT GUIDE MOTOR

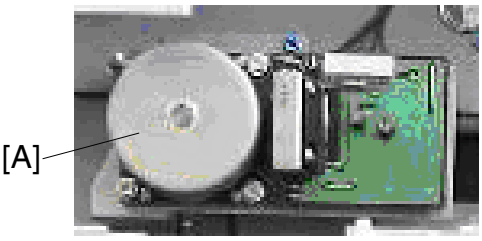



| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Upper Transport Motor |
| ② | Lower Transport Motor |

### *Upper Tray Transport Motor*

- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)

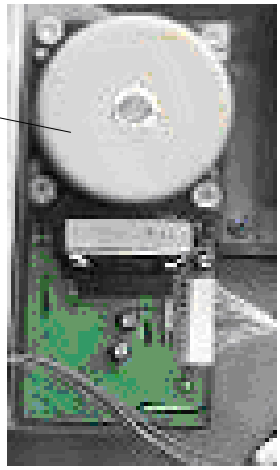
[A] Upper transport motor (🔩 x4, 🖐 x1)



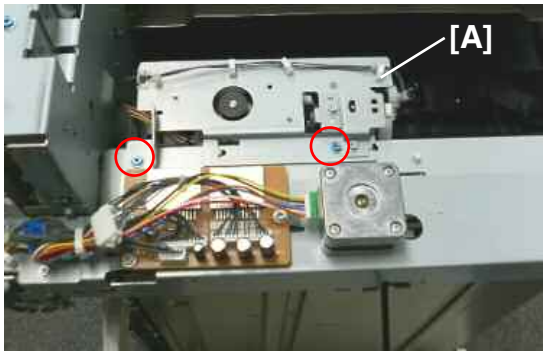
### *Lower Transport Motor*

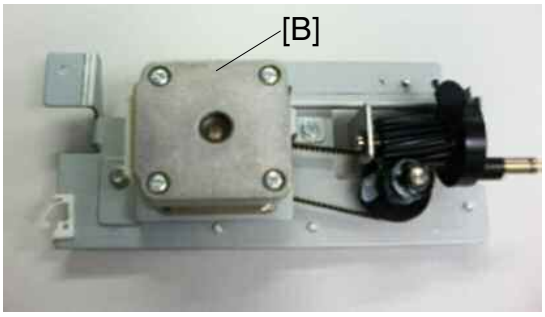
- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)

[A] Lower transport motor (x4, x1)




### *Exit Guide Motor*



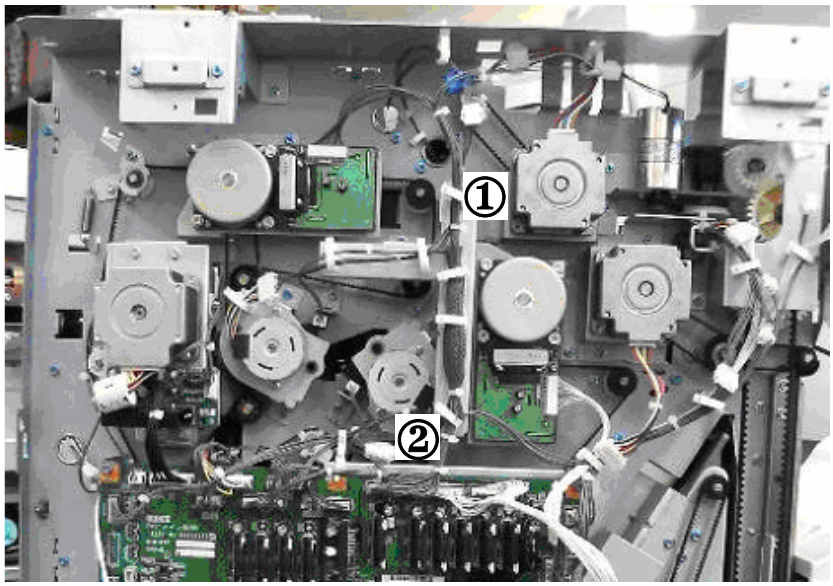




- Top cover (☛1.1.4)

[A] Bracket (x2, x1)

[B] Exit guide motor (x2, x1, Timing belt x1)

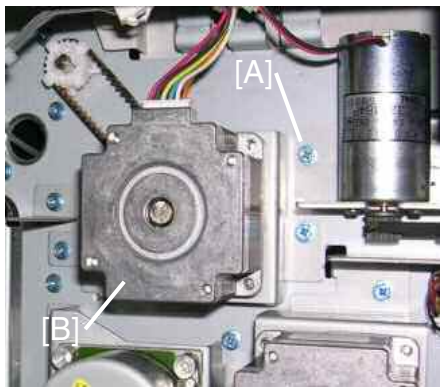
## 1.9.2 UPPER TRAY MOTORS



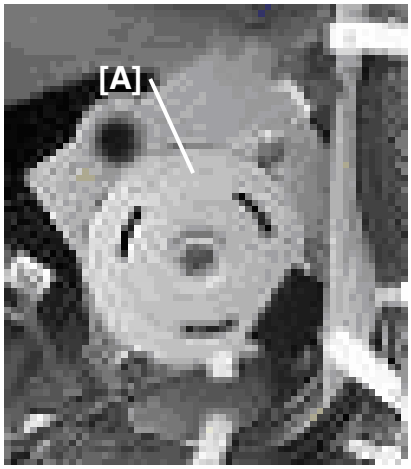

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Upper Tray Exit Motor |
| ② | Upper Tray Junction Gate Motor |

### *Upper Tray Exit Motor*

⇒ • Rear cover (☛1.1.4)
[A] Motor bracket (🔩 x2, 🖐 x1)
[B] Upper tray exit motor (🔩 x2, Timing belt x1)



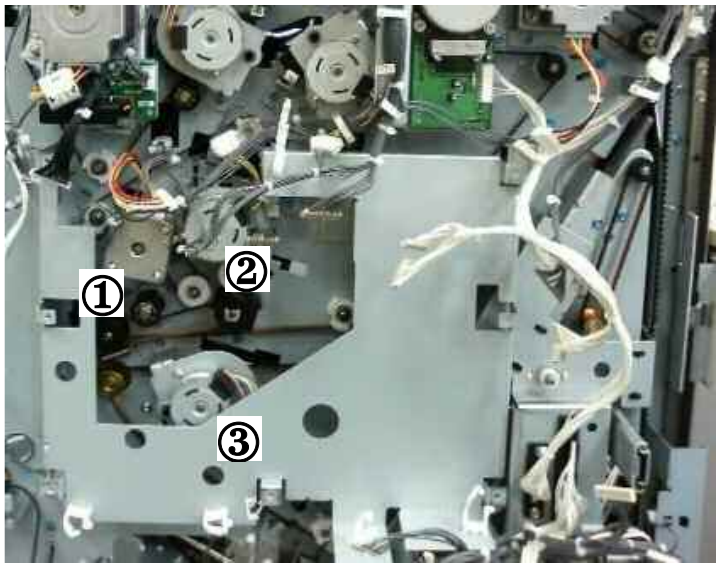
### *Upper Tray Junction Gate Motor*




- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)

[A] Upper tray junction gate motor( x2, ⇦x1)

## 1.9.3 PRE-STACK MOTORS



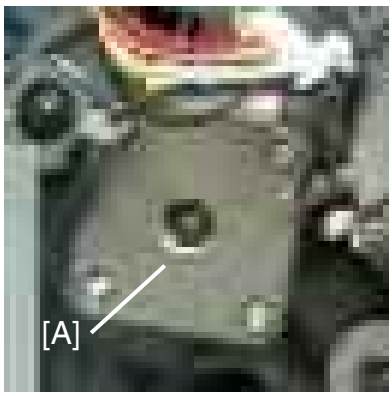

The photograph above shows the main control board removed (☞ x4, ☞ x All).

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Pre-Stack Transport Motor |
| ② | Pre-Stack Junction Gate Motor |
| ③ | Pre-Stack Stopper Motor |

### *Pre-Stack Transport Motor*

- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)
- Main control board bracket (☞ x4, ☞ x All, ⇦x8)
- Motor unit (☞ x2, ☞ x1)

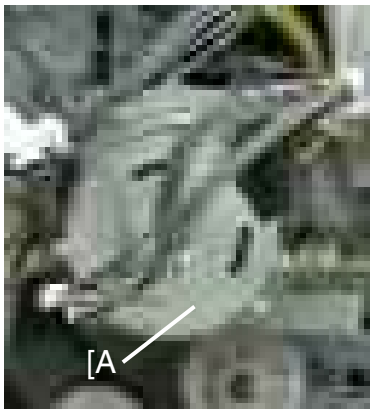
[A] Pre-stack transport motor (☞ x2)



### *Pre-Stack Junction Gate Motor*

- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)
- Main control board bracket (🔩 x4, 🖐 x All, ⇦x8)

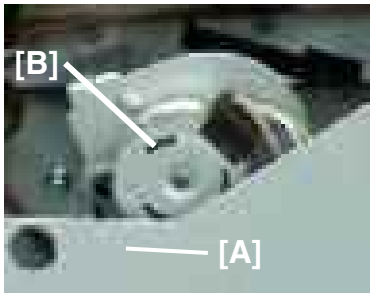
[A] Pre-stack junction gate motor (🔩 x2, ⇦x1, 🖐 x1)



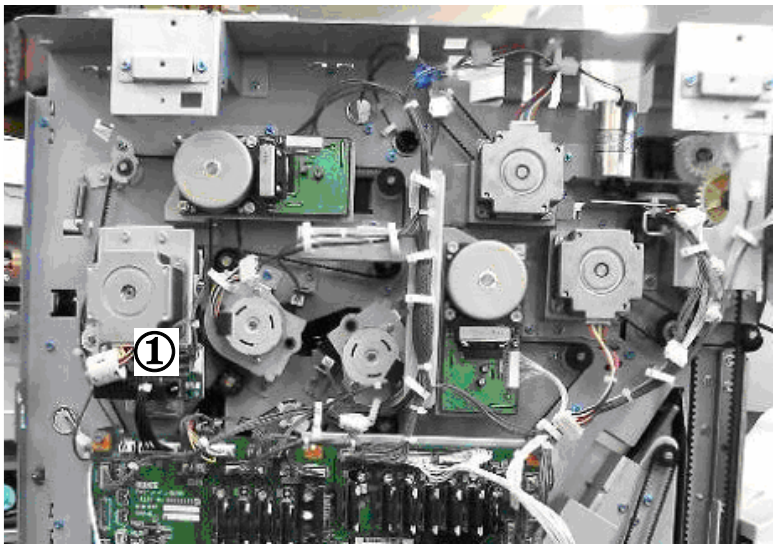

### *Pre-Stack Stopper Motor*

- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)
- Main control board bracket (🔩 x4, 🖐 x All, ⇦x8)

[A] Pre-stack stopper motor (🔩 x2, ⇦x1, 🖐 x1)



## 1.9.4 PUNCH MOTOR



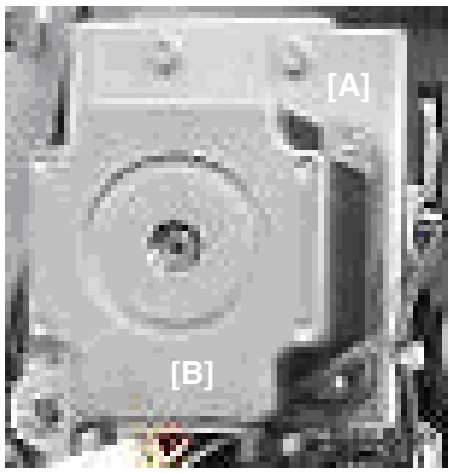

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Punch Motor |

***Punch Motor***

- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)

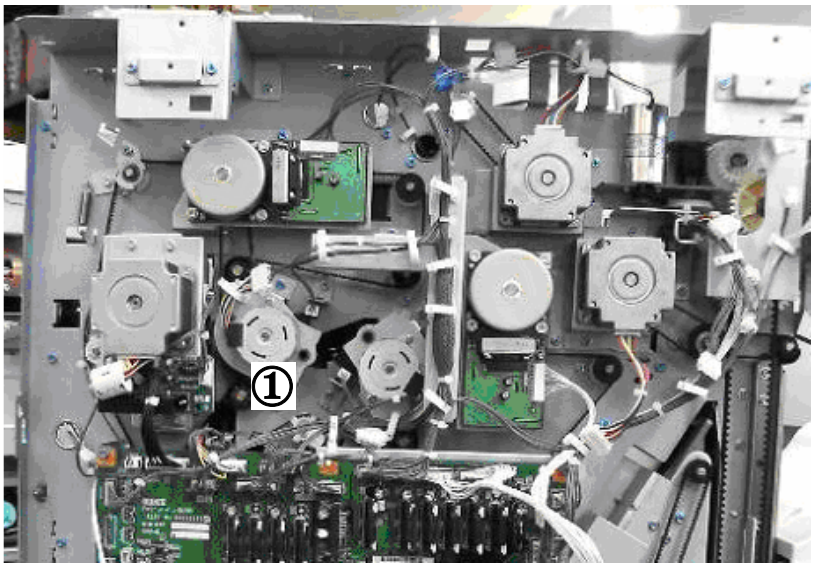
[A] Punch motor bracket (🔩 x3, ⇦x2, ✋ x1, Timing belt x1)

[B] Punch motor (🔩 x2)



## 1.9.5 STAPLE MOTORS

*



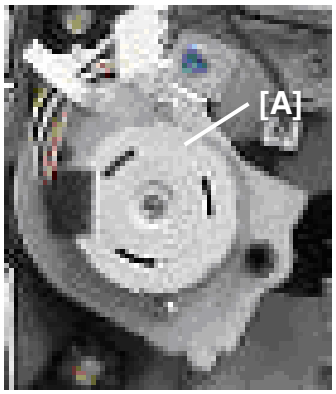

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Staple Junction Gate Motor |



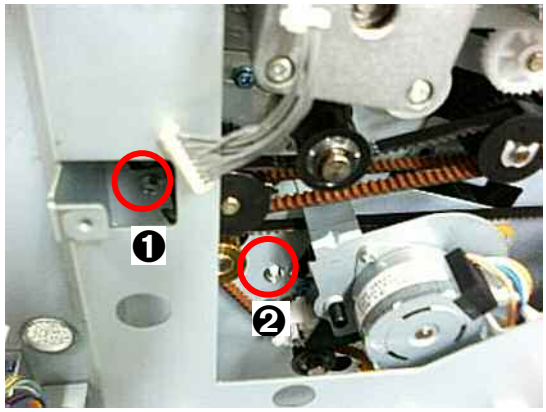
### *Staple Junction Gate Motor*

- Rear cover (☛1.1.4)

[A] Staple junction gate motor ( x2, x1, x1)



### *Stapler Exit Motor*




| | |
|---|---|
| ① | Stapler Exit Motor |

- Main control board bracket (x4, x 8, x All)

1. Remove the stapler exit motor ① (x2 ❶, ❷, x2, Timing belt x1)

# 2. SERVICE TABLES

For details about 3000-Sheet Finisher B830 SP codes, please refer to “5. Service Tables” in the main machine service manual.

## 2.1 DIP SWITCHES

DIP SW100

This DIP SW100 settings are for designer and factory use only. Do not change them.

DIP SW 101: 1 to 4

| DPS100 | | | | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **1** | **2** | **3** | **4** | |
| **0** | **0** | **0** | **0** | Default |
| **1** | 0 | 0 | 0 | Free run: 135 ppm (649 mm/s) A4 LEF, 5 sheets |
| 0 | **1** | 0 | 0 | Proof tray free run for durability testing: proof tray + punch + junction gate operation + proof tray output.: |
| 0 | 0 | **1** | 0 | Shift free run: Shift mode simulation 136 ppm (649 mm/s) A4 SEF, 5 sheets, continuous punching 110 ppm (515mm/s) |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | **1** | Sensor check before shipping, lowering the tray before shipping. **DFU**. Do not change. |

## 2.2 TEST POINTS

100 to 110

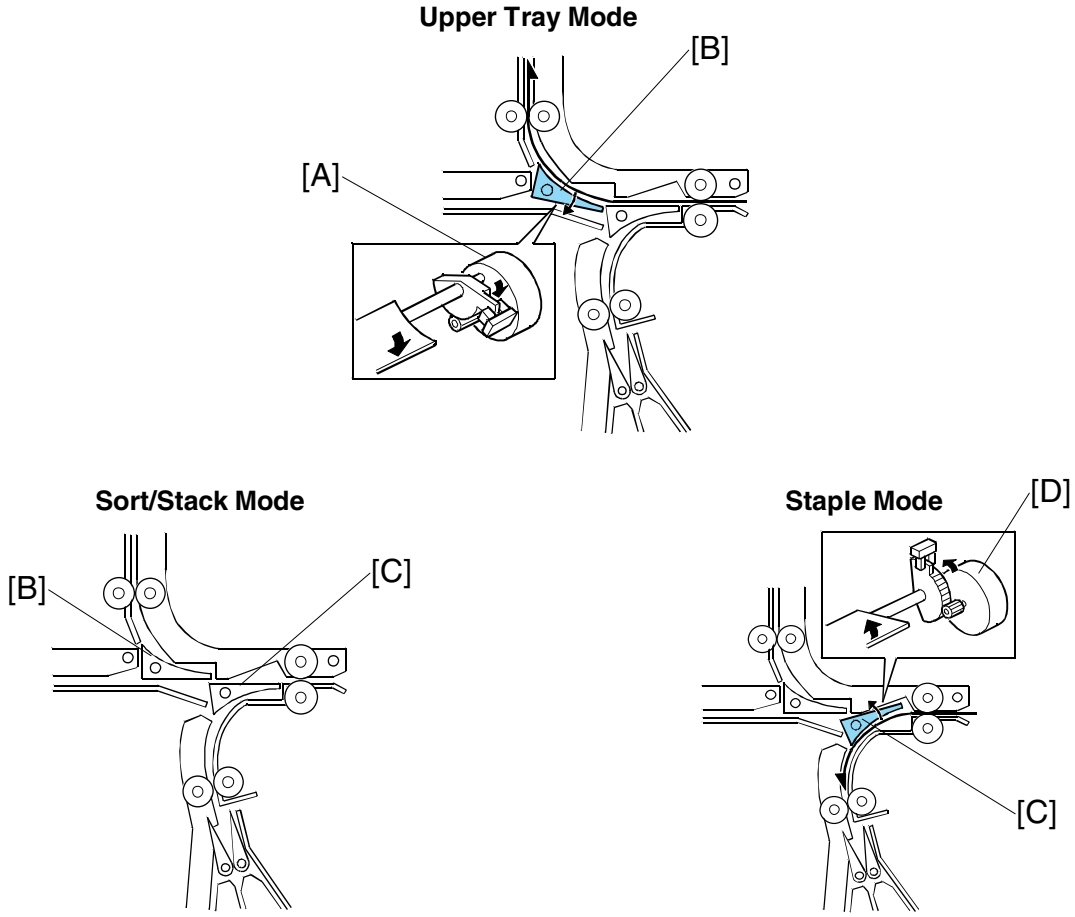
| No. | Label | Monitored Signal | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|
| TP100 | (5V) | +5 V | Used for sensor point testing, lowering the tray to shipping position. **DFU**. |
| TP101 | (GND) | Ground | |
| TP102 | (RXD) | RXD | |
| TP103 | (TXD) | TXD | |

## 2.3 FUSES

| No. | Function |
|---|---|
| FU100 | Protects 24 V. |

# 3. DETAILS

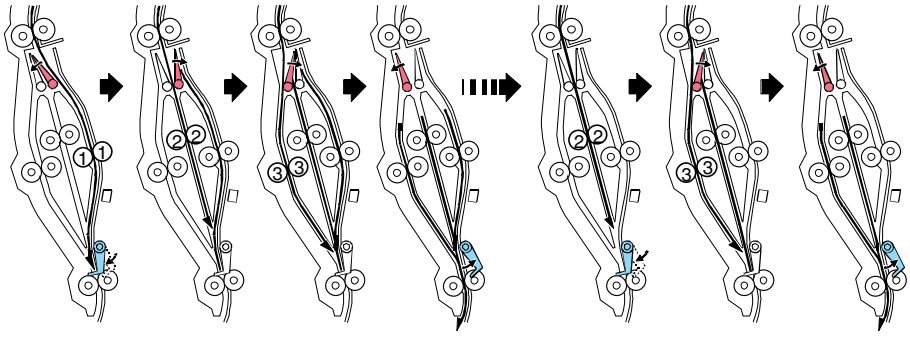
## 3.1 UPPER TRAY AND STAPLER JUNCTION GATES




Depending on the finishing mode, the copies are directed up, straight through, or down by the combinations of open and closed junction gates.

| Solenoid/Gate | | Selected Operation Mode | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Upper Tray | Sort/Stack | Staple |
| [A] | Upper tray junction gate motor | ON | Off | Off |
| [B] | Upper tray junction gate | OPEN | Closed | Closed |
| [C] | Stapler junction gate | Closed | Closed | OPEN |
| [D] | Stapler junction gate motor | Off | Off | ON |

# 3.2 PAPER PRE-STACKING




**Sequence 1**

The first three sheets of each job feed to trays ① → ② → ③ ([A], [B], [C]), then the first three sheets feed together to the staple tray [D].

**Sequence 2**

Thereafter, the remaining sheets feed to trays ② → ③ ([E], [F]), then the two sheets feed together to the staple tray [G]. Sequence 2 continues until the end of the job.

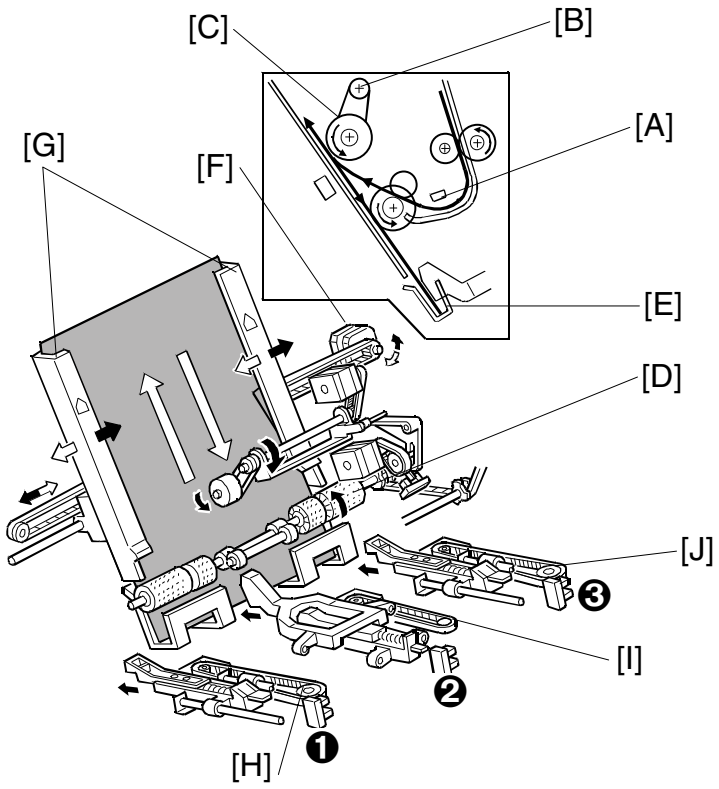
Junction gate mechanism:

- Three junction gates at the top of the pre-stack tray send the sheet of paper down path ❶, ❷, or ❸.
- The pre-stack junction gate motor controls the junction gates.
- The pre-stack junction gate HP sensor detects when the junction gates are at home position.
- The pre stack paper sensor – left detects paper jams in path ❸.
- The pre stack paper sensor – right detects paper jams in path ❶.

Stopper mechanism:

- The pre-stack stopper releases the three sheets of paper from the pre-stack tray after the previous set is stapled.
- The pre-stack stopper motor controls the stopper at the bottom of the tray.
- The pre-stack stopper HP sensor detects when the stopper is at home position.

## 3.3 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING



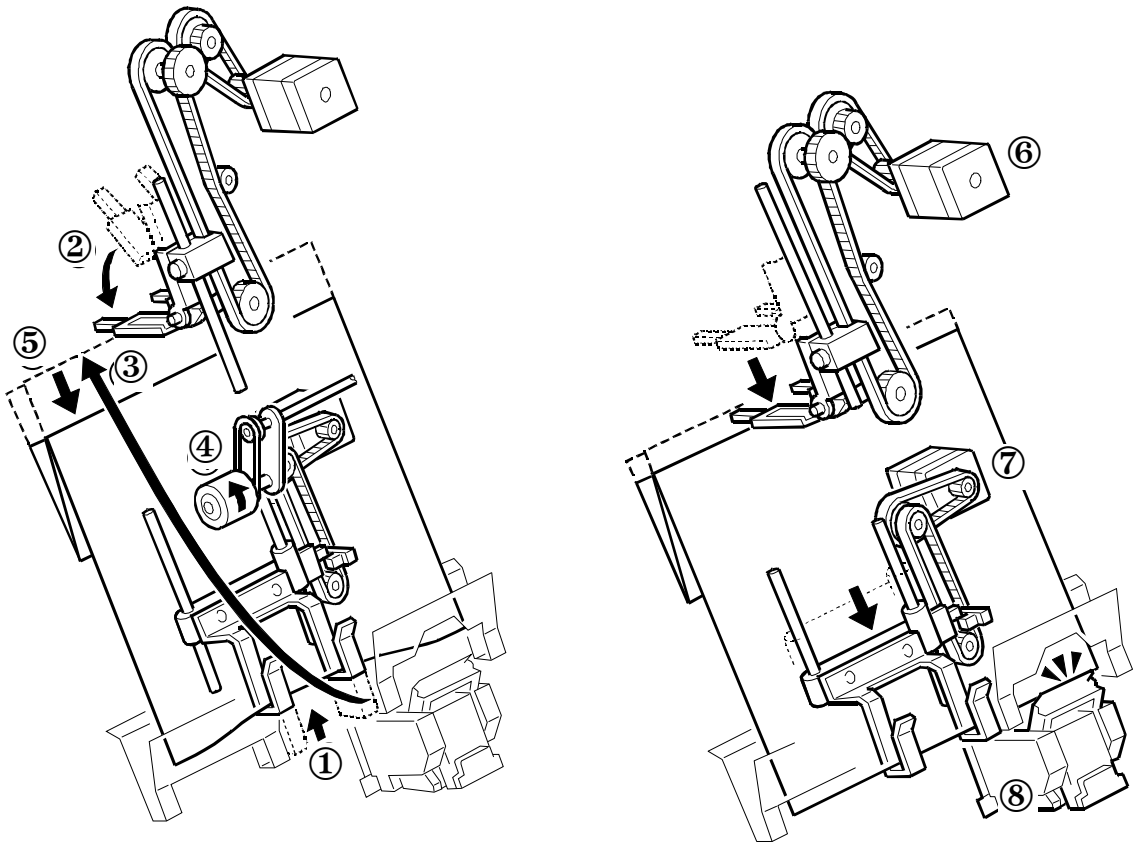

In the staple mode, as every sheet of paper arrives in the jogger unit, it is vertically and horizontally aligned, then the staple edge is pressed flat to ensure the edge of the stack is aligned correctly for stapling.

**Vertical Paper Alignment:** About 60 ms after the trailing edge of the copy passes the staple tray entrance sensor [A], the positioning roller motor [B] is energized to push the positioning roller [C] into contact with the paper. The positioning roller and alignment brush roller [D] rotate to push the paper back and align the trailing edge of the paper against the stack stopper [E].

**Horizontal Paper Alignment:** When the print key is pressed, the jogger motor [F] turns on and the jogger fences [G] move to the wait position about 7.2 mm wider than the selected paper size on both sides. When the trailing edge of the paper passes the staple tray entrance sensor, the jogger motor moves the jogger fences 3.7 mm towards the paper. Next, the jogger motor turns on again for 3.5 mm for the horizontal paper alignment then goes back to the wait position.

**Paper Stack Correction:** After the paper is aligned in the stapler tray, the left [H], center [I], and right [J] stack plate motors switch on briefly and drive the front stack, center stack, and rear stack plates against the edge of the stack to flatten the edge completely against the staple tray for stapling. When the next copy paper turns on the stapler entrance sensor, the stack plate motors turn on and return to their home positions. The home positions are detected by stack plate HP sensors ❶, ❷, ❸.

## 3.4 STAPLING






Here is the operation sequence for jogging and stapling:

① The lower jogger fence lifts to receive the sheets.

② The top fence moves down, to the horizontal position.

③ A sheet of paper goes into the stapler tray.

④ The positioning roller turns when each sheet is fed to the stapler tray.

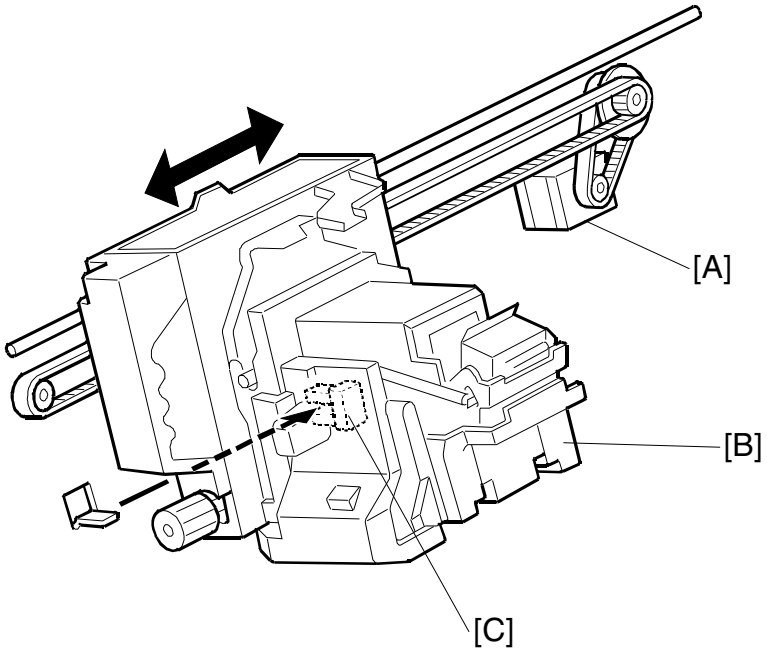
⑤ Each sheet is fed down against the lower jogger fence to align the bottom edge.

⑥ After the set number of sheets come in, the top fence motor switches on and lowers the top fence against the top of the stack. This aligns the stack for stapling.

⑦ The bottom fence motor lowers the aligned stack to the stapling position.

⑧ The stapler staples the stack.

# 3.5 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT



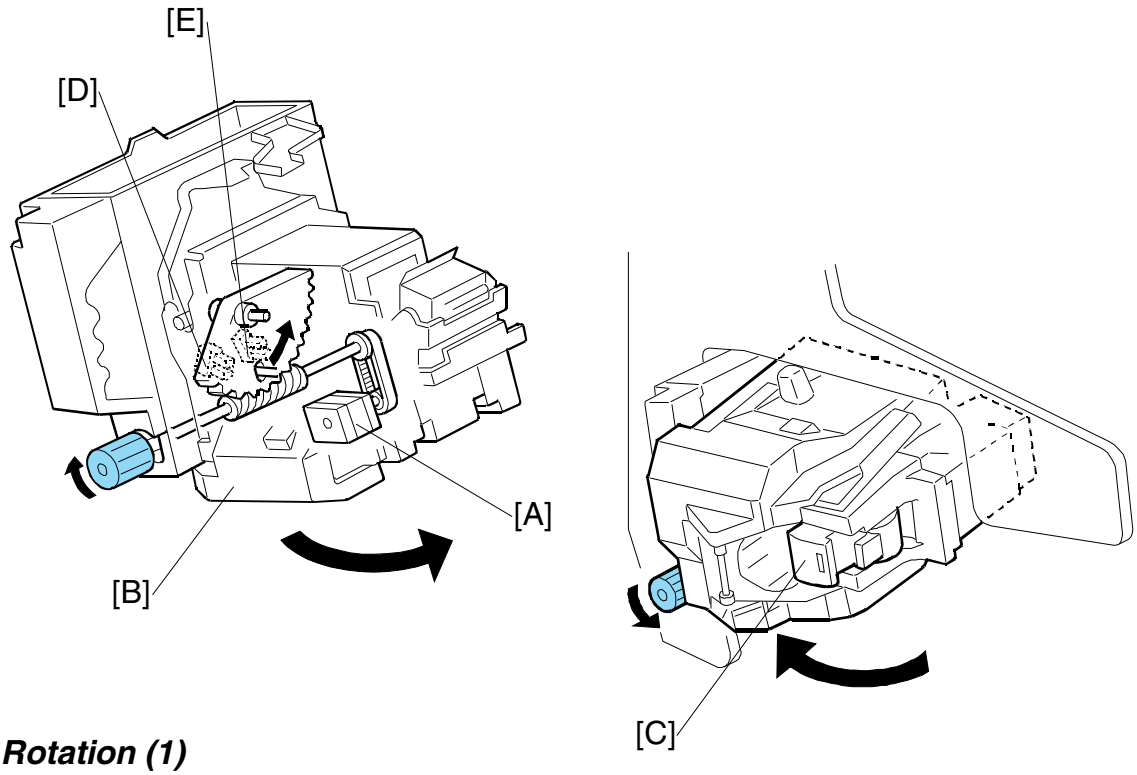

***Side-to-Side***

The stapler motor [A] moves the stapler [B] from side to side. After the start key is pressed, the stapler moves from its home position to the stapling position.

If two-staple-position mode is selected, for the first stack the stapler moves to the rear stapling position first, staples, moves to the front position, staples and waits at the front. For the second stack, the stapler staples the front corner first, then moves to the rear corner and staples.

**NOTE:** For continuous stapling jobs, the corners are stapled rear then front for the odd number stacks and stapled front then rear for even number stacks.

After the job is completed, the stapler returns to its home position. This is detected by the stapler HP sensor [C].






### *Rotation (1)*

In the oblique staple position mode, the stapler rotation motor [A] rotates the stapler unit [B] 45° to counterclockwise after it moves to the stapling position.

### *Rotation (2)*

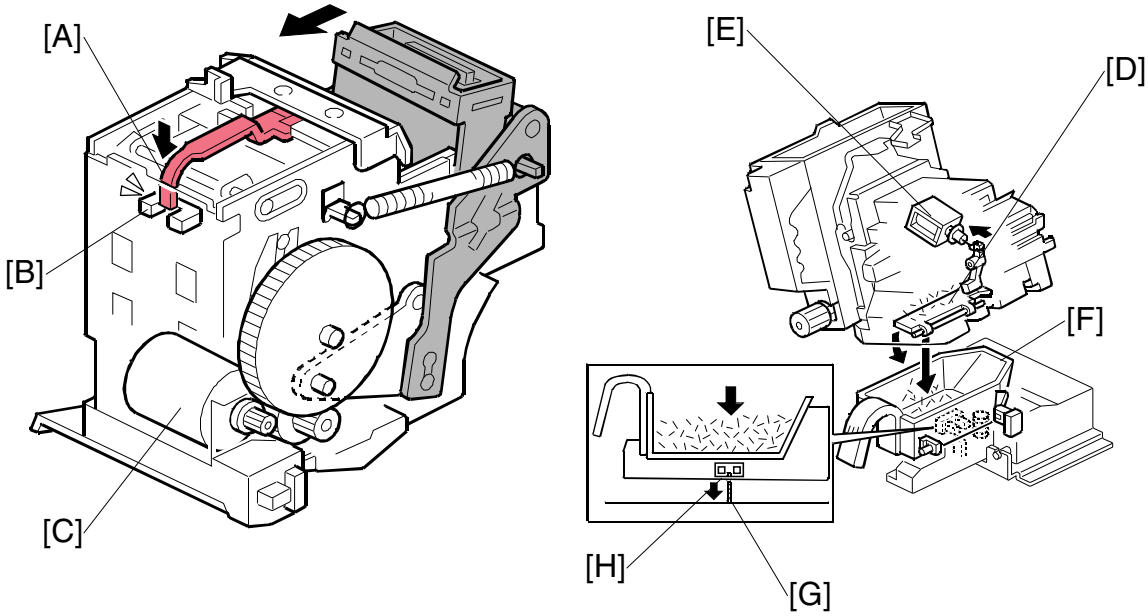
When the staple end condition arises, the stapler motor moves the stapler to the front and the stapler rotation motor rotates the stapler unit to clockwise to remove the staple cartridge [C]. This allows the user to add new staples.

Once the staples have been installed, and the front door closed, the stapler unit returns to its home position.

### Sensors

Two sensors [D] and [E] detect the angle of the stapler. There are three positions: horizontal, 45 degrees, 75 degrees.

## 3.6 STAPLER




When the stapler cartridge is locked and in position, actuator [A] deactivates the cartridge set sensor [B] and the stapler is ready for operation.

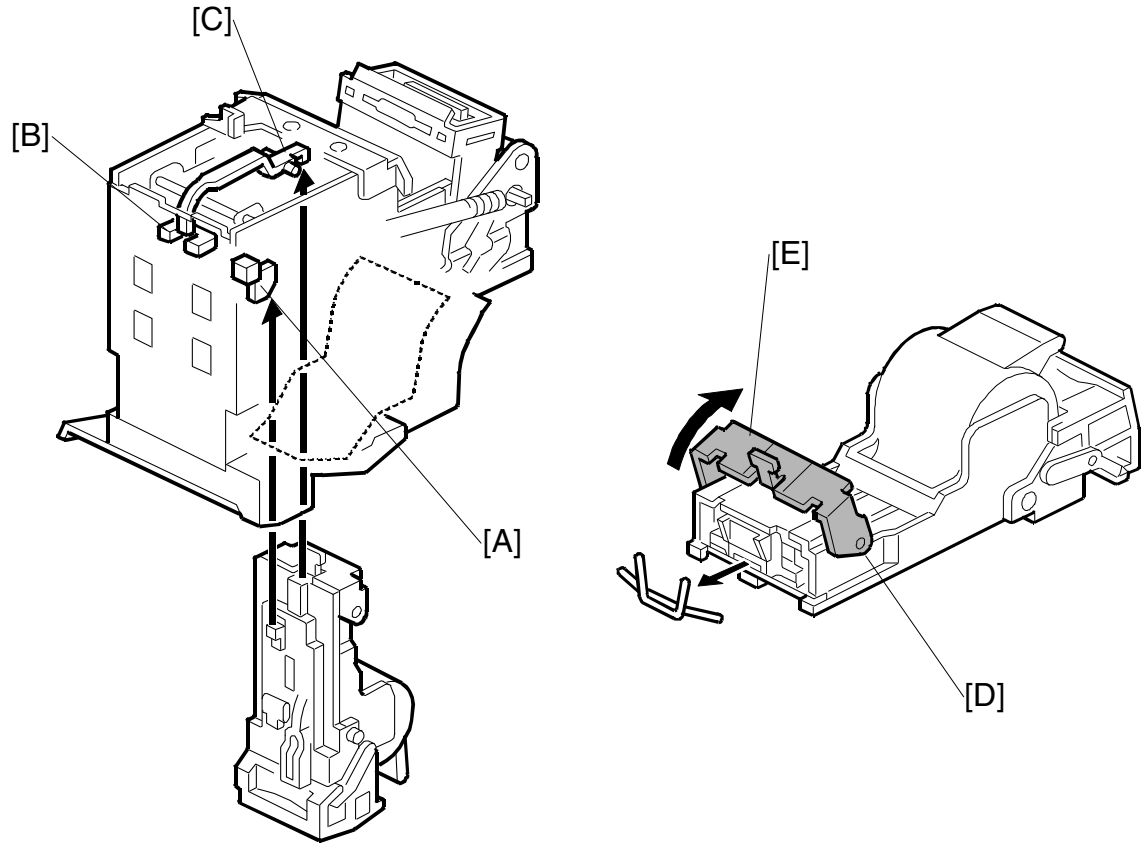
When aligned copies are brought to the stapling position by the positioning roller and jogger fences, the staple hammer motor [C] starts stapling.

During stapling, the stapler trims off the excess length of the staples. This length of the trimmings depends on the number of copies in the set. They will be very small for a stack containing 100 sheets.

The staple trimmings drop into the trap door [D] inside the stapler. When the stapler unit returns to its home position, solenoid {E} energizes opens the trap door.

The staple trimmings drop into the staple trimmings hopper [F].

The staple trimmings hopper descends as it fills, until actuator [G] activates the staple trimmings hopper full sensor [H]. A message asks the user to empty the staple trimmings.



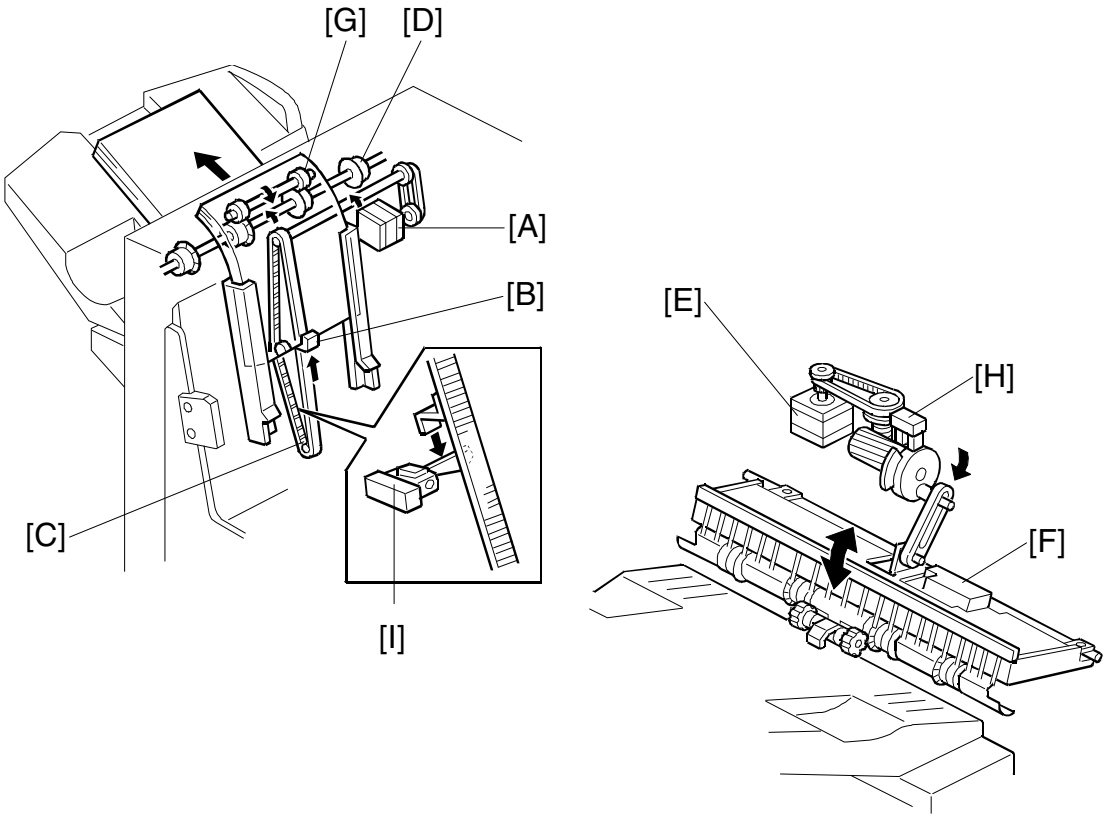



The stapler has a staple end sensor [A] and cartridge set sensor [B]. When the staple cartridge is inserted, it pushes the actuator [C] into the gap of the cartridge set sensor. This tells the machine the stapler is ready for operation.

When a staple end or no cartridge condition is detected, a message is displayed advising the operator to install a staple cartridge. If this condition is detected during a copy job, the indication will appear, and the copy job will stop.

The staple cartridge has a clinch area [D] where jammed staples collect. The operator can remove the jammed staples from the clinch area by raising and lowering bracket lever [E].

## 3.7 FEED-OUT




After the copies have been stapled, the stack feed-out motor [A] starts.

The pawl [B] on the stack feed-out belt [C] transports the set of stapled copies up and feeds it to the shift tray exit roller [D].

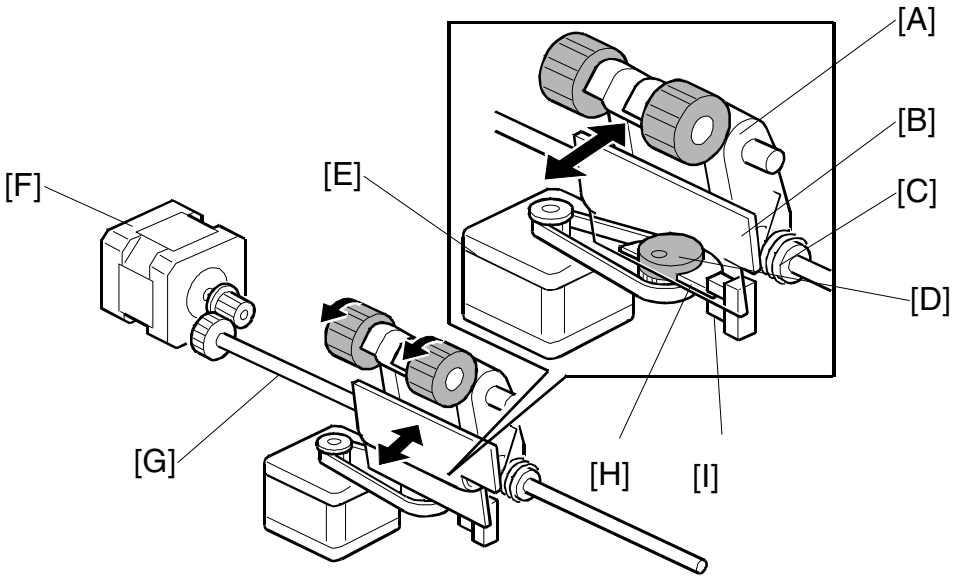
When stapling starts, the exit guide motor [E] opens the upper exit guide [F], which includes the upper shift tray exit roller [G], in order to feed out the leading edge of the copy set smoothly.

The exit guide motor turns on again at the prescribed time after stapling finishes, and the upper exit guide plate is lowered. Then the shift tray exit roller takes over the stack feed-out.

The on-off timing of the exit guide motor is detected by the exit guide open sensor [H].

The stack-feed-out motor turns off when the pawl actuates the stack feed-out belt home position sensor [I].

# 3.8 PAPER EXIT STACKING






The drag roller assembly [A] is fastened to a plate [B] on a shaft by a spring [C]. The cam [D], in contact with the bottom of the plate, is connected to the drag drive motor [E] via a timing belt.

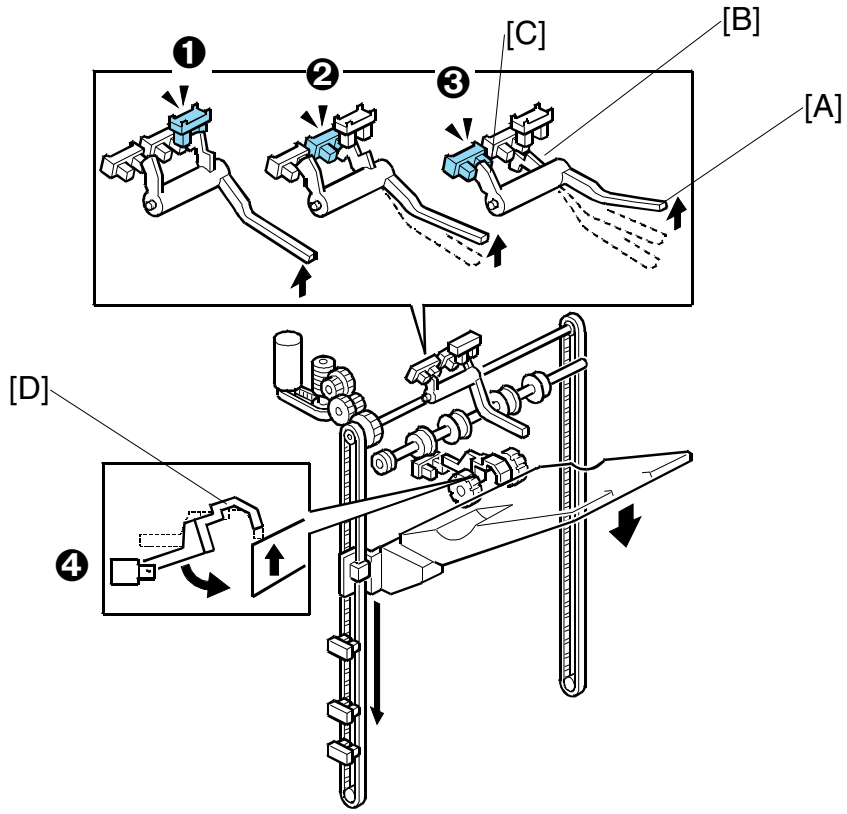
The drag drive motor and timing belt rotate the cam against the bottom of the plate to move the rollers forward and back with each sheet ejected onto the shift tray.

The drag roller motor [F] drives the shaft [G] that rotates the drag rollers counter-clockwise as the rollers move back. The simultaneous rotation and backward movement of the roller assembly pulls each sheet back toward the copier to align the edges of the stack on the shift tray.

The actuator [H] is mounted on the cam and rotating with both rotating clockwise) and detects the roller assembly home position when the actuator leaves the gap of the drag drive HP sensor [I] and signals the machine that the rollers are at the home position. The machine uses this information to control paper feed timing and confirm that the mechanism is operating correctly. The cam and actuator make one complete rotation for every sheet fed out of the machine onto the shift tray.

# 3.9 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION

## 3.9.1 OVERVIEW



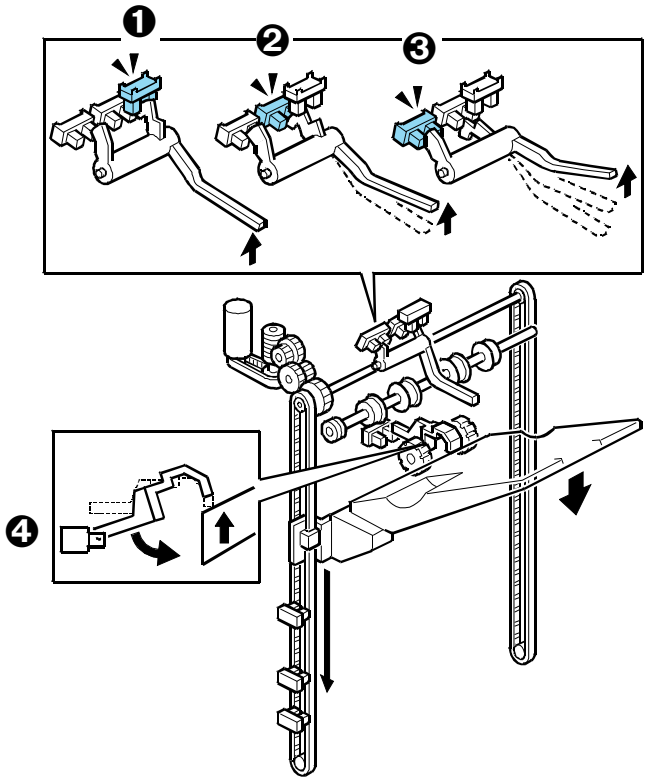

The movement of the shift tray is controlled by four sensors ❶, ❷,❸, and ❹ and a feeler [A] with two actuators [B] and [C].

- The notched actuator [B] is used with sensors ❶ and ❷.
- The flat actuator [C] is used with sensor ❸.
- Sensor ❹ is provided with its own actuator [D].

The operation mode determines which parts are used to control the movement of the shift tray.

**Sensor Names**

| No. | Name |
|---|---|
| ❶ | Paper Height Sensor – Staple Mode |
| ❷ | Paper Height Sensor – Standby Mode |
| ❸ | Paper Height Sensor – Z-Fold Full |
| ❹ | Paper Height Sensor – Shift/Z-Fold |



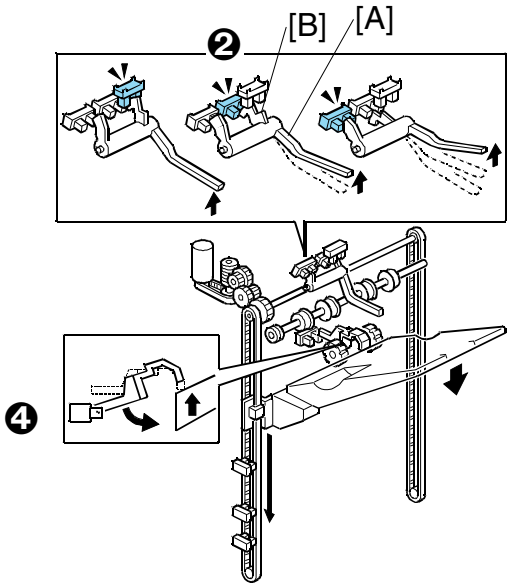



### Sensors and Operation Modes

| Mode | Function |
|---|---|
| Shift | Sensor ❹ detects the amount of paper on the shift tray in shift mode to control operation of the tray lift motor. |
| Staple | Sensor ❶ detects the amount of paper on the shift tray in staple mode to control the tray lift motor. |
| Standby | • When the machine is turned on, Sensor ❷ is used to position the tray at the standby position and keep it there when the shift is not in use or when the upper tray (proof tray) is used.<br>• If the shift tray is not attached to the machine (if it has been removed for servicing, for example), if the machine is switched on the tray mount will push up the feeler and switch off Sensor ❷ to switch off the tray lift motor. (Sensor ❹ cannot operate if the tray has been removed.) |
| Z-Fold, Z-Fold Staple | • Sensor ❹ detects the height of the tray when the output includes Z-folded sheets with and without stapling.<br>• Sensor ❸ detects when the tray is full when the output includes Z-folded sheets with and without stapling. |

These operations are described in more detail in the following sections.

## 3.9.2 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION: STAND-BY MODE




**Standby Mode**

When the machine is switched on:

1. The shift tray lift motor switches on and lowers the tray.
2. The feeler [A] descends and raises the hooked actuator [B] out of the gap of Sensor ❷ and switches Sensor ❷ ON.
3. When Sensor ❷ switches ON this reverses the shift tray motor.
4. The shift tray motor raises the shift tray and pushes up the feeler, the actuator descends into the gap of Sensor ❷, and switches Sensor ❷ OFF
5. When Sensor ❷ switches OFF, this stops the shift tray lift motor with the shift tray at the standby position.

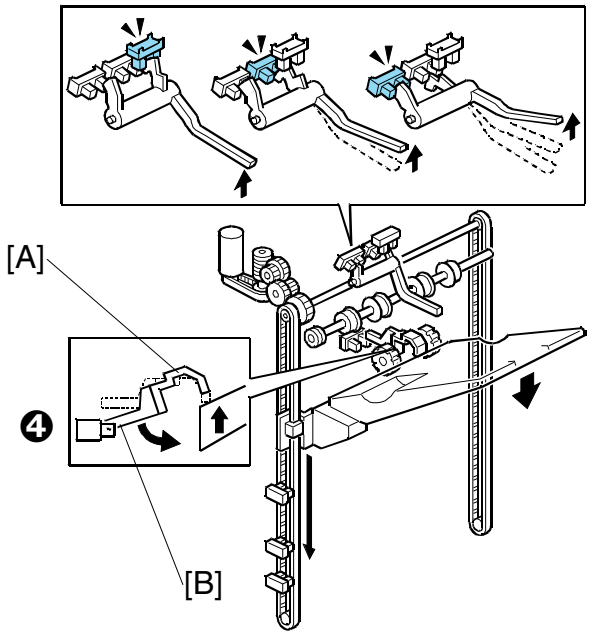
This sequence repeats every time the machine is powered on.

Sensor ❷ also switches off the shift tray lift motor when the machine is switched on with the shift tray removed for servicing. When the machine is switched on without the shift tray attached to the side of the finisher:

1. The shift tray mount will push the feeler [A] up until the actuator [B] enters the gap of Sensor ❷ and switches Sensor 2 ON.
2. When Sensor ❷ switches ON this switches the shift tray motor OFF and stops the tray.

   **NOTE**: Sensor ❹ cannot operate with the shift tray removed so Sensor ❷ is used to switch off the shift tray motor and stop the shift tray mount.

## 3.9.3 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION: SHIFT MODE



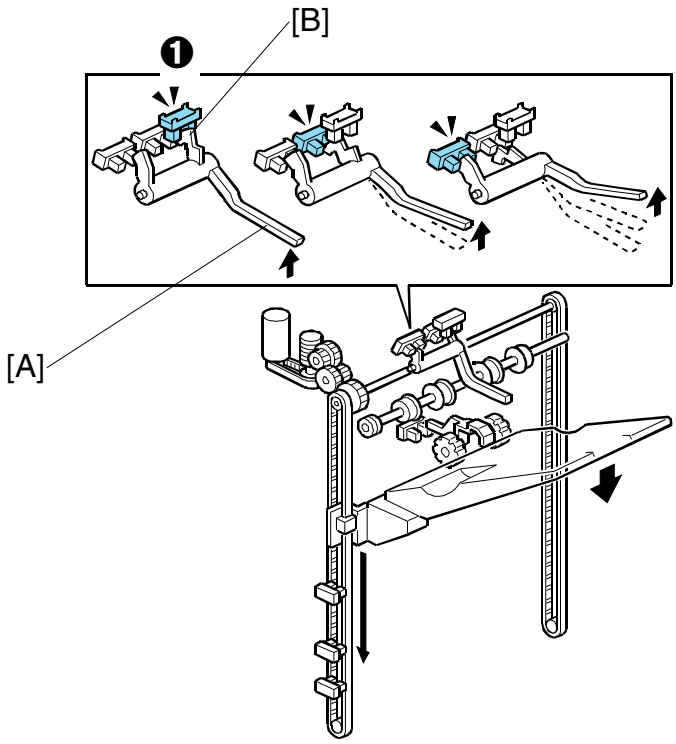



Sensor ❹ and its feeler [A] and actuator [B] control the movement of the shift tray when paper is output in the sort/stack mode:

1. Paper is output to the tray.
2. As the height of the stack increases, this pushes up the feeler [A].
3. When the actuator [B] of the ascending feeler actuates Sensor ❹, this switches the sensor OFF and switches the tray lift motor ON.
4. The tray lift motor lowers the tray until the feeler descends far enough to raise the actuator out of the gap of Sensor ❹.
5. When the actuator leaves the gap of Sensor ❹, this switches Sensor ❹ ON, switches the motor OFF, and stops the tray.

The sequence repeats until the end of the job or until the tray becomes full.
(☛3.9.6)

## 3.9.4 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION: STAPLE MODE

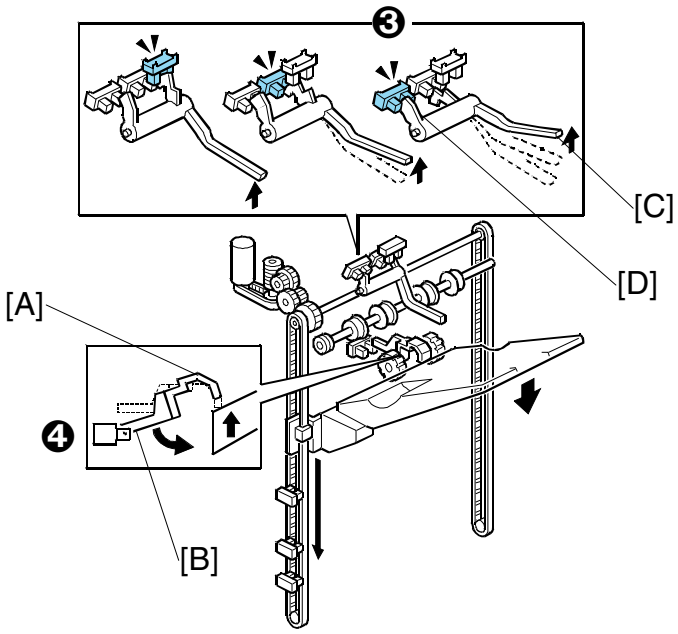



Sensor ❶, feeler [A] and its notched actuator [B] control the movement of the shift tray when paper is output to the shift tray in the staple mode:

1. A stapled stack is output to the tray.
2. The tray lift motor switches ON and lowers the tray the prescribed distance.
3. Next, the tray lift motor raises the tray and feeler [A] until actuator [B] leaves the gap of Sensor ❶.
4. When the actuator [b] leaves the gap of sensor ❶, this switches Sensor ❶ OFF and switches the tray lift motor OFF.

This sequence repeats every time a stack is output to the tray until the end of the job or until the tray becomes full. (☛3.9.6)

## 3.9.5 SHIFT TRAY OPERATION: Z-FOLDED PAPER

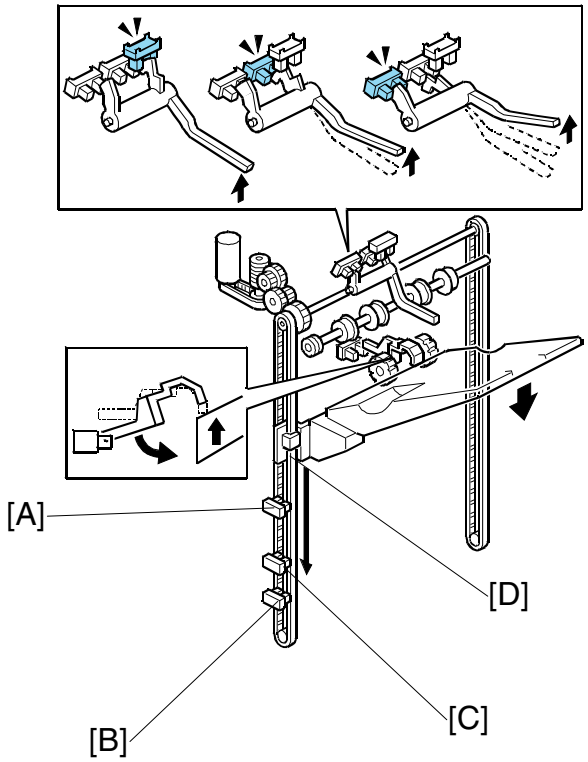





Sensor ❹ and its feeler [A] and actuator [B], and Sensor ❸ with its feeler [C] and flat actuator [D] control the movement of the shift tray when Z-folded paper is output to the shift tray.

1. Z-folded paper is output to the tray.
2. As the height of the stack increases, this pushes up feeler [A] of Sensor ❹.
3. When the actuator [B] of the ascending feeler enters the gap of Sensor ❹, this switches the sensor OFF and switches the tray lift motor ON.
4. The tray lift motor lowers the tray until the feeler descends far enough to raise the actuator out of the gap of Sensor ❹.
5. When the actuator leaves the gap of Sensor ❹, this switches Sensor ❹ ON, switches the motor OFF, and stops the tray.
6. Steps 1 to 5 repeat until the top of the paper stack pushes feeler [C] up and actuator [C] into the gap of Sensor ❸.
7. When the actuator enters the gap of Sensor ❸, this switches the sensor off and switches Sensor ❸ OFF, signals that the tray is full and stops the job.

## 3.9.6 SHIFT TRAY FULL AND NEAR-FULL DETECTION



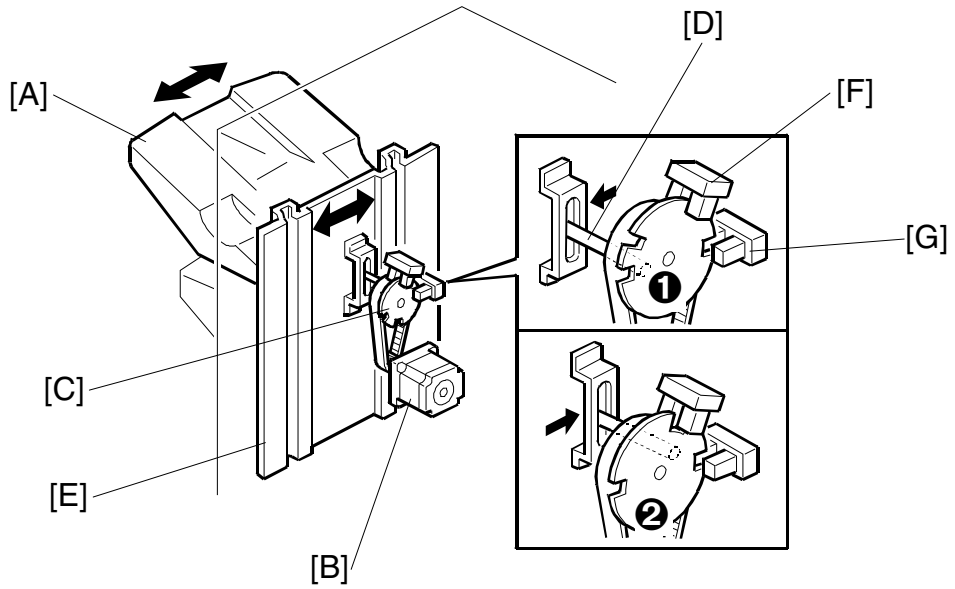

This machine has two shift tray full sensors: the shift tray full sensor (large paper) [A] for B4 and larger, and the shift tray full sensor [B] for small paper (smaller than B4).

**NOTE:** Sensor [C] (S20) is the near-full sensor.

When the actuator [D] enters sensor [A] while using large paper (about 1500 sheets are on the tray), a message will be displayed and copying will stop.

When the actuator [D] enters sensor [B] while using small paper (about 3,000 sheets are on the tray), a message will be displayed and copying will stop.

# 3.10 SHIFT TRAY SIDE-TO-SIDE MOVEMENT




In sort/stack mode, the shift tray [A] moves from side to side to separate the sets of copies.

The horizontal position of the shift tray is controlled by the shift motor [B] and shift gear disk [C]. After one set of copies is made and delivered to the shift tray, the shift motor turns on, driving the shift gear disk and the shaft [D]. The end fence [E] is positioned by the shaft, creating the side-to-side movement.

The next set of copies is then delivered. The motor turns on, repeating the same process and moving the tray back to the previous position.

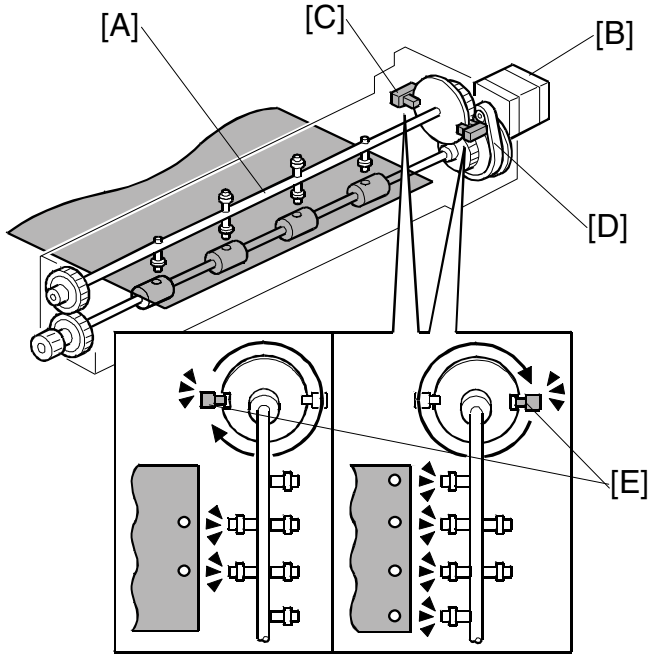
The disk is rotated alternately clockwise and counter-clockwise through an arc of 180 degrees.

The notches cut into the shift gear disk control the operation of the shift motor, using shift tray half-turn sensors [F] and [G].

If the job ends with the disk at ❶ with only one sensor deactivated, the motor rotates the disk to the ❷ position where both sensors are deactivated. This is the home position.

# 3.11 PUNCH UNIT

## 3.11.1 PUNCH UNIT DRIVE



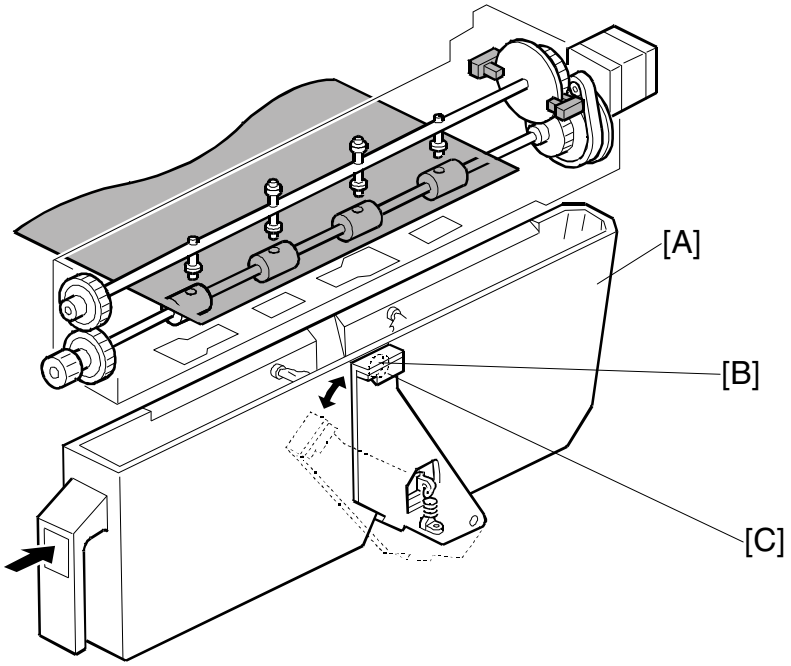

The punch unit makes 2 or 3 holes at the trailing edge of the paper. The number of holes depends on a selection made on the operation panel.

The cam [A] has 2 punches on one side and 3 punches on the other, and is turned by the punch motor [B]. The punch motor turns on immediately after the trailing edge of the paper passes the entrance sensor. The punches on the cam rotate downward and punch holes in the paper.

After punching a sheet of paper, the cam returns to home position and stops. Home position depends on whether 2 holes or 3 holes are being made, so there are two punch HP sensors. Punch HP sensor 1 [C] is used when 2-hole punching is selected, and punch HP sensor 2 [D] is used when 3-hole punching is selected. When the cut-out [E] enters the slot of the punch HP in use (sensor 1 or 2-hole punching) the motor stops.

The knob (not shown) on the front end of the punch unit can be turned in either direction to clear paper jammed in the punch unit.

## 3.11.2 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION






Punch waste is collected in the punch waste hopper [A] positioned under the punch unit.

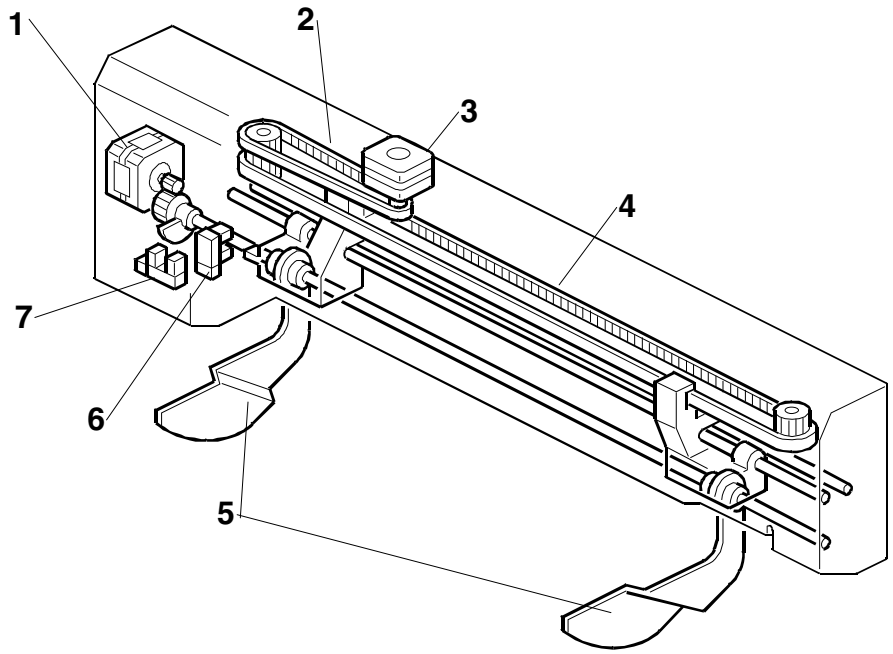
When the level of the punch waste in the hopper rises as far as the hole [B] in the hopper, the punch hopper full sensor [C] turns on, stops the job, and triggers a message on the operation to indicate that the hopper is full and must be removed and emptied.

The job resumes automatically after the hopper is emptied and returned to the finisher.

The punch hopper full sensor also functions as the hopper set sensor. When the hopper is not in the finisher, or if it is not inserted completely, the spring loaded sensor arm rotates up and to the right with the punch waste sensor away from the hole in the hopper holder and a message is displayed. The message in this case is the same as the hopper full message.

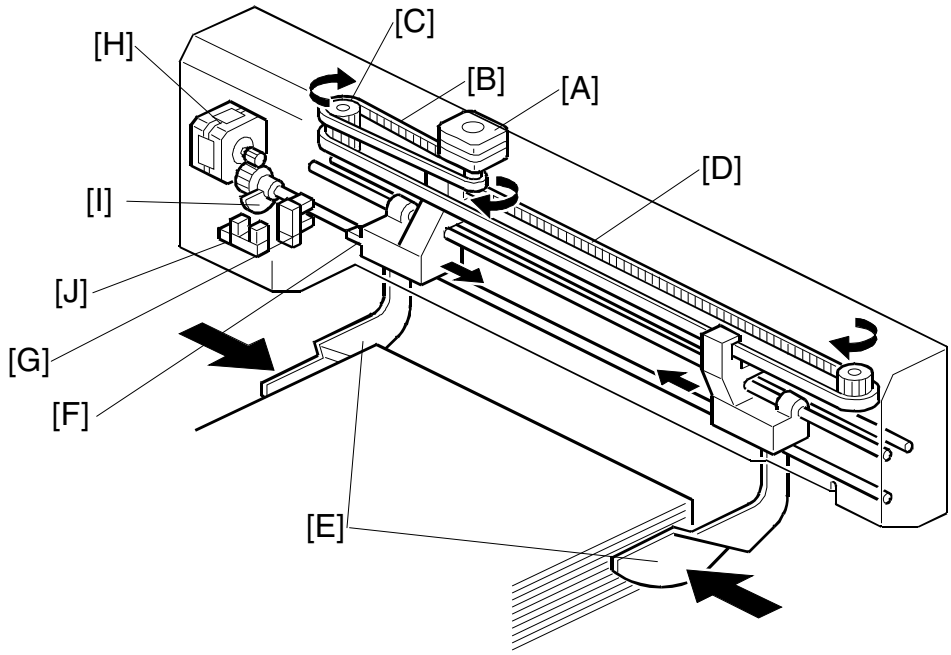
# 3.12 SHIFT TRAY JOGGER UNIT

## 3.12.1 JOGGER UNIT MECHANICAL LAYOUT




1. Shift Tray Jogger Retraction Motor
2. Shift Tray Jogger Motor Timing Belt
3. Shift Tray Jogger Motor
4. Shift Tray Jogger Fence Timing Belt
5. Shift Tray Jogger Fences
6. Shift Tray Jogger HP Sensor
7. Shift Tray Jogger Lift HP Sensor

## 3.12.2 JOGGER UNIT DRIVE





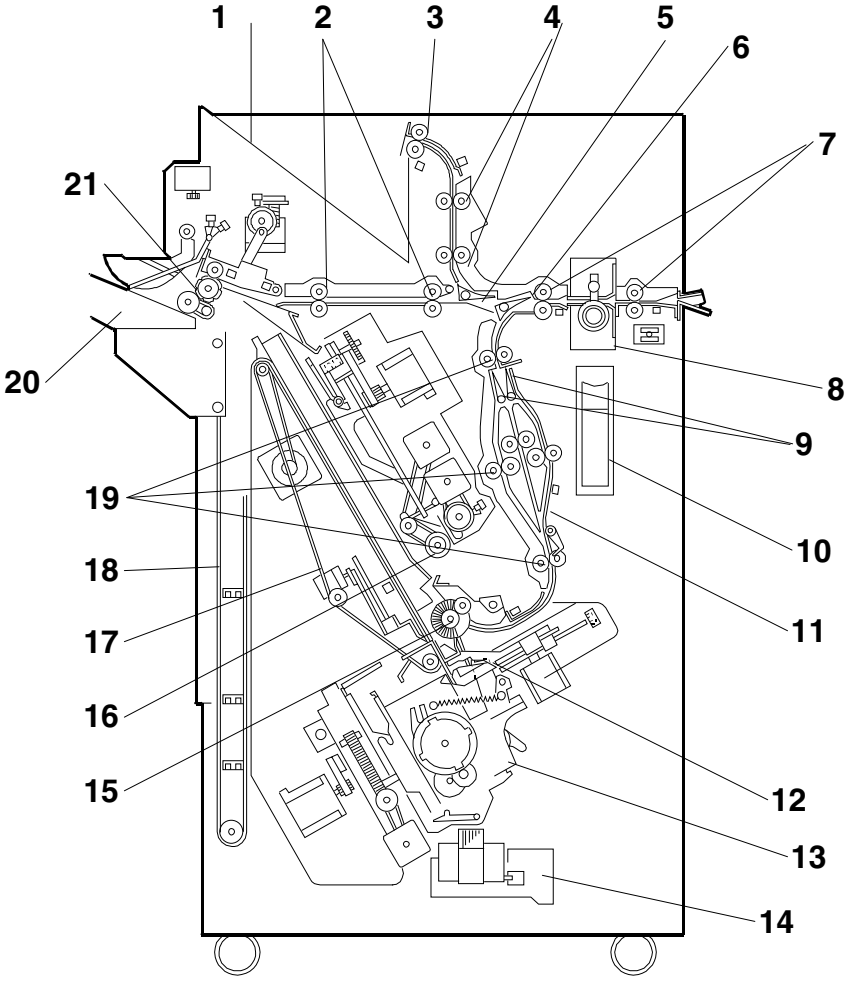

After the first sheet exits, the shift tray jogger motor [A] switches on and rotates the jogger timing belt [B], gear [C] and jogger fence timing belt [D]. This closes the jogger fences [E] against the sides of the first sheet to align it and stops. Next, the motor reverses to open the fences for the next sheet. The jogger motor alternates its direction of rotation to open and close the jogger fences. The timing is prescribed by the width of the paper selected for the job.

At the end of the job, the actuator [F] activates the shift tray jogger HP sensor [G] which shuts off the jogger motor and starts the jogger fence retraction motor [H].

The jogger fence retraction motor rotates the shaft which raises the jogger fences and lowers the actuator [I] into the slot of the jogger fence retraction HP sensor [J]. The activated sensor turns off the jogger fence retraction motor and the jogger fences remain at the raised position.

# 4. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

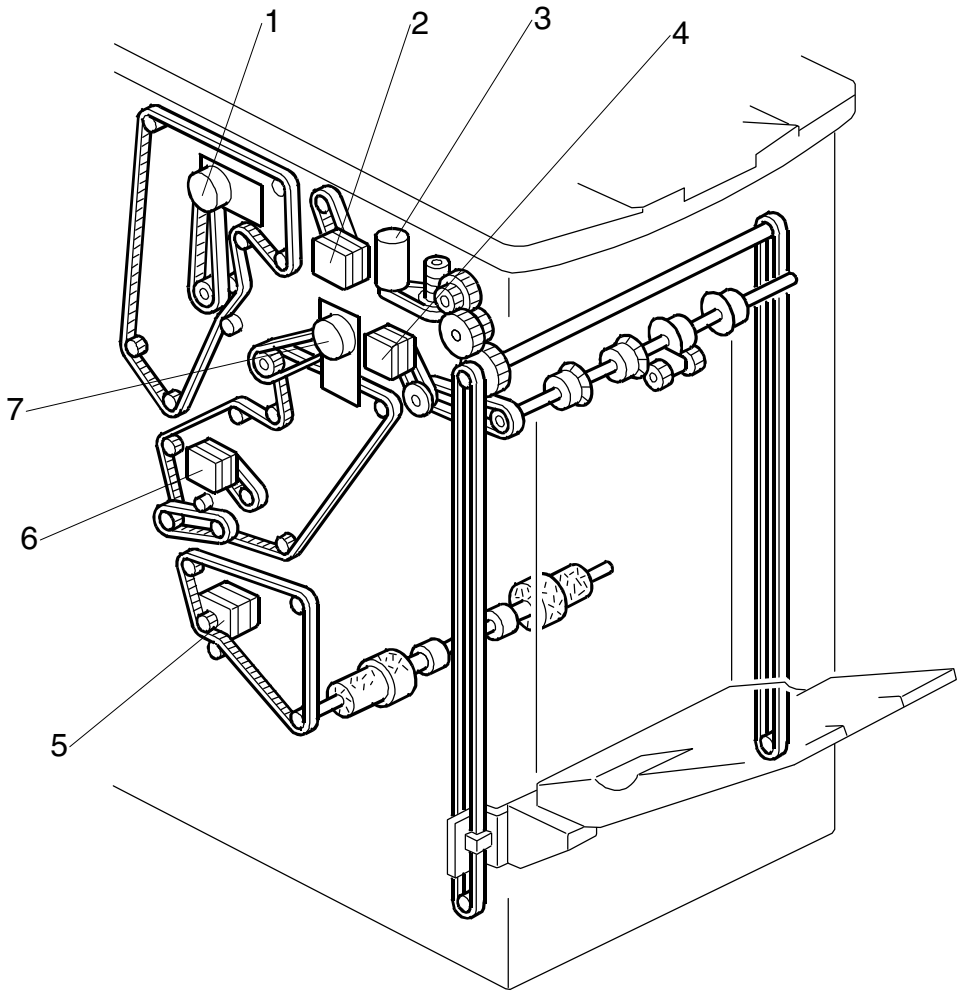
## 4.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT




1. Upper Tray
2. Middle Transport Rollers
3. Upper Tray Exit Roller
4. Upper Transport Rollers
5. Upper Tray Junction Gate
6. Stapler Junction Gate
7. Entrance Rollers
8. Punch Unit
9. Pre-stack Junction Gates (x2)
10. Punch Waste Hopper
11. Pre-stack Tray
12. Stack Plate
13. Stapler
14. Staple Trimmings Hopper
15. Alignment Brush Roller
16. Positioning Roller
17. Stack Feed-out Belt
18. Shift Tray Drive Belt
19. Lower Transport Rollers
20. Shift Tray
21. Shift Tray Exit Roller

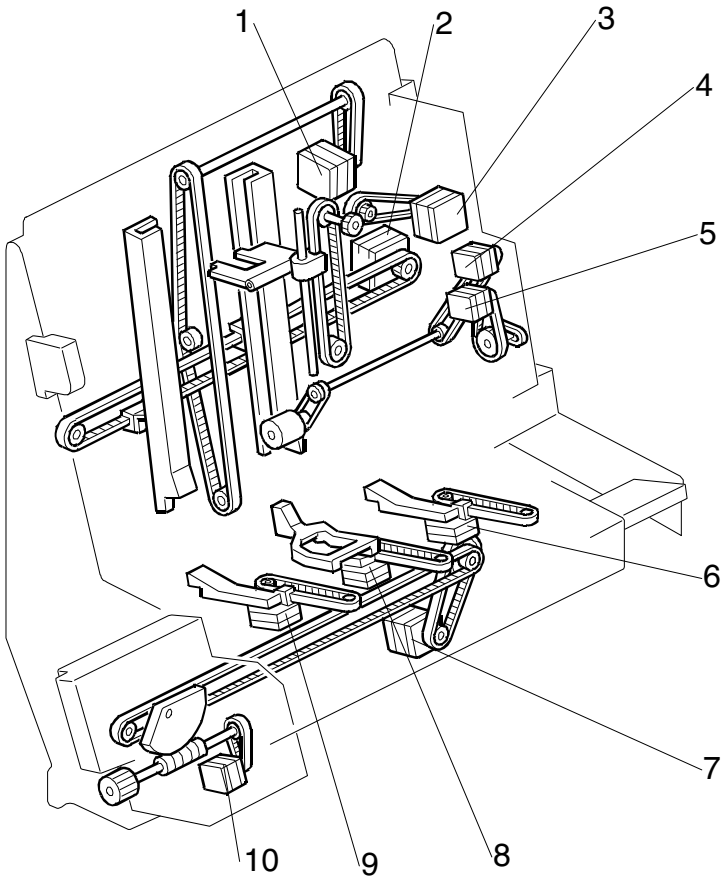
# 4.2 DRIVE LAYOUT

## 4.2.1 MAIN DRIVE



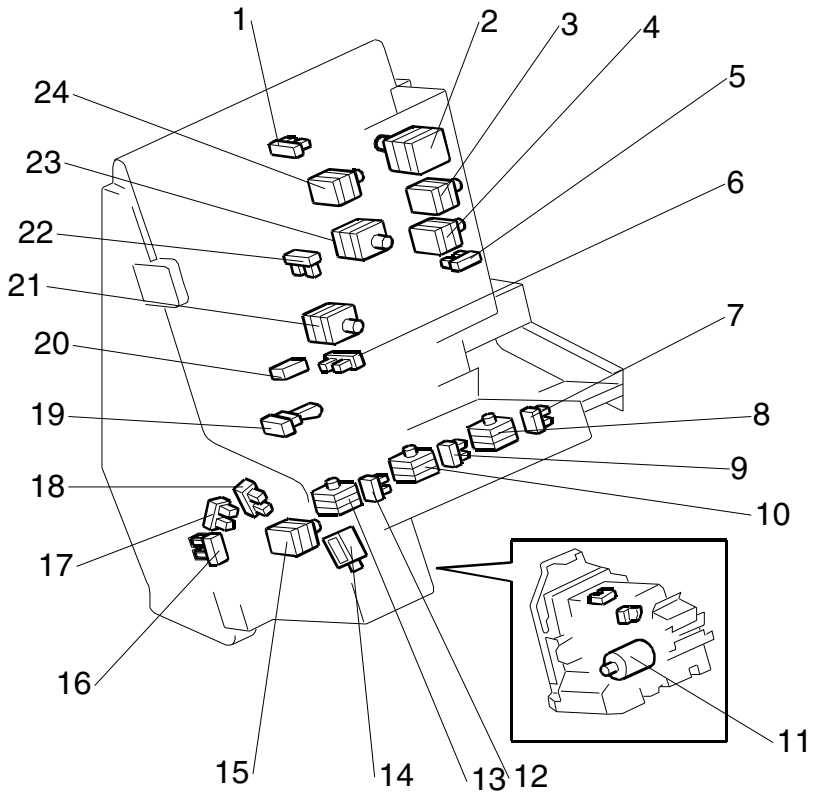

1. Upper Transport Motor
2. Upper Tray Exit Motor
3. Shift Tray Lift Motor
4. Shift Tray Exit Motor
5. Stapler Exit Motor
6. Pre-Stack Transport Motor
7. Lower Transport Motor

## 4.2.2 STAPLING TRAY DRIVE

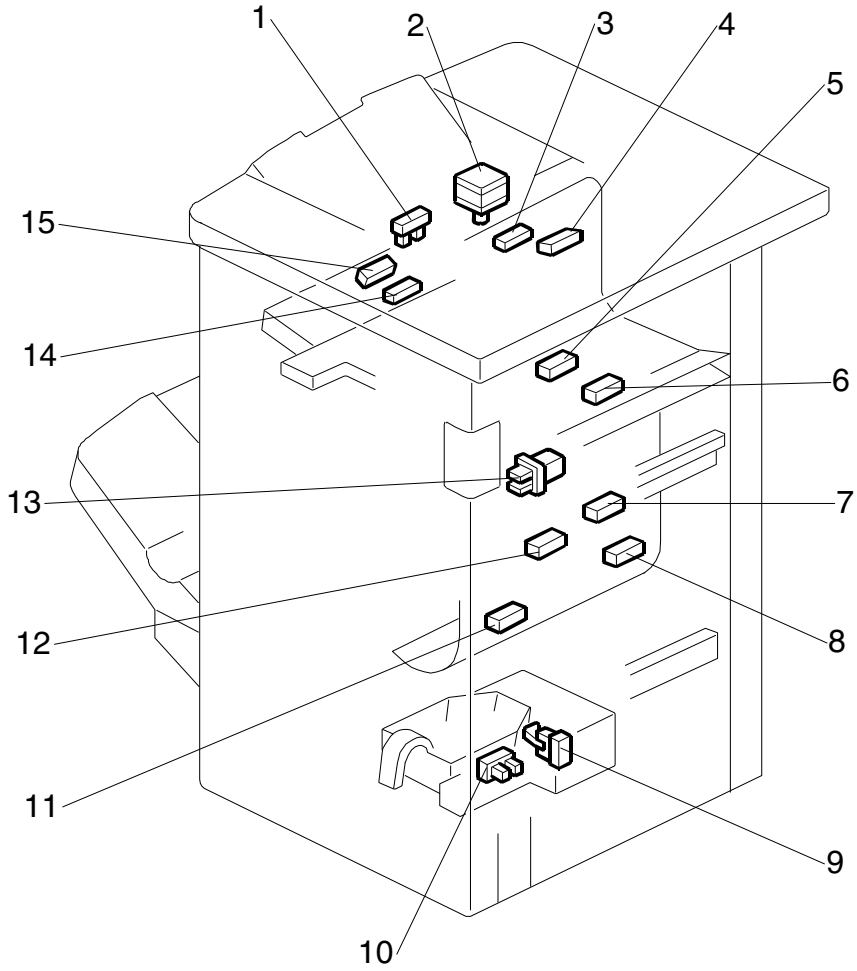



1. Stack Feed-Out Belt Motor
2. Jogger Motor
3. Top Fence Motor
4. Positioning Roller Drive Motor
5. Positioning Roller Motor
6. Stack Plate Motor (Rear)
7. Stapler Movement Motor
8. Stack Plate Motor (Center)
9. Stack Plate Motor (Front)
10. Stapler Rotation Motor

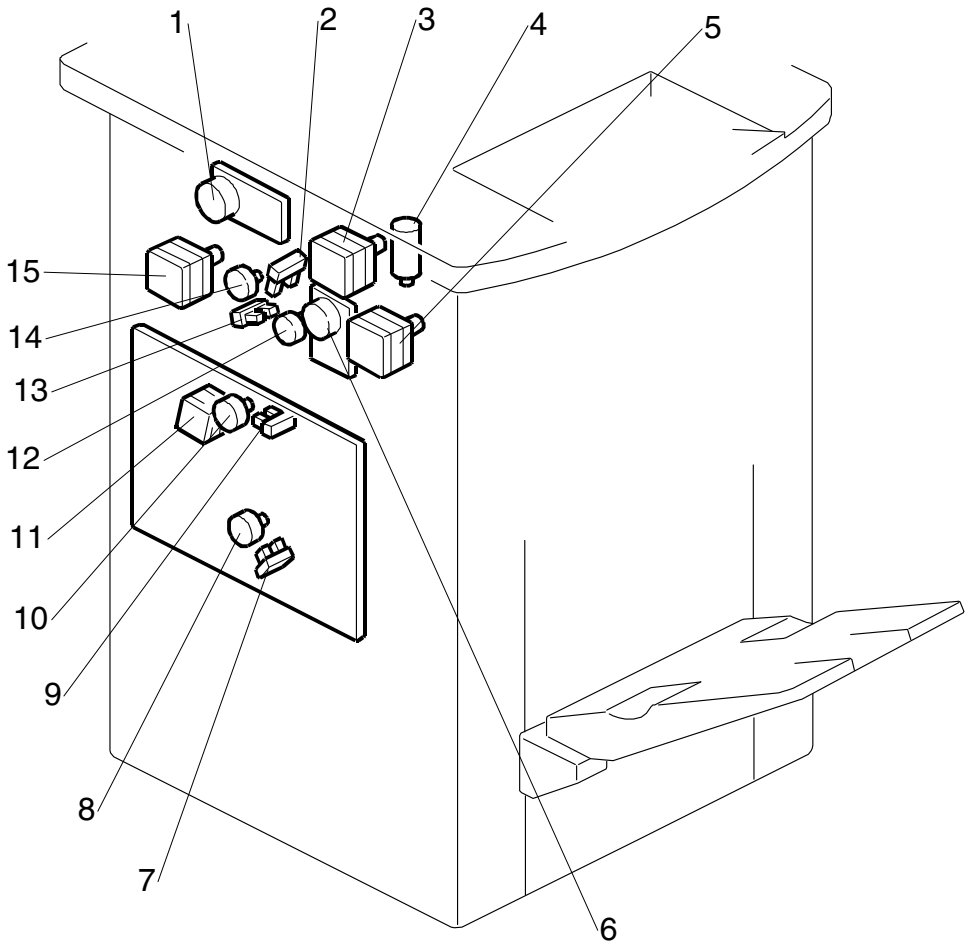
# 4.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS




1. Top Fence HP Sensor
2. Top Fence Motor
3. Positioning Roller Drive Motor
4. Positioning Roller Motor )
5. Positioning Roller HP Sensor
6. Bottom Fence HP Sensor
7. Stack Plate HP Sensor (Rear)
8. Stack Plate Motor (Rear)
9. Stack Plate HP Sensor (Center)
10. Stack Plate Motor (Center)
11. Staple Hammer Motor
12. Stack Plate HP Sensor (Front)
13. Stack Plate Motor (Front)
14. Staple Trimming Chute Solenoid
15. Stapler Rotation Motor
16. Stapler HP Sensor (Front/Rear)
17. Stapler Rotation Sensor 2
18. Stapler Rotation Sensor 1
19. Stack Feed-Out Belt HP Sensor
20. Staple Tray Full Sensor
21. Bottom Fence Motor
22. Jogger HP Sensor
23. Jogger Motor
24. Stack Feed-Out Belt Motor




1. Exit Guide HP Sensor
2. Exit Guide Motor
3. Upper Tray Full Sensor
4. Upper Tray Exit Sensor
5. Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor
6. Entrance Sensor
7. Punch-Out Hopper Full Sensor
8. Pre-Stack Tray Paper Sensor (Left)
9. Staple Trimmings Hopper Set Sensor
10. Staple Trimmings Hopper Full Sensor
11. Stapler Tray Exit Sensor
12. Pre-Stack Tray Paper Sensor (Right)
13. Front Door Safety Switch
14. Shift Tray Exit Sensor 2
15. Shift Tray Exit Sensor 1




1. Upper Transport Motor
2. Stapler Junction Gate HP Sensor
3. Upper Tray Exit Motor
4. Shift Tray Lift Motor
5. Shift Tray Exit Motor
6. Lower Transport Motor
7. Pre-Stack Stopper HP Sensor
8. Pre-Stack Stopper Motor
9. Pre-Stack Junction Gate HP Sensor
10. Pre-Stack Junction Gate Motor )
11. Pre-Stack Transport Motor
12. Upper Tray Junction Gate Motor
13. Upper Tray Junction Gate HP Sensor
14. Stapler Junction Gate Motor
15. Punch Motor

# 4.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SUMMARY

| Motors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| M01 | Shift Tray Exit Motor | Drives the exit roller for the shift tray. |
| M02 | Shift Tray Lift Motor | Moves the shift tray up or down. |
| M03 | Exit Guide Motor | Opens and closes the upper exit guide. When stapling starts, the exit guide motor opens the upper exit guide, which includes the upper shift tray exit roller, in order to feed out the leading edge of the copy set smoothly. The exit guide motor turns on again a certain time after stapling is complete, and the upper exit guide plate is lowered. Then the shift tray exit roller takes over the stack feed-out. The on-off timing of the exit guide motor is detected by the exit guide HP sensor. |
| M04 | Stapler Exit Motor | Drives the rollers that feed stapled stacks out of the stapling unit. |
| M05 | Upper Tray Exit Motor | Drives the rollers that output paper to the proof tray (top tray). |
| M06 | Shift Motor | Moves the shift tray from side to side. |
| M07 | Upper Tray Junction Gate Motor | Operates the upper tray junction gate. |
| M08 | Stapler Junction Gate Motor | Operates the staple junction gate that directs paper into the stapling path. |
| M09 | Pre-Stack Junction Gate Motor | Operates the pre-stack junction gates that direct paper into path 1, 2, or 3 of the pre-stack unit. |
| M10 | Pre-Stack Transport Motor | Drives the rollers that feed paper into the pre-stack paper paths. |
| M11 | Pre-Stack Stopper Motor | Controls the stopper that stops the sheets in the pre-stack unit and then releases them to the staple tray. |
| M12 | Positioning Roller Motor | Moves the positioning roller into contact with the paper. |
| M13 | Positioning Roller Drive Motor | Rotates the positioning roller. |
| M14 | Drag Drive Motor | Extends the sponge roller that drags the stapled stack on the shift tray toward the finisher so that the edge of the stack is aligned against the back of the shift tray. |
| M15 | Drag Roller Motor | Rotates the drag roller counter-clockwise to pull the ejected paper toward the machine so that the edge of the stack on the shift tray is aligned against the back of the shift tray. |
| M16 | Jogger Motor | Moves the jogger fences of the stapling tray. |
| M17 | Stack Feed-Out Belt Motor | Drives the stack feed-out belt which lifts the stapled stack and feeds it out of the finisher. The stack-feed-out motor turns off when the pawl actuates the stack feed-out belt home position sensor. |
| M18 | Stack Plate Motor (Center) | Presses down the center of the edge for stapling. |
| M19 | Stack Plate Motor (Front) | Presses down the front corner of the edge for stapling. |
| M20 | Stack Plate Motor (Rear) | Presses down the rear corner of the edge for stapling. |
| M21 | Stapler Movement Motor | Moves the staple unit side-to-side. |
| M22 | Stapler Rotation Motor | Rotates the stapler 45 degrees for oblique stapling. |
| M23 | Staple Hammer Motor | Drives the staple hammer. |
| M24 | Top Fence Motor | After the specified number of sheets has been fed, this motor lowers the top fence against the leading edges of the sheets to align them for stapling and then raises the top fence to its home position after stapling.<br><br>Operates the top fence that jogs pre-stacked paper vertically (in the direction of paper feed). |
| M25 | Bottom Fence Motor | After the specified number of sheets has been fed, this motor lowers the bottom fence to position the stack for stapling and then raises the bottom fence to its home position after stapling. |
| M27 | Upper Transport Motor | Feeds paper in the upper transport area. Drives the rollers that transport paper toward the proof tray (top tray). |

| Motors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| M28 | Lower Transport Motor | Drives the rollers that transport paper in the shift and stapling paper path. |
| M29 | Punch Motor | Drives the punch shaft and roller. |
| M30 | Shift Tray Jogger Motor | Drives the shift tray jogger fences against the sides of the sheets to align the stack, then reverses to return them to the home position |
| M31 | Shift Tray Jogger Retraction Motor | Raises the shift tray jogger fences after aligning the stack, then reverses and lowers them to them to the home position. |

| PCBs | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| PCB | Main Board (Output Jogger) | Controls operation of the shift and output jogger mechanisms. |
| PCB | Main Board | Controls the finisher and communicates with the copier. |

| Sensors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| S01 | Entrance Sensor | Detects the copy paper entering the finisher and checks for misfeeds. |
| S02 | Upper Tray Exit Sensor | Checks for misfeeds at the upper tray. |
| S03 | Upper Tray Full Sensor | Detects when the upper tray is full. |
| S04 | Shift Tray Exit Sensor 1 | Controls the output timing of stapled stacks and detects jams. |
| S05 | Shift Tray Exit Sensor 2 | Controls the timing of paper in the shift path and detects paper jams. |
| S06 | Exit Guide HP Sensor | Detects whether the guide plate is opened or not. |
| S07 | Paper Height Sensor – Standby Mode | Detects the height of the tray when the machine is turned on to position the tray at the standby position. |
| S08 | Paper Height Sensor – Staple Mode | Detects the height of the paper output on the shift tray and adjusts the height of the tray in the staple mode. |
| S09 | Paper Height Sensor – Z-Fold Full | Detects the height of the paper output on the shift tray and signals when the tray is full when Z-folded paper is output to the shift tray. |
| S10 | Paper Height Sensor – Shift/Z-Fold | Detects the amount of paper on the shift tray 1) in shift mode to control operation of the tray lift motor, and 2) when Z-folded paper is output to the shift tray. |
| S11 | Drag Drive HP Sensor | Controls the push and pull movement of the drag roller when it extends and drags paper back against the back of the shift tray to keep the edge of the stack aligned on the shift tray. |
| S12 | Shift Tray Half-Turn Sensor 1 | Detects whether the shift tray is at either the front or back position. Controls the side-to-side movement of the shift tray. (This pair of sensors is used to detect the positions of the leading and trailing edges of the sheets controls operation of the shift mechanism.) |
| S13 | Shift Tray Half-Turn Sensor 2 | Detects whether the shift tray is at either the front or back position. Controls the side-to-side movement of the shift tray. |
| S14 | Upper Tray Junction Gate HP Sensor | Detects the upper tray junction gate at its home position. |
| S15 | Stapler Junction Gate HP Sensor | Detects the staple junction gate at its home position. |
| S16 | Pre-Stack Junction Gate HP Sensor | Detects the pre-stack junction gate mechanism at its home position. |
| S17 | Pre-Stack Tray Paper Sensor (Right) | Detects paper feed in the right side of the pre-stack unit and detects jams. |
| S18 | Shift Tray Full Sensor | Detects when the shift tray is full for paper smaller than B4. The tray is at its lower limit. |
| S19 | Shift Tray Full Sensor (Large Paper) | Detects when the shift tray is full for large size paper (B4 or larger). |
| S20 | Shift Tray Near-Full Sensor | Detects when the shift tray is nearly full. |
| S21 | Stapler Tray Exit Sensor | Detects jams at the staple tray exit. |
| S22 | Staple Trimmings Hopper | Detects when the staple trimmings hopper is full. |

| Sensors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| | Full Sensor | |
| S23 | Staple Trimmings Hopper Set Sensor | Detects if the hopper that holds stapling trimmings is set correctly or incorrectly. |
| S24 | Pre-Stack Stopper HP Sensor | Detects the pre-stack stopper mechanism at its home position. |
| S25 | Pre-Stack Tray Paper Sensor (Left) | Detects paper feed in the right side of the pre-stack unit. Controls the release timing of the pre-stack stopper, and starts the pre-stack transport motor. Also detects paper jams. |
| S26 | Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor | Detects a paper jam if there is paper at the entrance of the stapler unit junction gate when the machine is turned on or after the door is closed. |
| S27 | Stack Feed-Out Belt HP Sensor | Detects the home position of the stack feed-out belt. |
| S28 | Staple Tray Full Sensor | Detects paper in the stapler tray. |
| S29 | Jogger HP Sensor | Detects the home position of the jogger fence in the stapler tray. |
| S30 | Bottom Fence HP Sensor | Detects the bottom fence at its home position. |
| S31 | Top Fence HP Sensor | Detects the top fence at its home position. |
| S32 | Positioning Roller HP Sensor | Detects the home position of the positioning roller. |
| S33 | Stack Plate HP Sensor (Center) | Detects the home position of the center stack plate. |
| S34 | Stack Plate HP Sensor (Front) | Detects the home position of the front stack plate. |
| S35 | Stack Plate HP Sensor (Rear) | Detects the home position of the rear stack plate. |
| S36 | Stapler HP Sensor (Front/Rear) | Detects the home position of the staple unit for side-to-side movement. |
| S37 | Stapler Rotation Sensor 1 | Paired with Stapler Rotation Sensor 2. .This sensor pair controls the positioning of the corner stapler for the horizontal, 45° angle, and 75° angle stapling positions. |
| ⇒ S38 | Stapler Rotation Sensor 2 | Paired with Stapler Rotation Sensor 1 .This sensor pair controls the positioning of the corner stapler for the horizontal and 45° angle stapling positions. |
| S39 | Punch-out Hopper Full Sensor | Detects when the punch-out hopper is full and detects when the punch tray is set. |
| S40 | Punch HP Sensor 1 | Detects the cam home position for the 2-hole punch. After punching a sheet of paper, the cam returns to home position and stops. Home position depends on whether 2 holes or 3 holes are being made, so there are two punch HP sensors. Punch HP sensor 1 is used when 2-hole punching is selected, and punch HP sensor 2 is used when 3-hole punching is selected. When the cut-out enters the slot of the punch HP in use (sensor 1 or 2-hole punching) the motor stops. |
| S41 | Punch HP Sensor 2 | Detects the cam home position for 3-hole punch. After punching a sheet of paper, the cam returns to home position and stops. Home position depends on whether 2 holes or 3 holes are being made, so there are two punch HP sensors. Punch HP sensor 1 is used when 2-hole punching is selected, and punch HP sensor 2 is used when 3-hole punching is selected. When the cut-out enters the slot of the punch HP in use (sensor 1 or 2-hole punching) the motor stops. |
| S42 | Shift Tray Jogger HP Sensor | Detects the actuator on the rear shift tray jogger fence and switches off the shift tray jogger motor, and signals the machine to turn on the shift tray jogger retraction motor to raise the fences at the end of a job. |
| S43 | Shift Tray Jogger Retraction HP Sensor | Detects the jogger fences of the shift tray jogger unit at their home positions. |

| Solenoids | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| SOL | Staple Trimming Chute Solenoid | Opens and closes the trap door that drops staple trimmings into the stapling trimmings hopper. |

| Switches | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| **SW** | Front Door Safety Switch | Detects when the front door is open. The finisher does not operate until the front door has been closed. |
| SW | Emergency Stop Switch | Switches the current job off and on to allow time for the operator to remove paper from the shift tray. |
| SW | Shift Tray Upper Limit Switch | Cuts the power to the shift tray lift motor when the shift tray position is at its upper limit. |

# RT4000 A3/12 x 18 LCT
# (D350)

| D350 A3/12X18 LCT RT4000 REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| | | None |

# RT4000 A3/12 x 18 LCT (D350)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS


**1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT ..... 1**

1.1 COMMON PROCEDURES ..... 1

1.1.1 TRAYS ..... 1

1.1.2 COVERS ..... 2

1.1.3 SIDE REGISTRATION ADJUSTMENT ..... 3

1.2 PAPER FEED UNIT ..... 4

1.3 ROLLERS ..... 5

1.3.1 PAPER FEED ROLLER ..... 5

1.4 MOTORS ..... 6

1.4.1 LCT EXIT MOTOR ..... 6

1.4.2 FEED MOTOR, GRIP MOTOR ..... 7

1.4.3 LIFT MOTOR ..... 8

1.5 SENSORS ..... 9

1.5.1 LCT EXIT SENSOR ..... 9

1.5.2 PAPER HEIGHT, PAPER WIDTH SENSORS ..... 10

Paper Height Sensors ..... 10

Paper Width Sensors ..... 10

1.6 BOARDS ..... 11

1.6.1 MAIN BOARD ..... 11

**2. DETAILS ..... 12**

2.1 MECHANICAL LAYOUT ..... 12

2.1.1 OVERVIEW ..... 12

2.1.2 DRIVE LAYOUT ..... 13

2.1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ..... 14

2.1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SUMMARY ..... 16

2.2 PAPER HANDLING ..... 19

2.2.1 PAPER FEED ROLLERS ..... 19

2.2.2 PAPER FEED MOTORS ..... 20

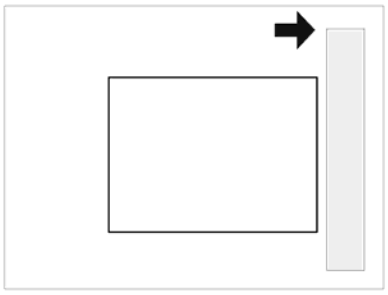
2.2.3 PAPER SEPARATION.....21
2.2.4 PAPER DETECTION/LIFT.....22
2.2.5 LIFT SENSOR .....23
2.2.6 PAPER SIZE DETECTION .....24
2.2.7 REMAINING PAPER DETECTION.....27
2.2.8 PAPER END DETECTION.....29
2.2.9 AIR-ASSISTED FEED MECHANISM.....30
2.2.10 PAPER EXIT .....31

# Read This First

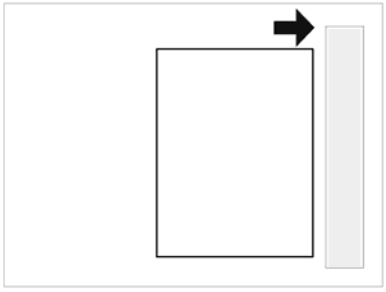
## Safety, Conventions, Trademarks

### Conventions

| Symbol | What it means |
|---|---|
| CT | Core Tech Manual |
| | Screw |
| | Connector |
| | E-ring |
| | C-ring |
| | Harness clamp |
| FFC | Flexible Film Cable |



SEF (Short Edge Feed)



LEF (Long Edge Feed)

The notations "SEF" and "LEF" describe the direction of paper feed. The arrows indicate the direction of paper feed.

## Warnings, Cautions, Notes

In this manual, the following important symbols and notations are used.

**⚠WARNING**

- A Warning indicates a potentially hazardous situation. Failure to obey a Warning could result in death or serious injury.

**⚠CAUTION**

- A Caution indicates a potentially hazardous situation. Failure to obey a Caution could result in minor or moderate injury or damage to the machine or other property.

Important

- Obey these guidelines to avoid problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine

Note

- This information provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

## General Safety Instructions

For your safety, please read this manual carefully before you use this product. Keep this manual handy for future reference.

**Safety Information**

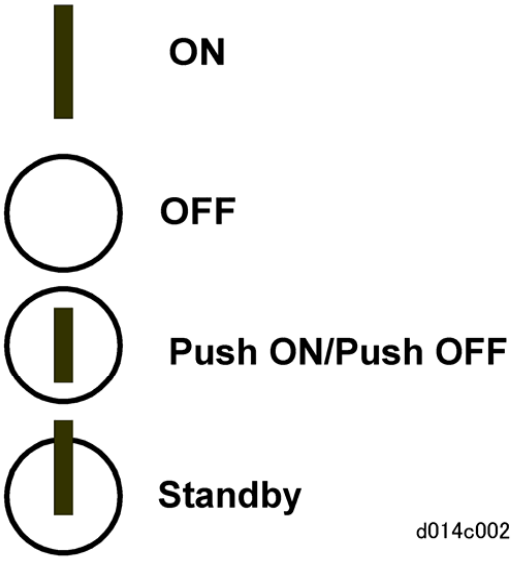
Always obey the following safety precautions when using this product.

**Safety During Operation**

In this manual, the following important symbols and notations are used.

**Switches and Symbols**

Where symbols are used on or near switches on machines for Europe and other areas, the meaning of each symbol conforms with IEC60417.



# Responsibilities of the Customer Engineer

## Customer Engineer

Maintenance shall be done only by trained customer engineers who have completed service training for the machine and all optional devices designed for use with the machine.

## Reference Material for Maintenance

- Maintenance shall be done using the special tools and procedures prescribed for maintenance of the machine described in the reference materials (service manuals, technical bulletins, operating instructions, and safety guidelines for customer engineers).
- In regard to other safety issues not described in this document, all customer engineers shall strictly obey procedures and recommendations described the “CE Safety Guide”.
- Use only consumable supplies and replacement parts designed for use of the machine.

# Before Installation, Maintenance

## Shipping and Moving the Machine

- Work carefully when lifting or moving the machine. If the machine is heavy, two or more customer engineers may be required to prevent injuries (muscle strains, spinal injuries, etc.) or damage to the machine if it is dropped or tipped over.
- Personnel moving or working around the machine should always wear proper clothing and footwear. Never wear loose fitting clothing or accessories (neckties, loose sweaters, bracelets, etc. ) or casual footwear (slippers, sandals, etc.) when lifting or moving the machine.
- Always unplug the power cord from the power source before you move the product. Before you move the product, arrange the power cord so it will not fall under the product.

## Power

- Always disconnect the power plug before doing any maintenance procedure. After switching off the machine, power is still supplied to the main machine and other devices. To prevent electrical shock, switch the machine off, wait for a few seconds, then unplug the machine from the power source.
- Before you do any checks or adjustments after turning the machine off, work carefully to avoid injury. After removing covers or opening the machine to do checks or

adjustments, never touch electrical components or moving parts (gears, timing belts, etc.).

- After turning the machine on with any cover removed, keep your hands away from electrical components and moving parts. Never touch the cover of the fusing unit, gears, timing belts, etc.

### Installation, Disassembly, and Adjustments

- After installation, maintenance, or adjustment, always check the operation of the machine to make sure that it is operating normally. This ensures that all shipping materials, protective materials, wires and tags, metal brackets, etc., removed for installation, have been removed and that no tools remain inside the machine. This also ensures that all release interlock switches have been restored to normal operation.
- Never use your fingers to check moving parts causing spurious noise. Never use your fingers to lubricate moving parts while the machine is operating.

### Special Tools

- Use only standard tools approved for machine maintenance.
- For special adjustments, use only the special tools and lubricants described in the service manual. Using tools incorrectly, or using tools that could damage parts, could damage the machine or cause injuries.

## During Maintenance

### General

- Before you begin a maintenance procedure: 1) Switch the machine off, 2) Disconnect the power plug from the power source, 3) Allow the machine to cool for at least 10 minutes.
- Avoid touching the components inside the machine that are labeled as hot surfaces.

### Safety Devices

- Never remove any safety device unless it requires replacement. Always replace safety devices immediately.
- Never do any procedure that defeats the function of any safety device. Modification or removal of a safety device (fuse, switch, etc.) could lead to a fire and personal injury. Always test the operation of the machine to ensure that it is operating normally and safely after removal and replacement of any safety device.
- For replacements use only the correct fuses or circuit breakers rated for use with the machine. Using replacement devices not designed for use with the machine could lead

to a fire and personal injuries.

## Organic Cleaners

- During preventive maintenance, never use any organic cleaners (alcohol, etc.) other than those described in the service manual.
- Make sure the room is well ventilated before using any organic cleaner. Use organic solvents in small amounts to avoid breathing the fumes and becoming nauseous.
- Switch the machine off, unplug it, and allow it to cool before doing preventive maintenance. To avoid fire or explosion, never use an organic cleaner near any part that generates heat.
- Wash your hands thoroughly after cleaning parts with an organic cleaner to contamination of food, drinks, etc. which could cause illness.
- Clean the floor completely after accidental spillage of silicone oil or other materials to prevent slippery surfaces that could cause accidents leading to hand or leg injuries. Use “My Ace” Silicone Oil Remover (or dry rags) to soak up spills. For more details, please refer to Technical Bulletin “Silicone Oil Removal” (A024-50).

## Power Plug and Power Cord

- Before serving the machine (especially when responding to a service call), always make sure that the power plug has been inserted completely into the power source. A partially inserted plug could lead to heat generation (due to a power surge caused by high resistance) and cause a fire or other problems.
- Always check the power plug and make sure that it is free of dust and lint. Clean it if necessary. A dirty plug can generate heat which could cause a fire.
- Inspect the length of the power cord for cuts or other damage. Replace the power cord if necessary. A frayed or otherwise damaged power cord can cause a short circuit which could lead to a fire or personal injury from electrical shock.
- Check the length of the power cord between the machine and power supply. Make sure the power cord is not coiled or wrapped around any object such as a table leg. Coiling the power cord can cause excessive heat to build up and could cause a fire.
- Make sure that the area around the power source is free of obstacles so the power cord can be removed quickly in case of an emergency.
- Make sure that the power cord is grounded (earthed) at the power source with the ground wire on the plug.
- Connect the power cord directly into the power source. Never use an extension cord.
- When you disconnect the power plug from the power source, always pull on the plug, not the cable.

## After Installation, Servicing

### Disposal of Used Items

- Never incinerate used toner or toner cartridges.
- Toner or toner cartridges thrown into a fire can ignite or explode and cause serious injury. At the work site always carefully wrap used toner and toner cartridges with plastic bags to avoid spillage before disposal or removal.
- Always dispose of used items (developer, toner, toner cartridges, OPC drums, etc.) in accordance with the local laws and regulations regarding the disposal of such items.
- To protect the environment, never dispose of this product or any kind of waste from consumables at a household waste collection point. Dispose of these items at one of our dealers or at an authorized collection site.
- Return used selenium drums to the service center for handling in accordance with company policy regarding the recycling or disposal of such items.

## Safety Instructions for this Machine

### PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the machine and peripherals, make sure that the machine and peripheral power cords are unplugged.
2. The plug should be near the machine and easily accessible.
3. Note that some components of the machine and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main power switch is turned off.
4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
5. If the [Start] key is pressed before the machine completes the warm-up period (the [Start] key starts blinking red and green ), keep hands away from the mechanical and the electrical components as the machine starts making copies as soon as the warm-up period is completed.
6. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the machine is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.
7. To prevent a fire or explosion, keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols.

## OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS

1. The machine and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
2. The NVRAM on the system control board has a lithium battery which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace the NVRAM only with an identical one. The manufacturer recommends replacing the entire NVRAM. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used NVRAM must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

## Trademarks

- Microsoft®, Windows®, and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and /or other countries.
- PostScript® is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.
- PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.
- Ethernet® is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.
- PowerPC® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
- Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights involved with those marks.

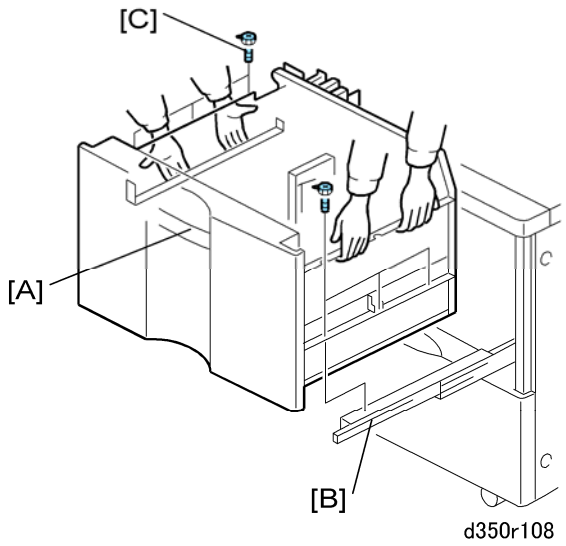
# 1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

## 1.1 COMMON PROCEDURES

### 1.1.1 TRAYS

**⚠CAUTION**

- The tray weighs 27 kg (60 lb.) empty.
- To prevent damage to the tray and personal injury, never attempt to lift the tray alone or without attaching the carrying handles, especially if it is loaded with paper. (The carrying handles are attached to the side of the tray.)
- One person on each side of the tray should use the handles to carry or move the tray.
- Never remove the tray if the LCT is not docked to the copier. Removing the tray while the LCT is standing alone can unbalance the LCT and cause it to fall over.

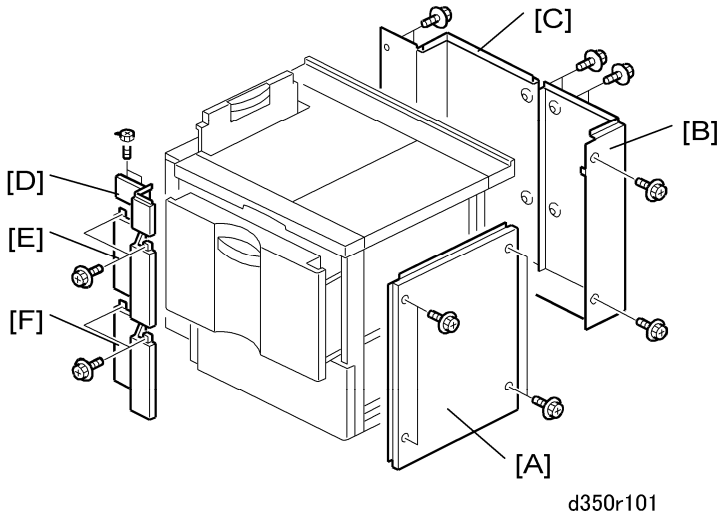



1. Pull the tray [A] out of the LCT until it stops.
2. Remove the screws from the right rail [B] (x3)
3. Remove the screws from the left rail [C] (x3)

Note

- You do not need to remove screw for the stopper pin bracket at the back of the left rail.

## 1.1.2 COVERS

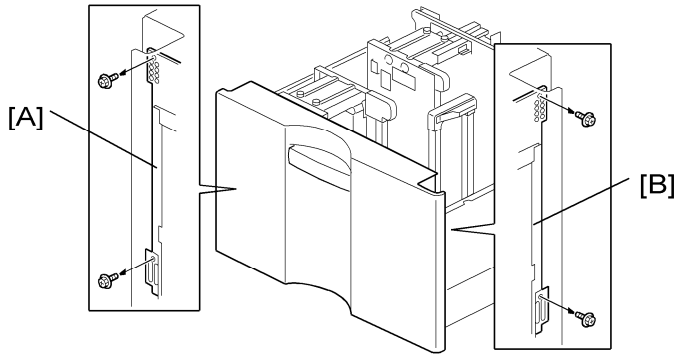



**Before You Begin…**

- The frame is held together by 8 blue screws.
- To avoid weakening or warping the shape of the frame, never remove these blue screws.
- The upper inner cover must be removed before the top cover.

1. Remove:
   [A] Right cover (☞ x 4)
   [B] Right rear cover (☞ x 4)
   [C] Left rear cover (☞ x 5)
   [D] Top front cover (☞ x 2)
   [E] Middle front cover (☞ x 2)
   [F] Bottom front cover (☞ x 2)

## 1.1.3 SIDE REGISTRATION ADJUSTMENT



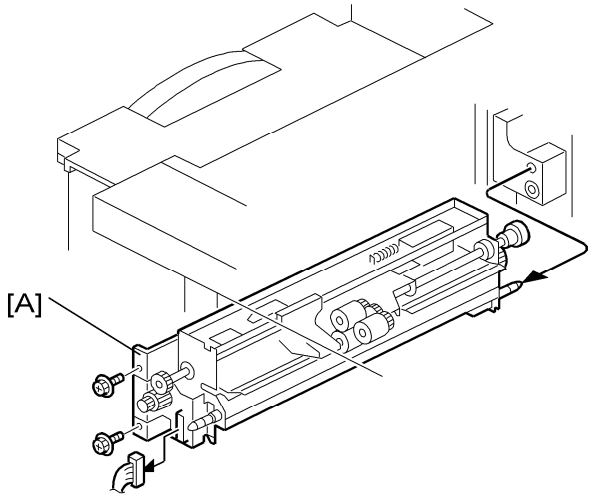



The side-to-side registration for this LCIT can be adjusted with SP1003-8.
However, if punched hole positions are not aligned on paper fed from this LCIT, you can first adjust the side registration by changing the tray cover position as described below, and then adjust the side registration of the image with the SP1003-8 (Side-to-Side Reg: WIDE LCT).

1. Pull out the tray.
2. Change the screw positions at both the right [A] and left [B] sides as shown.
   Adjustment range: 0±2.0 mm, Step: 0.5 mm

# 1.2 PAPER FEED UNIT

1. Remove:
   - Paper feed drive bracket (x2)
   - Timing belt (x1)
2. Remove the paper tray.

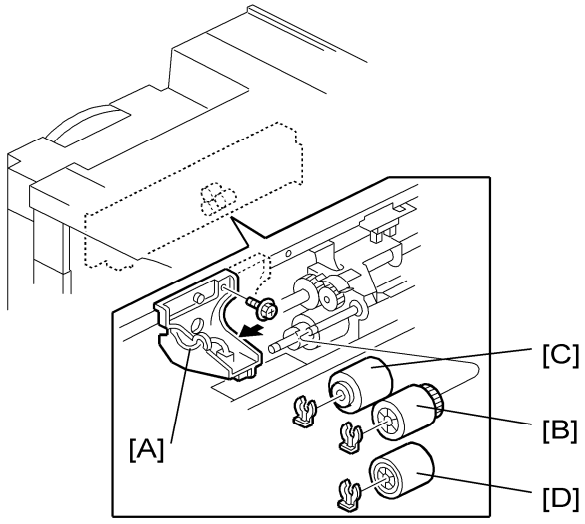



d350r903

3. Remove:
   [A] Paper feed unit (x1, (x2)

# 1.3 ROLLERS

## 1.3.1 PAPER FEED ROLLER




1. Remove:
   - Paper feed unit
2. Remove:

   [A] Bracket ( x1)

   [B] Pick-up roller ( x 1).

   [C] Feed roller ( x 1).

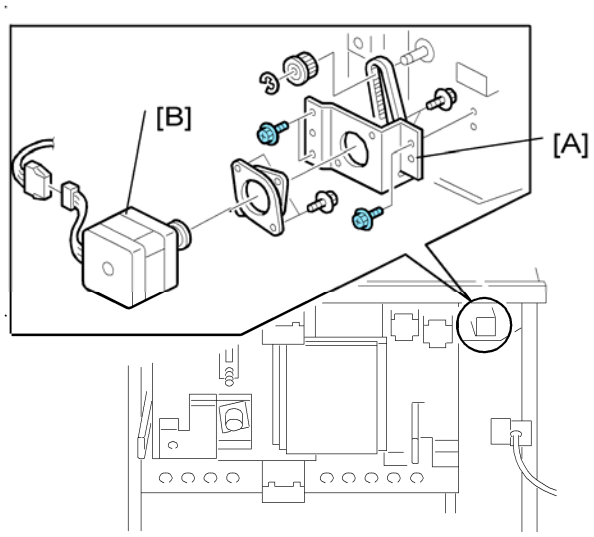
   [D] Separation roller ( x 1).

**Note:**

- Never touch the surface of the rollers with bare hands.
- The LCT pick-up and separation rollers are the same as the pick-up and separation rollers in the paper trays of the main machine. These rollers are interchangeable.
- The feed rollers of the LCT and main machine paper trays are different because they are designed to rotate in the opposite direction. The feed rollers of the LCT and main machine are not interchangeable.

# 1.4 MOTORS

## 1.4.1 LCT EXIT MOTOR

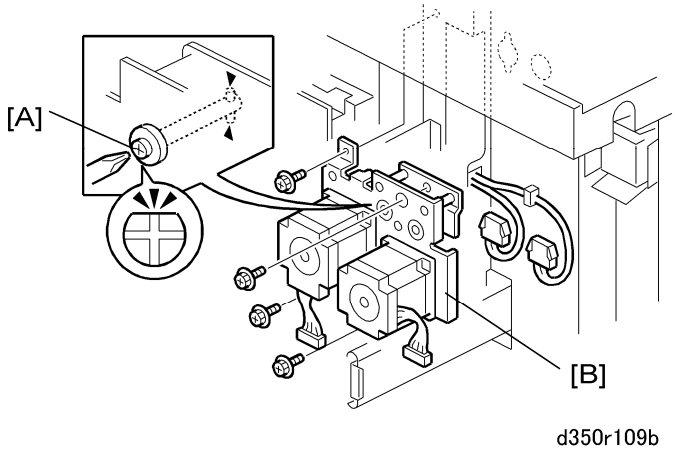



d350r109a

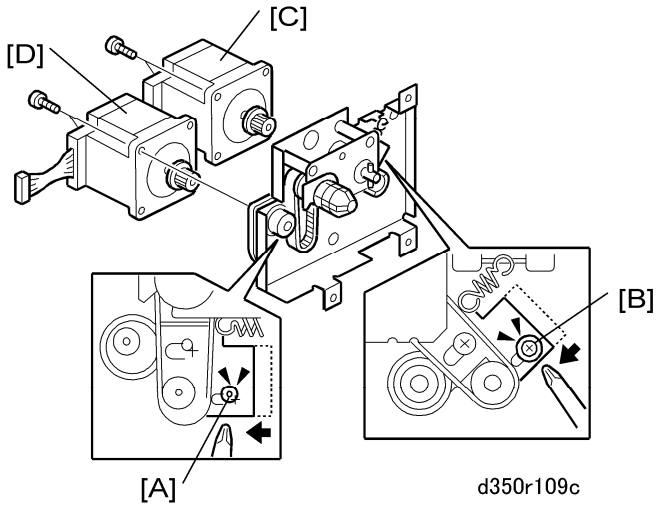
1. Remove the left rear cover
2. Remove:
   [A] Motor unit (x1, Gear x 1, Timing belt x1, x2)
   [B] Motor (x5)

## 1.4.2 FEED MOTOR, GRIP MOTOR

1. Remove the left rear cover




2. Use a small screwdriver to turn the shaft [A] so the pin can slip out of the keyhole.
3. Remove the motor unit [B] (x4, x2, x2)



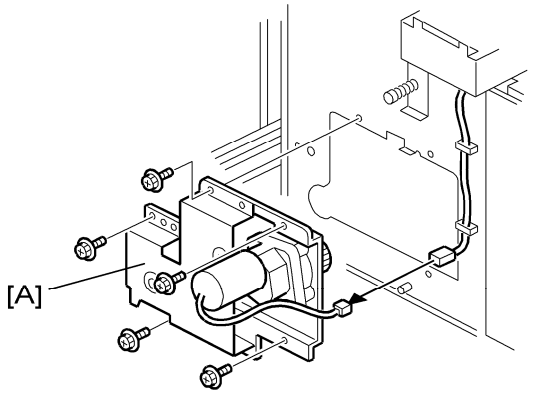

4. Remove:
   [A] Spring x1. First, loosen screw.
   [B] Spring x1. First, loosen screw.
   [C] Paper feed motor (x2, Timing belt x1)
   [D] Grip motor (x2, Timing belt x1)

**Reinstallation**

- First, attach the tension springs.
- Second, tighten the screws to tighten the belts.

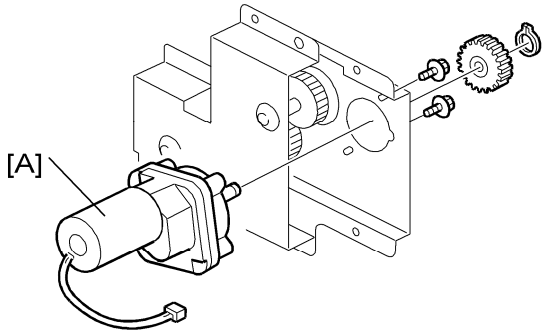
## 1.4.3 LIFT MOTOR

1. Remove:
   - Rear cover




d350r109d

2. Remove:
   [A] Motor unit (x5, x1)

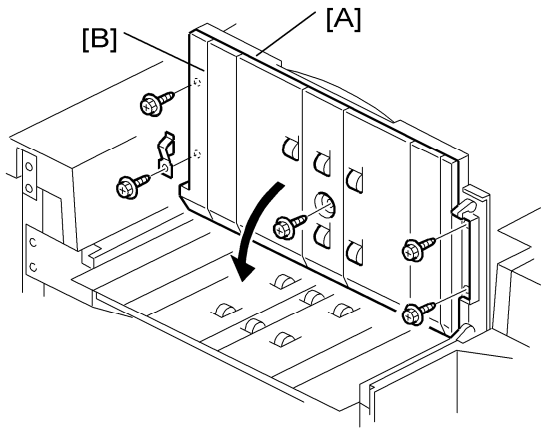



d350r109e

3. Remove:
   [A] Lift motor (x2, Clip x1, Gear x1)

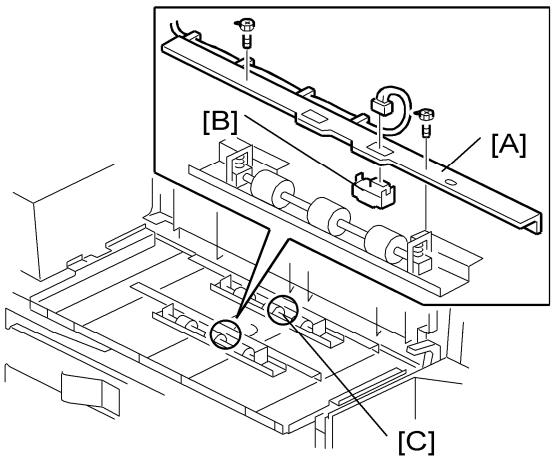
# 1.5 SENSORS

## 1.5.1 LCT EXIT SENSOR




d350r105

1. Disconnect the LCT from the copier.
2. Open the exit cover [A].
3. Disconnect the bottom of the exit cover [B] (x5).
4. Lower the bottom of the cover.

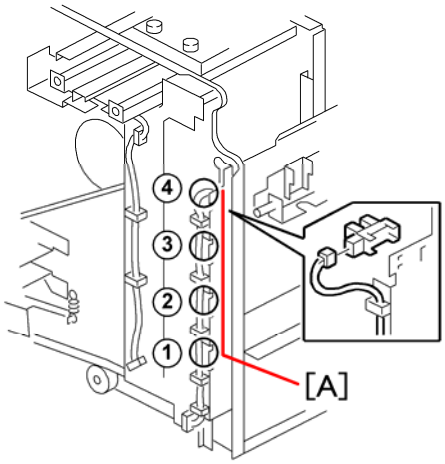



d350r105a

5. Remove:
   [A] Relay sensor bracket (x2).
   [B] Relay sensor (x1, Pawls x2)
   [C] LCT exit sensor

## 1.5.2 PAPER HEIGHT, PAPER WIDTH SENSORS

### *Paper Height Sensors*

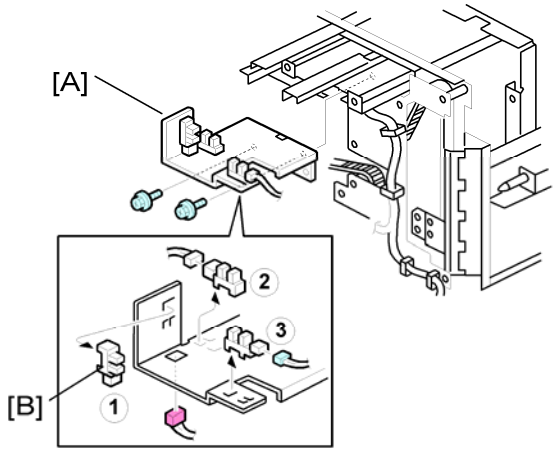



d350r106

1. Remove the rear left cover.
2. Remove:

   [A] Paper height sensors (x4) (☞ x1, Pawls x 4 each)

### *Paper Width Sensors*




d350r106a

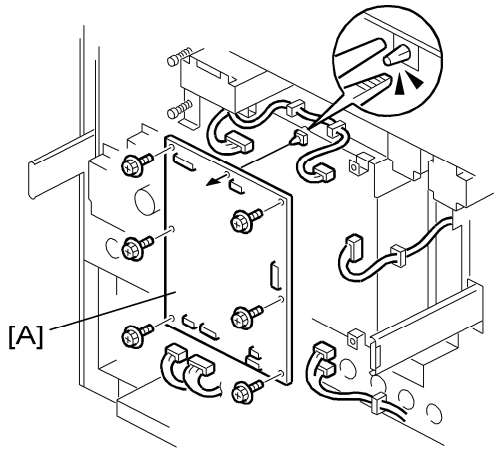
1. Remove the rear left cover.

   [A] Paper width sensor unit (☞ x2, ☞ x3)

   [B] Paper width sensors (x3) (☞ x1 each, Pawls x2 each)

# 1.6 BOARDS

## 1.6.1 MAIN BOARD



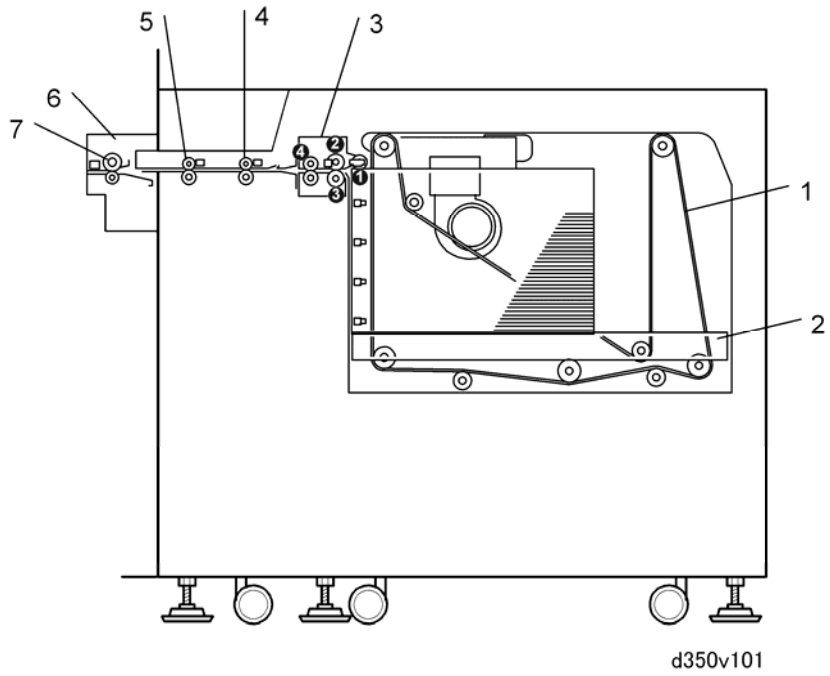

1. Remove:
   - Rear covers

   [A] Main control board (x7, Standoff x1, x All).

# 2. DETAILS

## 2.1 MECHANICAL LAYOUT

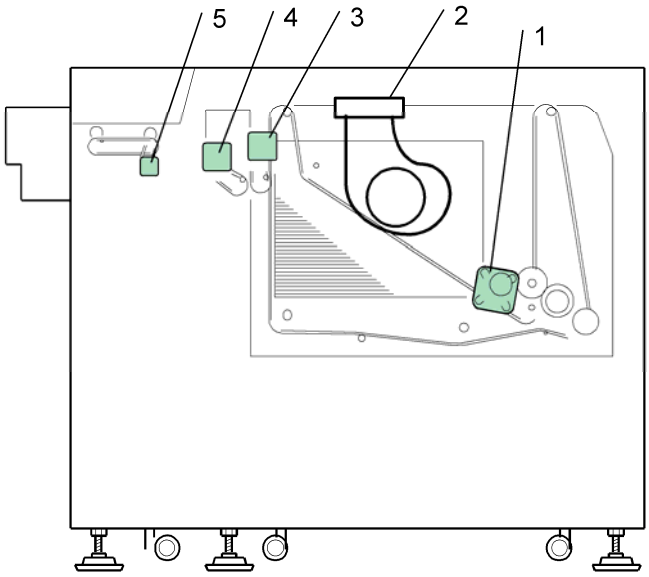
### 2.1.1 OVERVIEW




| | |
|---|---|
| 1. | Tray Drive Belt |
| 2. | Tray Bottom Plate |
| 3. | Paper Feed Unit*[1] |
| 4. | Horizontal Transport Motor |
| 5. | LCT Exit Roller |
| 6. | Relay Unit (Main Machine) |
| 7. | Entrance Roller (Main Machine) |

*[1] The tray has 1 paper feed motor that drives the pick-up roller ① and paper feed roller ②, and 1 grip motor that drives the grip roller ④ (③ is the separation roller).

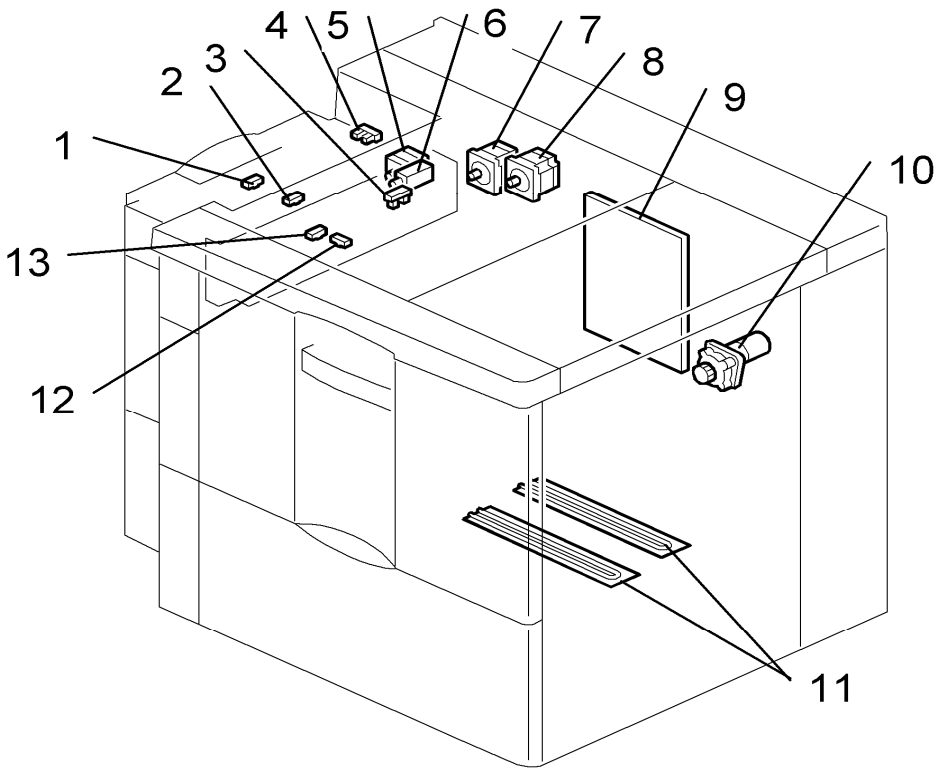
## 2.1.2 DRIVE LAYOUT




d350v102

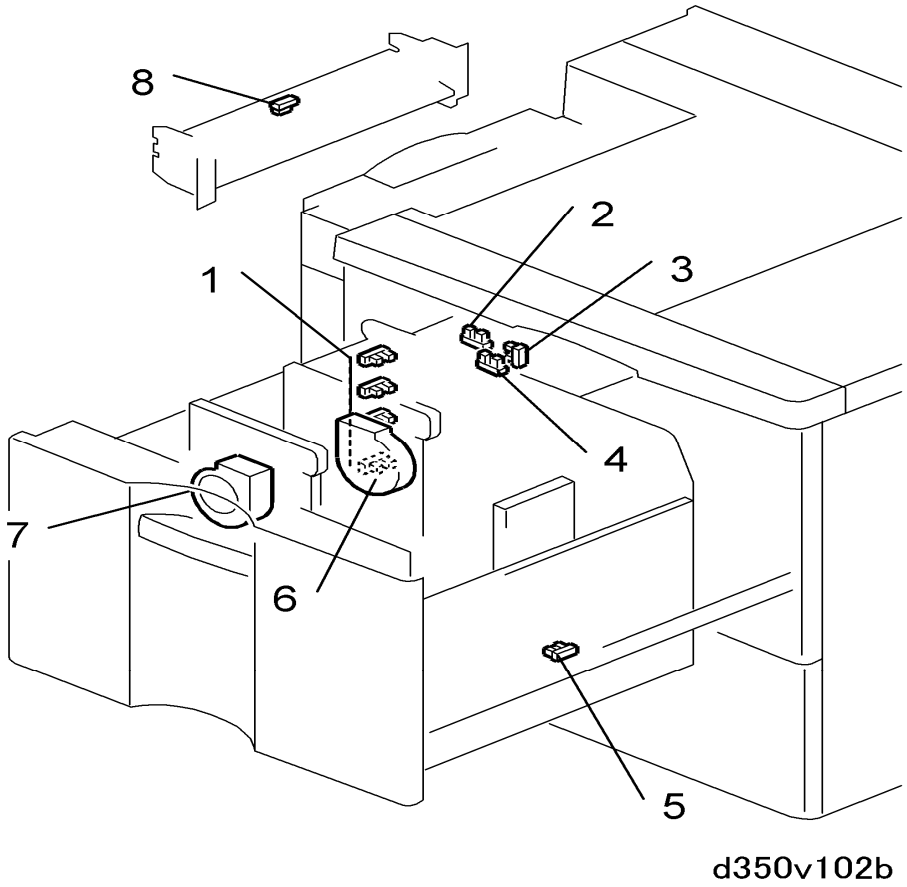
| | |
|---|---|
| 1. | Lift Motor |
| 2. | Air Assist Fan Motor |
| 3. | Paper Feed Motor |
| 4. | Grip Motor |
| 5. | LCT Exit Motor |

## 2.1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS




d350v102a

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | LCT Exit Sensor | 8. | Paper Feed Motor |
| 2. | Relay Sensor | 9. | Main Board |
| 3. | Lift Sensor | 10. | Lift Motor |
| 4. | Exit Cover Sensor | 11. | Anti-Condensation Heaters x2 |
| 5. | LCT Exit Motor | 12. | Paper End Sensor |
| 6. | Pickup Solenoid | 13. | Paper Feed Sensor |
| 7. | Grip Motor | | |




| | |
|---|---|
| 1. | Paper Height Sensors ④, ③, ②, ① |
| 2. | Paper Width Sensor 3 |
| 3. | Paper Width Sensor 2 |
| 4. | Paper Width Sensor 1 |
| 5. | Lift Sensor |
| 6. | Paper Assist Fan (Rear) |
| 7. | Paper Assist Fan (Front) |
| 8. | Entrance Sensor (Main Machine) |

## 2.1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SUMMARY

| Heater | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| H | Anti-Condensation Heater | Heat elements that provide heat to keep the paper tray and paper stack dry. |

| Motors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| M | Air Assist Fan (Front) | 1 of 2 fans that cool the tray. |
| M | Air Assist Fan (Rear) | 1 of 2 fans that cool the tray. |
| M | Grip Motor | Drives the transport rollers in the feed path that feed the paper from the tray to the LCT exit motor. |
| M | LCT Exit Motor | Feeds the paper out the LCT and into the entrance of the copier. |
| M | Lift Motor | Raises and lowers the bottom plate of the paper tray. |
| M | Paper Feed Motor | Drives the pick-roller and feed roller that picks up each sheet and starts to feed it out of the 1st tray. |

| Board | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| PCB | Main Board | Controls the operation of all motors and sensors in the LCT unit. |

| Sensors | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| S | Exit Cover Sensor | An interlock safety switch that detects when the front door is opened and closed. |
| S | Grip Sensor | Detects jams in the paper path where the grip motor pulls the paper from the tray. |
| S | LCT Exit Sensor | Detects jams at the exit of the LCT unit. |
| S | Lift Sensor | Detects when the paper in the tray is at the correct height for paper feed and switches the lift motor off. |
| S | Paper End Sensor | Detects when the last sheet feeds from the ray. |
| S | Paper Feed Sensor | Detects the paper when it arrives at the paper feed roller and checks for misfeeds. |
| S | Paper Height Sensor 1 | 1st from the bottom of the 1st tray, detects stack height: 100% |
| S | Paper Height Sensor 2 | 2nd from the bottom of the 1st tray, detects stack height: 75% |
| S | Paper Height Sensor 3 | 3rd from the bottom of the 1st tray, detects stack height: 50% |
| S | Paper Height Sensor 4 | 4th from the bottom of the 1st tray, detects stack height: 25% and signals near-end. |
| S | Paper Length Sensor | Detects the length of the paper in the tray (operates in combination with the paper width sensors). |
| S | Paper Width Sensor 1 | 1 of a set of 3 sensors that detect the width the paper in the 1st tray. |
| S | Paper Width Sensor 2 | 1 of a set of 3 sensors that detect the width the paper in the 1st tray. |
| S | Paper Width Sensor 3 | 1 of a set of 3 sensors that detect the width the paper in the 1st tray. |

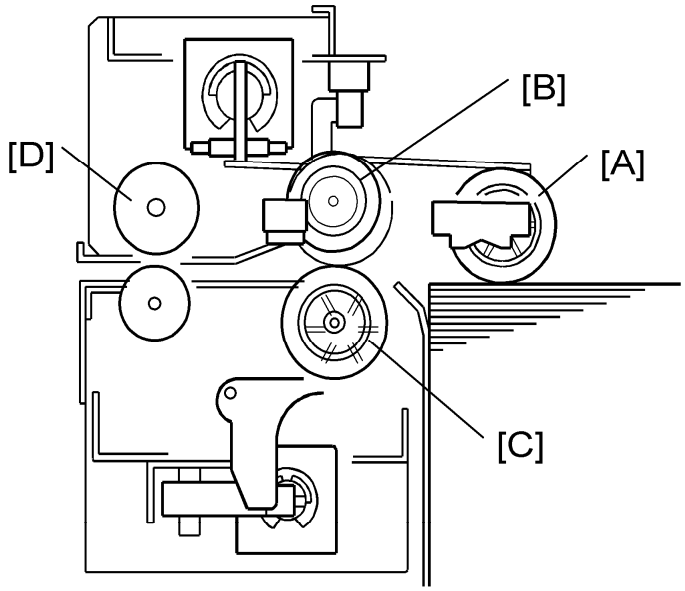
Mechanical Layout

| Sensors | | |
|---|---|---|
| S | Relay Sensor | Detects the leading and trailing edge of each to detect jams in the horizontal paper path just before the paper exits the LCIT. |

| Solenoid | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Name** | **Description** |
| SOL | Pick-up Solenoid | Engages/disengages rotation of the pick-up roller in the tray. |

# 2.2 PAPER HANDLING

## 2.2.1 PAPER FEED ROLLERS




d350d930

This LCT has one paper tray feed tray. Capacity: 2,000 sheets.

The tray contains four rollers:

[A] Pick-up roller

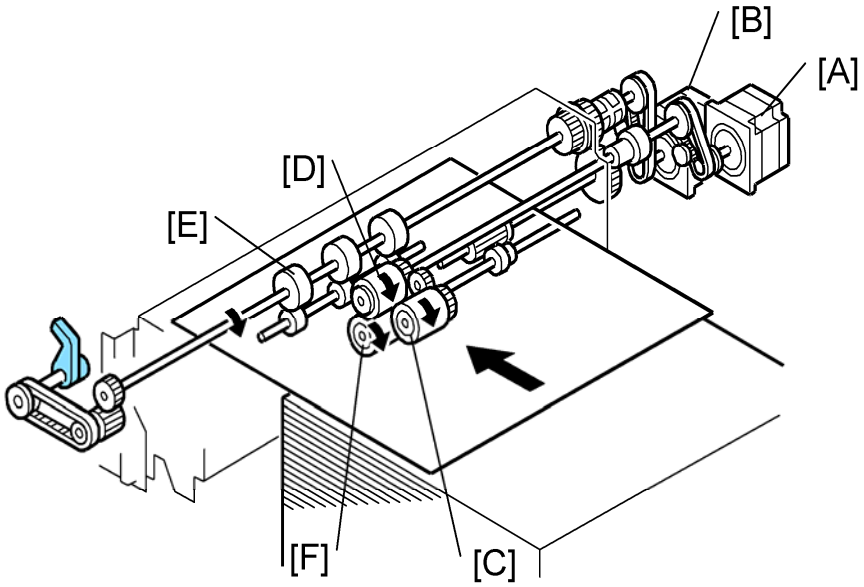
[B] Paper feed roller

[C] Separation roller

[D] Grip roller

The pick-up roller, paper feed roller, and separation roller use the standard FRR paper feed system.

## 2.2.2 PAPER FEED MOTORS



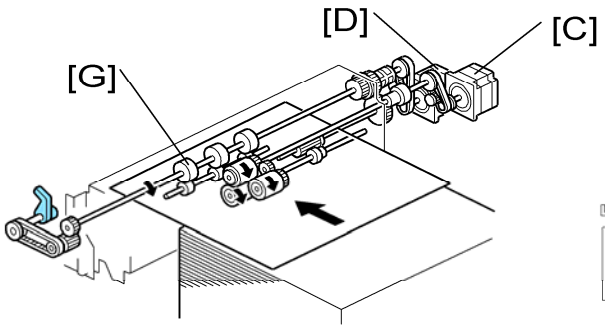

d350d931

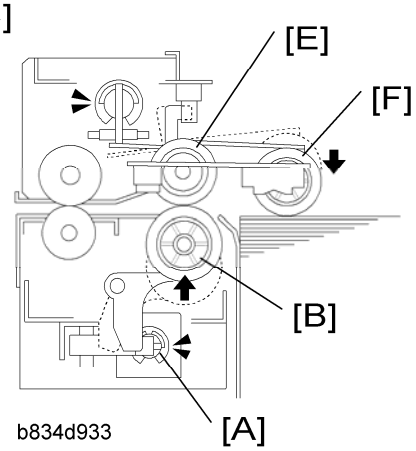
Two stepper motors control paper feed: Paper feed motor [A] and the grip motor [B].

The paper feed motor [A] drives the pick-up roller [C] and the paper feed roller [D].

The grip motor [B] drives the grip roller [E] that feeds the paper out of the tray, and also drives the separation roller [F].

## 2.2.3 PAPER SEPARATION





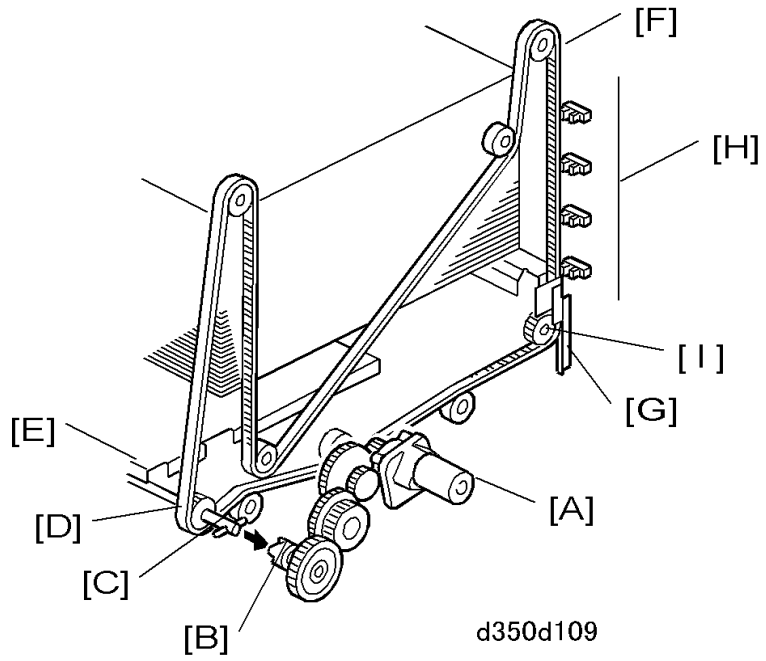

When a paper feed station is not selected:

- Separation roller solenoid [A] is de-activated
- Separation roller [B] turns freely.

When the paper feed station is selected for a job, the paper feed motor [C] and grip motor [D] turn on.

- When the feed motor [C] turns on, it drives the feed roller [E]. It also drives the pick-up roller [F] because the pick-up roller is linked to the feed roller by an idle gear.
- When the separation solenoid [A] turns on, the separation roller [B] contacts the paper feed roller [E] and turns with the feed roller, unless more than one sheet of paper is fed. The three trays of the LCT unit use the standard FRR mechanism.
- When the paper feed motor turns on, the pick-up solenoid turns on and the pick-up roller [F] lowers until it contacts the top sheet of the paper stack and then sends it to the paper feed and separation rollers.
- When the paper feed sensor detects the leading edge of the paper, the paper feed motor switches off, the pick-up roller lifts, and the grip rollers [G] feed the paper out of the tray.

## 2.2.4 PAPER DETECTION/LIFT




**Detection**

When the tray set in the machine, the tray is detected by the drawer connector on the back side of the tray.

**Lift**

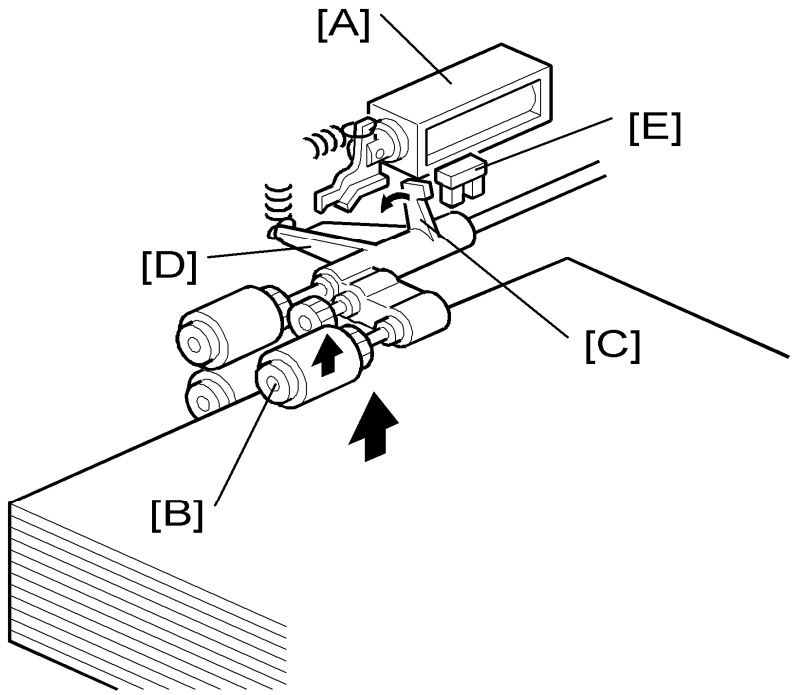
When the machine detects that the paper tray is set in the machine:

- The tray lift motor [A] rotates forward
- Coupling gear [B] on the tray lift motor engages pin [C] of the lift drive shaft.
- The tray drive belts [D], connected to the tray bottom plate [E], are driven by the tray lift motor via the lift drive shaft and tray lift pulleys [F].
- When the lift motor rotates forward, the tray bottom plate [E] rises. The tray rises until the top of the paper stack pushes up the pick-up roller and the lift sensor in the feed unit is de-activated.
- When the actuator [G] on the rear end of the bottom plate activates the paper height sensors [H], the remaining paper capacity is detected.

When the tray is pulled out:

- Coupling gear [B] separates from pin [C] and the tray bottom plate goes down.
- A damper [I] slows the descent of the bottom plate.

## 2.2.5 LIFT SENSOR

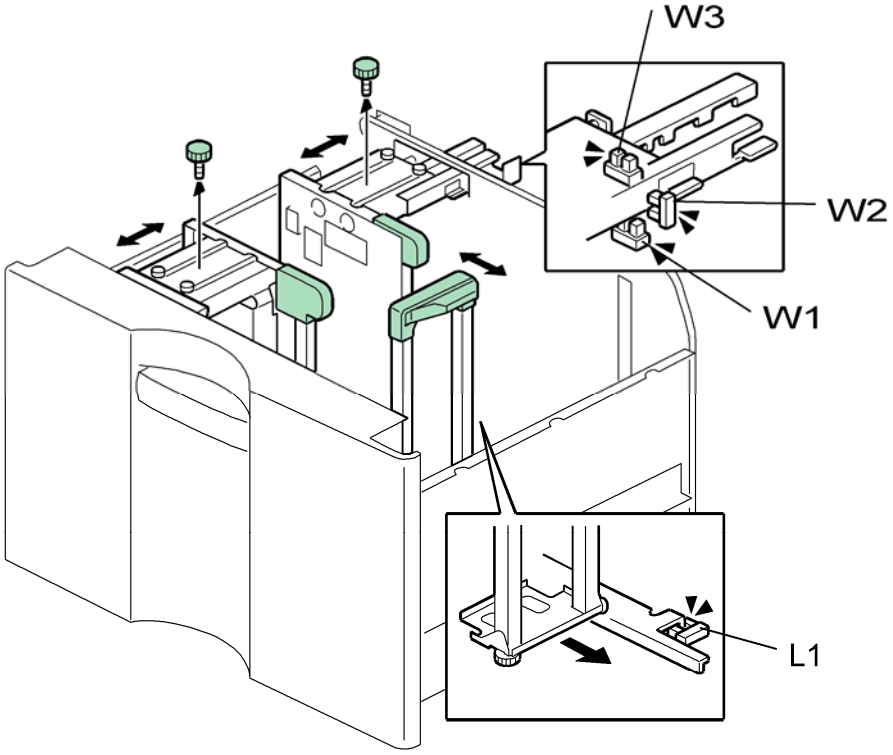



d350d934

When the lift motor turns on, the pick-up solenoid [A] activates to lower the pick-up roller [B]. When the top sheet of paper reaches the proper paper feed level, the paper pushes up the pick-up roller and the actuator [C] on the pick-up roller supporter [D] de-activates the lift sensor [E] to stop the lift motor.

After several paper feeds, the paper level gradually lowers, then the lift sensor is activated and the lift motor turns on again until the lift sensor is de-activated again.

## 2.2.6 PAPER SIZE DETECTION




d350d111

| | |
|---|---|
| W3 | Paper Width Sensor 3 |
| W2 | Paper Width Sensor 2 |
| W1 | Paper Width Sensor 1 |
| L1 | Paper Length Sensor |

The tray has three paper width sensors and one paper length sensor. The illustration above shows how these sensors are arranged in the tray.

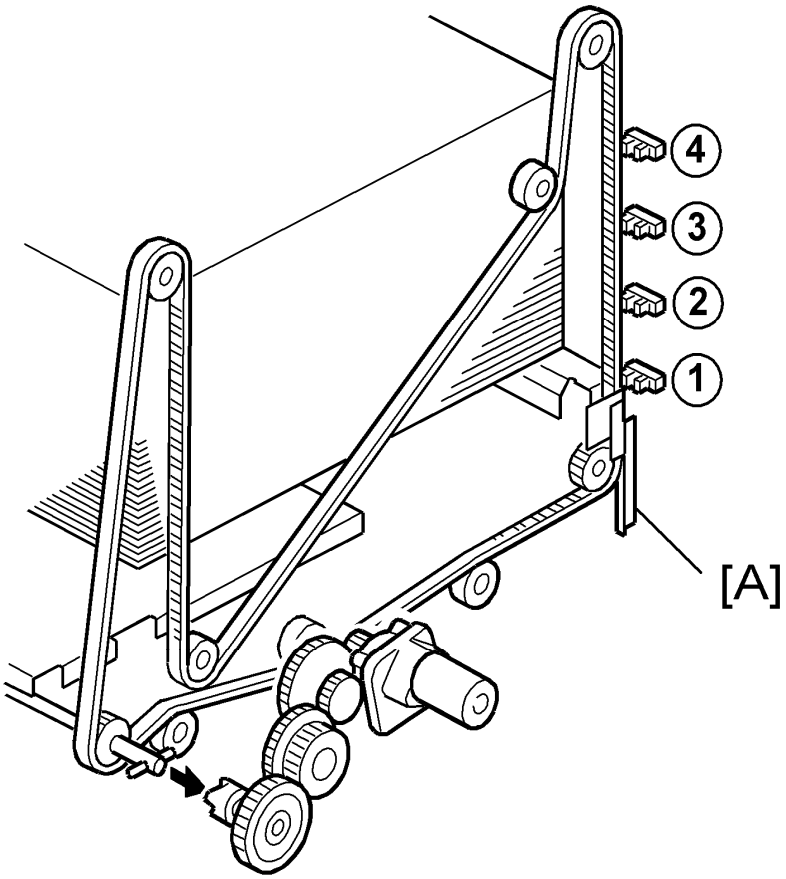
This table below describes how the three width sensors and one length sensor are used to determine the paper size in the paper tray.

| Paper Size | | Width Sensors | | | Length Sensor | Area | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | W1 | W2 | W3 | L1 | NA | EU |
| Large Size | 12"×18" | L | L | L | H | YES | YES |
| | 13"×19" | | | | | NO | NO |
| | 320×450 mm | | | | | NO | NO |
| A3 SEF | 297×420 mm | L | L | H | H | YES | YES |
| A4 LEF | 297×210 mm | L | L | H | L | YES | YES |
| DLT SEF | 11"×17" | L | H | L | H | YES | YES |
| LT LEF | 11"×8½" | L | H | L | L | YES | YES |
| B4 SEF | 257×364 mm | L | H | H | H | YES | YES |
| B5 LEF | 257×182 mm | L | H | H | L | YES | YES |
| A4 SEF | 210×297 mm | H | L | L | H | NO | YES |
| LT SEF | 8½"×11" | H | L | L | H | YES | NO |
| A5 LEF | 210×148 mm | H | L | L | L | NO | YES |
| HLT LEF | 8½"×5½" | H | L | L | L | YES | NO |
| B5 SEF | 182×257 mm | H | L | H | H | NO | NO |
| F SEF | 8"×13" | H | L | H | H | YES | YES |
| A5 SEF | 148×210 mm | H | H | L | L | YES | YES |
| HLT SEF | 5½"×8½" | H | H | H | L | YES | YES |

**Table Key**

| | |
|---|---|
| YES: | Detected automatically |
| NO: | Not detected automatically. Requires size setting change with the "Tray Paper Setting" key on the copier operation panel to detect the desired paper size. |
| H: | Sensor OFF |
| L: | Sensor ON |

## 2.2.7 REMAINING PAPER DETECTION




d350d109a

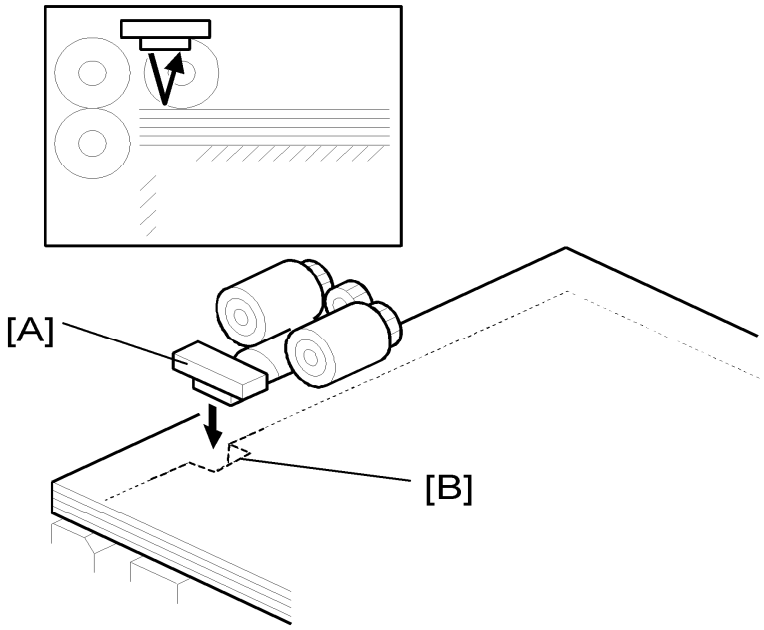
| | |
|---|---|
| [A] | Paper Height Sensor Actuator |
| ① | Paper Height Sensor 1 |
| ② | Paper Height Sensor 2 |
| ③ | Paper Height Sensor 3 |
| ④ | Paper Height Sensor 4 (Near End) |

Paper Handling

The tray has four paper height sensors. The amount of paper remaining in the tray is detected by the three paper height photo-interrupter sensors on the left rail as the bottom plate rises. Five states, determined by the position of the actuator [A] are possible.

1. With the actuator [A] below paper height sensor ①, no sensor is actuated and the display indicates 100%.
2. When the actuator passes paper height sensor ① , the display indicates 75% of the paper supply remaining.
3. When the actuator passes paper height sensor ②, the display indicates 50% of the paper supply remaining.
4. When the actuator passes paper height sensor ③, the display indicates 25% of the paper supply remaining.
5. When the actuator enters the gap of the near end sensor ④, and then passes paper height sensor ③, the machine signals near end.
6. Finally, when the last sheet feeds, the paper end sensor (a photosensor) signals that the tray is empty.

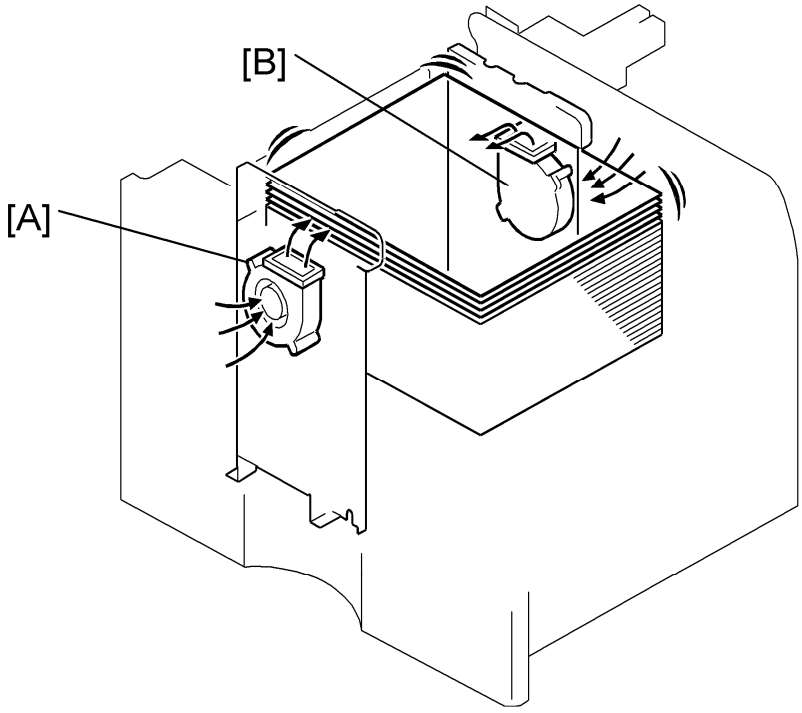
## 2.2.8 PAPER END DETECTION




d350d936

The paper end sensor [A] (a photosensor) detects the top sheet of the paper in the tray by monitoring the reflected light. After the last sheet in the tray leaves the tray, the paper end sensor does not receive the reflected light due to cutout [B]. This causes the tray lift motor to reverse for 2 seconds and lower the tray bottom plate.

## 2.2.9 AIR-ASSISTED FEED MECHANISM



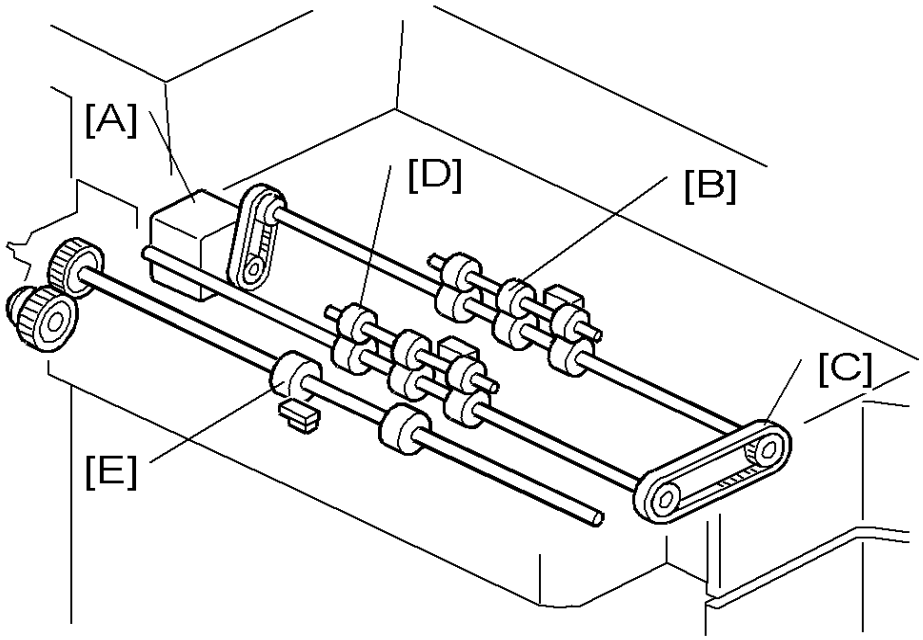

d350d935a

Two air assist fans [A] and [B] comprise the air assist mechanism.

The air flow created by the opposing fans floats the first sheet off the top of the stack. This assists in the separation of the top sheet from the sheet below and prevents double-feeding.

This only works when feeding the following paper types: Thick 2, Thick 3, Special 2.

## 2.2.10 PAPER EXIT




d350d935

The LCT exit motor [A] drives the first set of exit rollers [B] and timing belt [C] which in turn drives the second set of exit rollers [D]. The entrance roller of the main machine [E] feeds the paper as soon as it exits the LCIT.

# Fax Option Type C7500
# D356

| FAX OPTION TYPE C7500 REVISION HISTORY | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Page** | **Date** | **Added/Updated/New** |
| 31 | 10/09/2008 | Error code 14-21 |
| 38 | 10/09/2009 | Error code 31-21 |

# Fax Option Type C7500 (D356)

## Table of Contents


**1. INSTALLATION ..... 1**

1.1 INSTALLATION ..... 1

1.1.1 FAX UNIT (D356) ..... 1

Component Check ..... 1

Installation Procedure ..... 2

1.1.2 G3INTERFACE UNIT (D357) ..... 7

Component check ..... 7

To install a Single G3 Board ..... 9

To install the Double SG3 Boards ..... 10

To complete the installation ..... 10

**2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT ..... 14**

2.1 FCU ..... 14

**3. TROUBLESHOOTING ..... 15**

3.1 ERROR CODES ..... 15

3.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING ..... 39

3.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING ..... 43

3.3.1 IP-FAX TRANSMISSION ..... 43

Cannot send by IP Address/Host Name ..... 43

Cannot send via VoIP Gateway ..... 45

Cannot send by Alias Fax number. ..... 46

3.3.2 IP-FAX RECEPTION ..... 48

Cannot receive by IP Address/Host name ..... 48

Cannot receive by VoIP Gateway ..... 49

Cannot receive by Alias Fax number ..... 50

**4. SERVICE TABLE ..... 52**

4.1 CAUTIONS ..... 52

4.2 SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES ..... 53

4.2.1 SP1-XXX (BIT SWITCHES) ..... 53
4.2.2 SP2-XXX (RAM DATA) ..... 55
4.2.3 SP3-XXX (TEL LINE SETTINGS) ..... 56
4.2.4 SP4-XXX (ROM VERSIONS) ..... 59
4.2.5 SP5-XXX (INITIALIZING) ..... 60
4.2.6 SP6-XXX (REPORTS) ..... 61
4.2.7 SP7-XXX (TEST MODES) ..... 64
4.2.8 SP9-XXX (DESIGN SWITCH MODE) ..... 66
4.3 BIT SWITCHES ..... 67
4.3.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES ..... 68
4.3.2 I-FAX SWITCHES ..... 88
4.3.3 PRINTER SWITCHES ..... 97
4.3.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES ..... 106
4.3.5 G3 SWITCHES ..... 120
4.3.6 G3-2 AND G3-3 SWITCHES ..... 133
4.3.7 G4 INTERNAL SWITCHES ..... 144
4.3.8 G4 PARAMETER SWITCHES ..... 144
4.3.9 IP FAX SWITCHES ..... 144
4.4 NCU PARAMETERS ..... 153
4.5 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS ..... 169
4.5.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE ..... 169
4.5.2 PARAMETERS ..... 170
Fax Parameters ..... 170
E-mail Parameters ..... 176
4.6 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES ..... 180

**5. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS ..... 192**
5.1 OVERVIEW ..... 192
5.2 BOARDS ..... 193
5.2.1 FCU ..... 193
5.2.2 MBU ..... 194
5.2.3 SG3 BOARD ..... 195
5.3 VIDEO DATA PATH ..... 197
5.3.1 TRANSMISSION ..... 197
Memory Transmission and Parallel Memory Transmission ..... 197
Immediate Transmission ..... 198

JBIG Transmission ..... 198
Adjustments ..... 198
5.3.2 RECEPTION ..... 199
5.4 FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES ..... 200
5.4.1 MULTI-PORT ..... 200
5.4.2 DOCUMENT SERVER ..... 201
5.4.3 INTERNET MAIL COMMUNICATION ..... 203
Mail Transmission ..... 203
Mail Reception ..... 205
Handling Mail Reception Errors ..... 207
Secure Internet Reception ..... 208
Transfer Request: Request By Mail ..... 208
E-Mail Options (Sub TX Mode) ..... 208
5.5 IP-FAX ..... 213
5.5.1 WHAT IS IP-FAX? ..... 213
5.5.2 T.38 PACKET FORMAT ..... 213
UDP Related Switches ..... 213
5.5.3 SETTINGS ..... 213

**6. SPECIFICATIONS ..... 214**

6.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS ..... 214
6.2 CAPABILITIES OF PROGRAMMABLE ITEMS ..... 216
6.3 IFAX SPECIFICATIONS ..... 218
6.4 IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS ..... 219
6.5 FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION ..... 220

# Read This First

## Important Safety Notices

### ⚠WARNING

- Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
- Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
- Never touch un-insulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
- Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines.
- Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do not use a telephone or cellular phone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

### ⚠CAUTION

- Before installing the fax unit, switch off the main switch, and disconnect the power cord.
- The fax unit contains a lithium battery. The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

Note

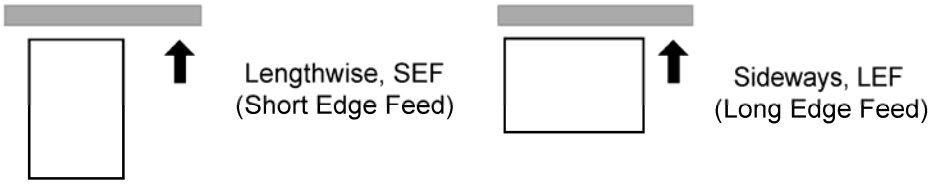
- **Note for Australia**:
- Unit must be connected to Telecommunication Network through a line cord which meets the requirements of ACA Technical Standard TS008.

# Symbols and Abbreviations

## Conventions Used in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

| Symbol | What it means |
|---|---|
| ☛ | Refer to section number |
| | Screw |
| | Connector |
| | E-ring |
| | Clip ring |
| | Clamp |



# Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

**⚠WARNING**

- Failure to obey warning information could result in serious injury or death.

**⚠CAUTION**

- Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

Important

- Obey these guidelines to avoid problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.
- Always obey these guidelines to avoid serious problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine. bold is added for emphasis.

Note

- This document provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

# 1. INSTALLATION

## 1.1 INSTALLATION

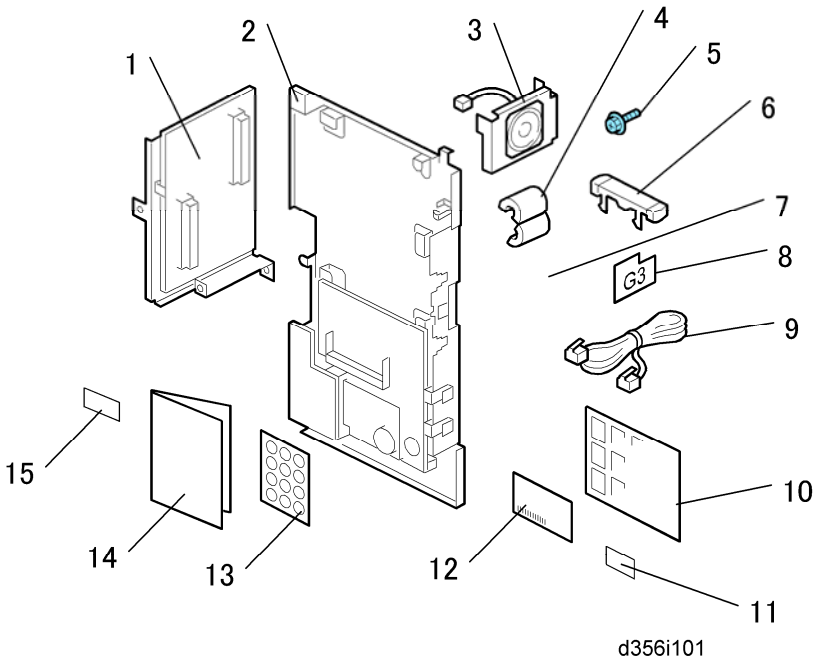
### 1.1.1 FAX UNIT (D356)

#### *Component Check*

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

| No. | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | PCB: VITS | 1 |
| 2 | PCB: FCU | 1 |
| 3 | Speaker | 1 |
| 4 | Ferrite Core | 1 |
| 5 | S/N Decal | 1 |
| 6 | Screws | 10 |
| 7 | Fax Key | 2 |
| 8 | G3 Decal | 1 |
| 9 | Telephone Cable (NA only) | 1 |
| 10 | Multi-Language Decals (EU only) | 2 |
| 11 | Fax NA Decal (NA, AA only) | 1 |
| 12 | EMC Address Decal (EU only | 1 |
| 13 | Numeric Key Decal (AA only) | 1 |
| 14 | Quick Reference Fax Guide (AA only) | 1 |
| 15 | FCC Decal (NA only) | 1 |

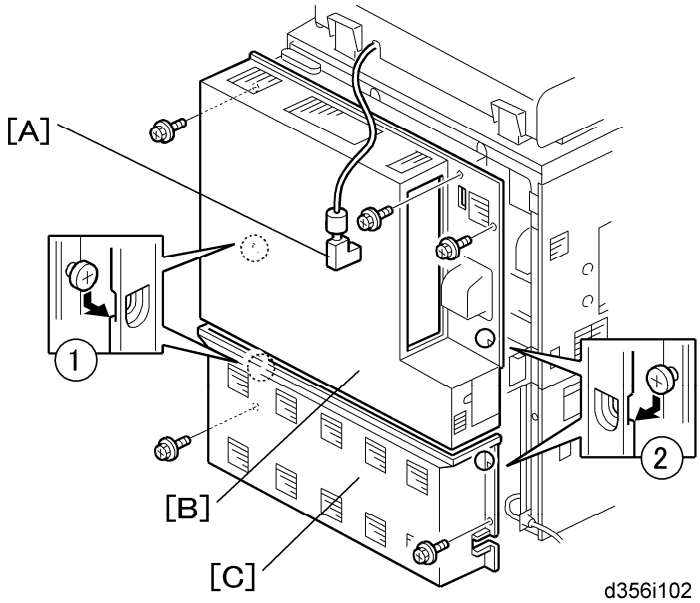
Installation




## *Installation Procedure*

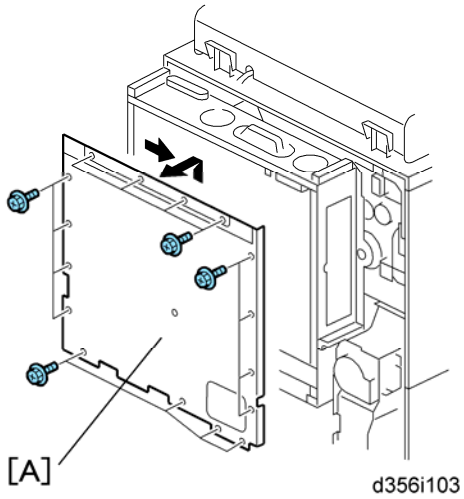
**CAUTION**

- Before installing this fax unit,
- Print out all data in the printer buffer.
- Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord and the network cable.

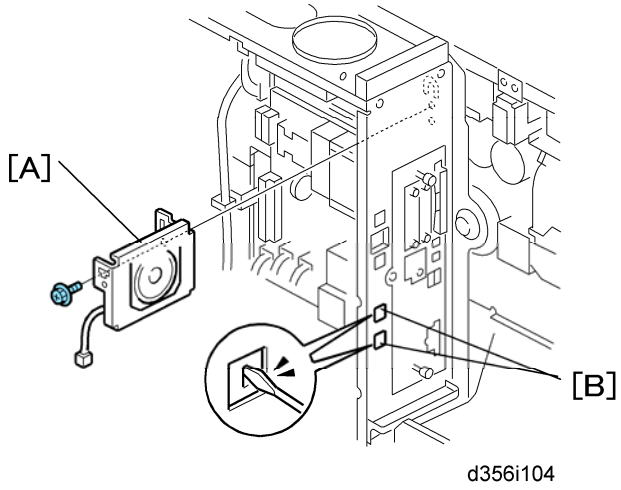



1. Disconnect the ARDF connector [A].

2. Remove:
   [B] Upper cover (x2, Stepped x2)
   [C] Lower Cover ((x2)

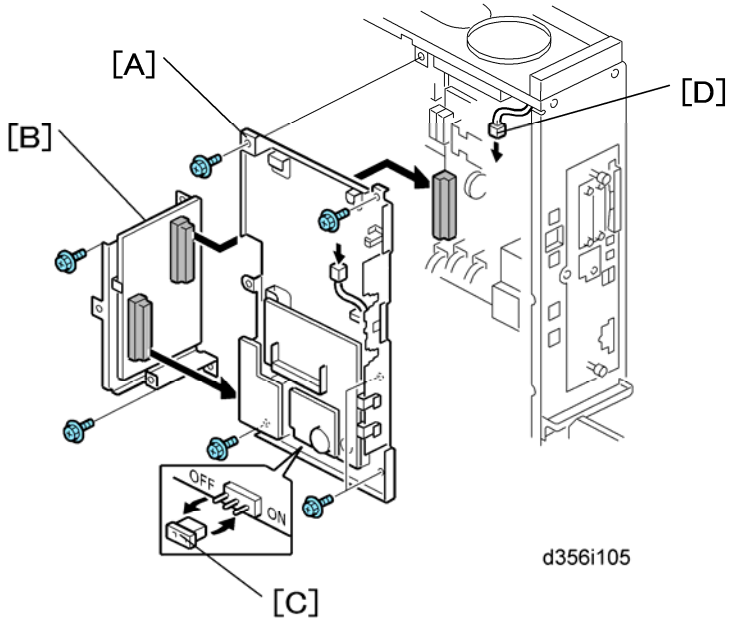



3. Remove the controller box cover [A] (x16).




4. Attach the speaker [A] (x11)
5. Use the tip of a small screwdriver to break out plastic covers [B] of the "TEL" and "LINE 1" jacks.

Installation




6. Attach the FCU [A] to the controller box (x4).
7. Attach the VITS [B] to the FCU and controller box (x4)
8. Detach the MBU battery jumper [C] and reattach it at the "ON" position.

Note

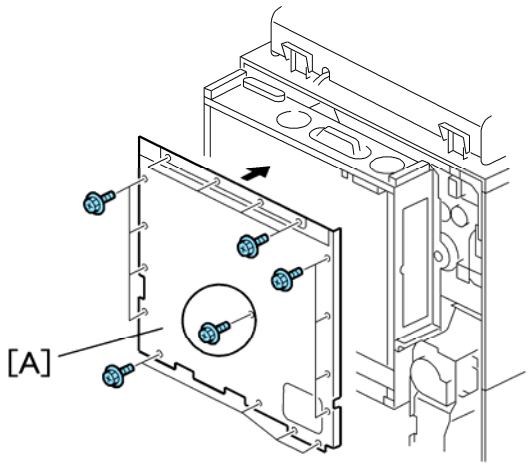
- If the MBU jumper is not set to ON, this can cause SC819 or SC820 when the main power switch is turned on. Also, when the main power switch is turned off, fax memory will be cleared.

9. Press down on the MBU to confirm that it is seated correctly.

Note

- If the MBU is not attached correctly, this will cause SC672.

10. Connect the speaker harness [D] to the FCU (x1).
11. Check the FCU connection and confirm that it is secure.

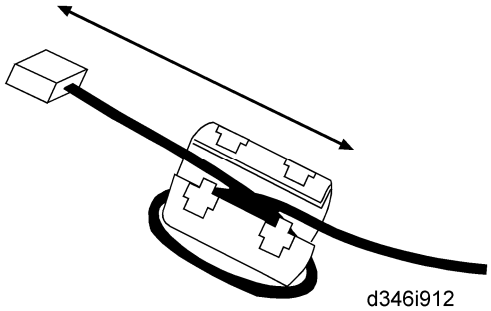



d356i106

12. Reattach:

- Controller box [A] (x16)
- Rear lower cover (x2)
- Rear upper cover (x3, Stepped x2)

1. Connect the telephone cable to the "LINE 1" jack.



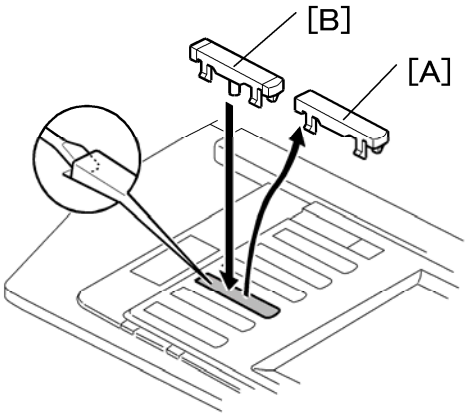
d346i912

2. Attach the ferrite core to the telephone cable.

Note

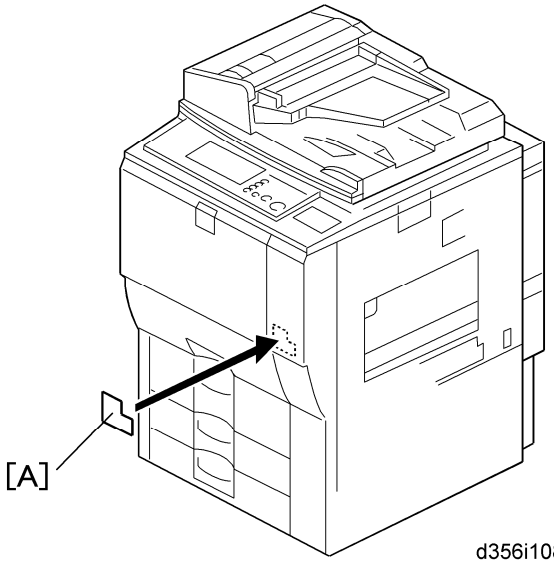
- The end of the ferrite core must be about 5 cm (2.1") from the end of the cable.

Installation




d356i107

3. Replace the key slot cover [A] (fourth from the bottom) with the fax key [B].




d356i108

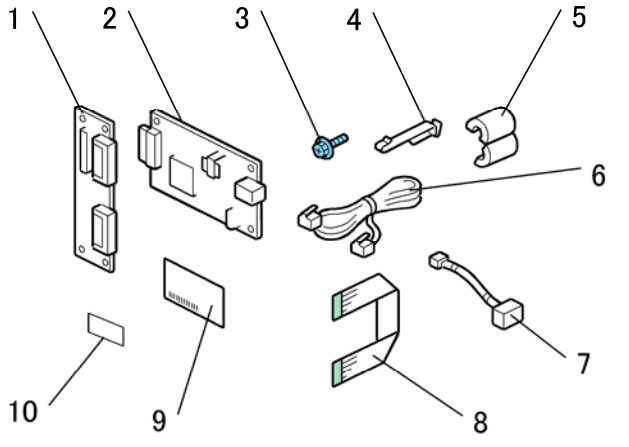
4. Attach:
   - SUPER G3 decal [A]
   - Serial number decal under machine serial number decal
   - Numeric key decal on the operation panel keypad (for AA only)
5. Attach the FCC decal on the rear cover of the copier (NA only).
6. Confirm that the machine is grounded correctly at the power source.
7. Switch on the machine and confirm that it is operating correctly.
8. Confirm that the date and time settings (User Tools) are correct.
9. Keep the EMC address decal at the customer site.

## 1.1.2 G3 INTERFACE UNIT (D357)

### *Component check*

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

| No. | Description | Q'ty |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | PCB: CCUIF | 1 |
| 2 | PCB: SG3 | 1 |
| 3 | Screws | 7 |
| 4 | Harness Clamp | 1 |
| 5 | Ferrite Core | 1 |
| 6 | Telephone Cable (NA only) | 1 |
| 7 | Harness | 1 |
| 8 | Flat Cable | 1 |
| 9 | EMC Address Decal (EU only) | 1 |
| 10 | FCC Decal (NA only) | 1 |



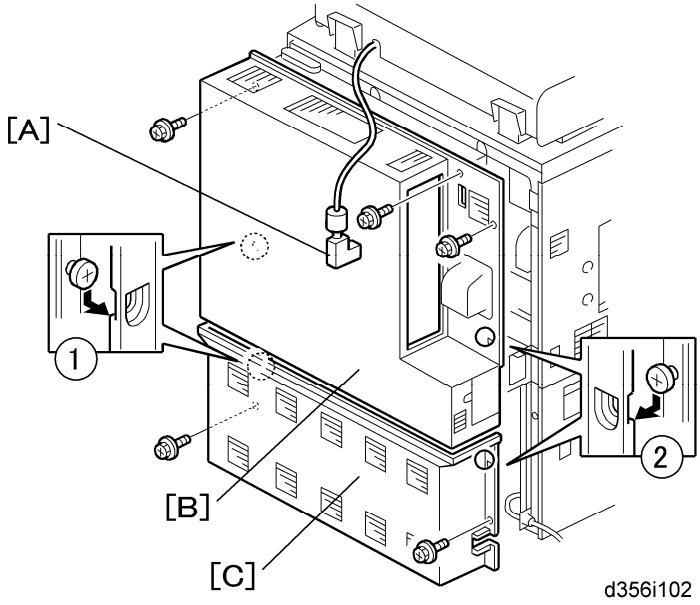

d357i101

Installation

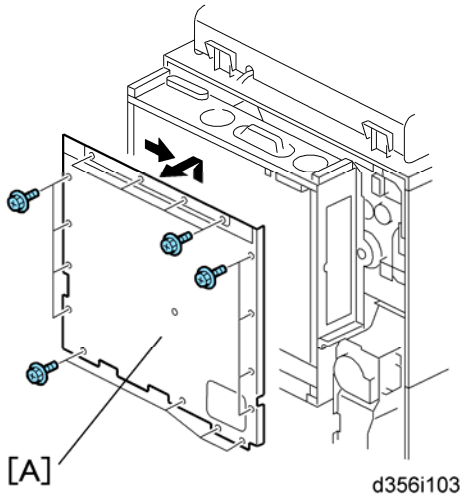
**CAUTION**

- Before installing this optional unit,
- Print out all data in the printer buffer.
- Turn off the main switch and disconnect the power cord and the network cable.

You can add two more SG3 boards to this model. Follow the procedures for adding the single SG3 board installation or double SG3 boards installation.




1. Disconnect the ARDF connector [A].
2. Remove:
   [B] Upper cover (x2, Stepped x2)
   [C] Lower Cover (x2)



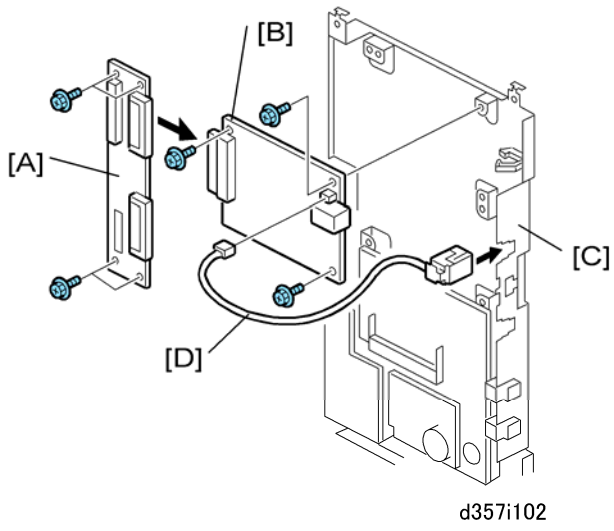

3. Remove the controller box cover [A] (x16)

Important

- Important! If the Fax Unit (D356) has already been installed, skip Steps 4, 5 and go to Step 6.

4. Disconnect the speaker harness (x1).
5. Remove the FCU and VITS (x5).

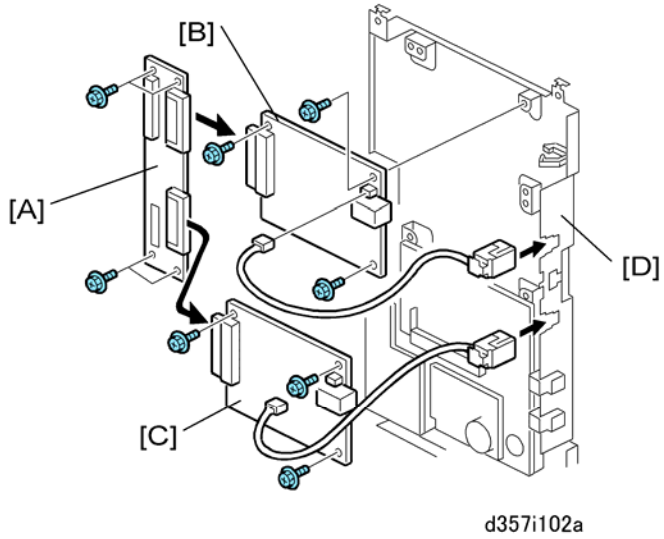
### *To install a Single G3 Board*




1. Attach the CCUIF [A] to the SG3 board [B].
2. Attach the assembled CCUIF/SG3 board to the FCU [C] (x7).
3. Connect harness [D] to the FCU [C].

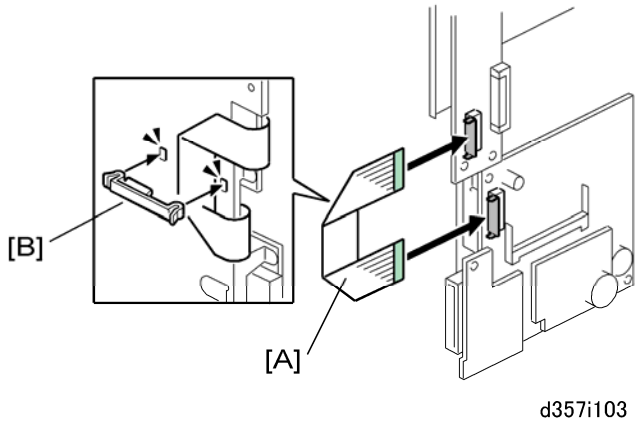
Installation

### *To install the Double SG3 Boards*

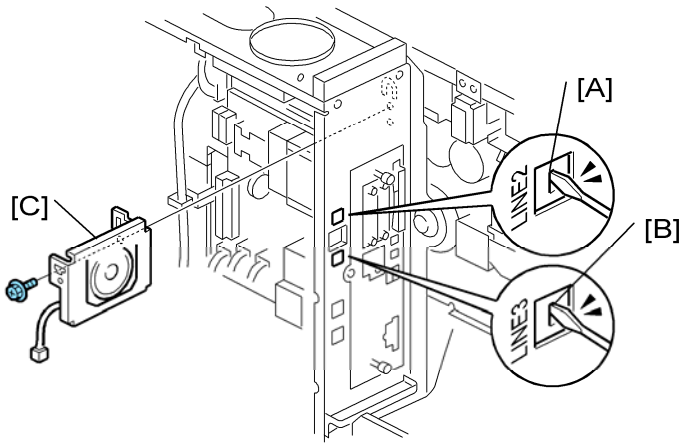



1. Connect the CCUIF [A] to the SG3 boards [B].
2. Attach the assembled CCUIF/SG3 boards to the FCU [C] (x9).

### *To complete the installation*

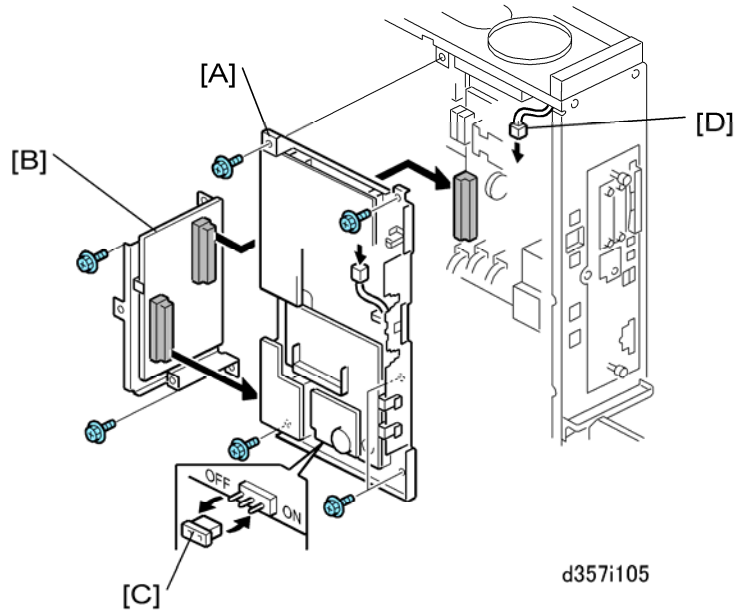



1. Connect the flat cable [A] to the CCUIF and FCU.
2. Attach the clamp [B] as shown.




d357i104

3. Use the tip of a small screwdriver to break out the "LINE2" jack cover [A] (for one SG3 board), or the "LINE2" and "LINE3" jack covers [A] and [B] (for two SG3 boards).
4. Attach the speaker [C] (☞x1)




d357i105

5. Install the FCU [A] on the controller board (☞x4).
6. Attach the VITS [B] to the FCU and controller box (☞x4).
7. Detach the MBU battery jumper [C] and reattach it at the "ON" position.

Note

- If the MBU jumper is not set to ON, this can cause SC819 or SC820 when the main power switch is turned on. Also, when the main power switch is turned off, fax memory will be cleared.

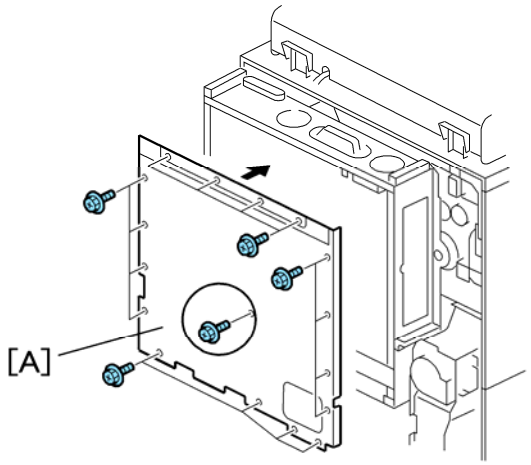
8. Press down on the MBU to confirm that it is seated correctly.

Installation

Note

- If the MBU is not attached correctly, this will cause SC672.

9. Connect the speaker harness [D] to the FCU (x1).
10. Check the FCU connection and confirm that it is secure.

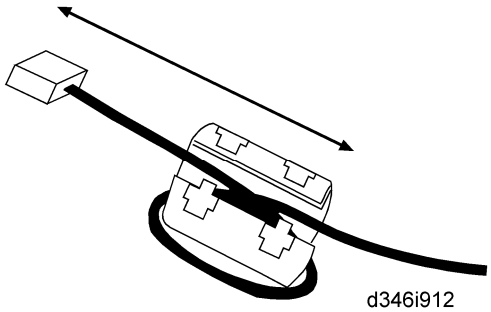



d356i106

11. Reattach:

- Controller box [A] (x16)
- Rear lower cover (x2)
- Rear upper cover (x3, Stepped x2)

1. Connect the telephone cable to the "LINE 2" or "LINE 3" jack.



d346i912

2. Attach the ferrite core to the telephone cable.

Note

- The end of the ferrite core must be about 5 cm (2.1") from the end of the cable.

3. Attach the FCC decal to the rear cover of the copier (NA only).
4. Confirm that the machine is grounded correctly at the power source.
5. Switch on the machine and confirm that it is operating correctly.
6. Confirm that the date and time settings (User Tools) are correct.
7. Enter the SP mode.

8. Do either of these settings:

   If one SG3 board is installed:

   - Do SP1104-23
   - Set Bit 1 of Communication Switch 16 to "1".

   -or-

   If two SG3 boards are installed:

   - Do SP1104-23
   - Set Bit 1 and Bit 3 of the Communication Switch 16 to "1".

9. Exit the SP mode.
10. Cycle the machine off/on.
11. Print out the system parameter list and confirm that "G3" is listed as an option.
12. Do the program settings required for PSTN-2 communication.
13. Keep the EMC address decal at the customer site (EU only).

# 2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

## 2.1 FCU

1. When you replace the FCU board, remove the MBU board from the old FCU board and install it on the new FCU board.
2. Set the correct date and time with the User Tools:
   - User Tools> System Settings> Timer Setting> Set Date/Time

   Note

   - Do not turn off the battery switch (SW1).
   - Do SP6101 to print the system parameters. Then check the settings.

# 3. TROUBLESHOOTING

## 3.1 ERROR CODES

If an error code occurs, retry the communication. If the same problem occurs, try to fix the problem as suggested below. Note that some error codes appear only in the error code display and on the service report.

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 0-00 | DIS/NSF not detected within 40 s of Start being pressed | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the NCU - FCU connectors.<br>▪ The machine at the other end may be incompatible.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>▪ Check for DIS/NSF with an oscilloscope.<br>▪ If the rx signal is weak, there may be a bad line. |
| 0-01 | DCN received unexpectedly | ▪ The other party is out of paper or has a jammed printer.<br>▪ The other party pressed Stop during communication. |
| 0-03 | Incompatible modem at the other end | ▪ The other terminal is incompatible. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 0-04 | CFR or FTT not received after modem training | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the NCU - FCU connectors.<br>▪ Try changing the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings.<br>▪ Replace the FCU or NCU.<br>▪ The other terminal may be faulty; try sending to another machine.<br>▪ If the rx signal is weak or defective, there may be a bad line.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN)<br>▪ Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)<br>▪ Dedicated Tx parameters - Section 4 |
| 0-05 | Unsuccessful after modem training at 2400 bps | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the NCU - FCU connectors.<br>▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer.<br>▪ Replace the FCU or NCU.<br>▪ Check for line problems.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ See error code 0-04. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 0-06 | The other terminal did not reply to DCS | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the FCU - NCU connectors.<br>▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>▪ The other end may be defective or incompatible; try sending to another machine.<br>▪ Check for line problems.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ See error code 0-04. |
| 0-07 | No post-message response from the other end after a page was sent | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the FCU - NCU connectors.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>▪ The other end may have jammed or run out of paper.<br>▪ The other end user may have disconnected the call.<br>▪ Check for a bad line.<br>▪ The other end may be defective; try sending to another machine. |

Error Codes

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 0-08 | The other end sent RTN or PIN after receiving a page, because there were too many errors | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the FCU - NCU connectors.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>▪ The other end may have jammed, or run out of paper or memory space.<br>▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings.<br>▪ The other end may have a defective modem/NCU/FCU; try sending to another machine.<br>▪ Check for line problems and noise.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN)<br>▪ Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)<br>▪ Dedicated Tx parameters - Section 4 |
| 0-14 | Non-standard post message response code received | ▪ Check the FCU - NCU connectors.<br>▪ Incompatible or defective remote terminal; try sending to another machine.<br>▪ Noisy line: resend.<br>▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ See error code 0-08. |
| 0-15 | The other terminal is not capable of specific functions. | ▪ The other terminal is not capable of accepting the following functions, or the other terminal's memory is full.<br>▪ Confidential rx<br>▪ Transfer function<br>▪ SEP/SUB/PWD/SID |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 0-16 | CFR or FTT not detected after modem training in confidential or transfer mode | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the FCU - NCU connectors.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings.<br>▪ The other end may have disconnected, or it may be defective; try calling another machine.<br>▪ If the rx signal level is too low, there may be a line problem.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ See error code 0-08. |
| 0-20 | Facsimile data not received within 6 s of retraining | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the FCU - NCU connectors.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>▪ Check for line problems.<br>▪ Try calling another fax machine.<br>▪ Try adjusting the reconstruction time for the first line and/or rx cable equalizer setting.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ Reconstruction time - G3 Switch 0A, bit 6<br>▪ Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 0-21 | EOL signal (end-of-line) from the other end not received within 5 s of the previous EOL signal | ▪ Check the connections between the FCU, NCU, & line.<br>▪ Check for line noise or other line problems.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>▪ The remote machine may be defective or may have disconnected.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ Maximum interval between EOLs and between ECM frames - G3 Bit Switch 0A, bit 4 |
| 0-22 | The signal from the other end was interrupted for more than the acceptable modem carrier drop time (default: 200 ms) | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the FCU - NCU connectors.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>▪ Defective remote terminal.<br>▪ Check for line noise or other line problems.<br>▪ Try adjusting the acceptable modem carrier drop time.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ Acceptable modem carrier drop time - G3 Switch 0A, bits 0 and 1 |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 0-23 | Too many errors during reception | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the FCU - NCU connectors.<br>▪ Replace the NCU or FCU.<br>▪ Defective remote terminal.<br>▪ Check for line noise or other line problems.<br>▪ Try asking the other end to adjust their tx level.<br>▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting and/or rx error criteria.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)<br>▪ Rx error criteria - Communication Switch 02, bits 0 and 1 |
| 0-30 | The other terminal did not reply to NSS(A) in AI short protocol mode | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check the FCU - NCU connectors.<br>▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings.<br>▪ The other terminal may not be compatible.<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ Dedicated tx parameters - Section 4 |
| 0-32 | The other terminal sent a DCS, which contained functions that the receiving machine cannot handle. | ▪ Check the protocol dump list.<br>▪ Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer. |
| 0-52 | Polarity changed during communication | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Retry the communication. |

Error Codes

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 0-55 | FCE does not detect the SG3-V34. | ▪ FCU firmware or board defective.<br>▪ SG3-V34 firmware or board defective. |
| 0-56 | The stored message data exceeds the capacity of the mailbox in the SG3-V34. | ▪ SG3-V34 firmware or board defective. |
| 0-70 | The communication mode specified in CM/JM was not available (V.8 calling and called terminal) | ▪ The other terminal did not have a compatible communication mode (e.g., the other terminal was a V.34 data modem and not a fax modem.)<br>▪ A polling tx file was not ready at the other terminal when polling rx was initiated from the calling terminal. |
| 0-74 | The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect ANSam after sending CI. | ▪ The calling terminal could not detect ANSam due to noise, etc.<br>▪ ANSam was too short to detect.<br>▪ Check the line connection and condition.<br>▪ Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax. |
| 0-75 | The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CM in response to ANSam (ANSam timeout). | ▪ The terminal could not detect ANSam.<br>▪ Check the line connection and condition.<br>▪ Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax. |
| 0-76 | The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a JM in response to a CM (CM timeout). | ▪ The called terminal could not detect a CM due to noise, etc.<br>▪ Check the line connection and condition.<br>▪ Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax. |

<table>
<tr><th>Code</th><th>Meaning</th><th>Suggested Cause/Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>0-77</td><td>The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CJ in response to JM<br>(JM timeout).</td><td>▪ The calling terminal could not detect a JM due to noise, etc.<br>▪ A network that has narrow bandwidth cannot pass JM to the other end.<br>▪ Check the line connection and condition.<br>▪ Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0-79</td><td>The called terminal detected CI while waiting for a V.21 signal.</td><td>▪ Check for line noise or other line problems.<br>▪ If this error occurs, the called terminal falls back to T.30 mode.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0-80</td><td>The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34 phase 2 – line probing.</td><td rowspan="4">The guard timer expired while starting these phases. Serious noise, narrow bandwidth, or low signal level can cause these errors.<br>If these errors happen at the transmitting terminal:<br>▪ Try making a call at a later time.<br>▪ Try using V.17 or a slower modem using dedicated tx parameters.<br>▪ Try increasing the tx level.<br>▪ Try adjusting the tx cable equalizer setting.<br>If these errors happen at the receiving terminal:<br>▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting.<br>▪ Try increasing the tx level.<br>▪ Try using V.17 or a slower modem if the same error is frequent when receiving from multiple senders.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0-81</td><td>The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34 phase 3 – equalizer training.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0-82</td><td>The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0-83</td><td>The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 control channel restart sequence.</td></tr>
</table>

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 0-84 | The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up. | ▪ The signal did not stop within 10 s.<br>▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.<br>▪ If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU. |
| 0-85 | The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 control channel restart. | ▪ The signal did not stop within 10 s.<br>▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.<br>▪ If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU. |
| 0-86 | The line was disconnected because the other terminal requested a data rate using MPh that was not available in the currently selected symbol rate. | ▪ The other terminal was incompatible.<br>▪ Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer. |
| 0-87 | The control channel started after an unsuccessful primary channel. | ▪ The receiving terminal restarted the control channel because data reception in the primary channel was not successful.<br>▪ This does not result in an error communication. |
| 0-88 | The line was disconnected because PPR was transmitted/received 9 (default) times within the same ECM frame. | ▪ Try using a lower data rate at the start.<br>▪ Try adjusting the cable equalizer setting. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 2-11 | Only one V.21 connection flag was received | ▪ Replace the FCU. |
| 2-12 | Modem clock irregularity | ▪ Replace the FCU. |
| 2-13 | Modem initialization error | ▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.<br>▪ Update the modem ROM.<br>▪ Replace the FCU. |
| 2-23 | JBIG compression or reconstruction error | ▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.<br>▪ Replace the EXFUNC board if the error is frequent. |
| 2-24 | JBIG ASIC error | ▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.<br>▪ Replace the EXFUNC board if the error is frequent. |
| 2-25 | JBIG data reconstruction error (BIH error) | ▪ JBIG data error<br>▪ Check the sender's JBIG function.<br>▪ Update the MBU ROM. |
| 2-26 | JBIG data reconstruction error (Float marker error) | |
| 2-27 | JBIG data reconstruction error (End marker error) | |
| 2-28 | JBIG data reconstruction error (Timeout) | |
| 2-29 | JBIG trailing edge maker error | ▪ FCU defective<br>▪ Check the destination device. |
| 2-50 | The machine resets itself for a fatal FCU system error | ▪ If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU. |

Error Codes

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 2-51 | The machine resets itself because of a fatal communication error | ▪ If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU. |
| 2-53 | Snd msg() in the manual task is an error because the mailbox for the operation task is full. | ▪ The user did the same operation many times, and this gave too much load to the machine. |
| 4-01 | Line current was cut | ▪ Check the line connector.<br>▪ Check the connection between FCU and NCU.<br>▪ Check for line problems.<br>▪ Replace the FCU or the NCU. |
| 4-10 | Communication failed because of an ID Code mismatch (Closed Network) or Tel. No./CSI mismatch (Protection against Wrong Connections) | ▪ Get the ID Codes the same and/or the CSIs programmed correctly, then resend.<br>▪ The machine at the other end may be defective. |
| 5-10 | DCR timer expired | ▪ Replace the FCU. |
| 5-20 | Storage impossible because of a lack of memory | ▪ Temporary memory shortage.<br>▪ Test the SAF memory.<br>▪ Replace the FCU or optional EXMEM board |
| 5-21 | Memory overflow | |
| 5-23 | Print data error when printing a substitute rx or confidential rx message | ▪ Test the SAF memory.<br>▪ Ask the other end to resend the message.<br>▪ Replace the FCU or optional EXMEM board. |
| 5-25 | SAF file access error | ▪ Replace the FCU or EXMEM board. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 6-00 | G3 ECM - T1 time out during reception of facsimile data | ▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer.<br>▪ Replace the FCU or NCU. |
| 6-01 | G3 ECM - no V.21 signal was received | |
| 6-02 | G3 ECM - EOR was received | |
| 6-04 | G3 ECM - RTC not detected | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check connections from the NCU to the FCU.<br>▪ Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal.<br>▪ Replace the FCU or NCU. |
| 6-05 | G3 ECM - facsimile data frame not received within 18 s of CFR, but there was no line fail | ▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Check connections from the NCU to the FCU.<br>▪ Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal.<br>▪ Replace the FCU or NCU.<br>▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer<br>**Cross reference**<br>▪ Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) |
| 6-06 | G3 ECM - coding/decoding error | ▪ Defective FCU.<br>▪ The other terminal may be defective. |
| 6-08 | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL | ▪ The other end pressed Stop during communication.<br>▪ The other terminal may be defective. |

Error Codes

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 6-09 | G3 ECM - ERR received | ▪ Check for a noisy line.<br>▪ Adjust the tx levels of the communicating machines.<br>▪ See code 6-05. |
| 6-10 | G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all communication attempts at 2400 bps | ▪ Check for line noise.<br>▪ Adjust the tx level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated tx parameter for that address).<br>▪ Check the line connection.<br>▪ Defective remote terminal. |
| 6-21 | V.21 flag detected during high speed modem communication | ▪ The other terminal may be defective or incompatible. |
| 6-22 | The machine resets the sequence because of an abnormal handshake in the V.34 control channel | ▪ Check for line noise.<br>▪ If the same error occurs frequently, replace the FCU.<br>▪ Defective remote terminal. |
| 6-99 | V.21 signal not stopped within 6 s | ▪ Replace the FCU. |
| 13-17 | SIP user name registration error | ▪ Double registration of the SIP user name.<br>▪ Capacity for user-name registration in the SIP server is not sufficient. |
| 13-18 | SIP server access error | ▪ Incorrect initial setting for the SIP server.<br>▪ Defective SIP server. |
| 14-00 | SMTP Send Error | Error occurred during sending to the SMTP server. Occurs for any error other than 14-01 to 16. For example, the mail address of the system administrator is not registered. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 14-01 | SMTP Connection Failed | Failed to connect to the SMTP server (timeout) because the server could not be found.<br>▪ The PC is not ready to transfer files.<br>▪ SMTP server not functioning correctly.<br>▪ The DNS IP address is not registered.<br>▪ Network not operating correctly.<br>▪ Destination folder selection not correct. |
| 14-02 | No Service by SMTP Service (421) | SMTP server operating incorrectly, or the destination for direct SMTP sending is not correct.<br>▪ Contact the system administrator and check that the SMTP server has the correct settings and operates correctly.<br>▪ Contact the system administrator for direct SMTP sending and check the sending destination. |
| 14-03 | Access to SMTP Server Denied (450) | Failed to access the SMTP server because the access is denied.<br>▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem with the SMTP server and to check that the SMTP server settings are correct.<br>▪ Folder send destination is incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine that the SMTP server settings and path to the server are correct.<br>▪ Device settings incorrect. Confirm that the user name and password settings are correct.<br>▪ Direct SMTP destination incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem at the destination at that the settings at the destination are correct. |

Error Codes

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 14-04 | Access to SMTP Server Denied (550) | ▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly<br>▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly |
| 14-05 | SMTP Server HDD Full (452) | Failed to access the SMTP server because the HDD on the server is full.<br>▪ Insufficient free space on the HDD of the SMTP server. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the SMTP server HDD.<br>▪ Insufficient free space on the HDD where the destination folder is located. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the HDD where the target folder is located.<br>▪ Insufficient free space on the HDD at the target destination for SMTP direct sending. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the target HDD. |
| 14-06 | User Not Found on SMTP Server (551) | The designated user does not exist.<br>▪ The designated user does not exist on the SMTP server.<br>▪ The designated address is not for use with direct SMTP sending. |
| 14-07 | Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (4XX) | Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed.<br>▪ PC not operating correctly.<br>▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly<br>▪ Network not operating correctly.<br>▪ Destination folder setting incorrect.<br>▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 14-08 | Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (5XX) | Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed.<br>▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly<br>▪ Destination folder setting incorrect.<br>▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly.<br>▪ Software application error. |
| 14-09 | Authorization Failed for Sending to SMTP Server | ▪ POP-Before-SMTP or SMTP authorization failed.<br>▪ Incorrect setting for file transfer |
| 14-10 | Addresses Exceeded | Number of broadcast addresses exceeded the limit for the SMTP server. |
| 14-11 | Buffer Full | The send buffer is full so the transmission could not be completed. Buffer is full due to using Scan-to-Email while the buffer is being used send mail at the same time. |
| 14-12 | Data Size Too Large | Transmission was cancelled because the detected size of the file was too large. |
| 14-13 | Send Cancelled | Processing is interrupted because the user pressed Stop. |
| ⇒ 14-21 | SMIME Sending Error | Make sure the user certificate or device certificate is registered correctly. |
| 14-30 | MCS File Creation Failed | Failed to create the MCS file because:<br>▪ The number of files created with other applications on the Document Server has exceeded the limit.<br>▪ HDD is full or not operating correctly.<br>▪ Software error. |

Error Codes

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 14-31 | UFS File Creation Failed | UFS file could not be created:<br>▪ Not enough space in UFS area to handle both Scan-to-Email and IFAX transmission.<br>▪ HDD full or not operating correctly.<br>▪ Software error. |
| 14-32 | Cancelled the Mail Due to Error Detected by NFAX | Error detected with NFAX and send was cancelled due to a software error. |
| 14-33 | No Mail Address For the Machine | Neither the mail address of the machine nor the mail address of the network administrator is registered. |
| 14-34 | Address designated in the domain for SMTP sending does not exist | Operational error in normal mail sending or direct SMTP sending.<br>▪ Check the address selected in the address book for SMTP sending.<br>▪ Check the domain selection. |
| 14-50 | Mail Job Task Error | Due to an FCU mail job task error, the send was cancelled:<br>▪ Address book was being edited during creation of the notification mail.<br>▪ Software error. |
| 14-51 | UCS Destination Download Error | Not even one return notification can be downloaded:<br>▪ The address book was being edited.<br>▪ The number for the specified destination does not exist (it was deleted or edited after the job was created). |
| 14-60 | Send Cancel Failed | The cancel operation by the user failed to cancel the send operation. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 14-61 | Notification Mail Send Failed for All Destinations | All addresses for return notification mail failed. |
| 15-01 | POP3/IMAP4 Server Not Registered | At startup, the system detected that the IP address of the POP3/IMAP4 server has not been registered in the machine. |
| 15-02 | POP3/IMAP4 Mail Account Information Not Registered | The POP3/IMAP4 mail account has not been registered. |
| 15-03 | Mail Address Not Registered | The mail address has not been registered. |
| 15-10 | DCS Mail Receive Error | Error other than 15-11 to 15-18. |
| 15-11 | Connection Error | The DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server could not be found:<br>▪ The IP address for DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server is not stored in the machine.<br>▪ The DNS IP address is not registered.<br>▪ Network not operating correctly. |
| 15-12 | Authorization Error | POP3/IMAP4 send authorization failed:<br>▪ Incorrect IFAX user name or password.<br>▪ Access was attempted by another device, such as the PC.<br>▪ POP3/IMAP4 settings incorrect. |
| 15-13 | Receive Buffer Full | Occurs only during manual reception. Transmission cannot be received due to insufficient buffer space. The buffer is being used for mail send or Scan-to-Email. |
| 15-14 | Mail Header Format Error | The mail header is not standard format. For example, the Date line description is incorrect. |

Error Codes

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 15-15 | Mail Divide Error | The e-mail is not in standard format. There is no boundary between parts of the e-mail, including the header. |
| 15-16 | Mail Size Receive Error | The mail cannot be received because it is too large. |
| 15-17 | Receive Timeout | May occur during manual receiving only because the network is not operating correctly. |
| 15-18 | Incomplete Mail Received | Only one portion of the mail was received. |
| 15-31 | Final Destination for Transfer Request Reception Format Error | The format of the final destination for the transfer request was incorrect. |
| 15-39 | Send/Delivery Destination Error | The transmission cannot be delivered to the final destination:<br>▪ Destination file format is incorrect.<br>▪ Could not create the destination for the file transmission. |
| 15-41 | SMTP Receive Error | Reception rejected because the transaction exceeded the limit for the “Auth. E-mail RX” setting. |
| 15-42 | Off Ramp Gateway Error | The delivery destination address was specified with Off Ramp Gateway OFF. |
| 15-43 | Address Format Error | Format error in the address of the Off Ramp Gateway. |
| 15-44 | Addresses Over | The number of addresses for the Off Ramp Gateway exceeded the limit of 30. |
| 15-61 | Attachment File Format Error | The attached file is not TIFF format. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 15-62 | TIFF File Compatibility Error | Could not receive transmission due to:<br>▪ Resolution error<br>▪ Image of resolution greater than 200 dpi without extended memory.<br>▪ Resolution is not supported.<br>▪ Page size error<br>▪ The page size was larger than A3.<br>▪ Compression error<br>▪ File was compressed with other than MH, MR, or MMR. |
| 15-63 | TIFF Parameter Error | The TIFF file sent as the attachment could not be received because the TIFF header is incorrect:<br>▪ The TIFF file attachment is a type not supported.<br>▪ The TIFF file attachment is corrupted.<br>▪ Software error. |
| 15-64 | TIFF Decompression Error | The file received as an attachment caused the TIFF decompression error:<br>▪ The TIFF format of the attachment is corrupted.<br>▪ Software error. |
| 15-71 | Not Binary Image Data | The file could not be received because the attachment was not binary image data. |
| 15-73 | MDN Status Error | Could not find the Disposition line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware. |
| 15-74 | MSDN Message ID Error | Could not find the Original Message ID line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware. |

Error Codes

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 15-80 | Mail Job Task Read Error | Could not receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request for notification of reception). |
| 15-81 | Repeated Destination Registration Error | Could not repeat receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request for notification of reception). |
| 15-91 | Send Registration Error | Could not receive the file for transfer to the final destination:<br>▪ The format of the final destination or the transfer destination is incorrect.<br>▪ Destinations are full so the final and transfer destinations could not be created. |
| 15-92 | Memory Overflow | Transmission could not be received because memory overflowed during the transaction. |
| 15-93 | Memory Access Error | Transaction could not complete due to a malfunction of SAF memory. |
| 15-94 | Incorrect ID Code | The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer request, because the ID code in the incoming e-mail did not match the ID code registered in the machine. |
| 15-95 | Transfer Station Function | The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer because the transfer function was unavailable. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| 22-00 | Original length exceeded the maximum scan length | ▪ Divide the original into more than one page.<br>▪ Check the resolution used for scanning. Lower the scan resolution if possible.<br>▪ Add optional page memory. |
| 22-01 | Memory overflow while receiving | ▪ Wait for the files in the queue to be sent.<br>▪ Delete unnecessary files from memory.<br>▪ Transfer the substitute reception files to another fax machine, if the machine's printer is busy or out of order.<br>▪ Add an optional SAF memory card or hard disk. |
| 22-02 | Tx or rx job stalled due to line disconnection at the other end | ▪ The job started normally but did not finish normally; data may or may not have been received fully.<br>▪ Restart the machine. |
| 22-04 | The machine cannot store received data in the SAF | ▪ Update the ROM<br>▪ Replace the FCU. |
| 22-05 | No G3 parameter confirmation answer | ▪ Defective FCU board or firmware. |
| 23-00 | Data read timeout during construction | ▪ Restart the machine.<br>▪ Replace the FCU |
| 25-00 | The machine software resets itself after a fatal transmission error occurred | ▪ Update the ROM<br>▪ Replace the FCU. |

| Code | Meaning | Suggested Cause/Action |
|---|---|---|
| ⇒ 31-21 | LAN Fax Error | • It was cancelled received LAN Fax images during store the image to SAF of FCU.<br>• The LAN Fax transmission of a message was cancelled by the LAN Fax driver. |
| F0-xx | V.34 modem error | ▪ Replace the FCU. |
| F6-xx | SG3-V34 modem error | ▪ Update the SG3-V34 modem ROM.<br>▪ Replace the SG3-V34 board.<br>▪ Check for line noise or other line problems.<br>▪ Try communicating another V.8/V.34 fax. |

## 3.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING

Use the following procedures to determine whether the machine or another part of the network is causing the problem.

| Communication Route | Item | Action | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| General LAN | 1. Connection with the LAN | ▪ Check that the LAN cable is connected to the machine.<br>▪ Check that the LEDs on the hub are lit. | |
| | 2. LAN activity | ▪ Check that other devices connected to the LAN can communicate through the LAN. | |
| Between IFAX and PC | 1. Network settings on the PC | ▪ Check the network settings on the PC. | ▪ Is the IP address registered in the TCP/IP properties in the network setup correct? Check the IP address with the administrator of the network. |
| | 2. Check that PC can connect with the machine | ▪ Use the “ping” command on the PC to contact the machine. | ▪ At the MS-DOS prompt, type ping then the IP address of the machine, then press Enter. |

IFAX Troubleshooting

| Communication Route | Item | Action | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 3. LAN settings in the machine | ▪ Check the LAN parameters<br>▪ Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs. | ▪ Use the “Network” function in the User Tools.<br>▪ If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator. |
| Between machine and e-mail server | 1. LAN settings in the machine | ▪ Check the LAN parameters<br>▪ Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs. | ▪ Use the “Network” function in the User Tools.<br>▪ If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator. |
| | 2. E-mail account on the server | ▪ Make sure that the machine can log into the e-mail server.<br>▪ Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine. | ▪ Ask the administrator to check. |
| | 3. E-mail server | ▪ Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail. | ▪ Ask the administrator to check.<br>▪ Send a test e-mail with the machine’s own number as the destination. The |

| Communication Route | Item | Action | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully. |
| Between e-mail server and internet | 1. E-mail account on the Server | ▪ Make sure that the PC can log into the e-mail server.<br>▪ Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine. | ▪ Ask the administrator to check. |
| | 2. E-mail server | ▪ Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail. | ▪ Ask the administrator to check.<br>▪ Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number as the destination. The machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully. |
| | 3. Destination e-mail address | ▪ Make sure that the e-mail address is actually used. | |

IFAX Troubleshooting

| Communication Route | Item | Action | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ▪ Check that the e-mail address contains no incorrect characters such as spaces. | |
| | 4. Router settings | ▪ Use the “ping” command to contact the router.<br>▪ Check that other devices connected to the router can sent data over the router. | ▪ Ask the administrator of the server to check. |
| | 5. Error message by e-mail from the network of the destination. | ▪ Check whether e-mail can be sent to another address on the same network, using the application e-mail software.<br>▪ Check the error e-mail message. | ▪ Inform the administrator of the LAN. |

# 3.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING

## 3.3.1 IP-FAX TRANSMISSION

### *Cannot send by IP Address/Host Name*

| Check Point | | Action |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | LAN cable connected? | Check the LAN cable connection. |
| 2 | Specified IP address/host name correct? | Check the IP address/host name. |
| 3 | Firewall/NAT is installed? | Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax) |
| 4 | Transmission sent manually? | Manual sending not supported. |
| 5 | IP address of local machine registered? | Register the IP address. |
| 6 | Remote terminal port number setting other than 1720? | Send by specifying the port number. |
| 7 | Specified port number correct? | Confirm the port number of the remote fax. |
| 8 | DNS server registered when host name specified? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 9 | Remote fax a T.38 terminal? | Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal. |
| 10 | Remote fax switched off or busy? | Check that the remote fax is switched on. |
| 11 | Network bandwidth too narrow? | Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth. |
| | | Raise the delay level.<br>IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3 |

| Check Point | | Action |
|---|---|---|
| | | IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1. |
| 12 | Remote fax cancelled transmission? | Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission. |

### *Cannot send via VoIP Gateway*

| Check Point | | Action |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | LAN cable connected? | Check the LAN cable connection. |
| 2 | VoIP Gateway T.38 standard? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 3 | VoIP Gateway installed correctly? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 4 | VoIP Gateway power switched on? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 5 | Is the IP address/host name of the specified Gateway correct? | Check the IP address/host name. |
| 6 | Number of the specified fax correct? | Check the remote fax number. |
| 7 | Firewall/NAT is installed? | Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax) |
| 8 | Transmission sent manually? | Manual sending not supported. |
| 9 | IP address of local fax registered? | Register the IP address. |
| 10 | DNS registered when host name specified? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 11 | Remote fax a G3 fax? | Check that the remote fax is a G3 fax. |
| 12 | G3 fax is connected to VoIP gateway? | Check that G3 fax is connected. |
| 13 | Remote G3 fax turned on? | Check that G3 fax is switched on. |
| 14 | Network bandwidth too narrow? | Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth. |
| | | Raise the network delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3 |
| | | IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1. |

## *Cannot send by Alias Fax number.*

| Check Point | | Action |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | LAN cable connected? | Check the LAN cable connection. |
| 2 | Number of specified Alias fax correct? | Confirm the Alias of the remote fax.<br>Error Code: 13-14 |
| 3 | Firewall/NAT installed? | Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax) |
| 4 | Transmission sent manually? | Manual sending not supported. |
| 5 | Gatekeeper installed correctly? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 6 | Gatekeeper power switched on? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 7 | IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct? | Check the IP address/host name. |
| 8 | DNS server registered when Gatekeeper host name specified? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 9 | Enable H.323 SW is set to on? | Check the settings.<br>See User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0 |
| 10 | IP address of local fax registered? | Register the IP address of the local fax. |
| 11 | Alias number of local fax registered? | Register the Alias number of the local fax. |
| 12 | Remote fax registered in Gatekeeper? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 13 | Remote fax a T.38 terminal? | Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal. |
| 14 | Remote fax switched off or busy? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 15 | Network bandwidth too narrow? | Request the system administrator to |

| Check Point | | Action |
|---|---|---|
| | | increase the bandwidth. |
| | | Raise the delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3 |
| | | Lower the modem transmission baud rate. IPFAX SW 05 |
| 16 | Remote fax cancelled transmission? | Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission. |

## 3.3.2 IP-FAX RECEPTION

### *Cannot receive by IP Address/Host name*

| Check Point | | Action |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | LAN cable connected? | Check the LAN cable connection. |
| 2 | Firewall/NAT is installed? | Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax) |
| 3 | IP address of local fax registered? | Register the IP address. |
| 4 | Port number specified at remote sender fax (if required)? | Request the sender to specify the port number. |
| 5 | Specified port number correct (if required)? | Request the sender to check the port number. |
| 6 | DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side? | Contact the network administrator.<br>**Note:** The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model. |
| 7 | Network bandwidth too narrow? | Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth. |
| | | Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side. IPFAX SW06 |
| 8 | Remote fax cancelled transmission? | Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission. |

### *Cannot receive by VoIP Gateway.*

| | Check Point | Action |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | LAN cable connected? | Check the LAN cable connection. |
| 2 | Firewall/NAT is installed? | Cannot breach the firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax) |
| 3 | VoIP Gateway installed correctly? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 4 | VoIP Gateway power switched on? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 5 | IP address/host name of specified VoIP Gateway correct on sender's side? | Request the remote fax to check the IP address/host name. |
| 6 | DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side? | Contact the network administrator. |
| 7 | Network bandwidth too narrow? | Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth. |
| 8 | G3 fax connected? | Check that G3 fax is connected. |
| 9 | G3 fax power switched on? | Check that G3 fax is switched on. |

## *Cannot receive by Alias Fax number.*

| Check Point | | Action |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | LAN cable connected? | Check the LAN cable connection. |
| 2 | Firewall/NAT is installed? | Cannot the breach firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax) |
| 3 | Gatekeeper installed correctly? | Contact the network administrator.<br>**Note:** The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model. |
| 4 | Power to Gatekeeper switched on? | Contact the network administrator.<br>**Note:** The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model. |
| 5 | IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct on the sender's side? | Request the sender to check the IP address/host name.<br>**Note:** The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model. |
| 6 | DNS server registered when Gatekeeper host name specified on sender's side? | Contact the network administrator.<br>**Note:** The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model. |
| 7 | Enable H.323 SW is set to on? | Request the sender to check the settings.<br>User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0<br>**Note:** Only if the remote sender fax is a Ricoh fax. |
| 8 | Local fax IP address registered? | Register the IP address. |
| 9 | Local fax Alias number registered? | Register the Alias number. |

| Check Point | | Action |
|---|---|---|
| 10 | Network bandwidth too narrow? | Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth. |
| | | Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side.<br>IPFAX SW06 |
| 11 | Remote fax cancelled transmission? | Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission. |
| 12 | Local fax registered in Gatekeeper? | Contact the network administrator.<br>**Note:** The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model. |

# 4. SERVICE TABLE

## 4.1 CAUTIONS

**CAUTION**

- Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

Note

- The main power LED (☀) lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

# 4.2 SERVICE PROGRAM TABLES

## 4.2.1 SP1-XXX (BIT SWITCHES)

| 1 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| 101 | System Switch | | |
| | 001 – 032 | 00 – 1F | Changes the bit switches for system settings for the fax option.<br>See section 4.2 Bit Switches |
| 102 | Ifax Switch | | |
| | 001 – 016 | 00 – 0F | Changes the bit switches for internet fax settings for the fax option.<br>See section 4.2 Bit Switches |
| 103 | Printer Switch | | |
| | 001 – 016 | 00 – 0F | Changes the bit switches for printer settings for the fax option.<br>See section 4.2 Bit Switches |
| 104 | Communication Switch | | |
| | 001 – 032 | 00 – 1F | Changes the bit switches for communication settings for the fax option.<br>See section 4.2 Bit Switches |
| 105 | G3-1 Switch | | |
| | 001 – 016 | 00 – 0F | Changes the bit switches for the protocol settings of the standard G3 board.<br>See section 4.2 Bit Switches |

| 1 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| 106 | G3-2 Switch | | |
| | 001 – 016 | 00 – 0F | Changes the bit switches for the protocol settings of the optional G3 board.<br>See section 4.2 Bit Switches |
| 107 | G3-3 Switch | | |
| | 001 – 016 | 00 – 0F | Changes the bit switches for the protocol settings of the optional G3 board.<br>See section 4.2 Bit Switches |
| 108 | G4 Internal Switch | | |
| | 001 – 032 | 00 – 1F | Not used (Do not change the bit switches) |
| 109 | G4 Parameter Switch | | |
| | 001 – 016 | 00 – 0F | Not used (Do not change the bit switches) |
| 111 | IP fax Switch | | |
| | 001 – 016 | 00 – 0F | Changes the bit switches for optional IP fax parameters.<br>See section 4.2 Bit Switches |

## 4.2.2 SP2-XXX (RAM DATA)

| 2 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| 101 | RAM Read/Write | | |
| | 001 | | Changes RAM data for the fax board directly. See section 4.5 Service RAM Addresses. |
| 102 | Memory Dump | | |
| | 001 | G3-1 Memory Dump | Prints out RAM data for the fax board. See section 4.5 Service RAM Addresses. |
| | 002 | G3-2 Memory Dump | Prints out RAM data for the optional SG3 board. |
| | 003 | G3-3 Memory Dump | Prints out RAM data for the optional SG3 board. |
| | 004 | G4 Memory Dump | Prints out RAM data for the SiG4 board. |
| 103 | G3-1 NCU Parameters | | |
| | 001 – 023 | CC, 01 – 22 | NCU parameter settings for the standard G3 board. See section 4.3 NCU Parameters. |
| 104 | G3-2 NCU Parameters | | |
| | 001 – 023 | CC, 01 – 22 | NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. See section 4.3 NCU Parameters. |
| 105 | G3-3 NCU Parameters | | |
| | 001 – 023 | CC, 01 – 22 | NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. See section 4.3 NCU Parameters. |

## 4.2.3 SP3-XXX (TEL LINE SETTINGS)

| 3 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| 101 | Service Station | | |
| | 001 | Fax Number | Enter the fax number of the service station. |
| | 002 | Select Line | Select the line type. |
| 102 | Serial Number | | |
| | 000 | | Enter the fax unit's serial number. |
| 103 | PSTN-1 Port Settings | | |
| | 001 | Select Line | Select the line type setting for the G3-1 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX(GND)" or "PABX(FLASH)". |
| | 002 | PSTN Access Number | Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-1 line. |
| | 003 | Memory Lock Disabled | If the customer does not want to receive transmissions using Memory Lock on this line, turn this SP on. |
| 104 | PSTN-2 Port Settings | | |
| | 001 | Select Line | Select the line setting for the G3-2 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX(GND)" or "PABX(FLASH)". |
| | 002 | PSTN Access Number | Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-2 line. |
| | 003 | Memory Lock Disabled | If the customer does not want to receive transmissions using Memory Lock on this line, change this SP to on. |

| 3 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 004 | Transmission Disabled | If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax messages on the G3-2 line. |
| 105 | PSTN-3 Port Settings | | |
| | 001 | Select Line | Select the line setting for the G3-3 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select “PABX”, “PABX(GND)” or “PABX(FLASH)”. |
| | 002 | PSTN Access Number | Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-3 line. |
| | 003 | Memory Lock Disabled | If the customer does not want to receive transmissions using Memory Lock on this line, change this SP to on. |
| | 004 | Transmission Disabled | If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax messages on the G3-3 line. |
| 106 | ISDN Port Settings | | |
| | 001 | Select Line | Not used (Do not change the bit switches) |
| | 002 | PSTN Access Number | |
| | 003 | Memory Lock Disabled | |
| 106 | 004 | Transmission Disabled | |
| 107 | IPFAX Port Settings | | |
| | 001 | H323 Port | |
| | 002 | SIP Port | |
| | 003 | RAS Port | |

| 3 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 004 | Gatekeeper port | |
| | 005 | T.38 Port | |
| | 006 | SIP Server Port | |
| | 007 | IPFAX Protocol Priority | Select "H323" or "SIP". |
| 201 | FAX SW | | |
| | 001 – 032 | 00 – 1F | |

## 4.2.4 SP4-XXX (ROM VERSIONS)

| 4 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| 101 | 001 | FCU ROM Version | Displays the FCU ROM version. |
| 102 | 001 | Error Codes | Displays the latest 64 fax error codes. |
| 103 | 001 | G3-1 ROM Version | Displays the G3-1 modem version. |
| 104 | 001 | G3-2 ROM Version | Displays the G3-2 modem version. |
| 105 | 001 | G3-3 ROM Version | Displays the G3-3 modem version. |
| 106 | 001 | G4 ROM Version | Not used (Do not change the bit switches) |
| 107 | 001 | Charge ROM Version | Not used (Do not change the bit switches) |

## 4.2.5 SP5-XXX (INITIALIZING)

| 5 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| 101 | Initialize SRAM | | |
| | 000 | | Initializes the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM, files in the SAF memory, and clock. |
| 102 | Erase All Files | | |
| | 000 | | Erases all files stored in the SAF memory. |
| 103 | Reset Bit Switches | | |
| | 000 | | Resets the bit switches and user parameters. |
| 104 | Factory setting | | |
| | 000 | | Resets the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM and files in the SAF memory. |
| 105 | Initialize All Bit Switches | | |
| | 000 | | Initializes all the current bit switch settings. |
| 106 | Initialize Security Bit Switches | | |
| | 000 | | Initializes only the security bit switches. If you select automatic output/display for the user parameter switches, the security settings are initialized. |

## 4.2.6 SP6-XXX (REPORTS)

| 6 | Mode No. | | Function | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 101 | System Parameter List | | | |
| | 000 | | Touch the “ON” button to print the system parameter list. | |
| 102 | Service Monitor Report | | | |
| | 000 | | Touch the “ON” button to print the service monitor report. | |
| 103 | G3 Protocol Dump List | | | |
| | 001 | G3 All Communications | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for all G3 lines. | |
| | 002 | G3-1 (All Communications) | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-1 line. | |
| 103 | 003 | G3-1 (1 Communication) | Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-1 line. | |
| | 004 | G3-2 (All Communications) | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-2 line. | |
| | 005 | G3-2 (1 Communication) | Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-2 line. | |
| | 006 | G3-3 (All Communications) | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-3 line. | |
| | 007 | G3-3 (1 Communication) | Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-3 line. | |

| 6 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| 104 | G4 Protocol Dump List | | |
| | 001 | Dch + Bch 1 | Not used (Do not change the bit switches) |
| | 002 | Dch | |
| | 003 | Bch 1 Link Layer | |
| | 004 | Dch Link Layer | |
| | 005 | Dch +Bch 2 | |
| | 006 | Bch 2 Link Layer | |
| 105 | All Files print out | | |
| | 000 | | Prints out all the user files in the SAF memory, including confidential messages. **Note:** Do not use this function, unless the customer is having trouble printing confidential messages or recovering files stored using the memory lock feature. |
| 106 | Journal Print out | | |
| | 001 | All Journals | The machine prints all the communication records on the report. |
| | 002 | Specified Date | The machine prints all communication records after the specified date. |
| 107 | Log List Print out | | |
| | 001 | All log files | These log print out functions are for designer use only. |
| | 002 | Printer | |
| | 003 | SC/TRAP Stored | |
| | 004 | Decompression | |

| 6 | Mode No. | | Function |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 005 | Scanner | |
| | 006 | JOB/SAF | |
| | 007 | Reconstruction | |
| | 008 | JBIG | |
| | 009 | Fax Driver | |
| | 010 | G3CCU | |
| | 011 | Fax Job | |
| | 012 | CCU | |
| | 013 | Scanner Condition | |
| 108 | IP Protocol Dump List | | |
| | 001 | All Communications | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the IP fax line. |
| | 002 | 1 Communication | Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the IP fax line. |

## 4.2.7 SP7-XXX (TEST MODES)

These are the test modes for PTT approval.

| 7 | Function |
|---|---|
| 101 | G3-1 Modem Tests |
| 102 | G3-1 DTMF Tests |
| 103 | Ringer Test |
| 104 | G3-1 V34 (S2400baud) |
| 105 | G3-1 V34 (S2800baud) |
| 106 | G3-1 V34 (S3000baud) |
| 107 | G3-1 V34 (S3200baud) |
| 108 | G3-1 V34 (S3429baud) |
| 109 | Recorded Message Test |
| 110 | G3-2 Modem Tests |
| 111 | G3-2 DTMF Tests |
| 112 | G3-2 V34 (S2400baud) |
| 113 | G3-2 V34 (S2800baud) |
| 114 | G3-2 V34 (S3000baud) |
| 115 | G3-2 V34 (S3200baud) |
| 116 | G3-2 V34 (S3429baud) |
| 117 | G3-3 Modem Tests |
| 118 | G3-3 DTMF Tests |
| 119 | G3-3 V34 (S2400baud) |
| 120 | G3-3 V34 (S2800baud) |

| 7 | Function |
|---|---|
| 121 | G3-3 V34 (S3000baud) |
| 122 | G3-3 V34 (S3200baud) |
| 123 | G3-3 V34 (S3429baud) |
| 124 | IG3-1 Modem Tests - Not used |
| 125 | IG3-1 DTMF Tests - Not used |
| 126 | IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used |
| 127 | IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used |
| 128 | IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used |
| 129 | IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used |
| 130 | IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used |
| 131 | IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used |
| 132 | IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used |
| 133 | IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used |
| 134 | IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used |
| 135 | IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used |
| 136 | IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used |
| 137 | IG3-2 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used |

## 4.2.8 SP9-XXX (DESIGN SWITCH MODE)

| 9 | Mode No. | Function |
|---|---|---|
| 702 | Design Switch **DFU** | |

# 4.3 BIT SWITCHES

Note

- Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as "Not used", as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

## 4.3.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">System Switch 00 (SP No. 1-101-001)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th>Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Dedicated transmission parameter programming<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled</td><td>Set this bit to 1 before changing any dedicated transmission parameters.<br>Reset this bit to 0 after programming dedicated transmission parameters.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Not used</td><td>Do not change</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td>Technical data printout on the Journal<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled</td><td>1: Instead of the personal name, the following data are listed on the Journal for each G3 communication.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Example:<br>0000 32V34 288/264 L0100 03 04<br>(1) (2)(3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8)<br>(1): EQM value (Line quality data). A larger number means more errors.<br>(2): Symbol rate (V.34 only)<br>(3): Final modem type used<br>(4): Starting data rate (for example, 288 means 28.8 kbps)<br>(5): Final data rate<br>(6): Rx revel (see below for how to read the rx level)<br>(7): Total number of error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception.<br>(8): Total number of burst error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception.<br>Note<br>▪ EQM and rx level are fixed at "FFFF" in tx mode.<br>▪ The seventh and eighth numbers are fixed at "00" for transmission records and ECM reception records.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Rx level calculation<br>Example:<br>0000 32V34 288/264 L0100 03 04<br>(1) (2)(3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8)</td></tr>
</table>

| System Switch 00 (SP No. 1-101-001) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| | The four-digit hexadecimal value (N) after "L" indicates the rx level.<br>The **high** byte is given first, followed by the **low** byte. Divide the decimal value of N by -16 to get the rx level.<br><br>In the above example, the decimal value of N (= 0100 [H]) is 256.<br>So, the actual rx level is 256/-16 = -16 dB | |
| 3 | Not used | Do not change this setting. |
| 4 | Line error mark print<br>0: OFF, 1: ON (print) | When "1" is selected, a line error mark is printed on the printout if a line error occurs during reception. |
| 5 | G3/G4 communication parameter display<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | This is a fault-finding aid. The LCD shows the key parameters (see below). This is normally disabled because it cancels the CSI display for the user.<br>Be sure to reset this bit to 0 after testing. |
| 6 | Protocol dump list output after each communication<br>0: Off<br>1: On | This is only used for communication troubleshooting. It shows the content of the transmitted facsimile protocol signals. Always reset this bit to 0 after finishing testing.<br>If system switch 09 bit 6 is at "1", the list is only printed if there was an error during the communication. |
| 7 | Not used | Do not change the setting. |

Bit Switches

**G3 Communication Parameters**

| | |
|---|---|
| Modem rate | 336: 33600 bps<br>312: 31200 bps<br>288: 28800 bps<br>264: 26400 bps<br>240: 24000 bps<br>216: 21600 bps<br>192: 19200 bps<br>168: 16800 bps<br>144: 14400 bps<br>120: 12000 bps<br>96: 9600 bps<br>72: 7200 bps<br>48: 4800 bps<br>24: 2400 bps |
| Resolution | S: Standard (8 x 3.85 dots/mm)<br>D: Detail (8 x 7.7 dots/mm)<br>F: Fine (8 x 15.4 dots/mm)<br>SF: Superfine (16 x 15.4 dots/mm)<br>21: Standard (200 x 100 dpi)<br>22: Detail (200 x 200 dpi)<br>44: Superfine (400 x 400 dpi) |
| Compression mode | MMR: MMR compression<br>MR: MR compression<br>MH: MH compression<br>JBO: JBIG compression (Optional mode)<br>JBB: JBIG compression (Basic mode) |
| Communication mode | ECM: With ECM<br>NML: With no ECM |
| Width and reduction | A4: A4 (8.3"), no reduction<br>B4: B4 (10.1"), no reduction<br>A3: A3 (11.7"), no reduction |

| | |
|---|---|
| I/O rate | 0: 0 ms/line<br>5: 5 ms/line<br>10: 10 ms/line<br>20: 20 ms/line<br>25: 2.5 ms/line<br>40: 40 ms/line<br>Note<br>▪ "40" is displayed while receiving a fax message using AI short protocol. |

Bit Switches

| |
|---|
| **System Switch 01** - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">System Switch 02 (SP No. 1-101-003)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change these settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="3">Forced reset after transmission stalls<br>0: Off<br>1: On</td><td>With this setting on, the machine resets itself automatically if a transmission stalls and fails to complete the job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change these settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="3">File retention time<br>0: Depends on User Parameter 24 [18(H)]<br>1: No limit</td><td>1: A file that had a communication error will not be erased unless the communication is successful.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change this setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">6-7</td><td colspan="3">Memory read/write by RDS</td><td rowspan="8">(0,0): All RDS systems are always locked out.<br>(0,1), (1,0): Normally, RDS systems are locked out, but the user can temporarily switch RDS on to allow RDS operations to take place. RDS will automatically be locked out again after a certain time, which is stored in System Switch 03. Note that if an RDS operation takes place, RDS will not switch off until this time limit has expired.<br>(1,1): At any time, an RDS system can access the machine.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Always disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>User selectable</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>User selectable</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Always enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

| System Switch 03 (SP No. 1-101-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0<br>to<br>7 | Length of time that RDS is temporarily switched on when bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to "User selectable" | 00 - 99 hours (BCD).<br>This setting is only valid if bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to "User selectable".<br>The default setting is 24 hours. |

| System Switch 04 (SP No. 1-101-005) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-2 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |
| 3 | Printing dedicated tx parameters on Quick/Speed Dial Lists<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 1: Each Quick/Speed dial number on the list is printed with the dedicated tx parameters (10 bytes each).<br>The first 10 bytes of data are the programmed dedicated tx parameters; 34 bytes of data are printed (the other 24 bytes have no use for service technicians). |
| 4-7 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |

Bit Switches

| |
|---|
| **System Switch 05** - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |

| System Switch 06 (SP No. 1-101-007) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 to 7 | Margin setting for Create Margin Transmission | 71 to 99 (BCD) %. This setting determines the reduction ratio when the user uses the Create Margin Transmission feature.<br>Default setting: 1001 0011 (93%) |

| |
|---|
| **System Switch 07** - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |
| **System Switch 08** - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |

| System Switch 09 (SP No. 1-101-010) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Addition of image data from confidential transmissions on the transmission result report<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled | If this feature is enabled, the top half of the first page of confidential messages will be printed on transmission result reports. |
| 1 | Inclusion of communications on the Journal when no image data was exchanged.<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 0: Communications that reached phase C (message tx/rx) of the T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal.<br>1: Communications that reached phase A (call setup) of T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal. This will include telephone calls. |
| 2 | Automatic error report printout<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 0: Error reports will not be printed.<br>1: Error reports will be printed automatically after failed communications. |
| 3 | Printing of the error code on the | 1: Error codes are printed on the error reports. |

| System Switch 09 (SP No. 1-101-010) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| | error report<br>0: No 1: Yes | |
| 4 | Not used | Do not change this setting. |
| 5 | Power failure report<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 1: A power failure report will be automatically printed after the power is switched on if a fax message disappeared from the memory when the power was turned off last. |
| 6 | Conditions for printing the protocol dump list<br>0: Print for all communications<br>1: Print only when there is a communication error | This switch becomes effective only when system switch 00 bit 6 is set to 1.<br>1: Set this bit to 1 when you wish to print a protocol dump list only for communications with errors. |
| 7 | Priority given to various types of remote terminal ID when printing reports<br>0: RTI > CSI > Dial label > Tel. number<br>1: Dial label > Tel. number > RTI > CSI | This bit determines which set of priorities the machine uses when listing remote terminal names on reports.<br>Dial Label: The name stored, by the user, for the Quick/Speed Dial number. |

Bit Switches

| System Switch 0A (SP No. 1-101-011) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Automatic port selection<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled | When "1" is selected, a suitable port is automatically selected if the selected port is not used. |
| 1-2 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |
| 3 | Continuous polling reception<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled | This feature allows a series of stations to be polled in a continuous cycle. This will continue until the polling reception file is erased.<br>The dialing interval is the same as memory transmission. |
| 4 | Dialing on the ten-key pad when the external telephone is off-hook<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 0: Prevents dialing from the ten-key pad while the external telephone is off-hook. Use this setting when the external telephone is not by the machine, or if a wireless telephone is connected as an external telephone.<br>1: The user can dial on the machine's ten-key pad when the handset is off-hook. |
| 5 | On hook dial<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled | 0: On hook dial is disabled. |
| 6-7 | Not used | Do not change the factory settings |

| |
|---|
| **System Switch 0B** - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |
| **System Switch 0C** - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |
| **System Switch 0D** - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |

| System Switch 0E (SP No. 1-101-015) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-1 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 2 | Enable/disable for direct sending selection<br>0: Direct sending off<br>1: Direct sending on | Direct sending cannot operate when the capture function is on during sending. Setting this switch to "1" enables direct sending without capture. Setting this switch to "0" masks the direct sending function on the operation panel so it cannot be selected. |
| 3 | Action when the external handset goes off-hook<br>0: Manual tx and rx operation<br>1: Memory tx and rx operation (the display remains the same) | 0: Manual tx and rx are possible while the external handset is off-hook. However, memory tx is not possible.<br>1: The display stays in standby mode even when the external handset is used, so that other people can use the machine for memory tx operation. Note that manual tx and rx are not possible with this setting. |
| 4-7 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |

Bit Switches

| System Switch 0F (SP No. 1-101-016) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | | **Comments** |
| 0 to 7 | Country/area code for functional settings (Hex) | | This country/area code determines the factory settings of bit switches and RAM addresses. However, it has no effect on the NCU parameter settings and communication parameter RAM addresses.<br>Cross reference<br>NCU country code:<br>SP No. 2-103-001 for G3-1<br>SP No. 2-104-001 for G3-2<br>SP No. 2-105-001 for G3-3 |
| | 00: France | 11: USA | |
| | 01: Germany | 12: Asia | |
| | 02: UK | 13: Japan | |
| | 03: Italy | 14: Hong Kong | |
| | 04: Austria | 15: South Africa | |
| | 05: Belgium | 16: Australia | |
| | 06: Denmark | 17: New Zealand | |
| | 07: Finland | 18: Singapore | |
| | 08: Ireland | 19: Malaysia | |
| | 09: Norway | 1A: China | |
| | 0A: Sweden | 1B: Taiwan | |
| | 0B: Switz. | 1C: Korea | |
| | 0C: Portugal | 20: Turkey | |
| | 0D: Holland | 21: Greece | |
| | 0E: Spain | 22: Hungary | |
| | 0F: Israel | 23: Czech | |
| | 10: --- | 24: Poland | |

| System Switch 10 (SP No. 1-101-017) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | Threshold memory level for parallel memory transmission | Threshold = N x 128 KB + 256 KB<br>N can be between 00 - FF(H)<br>Default setting: 02(H) = 512 KB |

| System Switch 11 (SP No. 1-101-018) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | TTI printing position<br>0: Superimposed on the page data<br>1: Printed before the data leading edge | Change this bit to 1 if the TTI overprints information that the customer considers to be important (G3 transmissions). |
| 1 | TSI (G3) printing position<br>0: Superimposed on the page data<br>1: Printed before the data leading edge | Change this bit to 1 if the TSI (G3) overprints information that the customer considers to be important. |
| 2 | Not used | Do not change the factory settings. |
| 3 | TTI used for broadcasting<br>0: The TTIs selected for each Quick/Speed dial are used<br>1: The same TTI is used for all destinations | 1: The TTI (TTI_1 or TTI_2) which is selected for all destinations during broadcasting. |
| 4-7 | Not used | Do not change the factory settings. |

Bit Switches

| System Switch 12 (SP No. 1-101-019) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | TTI printing position in the main scan direction | TTI: 08 to 92 (BCD) mm<br>Input even numbers only.<br>This setting determines the print start position for the TTI from the left edge of the paper. If the TTI is moved too far to the right, it may overwrite the file number which is on the top right of the page. On an A4 page, if the TTI is moved over by more than 50 mm, it may overwrite the page number. |

| |
|---|
| **System Switch 13** - Not used (do not change these settings) |
| **System Switch 14** - Not used (do not change these settings) |

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">System Switch 15 (SP No. 1-101-022)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="3">Going into the Energy Saver mode automatically<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled</td><td>1: The machine will restart from the Energy Saver mode quickly, because the +5V power supply is active even in the Energy Saver mode.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2-3</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change these settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">4-5</td><td colspan="3">Interval for preventing the machine from entering Energy Saver mode if there is a pending transmission file.</td><td rowspan="6">If there is a file waiting for transmission, the machine does not go to Energy Saver mode during the selected period.<br>After transmitting the file, if there is no file waiting for transmission, the machine goes to the Energy Saver mode.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1 min</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>30 min</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1 hour</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>24 hours</td></tr>
<tr><td>6-7</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change</td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

| System Switch 16 (SP No. 1-101-023) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Parallel Broadcasting<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 1: The machine sends messages simultaneously using all available ports during broadcasting. |
| 1 | Priority setting for the G3 line.<br>0: PSTN-1 > PSTN-2 or 3<br>1: PSTN-2 or 3 > PSTN-1 | This function allows the user to select the default G3 line type. The optional SG3 units are required to use the PSTN-2 or 3 setting. |
| 2-7 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |

| |
|---|
| **System Switch 17** - Not used (do not change these settings) |
| **System Switch 18** - Not used (do not change these settings) |

| System Switch 19 (SP No. 1-101-026) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-5 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 6 | Extended scanner page memory after memory option is installed<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 0: After installing the memory expansion option, the scanner page memory is extended to 4 MB from 2 MB.<br>1: If this bit is set to 1 after installing the memory expansion option, the scanner page memory is extended to 12 MB. But the SAF memory decreases to 18 MB. |
| 7 | Special Original mode<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 1: If the customer frequently wishes to transmit a form or letterhead which has a colored or printed background, change this bit to "1". "Original 1" and "Original 2" can be selected in addition to the "Text", "Text/Photo" and "Photo" modes. |

| System Switch 1A (SP No. 1-101-027) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0<br>to<br>7 | LS RX memory capacity threshold setting<br>00-FF (0-1020 Kbyte: Hex) | Sets the value to x4KB. When the amount of available memory drops below this setting, RX documents are printed to conserve memory. Initial setting 0x80 (512 KB) |

| |
|---|
| **System Switch 1B** - Not used (do not change these settings) |
| **System Switch 1C** - Not used (do not change these settings) |

Bit Switches

| System Switch 1D (SP No. 1-101-030) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | RTI/CSI/CPS code display<br>0: Enable<br>1: Disable | 0: RTI, CSI, CPS codes are displayed on the top line of the LCD panel during communication.<br>1: Codes are switched off (no display) |
| 1 | Not used | Do not change this setting. |
| 2 | Destination telephone number display limitation<br>0: OFF, 1: ON | When "1" is selected, the destination telephone number display is limited and redial is disabled. |
| 3-7 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |

| System Switch 1E (SP No. 1-101-031) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Communication after the Journal data storage area has become full<br>0: Impossible<br>1: Possible | 0: When this switch is on and the journal history becomes full, the next report prints. If the journal history is not deleted, the next transmission cannot be received. This prevents overwriting communication records before the machine can print them.<br>1: If the buffer memory of the communication records for the Journal is full, fax communications are still possible. But the machine will overwrite the oldest communication records.<br>Note<br>▪ This setting is effective only when Automatic Journal printout is enabled but the machine cannot print the report (e.g., no paper). |
| 1 | Action when the SAF memory has become full during scanning<br>0: The current page is erased.<br>1: The entire file is erased. | 0: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the successfully scanned pages are transmitted.<br>1: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the file is erased and no pages are transmitted.<br>Note<br>▪ This setting is effective only when Automatic Journal printout is enabled but the machine cannot print the report (e.g., no paper). |
| 2 | RTI/CSI display priority<br>0: RTI 1: CSI | This bit determines which identifier, RTI or CSI, is displayed on the LCD while the machine is communicating in G3 non-standard mode. |

Bit Switches

| System Switch 1E (SP No. 1-101-031) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 3 | File No. printing<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled | 1: File numbers are not printed on any reports. |
| 4 | Action when authorized reception is enabled but authorized RTIs/CSIs are not yet programmed<br>0: All fax reception is disabled<br>1: Faxes can be received if the sender has an RTI or CSI | If authorized reception is enabled but the user has stored no acceptable sender RTIs or CSIs, the machine will not be able to receive any fax messages.<br>If the customer wishes to receive messages from any sender that includes an RTI or CSI, and to block messages from senders that do not include an RTI or CSI, change this bit to "1", then enable Authorized Reception.<br>Otherwise, keep this bit at "0 (default setting)". |
| 5-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings |

| System Switch 1F (SP No. 1-101-032) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 1 | Report printout after an original jam during SAF storage or if the SAF memory fills up<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled | 0: When an original jams, or the SAF memory overflows during scanning, a report will be printed.<br>Change this bit to "1" if the customer does not want to have a report in these cases.<br>Memory tx – Memory storage report<br>Parallel memory tx – Transmission result report |
| 2 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 3 | Received fax print start timing (G3 reception)<br>0: After receiving each page<br>1: After receiving all pages | 0: The machine prints each page immediately after the machine receives it.<br>1: The machine prints the complete message after the machine receives all the pages in the memory. |
| 4-6 | Not used | Do not change the factory settings. |
| 7 | Action when a fax SC has occurred<br>0: Automatic reset<br>1: Fax unit stops | 0: When the fax unit detects a fax SC code other than SC1201 and SC1207, the fax unit automatically resets itself.<br>1: When the fax unit detects any fax SC code, the fax unit stops.<br>**Cross Reference**<br>Fax SC codes - See "Troubleshooting" |

## 4.3.2 I-FAX SWITCHES

| I-fax Switch 00 (SP No. 1-102-001) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| Original Width of TX Attachment File | | This setting sets the maximum size of the original that the destination can receive. (Bits 3~7 are reserved for future use or not used.) |
| 0 | A4 | 0: Off (not selected), 1: On (selected)<br>If more than one of these three bits is set to "1", the larger size has priority. For example, if both Bit 2 and Bit 1 are set to "1" then the maximum size is "A3" (Bit 2).<br>When mail is sent, there is no negotiation with the receiving machine at the destination, so the sending machine cannot make a selection for the receiving capabilities (original width setting) of the receiving machine. The original width selected with this switch is used as the RX machine's original width setting, and the original is reduced to this size before sending. The default is A4.<br>If the width selected with this switch is higher than the receiving machine can accept, the machine detects this and this causes an error. |
| 1 | B4 | |
| 2 | A3 | |
| 3-6 | Reserved | |
| 7 | Not used | |

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">I-fax Switch 01 (SP No. 1-102-002)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th>Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Original Line Resolution of TX Attachment File</td><td>These settings set the maximum resolution of the original that the destination can receive.</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>200x100 Standard</td><td rowspan="7">0: Not selected<br>1: Selected<br>If more than one of these three bits is set to "1", the higher resolution has priority. For example, if both Bit 0 and Bit 2 are set to "1" Then The Resolution is set for "Bit 2 200 x 400.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>200x200 Detail</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>200x400 Fine</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>300 x 300 Reserve</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>400 x 400 Super Fine</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>600 x 600 Reserve</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>Reserve</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">mm/inch</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2">This setting selects mm/inch conversion for mail transmission.<br>0: Off (No conversion), 1: On (Conversion)<br><br>When on (set to "1"), the machine converts millimeters to inches for sending mail. There is no switch for converting inches to millimeters.<br>Unlike G3 fax transmissions which can negotiate between sender and receiver to determine the setting, mail cannot negotiate between terminals; the mm/inch selection is determined by the sender fax.<br>When this switch is Off (0):<br>▪ Images scanned in inches are sent in inches.<br>▪ Images scanned in mm are sent in mm.<br>▪ Images received in inches are transmitted in inches.<br>▪ Images received in mm are transmitted in mm.<br>When this switch is On (1):<br>▪ Images scanned in inches are sent in inches.<br>▪ Images scanned in mm are converted to inches.<br>▪ Images received in inches are transmitted in inches.</td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

| I-fax Switch 01 (SP No. 1-102-002) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| | ▪ Images received in mm are converted to inches. | |

| I-fax Switch 02 (SP No. 1-102-003) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | RX Text Mail Header Processing | |
| | This setting determines whether the header information is printed with text e-mails when they are received.<br>0: Prints only text mail.<br>1: Prints mail header information attached to text mail.<br>When a text mail is received with this switch On (1), the "From" address and "Subject" address are printed as header information.<br>When a mail with only binary data is received (a TIFF-F file, for example), this setting is ignored and no header is printed. | |
| 1 | Output from Attached Document at E-mail TX Error | |
| | This setting determines whether only the first page or all pages of an e-mail attachment are printed at the sending station when a transmission error occurs. This allows the customer to see which documents have not reached their intended destinations if sent to the wrong e-mail addresses, for example.<br>0: Prints 1st page only.<br>1: Prints all pages. | |
| 2-3 | Text String for Return Receipt | |
| | This setting determines the text string output for the Return Receipt that confirms the transmission was received normally at the destination. | |
| | 00: "Dispatched"<br>Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with "dispatched" in the 2nd part:<br>Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; dispatched<br>The "dispatched" string is included in the Subject string. | |

| I-fax Switch 02 (SP No. 1-102-003) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| | 01: "Displayed"<br>Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with "displayed" in the 2nd part:<br>Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; displayed<br>The "displayed" string is included in the Subject string.<br>10: Reserved<br>11: Reserved<br>A mail requesting a Return Receipt sent from an IFAX with this switch set to "00" (for "dispatched") received by Microsoft Outlook 2000 may cause an error. If any setting other than "displayed" (01) causes a problem, change the setting to "01" to enable normal sending of the Return Receipt. | |
| 4 | Media accept feature | |
| | This setting adds or does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail to confirm a reception.<br>0: Does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail<br>1: Adds the media accept feature to the answer mail.<br>Use this bit switch if a problem occurs when the machine receives an answer mail, which contains the media accept feature field. | |
| 5-6 | Not Used | |
| 7 | Image Resolution of RX Text Mail | |
| | This setting determines the image resolution of the received mail.<br>0: 200 x 200<br>1: 400 x 400<br>The "1" setting requires installation of the Function Upgrade Card in order to have enough SAF (Store and Forward) memory to receive images at 400 x 400 resolution. | |

Bit Switches

| I-fax Switch 03 (SP No. 1-102-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Original Output at Transfer Station | |
| | This setting determines whether the original is output at the transfer station when it is received from the sender that initiated the transfer transmission. This feature is the same as for G3 transfer transmissions.<br>0: Received original not output at the transfer station.<br>1: Received original output. The original is printed after the transfer station has transferred it to the destinations, so its output confirms that the original has been transferred. | |
| 1 | Transfer Result Report | |
| | This setting determines when a Transfer Result Report is generated and returned to the transfer requestor.<br>0: Returns the report after each transfer.<br>1: Returns the report only if an error occurred during transfer. | |
| 2 | Destination Error Handling for Reception Transfer Request | |
| | This setting restricts transfer transmission based on whether the final destinations are correct or not.<br>0: The transfer station transmits to correct destinations only (addresses with no errors in them).<br>1: If any address has an error in it, the transfer station transfers no transmissions and returns a transfer transmission failure report to the requestor that initiated the transfer.<br>There is no negotiation between the transfer initiator and the transfer station to determine whether the final destination addresses are correct or not. This setting determines whether or not the transfer station transfers the transmissions if there is a mistake in even one of the final destination addresses. | |

| I-fax Switch 03 (SP No. 1-102-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 3 | Polling ID Check for Reception of Transfer Request | |
| | This setting determines whether the polling IDs of incoming transmissions are checked to ensure that the polling IDs match.<br>0: Receives and transfers only messages that have matching polling IDs.<br>1: Receives and transfers all messages, even if the polling IDs do not match. | |
| 4-7 | Not Used | |

Bit Switches

| I-fax Switch 04 (SP No. 1-102-005) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Subject for Delivery TX/Memory Transfer | |
| | This setting determines whether the RTI/CSI registered on this machine or the RTI/CSI of the originator is used in the subject lines of transferred documents.<br>0: Puts the RTI/CSI of the originator in the Subject line. If this is used, either the RTI or CSI is used. Only one of these can be received for use in the subject line.<br>1: Puts the RTI/CSI registered on this machine in the Subject line.<br>When this switch is used to transfer and deliver mail to a PC, the information in the Subject line that indicates where the transmission originated can be used to determine automatically the destination folder for each e-mail. | |
| 1 | Subject corresponding to mail post database<br>0: Standard subject<br>1: Mail post database subject<br>The standard subject is replaced by the mail post database subject in the following three cases:<br>1) When the service technician sets the service (software) switch.<br>2) When memory sending or delivery specified by F code is applied by the SMTP server<br>3) With relay broadcasting (1st stage without the Schmidt 4 function).<br>Note<br>▪ This switch does not apply for condition 3) when the RX system is set up for memory sending, delivery by F-code, sending with SMTP RX and when operators are using FOL (to prevent problems when receiving transmissions). | |
| 2-7 | Not Used | |

| I-fax Switch 05 (SP No. 1-102-006) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Mail Addresses of SMTP Broadcast Recipients | |
| | Determines whether the e-mail addresses of the destinations that receive transmissions broadcasted using SMTP protocol are recorded in the Journal.<br>For example:<br>"1st destination + Total number of destinations: 9" in the Journal indicates a broadcast to 9 destinations.<br>0: Not recorded<br>1: Recorded | |
| 1-7 | Not Used | |

| |
|---|
| **I-fax Switch 06** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **I-fax Switch 07** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

| I-fax Switch 08 (SP No. 1-102-009) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | Memory Threshold for POP Mail Reception | |
| | This setting determines the amount of SAF (Store and Forward) memory. (SAF stores fax messages to send later for transmission to more than one location, and also holds incoming messages if they cannot be printed.) When the amount of SAF memory available falls below this setting, mail can no longer be received; received mail is then stored on the mail server.<br>00-FF (0 to 1024 KB: HEX)<br>The hexadecimal number you enter is multiplied by 4 KB to determine the amount of memory. | |

Bit Switches

| I-fax Switch 09 (SP No. 1-102-010) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-3 | Not used | Do not change the settings |
| 4-7 | Restrict TX Retries | This setting determines the number of retries when connection and transmission fails due to errors.<br>01-F (1-15 Hex) |

| |
|---|
| **I-fax Switch 0A** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **I-fax Switch 0B** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **I-fax Switch 0C** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **I-fax Switch 0D** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **I-fax Switch 0E** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

| I-fax Switch 0F (SP No. 1-102-016) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Delivery Method for SMTP RX Files | |
| | This setting determines whether files received with SMTP protocol are delivered or output immediately.<br>0: Off. Files received via SMTP are output immediately without delivery.<br>1: On. Files received via SMTP are delivered immediately to their destinations. | |
| 1-7 | Not used | |

## 4.3.3 PRINTER SWITCHES

| Printer Switch 00 (SP No. 1-103-001) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Select page separation marks<br>0: Off<br>1: On | 0: If a 2 page RX transmission is split, [*] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page.<br>1: If a 2 page RX transmission is split into two pages, for example, [*] [2] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page.<br>Note<br>▪ This helps the user to identify pages that have been split because the size of the paper is smaller than the size of the document received. (When A5 is used to print an A4 size document, for example.) |
| 1 | Repetition of data when the received page is longer than the printer paper<br>0: Off<br>1: On | 1: Default. 10 mm of the trailing edge of the previous page are repeated at the top of the next page.<br>0: The next page continues from where the previous page stopped without any repeated text. |
| 2 | Prints the date and time on received fax messages<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | This switch is only effective when user parameter 02 - bit 2 (printing the received date and time on received fax messages) is enabled.<br>1: The machine prints the received and printed date and time at the bottom of each received page. |
| 3-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Printer Switch 01 (SP No. 1-103-002)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td>0-2</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">3-4</td><td colspan="3">Maximum print width used in the setup protocol</td><td rowspan="6">These bits are only effective when bit 7 of printer switch 01 is "1".</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 4</td><td>Bit 3</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>A3</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>B4</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>A4</td></tr>
<tr><td>5-6</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="3">Received message width restriction in the protocol signal to the sender<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled</td><td>0: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the print width depending on the paper size available from the paper feed stations.<br>Refer to the table on the next page for how the machine chooses the paper width used in the setup protocol (NSF/DIS).<br>1: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the fixed paper width which is specified by bits 3 and 4 above.</td></tr>
</table>

**Relationship between available paper sizes and printer width used in the setup protocol**

| Available Paper Size | Printer width used in the Protocol (NSF/DIS) |
|---|---|
| A4 or 8.5" x 11" | 297 mm width |
| B5 | 256 mm width |
| A5 or 8.5" x 5.5" | 216 mm width |
| No paper available (Paper end) | 216 mm width |

| Printer Switch 02 (SP No. 1-103-003) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | 1st paper feed station usage for fax printing<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled | 0: The paper feed station can be used to print fax messages and reports.<br><br>1: The specified paper feed station will not be used for printing fax messages and reports.<br>Note<br>▪ Do not disable usage for a paper feed station which has been specified by User Parameter Switch 0F (15), or which is used for the Specified Cassette Selection feature. |
| 1 | 2nd paper feed station usage for fax printing<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled | |
| 2 | 3rd paper feed station usage for fax printing<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled | |
| 3 | 4th paper feed station usage for fax printing<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled | |
| 4 | LCT usage for fax printing<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled | |
| 5-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

Bit Switches

| Printer Switch 03 (SP No. 1-103-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Length reduction of received data<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 0: Incoming pages are printed without length reduction.<br>(Page separation threshold: Printer Switch 03, bits 4 to 7)<br>1: Incoming page length is reduced when printing.<br>(Maximum reducible length: Printer Switches 04, bits 0 to 4) |
| 1-3 | Not used | Do not change the settings |
| 4<br>to<br>7 | Page separation setting when sub scan compression is forbidden<br>00-0F (0-15 mm: Hex)<br>Default: 6 mm | Page separation threshold (with reduction disabled with switch 03-0 above).<br>For example, if this setting is set to "10", and A4 is the selected paper size:<br>If the received document is 10 mm or less longer than A4, then the 10 mm are cut and only 1 page prints.<br>If the received document is 10 mm longer than A4, then the document is split into 2 pages. |

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">Printer Switch 04 (SP No. 1-103-005)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="4">Function</th><th colspan="3">Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">0<br>to<br>4</td><td colspan="7">Maximum reducible length when length reduction is enabled with switch 03-0 above.<br>[Maximum reducible length] = [Paper length] + (N x 5mm)<br>"N" is the decimal value of the binary setting of bits 0 to 4.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 4</td><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>5 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>20 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>155 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">For A5 sideways and B5 sideways paper<br>[Maximum reducible length] = [Paper length] + 0.75 x (N x 5mm)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">5<br>6</td><td colspan="7">Length of the duplicated image on the next page, when page separation has taken place.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Bit 6</td><td colspan="2">Bit 5</td><td colspan="2">Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">0</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td colspan="2">4 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">0</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">10 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td colspan="2">15 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="3">Not used.</td><td colspan="3">Do not change the setting.</td></tr>
</table>

**Printer Switch 05** - Not used (do not change the settings)

Bit Switches

| Printer Switch 06 (SP No. 1-103-007) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Printing while a paper cassette is pulled out, when the Just Size Printing feature is enabled.<br>0: Printing will not start<br>1: Printing will start if another cassette has a suitable size of paper, based on the paper size selection priority tables. | Cross reference<br>Just size printing on/off – User switch 05, bit 5 |
| 1-7 | Not used. | Do not change the settings. |

| Printer Switch 07 (SP No. 1-103-008) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Reduction for Journal printing<br>0: Off<br>1: On | 1: The Journal is reduced to 91% to ensure that there is enough space in the left margin for punch holes or staples. |
| 2-3 | Not used. | Do not change the settings. |
| 4 | List of destinations in the Communication Failure Report for broadcasting<br>0: All destinations<br>1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred | 1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred are printed on the Communication Failure Report. |
| 5-7 | Not used. | Do not change the settings. |

| |
|---|
| **Printer Switch 08** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Printer Switch 09** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Printer Switch 0A** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Printer Switch 0B** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Printer Switch 0C** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Printer Switch 0D** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

| **Printer Switch 0E (SP No. 1-103-015)** | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Paper size selection priority<br>0: Width<br>1: Length | 0: A paper size that has the same width as the received data is selected first.<br>1: A paper size which has enough length to print all the received lines without reduction is selected first. |
| 1 | Paper size selected for printing A4 width fax data<br>0: 8.5" x 11" size<br>1: A4 size | This switch determines which paper size is selected for printing A4 width fax data, when the machine has both A4 and 8.5" x 11" size paper. |
| 2 | Page separation<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled | 1: If all paper sizes in the machine require page separation to print a received fax message, the machine does not print the message (Substitute Reception is used).<br>After a larger size of paper is set in a cassette, the machine |

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Printer Switch 0E (SP No. 1-103-015)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3"></td><td>automatically prints the fax message.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">3-4</td><td colspan="3">Printing the sample image on reports</td><td rowspan="6">"Same size" means the sample image is printed at 100%, even if page separation occurs.<br>User Parameter Switch 19 (13H) bit 4 must be set to "0" to enable this switch.<br>Refer to Detailed Section Descriptions for more on this feature.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 4</td><td>Bit 3</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>The upper half only</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>50% reduction<br>(sub-scan only)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Same size</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>5-6</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="3">Equalizing the reduction ratio among separated pages<br>(Page Separation)<br>0: Enabled<br>1: Disabled</td><td>0: When page separation has taken place, all the pages are reduced with the same reduction ratio.<br>1: Only the last page is reduced to fit the selected paper size when page separation has taken place. Other pages are printed without reduction.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Printer Switch 0F (SP No. 1-103-016)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">0-1</td><td colspan="3">Smoothing feature</td><td rowspan="6">(0, 0) (0, 1): Disable smoothing if the machine receives halftone images from other manufacturers fax machines frequently.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="3">Duplex printing<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled</td><td>1: The machine always prints received fax messages in duplex printing mode:</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="3">Binding direction for Duplex printing<br>0: Left binding<br>1: Top binding</td><td>0: Sets the binding for the left edge of the stack.<br>1: Sets the binding for the top of the stack.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4-7</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
</table>

## 4.3.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Communication Switch 00 (SP No. 1-104-001)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">0-1</td><td colspan="3">Compression modes available in receive mode</td><td rowspan="6">These bits determine the compression capabilities to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Modes</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>MH only</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>MH/MR</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>MH/MR/MMR</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>MH/MR/MMR/JBIG</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">2-3</td><td colspan="3">Compression modes available in transmit mode</td><td rowspan="6">These bits determine the compression capabilities to be used in the transmission and to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Modes</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>MH only</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>MH/MR</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>MH/MR/MMR</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>MH/MR/MMR/JBIG</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="3">JBIG compression method: Reception<br>0: Only basic supported<br>1: Basic and optional both supported</td><td>Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="3">JBIG compression method: Transmission<br>0: Basic mode priority<br>1: Optional mode priority</td><td>Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.</td></tr>
</table>

| Communication Switch 00 (SP No. 1-104-001) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 7 | Closed network (reception)<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 1: Reception will not go ahead if the polling ID code of the remote terminal does not match the polling ID code of the local terminal. This function is only available in NSF/NSS mode. |

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Communication Switch 01 (SP No. 1-104-002)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="3">ECM<br>0: Off 1: On</td><td>If this bit is set to 0, ECM is switched off for all communications.<br>In addition, V.8 protocol and JBIG compression are switched off automatically.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">2-3</td><td colspan="3">Wrong connection prevention method</td><td rowspan="7">(0,1): The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax message, if the last 8 digits of the received CSI do not match the last 8 digits of the dialed telephone number. This does not work when manually dialed.<br>(1,0): The same as above, except that only the last 4 digits are compared.<br>(1,1): The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax message, if the other end does not identify itself with an RTI or CSI.<br>(0,0): Nothing is checked; transmission will always go ahead.<br>Note<br>▪ This function does not work when</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>None</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>8 digit CSI</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>4 digit CSI</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>CSI/RTI</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Communication Switch 01 (SP No. 1-104-002)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3"></td><td>dialing is done from the external telephone.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4-5</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">6-7</td><td colspan="3">Maximum printable page length available</td><td rowspan="6">The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>No limit</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>B4 (364 mm)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>A4 (297 mm)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
</table>

| Communication Switch 02 (SP No. 1-104-003) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** | |
| 0 | G3 Burst error threshold<br>0: Low 1: High | If there are more consecutive error lines in the received page than the threshold, the machine will send a negative response. The Low and High threshold values depend on the sub-scan resolution, and are as follows. | |
| | | 100 dpi | 6(L) → 12(H) |
| | | 200 dpi | 12(L) → 24(H) |
| | | 300 dpi | 18(L) → 36(H) |
| | | 400 dpi | 24(L) → 48(H) |
| 1 | Acceptable total error line ratio<br>0: 5% 1: 10% | If the error line ratio for a page exceeds the acceptable ratio, RTN will be sent to the other end. | |
| 2 | Treatment of pages received with errors during G3 reception<br>0: Deleted from memory without printing<br>1: Printed | 0: Pages received with errors are not printed. | |
| 3 | Hang-up decision when a negative code (RTN or PIN) is received during G3 immediate transmission<br>0: No hang-up, 1: Hang-up | 0: The next page will be sent even if RTN or PIN is received.<br>1: The machine will send DCN and hang up if it receives RTN or PIN.<br>This bit is ignored for memory transmissions or if ECM is being used. | |
| 4-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. | |

Bit Switches

| Communication Switch 03 (SP No. 1-104-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | Maximum number of page retransmissions in a G3 memory transmission | 00 - FF (Hex) times.<br>This setting is not used if ECM is switched on.<br>Default setting - 03(H) |

| |
|---|
| **Communication Switch 04** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Communication Switch 05** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Communication Switch 06** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Communication Switch 07** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Communication Switch 08** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Communication Switch 09** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

| Communication Switch 0A (SP No. 1-104-011) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Point of resumption of memory transmission upon redialing<br>0: From the error page<br>1: From page 1 | 0: The transmission begins from the page where transmission failed the previous time.<br>1: Transmission begins from the first page, using normal memory transmission. |
| 1-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

| Communication Switch 0B (SP No. 1-104-012) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Use of Economy Transmission during a Transfer operation to end receivers<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled | These bits determine whether the machine uses the Economy Transmission feature when it is carrying out a Transfer operation as a Transfer Station. |
| 1 | Use of Economy Transmission during a Transfer operation to the Next Transfer Stations<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled | |
| 2 | Use of Label Insertion for the End Receivers in a Transfer operation<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled | This bit determines whether the machine uses the Label Insertion feature when it is carrying out a Transfer operation as a Transfer Station. |
| 3 | Conditions required for Transfer Result Report transmission<br>0: Always transmitted<br>1: Only transmitted if there was an error | 0: When acting as a Transfer Station, the machine will always send a Transfer Result Report back to the Requesting Station after completing the Transfer Request, even if there were no problems.<br>1: The machine will only send back a Transfer Result Report if there were errors during communication, meaning one or more of the End Receivers could not be contacted. |
| 4 | Printout of the message when acting as a Transfer Station<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled | When the machine is acting as a Transfer Station, this bit determines whether the machine prints the fax message coming in from the Requesting Terminal. |

Bit Switches

| Communication Switch 0B (SP No. 1-104-012) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 5 | Action when there is no fax number in the programmed Quick/Speed dials which meets the requesting terminal's own fax number<br>0: Transfer is disabled<br>1: Transfer is enabled | After the machine receives a transfer request, the machine compares the last N digits of the requesting terminal's own fax number with all the Quick/Speed dials programmed in the machine. (N is the number programmed in communication switch 0C.)<br>0: If there is no matching number programmed in the machine, the machine rejects the transfer request.<br>1: Even if there is no matching number programmed in the machine, the machine accepts the transfer request. The result report will be printed at the transfer terminal, but will not be sent back to the requesting terminal. |
| 6-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

| Communication Switch 0C (SP No. 1-104-013) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-4 | Number of digits compared to find the requester's fax number from the programmed Quick/Speed Dials when acting as a Transfer Station | 00 – 1F (0 to 31 digits)<br>After the machine receives a transfer request, the machine compares the own telephone number sent from the Requesting Terminal with all Quick/Speed Dials programmed in the machine, starting from Quick Dial 01 to the end of the Speed Dials.<br>This number determines how many digits from the end of the telephone numbers the machine compares.<br>If it is set to 00, the machine will send the report to the first Quick/Speed Dial that the machine compared. If Quick Dial 01 is programmed, the machine will send the report to Quick 01. If Quick Dial 01 through 04 are not programmed and Quick Dial 05 is programmed, the machine will send the report to Quick 05.<br>Default setting – 05(H) = 5 digits |
| 5-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

Bit Switches

| Communication Switch 0D (SP No. 1-104-014) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | The available memory threshold, below which ringing detection (and therefore reception into memory) is disabled | 00 to FF (Hex), unit = 4 kbytes<br>(e.g., 06(H) = 24 kbytes)<br>One page is about 24 kbytes.<br>The machine refers to this setting before each fax reception. If the amount of remaining memory is below this threshold, the machine cannot receive any fax messages.<br>If this setting is kept at 0, the machine will detect ringing signals and go into receive mode even if there is no memory available. This will result in communication failure. |

| Communication Switch 0E (SP No. 1-104-015) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | Minimum interval between automatic dialing attempts | 06 to FF (Hex), unit = 2 s<br>(e.g., 06(H) = 12 s)<br>This value is the minimum time that the machine waits before it dials the next destination. |

**Communication Switch 0F** – Not used (do not change the settings.)

| Communication Switch 10 (SP No. 1-104-017) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | Memory transmission: Maximum number of dialing attempts to the same destination | 01 – FE (Hex) times |

**Communication Switch 11** – Not used (do not change the settings.)

| Communication Switch 12 (SP No. 1-104-019) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | Memory transmission: Interval between dialing attempts to the same destination | 01 – FF (Hex) minutes |

**Communication Switch 13** – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Communication Switch 14 (SP No. 1-104-021)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="3">Inch-to-mm conversion during transmission<br>0: Disabled, 1: Enabled</td><td>0: In immediate transmission, data scanned in inch format are transmitted without conversion.<br>In memory transmission, data stored in the SAF memory in mm format are transmitted without conversion.<br>Note: When storing the scanned data into SAF memory, the fax unit always converts the data into mm format.<br>1: The machine converts the scanned data or stored data in the SAF memory to the format which was specified in the set-up protocol (DIS/NSF) before transmission.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1-5</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the factory settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">6-7</td><td colspan="3">Available unit of resolution in which fax messages are received</td><td rowspan="6">For the best performance, do not change the factory settings.<br>The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Unit</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>inch</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>mm and inch</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
</table>

**Communication Switch 15** – Not used (do not change the settings)

| Communication Switch 16 (SP No. 1-104-023) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 1 | Optional G3 unit (G3-2)<br>0: Not installed<br>1: Installed | Change this bit to 1 when installing the first optional G3 unit. |
| 2 | Not used | |
| 3 | Select PSTN connection<br>0: Off<br>1: On | This switch enables the G3-2.<br>0: Off, no connection<br>1: Recognizes and enables G3-2.<br>This switch can be used only after G3-2 has been installed. |
| 4-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

Bit Switches

| Communication Switch 17 (SP No. 1-104-024) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | SEP reception<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 0: Polling transmission to another maker's machine using the SEP (Selective Polling) signal is disabled. |
| 1 | SUB reception<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 0: Confidential reception to another maker's machine using the SUB (Sub-address) signal is disabled. |
| 2 | PWD reception<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 0: Disables features that require PWD (Password) signal reception. |
| 3-6 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 7 | Action when there is no box with an F-code that matches the received SUB code<br>0: Disconnect the line<br>1: Receive the message (using normal reception mode) | Change this setting when the customer requires. |

| |
|---|
| **Communication Switch 18** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Communication Switch 19** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Communication Switch 1A** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

| Communication Switch 1B (SP No. 1-104-028) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | Extension access code (0 to 7) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off<br>0: On<br>1: Off | If the PABX does not support V.8/V.34 protocol procedure, set this bit to "1" to disable V.8.<br>Example: If "0" is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects "0" as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (Alternatively, if "3" is the PSTN access code, set bit 3 to 1.) |

| Communication Switch 1C (SP No. 1-104-029) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-1 | Extension access code (8 and 9) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off<br>0: On<br>1: Off | Refer to communication switch 1B.<br>Example: If "8" is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects "8" as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (If "9" is the PSTN access code, use bit 1.) |
| 2-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

| |
|---|
| **Communication Switch 1D** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Communication Switch 1E** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Communication Switch 1F** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

## 4.3.5 G3 SWITCHES

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">G3 Switch 00 (SP No. 1-105-001)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">0<br>1</td><td colspan="3">Monitor speaker during communication (tx and rx)</td><td rowspan="8">(0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication.<br>(0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol.<br>(1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Up to Phase B</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>All the time</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="3">Monitor speaker during memory transmission<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled</td><td>1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3-7</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
</table>

| G3 Switch 01 (SP No. 1-105-002) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 1 | Select V.8 protocol for manual RX function<br>0: No<br>1: Yes | This switch switches the V.8 protocol for manual receiving off and on. |
| 2-3 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 4 | DIS frame length<br>0: 10 bytes 1: 4 bytes | 1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which cannot receive the extended DIS frames). |
| 5 | Not used | Do not change the setting. |
| 6 | Forbid CED/AMsam output<br>0: Off<br>1: On (Forbid output) | Do not change this setting (Default: 0: Off), unless communication problem is caused by a CED or ANSam transmission. |
| 7 | Not used | Do not change the setting. |

Bit Switches

| G3 Switch 02 (SP No. 1-105-003) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | G3 protocol mode used<br>0: Standard and non-standard<br>1: Standard only | Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with machines that send T.30-standard frames only.<br>1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication) |
| 1-4 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 5 | Use of modem rate history for transmission using Quick/Speed Dials<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 0: Communications using Quick/Speed Dials always start from the highest modem rate.<br>1: The machine refers to the modem rate history for communications with the same machine when determining the most suitable rate for the current communication. |
| 6 | Not Used | Do not change the settings. |
| 7 | Short preamble<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled | Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Short Preamble. |

| G3 Switch 03 (SP No. 1-105-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | DIS detection number<br>(Echo countermeasure)<br>0: 1<br>1: 2 | 0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice.<br>1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line. |
| 1 | Not Used | Do not change the settings. |
| 2 | V.8 protocol<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 0: V.8/V.34 communications will not be possible.<br>Note<br>▪ Do not set to 0 unless the line condition is always bad enough to slow down the data rate to 14.4 kbps or lower. |
| 3 | ECM frame size<br>0: 256 bytes<br>1: 64 bytes | Keep this bit at "0" in most cases. |
| 4 | CTC transmission conditions<br>0: After one PPR signal received<br>1: After four PPR signals received (ITU-T standard) | 0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps.<br>$\sqrt{NTransmit \leq NResend}$<br>NTransmit- Number of transmitted frames<br>NResend- Number of frames to be retransmitted<br>1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving four PPRs.<br>PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals.<br>This bit is not effective in V.34 communications. |

Bit Switches

| G3 Switch 03 (SP No. 1-105-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 5 | Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN)<br>0: No change 1: Fallback | 1: The machine's tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used. |
| 6 | Not used | Do not change the settings |
| 7 | Select detection of reverse polarity in ringing<br>0: Off<br>1: On | This switch is used to prevent reverse polarity in ringing on the phone line (applied to PSTN-G3 ringing). Do not change this setting<br>0: No detection (Outside Japan)<br>1: Detection (Inside Japan only) |

| G3 Switch 04 (SP No. 1-105-005) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-3 | Training error detection threshold | 0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits<br>If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded. |
| 4-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

<table>
<tr><th colspan="7">G3 Switch 05 (SP No. 1-105-006)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="5">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="19">0-3</td><td colspan="5">Initial Tx modem rate (kbps)</td><td rowspan="19">These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission.<br>Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to change this for specific receivers.<br>If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually.<br>Cross reference<br>V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>kbps</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>4.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>7.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>9.6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>12.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>14.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>16.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>19.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>21.6</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>24.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>26.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>28.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>31.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>33.6</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">G3 Switch 05 (SP No. 1-105-006)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">4-5</td><td colspan="3">Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 kbps.</td><td rowspan="6">These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>V.29</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.17</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>V.34</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>6-7</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="7">G3 Switch 06 (SP No. 1-105-007)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="5">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="12">0-3</td><td colspan="5">Initial Rx modem rate(kbps)</td><td rowspan="12">These bits set the initial starting modem rate for reception.<br>Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception.<br>If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually.<br>Cross reference<br>V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>kbps</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>4.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>7.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>9.6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>12.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>14.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>16.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>19.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>21.6</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">G3 Switch 06 (SP No. 1-105-007)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="6">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6"></td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">24.0</td><td rowspan="6"></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">26.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">28.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">31.2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="9">4-7</td><td colspan="6">Modem types available for reception<br>The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode.<br>If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually.<br>Cross reference<br>V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td colspan="2">Types</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter, V.29</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter, V.29, V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V33, V.34</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">G3 Switch 07 (SP No. 1-105-008)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="4">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">0-1</td><td colspan="4">PSTN cable equalizer<br>(tx mode: Internal)</td><td rowspan="7">Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange.<br>Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers.<br><br>Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs.<br>Communication error<br>Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.<br>Note<br>▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td colspan="2">Bit 0</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>None</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>Low</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>Medium</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4"></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">2-3</td><td colspan="4">PSTN cable equalizer<br>(rx mode: Internal)</td><td rowspan="7">Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange.<br>Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs.<br>Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc.<br>Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.<br>Note<br>▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td colspan="2">Bit 2</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>None</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>Low</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>Medium</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4"></td></tr>
</table>

| G3 Switch 05 (SP No. 1-105-006) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 4 | PSTN cable equalizer<br>(V.8/V.17 rx mode: External)<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | Keep this bit at "1". |
| 5-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

| |
|---|
| **G3 Switch 08** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **G3 Switch 09** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">G3 Switch 0A (SP No. 1-105-011)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">0-1</td><td colspan="3">Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data reception</td><td rowspan="6">These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time.<br>Try a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Value (ms)</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>200</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>400</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>800</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="3">Select cancellation of high-speed RX if carrier signal lost while receiving<br>0: Off<br>1: On</td><td>This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="3">Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception.<br>0: 5 s 1: 13 s</td><td>This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end.<br>Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
</table>

| G3 Switch 0A (SP No. 1-105-011) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 6 | Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode<br>0: 6 s 1: 12 s | When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20.<br>ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of CFR. |
| 7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

| |
|---|
| **G3 Switch 0B** Not used (do not change the settings). |
| **G3 Switch 0C** Not used (do not change the settings). |
| **G3 Switch 0D** Not used (do not change the settings). |

Bit Switches

| G3 Switch 0E (SP No. 1-105-015) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-7 | Set CNG send time interval<br>Some machines on the receiving side may not be able to automatically switch the 3-second CNG interval. | |
| | High order bit | 3000-2250ms: 3000-50xNms<br>3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) ≤ N ≤ FF (2250 ms) |
| | Low order bit | 00-0E(3000-3700ms: 3000+50xNms<br>3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) ≤ N ≤ 0F (3700 ms) |

| G3 Switch 0F (SP No. 1-105-016) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Alarm when an error occurred in Phase C or later<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | If the customer wants to hear an alarm after each error communication, change this bit to "1". |
| 1 | Alarm when the handset is off-hook at the end of communication<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | If the customer wants to hear an alarm if the handset is off-hook at the end of fax communication, change this bit to "1". |
| 2-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

## 4.3.6 G3-2 AND G3-3 SWITCHES

These switches require an optional G3 interface unit.

G3-3 switches are the same as for G3-2 switches.

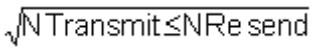
<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">G3-2 Switch 00 (SP No. 1-106-001)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">0<br>1</td><td colspan="3">Monitor speaker during communication (tx and rx)</td><td rowspan="8">(0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication.<br>(0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol.<br>(1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Disable</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Up to Phase B</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>All the time</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="3">Monitor speaker during memory transmission<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled</td><td>1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3-7</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

| G3-2 Switch 01 (SP No. 1-106-002) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-3 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 4 | DIS frame length<br>0: 10 bytes 1: 4 bytes | 1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which cannot receive the extended DIS frames). |
| 5 | Not used | Do not change the setting. |
| 6 | Forbid CED/AMsam output<br>0: Off<br>1: On (Forbid output) | Do not change this setting (Default: 0: Off), unless communication problem is caused by a CED or ANSam transmission. |
| 7 | Not used | Do not change the setting. |

| G3-2 Switch 02 (SP No. 1-106-003) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | G3 protocol mode used<br>0: Standard and non-standard<br>1: Standard only | Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with machines that send T.30-standard frames only.<br>1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication) |
| 1-4 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
| 5 | Use of modem rate history for transmission using Quick/Speed Dials<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 0: Communications using Quick/Speed Dials always start from the highest modem rate.<br>1: The machine refers to the modem rate history for communications with the same machine when determining the most suitable rate for the current communication. |
| 6 | Not Used | Do not change the settings. |
| 7 | Short preamble<br>0: Disabled 1: Enabled | Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Short Preamble. |

Bit Switches

| G3-2 Switch 03 (SP No. 1-106-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | DIS detection number<br>(Echo countermeasure)<br>0: 1<br>1: 2 | 0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice.<br>1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line. |
| 1 | Not Used | Do not change the settings. |
| 2 | V.8 protocol<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | 0: V.8/V.34 communications will not be possible.<br>Note<br>▪ Do not set to 0 unless the line condition is always bad enough to slow down the data rate to 14.4 kbps or lower. |
| 3 | ECM frame size<br>0: 256 bytes<br>1: 64 bytes | Keep this bit at "0" in most cases. |
| 4 | CTC transmission conditions<br>0: After one PPR signal received<br>1: After four PPR signals received (ITU-T standard) | 0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps.<br>  <br>Ntransmit = Number of transmitted frames<br>Nresend = Number of frames to be retransmitted<br>1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving four PPRs.<br>PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals.<br>This bit is not effective in V.34 communications. |

| G3-2 Switch 03 (SP No. 1-106-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 5 | Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN)<br>0: No change 1: Fallback | 1: The machine's tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used. |
| 6 | Not used | Do not change the settings |
| 7 | Select detection of reverse polarity in ringing<br>0: Off<br>1: On | This switch is used to prevent reverse polarity in ringing on the phone line (applied to PSTN-G3 ringing). Do not change this setting<br>0: No detection (Outside Japan)<br>1: Detection (Inside Japan only) |

| G3-2 Switch 04 (SP No. 1-106-005) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-3 | Training error detection threshold | 0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits<br>If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded. |
| 4-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="7">G3-2 Switch 05 (SP No. 1-106-006)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="5">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="17">0-3</td><td colspan="5">Initial Tx modem rate (kbps)</td><td rowspan="17">These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission.<br>Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to change this for specific receivers.<br>If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually.<br>Cross reference<br>V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>kbps</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>4.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>7.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>9.6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>12.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>14.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>16.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>19.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>21.6</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>24.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>26.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>28.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>31.2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">G3-2 Switch 05 (SP No. 1-106-006)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">4-5</td><td colspan="3">Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 kbps.</td><td rowspan="6">These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>V.29</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.17</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>V.34</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>6-7</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="7">G3-2 Switch 06 (SP No. 1-106-007)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="5">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="12">0-3</td><td colspan="5">Initial Rx modem rate(kbps)</td><td rowspan="12">These bits set the initial starting modem rate for reception.<br>Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception.<br>If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually.<br>Cross reference<br>V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>kbps</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>4.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>7.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>9.6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>12.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>14.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>16.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>19.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>21.6</td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="7">G3-2 Switch 06 (SP No. 1-106-007)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="5">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5"></td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>24.0</td><td rowspan="5"></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>26.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>28.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>31.2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">4-7</td><td colspan="6">Modem types available for reception<br>The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode.<br>If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually.<br>Cross reference<br>V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td colspan="2">Types</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">G3-2 Switch 07 (SP No. 1-106-008)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">0-1</td><td colspan="3">PSTN cable equalizer<br>(tx mode: Internal)</td><td rowspan="8">Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange.<br>Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers.<br><br>Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs.<br>Communication error<br>Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.<br>Note<br>▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>None</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Low</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Medium</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">2-3</td><td colspan="3">PSTN cable equalizer<br>(rx mode: Internal)</td><td rowspan="8">Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange.<br>Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs.<br>Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc.<br>Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.<br>Note<br>▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>None</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Low</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Medium</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

| G3-2 Switch 07 (SP No. 1-106-008) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 4 | PSTN cable equalizer<br>(V.8/V.17 rx mode: External)<br>0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled | Keep this bit at "1". |
| 5-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

| |
|---|
| **G3-2 Switch 08** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **G3-2 Switch 09** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">G3-2 Switch 0A (SP No. 1-106-011)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">0-1</td><td colspan="3">Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data reception</td><td rowspan="6">These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time.<br>Try a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Value (ms)</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>200</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>400</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>800</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="3">Select cancellation of high-speed RX if carrier signal lost while receiving<br>0: Off<br>1: On</td><td>This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="3">Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception.<br>0: 5 s 1: 13 s</td><td>This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end.<br>Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

| G3-2 Switch 0A (SP No. 1-106-011) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 6 | Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode<br>0: 6 s 1: 12 s | When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20.<br>ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of CFR. |
| 7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |

| |
|---|
| **G3-2 Switch 0B**- Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **G3-2 Switch 0C**- Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **G3-2 Switch 0D** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **G3-2 Switch 0E** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **G3-2 Switch 0F** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

## 4.3.7 G4 INTERNAL SWITCHES

The G4 internal switches (SW00 to 1F) are displayed but do not change these settings.

## 4.3.8 G4 PARAMETER SWITCHES

The G4 parameter switches (SW00 to 0F) are displayed but do not change these settings.

## 4.3.9 IP FAX SWITCHES

| IP Fax Switch 00 (SP No. 1-111-001) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Not used | Do not change this setting. |
| 1 | IP Fax Transport<br>0: TCP, 1: UDP | Selects TCP or UDP protocol for IP-Fax |
| 2 | IP Fax single port selection<br>0: OFF, 1: ON (enable) | Selects single data port. |
| 3 | IP Fax double ports (single data port) selection<br>0: OFF, 1: ON (enable) | Selects whether IP-Fax uses a double port. |
| 4 | IP Fax Gatekeeper<br>0: OFF, 1: ON (enable) | Enables/disables the gatekeeper for IP-Fax. |
| 5 | IP Fax T30 bit signal reverse<br>0: LSB first, 1: MSB first | Reverses the T30 bit signal. |
| 6 | IP Fax max bit rate setting<br>0: Not affected, 1: Affected | When "0" is selected, the max bit rate does not affect the value of the DIS/DCS.<br>When "1" is selected, the max bit rate affects the value of the DIS/DCS. |
| 7 | IP Fax received telephone number confirmation<br>0: No confirmation, 1: Confirmation | When "0" is selected, fax data is received without checking the telephone number.<br>When "1" is selected, fax data is received only when confirming that the telephone number from the sender matches the registered telephone number in this machine. If this confirmation fails, the line is disconnected. |

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">IP Fax Switch 01 (SP No. 1-111-002)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No.</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th colspan="2">Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">0-3</td><td colspan="5">IP Fax delay level setting<br>Selects the acceptable delay level.<br>Level 0 is the highest quality<br>Default is "0000" (level 0).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Level 0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Level 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Level 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Level 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>4-7</td><td colspan="3">IP Fax preamble wait time setting</td><td colspan="2">Selects the preamble wait time.<br>[00 to 0f]<br>There are 16 values in this 4-bit binary switch combination.<br>Waiting time: set value level x 100 ms<br>Max: 0f (1500 ms) Min: 00 (No wait time)<br>The default is "0000" (00H).</td></tr>
</table>

| IP Fax Switch 02 (SP No. 1-111-003) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | IP Fax bit signal reverse setting<br>0: Maker code setting<br>1: Internal bit switch setting | When "0" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the maker code.<br>When "1" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the internal bit switch. When communicating between IP Fax devices, LSB first is selected.) |
| 1 | IP Fax transmission speed setting<br>0: Modem speed<br>1: No limitation | Selects the transmit speed for IP Fax communication. |
| 2 | SIP transport setting<br>0: TCP<br>1: UDP | This bit switch sets the transport that has priority for receiving IP Fax data.<br>This function is activated only when the sender has both TCP and UDP. |
| 3-7 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |

Bit Switches

| IP Fax Switch 03 (SP No. 1-111-004) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Effective field limitation for G3 standard function information<br>0: OFF, 1: 4byte (DIS) | Limits the effective field for standard G3 function information. |
| 1 | Switching between G3 standard and G3 non standard<br>0: Enable switching<br>1: G3 standard only | Enables/disables switching between G3 standard and G3 non-standard. |
| 2 | AI modem rate function<br>0: OFF, 1: ON (enable) | Enables/disables the AI modem rate. |
| 3 | ECM frame size selection at transmitting<br>0: 256byte, 1: 64byte | Selects the ECM frame size for sending. |
| 4 | DIS detection times for echo prevention<br>0: 1 time, 1: 2 times | Sets the number of times for DIS to detect echoes. |
| 5 | CTC transmission selection<br>0: PPRx1<br>1: PPRx4 | When "0" is selected, the transmission condition is decided by error frame numbers.<br>When "1" is selected, the transmission condition is based on the ITU-T method. |
| 6 | Shift down setting at receiving negative code<br>0: OFF, 1: ON | Selects whether to shift down when negative codes are received. |
| 7 | Not used | Do not change this setting. |

| IP Fax Switch 04 (SP No. 1-111-005) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0-3 | TCF error threshold | Sets the TCF error threshold level. [00 to 0f]<br>The default is "1111" (0fH). |
| 4-7 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |

| IP Fax Switch 05 (SP No. 1-111-006) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Function** | | | | | **Comments** |
| 0-3 | Modem bit rate setting for transmission (kbps) | | | | | Sets the modem bit rate for transmission. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps). |
| | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | kbps | |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2.4 | |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 4.8 | |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 7.2 | |
| | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 9.6 | |
| | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 12.0 | |
| | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 14.4 | |
| | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 16.8 | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 19.2 | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 21.6 | |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 24.0 | |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 26.4 | |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 28.8 | |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 31.2 | |

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">IP Fax Switch 05 (SP No. 1-111-006)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No.</th><th colspan="6">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>33.6</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">4-5</td><td colspan="5">Modem setting for transmission</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="6">Sets the modem type for transmission.<br>The default is "00" (V29).</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Bit 5</td><td colspan="2">Bit 4</td><td>Types</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">0</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>V29</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">0</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>V17</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>V34</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>6-7</td><td colspan="5">Not used</td><td colspan="2">Do not change these settings.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">IP Fax Switch 06 (SP No. 1-111-007)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No.</th><th colspan="4">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td>0-3</td><td colspan="5">Modem bit rate setting for reception<br>Sets the modem bit rate for reception. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps).</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">4-7</td><td colspan="5">Modem setting for reception<br>Sets the modem type for reception. The default is "0100" (V27ter, V29, V17).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td>Types</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter, V.29</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table>

| IP Fax Switch 07 (SP No. 1-111-008) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No.** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | TSI information<br>0: Not added, 1: Added | Adds or does not add TSI information to NSS(S). |
| 1 | DCN transmission setting at T1 timeout<br>0: Not transmitted<br>1: Transmitted | Transmits or does not transmit DCN at T1 timeout. |
| 2 | Not used | Do not change this setting. |
| 3 | Hang up setting at DIS reception disabled<br>0: No hang up<br>1: Hang up after transmitting DCN | Sets whether the machine disconnects after DIS reception. |
| 4 | Number of times for training<br>0: 1 time, 1: 2 times | Selects the number of times training is done at the same bit rate. |
| 5 | Space CSI transmission setting at no CSI registration<br>0: Not transmitted<br>1: Transmitted | When "0" is selected, frame data is enabled. When "1" is selected, the transmitted data is all spaces. |
| 6-7 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">IP Fax Switch 08 (SP No. 1-111-009)</th></tr>
<tr><th>No.</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">0-1</td><td colspan="3">T1 timer adjustment</td><td rowspan="6">Adjusts the T1 timer.<br>The default is "00" (35 seconds).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>35 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>40 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>50 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>60 s</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">2-3</td><td colspan="3">T4 timer adjustment</td><td rowspan="6">Adjust the T4 timer.<br>The default is "00" (3 seconds).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>3 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>3.5 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>4 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>5 s</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">4-5</td><td colspan="3">T0 timer adjustment</td><td rowspan="6">Adjusts the fail safe timer. This timer sets the interval between "setup" data transmission and T.38 phase decision. If your destination return is late on the network or G3 fax return is late, adjust the longer interval timer.<br>The default is "00" (75 seconds).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>75 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>120 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>180 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>240 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>6-7</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td><td>Do not change these settings.</td></tr>
</table>

# 4.4 NCU PARAMETERS

The following tables give the RAM addresses and the parameter calculation units that the machine uses for ringing signal detection and automatic dialing. The factory settings for each country are also given. Most of these must be changed by RAM read/write (SP2-102), but some can be changed using NCU Parameter programming (SP2-103, 104 and 105); if SP2-103, 104 and 105 can be used, this will be indicated in the Remarks column. The RAM is programmed in hex code unless (BCD) is included in the Unit column.

Note

- The following addresses describe settings for the standard NCU.
- Change the fourth digit from "5" to "6" (e.g. 680500 to 680600) for the settings for the first optional G3 interface unit and from "5" to "7" (e.g. 680700) for the settings for the second optional G3 interface unit.

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| 680500 | Country/Area code for NCU parameters | | |
| | Use the Hex value to program the country/area code directly into this address, or use the decimal value to program it using SP2-103-001 | | |

| Country/Area | Decimal | Hex | Country/Area | Decimal | Hex |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| France | 00 | 00 | Hong Kong | 20 | 14 |
| Germany | 01 | 01 | South Africa | 21 | 15 |
| UK | 02 | 02 | Australia | 22 | 16 |
| Italy | 03 | 03 | New Zealand | 23 | 17 |
| Austria | 04 | 04 | S'pore | 24 | 18 |
| Belgium | 05 | 05 | Malaysia | 25 | 19 |
| Denmark | 06 | 06 | China | 26 | 1A |
| Finland | 07 | 07 | Taiwan | 27 | 1B |
| Ireland | 08 | 08 | Korea | 28 | 1C |

NCU Parameters

| Address | Function | | | Unit | | | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Norway | 09 | 09 | Turkey | 32 | 20 | |
| | Sweden | 10 | 0A | Greece | 33 | 21 | |
| | Switz. | 11 | 0B | Hungary | 34 | 22 | |
| | Portugal | 12 | 0C | Czech | 35 | 23 | |
| | Country/Area | Decimal | Hex | Country/Area | Decimal | Hex | |
| | Holland | 13 | 0D | Poland | 36 | 24 | |
| | Spain | 14 | 0E | | | | |
| | Israel | 15 | 0F | | | | |
| | USA | 17 | 11 | | | | |
| 680501 | Line current detection time | | | 20 ms | | | Line current detection is disabled. Line current is not detected if 680501 contains FF. |
| 680502 | Line current wait time | | | | | | |
| 680503 | Line current drop detect time | | | | | | |
| 680504 | PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte) | | | Hz (BCD) | | | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680505 | PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte) | | | | | | |
| 680506 | PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte) | | | Hz (BCD) | | | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680507 | PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte) | | | | | | |
| 680508 | PSTN dial tone detection time | | | 20 ms | | | If 680508 contains FF(H), the machine pauses for the pause time (address 68050D / |
| 680509 | PSTN dial tone reset time (LOW) | | | | | | |
| 68050A | PSTN dial tone reset time (HIGH) | | | | | | |

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| 68050B | PSTN dial tone continuous tone time | | 68050E).<br>Italy: See Note 2. |
| 68050C | PSTN dial tone permissible drop time | | |
| 68050D | PSTN wait interval (LOW) | | |
| 68050E | PSTN wait interval (HIGH) | | |
| 68050F | PSTN ring-back tone detection time | 20 ms | Detection is disabled if this contains FF. |
| 680510 | PSTN ring-back tone off detection time | 20 ms | |
| 680511 | PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (LOW) | 20 ms | |
| 680512 | PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (HIGH) | 20 ms | |
| 680513 | PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680514 | PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte) | | |
| 680515 | PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680516 | PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte) | | |
| 680517 | PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680518 | PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte) | | |
| 680519 | PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone |

NCU Parameters

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| 68051A | PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte) | | detection is disabled. |
| 68051B | PABX dial tone detection time | 20 ms | If 68051B contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680520 / 680521). |
| 68051C | PABX dial tone reset time (LOW) | | |
| 68051D | PABX dial tone reset time (HIGH) | | |
| 68051E | PABX dial tone continuous tone time | | |
| 68051F | PABX dial tone permissible drop time | | |
| 680520 | PABX wait interval (LOW) | | |
| 680521 | PABX wait interval (HIGH) | | |
| 680522 | PABX ringback tone detection time | 20 ms | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680523 | PABX ringback tone off detection time | 20 ms | |
| 680524 | PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (LOW) | 20 ms | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680525 | PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (HIGH) | 20 ms | |
| 680526 | PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680527 | PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte) | | |
| 680528 | PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680529 | PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte) | | |
| 68052A | Busy tone ON time: range 1 | 20 ms | |

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| 68052B | Busy tone OFF time: range 1 | | |
| 68052C | Busy tone ON time: range 2 | | |
| 68052D | Busy tone OFF time: range 2 | | |
| 68052E | Busy tone ON time: range 3 | | |
| 68052F | Busy tone OFF time: range 3 | 20 ms | |
| 680530 | Busy tone ON time: range 4 | | |
| 680531 | Busy tone OFF time: range 4 | | |
| 680532 | Busy tone continuous tone detection time | | |
| 680533 | Busy tone signal state time tolerance for all ranges, and number of cycles required for detection (a setting of 4 cycles means that ON-OFF-ON or OFF-ON-OFF must be detected twice).<br>Tolerance (±) | | |
| | Bit 1 / Bit 0 | | |
| | 0 / 0 — 75% | | |
| | 0 / 1 — 50% | | |
| | 1 / 0 — 25% | | |
| | 1 / 1 — 12.5% | | |
| | Bits 2 and 3 must always be kept at 0.<br>Bits 7, 6, 5, 4 - number of cycles required for cadence detection | | |
| 680534 | International dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680535 | International dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte) | | |

NCU Parameters

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| 680536 | International dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680537 | International dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte) | | |
| 680538 | International dial tone detection time | 20 ms | If 680538 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (68053D / 68053E). Belgium: See Note 2. |
| 680539 | International dial tone reset time (LOW) | | |
| 68053A | International dial tone reset time (HIGH) | | |
| 68053B | International dial tone continuous tone time | | |
| 68053C | International dial tone permissible drop time | | |
| 68053D | International dial wait interval (LOW) | | |
| 68053E | International dial wait interval (HIGH) | | |
| 68053F | Country dial tone upper frequency limit (HIGH) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680540 | Country dial tone upper frequency limit (LOW) | | |
| 680541 | Country dial tone lower frequency limit (HIGH) | | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 680542 | Country dial tone lower frequency limit (LOW) | | |

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| 680543 | Country dial tone detection time | 20 ms | If 680543 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680548 / 680549). |
| 680544 | Country dial tone reset time (LOW) | | |
| 680545 | Country dial tone reset time (HIGH) | | |
| 680546 | Country dial tone continuous tone time | | |
| 680547 | Country dial tone permissible drop time | 20 ms | |
| 680548 | Country dial wait interval (LOW) | | |
| 680549 | Country dial wait interval (HIGH) | | |
| 68054A | Time between opening or closing the DO relay and opening the OHDI relay | 1 ms | See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-012 (parameter 11). |
| 68054B | Break time for pulse dialing | 1 ms | See Note 3. SP2-103-013 (parameter 12). |
| 68054C | Make time for pulse dialing | 1 ms | See Note 3. SP2-103-014 (parameter 13). |
| 68054D | Time between final OHDI relay closure and DO relay opening or closing | 1 ms | See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-015 (parameter 14). This parameter is only valid in Europe. |
| 68054E | Minimum pause between | 20 ms | See Note 3 and 8. |

NCU Parameters

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | dialed digits (pulse dial mode) | | SP2-103-016 (parameter 15). | |
| 68054F | Time waited when a pause is entered at the operation panel | | SP2-103-017 (parameter 16). See Note 3. | |
| 680550 | DTMF tone on time | 1 ms | SP2-103-018 (parameter 17). | |
| 680551 | DTMF tone off time | | SP2-103-019 (parameter 18). | |
| 680552 | Tone attenuation level of DTMF signals while dialing | -N x 0.5 –3.5 dBm | SP2-103-020 (parameter 19). See Note 5. | |
| 680553 | Tone attenuation value difference between high frequency tone and low frequency tone in DTMF signals | -dBm x 0.5 | SP2-103-021 (parameter 20). The setting must be less than –5dBm, and should not exceed the setting at 680552h above. See Note 5. | |
| 680554 | PSTN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialling | -N x 0.5 –3.5 dBm | SP2-103-022 (parameter 21). See Note 5. | |
| 680555 | ISDN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialling | -dBm x 0.5 | See Note 5 | |
| 680556 | Not used | | Do not change the settings. | |
| 680557 | Time between 68054Dh (NCU parameter 14) and 68054Eh | 1 ms | This parameter takes effect when the country | |

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| | (NCU parameter 15) | | code is set to France. |
| 680558 | Not used | | Do not change the setting. |
| 680559 | Grounding time (ground start mode) | 20 ms | The Gs relay is closed for this interval. |
| 68055A | Break time (flash start mode) | 1 ms | The OHDI relay is open for this interval. |
| 68055B | International dial access code (High) | BCD | For a code of 100:<br>68055B - F1<br>68055C - 00 |
| 68055C | International dial access code (Low) | | |
| 68055D | PSTN access pause time | 20 ms | This time is waited for each pause input after the PSTN access code. If this address contains FF[H], the pause time stored in address 68054F is used.<br>Do not set a number more than 7 in the UK. |
| 68055E | Progress tone detection level, and cadence detection enable flags | | |

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | dBm |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | -25.0 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | -35.0 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | -30.0 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | -40.0 |

Bits 2, 0 - See Note 2.

NCU Parameters

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 68055F to 680564 | Not used | | Do not change the settings. | |
| 680565 | Long distance call prefix (HIGH) | BCD | For a code of 0:<br>680565 - FF<br>680566 - FF | |
| 680566 | Long distance call prefix (LOW) | BCD | | |
| 680567 to 680571 | Not used | | Do not change the settings. | |
| 680572 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, upper limit | 1000/ N (Hz). | SP2-103-003 (parameter 02). | |
| 680573 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, lower limit | | SP2-103-004 (parameter 03). | |
| 680574 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, upper limit | | SP2-103-005 (parameter 04). | |
| 680575 | Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, lower limit | | SP2-103-006 (parameter 05). | |
| 680576 | Number of rings until a call is detected | 1 | SP2-103-007 (parameter 06).<br>The setting must not be zero. | |
| 680577 | Minimum required length of the first ring | 20 ms | See Note 4.<br>SP2-103-008 (parameter 07). | |
| 680578 | Minimum required length of the second and subsequent rings | 20 ms | SP2-103-009 (parameter 08). | |
| 680579 | Ringing signal detection reset time (LOW) | 20 ms | SP2-103-010 (parameter 09). | |

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| 68057A | Ringing signal detection reset time (HIGH) | | SP2-103-011 (parameter 10). |
| 68057B to 680580 | Not used | | Do not change the settings. |
| 680581 | Interval between dialing the last digit and switching the Oh relay over to the external telephone when dialing from the operation panel in handset mode. | 20 ms | Factory setting: 500 ms |
| 680582 | Bits 0 and 1 - Handset off-hook detection time | | |
| | Bit 1 / Bit 0 / Setting | | |
| | 0 / 0 / 200 ms | | |
| | 0 / 1 / 800 ms | | |
| | Other / Not used | | |
| | Bits 2 and 3 - Handset on-hook detection time | | |
| | Bit 3 / Bit 2 / Setting | | |
| | 0 / 0 / 200 ms | | |
| | 0 / 1 / 800 ms | | |
| | Other / Not used | | |
| | Bits 4 to 7 - Not used | | |
| 680583 to 6805A0 | Not used | | Do not change the settings. |
| 6805A1 | Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (high | BCD (Hz) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone |

NCU Parameters

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| | byte) | | detection is disabled. |
| 6805A2 | Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (low byte) | | |
| 6805A3 | Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (high byte) | BCD (Hz) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 6805A4 | Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (low byte) | | |
| 6805A5 | CED detection time | 20 ms<br>± 20 ms | Factory setting: 200 ms |
| 6805A6 | Acceptable CNG detection frequency upper limit (high byte) | BCD (Hz) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 6805A7 | Acceptable CNG detection frequency upper limit (low byte) | | |
| 6805A8 | Acceptable CNG detection frequency lower limit (high byte) | BCD (Hz) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 6805A9 | Acceptable CNG detection frequency lower limit (low byte) | | |
| 6805AA | Not used | | Do not change the setting. |
| 6805AB | CNG on time | 20 ms | Factory setting: 500 ms |
| 6805AC | CNG off time | 20 ms | Factory setting: 3000 ms |
| 6805AD | Number of CNG cycles required for detection | | The data is coded in the same way as address 680533. |

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| 6805AE | Not used | | Do not change the settings. |
| 6805AF | Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (high byte) | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 6805B0 | Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (low byte) | | |
| 6805B1 | Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (high byte) | Hz(BCD) | If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled. |
| 6805B2 | Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (low byte) | | |
| 6805B3 | Detection time for 800 Hz AI short protocol tone | 20 ms | Factory setting: 360 ms |
| 6805B4 | PSTN: Tx level from the modem | -N – 3 dBm | SP2-103-002 (parameter 01). |
| 6805B5 | PSTN: 1100 Hz tone transmission level | - N 6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B5 –3.5 (dB)<br>See Note 7. | |
| 6805B6 | PSTN: 2100 Hz tone transmission level | - N6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B6 –3 (dB)<br>See Note 7. | |
| 6805B7 | PABX: Tx level from the modem | - dBm | |
| 6805B8 | PABX: 1100 Hz tone transmission level | - N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B8 (dB) | |

NCU Parameters

| Address | Function | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| 6805B9 | PABX: 2100 Hz tone transmission level | - N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B9 (dB) | |
| 6805BD | Modem turn-on level (incoming signal detection level) | -37-0.5N (dBm) | |
| 6805BE to 6805C6 | Not used | | Do not change the settings. |
| 6805C7 | Bits 0 to 3 – Not used.<br>Bit 4 – V.34 protocol dump - 0: Simple, 1: Detailed (default)<br>Bits 5 to 7 – Not used. | | |
| 6805C8 to 6805D9 | Not used | | Do not change the settings. |
| 6805DA | T.30 T1 timer | 1 s | |
| 6805E0 bit 3 | Maximum wait time for post message | 0: 12 s<br>1: 30 s | 1: Maximum wait time for post message (EOP/EOM/MPS) can be changed to 30 s.<br>Change this bit to "1" if communication errors occur frequently during V.17 reception. |
| 6805E3 | Voltage setting to detect off-hook for voltage/DP detection for an externally connected line. | 0: Auto<br>1: Fixed V | Do not change these settings |
| | Here is a summary of the fixed voltage settings (1: Fixed) for an externally connected line. | | |
| | Bit 7 / Bit 6 / Bit 5 / Bit 4 | | |

| Address | Function | | | | Unit | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Not used | |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2.75 V | |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 5.5 V | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 22 V | |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 41.25 V | |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6805E4 | Bit 1 sets the level of the call signal, Bit 3 sets the call signal impedance | Bit 1 | 0 | RT=0 (Low) | |
| | | | 1 | RT=1 (High | |
| | | Bit 3 | 0 | RZ=0 (High) | |
| | | | 1 | RZ=1 (Composite) | |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6805E5 | Bit 0 sets the ring detection method, Bit 1 sets the ring detection method when fixed. | Bit 0 | 0 | RT=0 (Low) | If any setting is changed, select a setting that is higher than the default setting. |
| | | | 1 | RT=1 (High | |
| | | Bit 1 | 0 | Use RDTP | |
| | | | 1 | Use RDTN | |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6805E5 | Here is a summary of the voltages for the detection of off-hook for DP detection. | | | | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Not used |
| | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2.75 V |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 5.5 V |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 22 V |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 41.25 V |

**Notes**

1. If a setting is not required, store FF in the address.
2. Italy and Belgium only
   RAM address 68055E: the lower four bits have the following meaning.
   Bit 2 - 1: International dial tone cadence detection enabled (Belgium)
   Bit 1 - Not used
   Bit 0 - 1: PSTN dial tone cadence detection enabled (Italy)
   If bit 0 or bit 2 is set to 1, the functions of the following RAM addresses are changed.
   680508 (if bit 0 = 1) or 680538 (if bit 2 = 1): tolerance for on or off state
   duration (%), and number of cycles required for detection, coded as in address 680533.
   68050B (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053B (if bit 2 = 1): on time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)
   68050C (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053C (if bit 2 = 1): off time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)
3. Pulse dial parameters (addresses 68054A to 68054F) are the values for 10 pps. If 20 pps is used, the machine automatically compensates.
4. The first ring may not be detected until 1 to 2.5 wavelengths after the time specified by this parameter.
5. The calculated level must be between 0 and 10.
   The attenuation levels calculated from RAM data are:
   High frequency tone: – 0.5 x N680552/680554–3.5 dBm
   – 0.5 x N680555 dBm
   Low frequency tone:– 0.5 x (N680552/680554 + N680553) –3.5 dBm
   – 0.5 x (N680555 + N680553) dBm
   N680552, for example, means the value stored in address 680552(H)
6. Ds and Di relay timing
   68054A: Europe - Between Ds opening and Di opening, France - Between Ds closing and Di opening
   68054D: Europe - Between Ds closing and Di closing, France - Between Ds opening and Di closing
7. Tone signals which frequency is lower than 1500Hz (e.g., 800Hz tone for AI short protocol) refer to the setting at 6805B5h. Tones which frequency is higher than 1500Hz refer to the setting at 6805B6h.
8. 68054A, 68054D, 68054E: The actual inter-digit pause (pulse dial mode) is the sum of the period specified by the RAM addresses 68054A, 68054D, and 68054E.

# 4.5 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS

There are two sets of transmission parameters: Fax and E-mail
Each Quick Dial Key and Speed Dial Code has eight bytes of programmable parameters allocated to it. If transmissions to a particular machine often experience problems, store that terminal's fax number as a Quick Dial or Speed Dial, and adjust the parameters allocated to that number.
The programming procedure will be explained first. Then, the eight bytes will be described.

## 4.5.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE

1. Set the bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 1.
2. Enter Address Book Management mode ([User Tools]> System Settings> Key Operator> Address Book Management).
3. Select the address book that you want to program.
4. For the fax parameter, select "Fax Dest.", for the E-mail parameter, select "E-mail", then press "Start". Make sure that the LED of the Start button lights green.
5. The settings for the switch 00 are now displayed. Press the bit number that you wish to change.
6. To scroll through the parameter switches, either:
7. Do one of the following:
   Select the next switch: press "Next"
   or
   Select the previous switch: "Prev." until the correct switch is displayed. Then go back to step 6.
8. After the setting is changed, press "OK".
9. After finishing, reset bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 0.

## 4.5.2 PARAMETERS

### *Fax Parameters*

The initial settings of the following fax parameters are all FF(H). This means that all the parameters are disabled.

| Switch 00 |
| --- |
| **Function and Comments** |
| ITU-T T1 time (for PSTN G3 mode)<br>If the connection time to a particular terminal is longer than the NCU parameter setting, adjust this byte. The T1 time is the value stored in this byte (in hex code), multiplied by 1 second.<br>Range: 0 to 120 s (00h to 78h)<br>FFh - The local NCU parameter factory setting is used.<br>Do not program a value between 79h and FEh. |

**Switch 01**

<table>
<tr><th>No</th><th>Function</th><th>Function</th></tr>
<tr><td>0<br>to<br>4</td><td>Tx level<br><table><tr><th>Bit 4</th><th>Bit 3</th><th>Bit 2</th><th>Bit 1</th><th>Bit 0</th><th></th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>-1</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>-2</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>-3</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>-4</td></tr><tr><td colspan="6">. . . and so on until . . .</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>-15</td></tr></table>If all five bits are at 1, the setting is ‘Disabled’.</td><td>If communication with a particular remote terminal often contains errors, the signal level may be inappropriate. Adjust the Tx level for communications with that terminal until the results are better.<br>If the setting is “Disabled”, the NCU parameter 01 setting is used.<br>Note<br>▪ Do not use settings other than listed on the left.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5<br>to<br>7</td><td>Cable equalizer<br><table><tr><th>Bit 7</th><th>Bit 6</th><th>Bit 5</th><th></th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>None</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Low</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Medium</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>High</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Disabled</td></tr></table></td><td>Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange when calling the number stored in this Quick/Speed Dial.<br>Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs.<br>▪ Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc.<br>▪ Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.<br>Note<br>▪ Do not use settings other</td></tr>
</table>

Dedicated Transmission Parameters

| Switch 01 | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Function** |
| | | than listed on the left.<br>▪ If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used. |

<table>
<tr><th colspan="7">Switch 02</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="5">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="18">0<br>to<br>3</td><td colspan="5">Initial Tx modem rate (kbps)</td><td rowspan="18">If training with a particular remote terminal always takes too long, the initial modem rate may be too high. Reduce the initial Tx modem rate using these bits.<br>For the settings 14.4 or kbps slower, Switch 04 bit 4 must be changed to 0.<br>Note<br>▪ Other settings: Not used<br>If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>4.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>7.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>9.6</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>12.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>14.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>16.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>19.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>21.6</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>24.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>26.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>28.8</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>31.2</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">If all bits are at ‘1’, the setting is ‘Disabled’<br>Note<br>▪ Other settings: Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>4-7</td><td colspan="5">Not used</td><td>Do not change the settings.</td></tr>
</table>

Dedicated Transmission Parameters

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Switch 03</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">0-1</td><td colspan="3">Inch-mm conversion before tx</td><td rowspan="8">The machine uses inch-based resolutions for scanning. If “inch only” is selected, the printed copy may be slightly distorted at the other end if that machine uses mm-based resolutions.<br>If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Inch-mm conversion available</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Inch only</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">2-3</td><td colspan="3">DIS/NSF detection method</td><td rowspan="8">(0, 1): Use this setting if echoes on the line are interfering with the set-up protocol at the start of transmission. The machine will then wait for the second DIS or NSF before sending DCS or NSS.<br>If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>First DIS or NSF</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Second DIS or NSF</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="3">V.8 protocol<br>0: Off<br>1: Disabled</td><td>If transmissions to a specific destination always end at a lower modem rate (14,400 bps or lower), disable V.8 protocol so as not to use V.34 protocol.<br>0: V.34 communication will not be possible.<br>If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Switch 03</th></tr>
<tr><th>No</th><th colspan="3">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="3">Compression modes available in transmit mode<br>0: MH only<br>1: Disabled</td><td>This bit determines the capabilities that are informed to the other terminal during transmission.<br>If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">6<br>7</td><td colspan="3">ECM during transmission</td><td rowspan="8">For example, if ECM is switched on but is not wanted when sending to a particular terminal, use the (0, 0) setting.<br>Note that V.8/V.34 protocol and JBIG compression are automatically disabled if ECM is disabled.<br>If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Off</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>On</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

| |
|---|
| **Switch 04** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 05** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 06** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 07** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 08** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 09** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

## *E-mail Parameters*

The initial settings of the following e-mail parameters are all "0" (all parameters disabled).

| Switch 00 | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | HM Compression mode for e-mail attachments<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Switches HM compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending. |
| 1 | HR Compression mode for e-mail attachments<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Switches HR compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending. |
| 2 | MMR Compression mode for e-mail attachments<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Switches MMR compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending. |
| 3-6 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |
| 7 | Designates the bits to reference for compression method of e-mail attachments<br>0: Registered (Bit 0 to 6)<br>1: No registration. | The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02. |

| Switch 01 | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Original width of e-mail attachment: A4<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A4. |
| 1 | Original width of e-mail attachment: B4<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as B4. |
| 2 | Original width of e-mail attachment: A3<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A3. |
| 3-6 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |
| 7 | Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments<br>0: Registered (Bit 0 to 6)<br>1: No registration. | The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02. |

| Switch 02 | | |
|---|---|---|
| **No** | **Function** | **Comments** |
| 0 | Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 100<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x100. |
| 1 | Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 200<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 200. |
| 2 | Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 400<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 400. |
| 3 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |
| 4 | Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 400 x 400<br>0: Off<br>1: On | Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 400 x 400. |
| 5-6 | Not used | Do not change these settings. |
| 7 | Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments<br>0: Registered (Bit 0 to 6)<br>1: No registration. | The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02, 04 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02, 04. |

| |
|---|
| **Switch 03** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 04** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 05** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 06** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 07** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 08** - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| **Switch 09** - Not used (do not change the settings) |

# 4.6 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

Note

- Do not change the settings which are marked as “Not used” or “Read only.”

**680001 to 680004(H) -** ROM version (Read only)

- 680001(H) - Revision number (BCD)
- 680002(H) - Year (BCD)
- 680003(H) - Month (BCD)
- 680004(H) - Day (BCD)

**680006 to 680015(H) -** Machine’s serial number (16 digits - ASCII)

**680018(H) -** Total program checksum (low)

**680019(H) -** Total program checksum (high)

**680020 to 68003F(H) -** System bit switches

**680050 to 68005F(H) -** Printer bit switches

**680060 to 68007F(H) -** Communication bit switches

**680080 to 68008F(H) -** G3 bit switches

**680090 to 68009F(H) -** G3-2 bit switches

**6800A0 to 6800AF(H) -** G3-3 bit switches

**6800D0(H) -** User parameter switch 00 (SWUER_00): Not used

**6800D1(H) -** User parameter switch 01 (SWUSR_01): Not used

**6800D2(H) -** User parameter switch 02 (SWUSR_02)

- Bit 0: Forwarding mark printing on forwarded messages, 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 1: Center mark printing on received copies (this switch is not printed on the user parameter list), 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 2: Reception time printing (this switch is not printed on the user parameter list), 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 3: TSI print on received messages, 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 4: Checkered mark printing (this switch is not printed on the user parameter list), 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 5: Not used
- Bit 6: Not used
- Bit 7: Not used

**6800D3(H) -** User parameter switch 03 (SWUSR_03: Automatic report printout)

- Bit 0: Transmission result report (memory transmissions), 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 1: Not used
- Bit 2: Memory storage report, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 3: Polling reserve report (polling reception), 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 4: Polling result report (polling reception), 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 5: Transmission result report (immediate transmissions), 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 6: Polling clear report, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 7: Journal, 0: Off, 1: On

**6800D4(H) -** User parameter switch 04 (SWUSR_04: Automatic report printout)

- Bit 0: Automatic confidential reception report output, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 1: Automatic communication failure report and transfer result report output, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bits 2 to 3: Not used
- Bit 4: Indicates the parties, 0: Not indicated, 1: Indicated
- Bit 5: Include sender's name on reports, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 6: Not used
- Bit 7: Inclusion of a sample image on reports, 0: Off, 1: On

**6800D5(H) -** User parameter switch 05 (SWUSR_05)

- Bit 0: Substitute reception when the base copier is in an SC condition, 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
- Bits 1 and 2: Condition for substitute rx when the machine cannot print messages (Paper end, toner end, jam, and during night mode)

| Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Setting |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | The machine receives all the fax messages. |
| 0 | 1 | The machine receives fax messages with RTI or CSI. |
| 1 | 0 | The machine receives fax messages with the same ID code. |
| 1 | 1 | The machine does not receive anything. |

- Bit 3: Not used
- Bit 4: Not used
- Bit 5: Just size printing, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 6: Not used
- Bit 7: Add paper display when a cassette is empty. 0: Off, 1: On

**6800D6(H) -** User parameter switch 06 (SWUSR_06)

- Bits 0 to 5: Not used
- Bit 6: Scan sequence in Book transmission, 0: Left page then right page, 1: Right page then left page
- Bit 7: Not used

**6800D7(H) -** User parameter switch 07 (SWUSR_07)

- Bits 0 and 1: Not used
- Bit 2: Parallel memory transmission, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bits 3 to 7: Not used

**6800D8(H) -** User parameter switch 08 (SWUSR_08)

- Bits 0 and 1: Not used
- Bit 2: Authorized reception
  0: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are accepted.
  1: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are accepted.
- Bits 3 to 7: Not used

**6800D9(H) -** User parameter switch 09 (SWUSR_09): Not used

**6800DA(H) -** User parameter switch 10 (SWUSR_0A)

- Bit 0: Not used
- Bit 1: 2 into 1, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 2: Not used
- Bit 3: Page reduction, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 4: Not used
- Bit 5: Reception file printout, 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 6: Use both e-mail notification and printed reports to confirm the transmission results, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 7: Not used

**6800DB(H) -** User parameter switch 11 (SWUSR_0B)

- Bit 0: Not used
- Bit 1: Not used
- Bits 2 to 5: Not used
- Bit 6: Printout of messages received while acting as a forwarding station, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 7: Polling Standby duration, 0: Once, 1: No limit

**6800DC(H) -** User parameter switch 12 (SWUSR_0C): Not used

**6800DD(H) -** User parameter switch 13 (SWUSR_0D): Not used

**6800DE(H) -** User parameter switch 14 (SWUSR_0E)

- Bit 0: Message printout while the machine is in Night Printing mode, 0: On, 1: Off
- Bit 1: Maximum document length detection
  0: Double letter, 1: Longer than double-letter (well log) – up to 1,200 mm
- Bit 2: Batch transmission, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 3: Fax mode settings, such as resolution, before a mode key (Copy, Fax, Printer, or Scanner) is pressed, 0: Not cleared, 1: Cleared
- Bits 4 to 6: Not used
- Bit 7: Manual service call (sends the system parameter list to the service station), 0: Off, 1: On

**6800DF(H) -** User parameter switch 15 (SWUSR_0F)

Note

- This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.

Bits 0, 1 and 2: Cassette for fax printout

| Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1st paper feed station |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 2nd paper feed station |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 3rd paper feed station |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 4th paper feed station |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | LCT |

Service RAM Addresses

Other settings: Not used

- Bits 3 and 4: Not used
- Bit 5: Using the cassette specified by bits 0, 1 and 2 above only, 0: On, 1: Off
- Bits 6 and 7: Not used

**6800E0(H) –** User parameter switch 16 (SWUSR_10)

Note

- This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.

- Bits 0 and 1: Not used
- Bit 2: Paper size selection priority for an A4 size fax message when A4/LT size paper is not available, 0: A3 has priority, 1: B4 has priority
- Bits 3 to 7: Not used

**6800E1(H) –** User parameter switch 17 (SWUSR_11)

- Bit 0: IFAX Group Destination Selection/Release Method

| | |
|---|---|
| 0 | Priority Select Mode |
| | Select the priority destination according to input mode. The Group button reflects either email or fax input mode. Released as soon as the entry mode is selected, regardless of the current entry mode. |
| 1 | All Select Mode |
| | Acquires all registered members regardless of entry mode. If both email and fax are registered, both are selected. The Group button reflects either email or fax input mode. All registered members are released, regardless of the entry mode. If both email/fax are registered, both are released. |

- Bit 1: Not used
- Bit 2: Inclusion of the “Add” button when a sequence of Quick/Speed dials is selected for broadcasting, 0:Not needed, 1: Needed
- Bits 3 to 6: Not used
- Bit 7: Press “Start” key without an original when using the on hook dial or the external telephone

  0: Displays “Cannot detect original size”

  1: Receives fax messages.

**6800E2(H) -** User parameter switch 18 (SWUSR_12)

- Bit 0: TTI date, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 1: TTI sender, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 2: TTI file number, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 3: TTI page number, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 4 to 7: Not used

**6800E3(H) -** User parameter switch 19 (SWUSR_13)

- Bit 0: Offset sort function for the fax (only using the shift tray on the 1,000 sheet finisher), 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 1: Journal format
  0: The Journal is separated into transmissions and receptions
  1: The Journal is separated into G3-1, G3-2, and G3-3 communications
- Bit 2: Action when the paper cassette that was selected by the specified cassette selection feature becomes empty.
  (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)
  0: The machine will not print any received files until paper is added.
  1: The machine will use other cassettes to print received files that are not specified by this feature.
- Bit 3: 90° image rotation during B5 portrait Tx, 0: Off, 1: On
  (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)
- Bit 4: Reduction of sample images on reports to 50% in the main scan and sub-scan directions. (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)
  0: Technician adjustment (printer switch 0E bits 3 and 4)
  1: 50% reduction
- Bit 5: Use of A5 size paper for reports (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)
  0: Off, 1: On
- Bits 6 and 7: Not used

**6800E4(H) -** User parameter switch 20 (SWUSR_14)

- Bit 0: Automatic printing of the LAN fax result report, 0: Off, 1: On
- Bit 1: Not used
- Bits 2 to 5: Store documents in memory which could not be printed from PC fax (LAN fax) driver

| Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Setting (minutes) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| . . . and so on, until . . . | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 14 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 15 |

- Bits 6 and 7: Not used.

**6800E5(H) -** User parameter switch 21 (SWUSR_15)

- Bit 0: Print results of sending reception notice request message, 0: Disabled (print only when error occurs), 1: Enabled
- Bit 1: Respond to e-mail reception acknowledgment request, 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 2: Not used
- ⇒ Bit 3: File format for forwarded folders and E-mail, 0: TIFF, 1:PDF
- Bit 4: Transmit Journal by E-mail, 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 5: Not used
- Bit 6: Network error display, 0: Displayed, 1: Not displayed
- Bit 7: Transmit error mail notification, 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

**6800E6(H) -** User parameter switch 22 (SWUSR_16)

Note

- This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.

- Bit 0: Dial tone detection (PSTN 1), 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 1: Dial tone detection (PSTN 2), 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 2: Dial tone detection (PSTN 3), 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bits 3 to 7: Not used

**6800E7(H) -** User parameter switch 23 (SWUSR_17) : Not used

**6800E8(H) -** User parameter switch 24 (SWUSR_18)

- Bits 0 and 1: File retention time (Cross reference: System switch 02 bit 4)

| Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Setting |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | File retention impossible |
| 0 | 1 | 24 hours |
| 1 | 0 | File retention impossible |
| 1 | 1 | 72 hours |

- Bits 2 to 7: Not used

**6800E9(H) -** User parameter switch 25 (SWUSR_19)

- Bit 0 and 1: Not used
- Bit 2: Not used
- Bit 3: Not used
- Bit 4: RDS operation

  0: Not acceptable

  1: Acceptable for the limit specified by system switch 03

  Note

  - This bit is only effective when RDS operation can be selected by the user (see system switch 02).
- Bits 5 to 7: Not used

**6800EA(H) to 6800EF(H) -** User parameter switches 26 to 31 (SWUSR_1A to 1F): Not used

**6800F0(H) -** User parameter switch 32 (SWUSR_20)

- Bit 0: Quotation priority for a destination when there is no destination of the specified type

  0: Paper output priority

  Priority order

  1. IP-fax destination, 2. Fax Number, 3. E-mail address, 4. Folder

  1: Electric output order

  Priority order

  1. E-mail address, 2. Folder, 3. IP-fax destination, 4. Fax number
- Bits 1 to 7: Not used

**6800F1(H) -** User parameter switch 33 (SWUSR_21): Not used

Service RAM Addresses

**6800F2(H) -** User parameter switch 34 (SWUSR_22)

- Bit 0: Gatekeeper server used with IP-Fax, 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
- Bit 1: SIP server used with IP-Fax, 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

**680100 to 68010F(H) -** G4 Parameter Switches – Not used

**680110 to 68012F(H) -** G4 Internal Switches – Not used

**680170 to 68017F(H) -** IFAX Switches

**680180 to 68018F(H) -** IP-FAX Switches

**680190 to 6801AF(H) -** Service station's fax number (SP3-101)

**6801B0 to 6801B9(H) -** Own fax PABX extension number

**6801BA to 6801C3(H) -** Own fax number (PSTN)

**6801C4 to 6801D7(H) -** Own fax number (ISDN G4) – Not used

**6801D8 to 6801E3(H) -** The first subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used

**6801E4 to 6801EF(H) -** The second subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used

**6801F0 to 6801FB(H) -** The first subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used

**6801FC to 680207(H) -** The second subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used

**680208 to 68021B(H) -** PSTN-1 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

**68021C to 68022F(H) -** PSTN-2 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

**680230 to 680246(H) -** PSTN-3 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

**680247 to 680286(H) -** TTI 1 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

**680287 to 6802C6(H) -** TTI 2 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

**6802C7 to 680306(H) -** TTI 3 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

**680307 to 68031A(H) -** PSTN-1 CSI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)

**68031B to 68032E(H) -** PSTN-2 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII)

**68032F to 680342(H) -** PSTN-3 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII)

**680343(H) -** Number of PSTN-1 CSI characters (Hex)

**680344(H) -** Number of PSTN-2 CSI characters (Hex)

**680345(H) -** Number of PSTN-3 CSI characters (Hex)-

- If the number of characters is less than the maximum (20 for RTI, 64 for TTI), add a stop code (00[H]) after the last character.

**680380 to 680387(H) -** Last power off time (Read only)

- 680380(H) - 01(H) - 24-hour clock, 00(H) - 12-hour clock (AM), 02(H) - 12-hour clock (PM)
- 680381(H) - Year (BCD)
- 680382(H) - Month (BCD)
- 680383(H) - Day (BCD)
- 680384(H) - Hour

- 680385(H) - Minute
- 680386(H) - Second
- 680387(H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday, . . . and so on until . . ., 06: Sunday

**680394(H) -** Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)

- Bit 0: Page Memory, 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
- Bit 1: SAF Memory, 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
- Bits 2 to 7: Not used

**680395(H) -** Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)

- Bits 0 to 3: Not used
- Bit 4: G3-2, 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
- Bit 5: G3-3, 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
- Bit 6 and 7: Not used

**680406 to 68040A -** Option G3 board (G3-2) ROM information (Read only)

- 680406(H) - Suffix (BCD)
- 680407(H) - Version (BCD)
- 680408(H) - Year (BCD)
- 680409(H) - Month (BCD)
- 68040A(H) - Day (BCD)

**68040B to 68040F -** Option G3 board (G3-3) ROM information (Read only)

- 68040B(H) - Suffix (BCD)
- 68040C(H) - Version (BCD)
- 68040D(H) - Year (BCD)
- 68040E(H) - Month (BCD)
- 68040F(H) - Day (BCD)

**680410(H) -** G3-1 Modem ROM version (Read only)

**680412(H) -** G3-2 Modem ROM version (Read only)

**680414(H) -** G3-3 Modem ROM version (Read only)

**680420(H) -** Number of multiple sets print (Read only)

**680476(H) -** Time for economy transmission (hour in 24h clock format - BCD)

**680477(H) -** Time for economy transmission (minute - BCD)

**680492(H) -** Transmission monitor volume, 00 - 07(H)

**680493(H) -** Reception monitor volume, 00 - 07(H)

**680494(H) -** On-hook monitor volume, 00 - 07(H)

**680495(H) -** Dialing monitor volume, 00 - 07(H)

**680496(H) -** Buzzer volume, 00 - 07(H)

Service RAM Addresses

**680497(H) -** Beeper volume, 00 - 07(H)

**69ED04 to 69F003(H) -** SIP server address (Read only)

- 69ED04(H) - Proxy server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
- 69ED84(H) - Proxy server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
- 69EE04(H) - Redirect server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
- 69EE84(H) - Redirect server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
- 69EF04(H) - Registrar server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
- 69EF84(H) - Registrar server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

**69F004(H) -** Gatekeeper server address - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

**69F084(H) -** Gatekeeper server address - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

**69F104(H) -** Alias Number (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

**69F184(H) -** SIP user name (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

**69F204(H) -** Gateway address information (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

**6A0DC0(H) -** Stand-by port number for H.232 connection

**6A0DC2(H) -** Stand-by port number for SIP connection

**6A0DC4(H) -** RAS port number

**6A0DC6(H) -** Gatekeeper port number

**6A0DC8(H) -** Port number of data waiting for T.38

**6A0DCA(H) -** Port number of SIP server

**6A0DCC(H) -** Priority for SIP and H.323, 0: H.323, 1: SIP

**6A0DCD(H) -** SIP function, 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

**6A0DCE(H) -** H.323 function, 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

**6BEBFE(H) -** Dial tone detection frequency – Upper limit (High)

Defaults: NA: 06, EU: 06, ASIA: 06

**6BEBFF(H) -** Dial tone detection frequency – Upper Limit (Low)

Defaults: NA: 50, EU: 50, ASIA: 50

**6BEC00(H) -** Dial tone detection frequency – Lower Limit (High)

Defaults: NA: 03, EU: 02, ASIA: 02

**6BEC01(H) -** Dial tone detection frequency – Lower Limit (Low)

Defaults: NA: 60, EU: 90, ASIA: 90

**6BEC02(H) -** Dial tone detection waiting time (20 ms)

Defaults: NA: 64, EU 64, ASIA: 64

**6BEC03 to 6BEC04 -** Dial tone detection monitoring time (20 ms)

Defaults

| Area | 6BEC03 | 6BEC04 |
|---|---|---|
| NA | F4 | 01 |
| EU | F4 | 01 |
| ASIA | F4 | 01 |

**6BEC05(H) -** Dial tone detect judge time (20 ms)

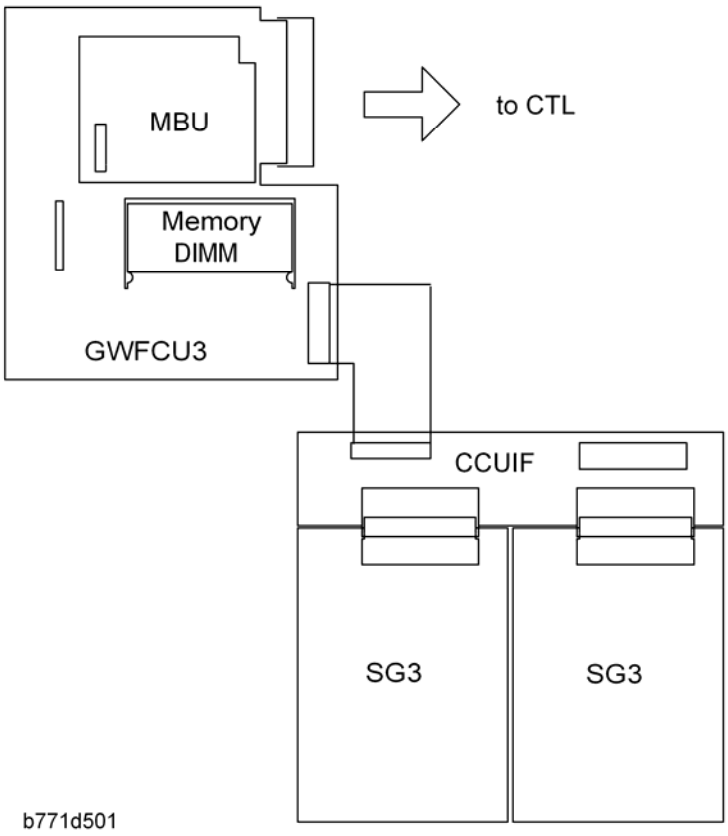
Defaults: NA: 64, EU: 1B, ASIA: 32

**6BEC06(H) -** Dial tone disconnect permission time (20 ms)

Defaults: NA: 11, EU: 0F, ASIA: 11

# 5. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

## 5.1 OVERVIEW




The basic fax unit consists of two PCBs: an FCU and an MBU.

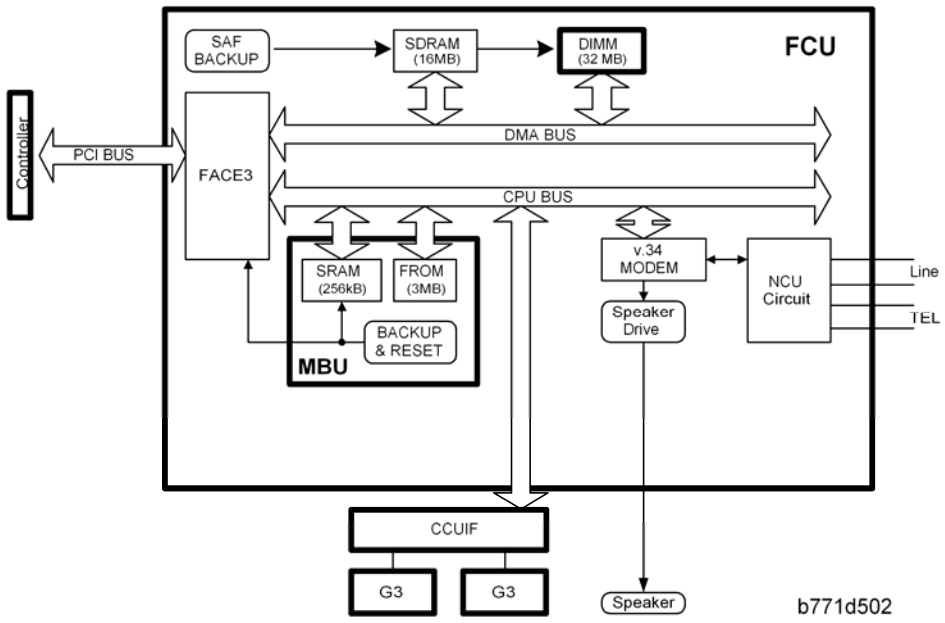
The FCU controls all the fax communications and fax features, in cooperation with the controller board. The MBU contains the ROM and SRAM. Also, the FCU has an NCU circuit.

Fax Options:

- Extra G3 Interface option: This provides one more analog line interface. This allows full dual access. Two extra G3 interface options can be installed.
- Memory Expansion: This expands the SAF memory and the page memory (used for image rotation); without this expansion, the page memory is not big enough for image rotation at 400 dpi, so transmission at 400 dpi is not possible.

# 5.2 BOARDS

## 5.2.1 FCU




The FCU (Facsimile Control Unit) controls fax communications, the video interface to the base copier's engine, and all the fax options.

**FACE3 (Fax Application Control Engine)**

- CPU
- Data compression and reconstruction (DCR)
- DMA control
- Clock generation
- DRAM backup control

**Modem (FAME)**

- V.34, V33, V17, V.29, V.27ter, V.21, and V.8

**DRAM**

- The 16 MB of DRAM is shared as follows.
  - SAF memory: 4MB
  - Working memory: 4MB
  - Page memory: 8MB
  - The SAF memory is backed up by a rechargeable battery.

**Memory Back-up**

- A rechargeable battery backs up the SAF memory (DRAM) for 1 hour.

## 5.2.2 MBU

On this board, the flash ROM contains the FCU firmware, and the SRAM contains the system data and user parameters. Even if the FCU is changed, the system data and user parameters are kept on the MBU board.

**ROM**

- 3MB flash ROMs for system software storage
- 2MB (16bit x 1MB) + 1MB (16bit x 512K)

**SRAM**

- The 256 KB SRAM for system and user parameter storage is backed up by a lithium battery.

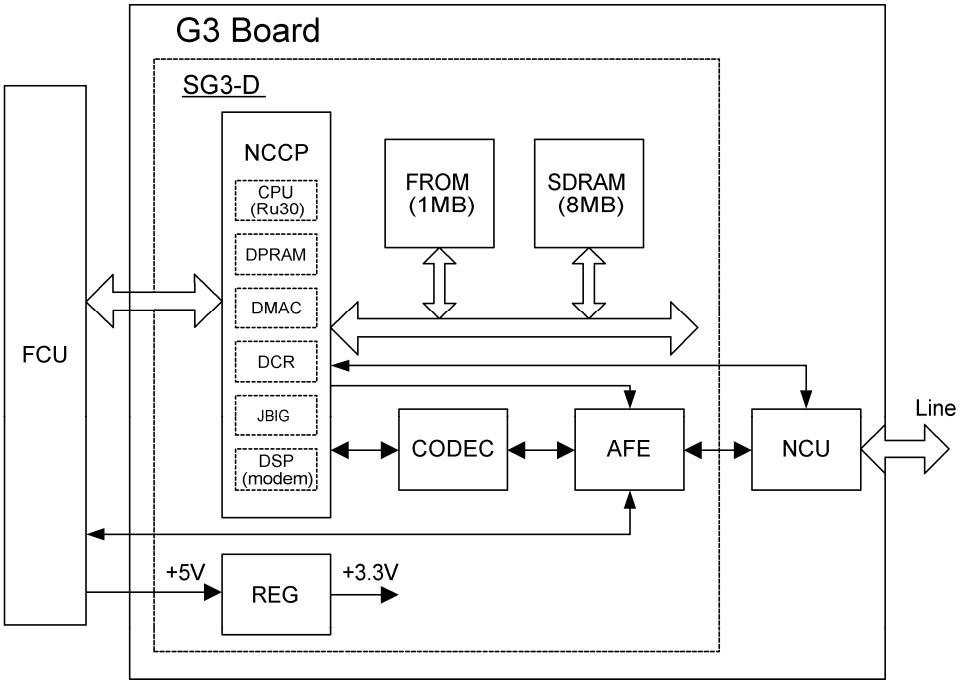
**Memory Back-up**

- A lithium battery backs up the system parameters and programmed items in the SRAM, in case the base copier's main switch is turned off.

**Switches**

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| SW1 | Switches the SRAM backup battery on/off. |

## 5.2.3 SG3 BOARD




The SG3 board allows up to three simultaneous communications when used in combination with the FCU and optional G3 boards. The NCU is on the same board as the common SG-3 board. This makes the total board structure smaller. But, the specifications of the SG3 board do not change.

**NCCP (New Communication Control Processor)**

- Controls the SG3 board.
- CPU (RU30)
- DPRAM (Dual Port RAM): Handshaking with the FCU is done through this block.
- DMA controller
- JBIG
- DSP V34 modem (RL5T892): Includes the DTMF Receiver function
- DCR for MH, MR, MMR, and JBIG compression and decompression

**FROM**

- 1Mbyte flash ROM for SG3 software storage and modem software storage

**SDRAM**

- 4Mbyte DRAM shared between ECM buffer, line buffer, and working memory

Boards

**AFE (Analog Front End)**

- Analog processing

**CODEC (COder-DECoder)**

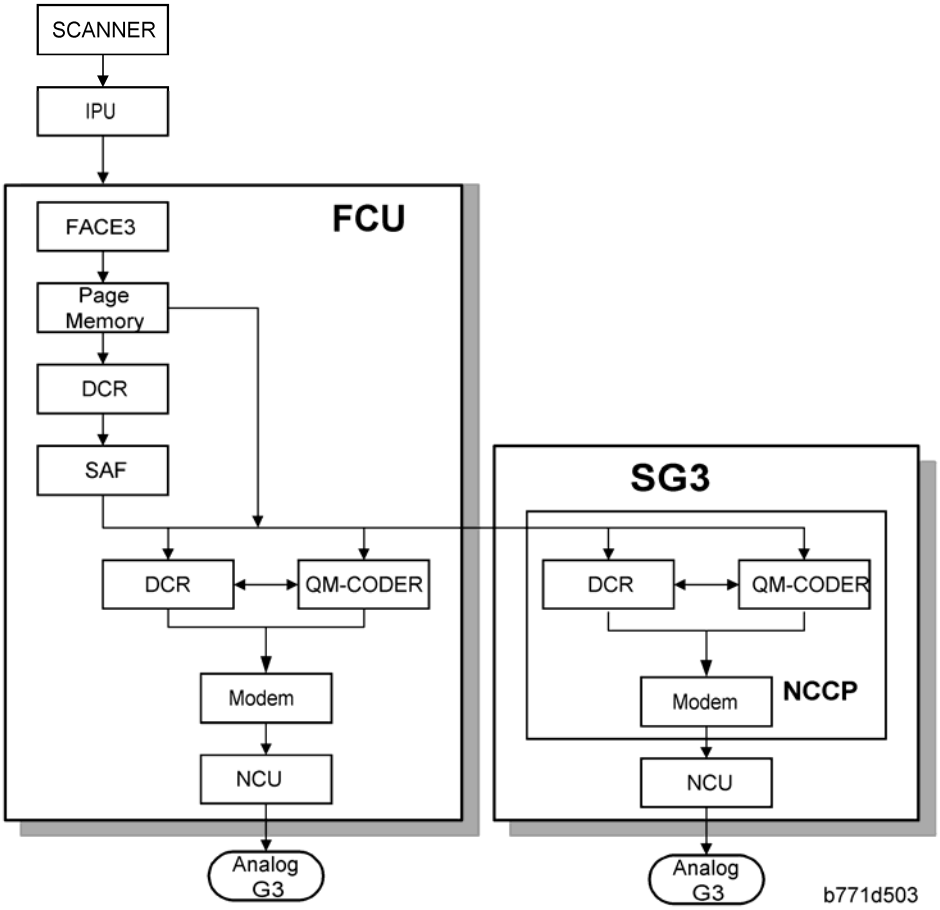
- A/D & D/A conversions for modem

**REG**

- Generates +3.3 V from the +5V from the FCU

# 5.3 VIDEO DATA PATH

## 5.3.1 TRANSMISSION




### *Memory Transmission and Parallel Memory Transmission*

The base copier's scanner scans the original at the selected resolution in inch format. The IPU processes the data and transfers it to the FCU.

Video Data Path

Note

- When scanning a fax original, the IPU uses the MTF, independent dot erase and thresholding parameter settings programmed in the fax unit's scanner bit switches, not the copier's SP modes.

Then, the FCU converts the data to mm format, and compresses the data in MMR or raw format to store it in the SAF memory. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in page memory before compression.

At the time of transmission, the FCU decompresses the stored data, then re-compresses and/or reduces the data if necessary for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

### *Immediate Transmission*

The base copier's scanner scans the original at the resolution agreed with the receiving terminal. The IPU video processes the data and transfers it to the FCU.

Note

- When scanning a fax original, the IPU uses the MTF, independent dot erase and thresholding parameter settings programmed in the fax unit's scanner bit switches, not the copier's SP modes.

Then the FCU stores the data in page memory, and compresses the data for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

### *JBIG Transmission*

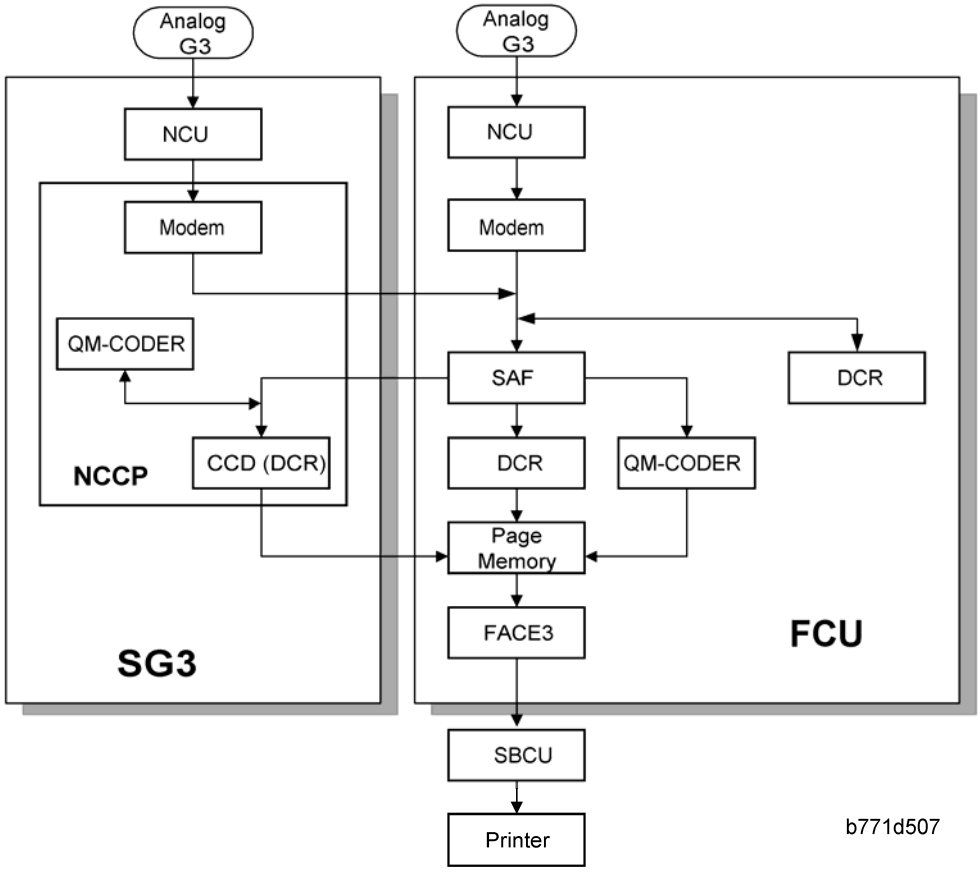
**Memory transmission:** If the receiver has JBIG compression, the data goes from the DCR to the QM-Coder. Then the NCU transmits the data to the line. When an optional G3 unit (SG3) is installed and PSTN2 is selected as the line type, JBIG compression is available, but only for the PSTN-2 line.

**Immediate transmission:** If the receiver has JBIG compression, the data goes from the page memory to the QM-Coder. Then the NCU transmits the data to the line. When an optional G3 unit (SG3) is installed and PSTN2 is selected as the line type, JBIG compression is available, but only for the PSTN-2 line.

### *Adjustments*

- Priority for the line used for G3 transmissions (PSTN 1/PSTN 2 or 3): System switch 16 bit 1

## 5.3.2 RECEPTION




First, the FCU stores the incoming data from either an analog line to the SAF memory. (The data goes to the FACE3 at the same time, and is checked for error lines/frames.)
The FCU then decompresses the data and transfers it to page memory. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in the page memory. The data is transferred to the IPU.
If the optional G3 unit is installed, the line that the message comes in on depends on the telephone number dialled by the other party (the optional G3 unit has a different telephone number from the main fax board).

**JBIG Reception**

When data compressed with JBIG comes in on PSTN-1 (the standard analog line), the data is sent to the QM-CODER for decompression. Then the data is stored in the page memory, and transferred to the IPU.
When data compressed with JBIG comes in on PSTN-2 (optional extra analog line), the data is sent to the QM-CODER on the SG3 board for decompression.

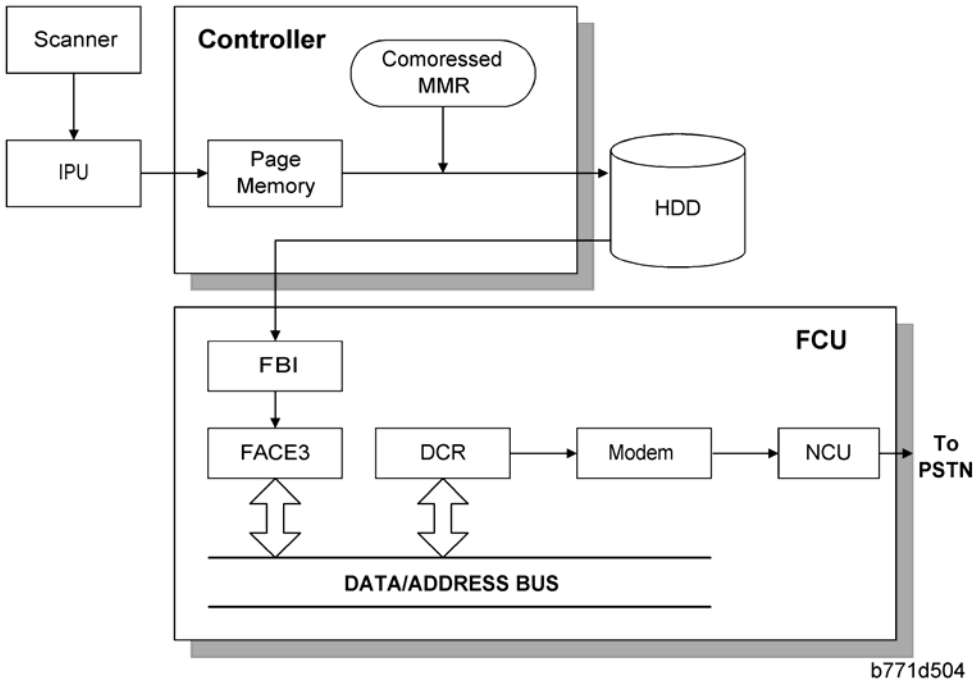
# 5.4 FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES

## 5.4.1 MULTI-PORT

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, communication can take place at the same time through the two or three lines at once.

| Option | Available Line Type | Available protocol Combinations |
|---|---|---|
| Standard only | PSTN | G3 |
| Extra G3 Interface Unit (single) | PSTN + PSTN | G3 + G3 |
| Extra G3 Interface Unit (double) | PSTN + PSTN +PSTN | G3 + G3 +G3 |

## 5.4.2 DOCUMENT SERVER




The base copier's scanner scans the original at the selected resolution. The IPU video processes the data and transfers it to the controller board.

Then the controller stores the data in the page memory for the copier function, and compresses the data in MMR (by software) to store it in the HDD. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in the page memory before compression.

For transmission, the stored image data is transferred to the FCU. The FCU decompresses the image data, then recompresses and/or reduces the data if necessary for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

The documents can be stored in the HDD (Document Server) from the fax application. The stored documents in the document sever can be used for the fax transmission in many times. More than one document and the scanned document can be combined into one file and then the file can be transmitted.

- When using the document server, the SAF memory is not used.
- The document is compressed with MMR and stored.
- Up to 9,000 pages can be stored (1 file: Up to 1,000 pages) from the fax application.
- Only stored documents from the fax application can be transmitted.
- Scanned documents are given a name automatically, such as “FAX001”. But it is possible to change the file name, user name and password.
- Up to 30 files can be selected at once.

Note

- The compression method of the fax application is different from the copy application. The storing time is longer than the copier storing.
- When selecting “Print 1st page”, the stored document will be reduced to A4 size.

## 5.4.3 INTERNET MAIL COMMUNICATION

### *Mail Transmission*

**T.37 simple and full modes**

This machine supports T.37 full mode. (ITU-RFC232). The difference between T.37 simple mode and full mode is as follows.

| Function | T.37 Simple Mode | T.37 Full Mode |
|---|---|---|
| Resolution | 200 x 100<br>200 x 200 | 200 x100<br>200 x 200<br>200 x 400<br>400 x 400 (if available) |
| RX Paper Width | A4 | A4, B4, A3 |
| RX Data Compression Method | MH | MH (default), MR, MMR, |
| Signals | Image data transmission only | Image data transmission, exchange of capability information between the two terminals, and acknowledgement of receipt of fax messages |

**Data Formats**

The scanned data is converted into a TIFF-F formatted file.

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

| Field | Content |
|---|---|
| From | Mail address of the sender |
| Reply To | Destination requested for reply |
| To | Mail address of the destination |
| Bcc | Backup mail address |

Fax Communication Features

| Field | Content |
|---|---|
| Subject | From CSI or RTI (Fax Message No. xxxx) |
| Content Type | Multipart/mixed<br>Attached files: image/tiff |
| Content Transfer Encoding | Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable |
| Message Body | MIME-converted TIFF-F (MIME standards specify how files are attached to e-mail messages) |

**Direct SMTP Transmission**

Internet Fax documents can be sent directly to their destinations without going through the SMTP server. (Internet Faxes normally transmit via the SMTP server.)

For example:

| | |
|---|---|
| **e-mail address**: | gts@ricoh.co.jp |
| **SMTP server address**: | gts.abcd.com |

In this case, this feature destination e-mail address (gts@ricoh.co.jp) is read as the SMTP server address "gts.abcd.com", and the transmissions bypass the SMTP server.

**Selectable Options**

These options are available for selection:

- With the default settings, the scan resolution can be either standard or detail. Inch-mm conversion before TX depends on IFAX SW01 Bit 7. Detail resolution will be used if Super Fine resolution is selected, unless Fine resolution is enabled with IFAX SW01.
- The requirements for originals (document size, scan width, and memory capacity) are the same as for G3 fax memory TX.
- The default compression is TIFF-F format.
- IFAX SW00: Acceptable paper widths for sending
- IFAX SW09: Maximum number of attempts to the same destination

**Secure Internet Transmission**

SMTP Authentication:

- User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> SMTP Authentication

POP Before SMTP:

- User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> POP Before SMTP

## *Mail Reception*

**Three Types**

This machine supports three types of e-mail reception:

- POP3 (Post Office Protocol Ver. 3.)
- IMAP4 (Internet Messaging Access Protocol)
- SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)

Note

- For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Mail Reception

**POP3/IMAP4 Mail Reception Procedure**

The machine automatically picks up e-mail from the server at an interval which is adjustable in the range 2 to 1440 min. in 1-minute steps:

- User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> E-mail Reception Interval

**SMTP Reception**

1. The IFAX must be registered as an SMTP server in the MX record of the DNS server, and the address of the received mail must specify the IFAX.
2. To enable SMTP reception: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol
   - Even if the MX record on the DNS server includes the IFAX, mail cannot be received with SMTP until SMTP reception is enabled:
   - However, if SMTP reception is selected and the machine is not registered in the MX record of the DNS server, then either IMAP4 or POP3 is used, depending on the setting: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol

**Mail Delivery Conditions: Transferring Mail Received With SMTP**

1. The machine must be set up for SMTP mail delivery:
   - User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings
2. If the user wishes to limit this feature so that the machine will only deliver mail from designated senders, the machine's "Auth. E-mail RX" feature must be set (User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings).
3. If the "SMTP RX File Delivery Setting" is set to 0 to prohibit SMTP receiving, and if there is mail designated for delivery, then the machine responds with an error. (User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings)
4. If the quick dial, speed dial, or group dial entry is incorrect, the mail transmission is lost, and the IFAX issues an error to the SMTP server and outputs an error report.

**Auth. E-mail RX**

In order to limit access to mail delivery with IFAX, the addresses of senders must be limited using the Access Limit Entry. Only one entry can be registered.

1. Access Limit Entry
   For example, to limit access to @IFAX.ricoh.co.jp:

| | |
|---|---|
| gts@IFAX.ricoh.co.jp | Matches and is delivered. |
| gts@IFAX.abcde.co.jp | Does not match and is not delivered. |
| IFAX@ricoh.co.jp | Does not match and is not delivered. |

2. Conditions
   - The length of the Access Limit Entry is limited to 127 characters.
   - If the Access Limit Entry address and the mail address of the incoming mail do not match, the incoming mail is discarded and not delivered, and the SMTP server responds with an error. However, in this case an error report is not output.
   - If the Access Limit Entry address is not registered, and if the incoming mail specifies a delivery destination, then the mail is delivered unconditionally.

## *Handling Mail Reception Errors*

**Abnormal files**

When an error of this type occurs, the machine stops receiving and commands the server to erase the message. Then the machine prints an error report and sends information about the error by e-mail to the sender address (specified in the “From” or “Reply-to” field of the message). If there is an incomplete received message in the machine memory, it will be erased.

The machine prints an error message when it fails to send the receive error notification after a certain number of attempts.

The following types of files are judged to be abnormal if one or more of the following are detected:

1. Unsupported MIME headers.
   Supported types of MIME header

| Header | Supported Types |
|---|---|
| Content-Type | Multipart/mixed, text/plain, message/rfc822 Image/tiff |
| Charset | US-ASCII, ISO 8859 X. Other types cannot be handled, and some garbage may appear in the data. |
| Content-Transfer-Encoding | Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable |

2. MIME decoding errors
3. File format not recognized as TIFF-F format
4. Resolution, document size, or compression type cannot be accepted

**Remaining SAF capacity error**

The machine calls the server but does not receive e-mail if the remaining SAF capacity is less than a certain value (the value depends on IFAX Switch 08. The e-mail will be received when the SAF capacity increases (for example, after substitute reception files have been printed). The error handling method for this type of error is the same as for “Abnormal files”.

If the capacity of the SAF memory drops to zero during reception, the machine operates in the same way as when receiving an abnormal file (refer to “Abnormal files” above).

### *Secure Internet Reception*

To enable password encryption and higher level security: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> POP3/IMAP4 Settings> Encryption (set to “On”)

### *Transfer Request: Request By Mail*

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Transfer Request

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

| Field | Content |
|---|---|
| From | E-mail address of the requesting terminal |
| To | Destination address (Transfer Station address) |
| Bcc | Backup mail address |
| Subject | From TSI (Fax Message No. xxxx) |
| Content-Type | Multipart/mixed<br>Text/Plain (for a text part), image/tiff (for attached files) |
| Content-Transfer-Encoding | Base 64, 7-Bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable |
| Mail body (text part) | RELAY-ID-: xxxx (xxxx: 4 digits for an ID code)<br>RELAY: #01#*X#**01…. |
| Message body | MIME-converted TIFF-F. |

### *E-Mail Options (Sub TX Mode)*

The following features are available as options for mail sending: entering a subject, designating the level of importance, confirming reception of the mail.

**Subject and Level of Importance**

You can enter a subject message with: Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options

The Subject entry for the mail being sent is limited to 64 characters. The subject can also be prefixed with an “Urgent” or “High” notation.

- How the Subject Differs According to Mail Type -

<table>
<tr><th>Mail Type</th><th>Item 1</th><th colspan="2">Item 2</th><th>Item 3</th></tr>
<tr><td>Subject Entry</td><td>---</td><td colspan="2">Entry Condition</td><td rowspan="5">Fax Message No.<br>+<br>File No.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">No Subject Entry</td><td></td><td colspan="2">1. “CSI” (“RTI”)</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>2. “RTI”</td><td>CSI not registered</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>3. “CSI”</td><td>RTI not registered</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>4. None</td><td>CSI, RTI not registered</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Confirmation of Reception</td><td rowspan="4">From</td><td colspan="2">1. “CSI” (“RTI”)</td><td rowspan="2">Normal:<br>Return Receipt (dispatched).<br>You can select “displayed” with IFAX SW02 Bits 2 and 3.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2. “RTI”</td><td>CSI not registered</td></tr>
<tr><td>3. “CSI”</td><td>RTI not registered</td><td rowspan="2">Error:<br>Return Receipt (processed/error)</td></tr>
<tr><td>4. None</td><td>CSI, RTI not registered</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Mail delivery, memory transfer, SMTP receiving and delivery</td><td rowspan="4">From</td><td>RTI or CSI of the station designated for delivery</td><td>Mail delivery</td><td rowspan="4">Fax Message No. +<br>File Number</td></tr>
<tr><td>RTI or CSI of sender</td><td>Mail sending from G3 memory</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mail address of sender</td><td>Memory sending</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mail address of sender</td><td>SMTP receiving and delivery (Off Ramp Gateway)</td></tr>
</table>

Fax Communication Features

| Mail Type | Item 1 | Item 2 | Item 3 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mail error notification | --- | Error Message No. xxxx From CSI (RTI) | |

Items 1, 2, and 3 in the table above are in the Subject.

- Subjects Displayed on the PC -

B766D907.WMF

**E-mail Messages**

After entering the subject, you can enter a message with: Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options

An e-mail message (up to 5 lines) can be pre-registered with: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Program/Change/Delete E-mail Message

- Limitations on Entries -

| Item | Maximum |
|---|---|
| Number of Lines | 5 lines |
| Line Length | 80 characters |
| Name Length | 20 characters |

**Message Disposition Notification (MDN)**

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – E-mail Options

The network system administrator can confirm whether a sent mail has been received correctly or not. This confirmation is done in four steps.

1. Send request for confirmation of mail reception. To enable or disable this request (known as MDN): Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options
2. Mail reception (receive confirmation request)
3. Send confirmation of mail reception
4. Receive confirmation of mail reception

The other party's machine will not respond to the request unless the two conditions below are met:

- The other party's machine must be set up to respond to the confirmation request.
- The other party's machine must support MDN (Message Disposition Notification).

- Setting up the Receiving Party -

The receiving party will respond to the confirmation request if:

1. The "Disposition Notification To" field is in the received mail header (automatically inserted in the 4th line in the upper table on the previous page, if MDN is enabled), and
2. Sending the disposition notification must be enabled (User Parameter Setting SW21 (15 [H]) Bit 1 for this model). The content of the response is as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| Normal reception: | "Return Receipt (dispatched)" in the Subject line |
| IFAX SW02 (Bit 2, 3) | "Return Receipt (displayed)" in the Subject line |
| Error: | "Return Receipt (processed/error)" in the Subject line |

**Handling Reports**

- Sending a Request for a Return Receipt by Mail -

After the mail sender transmits a request for a return receipt, the mail sender's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and a "Q" in the Mode column.

- Mail Receipt (Request for Receipt Confirmation) and Sending Mail Receipt Response -

After the mail receiver sends a response to the request for a return receipt, the mail receiver's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and an "A" in the Mode column.

- Receiving the Return Receipt Mail -

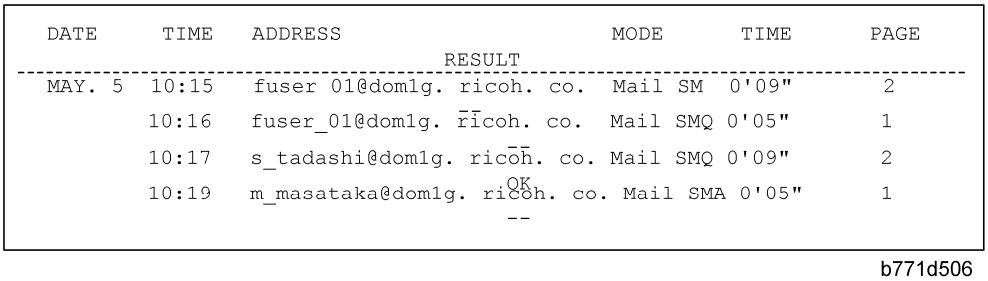
- After the mail sender receives a return receipt, the information in the mail sender's journal about the receipt request is replaced, i.e. the journal is annotated with "OK" in the Result column.
- When the return receipt reports an error, the journal is annotated with an "E" in the Result column.
- The arrival of the return receipt is not recorded in the journal as a separate communication. Its arrival is only reported by the presence of "OK" or "E" in the Result column.
- If the mail address used by the sender specifies a mailing list (i.e., a Group destination; the machine sends the mail to more than one location. See "How to set up Mail Delivery"), the Result column of the Journal is updated every time a return receipt is received. For example, if the mailing list was to 5 destinations, the Result column indicates the result of the communication with the 5th destination only. The results of the communications to the first 4 destinations are not shown.

  Exceptions:

  If one of the communications had an error, the Result column will indicate E, even if subsequent communications were OK.

  If two of the communications had an error, the Journal will indicate the destination for the first error only.

- Report Sample -




b771d506

# 5.5 IP-FAX

## 5.5.1 WHAT IS IP-FAX?

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – IP-FAX

## 5.5.2 T.38 PACKET FORMAT

TCP is selected by default for this machine, but you can change this to UDP with IPFAX SW 00 Bit 1.

### *UDP Related Switches*

<table>
<tr><th colspan="7">IP-Fax Switch 01</th></tr>
<tr><th>No.</th><th colspan="5">Function</th><th>Comments</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">0-3</td><td colspan="5">Select IP FAX Delay Level</td><td rowspan="6">Raise the level by selecting a higher setting if too many transmission errors are occurring on the network.<br>If TCP/UDP is enabled on the network, raise this setting on the T.30 machine. Increasing the delay time allows the recovery of more lost packets.<br>If only UDP is enabled, increase the number of redundant packets.<br>Level 1~2: 3 Redundant packets<br>Level 3: 4 Redundant packets</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>Level</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>3</td></tr>
</table>

## 5.5.3 SETTINGS

User parameter switch 34 (22[H]), bit 0

IP-Fax Gate Keeper usage, 0: No, 1: Yes

IP Fax Switches: Various IP-FAX settings (see the bit switch table)

# 6. SPECIFICATIONS

## 6.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| Type: | Desktop type transceiver |
| Circuit: | PSTN (max. 3ch.)<br>PBX |
| Connection: | Direct couple |
| Original Size: | Book (Face down)<br>▪ Maximum Length: 432 mm [17 ins]<br>▪ Maximum Width: 297 mm [11.7 ins]<br>ARDF (Face up)<br>Single-sided document<br>▪ Length: 128 - 1200 mm [5.0 - 47.2 ins]<br>▪ Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch]<br>Double-sided document<br>▪ Length: 128 - 432 mm [5.0 - 17 inch]<br>▪ Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch] |
| Scanning Method: | Flat bed, with CCD |
| Resolution: | G3<br>▪ 8 x 3.85 lines/mm (Standard)<br>▪ 8 x 7.7 lines/mm (Detail)<br>▪ 8 x 15.4 line/mm (Fine) Note1<br>▪ 16 x15.4 line/mm (Super Fine) See Note.<br>▪ 200 x 100 dpi (Standard)<br>▪ 200 x 200 dpi (Detail)<br>▪ 400 x 400 dpi (Super Fine) Note - Optional Expansion Memory required. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Transmission Time: | G3: 3 s at 28800 bps; Measured with G3 ECM using memory for an ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at standard resolution |
| Data Compression: | MH, MR, MMR<br>JBIG |
| Protocol: | Group 3 with ECM |
| Modulation: | V.34, V.33, V.17 (TCM), V.29 (QAM),<br>V.27ter (PHM), V.8, V.21 (FM) |
| Data Rate: | G3: 33600/31200/28800/26400/24000/21600/<br>19200/16800/14400/12000/9600/7200/4800/2400 bps<br>Automatic fallback |
| I/O Rate: | With ECM: 0 ms/line<br>Without ECM: 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 ms/line |
| Memory Capacity: | ECM: 128 KB<br>SAF<br>▪ Standard: 4 MB<br>▪ With optional Expansion Memory: 28 MB (4 MB+ 24 MB)<br>Page Memory<br>▪ Standard: 4 MB (Print: 2 MB + Scanner: 2 MB)<br>▪ With optional Expansion Memory: 12 MB (4 MB + 8 MB) (Print 8 MB + Scanner: 4 MB) |

# 6.2 CAPABILITIES OF PROGRAMMABLE ITEMS

The following table shows how the capabilities of each programmable item will change after the optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit is installed.

| Item | Standard |
|---|---|
| Quick Dial | 2000 |
| Groups | 100 |
| Destination per Group | 500 |
| Destinations dialed from the ten-key pad overall | 500 |
| Programs | 100 |
| Auto Document | 6 |
| Communication records for Journal stored in the memory | 200 |
| Specific Senders | 30 |

The following table shows how the capabilities of the document memory will change after the optional Fax Function Upgrade Unit and the Expansion Memory are installed.

| | Without the Expansion Memory | With the Expansion Memory |
|---|---|---|
| Memory Transmission files | 400 | 400 |
| Maximum number of pages for memory transmission | 1000 | 1000 |
| Memory capacity for memory transmission (see the Note below) | 320 | 2240 |

Note

- Measured using an ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at standard resolution, with auto image density mode, and in Text mode.

# 6.3 IFAX SPECIFICATIONS

**Connectivity**

Local area network

Ethernet 100base-Tx/10base-T

IEEE1394 (IP over 1394)

IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN)

**Resolution**

**Main scan:** 400 dpi, 200 dpi

**Sub scan:** 400 dpi, 200 dpi, 100 dpi

**Note:** To use 400 dpi, IFAX SW01 Bit 4 must be set to "1".

**Transmission Time**

1 s (through a LAN to the server)

Conditions:

- ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe Letter)
- MTF correction: OFF
- TTI: None
- Resolution: 200 x 100 dpi
- Communication speed: 10 Mbps
- Correspondent device: E-mail server
- Line conditions: No terminal access

**Document Size**

Maximum message width is A4/LT.

**Note:** To use B4 and A3 width, IFAX SW00 Bit 1 (B4) and/or Bit 2 (A3) must be set to "1".

**E-mail File Format**

Single/multi-part

MIME conversion

Image: TIFF-F (MH, MR, MMR)

**Protocol**

**Transmission:** SMTP, TCP/IP

**Reception:** POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP

**Data rate**

100 Mbps(100base-Tx)

10 Mbps (10base-T)

**Authentication method**

SMTP-AUTH

POP before SMTP

A-POP

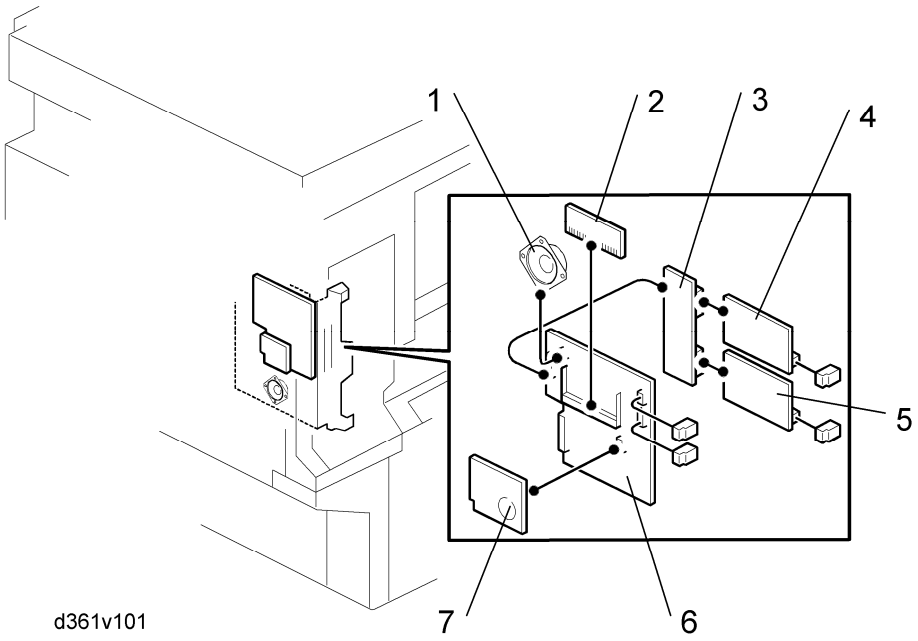
**Remark**

The machine must be set up as an e-mail client before installation. Any client PCs connected to the machine through a LAN must also be e-mail clients, or some features will not work (e.g. Autorouting).

# 6.4 IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| Network: | LAN: Ethernet/10base-T, 100base-TX<br>IEEE1394 (IP over 1394),<br>IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN) |
| Scan line density: | 8 x 3.85 lines/mm, 200x100dpi (standard character),<br>8 x 7.7lines/mm, 200x200dpi (detail character),<br>8 x 15.4lines/mm (fine character: optional expansion memory required),<br>16 x 15.4lines/mm, 400x400dpi (super fine character: optional expansion memory required) |
| Original size: | Maximum A3 or 11"x 17" (DLT) |
| Maximum scanning size: | Standard: A3, 297mm x 432mm<br>Irregular: 297mm x 1200mm |
| Transmission protocol: | Recommended: T.38 Annex protocol, TCP, UDP/IP communication |
| Compatible machines: | IP-Fax compatible machines |
| IP-Fax transmission: | Specify IP address and send fax to an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network.<br>Also capable of sending fax from a G3 fax connected to the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway. |
| IP-Fax reception: | Receive a fax sent from an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network.<br>Also capable of receiving fax from a G3 fax connected the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway. |

# 6.5 FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION




| Component | Code | No. | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|
| FCU | D361 | 6 | Included with fax unit |
| MBU | | 7 | |
| Speaker | | 1 | |
| CCU I/F Board | D361 | 3 | Included with optional G3 unit. |
| G3 Board | | 4 | |
| G3 Board | D361 | 5 | Included with optional G3 unit. |
| Expansion Memory | G578 | 2 | Common with R-C4/4.5 |
| Handset Type 1018 | B433 | | USA only. Common with R-C4/4.5 |